AN EARLY COLLEGE DISTRICT

BROWNSVILLE

INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

HANNA ECHS
NEW GYMNASIUM FACILITY
CSP NO. 20-110

BROWNSVILLE, TEXAS

ARCHITECTS - PLANNERS

Gomez Mendez Saenz, Inc.

CONSULTANTS

Mejia & Rose, Inc.

Green Rubiano & Assoc.

Ethos Engineering, LLC

GMS ARCHITECTS

David A. Monreal, AIA

Set No.

PURCHASING DEPARTMENT

INVITATION

BID/CSP/RFQ (Bid/Competitive Sealed Proposal/Request for Qualification)

Description	Number	Submission Date/ Opening
*Hanna ECHS New Gymnasium Interim Admin: Delia Rodriguez, CTSBO, CTPM Plans may be Picked-up at: Gomez Mendez Saenz Inc. 1150 Paredes Line Rd. Brownsville, Tx. 78521 • Fee: $250.00 Deposit	BID 20-110	07/11/2019 4:00 PM/4:15 PM

Respondents must submit bids/proposals electronically using the BISD eBid System by the established deadline (*Not applicable). Sealed bids/proposals/qualifications may be received at the office of Mrs. Delia Rodriguez, CTSBO, CTPM, Interim Purchasing Administrator, 1900 E. Price Rd, 1st Floor, RM 107, Brownsville, TX 78521-2417, (956) 548-8361. If you have any questions please contact the assigned Senior Buyer, as listed above. **The BISD eBid System's website is https://bisdpurchasing.ionwave.net.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

221413 Facility Storm Drainage Piping
221423 Facility Storm Drainage Piping Specialties
223300 Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters
224000 Plumbing Fixtures
224713 Drinking Fountains

DIVISION 23: HEATING, VENTILATION, AND AIR-CONDITIONING

230010 Summary of Mechanical Work
230513 Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment
230516 Expansion Loops and Fittings
230517 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping
230518 Escutcheons for HVAC Piping
230519 Meters and Gauges for HVAC Piping
230523 Valves for HVAC Piping
230529 Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment
230548.13 Vibration Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment
230553 Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment
230593 Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC
230713 Duct Insulation
230716 HVAC Equipment Insulation
230719 HVAC Piping Insulation
230800 Commissioning of HVAC Systems
230900 Instrumentation and Controls for HVAC
230993 Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls
232113 Hydronic Piping
232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties
232123 Hydronic Pumps
232513 Water Treatment for Closed-Loop Hydronic Systems
232923 Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers
233113 Metal Ducts
233300 Air Duct Accessories
233423 HVAC Power Ventilators
233713 Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles
236423 Scroll Water Chillers
237313 Modular Indoor, Central-Station Air-Handling Units

DIVISION 26: ELECTRICAL

260010 Summary of Electrical Work
260519 Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
260526 Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
260529 Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
260533 Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems
260544 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling
260553 Identification for Electrical Systems
260572 Overcurrent Protection Devices Short Circuit Study
260574 Overcurrent Protection Devices Arc-Flash Study
230800 Commissioning of Electrical Systems
260923 Light Control Devices
262200 Low-Voltage Transformers
262416 Panelboards
262726 Wiring Devices
262813 Fuses
262816 Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
264210 Utility Entrance
264313 Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits
265116 Interior Lighting LED
265219 Emergency and Exit Lighting

265621 Exterior Lighting LED
267260 Gymnasium Sound System
268050 Hand Dryer

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

Sealed bids will be received by the Brownsville Independent School District at the office of MRS. DELIA RODRIGUEZ, INTERIM PURCHASING ADMINISTRATOR, 1900 E . PRICE RD. SUITE 107, BROWNSVILLE, TEXAS 78521-2417 (956)548-8361. Vendors are invited to attend the solicitation opening at the office of the Purchasing Department.

Proposal must be submitted in a 3-ring binder with a table of contents and tabs to include but not limited in the following order:

1. Bid Bond
2. Proposal Price
    - (Bid Form) with Base Bid
    - Alternate
    - Unit Pricing
    - Addendums
3. BISD Forms
4. List of Subcontractor's to be used
    - Company Name
    - Trade to be performed
    - Contact Name and Phone number
5. Financial Reports as required on Delegation of Authority

Four (4) binders (one original and three copies)

DEADLINE
Thursday, July 11, 2019
4:00 pm (Central Standard Time)

OPENING
Thursday, July 11, 2019
4:15 pm (Central Standard Time)

TENTATIVE AWARD D A T E
August 6, 2019

INTERIM ADMINISTRATOR
Delia Rodriguez, CTSBO, CTPM
Email: dnrodriguez@bisd.us

Solicitation Submission

1. The solicitation should be submitted on this form and continued any attached list(s) of items and submitted in a sealed envelope. Each solicitation shall be placed in a separate envelope, sealed and properly identified with the company's name, solicitation title, solicitation number and date to be opened. The District will not be held responsible for missing, lost or late mail. Brownsville Independent School District WILL NOT ACCEPT ANY E-MAIL OR FACSIMILE (FAX) ON SEALED SOLICITATIONS.

Terms of Contract

2. This contract will be valid for a twelve (12) month period following the School Board award date with an option to extend for up to a six (6) month period after expiration date; unless otherwise noted on the scope of work included in these specifications. The six (6) month extension will be done in writing and will be submitted for School Board approval as needed and only after mutual agreement between the District and the awarded vendors.

Vendors Qualifications

3. To qualify as a vendor for service work the following qualifications must be met:
   A. **General Experience:** Vendor must show evidence of at least 2 years related experience, and vendor must have been in the business prior to submitting solicitation for at least 2 years. Failure to submit may be cause for disqualification.
   B. **Vendor Availability:** Vendor shall provide the district with competent staff that is readily available to answer all questions the district may have regarding submitted solicitation, post award and awarded contract.
   C. **Vendor Certification:** Vendor, when required by federal, state, local city; must provide current copies of all certifications, licenses, permits, as they apply to their field of work. Failure to submit with solicitation may be cause for disqualification of submitted bid.
   D. **Vendor Insurance:** Vendor, when required by specifications, shall provide current insurance certifications in the amounts requested by the solicitation specifications. Failure to submit with solicitation may be cause for disqualifications of submitted solicitation. No work shall commence until all insurance required have been approved by the district. The district will be furnished a certification of insurance acceptable, prior to the commencement of any work.
   E. **Payment Bond:** All service projects over 25k must meet Texas Government Code 2253.021 (a): For the protection of the subcontractors and material

suppliers the awarded vendor must provide a payment bond before work commences to BISD.

Quantities

4. Brownsville Independent School District reserves the right to increase or decrease the number of units of each item on the basis of the unit price quoted, unless to do so will increase unit solicitation . In solicitation, stipulate whether the increase or decrease will affect solicitation price. **The solicitation prices will remain firm for twelve (12) months from date of Board Approval, unless otherwise stipulated.**

Item Description

5. Vendors shall submit complete data on each item contained in the solicitation. Such data shall show and identify, by manufactures number, (catalog) or other illustrations, the brand and mode on which the solicitation is based and so marked as to be identified with the solicitation item. **FAILURE TO SUBMIT THE ABOVE INFORMATION WITH SEALED SOLICITATION WILL DISQUALIFY THIS SOLICITATION**.

Cash Discount

6. The Brownsville Independent School District considers cash discounts or discounts for prompt payment when evaluating solicitation.

Purchase Order

7. The District is not responsible for orders placed by individuals, without an appropriate purchase order issued by B.I.S.D. The District will not make cash advances to the award vendors. Payment will be promptly made after all goods have been received and all services have been rendered by the awarded vendors.

Vendor Representative

8. The successful vendor agrees to send a personal representative with binding authority for the company to the district upon request to make adjustments and/or assist with coordination of all transactions as needed.

Quality of Products

9. All products must be delivered in the quality as specified, all items must be new, in first class condition, including containers suitable for shipment and storage, unless otherwise indicated on the solicitation. No substitution in standard grades or lesser quality will be accepted. If the awarded vendor continues to deliver a lesser quality and continues not to meet the said specifications, BISD will seek the following remedies: Disbarment of the vendor for up to three years, notification to the Better Business Bureau, and a negative performance would be documented in the vendor performance tracking system in the State of Texas VPTS system.

Determining Factors for Awards

10. In awarding a contract, the district shall consider TEC 44.031 (b):
    a. Purchase price.
    b. The reputation of the vendor and of the vendor's goods and services.
    c. The quality of the vendor's goods or services.
    d. The extent to which the goods or services meet the district's needs.
    e. The vendor's past relationship with the district.
    f. The impact on the ability of the district to comply with laws relating to historically underutilized businesses.
    g. The total long-term cost to the district to acquire the goods or services
    h. For a contract that is not for goods and services related to telecommunications and information services, building construction and maintenance, or instructional materials whether the vendor or the vendor's ultimate parent company or majority owner has its principal place of business in this state or employs at least 500 persons in this state.
    i. And other relevant factors specifically list in the request for solicitation.

Pricing

11. Document on the solicitation unit price on quantity specified, extend and show total. In case of errors in extension, unit prices shall govern.

Signing of Solicitation

12. Failure to manually sign solicitation may disqualify it. Person signing solicitation should show title or authority to bind their firm to a contract.

Taxes

13. The district is exempt from Federal Excise Tax, State Tax and Local Taxes. Do not include tax in the solicitation. If it is determined that tax was included in the solicitation it will not be included in the tabulation or any awards. Tax exemption certificates will be furnished upon request.

Or Equal

14. Any catalog, brand name or manufacturer's reference used in the solicitation request is descriptive - not restrictive - it is intended to indicate type and quality desired. Other brands of like nature and quality will be considered. If offering on other than reference specifications, the solicitation document must show manufacturer, brand, model, etc. of article offered. If brand other than that specified is offered, complete descriptive information of said article must be included with the solicitation. If vendor takes no

exception to specifications of reference data, brand names, models, etc. as specified, must be furnished.

Samples

15. When requested, must be furnished within five working days of the request at no cost to the district. If not destroyed in examination, they will be returned to the vendor on request at the vendor's expense.

EECO Guideline

16. During the performance of this contract, the contractor agrees not to discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, national origin, age, religion, gender, marital or veteran status, or handicapping condition.

As Needed Basis

17. Quantities shown are estimates only. They are based on prior yearly usage. Items are to be ordered "as needed" over a period of one (1) year.

Question of Specifications

18. All questions regarding solicitation specifications must be addressed seven (7) seven days prior to solicitation submission in writing.

Re-solicit

19. The Brownsville Independent School District has the right to reject all responses or re-solicit if only one solicitation is received by the "submission date" or extend the submission date by an additional two (2) weeks.

Records Pertaining to this Solicitation

20. Vendor must submit a public information request form through Public Information Department at phone number (956) 548-8000 if copies of the submitted responses are needed. This includes all documents pertaining to said solicitation.

Contact with Buyer

21. The vendor should be advised that all end users or Board Member may not communicate with any potential vendor and may only communicate with the designated buyer on any matter related to the solicitation. This includes technical questions on the Scope of Work. The buyer will not respond to the technical questions until first contacting an end user for input and concurrence and then submit an addendum to all potential vendors. A vendor should not contact any end use directly and should refer all question in writing to the designated buyer. Continued non-compliance of the requirement is ground for rejection of the solicitation. The designated buyer can be located on the 1st page of this solicitation.

Ethic & Conduct

22. No person shall participate or assume a responsibility in the implementation and execution of this procedure including, but not limited to, the evaluation of solicitation and selection of contractors, when such participation of solicitation and selection of contractors, when such participation constitutes a conflict of interest as defined by law.

Criminal Background Checks

23. Respondent agrees by signing and executing this solicitation to provide assurance that all employees, subcontractors and volunteers of the Provider who have contact with students have passed a criminal history background check current within the last year as per defined in Senate Bill 9.

Website Disclaimer

24. All solicitation postings on BISD website are provided as an added public service and may or may not be intended for official use. Every effort has been made to provide specifications that are up to date, but information provided herein may change without notice or further posting. Any information presented on the website is subject to revision at any time and is reproduce from official documents of the Purchasing Department. Vendors are encouraged to contact the purchasing department to ensure the solicitation posting is up to date.

Vendor Price with Escalation

25. Price may be increased according to the terms listed:
Based in Consumer Price Index, Producers Price Index, or other index approve by BISD Purchasing Department.

The vendor must submit a written request for price increase to BISD Purchasing Office within 15 days of the affected price increase. The request must be address to the appropriate buyer assigned to manage the procurement. Note: Vendor shall not delay or stop deliveries pending price change approval. Price increase requests shall be supported by the appropriate index documentation from an independent and industry accepted market report.

A price increase from your supplier alone is not sufficient documentation. BISD will respond within 15 calendar day of the request receipt date by:

1. Granting the request
2. Reassigning the item(s) to another awarded vendor
3. Re-solicit the item(s); or taking any other action deemed in the best interest to

BISD. Price decreases will be accepted at any time during the contract period.

The allowable percent increase change shall be calculated as follows:
(B-A)/A x 100% = Percent of allowable price increase
A = Index from the month of the original solicitation or the month of the last approval price increase
B = Current and/or latest baseline index

The resulting percent shall be rounded to the nearest one-hundredth of one percent and shall be the maximum adjustment permitted. The Consumer Price Index (CPI) or Producer Price Index (PPI) used will be for the industry of the specific items listed in the solicitation. At the sole Discretion of BISD, multiple CPI's or PPI's may be used for various items in the same solicitation.

Purchasing Ethics

26. It is not our practice to solicit any type of gifts, favors, or sample of products (samples only if the bid specification call for). If any employee implies this to you or your company, please feel free to inform the Interim Purchasing Administrator at dnrodriguez@bisd.us. It will be held in confidence. You can also contact our fraud line at 956-548-8181; submit a [Web Tip] or SMS [Text-A-Tip] at our Police/Security Services website - http://www.bisd.us/Security (anonymously).

Termination

27. Brownsville Independent School District may, in its sole discretion, terminate this Contract upon thirty (30) days' written notice to Contractor. Such Notice may be provided by facsimile, email or certified mail, return receipt requested and is effective upon Contractor's receipt. This agreement can also be canceled without notice for the following reason:

    a. Failure of contractor to adhere to hourly rates or pricing as bid.
    b. Contractor's failure to timely respond to service requests.
    c. Not complying with the contract specifications.

Subcontracting Program HUBs Good Faith Effort

28. Brownsville ISD at times is required to make a good faith effort to assist Historically Underutilized Businesses (HUBs). The goal of this program is to promote fair and competitive business opportunities for all businesses contracting with Brownsville ISD. Vendors please submit your HUB certification with solicitation.

Applicable Law; Venue

29. This solicitation shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of Texas. The venue of any suit arising under this solicitation or a contract crated by said solicitation shall be fixed in any court of competent jurisdiction of Cameron County, Texas.

Solicitation Type

30. If the solicitation is a Request for Qualifications (RFQ) please disregard all verbiage noting cost or pricing on this solicitation document. The RFQ process will follow the "Professional Services Procurement Act" as stated under chapter 2254 of the Texas Government Code.

If the solicitation is a Construction Project the process will follow "Contracting and Delivery Procedures for Construction Projects" under chapter 2269 of the Texas Government Code.

The Brownsville Independent School District reserves the right to reject any/or all solicitation and to make awards as they may appear to be advantageous to the School District, to hold solicitation for 120 days from submission date without action, and to waive all formalities in solicitation. The vendor must indicate "all or none" in the solicitation if the above-stated condition is not acceptable.

Vendor must provide Federal Identification Number and/or Social Security Number in order to be considered as a qualified vendor.

This Solicitation shall be delivered FOB Brownsville Independent School District, Brownsville, Texas 78521. A contract will be placed into effect by means of a purchase order issued by the District after evaluation and final approval by the Board of Trustees.

BISD does not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability or genetic information in employment or provision of services, programs or activities.

BISD no discrimina a base de raza, color, origen nacional, sexo, religión, edad, incapacidad o información genética en el empleo a la disposición de servicios, programas o actividades.

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

Mrs. Delia Rodriguez, CTSBO, CTPM
Interim Purchasing Administrator
Brownsville I.S.D.

Brownsville I.S.D. Vendor Certification Forms

CERTIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE WITH TEXAS FAMILY CODE PROVISION

As per Section 14.52 of the Texas Family Code, added by S.B. 84, Acts, 73rd Legislature, R.S. (1993), all bidders must complete and submit with the bid the following affidavit:

I, the undersigned vendor, do hereby acknowledge that NO sole proprietor, partner, majority shareholder of a corporation, or an owner of 10% or more of another business entity is 30 days or more delinquent in paying child support under a court order or a written repayment agreement. I understand that under this provision, a sole proprietorship, partnership, corporation or other entity in which a sole proprietor, partner, majority shareholder or a corporation, or an owner of 10% or more of another entity is 30 days or more delinquent in paying child support under a court order or a written repayment agreement is NOT eligible to bid or receive a state contract.

REQUIRED CONTRACT PROVISIONS FOR NON-FEDERAL ENTITY CONTRACTS UNDER FEDERAL AWARDS – APPENDIX II TO 2 CFR PART 200

The following provisions are required and apply when federal funds are expended by Brownsville I.S.D. for any contract resulting from this procurement process

(A) Contracts for more than the simplified acquisition threshold currently set at $150,000, which is the inflation adjusted amount determined by the Civilian Agency Acquisition Council and the Defense Acquisition Regulations Council (Councils) as authorized by 41 U.S.C. 1908, must address administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as appropriate.

Pursuant to Federal Rule (A) above, when federal funds are expended by Brownsville I.S.D., Brownsville I.S.D. reserves all rights and privileges under the applicable laws and regulations with respect to this procurement in the event of breach of contract by either party.

Does vendor agree? YES_____Initials of Authorized Representative of vendor

(B) Termination for cause and for convenience by the grantee or subgrantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement. (All contracts in excess of $10,000).

Pursuant to Federal Rule (B) above, when federal funds are expended by Brownsville

I.S.D., Brownsville ISD reserves the right to immediately terminate any agreement in excess of $10,000 resulting from this procurement process in the event of a breach or default of the agreement by Vendor, in the event vendor fails to: (1) meet schedules, deadlines, and/or delivery dates within the time specified in the procurement solicitation, contract, and/or a purchase order; (2) make any payments owed; or (3) otherwise perform in accordance with the contract and/or the procurement solicitation. Brownsville I.S.D. also reserves the right to terminate the contract immediately, with written notice to vendor, for convenience, if Brownsville I.S.D believes, in its sole discretion that it is in the best interest of Brownsville I.S.D. to do so. The vendor will be compensated for work performed and accepted and goods accepted by Brownsville I.S.D. as of the termination date if the contract is terminated for convenience of Brownsville I.S.D. Any award under this procurement process is not exclusive and Brownsville I.S.D. reserves the right to purchase goods and services from other vendors when it is in the best interest of Brownsville I.S.D.

(C) Equal Employment Opportunity. Except as otherwise provided under 41 CFR Part 60, all contracts that meet the definition of "federally assisted construction contract" in 41 CFR Part 60-1.3 must include the equal opportunity clause provided under 41 CFR 60-1.4(b), in accordance with Executive Order 11246, "Equal Employment Opportunity" (30 FR 12319, 12935, 3 CFR Part, 1964-1965 Comp., p. 339), as amended by Executive Order 11375, "Amending Executive Order 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity," and implementing regulations at 41 CFR part 60, "Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor."

Pursuant to Federal Rule (C) above, when federal funds are expended by Brownsville I.S.D. on any federally assisted construction contract, the equal opportunity clause is incorporated by reference herein

Does vendor agree to abide by the above?

YES_____Initials of Authorized Representative of vendor

(D) Davis-Bacon Act, as amended (40 U.S.C. 3141-3148). When required by Federal program legislation, all prime construction contracts in excess of $2,000 awarded by non-Federal entities must include a provision for compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 3141-3144, and 3146-3148) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5, "Labor Standards Provisions Applicable to Contracts Covering Federally Financed and Assisted Construction"). In accordance with the statute, contractors must be required to pay wages to laborers and mechanics at a rate not less than the prevailing wages specified in a wage determination made by the Secretary of Labor. In addition, contractors must be required to pay wages not less than once a week. The non-Federal entity must place a copy of the current prevailing wage determination issued by the Department of Labor in each solicitation. The decision to award a contract or subcontract must be conditioned upon the acceptance of the wage determination. The non-Federal entity must report all suspected or reported violations to the Federal awarding agency.

The contracts must also include a provision for compliance with the Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act (40 U.S.C. 3145), as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 3, "Contractors and Subcontractors on Public Building or Public Work Financed in Whole or in Part by Loans or Grants from the United States"). The Act provides that each contractor or subrecipient must be prohibited from inducing, by any means, any person employed in the construction, completion, or repair of public work, to give up any part of the compensation to which he or she is otherwise entitled. The non-Federal entity must report all suspected or reported violations to the Federal awarding agency.

Pursuant to Federal Rule (D) above, when federal funds are expended by Brownsville I.S.D., during the term of an award for all contracts and subgrants for construction or repair, the vendor will be in compliance with all applicable Davis-Bacon Act provisions.

Does vendor agree? YES_____Initials of Authorized Representative of vendor

(E) Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3701-3708). Where applicable, all contracts awarded by the non-Federal entity in excess of $100,000 that involve the employment of mechanics or laborers must include a provision for compliance with 40 U.S.C. 3702 and 3704, as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5). Under 40 U.S.C. 3702 of the Act, each contractor must be required to compute the wages of every mechanic and laborer on the basis of a standard work week of 40 hours. Work in excess of the standard work week is permissible provided that the worker is compensated at a rate of not less than one and a half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of 40 hours in the work week. The requirements of 40 U.S.C. 3704 are applicable to construction work and provide that no laborer or mechanic must be required to work in surroundings or under working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or dangerous. These requirements do not apply to the purchases of supplies or materials or articles ordinarily available on the open market, or contracts for transportation or transmission of intelligence.

Pursuant to Federal Rule (E) above, when federal funds are expended by Brownsville I.S.D., the vendor certifies that during the term of an award for all contracts by Brownsville I.S.D. resulting from this procurement process, the vendor will be in compliance with all applicable provisions of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act.

Does vendor agree? YES_____Initials of Authorized Representative of vendor

(F) Rights to Inventions Made Under a Contract or Agreement. If the Federal award meets the definition of "funding agreement" under 37 CFR §401.2 (a) and the recipient or subrecipient wishes to enter into a contract with a small business firm or nonprofit organization regarding the substitution of parties, assignment or performance of experimental, developmental, or research

work under that "funding agreement," the recipient or subrecipient must comply with the requirements of 37 CFR Part 401, "Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements," and any implementing regulations issued by the awarding agency.

Pursuant to Federal Rule (F) above, when federal funds are expended by Brownsville I.S.D., the vendor certifies that during the term of an award for all contracts by Brownsville I.S.D. resulting from this procurement process, the vendor agrees to comply with all applicable requirements as referenced in Federal Rule (F) above.

Does vendor agree? YES_____Initials of Authorized Representative of vendor

(G) Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401-7671q.) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1251-1387), as amended—Contracts and subgrants of amounts in excess of $150,000 must contain a provision that requires the non-Federal award to agree to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401-7671q) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act as amended (33 U.S.C. 1251- 1387). Violations must be reported to the Federal awarding agency and the Regional Office of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

Pursuant to Federal Rule (G) above, when federal funds are expended by Brownsville I.S.D., the vendor certifies that during the term of an award for all contracts by Brownsville I.S.D. resulting from this procurement process, the vendor agrees to comply with all applicable requirements as referenced in Federal Rule (G) above.

Does vendor agree? YES_____Initials of Authorized Representative of vendor

(H) Debarment and Suspension (Executive Orders 12549 and 12689)—A contract award (see 2 CFR 180.220) must not be made to parties listed on the government wide exclusions in the System for Award Management (SAM), in accordance with the OMB guidelines at 2 CFR 180 that implement Executive Orders 12549 (3 CFR part 1986 Comp., p. 189) and 12689 (3 CFR part 1989 Comp., p. 235), "Debarment and Suspension." SAM Exclusions contains the names of parties debarred, suspended, or otherwise excluded by agencies, as well as parties declared ineligible under statutory or regulatory authority other than Executive Order 12549.

Pursuant to Federal Rule (H) above, when federal funds are expended by Brownsville I.S.D., the vendor certifies that during the term of an award for all contracts by Brownsville I.S.D. resulting from this procurement process, the vendor certifies that neither it nor its principals is presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation by any federal department or agency.

Does vendor agree? YES_____Initials of Authorized Representative of vendor

(I) Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment (31 U.S.C. 1352)—Contractors that apply or bid for an award exceeding $100,000 must file the required certification. Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Each tier must also disclose any lobbying with non-Federal funds that takes place in connection with obtaining any Federal award. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the non-Federal award.

Pursuant to Federal Rule (I) above, when federal funds are expended by Brownsville I.S.D., the vendor certifies that during the term and after the awarded term of an award for all contracts by Brownsville I.S.D. resulting from this procurement process, the vendor certifies that it is in compliance with all applicable provisions of the Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment (31 U.S.C. 1352). The undersigned further certifies that:

a. No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid for on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of a Federal contract, the making of a Federal grant, the making of a Federal loan, the entering into a cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.
b. If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal grant or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying", in accordance with its instructions.
c. The undersigned shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all covered sub-awards exceeding $100,000 in Federal funds at all appropriate tiers and that all subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

Does vendor agree? YES_____Initials of Authorized Representative of vendor

RECORD RETENTION REQUIREMENTS FOR CONTRACTS PAID FOR WITH FEDERAL FUNDS – 2 CFR § 200.333

When federal funds are expended by Brownsville I.S.D. for any contract resulting from this procurement process, the vendor certifies that it will comply with the record retention requirements detailed in 2 CFR § 200.333. The vendor further certifies that vendor will retain all records as required by 2 CFR § 200.333 for a period of three years after grantees or subgrantees submit final expenditure reports or quarterly or annual financial reports, as applicable, and all other pending matters are closed.

Does vendor agree? YES_____Initials of Authorized Representative of vendor

CERTIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE WITH EPA REGULATIONS

APPLICABLE TO GRANTS, SUBGRANTS, COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS, AND CONTRACTS IN EXCESS OF $100,000 OF FEDERAL FUNDS

When federal funds are expended by Brownsville I.S.D. for any contract resulting from this procurement process in excess of $100,000, the vendor certifies that the vendor is in compliance with all applicable standards, orders, regulations, and/or requirements issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act of 1970, as amended (42 U.S.C. 1857(h)), Section 508 of the Clean Water Act, as amended (33 U.S.C. 1368), Executive Order 117389 and Environmental Protection Agency Regulation, 40

CFR Part 15.

Does vendor agree? YES_____Initials of Authorized Representative of vendor

CERTIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE WITH THE ENERGY POLICY AND CONSERVATION ACT

When federal funds are expended by Brownsville I.S.D. for any contract resulting from this procurement process, the vendor certifies that the vendor will be in compliance with mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (Pub. L. 94- 163, 89 Stat. 871).

Does vendor agree? YES_____Initials of Authorized Representative of vendor

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

CERTIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE WITH BUY AMERICA PROVISIONS

Vendor certifies that vendor is in compliance with all applicable provisions of the Buy America Act. Purchases made in accordance with the Buy America Act must still follow the applicable procurement rules calling for free and open competition.

Does vendor agree? YES_____Initials of Authorized Representative of vendor

CERTIFICATION OF NON-COLLUSION STATEMENT

Vendor certifies under penalty of perjury that its response to this procurement solicitation is in all respects bona fide, fair, and made without collusion or fraud with any person, joint venture, partnership, corporation or other business or legal entity.

Does vendor agree? YES_____Initials of Authorized Representative of vendor

Vendor agrees to comply with all federal, state, and local laws, rules, regulations and ordinances, as applicable. It is further acknowledged that vendor certifies compliance with all provisions, laws, acts, regulations, etc. as specifically noted above.

Vendor's Name/Company Name: _____

Address, City, State, and Zip Code: _____

Phone Number: _____ Fax Number:_____

Printed Name and Title of Authorized Representative:_____

Email Address: _____

Signature of Authorized Representative: _____

Date: _____

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

CERTIFICATION OF NO ISRAEL BOYCOTT

Effective September 1, 2017, a Texas Governmental entity may not enter into a contract with a company for goods or services unless the contract contains a written verification form the company that it: (1) does not boycott Israel; and (2) will not boycott Israel during the term of the contract. (Texas Gov't Code CH. 2270).

"Boycott Israel" means refusing to deal with, terminating business activities wit, or otherwise taking any action that is intended to penalize, inflict economic harm on, or limit commercial relations specifically with Israel, or with a person or entity doing business in Israel or in an Israeli-controlled territory, but does not include an action made for ordinary business purposes. (Texas Gov't Code §808.001(1).

By signature below, I certify and verify that Vendor does not boycott Israel and will not boycott Israel during the term of any contract awarded under this invitation, that this certification is true, complete and accurate, and that I am authorized by my company to make this certification.

Printed Company Name and Vendor Name:

_____

Signature of Authorized Representative: _____Date:_____

CERTIFICATION OF NO EXLUDED NATION OR FOREIGN TERRORIST ORGANIZATION

Effective September 1, 2017, Chapter 2252 of the Texas Government Code provides that a Texas Governmental entity may not enter into a contract with a company engaged in active business operations with Sudan, Iran, or a foreign terrorist organization – specifically, any company identified on a list prepared and maintained by the Texas Comptroller under Texas Government Code §§806.051, 807.051, or 2252.153. (A company that the U.S. Government affirmatively declares to be excluded from its federal sanctions regime relating to Sudan, Iran, or any federal sanctions regime relating to a foreign terrorist organization is not subject to the contract prohibition).

By signature below, I certify and verify that Vendor does not boycott Israel and will not boycott Israel during the term of any contract awarded under this invitation, that this certification is true, complete and accurate, and that I am authorized by my company to make this certification.

Printed Company Name and Vendor Name:

_____

Signature of Authorized Representative: _____Date:_____

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

Instructions for the Conflict of Interest Questionnaire

Section 176.006 requires disclosure of a person's "affiliations or business relations that might cause a conflict of interest." The term "affiliation" is not defined in Chapter 176. However, the general definition of the word "affiliation" would mean any association or connection. So any affiliation, including such things as friendship, membership in some group or organization, relationship by blood or marriage, or any other connection, must be disclosed.
How to fill out the Conflict of Interest Questionnaire (each number corresponds with the number on Form CIQ).

1. Name of person doing business with the District. If the business is a corporation, partnership, etc., then each person who acts as an agent for the business in dealings with Brownsville ISD must complete the form. Also state company name.

2. Check the box if you are filing an update to a previously filed questionnaire. Updates are required by law by September 1 of each year in which the person submits a Solicitation, or begins contract discussions or negotiations with the District. Updates are also required by the 7th business day after an event that makes a statement in a previously filed questionnaire incomplete or inaccurate.

3. Describe how you are affiliated or related to a BISD employee or school board member who may make recommendations to the District regarding expenditures of money. Name the District employee or school board member with whom you have a relationship; if there is no relationship in question, state "NONE". Answer questions A, B, C, and D with "Yes" or "No", as applicable.
Examples:

- If your spouse, parent or child is the District of Purchasing and a solicitation is being submitted to the Purchasing Department, this relationship must be reported.
- If your spouse, parent or child is the Principal at a school and your business may sell items directly to the school. This relationship must be reported.
- If you and your spouse, parent, or child is in business with a district employee that you be making a recommendation concerning a purchase or sale transition involving you, the relationship must be reported.
- If you employ or do business with a spouse, parent, or child of a district employee that would be making a recommendation concerning a purchase or sale transaction involving you, the relationship must be reported.
- If you are a district employee and would be making recommendation concerning a purchase or sales transaction involving you, the relationship must be reported.
- If your neighbor is friend is a district employee that would be making a recommendation concerning a purchase or sale transaction involving you and you feel that your relationship with this employee could affect their recommendation, this relationship must be reported.
- If any other situation exists that would result in a conflict of interest, the relationship must be reported.

- If your spouse, parent, or child is a teacher that does not make recommendations concerning purchasing or sales transactions, this relationship should not be reported. If your spouse, parent, or child is a principal at a school and solicitation is being considered by a separate department such as Facilities & Planning (Construction Department) this relationship should not be reported. 4
- Signature Box: Date and Sign the form A signature is required from the person completing the form even if 'No' is entered in Box 3, A, B, C, or D.

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

CONFLICT OF INTEREST QUESTIONNAIRE

FORM CIQ

For vendor doing business with local governmental entity

This questionnaire reflects changes made to the law by H.B. 23, 84th Leg., Regular Session.

This questionnaire is being filed in accordance with Chapter 176, Local Government Code, by a vendor who has a business relationship as defined by Section 76.001(1-a) with a local governmental entity and the vendor meets requirements under Section 176.006(a).

By law this questionnaire must be filed with the records administrator of the local governmental entity not later than the 7th business day after the date the vendor becomes aware of facts that require the statement to be filed. *See* Section 176.00S (a-1), Local Government Code.

A vendor commits an offense if the vendor knowingly violates Section 176.006, Local Government Code. An offense under this section is a misdemeanor.

OFFICE USE ONLY

Date Received

1. Name of vendor who has a business relationship with local governmental entity.

2. ☐ Check this box if you are filing an update to a previously filed questionnaire. (The law requires that you file an updated completed questionnaire with the appropriate filing authority not later than the 7th business day after the date on which you became aware that the originally filed questionnaire was incomplete or inaccurate.)

3. Name of local government officer about whom the information is being disclosed.

Name of Officer

4. Describe each employment or other business relationship with the local government officer, or a family member of the officer, as described by Section 176.003(a)(2)(A). Also describe any family relationship with the local government officer. Complete subparts A and B for each employment or business relationship described. Attach additional pages to this Form CIQ as necessary.

a. Is the local government officer or a family member of the officer receiving or likely to receive taxable income, other than investment income, from the vendor?

☐ Yes ☐ No

b. Is the vendor receiving or likely to receive taxable income, other than investment income, from or at the direction of the local government officer or a family member of the officer AND the taxable income is not received from the local governmental entity?

☐ Yes ☐ No

5. Describe each employment or business relationship that the vendor named in Section 1 maintains with a corporation or other business entity with respect to which the local government officer serves as an officer or director, or holds an ownership interest of one percent or more.

6. ☐ Check this box if the vendor has given the local government officer or a family member of the officer one or more gifts as described in Section 176.003(a)(2)(B), excluding gifts described in Section 176.003(a-1).

7.

Signature of vendor doing business with the governmental entity Date

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

SB9 Contractor Certification Contractor Employees

Introduction: Texas Education Code Chapter 22 requires entities that contract with school districts to provide services to obtain criminal history record information regarding covered employees. Contractors must certify to the district that they have complied. Covered employees with disqualifying criminal histories are prohibited from serving at a school district. Contractors must certify to the district that they have complied and must obtain certifications from their subcontractors.

The district may not obtain criminal histories for contractors: the law requires each contractor to obtain the criminal histories of its covered employees. For more information or to set up an account, contractor should contact the Texas Department of Public Safety's Crime Records Services at 512-424-2474

Definitions:

Covered employees: Employees of a contractor or subcontractor who have or will have continuing duties related to the service to be performed at the District and have or will have direct contact with students. The District will be the final arbiter of what constitutes direct contact with students. If this box is checked I further certify that:

a. Contractor/Subcontractor/Independent Contractor has obtained all required criminal history records information regarding its covered employee(s). None of the covered employee(s) has a disqualifying criminal history.
b. Contractor/Subcontractor/Independent Contractor receives information that a covered employee(s) subsequently has a reported criminal history, Contractor/Subcontractor/Independent Contractor will immediately remove the covered employee(s) from contract duties and notify the District in writing within 3 business days.
c. Upon request, Contractor/Subcontractor/Independent Contractor will provide the District with the name and any other requested information of covered employee(s)'s criminal history record information, Contractor/Subcontractor/Independent Contractor agrees to discontinue using the covered employee(s) to provide services at the District.

Disqualifying criminal history: Any conviction or other criminal history information designated by the District, or one of the following offenses, if at the time of the offense, the victim was under 18 or enrolled in a public school: (a) a felony offense under Title 5, Texas Penal Code; (b) an offense for which a defendant is required to register as a sex offender under Chapter 62, Texas Code of Criminal Procedure; or (c) an equivalent offense under federal law or the laws of another state.

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

On behalf of _____
(Contractor/Subcontractor/Independent Contractor)
I, the undersigned authorized signatory for Contractor/Subcontractor/Independent Contractor to Certify to **Brownsville ISD** that:

[Check One]

☐ None of the employee(s) of Contractor/Subcontractor/Independent Contractor are *covered employees*, as defined above. If this box is checked, I further certify that Contractor/Subcontractor/Independent Contractor has taken precautions or imposed conditions to ensure that the employees of Contractor and any subcontractor will not become *covered employees*. Contractor will maintain these precautions or conditions throughout the time the contracted services are provided.

OR

☐ Some or all of the employee(s) of Contractor/Subcontractor/Independent Contractor are *covered employees*. If this box is checked, I further certify that I understand the definitions and requirements above on section COVERED EMPLOYEE(S)

I also certify to the District on behalf of Contractor/Subcontractor/Independent Contractor had obtained certification form it Contractor/Subcontractor/Independent Contractor of compliance with Education Code, Chapter 22.
I agree to provide the District, upon request, full name(s) and any other requested information so the District may obtain mine/employee(s) history record information. I understand that the District may terminate services at any time if the District determines, at its sole discretion, that criminal history is not acceptable.

Noncompliance or misrepresentation regarding this certification may be grounds for contract termination.

_____ _____
Signature & Title Date

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

FELONY CONVICTION NOTICE

State of Texas Legislative Senate Bill No. 1, Section 44.034, Notification of Criminal History, Subsection (a), states "a person or business entity that enters into a contract with a school district must give advance notice to the district if the person or an owner or operator of the business entity has been convicted of a felony. The notice must include a general description of the conduct resulting in the conviction of a felony.

Subsection (b) states "a school district may terminate a contract with a person or business entity if the district determines that the person or business entity failed to give notice as required by Subsection (a) or misrepresented the conduct resulting in the conviction. The district must compensate the person or business entity for the services performed before the termination of contract."

THIS NOTICE IS NOT REQUIRED OF A PUBLICLY-HELD CORPORATION

I, the undersigned agent for the firm named below, certify that the information concerning notification of felony has been reviewed by me and the following information furnished is true to the best of my knowledge.

VENDOR'S NAME: _____

AUTHORIZED COMPANY OFFICIAL'S NAME (PRINTED) _____

a. My firm is publicly-held corporation, therefore, this reporting requirement is not applicable.

Signature of Company: _____

b. My firm is neither owned nor operated by anyone who has been convicted of a felony:

Signature of Company Official: _____

c. My firm is owned or operated by the following individual(s) who has/have been convicted of a felony:
Name:_____

Felon(s):_____

Details of Conviction(s):_____

Signature of Company Official: _____

Note: Please complete, sign, and submit this form with your solicitation or company may be disqualified

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

NON-COLLUSIVE AFFIDAVIT

The undersigned vendor, by signing and executing this solicitation certifies and represents to the Brownsville Independent School District that vendor has not offered, conferred or agreed to confer any pecuniary benefit, as defined by |1.07 (a) (6) of the Texas Penal Code, or any other thing of value, as consideration for the receipt of information or any special treatment or advantage relating to this solicitation: the vendor also certifies and represents that the vendor has not offered, conferred or agreed to confer any pecuniary benefit or other thing of value as consideration for the recipient's decision, opinion, recommendation, vote or other exercise of discretion concerning this solicitation: the vendor certifies and represents that vendor has neither coerced nor attempted to influence the exercise of discretion by any offer, trustee, agent or employee of the Brownsville Independent School District concerning this solicitation on the basis of any consideration not authorized by law; the vendor also certifies and represents that vendor has not received any information not available to other vendor so as to give the undersigned a preferential advantage with respect to this solicitation; the vendor further certifies and represents that vendor has not violated any state, federal, or local law, regulation or ordinance relating to bribery, improper influence, collusion or the like and that vendor will not in the future offer, confer, or agree to confer any pecuniary benefit of other thing of value of any officer, trustee, agent or employee of the Brownsville Independent School District in return for the person having exercised their person's official discretion, power or duty with respect to this solicitation; the vendor certifies and represents that it has not now and will not in the future offer, confer, or agree to confer a pecuniary benefit or other thing of value to any officer, trustee, agent, or employee of the Brownsville Independent School District in connection with information regarding this solicitation, the submission of this solicitation, the award of this solicitation or the performance, delivery of sale pursuant to this solicitation.

Signature of Company Official:_____ **Date:**_____

Print Name: _____

Note: Please complete, sign, and submit this form with your solicitation or company may be disqualified

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

AFFIDAVIT

State of Texas
County of Cameron

I, _____(name) as a Trustee of the Brownsville I.S.D. Board of Trustees make this affidavit and herby on oath of state the following; I, or a person related to me, have a substantial interest, in a business entity, as those terms are defined in Local Government code Sections 171.001-171.002, that would experience a special economic effect distinguishable from it's effect on the public by a vote or decisions of the board or in a real property for which it is reasonably foreseeable that the board's action will have a special economic effect on the value of the property distinguishable form it's effect on the public. (_____name and address of Business or description of property).
_____(" I or name or relative and relationship (have/has a substantial interest in this business entity or real property for the following reason:

CHECK ALL THAT APPLY

( ) Ownership of 10 percent or more of the voting stock or shares of the business entity.
( ) Ownership of 10 percent or more the fair market value of the business entity.
( ) Ownership of $5,000 or more of the fair market value of the business entity.
( ) Funds received from the business exceed 10 percent of (my, her, his) gross income for the previous year.
( ) Real property is involved and (I, he, she) (have, has) and equitable or Legal ownership with a fair market value of at least $2,500.

Upon filing of this affidavit with the School Board's Secretary, I affirm that I shall abstain from participation in any decision involving this business entity or real property, unless permitted according to Local Government Section 171.006

Signed this_____ day of _____, 20____

_____ _____
Signature of Official Title

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT
State of Texas
County of Cameron

BEFORE ME, the undersigned authority, this day personally appeared
_____
My commission expires:_____

Note: Please complete, sign, and submit this form with your solicitation or company may be disqualified

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

Certification of Interested Parties –Form 1295

Certification of Interested Parties (Form 1295- must be filled out electronically with the Texas Ethics Commission's online filing application, printed out signed, notarized and sent back with the other required documents in this solicitation).

In 2015, the Texas Legislature adopted House Bill 1295 which added section 2252.908 of the Government Code. The law state that a governmental entity or state agency may not enter into certain contracts with a business entity unless the business entity submits a disclosure of interested parties to the government entity or state agency at the time the business entity submits a signed contract to the governmental or state agency. These new provisions took effect January 1, 2016.

Since the Board of Trustees will adopt approved vendor list for the advertised categories, vendors must comply with this mandate prior to doing business with Brownsville Independent School District. Vendors submitting a sealed solicitation must also log into the Texas Ethic Commission 1295 and print a copy of the completed form, which will include a certification of filing that will contain a unique certification number. An authorized agent of the business entity must sign the printed copy of the form and have it notarized. The completed Form 1295 with the Certification filling must be filed with Brownsville I.S.D. and sent in with the other requires documents in this solicitation.

On the Texas Ethics Commission website there is a section of frequently asked questions available to help vendors understand this mandated process.

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

CERTIFICATE OF INTERESTED PARTIES – FORM 1295

Definitions and Instructions for Completing Form 1295
Brownsville ISD is required to comply with House Bill 1295, which amended the Texas Government Code by adding Section 2252.908, Disclosure of Interested Parties. Section 2252.908 prohibits Brownsville ISD, or its cooperative members, from entering into a contract resulting from this RFP with a business entity unless the business entity submits a Disclosure of Interested Parties – Form 1295 to Brownsville ISD at the time the business entity submits the signed contract. The Texas Ethics Commission has adopted rules requiring the business entity to file Form 1295 electronically with the Texas Ethics Commission.

As a "business entity," all vendors must electronically complete, print, sign, notarize and submit Form 1295 with their proposals or contracts even if no interested parties exist.

Proposers must file Certificate of Interested Parties – Form 1295 with the Texas Ethics Commission using the following online application:
https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf_info_form1295.htm

- Proposers must use the filing application on the Texas Ethics Commission's website (see link above) to enter the required information on Form 1295.
- Proposers must print a copy of the completed form, which will include a certification of filing containing a unique certification number.
- The Form 1295 must be printed and then signed by an authorized agent of the business entity, and the form must be notarized.
- The completed Form 1295 with the certification of filing must be filed with Region One Education Service Center by including a copy of the completed/notarized form with the proposal response.
- Brownsville ISD must acknowledge the receipt of the filed Form 1295 by notifying the Texas Ethics Commission of the receipt of the filed Form 1295 no later than the 30th day after the Brownsville ISD receives the disclosure.
- After Brownsville ISD acknowledges the Form 1295, the Texas Ethics Commission will post the completed Form 1295 to its website within seven (7) business days after receiving notice from Brownsville ISD.

Instructions to Vendors:

1. **Read these instructions,**
2. **Go to the Ethics Commission Website https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf_info_form1295.htm,**
3. **Register and complete Form 1295 online – include the proposal number, the contract/RFP name, and a short description of the services, goods, or other property.**
4. **Print a copy of the submitted Form 1295 and have it notarized - it will have a certification # in the top right corner,**
5. **Include a copy of the completed, signed and notarized Form 1295 with the proposal response.**

Definitions:

- **Contract** means a contract between Brownsville ISD and/or its cooperative members and a business entity at the time it is voted on by the Brownsville ISD Board of Directors or at the time it binds the Brownsville ISD, whichever is earlier, and includes an amended, extended, or renewed contract.
- **Business Entity** includes an entity through which business is conducted with Brownsville ISD and/or its cooperative members, regardless of whether the entity is a for-profit or nonprofit entity. The term does not include a governmental entity or State agency.
- **Controlling Interest** means:
  1) an ownership interest or participating interest in a business entity by virtue of units, percentage, shares, stock, or otherwise that exceeds ten percent (10%);
  2) membership on the board of directors or other governing body of a business entity of which the board or other governing body is composed of not more than ten (10) members; or
  3) service as an officer of a business entity that has four (4) or fewer officers, or service as one of the four (4) officers most highly compensated by a business entity that has more than four (4) officers. This section does not apply to an officer of a publicly held business entity or its wholly owned subsidiaries.
- **Interested Party** means:
  1) a person who has controlling interest in a business entity with whom Brownsville ISD and/or its cooperative members' contracts; or
  2) an intermediary.
- **Intermediary:** a person who actively participates in the facilitation of the contract or negotiation the contract, including a broker, advisor, attorney, or representative of or agent for the business entity who:
  1) receives compensation from the business entity for the person's participation;
  2) communicates directly with the Brownsville ISD and/or its cooperative members on behalf of the business entity regarding the contract; and
  3) is not an employee of the business entity or of an entity with a controlling interest in the business entity.
- **Signed** includes any symbol executed or adopted by a person with present intention to authenticate a writing, including an electronic signature.
- **Value** of a contract is based on the amount of consideration received or to be received by the business entity from the Brownsville ISD and/or its cooperative members under the contract.

Resources:

Form 1295 Frequently Asked Questions:
- https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/FAQ_Form1295.html

Instructional Video – First Time Business User:
- https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/filinginfo/videos/Form1295/FirstLogin-Business/Form1295Login-Business.html

Instructional Video – How to Create a Certificate:
- https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/filinginfo/videos/Form1295/CreateCertificate/CreateCertificate.html

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

Brownsville ISD must acknowledge the receipt of the filed Form 1295 by notifying the Texas Ethics Commission of the filed Form 1295 no later than the 30th day after the date the contract binds all parties to the contract. **Failure to submit Form 1295 will constitute disqualification of award and no Purchase Orders will be issued to entity.** This is a sample form that vendors must file electronically (vendors must fill out 1295 form using the link below).

CERTIFICATE OF INTERESTED PARTIES — FORM 1295

Complete Nos. 1 - 4 and 6 if there are interested parties.
Complete Nos. 1, 2, 3, 5, and 6 if there are no interested parties.

OFFICE USE ONLY

1 **Name of business entity filing form, and the city, state and country of the business entity's place of business.**

2 **Name of governmental entity or state agency that is a party to the contract for which the form is being filed.**
Harris County Department of Education

3 **Provide the identification number used by the governmental entity or state agency to track or identify the contract, and provide a description of the goods or services to be provided under the contract.**
HCDE RFP No. *<insert RFP No. here>*

4 Name of Interested Party	City, State, Country (place of business)	Nature of Interest (check applicable)	
		Controlling	Intermediary

5 **Check only if there is NO Interested Party.** ☐

6 **AFFIDAVIT**

I swear, or affirm, under penalty of perjury, that the above disclosure is true and correct.

_____
Signature of authorized agent of contracting business entity

AFFIX NOTARY STAMP / SEAL ABOVE

Sworn to and subscribed before me, by the said _____, this the _____ day of _____, 20 _____, to certify which, witness my hand and seal of office.

_____ _____ _____
Signature of officer administering oath | Printed name of officer administering oath | Title of officer administering oath

ADD ADDITIONAL PAGES AS NECESSARY

Form provided by Texas Ethics Commission www.ethics.state.tx.us Adopted 10/5/2015

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

Non-Vendors Response

Brownsville Independent School District is interested in the reasons why prospective vendors fail to submit a solicitations. If you are NOT submitting a solicitation, please indicate the reason(s) below and return this form to the above address be da to (956) 548-8367. Failure to do this may result in your firm being removed form advance notice lists of potential solicitation complied by Brownsville I.S.D. Note: after three (3) Non-responses your company will be deleted from our Vendor Data Base.

- Unable to submit a solicitation at this time, but would like to receive information about future solicitations
- Contract too small/big for our company (circle one)
- Lack of fleet to meet requirements
- Lack of terminal to meet requirements
- We are unable to meet specification, provide details _____
- Insufficient time allowed for preparation and submission of solicitation
- Other reasone:_____

You may remove your name form the solicitation submission list for:

- All solicitations
- Remainder of this year
- This particular service
- Other _____

_____ _____

Officer of Company (Signature) Date

_____ _____

Title Telephone Number

_____ _____

Company Name Fax Number

_____ _____

Street Address Post Office, State, Zip

_____

E-Mail Address

Brownsville Independent School District
Purchasing Department
1900 E. Price Road Room #107, Brownville, Texas 78521
(956) 548-8361 Fax (956) 548-8367
CSP # 20-110
Hanna ECHS – New Gymnasium

Acknowledgement Form

PLEASE MAKE SURE THAT YOU HAVE DONE THE FOLLOWING:

1. YOU MUST COMPLETE AND RETURN THE TWO (2) AFFIDAVITS ____YES ____NO
AND FELONY CONVICTION NOTICE.

2. YOU MUST INCLUDE INSURANCE WITH THE
BID (IF REQUIRED) ____YES ____NO

3. YOU MUST INCLUDE ANY SAMPLES THAT ARE REQUIRED? ____YES ____NO

4. YOU MUST INCLUDE ANY STATE CERTIFICATE OR LICENSE
WITH THE BID (IF REQUIRED)? _____YES ____NO

5. YOU MUST VERIFY UNIT PRICE TO TOTAL PRICE? _____YES ____NO

6. YOU MUST INCLUDE A W-9 IRS FORM ____YES ____NO
(DOWNLOADABLE AT WWW.BISD.US/PURCHASING)

7. YOU MUST COMPLETE AND RETURN FORM 1295 _____YES____NO
FAILURE TO SUBMIT WILL CAUSE DISQUALIFATION

8. YOU MUST COMPLETE AND RETURN SB9 FORMS _____YES____NO
(ALL THAT APPLY)

I have read all of the specifications and general solicitation requirements and do hereby certify that all items submitted meet all specifications, conditions, and instructions of said solicitation, and will follow District policy DBD (Local). The signature below confirms that our company will enter into a binding contract with Brownsville I.S.D. for item(s) awarded to our company.

Company Name: _____ Agent Name: _____

Print Name: _____ Authorized Signature: _____

Address: _____ City: _____ ST: ____ Zip Code: _____

Telephone: (____) _____ Fax: (____) _____ E-mail: _____

Federal Id#: _____ and/or Social Security #:_____

Address for Purchase Order: **Address for Payment:**

_____ _____

_____ _____

_____ _____

Note: Please complete, sign, and submit this form with your solicitation or company may be disqualified

BISD Delegation of Authority regarding Procurement of Construction Services

February 11, 2008

General Rules and Procedures

Selection of Delivery Method

The Board of Trustees of a school district that is considering a construction contract using a method specified by Section 44.031 (a) must, before advertising, determine which delivery method provides the best value for the district [Section 44.035 (a)].

The district shall base its selection among offerors on criteria authorized to be used under Section 44.031 (b). The district shall publish in the request for bids, proposals, or qualifications the criteria that will be used to evaluate the offerors and the relative weights given to the criteria.

The district shall document the basis of its selection and shall make the evaluations public not later than the seventh day after the date the contract is awarded.

Delegation

As authorized by Senate Bill 669, Texas Education Code, Section, 44.0312. (a), Delegation, the Brownsville Independent School District's Board of Trustees hereby delegates its authority under this subchapter, regarding an action authorized or required by this subchapter to be taken by a school district, to an evaluation and ranking committee consisting of the following individuals:

Evaluation/Ranking Committee

- Assistant Superintendent over Facilities Department
- BISD Facilities Administrator
- BISD Construction Manager(s)
- BISD Chief Financial Officer or Designee
- Project Architect/Engineer/Designer

In procuring construction services, the district shall provide notice of the delegation and the limits of the delegation in the request for bids, proposals, or qualifications or in an addendum to the request. If the district fails to provide that notice, a ranking, selection, or evaluation of bids proposals, or qualifications for construction services other than by the board of trustees in an open public meeting is advisory only.

The committee shall evaluate, rank, and publish said rankings in accordance with state law. The evaluation criteria and related weights have been established by the committee and are stated below. The committee reserves the right to alter the evaluation criteria and related weights as deemed appropriate, on a case by case basis, as long as said criteria and related weights are published in the bid advertisement process and ranked accordingly.

After the committee has finished ranking the offeror's proposals, the committee shall meet with the highest ranked offeror and attempt to negotiate a construction contract which provides the "best value to the district." Once the committee and the highest ranked offeror agree on a negotiated price and scope of work, the committee shall forward the negotiated contract amount proposal to the Superintendent's Office for placement on the next available School Board Meeting for award consideration.

The School Board of Trustees shall have the right to approve or reject the ranking committee's recommendations for a construction contract award. The district reserves the right to exclude firms failing to achieve a minimum total score from any further consideration for contract negotiation. Any contract changes to Board approved construction contracts shall not be permitted without further School Board approval.

Prior to the evaluation(s) and ranking(s), each member of the ranking committee must sign and submit a signed Non-Disclosure Statement to the BISD Purchasing Department.

During the discussion, evaluation, and ranking process, under no circumstances should any team member try to influence or attempt to pressure other ranking members to change the evaluation scores.

Ranking Evaluation and Ranking Criteria

The district reserves the right to apply any and all criteria as deemed appropriate and allowed in the Texas Education Code 44.031 (b). Including but not limited to, as provided by section 44.031 (b), part (8), other relevant factors specifically denoted in the bid package. The district specifically requests offerors to answer or provide the information to the following selection criteria. Questions left unanswered or omitted requested information may result in zero (0) points being awarded.

Criteria	**Weight**
Price	60 Points
Company Construction Experience	15 Points
Construction Team and Subcontractors	10 Points
Professionalism/Conflict Resolution	10 Points
Construction Performance	25 Points
Financial Strength	20 Points
Total Maximum Points	140 Points

Price (60 Points):

The price will be evaluated and scored based on the main base proposal cost. The district reserves the right to include any and all alternate price proposals in the price evaluation process. The established budget will determine which, if any, alternates will be recommended and accepted as part of the overall price ranking evaluation. After the highest ranked firm is selected, negotiations on price and changes on the scope of work may occur with the firm that provides the best value to the district.

Points will be awarded based upon the total number of offers submitted. The lowest offeror will receive the maximum number of points and the highest offeror will receive the minimum number of points. A point spread system will be established once all the offers are tabulated. The closer the prices of the offers, the larger the point spread will be.

Sample: Utilizing the 80% Spread Formula

Contractor	Price	Points
Offeror No. 1	$1,000,000.00	60.0
Offeror No. 2	$1,050,000.00	56.0
Offeror No. 3	$1,100,000.00	52.0
Offeror No. 4	$1,150,000.00	48.0

70% spread: 60 x 70% = 42.0 points	Result: 18.0 point spread
75% spread: 60 x 75% = 45.0 points	Result: 15.0 point spread
80% spread: 60 x 80% = 48.0 points	Result: 12.0 point spread
85% spread: 60 x 85% = 51.0 points	Result: 9.0 point spread
90% spread: 60 x 90% = 54.0 points	Result: 6.0 point spread
95% spread: 60 x 95% = 57.0 points	Result: 3.0 point spread

If the committee decided to utilize the 90% spread formula, Offeror No. 4 is only 6 points away from Offeror No. 1. The committee may feel that a 6.0 point difference may be too close, and is unfair to the lowest price offeror. A 70% spread, or 18.0 point difference, may be too far spread out and may be considered unfair to the highest price offer. Especially since the prices are not too far apart on a $1 Million project. The point spread could be very different on a $300,000.00 project budget versus a $30 Million project budget. Therefore, in this particular example, the committee makes a decision to utilize the 80% spread formula and have a 12.0 point spread between the lowest price offeror and the highest priced offeror.

After the percent spread is agreed upon, in this case the 80% formula, the lowest offeror gets the maximum 60 points and the highest offeror gets 48 points. Everyone else in the middle will get their points scored proportionately (extrapolated).

The difference between Offeror No. 1 and Offeror No. 4 is:
$1,150,000.00 - $1,000,000.00 = $150,000.00

$150,000.00 / 12 points = $12,500.00/point

Thus, every point is worth $12,500.00.

Offeror No. 3 $1,100,000.00 - $1,000,000.00 = $100,000.00
$100,000.00/$12,500.00 = 8.0 points 60 – 8 = 52 points

Offeror No. 4 $1,150,000.00 - $1,000,000.00 = $150,000.00
$150,000.00/$12,500.00 = 12 points 60 - 12 = 48 points, and so on….

This is the scoring system which will utilized by the ranking committee on the price category for all construction projects. The point system will vary from project to project depending on the project budget ranges, on the number of offers submitted, and on the price spread differences between all offerors.

Construction Experience, Performance, and Professionalism (60 points):

In order to get points relating to construction experience, performance, and professionalism the offeror must submit the following information:

How long has your firm been in business?

How long has your firm been doing business in Texas?

What is your firm's physical address?
How many projects has your firm worked on and completed? Please list in chronological sequence, beginning with the most recent.

How many school district projects has your firm worked on and completed? Please list in chronological sequence, beginning with the most recent.

List the projects constructed of similar size, type, and complexity to this particular project. Please list in chronological sequence, beginning with the most recent.

What Job Superintendent and Project Manager do you anticipate will be working on this particular project. Submit resumes of these key individuals with emphasis on job knowledge and experience. If you are not sure, list two or three potential job superintendents or project managers who will be in
charge of this project, with corresponding resumes.

Provide a list of subcontractors to be used on this project. If not sure on certain trades, please list potential alternate subcontractors.

Provide statement of firm's safety record and/or history.

Please provide a minimum of two letters of references from above listed project owners addressing the following areas:

What was the quality of work provided by this contractor?

How well did the contractor respond to warranty items relating to response time and quality of work?

How timely did the contractor submit all warranty and operations manual documents, and all other related close out documents?

Was the contractor on time in finishing your project as originally projected?

Did the contractor finish punch list items in a reasonable time period?

Did you or have you received any Notice of Liens for non-payment from sub-contractors and/or material suppliers on any of your projects with this particular general contractor?

Was the contractor cooperative and professional in addressing construction issues, such as design conflicts, quality of work issues, pricing change orders, and in resolving other related construction issues?

Was the contractor ever confrontational, defensive, non-responsive, argumentative, disrespectful, during the duration of the construction project?

How well did the contractor respond to change order requests, and were the proposed prices fair and reasonable?

Did the contractor hold monthly meetings and document said meetings with appropriate minutes or construction reports?

How well did the contractor work with consulting architects and/or engineers?

Financial Information (20 Points):

Provide one or more letter of reference(s) from a bank(s) with regards to the company's financial standing and strength.

Is your Bid Bond Company a U.S. listed Treasury Bonding Company?
If a cashier's check is submitted in lieu of a bid bond, disregard this question.

Will your Bid Bond Company be the same for your Performance and Payment Bonds, if you are awarded the project? If not, please list the Performance and Payment Bond company to be used and are they U.S. Treasury Listed. The bond companies are not required to be federally, or state treasury listed, however, utilizing unlisted bond companies will result in substantial point reductions.

Provide a statement attesting if your firm is a sole proprietorship, partnership, Limited Corporation, or Corporation, and provide a statement attesting if any individual owners of the firm have ever filed for bankruptcy.

Provide an Audited Financial Statement by a CPA firm licensed to conduct business in the State of Texas.

A Review Audited Financial Statement may be submitted but will result in some deduction of points, as deemed appropriate by ranking committee.

A Compilation Financial Report is not acceptable and will result in zero points.

If your firm has submitted a financial statement to the district on a prior project and it is not more than a year old, the district may accept and utilize that same financial statement on any new project for evaluation and ranking purposes. If the district considers your prior submitted financial statements as outdated and not recent, then the district will require that new financial statements be submitted in order to be evaluated and ranked.

Notification of Criminal History of Contractor

In accordance with Section 44.034, of the Texas Education Code, a person or business entity that enters into a contract with a school district must give advance notice to the district if the person or an owner or operator of the business entity has been convicted of a felony. The notice must include a general description of the conduct resulting in the conviction of a felony.

This section does not apply to a publicly held corporation (Section 44.034. (c). If your firm is incorporated, please submit an attested written document stating that the offering firm is a publicly held corporation, legitimately conducting business in the State of Texas.

Ranking Sheet – Form BISD-DOA- 08

Form BISD-DOA-08 shall be used as the scoring sheet to score the contractors bids, proposals and/or request for qualifications. In the event of a tie or ties, the tie breaker shall be in the favor of the offeror which submitted the lowest price. The alternates shall be used in addition to the base price only if the base price plus the alternate(s) price fall within the project budget. Negotiations on price shall not be allowed until after the district has selected the offeror which is the highest ranked and provides the “best value” to the district, in accordance with the rules and procedures set herein.

BISD Ranking Criteria for Selection of Building Contractors

Project Name: _____ **Contractor:** _____
Project Location: _____ **Bid/Proposal Number:** _____
Ranking Date: _____ **Bid Opening Date:** _____

CATEGORY	Maximum Score	Points Scored	Total Points Scored
1 PRICE (60 Points)			
a. Construction Price	60		
2 COMPANY CONSTRUCTION EXPERIENCE (15 Points)			
a. Number of years in business	5		
b. PK-12 School construction experience	5		
c. Experience in similar size, complexity and cost of project	5		
		Subtotal	
3 CONSTRUCTION TEAM AND SUBCONTRACTORS (10 Points)			
a. Project management and Project Superintendent experience	5		
b. Subcontractors experience and reputation	5		
		Subtotal	
4 COMPANY'S PROFESSIONALISM AND SUBCONTRACTOR (10 POINTS)			
a. Firms Professionalism/Reputation	5		
b. Conflict Resolution Performance	5		
		Subtotal	
5 CONSTRUCTION PERFORMANCE (25 Points)			
a. Quality of work	6		
b. Project Documentation	3		
c. History of meeting deadlines	5		
d. Closing our Project/Completing Punchlists	3		
e. Change Order Pricing and Processing	3		
f. Safety Record	2		
g. Payment of Bills	3		
		Subtotal	
6 FINANCIAL STRENGTH (20 Points)			
a. Financial Statements, Independent Audited Financial Statements, Review Audit, or Compilation Report & Bank References	10		
b. Treasury Listed Bond, Federal, or State, on unlisted Bond Co., Bonding Capacity	5		
c. Bankruptcy History, Litigation History, Lawsuit History (Company & Owner), Criminal History	5		
		Subtotal	
TOTAL POINTS SCORED	**140 Points**	**Grand Total**	

****Average score of Ranking Committee Members**

INSTRUCTIONS FOR COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSALS
BROWNSVILLE IND. SCHOOL DISTRICT HANNA ECHS NEW GYMNASIUM FACILITY
CSP NO. 20-110

GENERAL
GOMEZ MENDEZ SAENZ, INC. has prepared Construction Documents for the BROWNSVILLE IND. SCHOOL DISTRICT HANNA ECHS NEW GYMNASIUM FACILITY which is located at 2615 E. Price Rd., Brownsville, TX 78521.

SCOPE
Work under this Contract consists of a new gymnasium facility.

The Contractor shall under no circumstances leave any building unsecured or unprotected at the end of each work day. The successful Proposer shall include in his proposal any costs to provide any security fencing as required to secure site, the work staging areas, office trailer, etc.

The Contractor shall provide all necessary precautions and safeguards during construction for protection of any visitor whom might visit this job site.

The work is to be done under one General Construction Contract which will include General, Mechanical, Electrical and Ancillary construction work complete as required by the Contract Documents.

CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS
Copies of Construction Documents may be examined and/or picked up at the Architect's Office (1150 Paredes Line Rd., Brownsville, Texas 78521.)

COMPLETE SETS OF CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS (DRAWINGS & SPECIFICATIONS) may be obtained from the Architect upon deposit of TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS ($250.00) for EACH SET. Such deposits will be refunded in full in event the documents are returned in good condition no later than ten (10) calendar days after the actual Proposal Opening Date. If documents are returned in poor condition, cost of reproduction will be deducted from the amount of deposit and the balance will be refunded to the Contractor.

Make Deposit checks payable to: BROWNSVILLE IND. SCHOOL DISTRICT. All shipping costs required shall be borne by the Proposer.

No partial sets of Construction Documents will be issued. Neither the Owner nor Architect assumes responsibility for error or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete Construction Documents for proposal or construction purposes.

The Proposer shall carefully study and compare the Construction Documents with each other and shall at once report to the Architect errors, inconsistencies or ambiguities discovered.

Proposers or Sub-Proposers may make a written request for clarification or interpretation of the Construction Documents which must reach the Architect at least seven days prior to the date for receipt of Competitive Sealed Proposals.

Clarifications, interpretations and changes of the Construction Documents will be made only by written Addendum issued by the Architect to each person to whom the Architect has issued Construction Documents. Proposers shall not rely on clarifications, interpretations and changes made in any other manner.

Requirements of any Addendum issued before Competitive Sealed Proposals are to be received need to be covered in the proposal and, in executing the Contract; the Addenda so issued shall become a part of the Contract Documents.

Established Plan Rooms to which the Architect will issue construction documents include:

AGC OF AMERICA
Rio Grande Valley Chapter
Main Office and Plan Room
6918 W. Expressway 83 (P. O. Box 391-78551)
Harlingen, TX 78520
Phone: (956) 423-4091
Fax: (956) 423-0174

DODGE DATA (ON LINE SERVICE) – www.construction.com

SUBSTITUTIONS

The materials, products and equipment described in the Construction Documents establish a standard of required function, dimension, appearance and quality. Substitutions will be considered or approved prior to receipt of Proposals.

SUBMISSION OF PROPOSALS

Sealed, written Proposals, addressed to Mrs. Delia Rodriguez, Interim Purchasing Administrator will be received at:

BROWNSVILLE IND. SCHOOL DISTRICT
ADMINISTRATION OF PURCHASING OFFICE
1900 E. PRICE ROAD, 1st Floor, Ste 107
BROWNSVILLE, TEXAS 78521

Until 4:00 p.m. Thursday, July 11, 2019, any Competitive Sealed Proposals received after the hour named will be subject to rejection.

Properly identified Competitive Sealed Proposals will be opened and read aloud at 4:15 p.m. on Thursday, July 11, 2019. An abstract of the Proposals will be made available to Proposer.

Proposer must submit four (4) Proposals (one original and four copies) on the uniform Competitive Sealed Proposals forms provided by Architects. Amounts, where indicated, must be stated in figures as well as words.

In case of a difference in written words and figures in a Competitive Sealed Proposals, the amount stated in written words shall govern.

Mailed Competitive Sealed Proposals shall be addressed to the Owner at the above address and shall be clearly marked "HOLD FOR PROPOSALS OPENING - BROWNSVILLE IND. SCHOOL DISTRICT HANNA ECHS NEW GYMNASIUM FACILITY CSP NO. 20-110."

Submit Competitive Sealed Proposals in an opaque, sealed envelope and/or box identified with project name and name of Proposer.

The Competitive Sealed Proposals must include the legal name of the Proposer and must be signed by a person or persons legally authorized to bind the Proposal to a contract. A Proposal by a corporation shall further include the state of incorporation and have the corporate seal affixed.

No Competitive Sealed Proposals may be modified after same has been submitted. A Competitive Sealed Proposal may be withdrawn, however, and resubmitted any time prior to the time set for receipt of the Competitive Sealed Proposals. Oral, telephonic or telegraphic Competitive Sealed Proposals and/or modifications will not receive consideration.

Owner reserves the right to reject any and/or all Competitive Sealed Proposals, to disregard any informality in any Competitive Sealed Proposals and accept the Competitive Sealed Proposal which, in the Owner's judgment, is in the Owner's own best interest.

Competitive Sealed Proposals shall be subject to Owner's acceptance for a period of sixty (60) calendar days from date of receipt of Competitive Sealed Proposals.

PROPOSALS SECURITY

The Proposers shall deposit with the Competitive Sealed Proposals a Cashier's or Certified Check or Bond executed by a satisfactory Treasury Listed Surety Company, in amount of FIVE (5%) PERCENT of the amount of the largest possible total Competitive Sealed Proposal, made payable to Owner, guaranteeing that if the work is awarded to the Proposer on the basis of the Proposers Competitive Sealed Proposal, the Proposer will execute satisfactory Contract and any required Bonds within a period of ten days after Contract is awarded. The Owner may retain the proposals security deposit until (a) the Contract and required bonds have been executed, or (b) the specified time has elapsed so that Competitive Sealed Proposals may be withdrawn, or (c) the Competitive Sealed Proposals has been rejected.

CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATION

Proposers shall submit evidence in the form of a Contractor's Qualification Statement of compliance with the following requirements:

1) Proposers shall have completed two projects of similar scope and complexity within the past two years.

2) Proposers shall have an established office in Texas with at least five years of experience.

3) Proposers shall be able to execute 15% of the work using their own staff.

4) Proposers shall provide financial statements for the last three (3) years.

Proposers shall submit with their Competitive Sealed Proposal in the same envelope a Contractor's Qualification statement, fully executed and indicating compliance with the above qualifications, on an original American Institute of Architects Document A305, 1986 Edition. Photo copies of facsimiles of original forms will not be acceptable.

The Owner will evaluate and consider, in the qualifications and acceptance of the Proposers, all information relevant to his interests and requirements, as provided on the Contractor's Qualifications Statement and any information on past work from references provided therein. The Owner reserves the right to qualify or disqualify any Competitive Sealed Proposal based on any information provided for Contractor's Qualification, in any names permitted by applicable law.

BONDS REQUIRED

Contractor will be required to provide Performance Bond and Payment Bond, each in the amount of 100% of the Contract Amount, issued by treasury listed sureties duly authorized and submitted to do business in the State of Texas and licensed by the State of Texas.

PREVAILING WAGES

Contractor will be required to comply with provisions of V.T.C.A., Government Code 2258.001 et. Seq., and rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. The prevailing wage rate schedule will be issued with the Construction Documents.

EXAMINATION SITE

Proposer will be held responsible to have examined the premises and become familiar with the existing conditions under which the Contractor will be obliged to operate and to have correlated the Proposers personal observations with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

In case Proposer finds any discrepancy between conditions at the site and requirements of these Drawings and Specifications, the Proposer shall so notify the Architect and Architect will issue any required revisions to the Construction Documents by written Addendum as described hereinbefore.

TIME OF COMPLETION

Contractor to specify the amount of calendar days needed to complete the project. No rain days will be allowed other than the normal rain days for Brownsville, Texas, except for unusual circumstances.

The Work to be performed under this Contract shall be commenced and substantially completed by the date as stated on the Proposal Form, or by such dates thereafter as may be established in any written extensions granted under Article 8 of the General Conditions. The parties hereto agree that time is of the essence of this contract and that the pecuniary damages

which would be suffered by the Owner, if the Contractor does not complete all work called for in the contract documents by the specified date, are in their very nature difficult of ascertainment.

It is therefore expressly agreed as a part of the consideration inducing the Owner to execute this contract that the Owner may deduct from the final payment made to the Contractor a sum equal to $1,000.00 per calendar day for each and every calendar day beyond the agreed date which the Contractor shall require for Substantial Completion of the work included in this contract. It is expressly understood that the said sum per day is agreed upon as a fair estimate of the pecuniary damages which will be sustained by the Owner in the event that the work is not completed within the agreed time, or within the legally extended time, if any, otherwise provided for herein. Said sum shall be considered as liquidated damages only and in no sense shall be considered a penalty, said damage being caused by additional compensation to personnel, for loss of interest on money and other miscellaneous increased costs, all of which are difficult of exact ascertainment.

Any disruption, all or in, unless as agreed to beforehand or as terms of this contract, will also be subject to a sum equal to $500.00 per calendar day for liquidated damages until the said disruption is rectified and use of the facility is returned to the Owner in its previous condition.

Failure to complete and close-out project 60 days after Substantial Completion will result in liquidated damages being assessed in the amount of $500.00 per calendar day until close-out occurs.

The parties agree that: (1) the amount of liquidated damages bears reasonable proportion to the probable loss by the District; (2) the amount of District's actual loss is incapable or difficult of precise estimation. Contractor herein stipulated to the reasonableness of Districts liquidated damages, that the amount fixed is not plainly or grossly disproportionate to the Districts probable loss. Liquidated damages may be assessed by the District by making a deduction on the Certificate for Payment. The amount deducted will be itemized on the certificate. Liquidated damages may be automatically withheld from the progress payment for each day the project is beyond the Contract time.

SUB-CONTRACTORS & SUPPLIERS

Proposer shall include with his proposal a list of Sub-Contractors and Material Suppliers (per list furnished by Architect) which are proposed to be used on the project. The list shall be plainly identified as to the content, project name and Proposers name.

FORM OF CONTRACT

The Agreement for the Work will be written on Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor (AIA Document A101, 2017 Edition), and as may be amended.

CONSIDERATION OF COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSALS

A. Properly identified Competitive Sealed Proposals received on time will be considered.
B. The Owner shall have the right to reject any or all Competitive Sealed Proposals and in particular to reject a Competitive Sealed Proposal not accompanied by any required

security bond or data required by the Contract Documents or in any way incomplete or irregular.

C. The Owner shall have the right to waive any formality or irregularity in any Competitive Sealed Proposals received.
D. If the Owner accepts any Alternates, the Owner shall have the right to accept them in any order or combination.
E. It is the intent of the Owner to award a contract to the offeror submitting the Competitive Sealed Proposals providing the "best value" to the district provided the Competitive Sealed Proposal has been submitted in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, selection criteria and adopted by the Owner.
F. Award of Contract may include full consideration of Unit Prices and Alternates if any. Owner may accept or reject any or all alternates if any.
G. The selection of Building Contractors will be based on the enclosed BISD Delegation of Authority Regarding Procurement of Construction Services (7 pages).
H. Contractor may provide supplemental information to support selection criteria, if requested by the Owner. The support information will not be disclosed to other Offerors.
I. The estimated budget is: $10,000,000.00.

LOCATION AND ACCESS TO PREMISES

A. The project site is 2615 E. Price Rd., Brownsville, TX 78521.

B. The offeror shall have free access to the premises for the purpose of acquainting himself with the conditions, delivering equipment, and performing the work necessary to fulfill the contract. Offeror shall cooperate with the other contractors who may concurrently be working on the premises, integrating his work with that of others, all to the best interest of the total work and its orderly completion.

STATE SALES TAX

A. This project is exempt from state taxes. A sales tax exemption certificate may be obtained from the State Comptroller.

END OF SECTION

AIA® Document A701™ – 1997

Instructions to Bidders

for the following PROJECT:
(Name and location or address)
Brownsville Ind. School District
Hanna Early College High School New Gymnasium Facility
Brownsville, Texas

THE OWNER:
(Name, legal status and address)
Brownsville Ind. School District
1900 E. Price Rd.
Brownsville, Texas 78521

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

THE ARCHITECT:
(Name, legal status and address)
Gomez Mendez Saenz, Inc.
1150 Paredes Line Rd.
Brownsville, Texas 78521

TABLE OF ARTICLES

ARTICLE 1 DEFINITIONS

§ 1.1 Bidding Documents include the Bidding Requirements and the proposed Contract Documents. The Bidding Requirements consist of the Advertisement or Invitation to Bid, Instructions to Bidders, Supplementary Instructions to Bidders, the bid form, and other sample bidding and contract forms. The proposed Contract Documents consist of the form of Agreement between the Owner and Contractor, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications and all Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract.

§ 1.2 Definitions set forth in the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, AIA Document A201, or in other Contract Documents are applicable to the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.3 Addenda are written or graphic instruments issued by the Architect prior to the execution of the Contract which modify or interpret the Bidding Documents by additions, deletions, clarifications or corrections.

§ 1.4 A Bid is a complete and properly executed proposal to do the Work for the sums stipulated therein, submitted in accordance with the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.5 The Base Bid is the sum stated in the Bid for which the Bidder offers to perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents as the base, to which Work may be added or from which Work may be deleted for sums stated in Alternate Bids.

§ 1.6 An Alternate Bid (or Alternate) is an amount stated in the Bid to be added to or deducted from the amount of the Base Bid if the corresponding change in the Work, as described in the Bidding Documents, is accepted.

§ 1.7 A Unit Price is an amount stated in the Bid as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment or services or a portion of the Work as described in the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.8 A Bidder is a person or entity who submits a Bid and who meets the requirements set forth in the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.9 A Sub-bidder is a person or entity who submits a bid to a Bidder for materials, equipment or labor for a portion of the Work.

ARTICLE 2 BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS

§ 2.1 The Bidder by making a Bid represents that:

§ 2.1.1 The Bidder has read and understands the Bidding Documents or Contract Documents, to the extent that such documentation relates to the Work for which the Bid is submitted, and for other portions of the Project, if any, being bid concurrently or presently under construction.

§ 2.1.2 The Bid is made in compliance with the Bidding Documents.

§ 2.1.3 The Bidder has visited the site, become familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed and has correlated the Bidder's personal observations with the requirements of the proposed Contract Documents.

§ 2.1.4 The Bid is based upon the materials, equipment and systems required by the Bidding Documents without exception.

ARTICLE 3 BIDDING DOCUMENTS

§ 3.1 COPIES

§ 3.1.1 Bidders may obtain complete sets of the Bidding Documents from the issuing office designated in the Advertisement or Invitation to Bid in the number and for the deposit sum, if any, stated therein. The deposit will be refunded to Bidders who submit a bona fide Bid and return the Bidding Documents in good condition within ten days after receipt of Bids. The cost of replacement of missing or damaged documents will be deducted from the deposit. A Bidder receiving a Contract award may retain the Bidding Documents and the Bidder's deposit will be refunded.

§ 3.1.2 Bidding Documents will not be issued directly to Sub-bidders unless specifically offered in the Advertisement or Invitation to Bid, or in supplementary instructions to bidders.

§ 3.1.3 Bidders shall use complete sets of Bidding Documents in preparing Bids; neither the Owner nor Architect assumes responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete sets of Bidding Documents.

§ 3.1.4 The Owner and Architect may make copies of the Bidding Documents available on the above terms for the purpose of obtaining Bids on the Work. No license or grant of use is conferred by issuance of copies of the Bidding Documents.

§ 3.2 INTERPRETATION OR CORRECTION OF BIDDING DOCUMENTS

§ 3.2.1 The Bidder shall carefully study and compare the Bidding Documents with each other, and with other work being bid concurrently or presently under construction to the extent that it relates to the Work for which the Bid is submitted, shall examine the site and local conditions, and shall at once report to the Architect errors, inconsistencies or ambiguities discovered.

§ 3.2.2 Bidders and Sub-bidders requiring clarification or interpretation of the Bidding Documents shall make a written request which shall reach the Architect at least seven days prior to the date for receipt of Bids.

§ 3.2.3 Interpretations, corrections and changes of the Bidding Documents will be made by Addendum. Interpretations, corrections and changes of the Bidding Documents made in any other manner will not be binding, and Bidders shall not rely upon them.

§ 3.3 SUBSTITUTIONS

§ 3.3.1 The materials, products and equipment described in the Bidding Documents establish a standard of required function, dimension, appearance and quality to be met by any proposed substitution.

§ 3.3.2 No substitution will be considered prior to receipt of Bids unless written request for approval has been received by the Architect at least ten days prior to the date for receipt of Bids. Such requests shall include the name of the material or equipment for which it is to be substituted and a complete description of the proposed substitution including drawings, performance and test data, and other information necessary for an evaluation. A statement setting forth changes in other materials, equipment or other portions of the Work, including changes in the work of other contracts that incorporation of the proposed substitution would require, shall be included. The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitution is upon the proposer. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution shall be final.

§ 3.3.3 If the Architect approves a proposed substitution prior to receipt of Bids, such approval will be set forth in an Addendum. Bidders shall not rely upon approvals made in any other manner.

§ 3.3.4 No substitutions will be considered after the Contract award unless specifically provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.4 ADDENDA

§ 3.4.1 Addenda will be transmitted to all who are known by the issuing office to have received a complete set of Bidding Documents.

§ 3.4.2 Copies of Addenda will be made available for inspection wherever Bidding Documents are on file for that purpose.

§ 3.4.3 Addenda will be issued no later than four days prior to the date for receipt of Bids except an Addendum withdrawing the request for Bids or one which includes postponement of the date for receipt of Bids.

§ 3.4.4 Each Bidder shall ascertain prior to submitting a Bid that the Bidder has received all Addenda issued, and the Bidder shall acknowledge their receipt in the Bid.

ARTICLE 4 BIDDING PROCEDURES

§ 4.1 PREPARATION OF BIDS

§ 4.1.1 Bids shall be submitted on the forms included with the Bidding Documents.

§ 4.1.2 All blanks on the bid form shall be legibly executed in a non-erasable medium.

§ 4.1.3 Sums shall be expressed in both words and figures. In case of discrepancy, the amount written in words shall govern.

§ 4.1.4 Interlineations, alterations and erasures must be initialed by the signer of the Bid.

§ 4.1.5 All requested Alternates shall be bid. If no change in the Base Bid is required, enter "No Change."

§ 4.1.6 Where two or more Bids for designated portions of the Work have been requested, the Bidder may, without forfeiture of the bid security, state the Bidder's refusal to accept award of less than the combination of Bids stipulated by the Bidder. The Bidder shall make no additional stipulations on the bid form nor qualify the Bid in any other manner.

§ 4.1.7 Each copy of the Bid shall state the legal name of the Bidder and the nature of legal form of the Bidder. The Bidder shall provide evidence of legal authority to perform within the jurisdiction of the Work. Each copy shall be signed by the person or persons legally authorized to bind the Bidder to a contract. A Bid by a corporation shall further give the state of incorporation and have the corporate seal affixed. A Bid submitted by an agent shall have a current power of attorney attached certifying the agent's authority to bind the Bidder.

§ 4.2 BID SECURITY

§ 4.2.1 Each Bid shall be accompanied by a bid security in the form and amount required if so stipulated in the Instructions to Bidders. The Bidder pledges to enter into a Contract with the Owner on the terms stated in the Bid and will, if required, furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder. Should the Bidder refuse to enter into such Contract or fail to furnish such bonds if required, the amount of the bid security shall be forfeited to the Owner as liquidated damages, not as a penalty. The amount of the bid security shall not be forfeited to the Owner in the event the Owner fails to comply with Section 6.2.

§ 4.2.2 If a surety bond is required, it shall be written on AIA Document A310, Bid Bond, unless otherwise provided in the Bidding Documents, and the attorney-in-fact who executes the bond on behalf of the surety shall affix to the bond a certified and current copy of the power of attorney.

§ 4.2.3 The Owner will have the right to retain the bid security of Bidders to whom an award is being considered until either (a) the Contract has been executed and bonds, if required, have been furnished, or (b) the specified time has elapsed so that Bids may be withdrawn or (c) all Bids have been rejected.

§ 4.3 SUBMISSION OF BIDS

§ 4.3.1 All copies of the Bid, the bid security, if any, and any other documents required to be submitted with the Bid shall be enclosed in a sealed opaque envelope. The envelope shall be addressed to the party receiving the Bids and shall be identified with the Project name, the Bidder's name and address and, if applicable, the designated portion of the Work for which the Bid is submitted. If the Bid is sent by mail, the sealed envelope shall be enclosed in a separate mailing envelope with the notation "SEALED BID ENCLOSED" on the face thereof.

§ 4.3.2 Bids shall be deposited at the designated location prior to the time and date for receipt of Bids. Bids received after the time and date for receipt of Bids will be returned unopened.

§ 4.3.3 The Bidder shall assume full responsibility for timely delivery at the location designated for receipt of Bids.

§ 4.3.4 Oral, telephonic, telegraphic, facsimile or other electronically transmitted bids will not be considered.

§ 4.4 MODIFICATION OR WITHDRAWAL OF BID

§ 4.4.1 A Bid may not be modified, withdrawn or canceled by the Bidder during the stipulated time period following the time and date designated for the receipt of Bids, and each Bidder so agrees in submitting a Bid.

§ 4.4.2 Prior to the time and date designated for receipt of Bids, a Bid submitted may be modified or withdrawn by notice to the party receiving Bids at the place designated for receipt of Bids. Such notice shall be in writing over the signature of the Bidder. Written confirmation over the signature of the Bidder shall be received, and date- and time-stamped by the receiving party on or before the date and time set for receipt of Bids. A change shall be so worded as not to reveal the amount of the original Bid.

§ 4.4.3 Withdrawn Bids may be resubmitted up to the date and time designated for the receipt of Bids provided that they are then fully in conformance with these Instructions to Bidders.

§ 4.4.4 Bid security, if required, shall be in an amount sufficient for the Bid as resubmitted.

ARTICLE 5 CONSIDERATION OF BIDS

§ 5.1 OPENING OF BIDS

At the discretion of the Owner, if stipulated in the Advertisement or Invitation to Bid, the properly identified Bids received on time will be publicly opened and will be read aloud. An abstract of the Bids may be made available to Bidders.

§ 5.2 REJECTION OF BIDS

The Owner shall have the right to reject any or all Bids. A Bid not accompanied by a required bid security or by other data required by the Bidding Documents, or a Bid which is in any way incomplete or irregular is subject to rejection.

§ 5.3 ACCEPTANCE OF BID (AWARD)

§ 5.3.1 It is the intent of the Owner to award a Contract to the lowest qualified Bidder provided the Bid has been submitted in accordance with the requirements of the Bidding Documents and does not exceed the funds available. The Owner shall have the right to waive informalities and irregularities in a Bid received and to accept the Bid which, in the Owner's judgment, is in the Owner's own best interests.

§ 5.3.2 The Owner shall have the right to accept Alternates in any order or combination, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Bidding Documents, and to determine the low Bidder on the basis of the sum of the Base Bid and Alternates accepted.

ARTICLE 6 POST-BID INFORMATION

§ 6.1 CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATION STATEMENT

Bidders to whom award of a Contract is under consideration shall submit to the Architect, upon request, a properly executed AIA Document A305, Contractor's Qualification Statement, unless such a Statement has been previously required and submitted as a prerequisite to the issuance of Bidding Documents.

§ 6.2 OWNER'S FINANCIAL CAPABILITY

The Owner shall, at the request of the Bidder to whom award of a Contract is under consideration and no later than seven days prior to the expiration of the time for withdrawal of Bids, furnish to the Bidder reasonable evidence that financial arrangements have been made to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. Unless such reasonable evidence is furnished, the Bidder will not be required to execute the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

§ 6.3 SUBMITTALS

§ 6.3.1 The Bidder shall, as soon as practicable or as stipulated in the Bidding Documents, after notification of selection for the award of a Contract, furnish to the Owner through the Architect in writing:

.1 a designation of the Work to be performed with the Bidder's own forces;

.2 names of the manufacturers, products, and the suppliers of principal items or systems of materials and equipment proposed for the Work; and

.3 names of persons or entities (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for the principal portions of the Work.

§ 6.3.2 The Bidder will be required to establish to the satisfaction of the Architect and Owner the reliability and responsibility of the persons or entities proposed to furnish and perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents.

§ 6.3.3 Prior to the execution of the Contract, the Architect will notify the Bidder in writing if either the Owner or Architect, after due investigation, has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Bidder. If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a proposed person or entity, the Bidder may, at the Bidder's option, (1) withdraw the Bid or (2) submit an acceptable substitute person or entity with an adjustment in the Base Bid or Alternate Bid to cover the difference in cost occasioned by such substitution. The Owner may accept the adjusted bid price or disqualify the Bidder. In the event of either withdrawal or disqualification, bid security will not be forfeited.

§ 6.3.4 Persons and entities proposed by the Bidder and to whom the Owner and Architect have made no reasonable objection must be used on the Work for which they were proposed and shall not be changed except with the written consent of the Owner and Architect.

ARTICLE 7 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND

§ 7.1 BOND REQUIREMENTS

§ 7.1.1 If stipulated in the Bidding Documents, the Bidder shall furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder. Bonds may be secured through the Bidder's usual sources.

§ 7.1.2 If the furnishing of such bonds is stipulated in the Bidding Documents, the cost shall be included in the Bid. If the furnishing of such bonds is required after receipt of bids and before execution of the Contract, the cost of such bonds shall be added to the Bid in determining the Contract Sum.

§ 7.1.3 If the Owner requires that bonds be secured from other than the Bidder's usual sources, changes in cost will be adjusted as provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 7.2 TIME OF DELIVERY AND FORM OF BONDS

§ 7.2.1 The Bidder shall deliver the required bonds to the Owner not later than three days following the date of execution of the Contract. If the Work is to be commenced prior thereto in response to a letter of intent, the Bidder shall, prior to commencement of the Work, submit evidence satisfactory to the Owner that such bonds will be furnished and delivered in accordance with this Section 7.2.1.

§ 7.2.2 Unless otherwise provided, the bonds shall be written on AIA Document A312, Performance Bond and Payment Bond. Both bonds shall be written in the amount of the Contract Sum.

§ 7.2.3 The bonds shall be dated on or after the date of the Contract.

§ 7.2.4 The Bidder shall require the attorney-in-fact who executes the required bonds on behalf of the surety to affix thereto a certified and current copy of the power of attorney.

ARTICLE 8 FORM OF AGREEMENT BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRACTOR

Unless otherwise required in the Bidding Documents, the Agreement for the Work will be written on AIA Document A101, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor Where the Basis of Payment Is a Stipulated Sum.

SUPPLEMENT TO INSTRUCTION TO BIDDERS (A701)

ADD TO ART. 3.1.1 TWO (2) COMPLETE SETS OF BID DOCUMENTS (DRAWINGS & SPECIFICATIONS) may be obtained from the Architects by PRIME BIDDERS. Additional full sets (if available) may be obtained by bonafide Bidders and Suppliers or Sub-Contract Bidders upon receipt of actual cost of printing which shall not be refunded.

ADD ART. 3.2.1.1 EXAMINATION OF SITE
Bidder will be held responsible to have examined the premises and become familiar with the existing conditions under which the Contractor will be obliged to operate and that will in any manner affect the work under this Contract. Should an error in the Drawings or specifications become known to the Bidder, he shall so notify the Architect, in writing before opening of bids and Architect will issue any required revisions to the Bid Documents by written Addendum as described herein before.

ADD ART. 3.2.4.1 In the event of a conflict between the plans and specifications, which is not resolved by addenda, the bidder is to bid the most expensive item.

ADD ART. 3.2.5 No interpretation of the meaning of the plans, specifications or other pre-bid documents will be made to any bidder orally.

ADD ART. 3.4.5 Failure of any bidder to receive any such addendum or interpretation shall not relieve such bidder from any obligation under his bid as submitted or compliance with all items covered in the addendum. All addenda so issued shall become part of the contract documents.

ADD TO ART. 4.1.1 Submit Bid (in triplicate) on the uniform Bid forms prepared by Architects. Amounts, where indicated, must be stated in figures as well as words; and Bids must be signed by Bidder, with the full name if an individual; and the Corporate name with the name of the Executive Officer, attested by the Secretary, if a Corporation; and with the firm name and by at least one of the partners if a Partnership.

ADD TO ART. 4.2.1 All proposals shall be accompanied by cashier or certified check or bidder's bond in the amount of five percent (5%) payable to the Owner without recourse to the Owner. Bids without check or bid bond inadequate amounts will not be considered.

ADD ART. 4.3.5 In case of a difference in written words and figures in a Bid, the amount stated in written words shall govern.

ADD ART. 6.1.2 Qualification of Bidder: The Owner may make such investigations as he deems necessary to determine the ability of the bidder to perform the work, and the bidder shall furnish to the Owner all such information and data for this purpose as the Owner may request. The Owner reserves the right to reject any bid if the evidence submitted by, or investigation of, such bidder fails to satisfy the Owner that such bidder is properly qualified to carry out the obligations of the contract and to complete the work contemplated therein.

ADD ART. 6.1.3 The successful bidder shall submit with his performance and payment bonds a list of all subcontractors and the name of the Job Superintendent and his qualifications.

ADD TO ART. 6.2 Subcontracts: The bidder is specifically advised that any person, firm or other party to whom it is proposed to award a subcontract under this contract must be acceptable to the Owner and to the Architect.

ADD TO ART. 7.1.1. SECURITY - Acceptable security of 5% and construction security of 100% is required as per Instructions to Bidders. To be acceptable to the Owner, Bidders Bonds shall be from a surety listed in the latest Department of Treasury, Dept. Circular 570; 2018 Revision; listing COMPANIES HOLDING CERTIFICATES OF AUTHORITY AS ACCEPTABLE SURETIES ON FEDERAL BONDS AND AS ACCEPTABLE REINSURING COMPANIES, effective July 1, 2018. A copy of this Federal Register is on hand in the Architect's Office and may be inspected upon request.

"In the event the listed bonding company is not listed in the latest Dept. Circular 570; 2018 Revision as an acceptable surety, the following should be supplied:

The Company shall supply a certificate from the State Board of Insurance which states the amount of the allowed capital and surplus as of the date of the last annual statutory financial statement for the surety company for the bond for each bidder.

In the event the amount of the bond is in excess of 10% of the surety company's capital and surplus, the surety company is to provide written certification from the State Board of Insurance that the surety company has reinsured the portion of the risk that exceeds 10% of the surety company's capital and surplus with one or more reinsurers who are duly authorized, accredited, or trustee to do business in the state. The certification shall further provide that the reinsurers in question are indeed authorized, accredited, and trustee to do business in this state."

ADD TO ART. 8.1.1The successful bidder must furnish performance and payment bonds upon the forms which are attached hereto in the amount of 100% of the contract price from an approved surety company holding a permit from the State of Texas to act as surety (and acceptable according to the latest list of companies holding certificates of authority from the Secretary of Treasury of the United States) or other surety or sureties acceptable to the Owner.

ADD TO ART. 9.1 NOTICE OF SPECIAL CONDITIONS: Attention is particularly called to those parts of the contract documents and specifications which deal with the following:

A. Inspection and testing of materials
B. Insurance requirements
C. Stated Allowances
D. Coordination of work by others
E. Coordination of work site with others.

COMPETITIVE BID PROPOSAL FORM
(GENERAL CONTRACT)

Project: Brownsville Ind. School District Hanna ECHS New Gymnasium Facility CSP No. 20-110
Place: Mrs. Delia Rodriguez, Interim Purchasing Administrator, 1900 E. Price Rd. Suite 107, Brownsville, Texas 78521-2417
Date: July 11, 2019
Submission Time: 4:00 p.m.
Opening Time: 4:15 p.m.

1. Pursuant to and in compliance with the Invitation to Bid and the proposed Contract Documents, prepared by Gomez Mendez Saenz, Inc. relating to the above referenced project, the undersigned, having become thoroughly familiar with the terms and conditions of the proposed Contract Documents and with local conditions affecting the performance and costs of the work at the place where the work is to be completed, and having fully inspected the site in all particulars, hereby proposes and agrees to fully perform the work within the time stated and in strict accordance with the proposed Contract Documents, and addenda, thereto, including furnishing of any and all labor and materials for all General Construction and Site Work, for the following sum of money:

A. BASE BID:
All labor, materials, services and equipment, necessary for completion of the work shown on the drawings and described in the specifications. _____

_____

_____DOLLARS ($)

B. ALTERNATES:
All labor, materials, services and equipment, necessary for completion of the work shown on the drawings and in the specifications.

Alternate No. 1: Provide Center Court hung scoreboard as indicated in drawings and specifications.

_____

_____DOLLARS ($)

Alternate No. 2: Provide asphalt overlay at existing parking lot as indicated in drawings and specifications. _____

_____DOLLARS ($)

2. If awarded this Contract the undersigned will execute a satisfactory Construction Contract, Performance Bond, Labor and Material Payment Bond and proof of insurance coverage, with the Owner for the entire work as per the Contract Documents within 10 days after notice of award. It is agreed that this proposal is subjected to the Owner's acceptance for a period of Thirty (30) days from the above date.

3. Contractor will require _____ calendar days to substantially complete the project.

4. Enclosed is a Certified Check or Bidders Bond in the amount of $_____ in compliance with the specification requirements. (5% of the highest amount bid).

The above check or Bidders Bond is to become the property of the Owner in the event the Construction Contract (when offered by the Owner) and the bonds and proof of insurance coverage are not executed within the time set forth above.

5. The undersigned agrees to the following:

A. To furnish all materials as shown and specified in the plans and specifications.

B. To start work immediately after receiving a building permit.

C. To work _____ working days per week.

6. The full amount of all allowances as specified in the General Requirements, Division 1, of the specifications, in the Base Proposal price shown.

7. Receipt is acknowledged of the following addendas:

No.	Dated	No.	Dated
No.	Dated	No.	Dated
No.	Dated	No.	Dated

8. Bidder agrees that the Owner has the right to accept or reject any or all bids and to waive all informalities.

9. A list of Sub-Contractors and Materials Suppliers which are proposed to be used on this project is included with this proposal in a separate envelope. Upon acceptance of proposal, substitution of Sub-Contractors or Suppliers listed may be made only with approval by the Owner.

10. By signing, bidder acknowledges that **ALL ALLOWANCES** have been included in the Base Bid.

Respectfully submitted,

_____

CONTRACTOR

(SEAL: - if Bid is by a Corporation)

Signature: _____

Printed Name, Title: _____

Address: _____

Street or Box City State Zip

Telephone: (____) _____

Fax: (____) _____

FILL IN APPLICABLE INFORMATION:

A CORPORATION, Chartered in the STATE of _____, authorized to do business in the State of TEXAS

A PARTNERSHIP composed of: _____

AN INDIVIDUAL, operating under the name of: _____

List of Sub-Contractors may be submitted at the time of Bid or within 48 hours after Bid. If not sure on certain trades, please provide list of potential subcontractors. Do not leave blank. Email list to dmonreal@gmsarchitects.com If lists are not received within 48 hours after bid, no points will be received for this section.

LIST OF PROPOSED SUB-CONTRACTORS/SUPPLIERS

PROJECT: BROWNSVILLE ISD HANNA ECHS NEW GYMNASIUM FACILITY CSP NO. 20-110

BIDDER: _____ DATE: _____

ITEM	NAME OF SUB-CONTRACTOR/SUPPLIER (As applicable)
PERFORMANCE-PAYMENT BONDS	
EARTHWORK	
IRRIGATION	
LANDSCAPING	
TERMITE CONTROL	
CONCRETE WALKS, CURBS AND PAVING	
METAL CANOPIES	
CONCRETE (CAST-IN-PLACE)	
UNIT MASONRY	
STONEWORK	
STRUCTURAL STEEL	
STEEL JOISTS	
STEEL DECKING	
LIGHTGAUGE METAL FRAMING	
METAL FABRICATIONS	
ROUGH CARPENTRY	
ARCHITECTURAL WOOD WORK	
BITUMINOUS WATERPROOFING	
INSULATION	
MODIFIED BITUMINOUS ROOFING SYSTEM	
FLASHING & SHEET METAL	
PREFORMED METAL ROOFING	
JOINT SEALERS	
STEEL DOORS	
FLUSH WOOD DOORS	
ALUMINUM DOORS & FRAMES	
FINISH HARDWARE	
GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALL	
GLASS & GLAZING	
ACCESS DOORS	
OVERHEAD GRILLE DOORS	
LATH & PLASTER	
GYPSUM DRYWALL	
TILE	
ACOUSTIC CEILINGS	
RESILIENT FLOORING	
CARPETING	
PAINTING	
TOILET PARTITIONS	
MOBILE STORAGE SHELVING	
DIVISION 10 SPECIALTIES	
DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT	
AUDITORIUM SEATING	
AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEMS	
SOUND REINFORCEMENT SYSTEM	
MECHANICAL	
ELECTRICAL	
TEMPERATURE CONTROLS	

AIA® Document A201™ – 2017

General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

for the following PROJECT:
(Name and location or address)

Brownsville Ind. School District
Hanna Early College High School New Gymnasium Facility
Brownsville, Texas

THE OWNER:
(Name, legal status and address)

Brownsville Ind. School District
1900 E. Price Rd.
Brownsville, Texas 78521

THE ARCHITECT:
(Name, legal status and address)

Gomez Mendez Saenz, Inc.
1150 Paredes Line Rd.
Brownsville, Texas 78521

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

For guidance in modifying this document to include supplementary conditions, see AIA Document A503™, Guide for Supplementary Conditions.

TABLE OF ARTICLES

Init.
/

15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

INDEX
(Topics and numbers in bold are Section headings.)

ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

§ 1.1 Basic Definitions

§ 1.1.1 The Contract Documents

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements.

§ 1.1.2 The Contract

The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.

§ 1.1.3 The Work

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

§ 1.1.4 The Project

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and by Separate Contractors.

§ 1.1.5 The Drawings

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

§ 1.1.6 The Specifications

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

§ 1.1.7 Instruments of Service

Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

§ 1.1.8 Initial Decision Maker

The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2. The Initial Decision Maker shall not show partiality to the Owner or Contractor and shall not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

§ 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents

§ 1.2.1 The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

§ 1.2.1.1 The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Contract.

§ 1.2.2 Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

§ 1.2.3 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

§ 1.3 Capitalization

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles, or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

§ 1.4 Interpretation

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

§ 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service

§ 1.5.1 The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect's or Architect's consultants' reserved rights.

§ 1.5.2 The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Sections 1.7 and 1.8, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants.

§ 1.6 Notice

§ 1.6.1 Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be provided in writing to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed and shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person, by mail, by courier, or by electronic transmission if a method for electronic transmission is set forth in the Agreement.

§ 1.6.2 Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.

§ 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission

The parties shall agree upon protocols governing the transmission and use of Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form. The parties will use AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, to establish the protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of digital data.

§ 1.8 Building Information Models Use and Reliance

Any use of, or reliance on, all or a portion of a building information model without agreement to protocols governing the use of, and reliance on, the information contained in the model and without having those protocols set

forth in AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, and the requisite AIA Document G202™–2013, Project Building Information Modeling Protocol Form, shall be at the using or relying party's sole risk and without liability to the other party and its contractors or consultants, the authors of, or contributors to, the building information model, and each of their agents and employees.

ARTICLE 2 OWNER

§ 2.1 General

§ 2.1.1 The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

§ 2.1.2 The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor, within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of, or enforce mechanic's lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner's interest therein.

§ 2.2 Evidence of the Owner's Financial Arrangements

§ 2.2.1 Prior to commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence. If commencement of the Work is delayed under this Section 2.2.1, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately.

§ 2.2.2 Following commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract only if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due; or (3) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum. If the Owner fails to provide such evidence, as required, within fourteen days of the Contractor's request, the Contractor may immediately stop the Work and, in that event, shall notify the Owner that the Work has stopped. However, if the request is made because a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum under (3) above, the Contractor may immediately stop only that portion of the Work affected by the change until reasonable evidence is provided. If the Work is stopped under this Section 2.2.2, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 2.2.3 After the Owner furnishes evidence of financial arrangements under this Section 2.2, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.

§ 2.2.4 Where the Owner has designated information furnished under this Section 2.2 as "confidential," the Contractor shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person. However, the Contractor may disclose "confidential" information, after seven (7) days' notice to the Owner, where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order. The Contractor may also disclose "confidential" information to its employees, consultants, sureties, Subcontractors and their employees, Sub-subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.

§ 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner

§ 2.3.1 Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

§ 2.3.2 The Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture, or an entity lawfully practicing architecture, in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

§ 2.3.3 If the employment of the Architect terminates, the Owner shall employ a successor to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect.

§ 2.3.4 The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

§ 2.3.5 The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services.

§ 2.3.6 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

§ 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.

§ 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect and the Architect may, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. If current and future payments are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR

§ 3.1 General

§ 3.1.1 The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.

§ 3.1.2 The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 3.1.3 The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect in the Architect's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

§ 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor

§ 3.2.1 Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 3.2.2 Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.4, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.2.3 The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

§ 3.2.4 If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner, subject to Section 15.1.7, as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

§ 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures

§ 3.3.1 The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Owner and Architect, and shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. Unless the Architect objects to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.

§ 3.3.2 The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

§ 3.3.3 The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

§ 3.4 Labor and Materials

§ 3.4.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

§ 3.4.2 Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

§ 3.4.3 The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

§ 3.5 Warranty

§ 3.5.1 The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

§ 3.5.2 All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4.

§ 3.6 Taxes

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

§ 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

§ 3.7.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.

§ 3.7.2 The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

§ 3.7.3 If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

§ 3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions

If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 14 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.

§ 3.7.5 If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately

suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

§ 3.8 Allowances

§ 3.8.1 The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

§ 3.8.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

.1 allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;

.2 Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and

.3 whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

§ 3.8.3 Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner with reasonable promptness.

§ 3.9 Superintendent

§ 3.9.1 The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

§ 3.9.2 The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 3.9.3 The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

§ 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules

§ 3.10.1 The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project.

§ 3.10.2 The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, shall submit a submittal schedule for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

§ 3.10.3 The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

§ 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site

The Contractor shall make available, at the Project site, the Contract Documents, including Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Architect and Owner, and delivered to the Architect for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as constructed.

§ 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples

§ 3.12.1 Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

§ 3.12.2 Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

§ 3.12.3 Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

§ 3.12.4 Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate how the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

§ 3.12.5 The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Architect, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents, in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of Separate Contractors.

§ 3.12.6 By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner and Architect that the Contractor has (1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

§ 3.12.7 The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.

§ 3.12.8 The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Architect of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.

§ 3.12.9 The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.

§ 3.12.10 The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.

§ 3.12.10.1 If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the performance and design criteria provided in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by an appropriately licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.12.10.2 If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

§ 3.13 Use of Site

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

§ 3.14 Cutting and Patching

§ 3.14.1 The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

§ 3.14.2 The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a Separate Contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of the Separate Contractor. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Owner or a Separate Contractor, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

§ 3.15 Cleaning Up

§ 3.15.1 The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project.

§ 3.15.2 If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor.

§ 3.16 Access to Work

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

§ 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for defense or loss when a particular design, process, or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications, or other documents prepared by the Owner or Architect. However, if an infringement of a copyright or patent is discovered by, or made known to, the Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for the loss unless the information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

§ 3.18 Indemnification

§ 3.18.1 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss, or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section 3.18.

§ 3.18.2 In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Section 3.18.1 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT

§ 4.1 General

§ 4.1.1 The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.2 and identified as such in the Agreement.

§ 4.1.2 Duties, responsibilities, and limitations of authority of the Architect as set forth in the Contract Documents shall not be restricted, modified, or extended without written consent of the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

§ 4.2 Administration of the Contract

§ 4.2.1 The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.2 The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect will not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.3 On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents, (2) known deviations from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (3) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not

have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

§ 4.2.4 Communications

The Owner and Contractor shall include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. The Owner shall promptly notify the Architect of the substance of any direct communications between the Owner and the Contractor otherwise relating to the Project. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.

§ 4.2.5 Based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

§ 4.2.6 The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

§ 4.2.7 The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

§ 4.2.8 The Architect will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives, and may order minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.

§ 4.2.9 The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10; and issue a final Certificate for Payment pursuant to Section 9.10.

§ 4.2.10 If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more Project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the Project representatives.

§ 4.2.11 The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness.

§ 4.2.12 Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

§ 4.2.13 The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.14 The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

§ 5.1 Definitions

§ 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a Separate Contractor or the subcontractors of a Separate Contractor.

§ 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

§ 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

§ 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.3 If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

§ 5.2.4 The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

§ 5.3 Subcontractual Relations

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies, and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will

similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

§ 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts

§ 5.4.1 Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that

.1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor; and

.2 assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.

When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.

§ 5.4.2 Upon such assignment, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.

§ 5.4.3 Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

§ 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts

§ 6.1.1 The term "Separate Contractor(s)" shall mean other contractors retained by the Owner under separate agreements. The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors retained under Conditions of the Contract substantially similar to those of this Contract, including those provisions of the Conditions of the Contract related to insurance and waiver of subrogation.

§ 6.1.2 When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement.

§ 6.1.3 The Owner shall provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each Separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with any Separate Contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to its construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner until subsequently revised.

§ 6.1.4 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces or with Separate Contractors, the Owner or its Separate Contractors shall have the same obligations and rights that the Contractor has under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10, 11, and 12.

§ 6.2 Mutual Responsibility

§ 6.2.1 The Contractor shall afford the Owner and Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

§ 6.2.2 If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a Separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the

Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that are not apparent.

§ 6.2.3 The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a Separate Contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a Separate Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.

§ 6.2.4 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage that the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or Separate Contractor as provided in Section 10.2.5.

§ 6.2.5 The Owner and each Separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

§ 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the Architect will allocate the cost among those responsible.

ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

§ 7.1 General

§ 7.1.1 Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 7.1.2 A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone.

§ 7.1.3 Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work.

§ 7.2 Change Orders

§ 7.2.1 A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

.1 The change in the Work;
.2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and
.3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

§ 7.3 Construction Change Directives

§ 7.3.1 A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

§ 7.3.2 A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

§ 7.3.3 If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

.1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
.2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;

.3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or

.4 As provided in Section 7.3.4.

§ 7.3.4 If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:

.1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Architect;

.2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;

.3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;

.4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use, or similar taxes, directly related to the change; and

.5 Costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

§ 7.3.5 If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

§ 7.3.6 Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

§ 7.3.7 A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

§ 7.3.8 The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

§ 7.3.9 Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 7.3.10 When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

§ 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work

The Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor

change without prior notice to the Architect that such change will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time.

ARTICLE 8 TIME

§ 8.1 Definitions

§ 8.1.1 Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

§ 8.1.2 The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.

§ 8.1.3 The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.

§ 8.1.4 The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

§ 8.2 Progress and Completion

§ 8.2.1 Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

§ 8.2.2 The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, commence the Work prior to the effective date of insurance required to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner.

§ 8.2.3 The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

§ 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time

§ 8.3.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, of an employee of either, or of a Separate Contractor; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control; (4) by delay authorized by the Owner pending mediation and binding dispute resolution; or (5) by other causes that the Contractor asserts, and the Architect determines, justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine.

§ 8.3.2 Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

§ 8.3.3 This Section 8.3 does not preclude recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

§ 9.1 Contract Sum

§ 9.1.1 The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

§ 9.1.2 If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

§ 9.2 Schedule of Values

Where the Contract is based on a stipulated sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Architect before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Architect. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Architect and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require, and unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's subsequent Applications for Payment.

§ 9.3 Applications for Payment

§ 9.3.1 At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work. The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases and waivers of liens from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.3.1.1 As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.

§ 9.3.1.2 Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or supplier, unless such Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.

§ 9.3.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site, for such materials and equipment stored off the site.

§ 9.3.3 The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work.

§ 9.4 Certificates for Payment

§ 9.4.1 The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either (1) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Application for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; or (2) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Application for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole as provided in Section 9.5.1.

§ 9.4.2 The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application for Payment, that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and suppliers and other data requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment; or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

§ 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification

§ 9.5.1 The Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot

be made. If the Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

.1 defective Work not remedied;
.2 third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
.3 failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;
.4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
.5 damage to the Owner or a Separate Contractor;
.6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
.7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.5.2 When either party disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, that party may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 9.5.3 When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

§ 9.5.4 If the Architect withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Contractor shall reflect such payment on its next Application for Payment.

§ 9.6 Progress Payments

§ 9.6.1 After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect.

§ 9.6.2 The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.

§ 9.6.3 The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

§ 9.6.4 The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law.

§ 9.6.5 The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.

§ 9.6.6 A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.6.7 Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.

§ 9.6.8 Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall defend and indemnify the Owner from all loss, liability, damage or expense, including reasonable attorney's fees and litigation expenses, arising out of any lien claim or other claim for payment by any Subcontractor or supplier of any tier. Upon receipt of notice of a lien claim or other claim for payment, the Owner shall notify the Contractor. If approved by the applicable court, when required, the Contractor may substitute a surety bond for the property against which the lien or other claim for payment has been asserted.

§ 9.7 Failure of Payment

If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or if the Owner does not pay the Contractor within seven days after the date established in the Contract Documents, the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.8 Substantial Completion

§ 9.8.1 Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.

§ 9.8.2 When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.8.3 Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.

§ 9.8.4 When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

§ 9.8.5 The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to the Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use

§ 9.9.1 The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is consented

to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect.

§ 9.9.2 Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

§ 9.9.3 Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment

§ 9.10.1 Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Architect's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

§ 9.10.2 Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, and (6) if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

§ 9.10.3 If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

§ 9.10.4 The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from

.1 liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;

.2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;

.3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or
.4 audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.

§ 9.10.5 Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

§ 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract.

§ 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property

§ 10.2.1 The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to

.1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;
.2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor; and
.3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.

§ 10.2.2 The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.

§ 10.2.3 The Contractor shall implement, erect, and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards.

§ 10.2.4 When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

§ 10.2.5 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3. The Contractor may make a Claim for the cost to remedy the damage or loss to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

§ 10.2.6 The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect.

§ 10.2.7 The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

§ 10.2.8 Injury or Damage to Person or Property

If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

§ 10.3 Hazardous Materials and Substances

§ 10.3.1 The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify the Owner and Architect of the condition.

§ 10.3.2 Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start-up.

§ 10.3.3 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless the Contractor, Subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work in the affected area if in fact the material or substance presents the risk of bodily injury or death as described in Section 10.3.1 and has not been rendered harmless, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), except to the extent that such damage, loss, or expense is due to the fault or negligence of the party seeking indemnity.

§ 10.3.4 The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.

§ 10.3.5 The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

§ 10.3.6 If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.

§ 10.4 Emergencies

In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS

§ 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds

§ 11.1.1 The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The

Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.

§ 11.1.2 The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

§ 11.1.3 Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

§ 11.1.4 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance. Within three (3) business days of the date the Contractor becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide notice to the Owner of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Upon receipt of notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of notice by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage.

§ 11.2 Owner's Insurance

§ 11.2.1 The Owner shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Owner shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

§ 11.2.2 Failure to Purchase Required Property Insurance. If the Owner fails to purchase and maintain the required property insurance, with all of the coverages and in the amounts described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. Upon receipt of notice from the Owner, the Contractor may delay commencement of the Work and may obtain insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-Subcontractors in the Work. When the failure to provide coverage has been cured or resolved, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted. In the event the Owner fails to procure coverage, the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent the loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance to have been procured by the Owner. The cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by a Change Order. If the Owner does not provide written notice, and the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain the required insurance, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all reasonable costs and damages attributable thereto.

§ 11.2.3 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance. Within three (3) business days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any property insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Contractor of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Contractor: (1) the Contractor, upon receipt of notice from the Owner, shall have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by either the Owner or the Contractor; (2) the Contract Time and Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted; and (3) the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent any loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance had it not expired or been cancelled. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

§ 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation

§ 11.3.1 The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Architect and Architect's consultants; and (3) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds

of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Architect, Architect's consultants, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property.

§ 11.3.2 If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, to the extent permissible by such policies, the Owner waives all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.1 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance.

§ 11.4 Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance

The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor and Architect for loss of use of the Owner's property, due to fire or other hazards however caused.

§11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss

§ 11.5.1 A loss insured under the property insurance required by the Agreement shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and Subcontractors in similar manner.

§ 11.5.2 Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor does not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and any dispute between the Owner and Contractor arising out of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds shall be resolved pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

§ 12.1 Uncovering of Work

§ 12.1.1 If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

§ 12.1.2 If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work, and the cost of correction, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 12.2 Correction of Work

§ 12.2.1 Before Substantial Completion

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, discovered before Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion

§ 12.2.2.1 In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during that period after receipt of notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.5.

§ 12.2.2.2 The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.

§ 12.2.2.3 The one-year period for correction of Work shall not be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2.

§ 12.2.3 The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

§ 12.2.4 The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 12.2.5 Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

§ 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§ 13.1 Governing Law

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. If the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.

§ 13.2 Successors and Assigns

§ 13.2.1 The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the

other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.

§ 13.2.2 The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.

§ 13.3 Rights and Remedies

§ 13.3.1 Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

§ 13.3.2 No action or failure to act by the Owner, Architect, or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing.

§ 13.4 Tests and Inspections

§ 13.4.1 Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded. The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

§ 13.4.2 If the Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection, or approval, by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.

§ 13.4.3 If procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 13.4.4 Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

§ 13.4.5 If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

§ 13.4.6 Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

§ 13.5 Interest

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate the parties agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.

ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

§ 14.1 Termination by the Contractor

§ 14.1.1 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, for any of the following reasons:

.1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;

.2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped;

.3 Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment on a Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents; or

.4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.

§ 14.1.2 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3, constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

§ 14.1.3 If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven days' notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination.

§ 14.1.4 If the Work is stopped for a period of 60 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work because the Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

§ 14.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause

§ 14.2.1 The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

.1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;

.2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors or suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or suppliers;

.3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or

.4 otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

§ 14.2.2 When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, and upon certification by the Architect that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

.1 Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;

.2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and

.3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.

§ 14.2.3 When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.

§ 14.2.4 If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance,

the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

§ 14.3 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience

§ 14.3.1 The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

§ 14.3.2 The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay, or interruption under Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. No adjustment shall be made to the extent

.1 that performance is, was, or would have been, so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or

.2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

§ 14.4 Termination by the Owner for Convenience

§ 14.4.1 The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause.

§ 14.4.2 Upon receipt of notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall

.1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;

.2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and

.3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

§ 14.4.3 In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Owner shall pay the Contractor for Work properly executed; costs incurred by reason of the termination, including costs attributable to termination of Subcontracts; and the termination fee, if any, set forth in the Agreement.

ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

§ 15.1 Claims

§ 15.1.1 Definition

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, a change in the Contract Time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 15.1.2 Time Limits on Claims

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law, but in any case not more than 10 years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2.

§ 15.1.3 Notice of Claims

§ 15.1.3.1 Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered prior to expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Claims by either party under this Section 15.1.3.1 shall be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

§ 15.1.3.2 Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party. In such event, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker is required.

§ 15.1.4 Continuing Contract Performance

§ 15.1.4.1 Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 15.1.4.2 The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision, subject to the right of either party to proceed in accordance with this Article 15. The Architect will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.

§ 15.1.5 Claims for Additional Cost

If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given before proceeding to execute the portion of the Work that is the subject of the Claim. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

§ 15.1.6 Claims for Additional Time

§ 15.1.6.1 If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

§ 15.1.6.2 If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated, and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

§ 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims for Consequential Damages

The Contractor and Owner waive Claims against each other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes

.1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and

.2 damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit, except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.7 shall be deemed to preclude assessment of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 15.2 Initial Decision

§ 15.2.1 Claims, excluding those where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 or arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, and 11.5, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim. If an initial decision has not been rendered within 30 days after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand mediation and binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.

§ 15.2.2 The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the

Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.

§ 15.2.3 In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.

§ 15.2.4 If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.

§ 15.2.5 The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution.

§ 15.2.6 Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.

§ 15.2.6.1 Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

§ 15.2.7 In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.

§ 15.2.8 If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

§ 15.3 Mediation

§ 15.3.1 Claims, disputes, or other matters in controversy arising out of or related to the Contract, except those waived as provided for in Sections 9.10.4, 9.10.5, and 15.1.7, shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution.

§ 15.3.2 The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Mediation Procedures in effect on the date of the Agreement. A request for mediation shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the mediation. The request may be made concurrently with the filing of binding dispute resolution proceedings but, in such event, mediation shall proceed in advance of binding dispute resolution proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing, unless stayed for a longer period by agreement of the parties or court order. If an arbitration is stayed pursuant to this Section 15.3.2, the parties may nonetheless proceed to the selection of the arbitrator(s) and agree upon a schedule for later proceedings.

§ 15.3.3 Either party may, within 30 days from the date that mediation has been concluded without resolution of the dispute or 60 days after mediation has been demanded without resolution of the dispute, demand in writing that the other party file for binding dispute resolution. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for binding dispute resolution within 60 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

§ 15.3.4 The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally. The mediation shall be held in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. Agreements reached in mediation shall be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

~~§ 15.4 Arbitration~~

~~§ 15.4.1 If the parties have selected arbitration as the method for binding dispute resolution in the Agreement, any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation shall be subject to arbitration which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Arbitration Rules in effect on the date of the Agreement. The Arbitration shall be conducted in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. A demand for arbitration shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the arbitration. The party filing a notice of demand for arbitration must assert in the demand all Claims then known to that party on which arbitration is permitted to be demanded.~~

~~§ 15.4.1.1 A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.~~

~~§ 15.4.2 The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.~~

~~§ 15.4.3 The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement, shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.~~

~~§ 15.4.4 Consolidation or Joinder~~

~~§ 15.4.4.1 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).~~

~~§ 15.4.4.2 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.~~

~~§ 15.4.4.3 The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as those of the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.~~

SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS to the GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION

Supplement AIA Document A201, 2017 Edition as follows:

ARTICLE 1 - CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

1.1 BASIC DEFINITIONS

Revise the first sentence in Subparagraph 1.1.1 as follows:

1.1.1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement), and consist of the Agreement, the Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Performance Bond, Labor and Material Payment Bond, the Drawings, the Specifications, all Addenda issued prior to execution of the Agreement and all Modifications thereto.

Add the following text to Subparagraph 1.1.3, THE WORK:

1.1.3 It also includes all supplies, skill, supervision, transportation services and other facilities and things necessary, proper or incidental to the carrying out and completion of the terms of the contract and all other items of cost or value needed to produce, construct and fully complete the public work identified by the Contract Documents.

Add the following Subparagraphs:

1.1.9 DESCRIPTION OF PARTIES

The following definitions apply to parties named in the Contract Documents.

1.	Owner:	Brownsville Independent School District 1900 E. Price Road Brownsville, TX 78521 Phone: (956) 548-8000
2.	Architect:	Gomez Mendez Saenz, Inc. 1150 Paredes Line Rd. Brownsville, Texas 78521 Phone: 956-546-0110

1.1.10 ADDENDA

Addenda are written or graphic instruments issued prior to the execution of the Contract, which modify or interpret the proposal documents, including Drawings and Specifications, by additions, deletions, clarifications or corrections. Addenda will become part of the Contract Documents when the Construction Agreement is executed.

1.1.11 APPROVED, APPROVED EQUAL, APPROVED EQUIVALENT, OR EQUAL

The terms Approved and Approved Equal relate to the substitution of materials, equipment or procedure approved in writing by the Architect prior to receipt of proposals.

1.1.12 ABBREVIATIONS

N.I.C. By Others; By Owner; Existing	Not in contract. Indicating work not to be done by this Contractor under this Agreement.
AIA	American Institute of Architects
ACI	American Concrete Institute
AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction
AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute
ASA	American Standards Association
ASTM	ASTM International
AWSC	American Welding Society Code
FS	Federal Specification
NEC	National Electrical Code
SPR	Simplified Practice Recommendation
UL	Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.

1.1.13 PROPOSAL DOCUMENTS

Proposal Documents consist of all documents bound into or referenced in the Project Manual, the Drawings, and Addenda related thereto. The Project Manual contains the Proposal Requirements, Sample Forms, Conditions of the Contract, the Specifications, and a list of Drawings, and Schedules, some of which are bound into the Project Manual (Other Drawings and Schedules are bound separately).

1.1.14 MISCELLANEOUS OTHER WORDS

Provide: Whenever the word "provide" is used in these documents, it shall mean the same as "furnish and install".

1.2 CORRELATION AND INTENT OF THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

Add the following Subparagraphs:

1.2.4 PRECEDENCE OF THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The most recent issued Document takes precedence over previous issued forms of the same Document. The order of precedence is as follows with the highest authority listed first.

.1 The Agreement
.2 The Addenda
.3 Conditions of the Contract, Drawings, and Specifications shall have equal authority. Should these documents disagree in themselves; the Architect will select the appropriate method for performing the work at no additional increase in the Contract Cost.

1.2.5 RELATION OF SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS

The Drawings and Specifications are correlative and have equal authority and priority. Should they disagree in themselves, or with each other, base the proposals on the most expensive combination of quality and quantity of work indicated. The appropriate method of performing the Work, in the event of the above mentioned disagreements, will be made by the Architect.

1.2.6 OPTIONAL MATERIALS, BRANDS AND PROCESSES

When more than one is specified for a particular item of Work, the choice shall be the Contractor's. The final selection of color and pattern will be made from the range available within the option selected by the Contractor, unless the item is specified to match a specific color or sample furnished. Where particular items are specified only products of those named manufacturers are acceptable. Certain specified construction and equipment details may not be regularly included as part of the named manufacturer's standard catalog equipment but shall be provided by the manufacturer as required for the proper functioning of the equipment. Reasonable minor variations in equipment are expected and will be acceptable; however, indicated and specified performance and material requirements are minimum, and will be required in addition to standard accessories. The Architect reserves the right to determine the equality of equipment and materials that deviate from any of the indicated and specified requirements.

Add Paragraph 1.7 and following Subparagraphs:

1.7 MISCELLANEOUS OTHER DEFINITIONS

1.7.1 ADDENDA

Documents issued by the Architect prior to execution of the Owner Contractor Agreement that modify or clarify the Proposal Documents. The addenda become a part of the Contract Documents

1.7.2 ALTERNATES

A separate amount stated on the Proposal Form which, if accepted by the Owner, will be added to or deducted from the Base Proposal. If accepted, the work that corresponds to the alternate proposal will become part of the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. Alternative proposals shall remain valid for a period of 30 days after receipt of proposals, regardless if an Owner Contractor Agreement has been executed, unless indicated otherwise herein.

1.7.3 BASE PROPOSAL

The Contractor's proposal for the Work, not including any Alternatives.

1.7.4 CONTRACT TIME

The period of time which is established in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

1.7.5 DATE OF AGREEMENT

The date the Owner formally awards a Contract for Construction of the Work. This date will be inserted on the first page of the Agreement between Owner and Contractor and shall be referenced in Performance Bond and Payment Bond forms. See also Date of Commencement of the Work.

1.7.6 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT OF THE WORK

The date that either (1) the fully executed Agreement Between Owner and contractor, or (2) a written Notice to Proceed is delivered to the Contractor. This date constitutes day zero ("0") of the stated Contract Time.

1.7.7 DATE OF FINAL COMPLETION

The end of construction. Refer Paragraph 9.10.

1.7.8 DATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

Refer Subparagraph 8.1.3 and Paragraph 9.8. Contractor shall be Substantially Complete by date stated in the Agreement.

1.7.9 DAY

The following days are referenced in the documents:

.1 Calendar Days: The days of the Gregorian Calendar. The Contract Time is established in Calendar Days and extensions of time granted for Regular Work Days lost, if any, will be converted to Calendar Days.

.2 Holidays: The days officially recognized by the construction industry in this area as a holiday; normally limited to the observance days of New Year's Day, Memorial Day, Fourth of July, Labor Day, Thanksgiving Day and the day after, and Christmas Day.

.3 Regular Work Days: All calendar days except holidays, Saturdays, and Sundays. Requests for extensions of time shall be requested on the basis of Regular Work Days, and those days, if approved; will be converted to calendar days by multiplying by a factor of one and four-tenths (1.4).

.4 Anticipated Weather Days: An allowance of Regular Work Days, established as probable days lost due to weather delays; said allowance to be included in the Contractor's proposed Completion Time on his Proposal Form.

Brownsville, Texas

Average Days of Precipitation, 0.01 Inches or More											
Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	Apr.	May	June	July	Aug.	Sept.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.
1	1	2	1	3	1	1	2	4	3	2	1

Normal Monthly Precipitation, Inches											
Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	Apr.	May	June	July	Aug.	Sept.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.
1.26	1.06	1.22	1.54	2.64	2.56	2.05	2.44	5.91	3.74	1.81	1.14

.5 Weather Days: Regular Work Days when rain, flooding, snow, unusually high winds, excessively wet grounds, or similar circumstances prevent progress on major portions of the Work. The Contractor will be entitled to an extension of the Contract Time for the net additional time, if any, which results from deducting the amount of Anticipated Weather Days from the total amount of Weather Days.

.6 Rain Days: A day equal to or greater than 0.20 inches of rain at the project location resulting in conditions that directly impact the critical path. The Contractor will be entitled to an extension of the Contract Time for the net additional time, if any, which results from deducting the amount of Anticipated Weather Days from the total amount of Weather Days.

.7 Net Weather Days: The difference in working days between Anticipated Weather Days and Weather Days.

1.7.10 NOTICE TO PROCEED

A notice that may be given by the Owner to the Contractor that directs the Contractor to start the Work. It may also establish the Date of Commencement of the Work.

1.7.11 PUNCH LIST

A comprehensive list prepared by the Contractor prior to Substantial Completion to establish all items to be completed or corrected; this list may be supplemented by the Architect or Owner. Refer to Subparagraph 9.8.2.

ARTICLE 2 - OWNER

2.2 INFORMATION AND SERVICES REQUIRED OF THE OWNER

Delete the text of Subparagraph 2.2.5 in its entirety and substitute the following:

2.2.5 The Contractor will be furnished free of charge, eight (8) copies of the Drawings and Specifications for the execution of the work. The Contractor shall pay actual reproduction costs of any additional copies required.

2.4 OWNER'S RIGHT TO CARRY OUT THE WORK

Delete text of Subparagraph 2.4.1 in its entirety and substitute the following:

2.4.1 If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails, after receipt of written notice from the Owner, to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such deficiencies. In such case, an appropriate Change Order shall be issued deducting from payments then or thereafter due the contractor the cost of correcting such deficiencies, including compensation for the Architect's additional services and expenses made necessary by such default, neglect or failure. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect. If payments then or thereafter due the Contractor are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner.

2.5 OWNER'S RIGHT TO OCCUPY THE PROJECT

Add the following Subparagraphs:

2.5.1 The Owner shall have the right to occupy or use without prejudice to the right of either party, any completed or largely completed portions of the project, notwithstanding the time for completing the entire work or such portions may not have expired. Such occupancy and use shall not constitute acceptance of any work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

2.5.2 If such prior use delays the completion of the project, the Contractor shall be entitled to extension of time, which claim shall be in writing with supporting data attached.

2.5.3 Refer to Article 11 - Insurance and Bonds regarding property insurance requirements in the event of such occupancy.

ARTICLE 3 - CONTRACTOR

3.2 REVIEW OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS AND FIELD CONDITIONS BY CONTRACTOR

Delete text of Subparagraph 3.2.1 and substitute the following:

3.2.2 The Contractor shall carefully study and compare the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract, Drawings, Specifications, Addenda, and Modifications and shall at once report to the Architect any error, inconsistency, or omission he may discover. Contractor shall be liable for any damage to Owner for failure to report any error, inconsistency or omission he may discover or should have discovered, but he shall not be liable to Owner or Architect for any damage resulting from such error, inconsistency or omission which he should not have

discovered or which he did discover and at once so reported. Contractor shall do no work without approved Drawings and Specifications.

Add the following Subparagraphs:

3.2.5 The Contractor shall not be entitled to additional compensation for the "rework portion" of any additional work caused by his failure to carefully study and compare the contract documents prior to execution of the Work.

3.2.6 The Contractor shall make a reasonable attempt to interpret the Contract Documents before asking the Architect for assistance in interpretation. The Contractor shall not ask the Architect for observation of work prior to the Contractor's field superintendent's personal inspection of the work and his determination that the work complies with the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall arrange meetings prior to commencement of the work of all major subcontractors to allow the subcontractor to demonstrate his understanding of the documents to the Architect and to allow the subcontractor to ask for any interpretation he may require.

3.2.7 If, in the opinion of the Architect, the Contractor does not make a reasonable effort to comply with the above requirements of the Contract Documents and this causes the Architect or his Consultants to expend an unreasonable amount of time in the discharge of the duties imposed on him by the contract Documents, then the Contractor shall bear the cost of compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such failure. The Architect will give the Contractor prior notice of intent to bill for additional services related to above requirements before additional services are performed.

3.2.8 If the Contractor has knowledge that any of the products or systems specified will perform in a manner that will limit the Contractor's ability to satisfactorily perform the work or to honor his Warranty, he shall promptly notify the Architect in writing, providing substantiation for his position. Any necessary changes, including substitution of materials, shall be accomplished by appropriate Modification.

3.3 SUPERVISION AND CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES

Add the following Subparagraph:

3.3.4 The Contractor is especially cautioned to coordinate the routing of mechanical and electrical items prior to commencing these operations.

3.5 WARRANTY

Add the following Subparagraphs:

3.5.2 In the event of failure of materials, products, or workmanship, either during construction or the Correctional Period (which shall be one (1) year from the Date of Substantial Completion, except where a longer period is specified), the Contractor shall take appropriate measures to assure correction or replacement of the defective items, whether notified by the Owner or Architect. Items of work first performed after Substantial Completion shall have their warranties extended by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual performance of the Work.

3.5.3 Refer to warranty forms included under Section 01710 Guarantees, Certificates and Close-Out, which will be required prior to final payment.

3.5.4 Appropriately 11 months after Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall accompany the Owner and Architect on a complete walk-thru of the Project and be responsible for correcting of any additional deficiencies observed or reported.

3.6 TAXES

Delete text of Subparagraph 3.6.1, and substitute the following.

3.6.1 The Owner is exempt from the Texas Sales Tax on any purchase of tangible personal property and will issue Certificates of Exemption from the Texas Sales Tax on materials furnished by Contractors on School Construction projects. The Contractor shall give a written statement to the Owner (with a copy to the Architect) as to the proration of costs of skilled crafts, labor and materials for the project prior to awarding of a Construction Contract. The contractors shall obtain Certificates of Resale from their suppliers in order to avoid payment of the State Sales Tax on materials incorporated in School jobs. Failure of the Contractor to obtain Certificates of Resale from their suppliers shall make the Contractor responsible for absorbing the tax.

3.7 PERMITS, FEES, NOTICES AND COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS

3.7.1 Supplement Subparagraph 3.7.1, as follows:

3.7.1.1 The Owner will pay directly to the governing authority, the cost of all permanent property utility assessments and similar connection charges.

3.7.1.2 The Contractor shall pay directly all temporary utility charges, tap charges, and water meter charges. The Contractor shall secure and pay for all governing authorities' permit fees.

Delete text of Subparagraph 3.7.3 in its entirety and substitute the following:

3.7.3 It is not the Contractor's responsibility to ascertain that the contract Documents are in accordance with Applicable laws, statutes ordinances, building codes, and rules and regulations. However, if the Contractor observes, or should have observed, that portions of the Contract Documents are to variance therewith, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Architect and Owner in writing and necessary changes shall be accomplished by appropriate Modification.
3.7.3.1 If the Contractor performs Work which he knew or should have known to be contrary to applicable laws, statues, ordinances, building codes, local rules or regulations, without such notice to the Architect and Owner, the Contractor shall assume full responsibility for such Work and shall bear there attributable costs.

3.8 ALLOWANCES

Delete text of Subparagraph 3.8.1, and substitute the following:

3.8.1 The General Contractor shall include in his proposal the allowances stated in the Specifications. These stated allowances represent the cost estimate of the materials and equipment delivered and unloaded at the site. The Contractor's handling costs on site, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for the allowance material and equipment shall be included in allowance only where called for in the various sections of these specifications.

The Contractor shall purchase the allowance materials and equipment as directed by the Architect on the basis of the lowest responsible proposal of at least three (3) competitive proposals. If the actual cost of the materials and equipment delivered and unloaded at the site is more or less than all the allowance estimates, the Contract Sum will be adjusted accordingly by Change Order.

3.9 SUPERINTENDENT

Delete Subparagraph 3.9.1, in its entirety and substitute the following:

3.9.1 Prime Contractor shall employ competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during the progress of the work. The Superintendent shall be satisfactory to the Owner and shall not be changed except with the consent of the Architect, unless the Superintendent leaves the employment of the Contractor. No increase in Contract Time or Contract Sum shall be allowed in the event the Owner or Architects objects to any nominated superintendent.

3.10 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULES

Add the following Subparagraph:

3.10.4 The Contractor shall submit to the Architect with each monthly Application for Payment, a copy of the progress schedule showing all modifications required to have the schedule reflect appropriate revisions and shall take whatever action is necessary to assure that the project completion schedule is met.

3.12 SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES

Add the following Subparagraphs:

3.12.11 The Contractor shall submit complete drawings, data and samples to the Architect at least 30 days prior to the date the Contractor needs the reviewed submittals returned. The Contractor shall be prepared to submit color samples on any key items (such as quarry tile, vinyl wall covering, etc.) within 30 days of the award of Contract. Once samples of all key items are received, the Architect will finalize color selections.

3.12.12 The Contractor shall submit the number of copies of product data and samples which the Contractor and his subcontractors need for their use PLUS two (2) additional sets for the Architect, one (1) additional set for the Owner and one (1) additional set for each of the Architect's consultants involved with the particular Section of Work. Where shop drawings are involved, submit one (1) high quality reproducible transparency and one (1) opaque print of the shop drawing for the Architect plus one (1) additional opaque print for each of the Architect's consultants involved with the particular Section of Work. The reproducible transparency will be marked by the Architect and/or his consultants. After final review and correction of the submittal, the Contractor shall send one (1) corrected set to the Architect and one (1) to each of the Architect's consultants involved with the particular Section of Work.

3.12.13 The Contractor shall provide composite drawings within three (3) months of contract signing showing how all piping, ductwork, lights, conduit, equipment, etc. will fit into the ceiling space allotted, including clearances required by the manufacturer, by Code, or in keeping with good construction practice. Space for all trade elements must be considered on the same drawing. Drawings shall be at 1/4 inch per foot minimum scale and shall include invert elevations and sections required to meet intended purpose.

3.15 CLEANING UP

Add the following Subparagraph:

3.15.3 Prior to the Architect's review for Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall clean exterior and interior surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains, and foreign substances; polish transparent and glossy surfaces; clean equipment and fixtures to a sanitary condition; clean roofs; clean site; sweep paved areas and rake clean other surfaces; remove trash and surplus materials from the site.

Add following Paragraphs in their entirety:

3.19 REPRODUCIBLE RECORD DRAWINGS

3.19.1 At the completion of the Project, the contractor shall submit one (1) complete set of drawings with all changes made during construction, including concealed mechanical, electrical, and plumbing items. Drafting shall be compatible and the Contractor shall submit these as Mylar sepias. The record drawings shall exclude the seal of the Architect and/or Engineer and shall have a statement added to indicate the purpose of the drawings (i.e., “AS BUILT” or “RECORD DRAWING”).

3.20 PREVAILING WAGE RATES

3.20.1 No employee used in this construction may be paid less than the minimum wage rate provided herein in Article 16.

3.21 ANTITRUST VIOLATIONS

3.21.1 To permit the Owner to recover damages suffered; in antitrust violations, the Owner/Contractor Agreement shall include the following, "Contractor hereby assigns to Owner any and all claims for overcharges associated with this contract which are under the antitrust laws of the United States, 15 U.S.C.A., Sec. 1 et.seq. (1973)". The Contractor shall include this provision in his agreements with each subcontractor and supplier. Each subcontractor shall include such provisions in agreements with sub-subcontractors and suppliers.

ARTICLE 4 - ARCHITECT

4.2 ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT

Add the following text to Subparagraph 4.2.3:

4.2.3 The Architect shall endeavor to guard the Owner against defects and deficiencies in the Work.

Delete text of following Subparagraphs and substitute the following:

4.2.6 The Architect will have authority to reject Work which does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable for implementation of the intent of the Contract Documents, the Architect will have authority to require additional inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Subparagraphs 13.5.2 and 13.5.3, whether or not such Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made reasonably and in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, material an equipment suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons performing portions of the Work.

4.2.12 Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of and reasonably inferable from the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions so rendered reasonably and in good faith.

ARTICLE 5 - SUBCONTRACTORS

5.2 AWARD OF SUBCONTRACTS AND OTHER CONTRACTS FOR PORTIONS OF THE WORK

Delete text of Subparagraphs 5.2.1, 5.2.2, 5.2.3, and 5.2.4 in their entirety and substitute the following:

5.2.1 As soon as practicable after Award of the Contract but no later than ten (10) days prior to the submittal date for the Contractor's first Application for Payment, Contractor shall furnish to the Owner and Architect in writing the names of the persons or entities (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for each of the principal portions of the Work. Where Subcontractors or Sub-subcontractors have been listed in the Specifications or in an Addendum as a Listed Subcontractor the proposed entity shall be one of those firms listed, unless agreement has been reached to accept a proposed Substitute Subcontractor as listed on the Proposal Form. Regarding proposed persons or entities to perform portions of the Work where no Listed Subcontractors have been listed or approved by Addendum, the Architect will promptly reply to the Contractor in writing stating whether or not the Owner or the Architect, after due investigation, has objection to any such proposed person or entity. Failure of the Owner or Architect to reply promptly shall constitute notice of no objection. Failure of the Contractor to submit the subject names in a timely manner will delay processing of the Contractor's Application for Payment.

5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made a timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made an objection under the provisions of Subparagraph 5.2.1.

5.2.3 If the Owner or Architect has objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no objection. The Contract Sum shall be increased or decreased by the difference in cost occasioned by such change and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued. However, no increase in the Contract Sum shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required in Subparagraph 5.2.1.

5.2.4 Prior to such substitution the Contractor shall notify the Architect of his intent and reasons for such proposed substitutions. The Contractor shall not change a Subcontractor, person or entity previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes objection to such change.

Add Subparagraphs 5.2.5 and 5.2.6 as follows:

5.2.5 The Contractor shall submit the list of proposed Subcontractors on Document 00 40 00 AF. The Contractor may obtain blank copies from the Architect.

5.2.6 The Contractor is required to visit the site and completely familiarize himself with the existing conditions prior to the proposal. No additional increase in the Contract amount will be provided when existing or known conditions require a certain amount of work to comply with the intent of the Contract Documents.

ARTICLE 7 - CHANGES IN THE WORK

7.2 CHANGE ORDERS

Add Subparagraph 7.2.2 as follows:

7.2.2 The cost or credit to the Owner resulting from a change in the work shall be determined in one or more of the ways listed below. The first method listed shall be used unless the Architect determines that the method is inappropriate, in which case another method shall be selected:

A. By mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation. Where additional work is involved, the lump sum shall represent the estimated cost of labor and materials plus markups to cover overhead and profit:
   1. To compensate the contractor or subcontractor actually performing a part of the work for the combined cost of overhead and profit, the performing party shall be entitled to a single markup not to exceed 10% of the estimated cost of that part of the work.
   2. To compensate the contractor for the combined cost of overhead and profit on work performed by subcontractors, the Contractor shall be entitled to a single markup not to exceed 10% of the subcontract amount.
   3. When a subcontractor performs the work of a change, the 10% markup for combined overhead and profit shall be used only by the sub-subcontractor. The Contractor and Subcontractor would each be entitled to a single markup not to exceed 10% of the cost to them for the Subcontractor and sub-subcontractor, respectively.

B. By unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon. Additional markups for overhead and profit will not be allowed in Unit Price work.

C. By cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee.

7.3 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVES

Delete text of Subparagraph 7.3.3 in its entirety and substitute the following:

7.3.3 The cost or credit to the Owner resulting from a change in the Work shall be determined in one or more ways listed below. The first method listed shall be used unless the Architect determines that the method is inappropriate, in which case another method shall be selected.

.1 By mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation. Where additional Work is involved, the lump sum shall represent the estimated cost of labor and materials plus markups to cover overhead and profit:

To compensate the Contractor or Subcontractor actually performing a part of the Work for the combined cost of overhead and profit, the performing party shall be entitled to a single markup not to exceed 10% of the estimated cost of that part of the Work.

To compensate the Contractor for the combined cost of overhead and profit on work performed by Subcontractors, the Contractor shall be entitled to a single markup not to exceed 10% of the subcontract amount.

When a Sub-subcontract performs the Work of a change, the 10% markup for combined overhead and profit shall be used only by the Sub-subcontractor. The Contractor and Subcontractor would each be entitled to a single markup not to exceed 10% of the cost to them from the Subcontractor and Sub-subcontractor respectively.

.2 By unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon. Additional markups for overhead and profit will not be allowed in Unit Price Work.

.3 By cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee.

Add the following Subparagraph:

7.5 CHANGES FUNDED BY ALLOWANCES

7.5.1 Allowances balances may be used to fund changes in the work.

The Contractor will not be allowed an overhead and profit mark-up when changes in the work are funded by one of the Allowances. For Subcontractor and Sub-Subcontractor overhead and profit mark-up when changes in the work are funded by one of the Allowances, refer to Paragraph 7.2.2.

ARTICLE 8 - TIME

8.1 DEFINITIONS

Delete Subparagraph 8.1.2 in its entirety and substitute the following:

8.1.2 Unless agreed otherwise, the date inserted on the Agreement form and the Date of Commencement of the Work shall be as follows:

.1 The date inserted on the first page of the Agreement form will be the date the Owner formally awards the Contract. As soon as feasible after receipt of Proposals, the Architect will present Agreement forms to the Contractor for his review and signature; the Contractor will be allowed a maximum of five (5) days from the date the prepared Agreements are presented to him to 1) obtain the required bond forms and insurance certificates and 2) return the executed Agreement and supporting documents to the Architect for transmittal to the Owner for his final review and execution.

.2 The Date of Commencement of the Work is the date that either (1) the fully executed Agreement of (2) a written Notice to Proceed is delivered to the Contractor and constitutes day "0" (zero) of the stated Completion Time.

8.3 DELAYS AND EXTENSIONS OF TIME

Add the following Subparagraph:

8.3.4 The following is a requirement of the Contract and will be included in the Agreement Between Owner and Contractor under Time of Completion and the blank spaces will be completed indicating the completion date as stated on the Proposal Form.

The Work to be performed under this Contract shall be commenced and substantially completed by the date as stated on the Proposal Form, or by such dates thereafter as may be established in any written extensions granted under Article 8 of the General Conditions. The parties hereto agree that time is of the essence of this contract and that the pecuniary damages which would be suffered by the Owner, if the Contractor does not complete all work called for in the contract documents by the specified date, are in their very nature difficult of ascertainment.

It is therefore expressly agreed as a part of the consideration inducing the Owner to execute this contract that the Owner may deduct from the final payment made to the Contractor a sum equal to $1,000.00 per calendar day for each and every calendar day beyond the agreed date which the Contractor shall require for Substantial Completion of the work included in this contract. It is expressly understood that the said sum per day is agreed upon as a fair estimate of the pecuniary damages which will be sustained by the Owner in the event that the work is not completed within the agreed time, or within the legally extended time, if any, otherwise provided for herein. Said sum shall be considered as liquidated damages only and in no sense shall be considered a penalty, said damage being caused by additional compensation to personnel, for loss of interest on money and other miscellaneous increased costs, all of which are difficult of exact ascertainment.

Any disruption, all or in part, of Owner’s use of the existing facilities or newly completed facilities, unless as agreed to beforehand or as terms of this contract, will also be subject to a sum equal to $500.00 per calendar day for liquidated damages until the said disruption is rectified and use of the facility is returned to the Owner in its previous condition.

Failure to complete and close-out project 60 days after Substantial Completion will result in liquidated damages being assessed in the amount of $500.00 per calendar day until close-out occurs.

ARTICLE 9 - PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

9.2 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

Add Subparagraph 9.2.2 as follows:

9.2.2 In order to facilitate the review of Applications for Payment, the Schedule of Values shall be submitted on AIA Documents G702 and G703 or other similar forms approved by the Owner, and shall include the following:

.1 General Contractor's costs for Contractor's fee, bonds and mobilization, etc., shall be listed as individual line items.

.2 Contractor's costs for various construction items shall be detailed. For example, concrete Work shall be subdivided into footings, grade beams, floor slabs, paving, etc. These subdivisions shall appear as individual line items.

.3 On major subcontracts, such as mechanical, electrical and plumbing, the schedule shall indicate line items and amounts in detail (for example; underground, major equipment, fixtures, installation of fixtures, start up, etc.)

.4 Costs for subcontract Work shall be listed without any additional of General Contractor's costs for overhead, profit or supervisions.

.5 Where payment for stored materials may be requested prior to installation, material and labor shall be listed as separate line items.
.6 Sample pages from an approved schedule of values are included following this document.

9.3 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

Delete Subparagraph 9.3.1 in its entirety and substitute the following:

9.3.1 At least ten (10) days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment for operations completed in accordance with the schedule of values. Prior to this submittal, the Contractor shall contact the Architect's Field Department for on-site review of the proposed application. Upon approval by the Architect's Field Department, the Application for Payment shall be notarized and submitted to the Architect.

Included shall be data required to support the Contractor's right to payment as may be required by the Owner or Architect, such as copies of requisitions from subcontractors and material suppliers, and reflecting retainage, if provided for elsewhere in the contract documents.

Delete Subparagraph 9.3.2 in its entirety and substitute the following:

9.3.2 Payments will be made on account of materials or equipment 1) incorporated in the Work and 2) Suitably stored at the site or 3) suitably stored at some off-site location provided the following conditions are met for off-site storage:

.1 The location must be agreed to, in writing, by the Owner and Surety.
.2 The location must be a bonded warehouse.
.3 Surety must agree, in writing, to each request for payment.
.4 The Contractor must bear the cost of the Owner's and Architect's expenses related to visiting the off-site storage area.

Payments for materials or equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon submission by the Contractor of bills of sale or such other procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials or equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, including applicable insurance (naming the Owner as insured) and transportation to the site for those materials and equipment stored off the site. Under no circumstances will the Owner reimburse the Contractor for down payments, deposits, or other advance payments for materials or equipment.

The Contractor acknowledges that the review of materials stored off site is an additional service of the Architect and shall be charged for that service. The cost for that service will be established by the Architect and is not subject to appeal.

Add the following Subparagraph:

9.3.4 Contractors shall submit application in quadruplicate using AIA Document G702 and G703, Application and Certificate for Payment, 1992 Edition. All blanks in the form must be completed and signatures of Contractor and Notary Public must be original on each form.

9.4 CERTIFICATES FOR PAYMENT

Add the following Subparagraph:

9.4.3 The Architect will affix his signature to the same form described in Paragraph 9.3.4 to signify his certification of payment provided the application is otherwise satisfactory.

9.6 PROGRESS PAYMENTS

Add the following Subparagraph:

9.6.8 Based upon Applications for Payment submitted to the Architect by the Contractor and Certificates for Payment issued by the Architect, the Owner shall make progress payments on account of the Contract Sum to the Contractor as provided in the conditions of the Contract as follows:

On or about the 15th day of each month 95% of the proportion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to labor, materials and equipment incorporated in the Work and 95% of the portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to materials and equipment suitably stored at the site or at some other location agreed upon in writing by the parties, up to the first (1st) day of that month; less the aggregate of previous payments in each case; and upon Substantial Completion of the entire work, a sum sufficient to increase the total payments to 95% of the Contract Sum less such retainages as the Architect shall determine for all incomplete work and unsettled claims.

9.7 FAILURE OF PAYMENT

Delete the phrase "or awarded by binding dispute resolution".

9.8 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

9.8.1 Add the following:

The following items are a partial list of requirements, as applicable to the Project, that must be completed prior to the established Substantial Completion:

1. All fire alarm system components must be completed and demonstrated to the Owner.
2. Local fire marshal approval certificate must be delivered to the Owner.
3. All exterior clean-up and landscaping must be complete.
4. All final interior clean-up must be complete.
5. All HVAC air and water balancing must be complete.
6. All Energy Management Systems must be complete and fully operational and demonstrated to the Owner.
7. All communications equipment, telephone system, and P.A. systems must be complete and demonstrated to the Owner.
8. All final lockset cores must be installed and all final Owner directed keying completed.
9. All room plaques and exterior signage must be completed.
10. All Owner demonstrations must be completed including kitchen equipment, HVAC equipment, plumbing equipment, and electrical equipment.
11. A final certificate of occupancy must be signed by the Contractor and delivered to the Owner.
12. All operation and maintenance manuals are delivered and approved (“D-slant” ring binders in triplicate).

9.10 FINAL COMPLETION AND FINAL PAYMENT

At Subparagraph 9.10.2, modify as follows:

.1 On line 8, delete the phrase "if any".
.2 On line 8, delete the phrase "If required by the Owner".

Add the following to Subparagraph 9.10.2:

Prior to final payment, the Contractor shall submit in triplicate to the Architect the following completed forms:

1. Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims, AIA Document G706.
2. Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens, AIA Document G706A.
3. Consent of Surety to Final Payment, AIA Document G707.
4. General Contractor's Guarantee - notarized
5. Subcontractor's Guarantee - notarized

6. Subcontractor's Lien Releases - signed and notarized on a same piece of paper.
7. Each Bidder (and subcontractor and supplier submitting a bid to a Bidder) shall submit a notarized affidavit stating that no asbestos, PCB, or lead, except for flashing in roofing, containing building materials were used.
8. Maintenance and inspection manuals. Three (3) sets of each bound in a 3 inch “D-slant” ring binder.
9. Record drawings. Reproducible Mylar sepias.
10. Final list of subcontractors.

Documents identified as affidavit must be notarized. Manuals shall contain an index listing the information submitted. The index sections will be divided and identified by tabbing each section as listed in the index.

Upon request, the Architect will furnish the Contractor with blank copies of the forms listed above. Final payment, constituting the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Sum shall be paid by the Owner to the Contractor 31 days after substantial completion of the work unless otherwise stipulated in the Certificate of Completion, the contract fully performed, and Final Certificate of Payment has been issued by the Architect.

The Owner may accept certain portions of the work as being complete prior to the acceptance of the entire project. If certain areas are accepted by the Owner as being complete, and if the Contractor has completed all of the requirements for final payment of that portion of work, then the Owner may release retainage for that area/portion of work. Amounts of retainage shall be agreed upon by both Owner and Contractor prior to final acceptance of these areas.

Refer to Section 01 77 00 Closeout Procedures for warranties, certificates, and close-out for additional requirements.

ARTICLE 10 - PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

10.3 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

Delete text of Subparagraph 10.3.2 in its entirety and substitute the following:

10.3.2 If requested in writing by the Contractor, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify a presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the even such material or substance is found to be present, to verify that is has been rendered harmless. If requested in writing by the Contractor or Architect, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect, the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of such material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of such material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection.

Add the following Subparagraphs:

10.7 ASBESTOS, LEAD OR PCBs CONTAINING MATERIALS

10.7.1 The contractor and each subcontractor, prior to final payment, shall submit a notarized statement on their letterhead certifying "to the best of their information, knowledge, and belief asbestos, asbestos containing materials, and PCBs have not been used or incorporated into the Work and lead or lead bearing materials have not been incorporated into potable water systems.” For the purpose of definition as used in this statement, the term “potable water systems” includes, but is not limited to, those water systems for drinking fountains, all sinks, showers, bath tubs, residential and commercial kitchen equipment, ice machines, and hose bibbs, as applicable

to the project. The Contractor shall also obtain such statements from Subcontractors and all such statements shall be notarized.

ARTICLE 11 - INSURANCE AND BONDS

11.1 CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY INSURANCE

Add the following to Paragraph 11.1.3:

11.1.3.1 Proof of insurance shall be evidenced on 1) an original ACORD Certificate of Insurance 25-N (1/95) and 2) an original Supplemental Attachment for ACORD Certificate of Insurance 25-S (1/95), AIA Document G715-1991, indicating the minimum Contractor's Insurance required. The Contractor is urged to carry such additional insurance as he may deem appropriate to provide protection from risks assumed under this contract. The Contractor shall fill in the blank spaces on this form and submit one (1) copy each of the completed Certificate of Insurance forms to the Owner and Owner prior to commencement of the Work. The required insurance must be written by a Company licensed to do business in the State of Texas and be acceptable to the Owner.

Contractor's Liability Insurance: Insurance described in Paragraph 11.1 of AIA Document A201, 1997 Edition, shall be for the following minimum limits:

A. Worker's Compensation Insurance Coverage

Definitions:

Certificate of coverage ("Certificate") - A copy of a certificate of insurance, a certificate of authority to self-insure issued by the commission, or a coverage agreement (TWCC-81, TWCC-82, TWCC-83, or TWCC-84), showing statutory workers' compensation insurance coverage for the person's or entity's employees providing services on a project, for the duration of the project.

Duration of the project - includes the time from the beginning of the work on the project until the contractor's/person's work on the project has been completed and accepted by the governmental entity.

Persons providing services on the project ("subcontractor" in Texas Labor Code 406.096) - includes all persons or entities performing all or part of the services the contractor has undertaken to perform on the project, regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes, without limitation, independent contractors, subcontractors, leasing companies, motor carriers, owner-operators, employees of any such entity, or employees of any entity that furnishes persons to provide services on the project. "Services" shall include, without limitation, providing, hauling, or delivering equipment or materials, or providing labor, transportation, or other service related to a project. "Services" does not include activities unrelated to the project, such as food/beverage vendors, office supply deliveries, and delivery of portable toilets.

1. The contractor shall provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Labor Code 401.011 (44) for all employees of the contractor providing services on the project for the duration of the project.

2. The contractor must provide a certificate of coverage to the governmental entity prior to being awarded the contract.

3. If the coverage period shown on the contractor's current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project, the contractor must, prior to the end of the coverage period, file a new certificate of coverage with the governmental entity showing the coverage has been extended.

4. The contractor shall obtain from each person providing services on a project, and provide to the governmental entity:
   a. a certificate of coverage, prior to that person beginning work on the project, so the governmental entity will have on file certificates of coverage showing coverage for all persons providing services on a project; and

   b. no later than seven (7) days after receipt by the contractor, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project.

5. The contractor shall retain all required certificates of coverage for the duration of the project and one year thereafter.

6. The contractor shall notify the governmental entity in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within 10 days after the contractor knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the project.

7. The contractor shall post on each project site a notice, in the text, form and manner prescribed by the Texas Workers' Compensation Commission, informing all persons providing services on the project that they are required to be covered, and stating how a person may verify coverage and report lack of coverage.

8. The contractor shall contractually require each person with whom it contracts to provide services on a project, to:

   a. provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Labor Code, Section 401.011 (44) for all of its employees providing services on the project, for the duration of the project;

   b. provide to the contractor, prior to that person beginning work on the project, a certificate of coverage showing that coverage is being provided for all employees of the person providing services on the project, for the duration of the project;

   c. provide the contractor, prior to the end of the coverage period, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project;

   d. obtain from each other person with whom it contracts, and provide to the contractor:

      1) a certificate of coverage, prior to the other person beginning work on the project; and

      2) a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, prior to the end of the coverage period, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project.

   e. retain all required certificates of coverage on file for the duration of the project and for one year thereafter;

   f. notify the governmental entity in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within 10 days after the person knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provisions of coverage of any person providing services on the project; and

g. contractually require each person with whom it contracts to perform as required by paragraphs a - g, with the certificates of coverage to be provided to the person for whom they are providing services.

9. By signing this contract or providing or causing to be provided a certificate of coverage, the contractor is representing to the governmental entity that all employees of the contractor who will provide services on the project will be covered by workers' compensation coverage for the duration of the project, that the coverage will be based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts, and that all coverage agreements will be filed with the appropriate insurance carrier or, in the case of self-insured, with the commission's Division of Self-Insurance Regulation. Providing false or misleading information may subject the contractor to administrative penalties, criminal penalties, civil penalties, or other civil actions.

10. The contractor's failure to comply with any of these provisions is a breach of contract by the contractor which entitles the governmental entity to declare the contract void if the contractor does not remedy the breach within ten days after receipt of notice of breach from the governmental entity.

11. The Contractor shall post the following language:

REQUIRED WORKERS' COMPENSATION COVERAGE

"The law requires that each person working on this site or providing services related to this construction project must be covered by workers' compensation insurance. This includes persons providing, hauling, or delivering equipment or materials, or providing labor or transportation or other service related to the project, regardless of the identity of their employer or status as an employee."

"Call the Texas Workers' Compensation Commission at 512 - 440 - 3789 to receive information on the legal requirements for coverage, to verify whether your employer has provided the required coverage, or to report an employer's failure to provide coverage."

B.	Comprehensive General Liability	Minimum Limits
	Bodily Injury	$1,000,000/occurrence $1,000,000/aggregate, products & completed operations $1,000,000/occurrence $1,000,000/aggregate

Or

$1,000,000 combined single limit for BI & PD

Coverage shall include

1. Premises - Operations;
2. Contractor's Protective Liability (if any work sublet);
3. Contractual Liability to cover indemnity agreement of "Hold Harmless" clause in contract;
4. Property Damage Liability insurance shall include coverage for the following hazards:
   a. Damage to completed or partially completed work.
5. Personal Injury Liability in a minimum limit of $500,000 with employment exclusion deleted;
6. Broad Form C G L Endorsement shall be included:
7. Waiver of Subrogation Endorsement shall be included in favor of (District Name) Independent School District/Agents;
8. Thirty day notice of cancellation or material change endorsement in favor of, (District Name) Independent School District/Agents.

9. The Owner to be named as additional insured on Contractor's policy.
10. The Owner shall be named additional insured on the Contractor's policy as to the subject job.

C. Comprehensive Automobile Liability — Minimum

Bodily Injury	$500,000/person
	$1,000,000/occurrence
Property Damage	$1,000,000/occurrence

Or

$1,000,000 combined single limit for BI & PH.

Coverage Shall Include

1. All owned, hired and nonowned autos of the Contractor;
2. Waiver of subrogation Endorsement in favor of Brownsville Independent School District/Agents;
3. Thirty day notice of cancellation of material change endorsement in favor of Brownsville Independent School District/Agents;
4. Brownsville Independent School District/Agents to be named as additional insured on Contractor's policy.

D. Umbrella Liability — Minimum Limits

$1,000,000/occurrence
$1,000,000/aggregate

Coverage Shall Include:

1. Waiver of Subrogation Endorsement in favor of Brownsville Independent School District/Agents;
2. Thirty day notice of cancellation or material change endorsement in favor of Brownsville Independent School District/Agents;
3. Brownsville Independent School District/Agents to be named as additional insured on Contractor's policy.

11.1.3.2 Property Insurance: The Contractor purchase insurance described in Paragraph 11.3 of AIA Document A201, 2007 Edition, to the full amount of the contract, with the Owner as an additional insured.

11.1.3.3 Waivers of Subrogation: Shall be to the benefit of Brownsville Independent School District or its agents, only and the respective policies listed in Article 11 shall be endorsed accordingly.

11.1.3.4 Certificate of Insurance: The Contractor shall furnish the Owner, Certificates of Insurance showing evidence of coverages required above, prior to beginning construction under this contract. Such certificates shall indicate that policies will not be reduced or canceled without thirty days prior notice to Owner. The required insurance must be written by a company licensed to do business in the State of Texas at the time the policy is issued. The insurance company shall be acceptable to the Owner and said insurance companies must have a rating in the current Best's of at least A:XIII.

11.1.3.5 Indemnification: Contractor assumes the entire responsibility and liability and will indemnify and hold Brownsville Independent School District harmless, its agents, servants and employees from and against any and all losses, expenses, demands and claims of whatsoever character that may be claimed or asserted to suit brought against Brownsville Independent School District, its agents, servants and employees by any person, firm or corporation, including any employee or officer of Contractor its Subcontractor, on account of an actual or alleged:

Illness, bodily injury, or death occurring to any person whomsoever (including both parties and their respective officers, agents and employees) or arising out of, in connection with, or resulting from the actual or alleged activities of Contractor or any Subcontractor and their respective officers, agents and employees in the performance of the work in accordance with this Agreement. Contractor agrees that the above indemnification and hold harmless applies to, but is not limited to suits, actions or claims arising under the Structural Work Law (4811.Rev. Stat., PAR 60-69) Protection of Adjacent Land Owners Act (70 111. Rev. Stat., PAR 10), and any other similar law or statute of any other state.

Contractor further agrees to indemnify, protect and defend Brownsville Independent School District against any claim asserted, or suit brought against Brownsville Independent School District by virtue of the action of Contractor or any Subcontractor as heretofore set forth and pay judgment rendered in any such action(s); provided, however that Brownsville Independent School District shall have the right if it so elects to participate at its own expense in the defense of any such claims or suit, but participation shall not operate to affect Contractor's liability and obligations hereunder.

11.4 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND

Supplement to Article 11.

11.4.1 The Performance Bond Form and Labor and Material Payment Bond - Substitute the following for Subparagraph 11.4.1 as set forth below:

The Contractor shall furnish a Statutory Performance Bond in an amount equal to One Hundred Percent (100%) of the Contract Sum as security for the faithful performance of this Contract and also a Statutory Labor and Material payment Bond in an amount not less than One Hundred Percent (100%) of the Contract Sum as security for the payment for all persons performing labor on the project under this Contract and furnishing materials in connection with this Contract. The Performance Bond and the Labor and Material Payment Bond may be in one or in separate instruments in accordance with local law and shall be delivered to the Owner not later than the date of execution of the Contract.

A. The Contractor shall provide an affidavit showing proof that his bonding company meets the following criteria:
   1. The Bonding Company must be domiciled in the United States.
   2. The Bonding Company must be licensed in the State of Texas.
   3. The Bonding Company must be acceptable to the Owner.

B. Bond forms shall be subject to the Owner's approval. File copies of the bond with the County Clerk and furnish the Owner a file receipt.

C. Performance and payment bonds shall remain in force throughout the warranty period of the contract.

D. The work will not be started until the bonds and issuing companies have been accepted as satisfactory by the Owner.

E. The original bonds will be delivered to the Owner with an attached authorization power of attorney.

ARTICLE 13 - MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

13.6 INTEREST

Delete Subparagraph in its entirety.

ARTICLE 14 - TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

Add the following Subparagraph:

14.2.5 Contractor hereby assigns the Owner any and all claims for overcharges associated with this Contract which arise under the antitrust laws of the United States, 15 U.S.C.A. Section 1 ET.SEQ. (1973).

14.4 TERMINATION BY THE OWNER FOR CONVENIENCE

Delete Subparagraph 14.4.3 in its entirety and replace with the following Subparagraph:

14.4.3 In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall be entitled to receive payment from the Owner on the same basis provided in Subparagraph 14.1.3.

Add the following Article:

ARTICLE 15 - CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

15.1 CLAIMS

Delete the text of Subparagraphs 15.1.1 and 15.1.3 in their entirety and substitute the following:

15.1.1 Definition. A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, adjustment or interpretation of Contract terms, payment of money, extension of time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner, Architect and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract.

15.1.3 Continuing Contract Performance. Pending final resolution of a Claim, unless otherwise agreed in writing, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract.

15.2 INITIAL DECISION

Delete the text of Subparagraph 15.2.1 and 15.2.2 in their entirety and substitute the following:

15.2.1 Decisions of Architect. Claims including those alleging an error or omission by the Architect shall be referred initially to the Architect for action. If the parties are unable to agree, appeal shall be as stated at ARTICLE 15A.

ARTICLE 15A: Any claims, disputes, or matters arising out of this contract between the Architect, Owner and Contractor, or any combination of those parties, shall be submitted to a court of appropriate jurisdiction.

15.2.2 The Architect will review Claims and taken one or more of the following preliminary actions within ten (10) days of receipt of a Claim: (1) request Additional supporting data from the claimant; (2) submit a schedule to the parties indicating when the Architect expects to take action; (3) reject the Claim in whole or in part, stating reasons for rejection,; (4) recommend approval of the Claim by the other party or (5) suggest a compromise. The Architect shall notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim.

Add the following Subparagraph:

15.2.9 If a Claim has not been resolved after consideration of the foregoing and of further evidence presented by the parties or requested by the Architect, the Architect will notify the parties in writing that the Architect Architect's decision will be made within seven (7) days.

Upon expiration of the time period, the Architect will render to the parties the Architect's written decision relative to the Claim, including and change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. If there is a surety and there appears to be possibility of a Contractor's default, the Architect shall notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.

15.4 ARBITRATION

Delete Subparagraphs 15.4.1, 15.4.1.1, 15.4.3, and 15.4.2 in their entirety and all other references to arbitration.

Add the following Subparagraph:

15.4.1 Any claims, disputes, or matters arising out of this contract between the Contractor and the Owner or the Architect not settled by mediation, shall be submitted to a court of appropriate jurisdiction. It is understood and agreed that, in the event that any dispute, controversy, or conflict arises during the design and construction of the Project or following its completion, the parties hereto will cooperate in good faith, if possible, to resolve the issues without resorting to litigation. Should the parties be unable to reach agreement, an independent mediator may be selected by mutual consent of the parties to assist in a further effort to resolve the dispute. Furthermore, if the parties mutually agree to mediation, each party included in the mediation will bear an equal share of all costs related to the mediation.

"Any claims, disputes or matters arising out of the contract will be submitted to mediation only upon the mutual consent of the parties. In the event that mutual consent is not achieved, the parties are free to pursue any claims, disputes or matters in any manner allowed by law."

ARTICLE 16 - LABOR STANDARDS

16.1 PREVAILING WAGE RATES

16.1.1 Contractor and each Subcontractor shall pay to all laborers, workmen, and mechanics employed in execution of this Contract not less than rates set forth by law and as noted in Document 007350 Wage Rates, for each craft or type of workman or mechanic needed to execute Contract.

16.1.2 Determination of prevailing wages shall not be construed to prohibit payment of more than rates named.

END OF DOCUMENT

General Decision Number: TX190236 01/04/2019 TX236

Superseded General Decision Number: TX20180285

State: Texas

Construction Type: Building

County: Cameron County in Texas.

BUILDING CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS (does not include single family homes or apartments up to and including 4 stories).

Note: Under Executive Order (EO) 13658, an hourly minimum wage of $10.60 for calendar year 2019 applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2015. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must pay all workers in any classification listed on this wage determination at least $10.60 per hour (or the applicable wage rate listed on this wage determination, if it is higher) for all hours spent performing on the contract in calendar year 2019. If this contract is covered by the EO and a classification considered necessary for performance of work on the contract does not appear on this wage determination, the contractor must pay workers in that classification at least the wage rate determined through the conformance process set forth in 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(ii) (or the EO minimum wage rate, if it is higher than the conformed wage rate). The EO minimum wage rate will be adjusted annually. Please note that this EO applies to the above-mentioned types of contracts entered into by the federal government that are subject to the Davis-Bacon Act itself, but it does not apply to contracts subject only to the Davis-Bacon Related Acts, including those set forth at 29 CFR 5.1(a)(2)-(60). Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO is available at www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts.

Modification Number	Publication Date
0	01/04/2019

BOIL0074-003 01/01/2017

	Rates	Fringes
BOILERMAKER	$ 28.00	22.35

ENGI0178-005 06/01/2014

	Rates	Fringes
POWER EQUIPMENT OPERATOR		
(1) Tower Crane	$ 29.00	10.60
(2) Cranes with Pile Driving or Caisson Attachment and Hydraulic Crane 60 tons and above	$ 28.75	10.60
(3) Hydraulic cranes 59 Tons and under	$ 27.50	10.60

IRON0084-011 06/01/2018

	Rates	Fringes
IRONWORKER, ORNAMENTAL	$ 23.77	7.12

---

* PLUM0823-002 10/01/2018

	Rates	Fringes
PIPEFITTER (HVAC Pipe Installation Only)	$ 27.87	10.04

SUTX2014-011 07/21/2014

	Rates	Fringes
BRICKLAYER	$ 16.17	0.00
CARPENTER, Excludes Drywall Hanging, and Metal Stud Installation	$ 16.00	0.00
CEMENT MASON/CONCRETE FINISHER	$ 12.46	0.00
DRYWALL FINISHER/TAPER	$ 10.75	2.68
DRYWALL HANGER AND METAL STUD INSTALLER	$ 19.42	0.37
ELECTRICIAN (Low Voltage Wiring Only)	$ 13.50	0.68
ELECTRICIAN, Excludes Low Voltage Wiring	$ 14.00	0.54
INSULATOR - MECHANICAL (Duct, Pipe & Mechanical System Insulation)	$ 14.04	4.79
IRONWORKER, REINFORCING	$ 12.01	0.00
IRONWORKER, STRUCTURAL	$ 15.04	4.34
LABORER: Common or General	$ 8.87	0.00
LABORER: Mason Tender - Brick	$ 10.00	0.00
LABORER: Mason Tender - Cement/Concrete	$ 10.89	0.96
LABORER: Pipelayer	$ 11.00	3.47
LABORER: Roof Tearoff	$ 10.06	0.00
OPERATOR: Backhoe/Excavator/Trackhoe	$ 13.15	0.00
OPERATOR: Bobcat/Skid Steer/Skid Loader	$ 13.93	0.00
OPERATOR: Bulldozer	$ 18.29	1.31
OPERATOR: Drill	$ 16.22	0.34
OPERATOR: Forklift	$ 14.83	0.00

OPERATOR: Grader/Blade.....$ 13.07 0.00

OPERATOR: Loader.....$ 12.87 0.70

OPERATOR: Mechanic.....$ 17.00 0.00

OPERATOR: Paver (Asphalt, Aggregate, and Concrete).....$ 16.03 0.00

OPERATOR: Roller.....$ 12.70 0.00

PAINTER (Brush, Roller and Spray), Excludes Drywall Finishing/Taping.....$ 11.27 0.00

PIPEFITTER, Excludes HVAC Pipe Installation.....$ 14.67 2.50

PLUMBER, Excludes HVAC Pipe Installation.....$ 13.59 0.00

ROOFER.....$ 11.42 0.00

SHEET METAL WORKER (HVAC Duct Installation Only).....$ 18.40 2.12

SHEET METAL WORKER, Excludes HVAC Duct Installation.....$ 21.13 6.53

TILE FINISHER.....$ 11.22 0.00

TILE SETTER.....$ 12.15 0.00

TRUCK DRIVER: Dump Truck.....$ 12.39 1.18

TRUCK DRIVER: Flatbed Truck.....$ 19.65 8.57

TRUCK DRIVER: Semi-Trailer Truck.....$ 12.50 0.00

TRUCK DRIVER: Water Truck.....$ 12.00 4.11

WELDERS - Receive rate prescribed for craft performing operation to which welding is incidental.

==========

Note: Executive Order (EO) 13706, Establishing Paid Sick Leave for Federal Contractors applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2017. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must provide employees with 1 hour of paid sick leave for every 30 hours they work, up to 56 hours of paid sick leave each year. Employees must be permitted to use paid sick leave for their own illness, injury or other health-related needs, including preventive care; to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is ill, injured, or has other health-related needs, including preventive care; or for reasons resulting from, or to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is a victim of, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking. Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO

is available at www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts.

Unlisted classifications needed for work not included within the scope of the classifications listed may be added after award only as provided in the labor standards contract clauses (29CFR 5.5 (a) (1) (ii)).

The body of each wage determination lists the classification and wage rates that have been found to be prevailing for the cited type(s) of construction in the area covered by the wage determination. The classifications are listed in alphabetical order of "identifiers" that indicate whether the particular rate is a union rate (current union negotiated rate for local), a survey rate (weighted average rate) or a union average rate (weighted union average rate).

Union Rate Identifiers

A four letter classification abbreviation identifier enclosed in dotted lines beginning with characters other than "SU" or "UAVG" denotes that the union classification and rate were prevailing for that classification in the survey. Example: PLUM0198-005 07/01/2014. PLUM is an abbreviation identifier of the union which prevailed in the survey for this classification, which in this example would be Plumbers. 0198 indicates the local union number or district council number where applicable, i.e., Plumbers Local 0198. The next number, 005 in the example, is an internal number used in processing the wage determination. 07/01/2014 is the effective date of the most current negotiated rate, which in this example is July 1, 2014.

Union prevailing wage rates are updated to reflect all rate changes in the collective bargaining agreement (CBA) governing this classification and rate.

Survey Rate Identifiers

Classifications listed under the "SU" identifier indicate that no one rate prevailed for this classification in the survey and the published rate is derived by computing a weighted average rate based on all the rates reported in the survey for that classification. As this weighted average rate includes all rates reported in the survey, it may include both union and non-union rates. Example: SULA2012-007 5/13/2014. SU indicates the rates are survey rates based on a weighted average calculation of rates and are not majority rates. LA indicates the State of Louisiana. 2012 is the year of survey on which these classifications and rates are based. The next number, 007 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 5/13/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

Survey wage rates are not updated and remain in effect until a new survey is conducted.

Union Average Rate Identifiers

Classification(s) listed under the UAVG identifier indicate that no single majority rate prevailed for those classifications; however, 100% of the data reported for the

classifications was union data. EXAMPLE: UAVG-OH-0010 08/29/2014. UAVG indicates that the rate is a weighted union average rate. OH indicates the state. The next number, 0010 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 08/29/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

A UAVG rate will be updated once a year, usually in January of each year, to reflect a weighted average of the current negotiated/CBA rate of the union locals from which the rate is based.

WAGE DETERMINATION APPEALS PROCESS

1.) Has there been an initial decision in the matter? This can be:

* an existing published wage determination
* a survey underlying a wage determination
* a Wage and Hour Division letter setting forth a position on a wage determination matter
* a conformance (additional classification and rate) ruling

On survey related matters, initial contact, including requests for summaries of surveys, should be with the Wage and Hour Regional Office for the area in which the survey was conducted because those Regional Offices have responsibility for the Davis-Bacon survey program. If the response from this initial contact is not satisfactory, then the process described in 2.) and 3.) should be followed.

With regard to any other matter not yet ripe for the formal process described here, initial contact should be with the Branch of Construction Wage Determinations. Write to:

Branch of Construction Wage Determinations
Wage and Hour Division
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, DC 20210

2.) If the answer to the question in 1.) is yes, then an interested party (those affected by the action) can request review and reconsideration from the Wage and Hour Administrator (See 29 CFR Part 1.8 and 29 CFR Part 7). Write to:

Wage and Hour Administrator
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, DC 20210

The request should be accompanied by a full statement of the interested party's position and by any information (wage payment data, project description, area practice material, etc.) that the requestor considers relevant to the issue.

3.) If the decision of the Administrator is not favorable, an interested party may appeal directly to the Administrative Review Board (formerly the Wage Appeals Board). Write to:

Administrative Review Board

U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, DC 20210

4.) All decisions by the Administrative Review Board are final.

==========

END OF GENERAL DECISION

EMPLOYEE RIGHTS
UNDER THE DAVIS-BACON ACT

FOR LABORERS AND MECHANICS EMPLOYED ON FEDERAL OR FEDERALLY ASSISTED CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS

THE UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF LABOR WAGE AND HOUR DIVISION

PREVAILING WAGES	You must be paid not less than the wage rate listed in the Davis-Bacon Wage Decision posted with this Notice for the work you perform.
OVERTIME	You must be paid not less than one and one-half times your basic rate of pay for all hours worked over 40 in a work week. There are few exceptions.
ENFORCEMENT	Contract payments can be withheld to ensure workers receive wages and overtime pay due, and liquidated damages may apply if overtime pay requirements are not met. Davis-Bacon contract clauses allow contract termination and debarment of contractors from future federal contracts for up to three years. A contractor who falsifies certified payroll records or induces wage kickbacks may be subject to civil or criminal prosecution, fines and/or imprisonment.
APPRENTICES	Apprentice rates apply only to apprentices properly registered under approved Federal or State apprenticeship programs.
PROPER PAY	If you do not receive proper pay, or require further information on the applicable wages, contact the Contracting Officer listed below:

or contact the U.S. Department of Labor's Wage and Hour Division.

AIA® Document A101™ – 2017

Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor where the basis of payment is a Stipulated Sum

AGREEMENT made as of the day of in the year
(In words, indicate day, month and year.)

BETWEEN the Owner:
(Name, legal status, address and other information)

Brownsville Ind. School District
1900 E. Price Rd.
Brownsville, Texas 78521
Telephone Number: 956-554-2900
Fax Number: 956-554-2917

and the Contractor:
(Name, legal status, address and other information)

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

The parties should complete A101™–2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, contemporaneously with this Agreement. AIA Document A201™–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, is adopted in this document by reference. Do not use with other general conditions unless this document is modified.

for the following Project:
(Name, location and detailed description)

Brownsville Ind. School District
Hanna Early College High School New Gymnasium Facility
Brownsville, Texas

The Architect:
(Name, legal status, address and other information)

Gomez Mendez Saenz, Inc.
1150 Paredes Line Rd.
Brownsville, Texas 78521
Telephone Number: 956-546-0110
Fax Number: 956-546-0196

The Owner and Contractor agree as follows.

TABLE OF ARTICLES

ARTICLE 1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The Contract Documents consist of this Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary, and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of this Agreement, other documents listed in this Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of this Agreement, all of which form the Contract, and are as fully a part of the Contract as if attached to this Agreement or repeated herein. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. An enumeration of the Contract Documents, other than a Modification, appears in Article 9.

ARTICLE 2 THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT

The Contractor shall fully execute the Work described in the Contract Documents, except as specifically indicated in the Contract Documents to be the responsibility of others.

ARTICLE 3 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

§ 3.1 The date of commencement of the Work shall be:
(Check one of the following boxes.)

[ ] The date of this Agreement.

[ ] A date set forth in a notice to proceed issued by the Owner.

[ ] Established as follows:
(Insert a date or a means to determine the date of commencement of the Work.)

If a date of commencement of the Work is not selected, then the date of commencement shall be the date of this Agreement.

§ 3.2 The Contract Time shall be measured from the date of commencement of the Work.

§ 3.3 Substantial Completion

§ 3.3.1 Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall achieve Substantial Completion of the entire Work:
(Check one of the following boxes and complete the necessary information.)

[ ] Not later than ( ) calendar days from the date of commencement of the Work.

[ ] By the following date:

§ 3.3.2 Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, if portions of the Work are to be completed prior to Substantial Completion of the entire Work, the Contractor shall achieve Substantial Completion of such portions by the following dates:

Portion of Work	Substantial Completion Date

§ 3.3.3 If the Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion as provided in this Section 3.3, liquidated damages, if any, shall be assessed as set forth in Section 4.5.

ARTICLE 4 CONTRACT SUM

§ 4.1 The Owner shall pay the Contractor the Contract Sum in current funds for the Contractor's performance of the Contract. The Contract Sum shall be ($), subject to additions and deductions as provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2 Alternates

§ 4.2.1 Alternates, if any, included in the Contract Sum:

Item	Price

§ 4.2.2 Subject to the conditions noted below, the following alternates may be accepted by the Owner following execution of this Agreement. Upon acceptance, the Owner shall issue a Modification to this Agreement.
(Insert below each alternate and the conditions that must be met for the Owner to accept the alternate.)

Item	Price	Conditions for Acceptance

§ 4.3 Allowances, if any, included in the Contract Sum:
(Identify each allowance.)

Item	Price

§ 4.4 Unit prices, if any:
(Identify the item and state the unit price and quantity limitations, if any, to which the unit price will be applicable.)

Item	Units and Limitations	Price per Unit ($0.00)

§ 4.5 Liquidated damages, if any:
(Insert terms and conditions for liquidated damages, if any.)

§ 4.6 Other:
(Insert provisions for bonus or other incentives, if any, that might result in a change to the Contract Sum.)

ARTICLE 5 PAYMENTS

§ 5.1 Progress Payments

§ 5.1.1 Based upon Applications for Payment submitted to the Architect by the Contractor and Certificates for Payment issued by the Architect, the Owner shall make progress payments on account of the Contract Sum to the Contractor as provided below and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 5.1.2 The period covered by each Application for Payment shall be one calendar month ending on the last day of the month, or as follows:

§ 5.1.3 Provided that an Application for Payment is received by the Architect not later than the day of a month, the Owner shall make payment of the amount certified to the Contractor not later than the day of the month. If an Application for Payment is received by the Architect after the application date fixed above, payment of the amount certified shall be made by the Owner not later than ( ) days after the Architect receives the Application for Payment.
(Federal, state or local laws may require payment within a certain period of time.)

§ 5.1.4 Each Application for Payment shall be based on the most recent schedule of values submitted by the Contractor in accordance with the Contract Documents. The schedule of values shall allocate the entire Contract Sum among the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in such form, and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy, as the Architect may require. This schedule of values shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment.

§ 5.1.5 Applications for Payment shall show the percentage of completion of each portion of the Work as of the end of the period covered by the Application for Payment.

§ 5.1.6 In accordance with AIA Document A201™–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, and subject to other provisions of the Contract Documents, the amount of each progress payment shall be computed as follows:

§ 5.1.6.1 The amount of each progress payment shall first include:

.1 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to completed Work;

.2 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the completed construction, or, if approved in advance by the Owner, suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing; and

.3 That portion of Construction Change Directives that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified.

§ 5.1.6.2 The amount of each progress payment shall then be reduced by:

.1 The aggregate of any amounts previously paid by the Owner;

.2 The amount, if any, for Work that remains uncorrected and for which the Architect has previously withheld a Certificate for Payment as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017;

.3 Any amount for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or material supplier, unless the Work has been performed by others the Contractor intends to pay;

.4 For Work performed or defects discovered since the last payment application, any amount for which the Architect may withhold payment, or nullify a Certificate of Payment in whole or in part, as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017; and

.5 Retainage withheld pursuant to Section 5.1.7.

§ 5.1.7 Retainage

§ 5.1.7.1 For each progress payment made prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, the Owner may withhold the following amount, as retainage, from the payment otherwise due:
(Insert a percentage or amount to be withheld as retainage from each Application for Payment. The amount of retainage may be limited by governing law.)

§ 5.1.7.1.1 The following items are not subject to retainage:
(Insert any items not subject to the withholding of retainage, such as general conditions, insurance, etc.)

§ 5.1.7.2 Reduction or limitation of retainage, if any, shall be as follows:
(If the retainage established in Section 5.1.7.1 is to be modified prior to Substantial Completion of the entire Work, including modifications for Substantial Completion of portions of the Work as provided in Section 3.3.2, insert provisions for such modifications.)

§ 5.1.7.3 Except as set forth in this Section 5.1.7.3, upon Substantial Completion of the Work, the Contractor may submit an Application for Payment that includes the retainage withheld from prior Applications for Payment pursuant to this Section 5.1.7. The Application for Payment submitted at Substantial Completion shall not include retainage as follows:
(Insert any other conditions for release of retainage upon Substantial Completion.)

§ 5.1.8 If final completion of the Work is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor, the Owner shall pay the Contractor any additional amounts in accordance with Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017.

§ 5.1.9 Except with the Owner's prior approval, the Contractor shall not make advance payments to suppliers for materials or equipment which have not been delivered and stored at the site.

§ 5.2 Final Payment

§ 5.2.1 Final payment, constituting the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, shall be made by the Owner to the Contractor when

.1 the Contractor has fully performed the Contract except for the Contractor's responsibility to correct Work as provided in Article 12 of AIA Document A201–2017, and to satisfy other requirements, if any, which extend beyond final payment; and

.2 a final Certificate for Payment has been issued by the Architect.

§ 5.2.2 The Owner's final payment to the Contractor shall be made no later than 30 days after the issuance of the Architect's final Certificate for Payment, or as follows:

§ 5.3 Interest

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate stated below, or in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.
(Insert rate of interest agreed upon, if any.)

%

ARTICLE 6 DISPUTE RESOLUTION

§ 6.1 Initial Decision Maker

The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker pursuant to Article 15 of AIA Document A201–2017, unless the parties appoint below another individual, not a party to this Agreement, to serve as the Initial Decision Maker.
(If the parties mutually agree, insert the name, address and other contact information of the Initial Decision Maker, if other than the Architect.)

§ 6.2 Binding Dispute Resolution
For any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation pursuant to Article 15 of AIA Document A201–2017, the method of binding dispute resolution shall be as follows:
(Check the appropriate box.)

[ ] Arbitration pursuant to Section 15.4 of AIA Document A201–2017

[ ] Litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction

[ ] Other *(Specify)*

If the Owner and Contractor do not select a method of binding dispute resolution, or do not subsequently agree in writing to a binding dispute resolution method other than litigation, Claims will be resolved by litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction.

ARTICLE 7 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION
§ 7.1 The Contract may be terminated by the Owner or the Contractor as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017.

§ 7.1.1 If the Contract is terminated for the Owner's convenience in accordance with Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017, then the Owner shall pay the Contractor a termination fee as follows:
(Insert the amount of, or method for determining, the fee, if any, payable to the Contractor following a termination for the Owner's convenience.)

§ 7.2 The Work may be suspended by the Owner as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017.

ARTICLE 8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
§ 8.1 Where reference is made in this Agreement to a provision of AIA Document A201–2017 or another Contract Document, the reference refers to that provision as amended or supplemented by other provisions of the Contract Documents.

§ 8.2 The Owner's representative:
(Name, address, email address, and other information)

Mr. Kenneth Lieck
1900 E. Price Rd.
Brownsville, Texas 78521

Email Address: ken@bisd.us

§ 8.3 The Contractor's representative:
(Name, address, email address, and other information)

§ 8.4 Neither the Owner's nor the Contractor's representative shall be changed without ten days' prior notice to the other party.

§ 8.5 Insurance and Bonds

§ 8.5.1 The Owner and the Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance as set forth in AIA Document A101™–2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor where the basis of payment is a Stipulated Sum, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 8.5.2 The Contractor shall provide bonds as set forth in AIA Document A101™–2017 Exhibit A, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 8.6 Notice in electronic format, pursuant to Article 1 of AIA Document A201–2017, may be given in accordance with AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, if completed, or as otherwise set forth below:
(If other than in accordance with AIA Document E203–2013, insert requirements for delivering notice in electronic format such as name, title, and email address of the recipient and whether and how the system will be required to generate a read receipt for the transmission.)

§ 8.7 Other provisions:

ARTICLE 9 ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

§ 9.1 This Agreement is comprised of the following documents:

.1 AIA Document A101™–2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor
.2 AIA Document A101™–2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds
.3 AIA Document A201™–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction
.4 AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, dated as indicated below:
(Insert the date of the E203-2013 incorporated into this Agreement.)

.5 Drawings

Number	Title	Date

.6 Specifications

Section	Title	Date	Pages

.7 Addenda, if any:

Number	Date	Pages

Portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements are not part of the Contract Documents unless the bidding or proposal requirements are also enumerated in this Article 9.

.8 Other Exhibits:

(Check all boxes that apply and include appropriate information identifying the exhibit where required.)

[ ] AIA Document E204™–2017, Sustainable Projects Exhibit, dated as indicated below:
(Insert the date of the E204-2017 incorporated into this Agreement.)

[ ] The Sustainability Plan:

Title	Date	Pages

[ ] Supplementary and other Conditions of the Contract:

Document	Title	Date	Pages

.9 Other documents, if any, listed below:
(List here any additional documents that are intended to form part of the Contract Documents. AIA Document A201™–2017 provides that the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, the Contractor's bid or proposal, portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements, and other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, are not part of the Contract Documents unless enumerated in this Agreement. Any such documents should be listed here only if intended to be part of the Contract Documents.)

This Agreement entered into as of the day and year first written above.

OWNER *(Signature)*	**CONTRACTOR** *(Signature)*
Mr. Kenneth Lieck	
(Printed name and title)	*(Printed name and title)*

Init.
/

PAYMENT BOND

KNOW ALL MEN BY PRESENTS, that_____as Principal, and_____ as Surety, are hereby held and firmly bound unto the Owner _____ in the penal sum of: _____($_____) for the Payment, whereof, the said Principal and Surety (s) bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators and successors, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

The conditions of this obligation are such that whereas the Principal entered into a certain contract hereto attached, and made a part hereof, with the Owner, said contract described as follows:_____which contract is hereby referred to and made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if copied at length herein.

Now, therefor, the condition of this obligation is such, that if the said principal shall faithfully perform the work in accordance with the plans, specifications and contract documents, then this obligation shall be void; otherwise to remain in full force and effect.

Provided, however, that this bond is executed pursuant to the provisions of Article 5160 of the Revised Civil Statutes of Texas as amended by Acts of the 56th Legislature, Regular Session, 1959, and all liabilities of this bond shall be in accordance with the provisions of said Article to the same extent as if it where copied at length herein determined.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the above bounded parties have executed this instrument under their several seals this _____ day of _____, _____, the name and corporate seal of each corporate party being hereto affixed, and these presents duly signed by its undersigned representative pursuant to authority of its governing body.

Principal: Surety:

By_____ _____

PERFORMANCE BOND

KNOW ALL MEN BY PRESENTS, that_____as Principal, and _____as Surety, are hereby held and firmly bound unto the Owner_____in the penal sum of: _____($_____)
for the Payment, whereof, the said Principal and Surety (s) bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators and successors, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

The conditions of this obligation are such that whereas the Principal entered into a certain contract hereto attached, and made a part hereof, with the Owner, said contract described as follows:_____which contract is hereby referred to and made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if copied at length herein.

Now, therefor, the condition of this obligation is such, that if the said principal shall faithfully perform the work in accordance with the plans, specifications and contract documents, then this obligation shall be void; otherwise to remain in full force and effect.

Provided, however, that this bond is executed pursuant to the provisions of Article 5160 of the Revised Civil Statutes of Texas as amended by Acts of the 56th Legislature, Regular Session, 1959, and all liabilities of this bond shall be in accordance with the provisions of said Article to the same extent as if it where copied at length herein determined.

In the event Principal is in default under the contract as defined herein, Surety (s) will within fifteen (15) days of determination of such default take over and assume completion of said contract and become entitled to the Payment of the balance of the Contract price.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the above bounded parties have executed this instrument under their several seals this _____ day of _____, _____, the name and corporate seal of each corporate party being hereto affixed, and these presents duly signed by its undersigned representative pursuant to authority of its governing body.

Principal: Surety:
By_____ _____

RABA KISTNER

GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING STUDY

FOR

PROPOSED GYMNASIUM BUILDING ADDITION
BROWNSVILLE, CAMERON COUNTY, TEXAS

RABA KISTNER CONSULTANTS

Raba Kistner
Consultants, Inc.
800 E. Hackberry
McAllen, TX 78501
www.rkci.com

P 956 :: 682 :: 5332
F 956 :: 682 :: 5487
TBPE Firm F-3257
TBPLS Firm 10193784

Project No. ABA18-001-00
February 6, 2018

Mr. Fernando Villarreal, Project/Facilities Manager
Brownsville Independent School District (Brownsville ISD)
3750 Robindale Road
Brownsville, Texas 78521

Re: Geotechnical Engineering Study
Proposed Gymnasium Building Addition to the
Brownsville ISD Hanna Early College High School Campus
2615 E. Price Road
Brownsville, Cameron County, Texas

Dear Mr. Villarreal:

RABA KISTER Consultants Inc. (RKCI) is pleased to submit the report of our Geotechnical Engineering Study for the above-referenced project. This study was performed in accordance with **RKCI** Proposal No. PBA18-001-00, dated January 9, 2018. Written authorization for this study was received by our firm via electronic-mail attachment on Friday, January 12, 2018, by means of the Brownsville ISD Purchase Order (P.O.) No. P308578, dated January 12, 2018. The purpose of this study was to drill borings within the project site, to perform laboratory testing to classify and characterize subsurface conditions, and to prepare an engineering report presenting foundation design and construction recommendations for the proposed gymnasium structure addition.

The following report contains our foundation recommendations and considerations based on our current understanding of finished floor elevations, design tolerances and structural loads. If any of these parameters change, then there may be alternatives for value engineering of the foundation system, and **RKCI** recommends that a meeting be held with Brownsville ISD (CLIENT) and design team to evaluate these alternatives.

We appreciate the opportunity to be of professional service to you on this project. Should you have any questions about the information presented in this report, please call. We look forward to assisting Brownsville ISD during the construction of the project by conducting the construction materials engineering and testing services (quality assurance program).

Very truly yours,

RABA KISTNER CONSULTANTS, INC.

For Saul Cruz
Graduate Engineer

Katrin M. Leonard, P.E.
Associate

STATE OF TEXAS
KATRIN M. LEONARD
95810
LICENSED PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER
Feb 6, 2018.

Attachments

SC/KML

Copies Submitted: Above (1)
Green, Rubiano & Associates (1)
Gomez, Mendez, Saenz, Inc. (1)
Mejia & Rose, Inc. (1)

GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING STUDY

For

PROPOSED GYMNASIUM BUILDING ADDITION TO THE
BROWNSVILLE ISD HANNA EARLY COLLEGE HIGH SCHOOL CAMPUS
2615 E. PRICE ROAD
BROWNSVILLE, CAMERON COUNTY, TEXAS

Prepared for

BROWNSVILLE ISD
Brownsville, Texas

Prepared by

RABA KISTNER CONSULTANTS, INC.
McAllen, Texas

PROJECT NO. ABA18-001-00

February 6, 2018

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ATTACHMENTS

INTRODUCTION

RABA KSITNER Consultants Inc. (RKCI) has completed the authorized subsurface exploration and foundation analysis for the proposed gymnasium building and light standard additions to be located within the southeast portion of the existing Brownsville Independent School District (Brownsville ISD) Hanna Early College High School campus, situated at 2615 E. Price Road in Brownsville, Cameron County, Texas. This report briefly describes the procedures utilized during this study and presents our findings along with our recommendations for foundation design and construction considerations.

PROJECT DESCRIPTION

We understand that the project will consist of the design and construction of a single-story, stand-alone, approximately 35,000 ft^2 gymnasium building addition along with its associated light standards. The building addition is planned to be located within the southeast portion of the existing educational campus, situated at 2615 E. Price Road in Brownsville, Cameron County, Texas. The proposed building addition is expected to create relatively light to moderate loads to be carried by the foundation system, which is anticipated to consist of either a shallow or deep foundation system. The proposed light standards are expected to create relatively moderate loads to be carried by the foundation systems, which are anticipated to consist of drilled, straight-shaft pier, deep foundation systems.

For purposes of this geotechnical engineering report, the finished grade elevation (FGE) of the proposed structure addition was assumed to be 12 inches above the ground surface elevation existing at the time of our study, since no site grading information was provided to us at the time of the preparation of this report.

LIMITATIONS

This engineering report has been prepared in accordance with accepted Geotechnical Engineering practices in the region of South Texas and for the use of the Brownsville ISD (CLIENT) and its representatives for design purposes. This report may not contain sufficient information for purposes of other parties or other uses. This report is not intended for use in determining construction means and methods.

The recommendations submitted in this report are based on the data obtained from two borings drilled within the subject site and our understanding of the project information provided to us by others, and the assumption that site grading will result in only minor changes in the topography existing at the time of our study. If the project information described in this report is incorrect, is altered, or if new information is available, we should be retained to review and modify our recommendations.

This report may not reflect the actual variations of the subsurface conditions across the site. The nature and extent of variations across the site may not become evident until construction commences. The construction process itself may also alter subsurface conditions. If variations appear evident at the time of construction, it may be necessary to reevaluate our recommendations after performing on-site observations and tests to establish the engineering impact of the variations.

The scope of our Geotechnical Engineering Study does not include an environmental assessment of the air, soil, rock, or water conditions either on or adjacent to the site. No environmental opinions are presented in this report.

If final grade elevations are significantly different from the grades assumed in this report, our office should be informed about these changes. If needed and/or desired, we will reexamine our analyses and make supplemental recommendations.

BORINGS AND LABORATORY TESTS

Subsurface conditions at the subject site were evaluated by three borings drilled within the site, as shown in the following table:

Proposed Structure	Number of Borings	Depth, ft. *	Boring Identification
Building Addition/Light Standards	2	25	B-1 and B-2
	1	50	B-3

* below the ground surface elevations existing at the time of our study.

The borings (designated as "B-") were drilled on January 18, 2018, at the locations shown on the Boring Location Map, Figure 1. The boring locations are approximate and were located in the field by an **RKCI** representative based on an undated site plan titled "Hanna ECHS New Gymnasium Facility" and provided to our office by the CLIENT via electronic-mail attachment on January 8, 2018. The borings were drilled to the depths indicated in the previous table using a truck-mounted, rotary-drilling rig. The borings were conducted utilizing straight flight augers in combination with mud rotary drilling techniques and were backfilled with the auger cuttings following completion of the drilling operations. During the drilling operations, Split-Spoon (with Standard Penetration Test, SPT) and Shelby tube (ST) samples were collected.

The SPT and ST samples were obtained in accordance with accepted standard practices and the penetration test results are presented as "blows per foot" on the boring logs. Representative portions of the samples were sealed in containers to reduce moisture loss, labeled, packaged, and transported to our laboratory for subsequent testing and classification.

In the laboratory, each sample was evaluated and visually classified by a member of our Geotechnical Engineering staff in general accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System (USCS). The geotechnical engineering properties of the strata were evaluated by the following laboratory tests: natural moisture content, Atterberg limits, a corrosivity testing (including pH, electrical resistivity, and sulfate and chloride content), and percent passing a No. 200 sieve determinations.

The corrosion potential of the subsurface soils to concrete and uncoated steel was evaluated by conducting laboratory analyses (pH, electrical resistivity, sulfate content and chloride content) on a single soil sample obtained from the building addition footprint area, from an approximate depth of 1 ft below the ground surface elevations existing at the time of our study.

The results of the laboratory tests, with the exception of the corrosivity testing, are presented in graphical or numerical form on the boring logs illustrated on Figures 2 through 4. A key to the classification of terms and symbols used on the logs is presented on Figure 5. The results of the laboratory and field testing are also tabulated on Figure 6 for ease of reference.

Standard penetration test results are noted as "blows per ft" on the boring logs and Figure 6, where "blows per ft" refers to the number of blows by a falling hammer required for 1 ft of penetration into the soil.

Samples will be retained in our laboratory for 30 days after submittal of this report. Other arrangements may be provided at the request of the CLIENT.

GENERAL SITE CONDITIONS

SITE DESCRIPTION

The subject site for the proposed structure additions is located within the southeast portion of the existing Brownsville ISD Hanna Early College High School campus, situated at 2615 E. Price Road in Brownsville, Cameron County, Texas. At the time of our field activities, the project site can be described as an undeveloped, grass-covered tract of land. In general, the topography at the subject site is relatively flat, with an estimated vertical relief of about 3 ft across the site. Surface drainage is estimated to be fair-to-poor. The subject site is bounded to the north by existing soccer fields; to the west by the existing school campus; to the east by an undeveloped tract of land; and to the south by an existing asphalt-paved, parking lot.

GEOLOGY

A cursory review of the Geologic Atlas of Texas, (McAllen-Brownsville Sheet, dated 1976), published by the Bureau of Economic Geology at the University of Texas at Austin, indicates that the subject site appears to be located within Alluvium (floodplain) deposits consisting of clays, silts, sands, and gravel deposits of the Quaternary epoch (Holocene period).

According to the Soil Survey of Cameron County, Texas, published by the United States Department of Agriculture - Soil Conservation Service, in cooperation with the Texas Agricultural Experiment Station, the project site appears to be located within the Laredo-Olmito soil association consisting of nearly level to gently sloping, well-drained and moderately well-drained, silty clay loams and silty clays. The corresponding soil symbols appear to be LG and ON, Laredo-Urban land complex and Olmito-Urban land complex, respectively.

SEISMIC COEFFICIENTS

Based upon a review of Section 1613 *Earthquake Loads* of the 2012 International Building Code (IBC), the following information has been summarized for seismic considerations associated with this site.

- Site Class Definition (Chapter 20 of the American Society of Civil Engineers [ASCE] 7): **Class D**. Based on the soil borings conducted for this investigation, the upper 100 feet of soil may be may be characterized as a stiff soil profile.
- Risk-Targeted Maximum Considered Earthquake Ground Motion Response Accelerations for the Conterminous United Stated of a 0.2-Second, Spectral Response Acceleration (5% of Critical Damping) (Figure 1613.3.1(1)): **S_s = 0.035g**. Note that the value taken from Figure 1613.3.1(1) is based on Site Class B and is adjusted as per 1613.3.3 below.
- Risk-Targeted Maximum Considered Earthquake Ground Motion Response Accelerations for the Conterminous United States of a 1-Second, Spectral Response Acceleration (5% of Critical Damping) (Figure 1613.3.1(2)): **S_1 = 0.013g**. Note that the value taken from Figure 1613.3.1(2) is based on Site Class B and is adjusted as per 1613.3.3 below.
- Value of Site Coefficient (Table 1613.3.3 (1)): *from worksheet* **F_a = 1.6**.
- Value of Site Coefficient (Table 1613.3.3 (2)): *from worksheet* **F_v = 2.4**.

The Maximum Considered Earthquake Spectral Response Accelerations are as follows:

- 0.2 sec., adjusted based on equation 16-37: *from worksheet* **S_{ms} = 0.056g**.
- 1 sec., adjusted based on equation 16-38: *from worksheet* **S_{m1} = 0.032g**.

The Design Spectral Response Acceleration Parameters are as follows:

- 0.2 sec., based on equation 16-39: *from worksheet* **S_{DS} = 0.037g**.
- 1 sec., based on equation 16-40: *from worksheet* **S_{D1} = 0.021g**.

Based on the parameters listed above, the critical nature of the structure addition, Tables 1613.3.5(1) and 1613.3.5(2), and calculations performed using a Java program titled, "Seismic Hazard Curves and Uniform Hazard Response Spectra" published by the United States Geological Survey (USGS) website, the Seismic Design Category for both short period and 1 second response accelerations is **A**. As part of the assumptions required to complete the calculations, a Risk Category of **III** was selected.

STRATIGRAPHY

On the basis of the borings, the subsurface stratigraphy at this site can be described by a single generalized stratum with similar physical and engineering characteristics. This stratum consists of dark brown to brown to light brown, firm to very stiff, lean clay soils and fat clay soils with roots, black ferrous stains, and calcareous nodules. This layer was noted in the borings from the ground surface elevations existing at the time of our drilling operations, extending down to at least the termination depths of the borings. Measured moisture contents range from about 15 to 36 percent. This stratum is classified as moderately plastic to highly plastic, with measured plasticity indices ranging from 13 to 36 percent. Percent passing a No. 200 sieve tests demonstrate percent fines ranging from 90 to 98 percent. Undrained shear strength values ranging from about 0.2 to 0.6 tons per square foot (tsf) were measured, based on the unconfined compression strength tests. Dry unit weight values ranging from about 90 to 94 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) were measured for this layer. SPT N-values ranging from 6 blows to 22 blows per foot of penetration

were measured for this stratum. These soils are classified as CL soils and/or CH soils in general accordance with the USCS.

CORROSIVITY POTENTIAL

The corrosivity characteristics of the upper subsurface soils within the proposed building addition footprint area was preliminarily evaluated using a pH test, electrical resistivity test, sulfate content test, and chloride content test. This test was conducted on a single composite soil specimen obtained from the proposed building addition footprint area, from the depth presented on the following table. Results are summarized in the following table:

Composite Sample Identification	Approximate Depth, ft *	Electrical Resistivity (ohm-cm)	pH	Sulfate Content (ppm)	Chloride Content (mg/kg)
Building Addition Footprint Area	1	736	8.41	160	95.0

*below the ground surface elevations existing at the time of our study

The result of the laboratory electrical resistivity test conducted on the composite soil sample indicates an extremely corrosive potential for corrosion to buried metals. Laboratory chloride content test results indicated a moderately corrosive potential for corrosion to buried metals. According to the American Concrete Institute (ACI) document titled “Guide to Durable Concrete” (ACI 201), concrete usually provides protection against rusting of adequately embedded steel because of the strongly alkaline environment of the Portland cement paste. The adequacy of that protection is dependent upon the amount of the concrete cover, the quality of the concrete, the details of the construction, and the degree of exposure to chlorides from concrete-making components and external sources. It is recommended that no chloride-containing admixtures be utilized in the concrete mixes for this project. Consideration should also be given to implementing corrosion protection measures for buried metals in direct contact with the soil, such as coating metal structural elements, pipings, and/or fittings. The pH laboratory test results indicate that the surficial native soils are moderately alkaline. On the basis of the laboratory sulfate content test results, the subsurface soils appear to result in a mild exposure of concrete to corrosion. According to these laboratory test results, the native soils result in a Class 0 severity of potential exposure of concrete to corrosion. The ACI 201 Guide indicates no special cementitious material requirements for sulfate resistance for a Class 0 exposure.

GROUNDWATER

Groundwater was observed in the borings at depths ranging from 7-1/2 ft to 8 ft below the ground surface elevations existing at the time of our study. The boreholes were left open for the duration of the field exploration phase to allow monitoring of water levels. However, it is possible for groundwater to exist beneath this site on a transient basis following periods of precipitation. Fluctuations in groundwater levels occur due to variations in rainfall and surface water run-off. The construction process itself may also cause variations in the groundwater level.

Based on the findings in the borings and on our experience in this region, we believe that groundwater seepage encountered during site earthwork activities and shallow foundation construction may be controlled using temporary earthen berms and conventional sump-and-pump dewatering methods. For deep foundation excavations, this could include the use of temporary casing to reduce groundwater seepage and sloughing of the subsurface soils.

FOUNDATION ANALYSIS

EXPANSIVE SOIL-RELATED MOVEMENTS

The anticipated ground movements due to swelling of the underlying soils at this site were estimated for slab-on-grade construction using the empirical procedure, Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT) Tex-124-E, Method for Determining the Potential Vertical Rise (PVR). PVR values on the order of about 2 inches were estimated for the stratigraphic conditions encountered in the borings. The PVR value was estimated using a surcharge load of 1 pound per square inch (psi) for the concrete slab and dry moisture conditions within the regional zone of seasonal moisture variation.

The TxDOT method of estimating expansive soil-related movements is based on empirical correlations utilizing the measured plasticity indices and assuming typical seasonal fluctuations in moisture content. If desired, other methods of estimating expansive soil-related movements are available, such as estimations based on swell tests and/or soil-suction analyses. However, the performance of these tests and the detailed analysis of expansive soil-related movements were beyond the scope of the current study. It should also be noted that actual movements can exceed the calculated PVR values due to isolated changes in moisture content (such as due to leaks, landscape watering...) or if water seeps into the soils to greater depths than the assumed active zone depth due to deep trenching or excavations.

PVR REDUCTION RECOMMENDATIONS

As stated previously, for purposes of this geotechnical engineering report, the FGE of the proposed structure addition was assumed to be 12 inches above the ground surface elevation existing at the time of our study, since no site grading information was provided to us at the time of the preparation of this report.

To reduce expansive, soil-related movements in at-grade construction beneath the structure footprint area to about 1 inch, we recommend to remove about 2-1/2 ft (30 inches) of the upper clay soils, and to replace them with properly-compacted, suitable, select fill materials within the proposed structure footprint area up to its assumed FGE of 12 inches above the ground surface elevations at the time of our study. Keep in mind that the estimated PVR values are computed based on the recommendations for the selection and placement of suitable, select fill materials which are addressed in the *Foundation Construction Considerations* section of the report.

Drainage Considerations When overexcavation and select fill replacement is selected as a method to reduce the potential for expansive, soil-related movements at any site, considerations of surface and subsurface drainage may be crucial to construction and adequate foundation performance

of the soil-supported building addition. Filling an excavation in relatively impervious plastic clays with relatively pervious select fill material creates a "bathtub" beneath the building addition, which can result in ponding or trapped water within the fill unless good surface and subsurface drainage is provided.

Water entering the fill surfaces during construction or entering the fill exposed beyond the building addition lines after construction may create problems with fill moisture control during compaction and increased access for moisture to the underlying expansive clays both during and after construction.

Several surface and subsurface drainage design features and construction precautions can be used to limit problems associated with fill moisture. These features and precautions may include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Installing berms or swales on the uphill side of the construction areas to divert surface runoff away from the excavation/fill area during construction;
- Sloping of the top of the subgrade with a minimum downward slope of 1.5 percent out to the base of a dewatering trench located beyond the building addition's perimeter;
- Sloping the surface of the fill during construction to promote runoff of rain water to drainage features until the final lift is placed;
- Sloping of a final, well-maintained, impervious clay or pavement surface (downward away from the proposed building addition) over the select fill material and any perimeter drain extending beyond the building addition lines, with a minimum gradient of 6 in. in 5 ft;
- Constructing final surface drainage patterns to prevent ponding and limit surface water infiltration at and around the building addition's perimeter;
- Locating the water-bearing utilities, roof drainage outlets, and irrigation spray heads outside of the select fill and perimeter drain boundaries; and
- Raising the elevation of the ground level floor slab.

Details relative to the extent and implementation of these considerations must be evaluated on a project-specific basis by all members of the project design team. Many variables that influence fill drainage considerations may depend on factors that are not fully developed in the early stages of design. For this reason, drainage of the fill should be given consideration at the earliest possible stages of the project.

FOUNDATION RECOMMENDATIONS

SITE GRADING

Site grading plans can result in changes in almost all aspects of foundation recommendations. We have prepared the foundation recommendations based on the ground surface elevations and the stratigraphic conditions encountered in the borings at the time of our study. If site grading plans differ from the grades existing at the time of our study by more than plus or minus 1 ft, we must be retained to review the site grading plans prior to bidding the project for construction. This will enable us to

provide input for any changes in our original recommendations, which may be required as a result of site grading operations or other considerations.

SHALLOW FOUNDATIONS

The proposed gymnasium building structure addition may be founded on conventional spread and/or continuous footing foundations in conjunction with a fill-supported concrete floor slabs, provided that the shallow foundation type(s) can be designed to withstand the estimated soil-related movements (see the *Foundation Analyses* section of this report) without impairing either the structural or the operational performance of the gymnasium building addition.

Allowable Soil-Bearing Capacity

Shallow foundations founded on new, properly-compacted, suitable, select fill materials may be proportioned using the design parameters shown in the following table:

Minimum depth below FGE:	24 in.
Minimum beam width:	12 in.
Maximum allowable soil-bearing pressure for continuous footings – grade beams:	1,700 psf
Maximum allowable soil-bearing pressure for spread footings – widened beams:	2,100 psf

Where psf = pounds per square feet

The maximum allowable soil-bearing pressures presented previously will provide a factor of safety of about 3 with respect to the measured soil shear strengths, provided that the subgrade is prepared in accordance with the recommendations outlined in the *Site Preparation* subsection of the *Foundation Construction Considerations* section of this report, and that the site improvement procedure included in the *PVR Reduction Recommendations* subsection of the *Foundation Analyses* section of this report is implemented. Provided that the site improvement procedure recommended in this report is properly-implemented, then it is anticipated that total settlements will be in the order of about 1 inch. Differential settlements typically are estimated to be about one-half the total estimated settlement for most subsurface conditions.

Furthermore, the design parameters presented on the previous table are contingent upon the fill materials being selected and placed in accordance with the recommendations presented in the *Select Fill* subsection of the *Foundation Construction Considerations* section of this report. Should select fill selection and placement differ from the recommendations presented herein, **RKCI** should be informed of the deviations in order to reevaluate our recommendations and design criteria.

Wire Reinforcement Institute (WRI) Criteria

Beam and slab-on-fill foundations are sometimes designed using criteria developed by the WRI. On the basis of the subsurface stratigraphy encountered, a general effective plasticity index for the proposed

structure addition of 29 percent and a climatic rating (C_w) of 15 should be utilized for the design of the proposed structure addition's foundation.

AREA FLATWORK

It should be noted that ground-supported flatwork such as walkways, courtyards, etc. will be subject to the same magnitude of potential soil-related movements as discussed previously (see *Expansive Soil-Related Movement* section). Thus, where these types of elements abut rigid building foundations or isolated/suspended structures, differential movements should be anticipated. As a minimum, we recommend that flexible joints be provided where such elements abut the main structure to allow for differential movement at these locations. Where the potential for differential movement is objectionable, it may be beneficial to consider methods of reducing anticipated movements.

DEEP FOUNDATIONS

Drilled, straight-shaft piers should be considered for the proposed light standards. We recommend extending the piers to a minimum depth of 15 ft below the ground surface elevation existing at the time of our study or below final grade, whichever is greater. The piers may be designed as both end bearing units and as friction units utilizing the maximum allowable end-bearing pressures and the allowable side shear resistance values tabulated in the following tables:

Approximate Depth Below the Ground Surface Elevations Existing at the Time of our Study (ft)	Maximum Allowable End-Bearing Pressure (ksf)
15 to 25	3.0
26 and below	5.5

Depth Range Below the Ground Surface Elevations Existing at the Time of our Study (ft)	Allowable Side Shear Resistance (ksf)
0 to 8	0
8 to 15	0.20
15 to 25	0.25
25 to 35	0.45
Below 35	0.50

If designed as skin friction units, the side shear resistance value shown previously should be used for the portion of the shaft extending below a depth of 8 ft. To proportion the drilled piers for axial compression, the side shear resistance should be neglected along the portion of the shaft located one shaft diameter from the bottom of the pier. The allowable values for end bearing and side shear resistance were evaluated using factors of safety of 3 and 2, respectively, with respect to the measured soil shear strength.

Based on the 50-ft maximum depth of exploration, pier depths should not exceed a depth of 45-ft below the ground surface elevation existing at the time of our study.

Pier Shafts

The pier shafts will be subjected to potential uplift forces if the surrounding expansive soils within the active zone are subjected to alternate drying and wetting conditions. The maximum potential uplift force acting on the shafts may be estimated by:

$F_u = 30\ D$ (considering the existing soil conditions)

$F_u = 21\ D$ (considering the implementation of the site improvement to reduce the estimated PVR related values to about 1 inch)

where: F_u = uplift force in kips; and
D = diameter of the shaft in feet.

It is recommended that the pier shafts be a minimum of 24 inches in diameter to facilitate reinforcing steel placement and shaft observation prior to placing concrete.

Allowable Uplift Resistance

Resistance to uplift forces exerted on the drilled, straight-shaft piers will be provided by the sustained compressive axial force (dead load) plus the allowable uplift resistance provided by the soil. The resistance provided by the soil depends on the shear strength of the soils adjacent to the pier shaft and below the depth of the active zone. The allowable uplift resistance values provided by the soils at this site are tabulated on the following table. These values were evaluated using a factor of safety of 2.

Depth Range Below the Pavement Surface Elevations Existing at the Time of our Study (ft)	Allowable Uplift Resistance (ksf)
0 to 8	0
8 to 15	0.15
15 to 25	0.17
25 to 35	0.30
Below 35	0.35

Reinforcing steel will be required for the entire length of each pier shaft to withstand a net force equal to the uplift force minus the sustained compressive load carried by the pier. We recommend that the pier be reinforced to withstand this net force or an amount equal to 1 percent of the cross-sectional area of the shaft, whichever is greater.

Pier Spacing

Where possible, we recommend that the drilled, straight-shaft piers be spaced at a center-to-center distance of at least three shaft diameters. Such spacing will not require a reduction in the load carrying capacity of the individual piers.

If design and/or construction restraints require that piers be spaced closer than the above recommended spacing, **RKCI** must be retained to re-evaluate the allowable bearing capacity presented above for the individual piers. Reductions in load-carrying capacities may be required depending upon individual loading and spacing conditions.

Lateral Resistance

Resistance to lateral loads and the expected pier behavior under the applied loading conditions will depend not only on subsurface conditions, but also on loading conditions, the pier size, and the engineering properties of the pier. The pier should be analyzed to determine the resulting lateral deflections, maximum bending moments, and ultimate bending moments. This type of analysis is typically performed utilizing a computer analysis program and usually requires a trial and error procedure to appropriately size the pier and meet project tolerances.

To assist the structural engineer in this procedure, we are providing the following subsurface parameters for use in analysis. These parameters are in accordance with the input requirements of one of the more commonly used computer programs for laterally-loaded piles, the "L-Pile Plus" program. If a different program is used for analysis, different parameters may be required and different limitations may be required than what was assumed in selecting the parameters given in the following table. Thus, if a program other than "L-Pile Plus" is used, **RKCI** must be notified of the analysis method and the required soil parameters, so that we can review and revise our recommendations if required. The soil-related parameters required for input into the "L-Pile Plus" program are summarized in the following table:

Soil Type	Approximate Depth Range (ft) *	c, tsf	ϕ (°)	ε_{50}	k_s, (pci)	k_c, (pci)	γ, (pcf)
Clay Soils (Above the Groundwater Table)	0 to 8	0.4	0	0.010	100	--	95
Clay Soils (Below the Groundwater Table)	8 to 15	0.4	0	0.010	100	--	38
Clay Soils (Below the Groundwater Table)	15 to 25	0.5	0	0.010	100	--	38
Clay Soils (Below the Groundwater Table)	25 to 35	0.9	0	0.007	500	200	43
Clay Soils (Below the Groundwater Table)	35 to 45	1.1	0	0.005	1,000	800	48

* below the ground surface elevation existing at the time of our study.

Where:

c = undrained shear strength
ϕ= angle of internal friction
ε_{50} = strain at 50 percent
k_s = horizontal modulus of subgrade reaction (static)
k_c = horizontal modulus of subgrade reaction (cyclic)
γ = density (effective unit weight)

The values presented above for subgrade modulus and the strain at 50% are based on recommended values for the "L-Pile Plus" computer program for the strength of the subsurface conditions encountered in the borings, and are not necessarily based on laboratory test results.

The parameters presented above in the table **do not** include factors of safety. Consequently, it is recommended that a factor of safety of at least 2 be introduced to the analysis by doubling the applied lateral loads and moments.

FOUNDATION CONSTRUCTION CONSIDERATIONS

SITE DRAINAGE

Drainage is an important key to the successful performance of any foundation. Good surface drainage should be established prior to and maintained after construction to help prevent water from ponding within or adjacent to the structure's foundation and to facilitate rapid drainage away from the structure addition's foundation. Failure to provide positive drainage away from the structure addition can result in localized differential vertical movements in soil supported foundation and floor slab (which can in turn result in cracking in the sheetrock partition walls, and shifting of ceiling tiles, as well as improper operation of windows and doors).

Current ordinances, in compliance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), may dictate maximum slopes for walks and drives around and into new buildings. These slope requirements can result in drainage problems for buildings supported on expansive soils. We recommend that, on all sides of the building addition, the maximum permissible slope be provided away from the building addition.

Also to help control drainage in the vicinity of the structure addition, we recommend that roof/gutter downspouts and landscaping irrigation systems not be located adjacent to the structure addition's foundation. Where a select fill overbuild is provided outside of the floor slab/foundation footprint, the surface should be sealed with an impermeable layer (pavement or clay cap) to reduce infiltration of both irrigation and surface waters. Careful consideration should also be given to the location of water bearing utilities, as well as to provisions for drainage in the event of leaks in water bearing utilities. All leaks should be immediately repaired.

Other drainage and subsurface drainage issues are discussed in the *Expansive Soil-Related Movements* section of this report.

SITE PREPARATION

The proposed structure addition area and all areas to support select fill should be stripped of all vegetation and/or organic topsoil down to a minimum depth of 8 inches and extending a minimum of 5 ft beyond the footprint of the proposed structure addition. Further, as discussed in a previous section of this report, we recommend that the PVR reduction recommendation be utilized to reduce expansive, soil-related movements to about 1 inch.

Beyond the building pad footprint, existing utilities and trenches that are not removed should be properly abandoned. This would include grouting abandoned pipes and sealing off granular fill in trenches to prevent the migration and seepage of water into the foundation areas of the new buildings.

Exposed subgrades should be thoroughly proofrolled in order to locate and densify any weak, compressible zones. A minimum of 5 passes of a fully-loaded dump truck or a similar heavily-loaded piece of construction equipment should be used for planning purposes. Proofrolling operations should be observed by the Geotechnical Engineer or his/her representative to document subgrade conditions and preparation. Weak or soft areas identified during proofrolling activities should be treated with hydrated lime or Portland cement or removed and replaced with suitable, compacted select fill in accordance with the recommendations presented under the *Select Fill* subsection of this section of the report. If the treatment option is selected, the weak or soft areas may be mixed with hydrated lime or Portland cement down to a minimum depth of 8 inches in order to aid in drying the soils and develop a firm working surface. Proofrolling operations and any excavation/backfill activities should be observed by **RKCI** representatives to document subgrade preparation.

Upon completion of the proofrolling operations and just prior to fill placement or slab construction, the exposed subgrade should be moisture conditioned by scarifying to a minimum depth of 6 in. and

recompacting to a minimum of 98 percent of the maximum density determined from the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) D698, Compaction Test. The moisture content of the subgrade should be maintained within the range of optimum moisture content to three percentage points above the optimum moisture content until permanently covered.

SELECT FILL

Materials used as select fill for final site grading preferably should be crushed stone or gravel aggregate. We recommend that materials specified for use as select fill meet the TxDOT 2014 Standard Specification for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges, Item 247, Flexible Base, Type A through Type E, Grades 1, 2, 3, and 5.

Alternatively, the following soils, as classified according to the USCS, may be considered satisfactory for use as select fill materials at this site: SC, GC, CL, and combinations of these soils. In addition to the USCS classification, alternative select fill materials shall have a maximum liquid limit of 40 percent, a plasticity index between 7 and 18 percent, and a maximum particle size not exceeding 4 inches or one-half the loose lift thickness, whichever is smaller. In addition, if these materials are utilized, grain size analyses and Atterberg Limits must be performed during placement at a minimum rate of one test each per 5,000 cubic yards of material due to the high degree of variability associated with pit-run materials.

If the above listed alternative materials are being considered for bidding purposes, the materials should be submitted to the Geotechnical Engineer for pre-approval a minimum of 10 working days or more prior to the bid date. Failure to do so will be the responsibility of the General Contractor. The General Contractor will also be responsible for ensuring that the properties of all delivered alternate select fill materials are similar to those of the pre-approved submittal. It should also be noted that when using alternative fill materials, difficulties may be experienced with respect to moisture control during and subsequent to fill placement, as well as with erosion, particularly when exposed to inclement weather. This may result in sloughing of beam trenches and/or pumping of the fill materials.

Soils classified as CH, MH, ML, SM, GM, OH, OL, and Pt under the USCS and not meeting the alternative select fill material requirements, are **not** considered suitable for use as select fill materials at this site. The native soils at this site are **not** considered suitable for use as select fill materials.

Select fill should be placed in loose lifts **not** exceeding 8 in. in thickness and compacted to at least 98 percent of the maximum dry density as determined by ASTM D698. The moisture content of the fill should be maintained within the range of two percentage points below the optimum moisture content to two percentage points above the optimum moisture content until the final lift of fill is permanently covered.

The select fill should be properly compacted in accordance with these recommendations and tested by **RKCI** personnel for compaction as specified.

SHALLOW FOUNDATION EXCAVATIONS

Shallow foundation excavations should be observed by the Geotechnical Engineer or his representative prior to placement of reinforcing steel and concrete. This is necessary to document that the bearing soils at the bottom of the excavations are similar to those encountered in the borings and that excessive soft materials and water are not present in the excavations. If soft pockets of soil are encountered in the foundation excavations, they should be removed and replaced with a compacted non-expansive fill material or lean concrete up to the design foundation bearing elevations.

Disturbance from foot traffic and from the accumulation of excess water can result in losses in bearing capacity and increased settlement. If inclement weather is anticipated at the time construction, consideration should be given to protecting the bottoms of beam trenches by placing a thin mud mat (layer of flowable fill or lean concrete) at the bottom of trenches immediately following excavation. This will reduce disturbance from foot traffic and will impede the infiltration of surface water. All necessary precautions should be implemented to protect open excavations from the accumulation of surface water runoff and rain.

DRILLED PIERS

Drilled pier excavations must be examined by an **RKCI** representative who is familiar with the geotechnical aspects of the subsurface stratigraphy, the structural configuration, foundation design details, and assumptions prior to placing concrete. This is to observe that:

- The shaft has been excavated to the specified dimensions at the correct depth established by the previously mentioned criteria;
- The shaft has been drilled plumb within specified tolerances along its total length; and
- Excessive cuttings, buildup and soft, compressible materials have been removed from the bottom of the excavation.

Drilled pier excavation observations should be scheduled with the Geotechnical Engineer a minimum of 48 hours prior to pier drilling. Failure to do so will be the responsibility of the General Contractor.

REINFORCEMENT AND CONCRETE PLACEMENT

Reinforcing steel should be checked for size and placement prior to concrete placement. Placement of concrete should be accomplished as soon as possible after excavation to reduce changes in the moisture content or the state of stress of the foundation materials. Concrete should not be placed in the pier excavations without the approval of the Engineer. No foundation element should be left open overnight without concreting.

TEMPORARY CASING

Groundwater was observed during drilling operations at a depth as shallow as 7-1/2 ft below the ground surface elevations existing at the time of our study. Therefore, groundwater seepage and/or side sloughing will be encountered during pier construction at this site depending on climatic conditions. Therefore, we recommend that the bid documents require the foundation contractor to specify unit costs for different lengths of casing and/or slurry drilling techniques which will be required.

EXCAVATION SLOPING AND BENCHING

Excavations that extend to or below a depth of 5 ft below construction grade shall require the General Contractor to develop a trench safety plan to protect personnel entering the trench or trench vicinity. The collection of specific geotechnical data and the development of such a plan, which could include designs for sloping and benching or various types of temporary shoring, are beyond the scope of the current study. Any such designs and safety plans shall be developed in accordance with current Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) guidelines and other applicable industry standards.

EXCAVATION EQUIPMENT

The boring logs are not intended for use in determining construction means and methods and may therefore be misleading if used for that purpose. We recommend that General Contractors and their subcontractors interested in bidding on the work perform their own tests in the form of test pits to determine the quantities of the different materials to be excavated, as well as the preferred excavation methods and equipment for this site.

UTILITIES

Utilities which project through slab-on-grade, slab-on-fill, or any other rigid unit should be designed with either some degree of flexibility or with sleeves. Such design features will help reduce the risk of damage to the utility lines as vertical movements occur. These types of slabs will generally be constructed as monolithic, grid type beam and slab foundations.

Our experience indicates that significant settlement of backfill can occur in utility trenches, particularly when trenches are deep, when backfill materials are placed in thick lifts with insufficient compaction, and when water can access and infiltrate the trench backfill materials. The potential for water to access the backfill is increased where water can infiltrate flexible base materials due to insufficient penetration of curbs, and at sites where geological features can influence water migration into utility trenches (such as fractures within a rock mass or at contacts between rock and clay formations). It is our belief that another factor which can significantly impact settlement is the migration of fines within the backfill into the open voids in the underlying free-draining bedding material.

To reduce the potential for settlement in utility trenches, we recommend that consideration be given to the following:

- All backfill materials should be placed and compacted in controlled lifts appropriate for the type of backfill and the type of compaction equipment being utilized and all backfilling procedures should be tested and documented; and
- Locating the water-bearing utilities, roof drainage outlets and irrigation spray heads outside of the select fill and perimeter drain boundaries.

CONSTRUCTION RELATED SERVICES

CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS ENGINEERING AND TESTING SERVICES

As presented in the attachment to this report, *Important Information About Your Geotechnical Engineering Report*, subsurface conditions can vary across a project site. The conditions described in this report are based on interpolations derived from a limited number of data points. Variations will be encountered during construction, and only the geotechnical design engineer will be able to determine if these conditions are different than those assumed for design.

Construction problems resulting from variations or anomalies in subsurface conditions are among the most prevalent on construction projects and often lead to delays, changes, cost overruns, and disputes. These variations and anomalies can best be addressed if the geotechnical engineer of record, **RABA KISTNER Consultants, Inc.**, is retained to perform the construction materials engineering and testing services during the construction of the project. This is because:

- **RKCI** has an intimate understanding of the geotechnical engineering report's findings and recommendations. **RKCI** understands how the report should be interpreted and can provide such interpretations on site, on the CLIENT's behalf.
- **RKCI** knows what subsurface conditions are anticipated at the site.
- **RKCI** is familiar with the goals of the CLIENT and the project's design professionals, having worked with them in the development of the project's geotechnical design workscope. This enables **RKCI** to suggest remedial measures (when needed) which help meet others' requirements.
- **RKCI** has a vested interest in client satisfaction, and thus assigns qualified personnel whose principal concern is client satisfaction. This concern is exhibited by the manner in which contractors' work is tested, evaluated and reported, and in selection of alternative approaches when such may become necessary.
- **RKCI** cannot be held accountable for problems which result due to misinterpretation of our findings or recommendations when we are not on hand to provide the interpretation which is required.

BUDGETING FOR CONSTRUCTION TESTING

Appropriate budgets need to be developed for the required construction materials engineering and testing services. At the appropriate time before construction, we advise that **RKCI** and the project designers meet and jointly develop the testing budgets, as well as review the testing specifications as it pertains to this project.

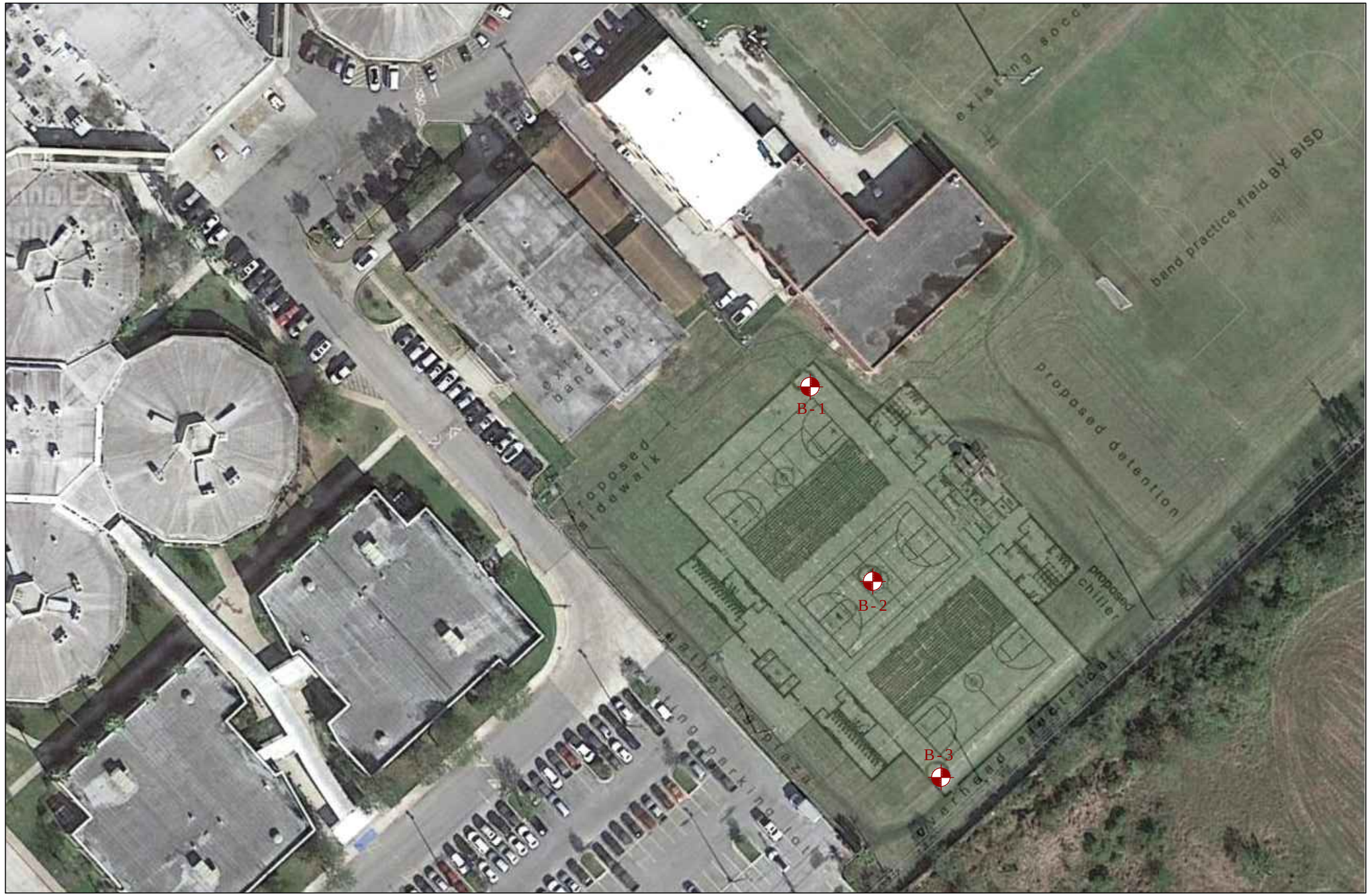
Once the construction testing budget and scope of work are finalized, we encourage a preconstruction meeting with the selected General Contractor to review the scope of work to make sure it is consistent with the construction means and methods proposed by the General Contractor. **RKCI** looks forward to the opportunity to provide continued support on this project, and would welcome the opportunity to meet with the Project Team to develop both a scope and budget for these services.

* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *

The following figures are attached and complete this report:

Figure 1	Boring Location Map
Figures 2 through 4	Logs of Borings
Figure 5	Key to Terms and Symbols
Figure 6	Results of Soil Analyses

ATTACHMENTS



RABA KISTNER CONSULTANTS
Engineering • Testing • Environmental
Facilities • Infrastructure

800 E. Hackberry Avenue
McAllen, Texas 78501
(956)682-5332 TEL
(956)682-5487 FAX
www.rkci.com
TBPE Firm F-3257

BORING LOCATION MAP
PROPOSED GYMNASIUM BUILDING ADDITION

BROWNSVILLE ISD
HANNA EARLY COLLEGE HIGH SCHOOL
BROWNSVILLE, CAMERON COUNTY, TEXAS

REVISIONS:

No.	DATE	DESCRIPTION

PROJECT No.:	ABA18-001-00
ISSUE DATE:	01-24-18
DRAWN BY:	DV
CHECKED BY:	SC
REVIEWED BY:	KML

FIGURE
1

LOG OF BORING NO. B-1

Proposed Gymnasium Building Addition
Brownsville ISD Hanna Early College High School
Brownsville, Cameron County, Texas

RABA KISTNER
TBPE Firm Registration No. F-3257

DRILLING METHOD: Straight Flight Auger

LOCATION: See Figure 1

DEPTH, FT	SYMBOL	SAMPLES	DESCRIPTION OF MATERIAL	BLOWS PER FT	UNIT DRY WEIGHT, pcf	SHEAR STRENGTH, TONS/FT^2 (0.5 1.0 1.5 2.0 2.5 3.0 3.5 4.0)	PLASTICITY INDEX	% -200
			SURFACE ELEVATION: Existing Grade, ft			PLASTIC LIMIT / WATER CONTENT / LIQUID LIMIT (10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80)		
			LEAN CLAY (CL) very stiff, dark brown, with roots extending down to a depth of about 2 ft	16			24	
				17				94
5			**LEAN CLAY (CL)** very soft to firm, brown		94		13	
				7				
10				6				96
15			- with calcareous nodules below a depth of about 15 ft	8				
20			**LEAN CLAY (CL)** stiff to very stiff, light brown	14				
				20				
25			Boring terminated at a depth of about 25 ft.					
			NOTES: During the drilling operations, groundwater was encountered at a depth of about 8 ft. Upon completion of the drilling operations, groundwater was measured at a depth of about 9 ft.					
30								

DEPTH DRILLED:	25.0 ft	**DEPTH TO WATER:**	8 ft	**PROJ. No.:**	ABA18-001-00
DATE DRILLED:	1/18/2018	**DATE MEASURED:**	1/18/2018	**FIGURE:**	2

NOTE: THESE LOGS SHOULD NOT BE USED SEPARATELY FROM THE PROJECT REPORT

LOG OF BORING NO. B-2

Proposed Gymnasium Building Addition
Brownsville ISD Hanna Early College High School
Brownsville, Cameron County, Texas

RABA KISTNER
TBPE Firm Registration No. F-3257

DRILLING METHOD: Straight Flight Auger

LOCATION: See Figure 1

DEPTH, FT	SYMBOL	SAMPLES	DESCRIPTION OF MATERIAL	BLOWS PER FT	UNIT DRY WEIGHT, pcf	SHEAR STRENGTH, TONS/FT^2 (0.5 1.0 1.5 2.0 2.5 3.0 3.5 4.0)	PLASTICITY INDEX	% -200
			SURFACE ELEVATION: Existing Grade, ft			PLASTIC LIMIT / WATER CONTENT / LIQUID LIMIT (10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80)		
			FAT CLAY (CH) very stiff to firm, dark brown, with roots extending down to a depth of about 2 ft	18	90		29	96
5			**LEAN CLAY (CL)** stiff to firm to very stiff, brown, with black ferrous stains	9				
				8			17	
10				7				
15			- with calcareous nodules below a depth of about 15 ft	9				98
20				19				
				22				
25			Boring terminated at a depth of about 25 ft.					
			NOTES: During the drilling operations, groundwater was encountered at a depth of about 7.5 ft. Upon completion of the drilling operations, groundwater was measured at a depth of about 9 ft.					
30								

DEPTH DRILLED:	25.0 ft	**DEPTH TO WATER:**	7.5 ft	**PROJ. No.:**	ABA18-001-00
DATE DRILLED:	1/18/2018	**DATE MEASURED:**	1/18/2018	**FIGURE:**	3

NOTE: THESE LOGS SHOULD NOT BE USED SEPARATELY FROM THE PROJECT REPORT

LOG OF BORING NO. B-3

Proposed Gymnasium Building Addition
Brownsville ISD Hanna Early College High School
Brownsville, Cameron County, Texas

RABA KISTNER
TBPE Firm Registration No. F-3257

DRILLING METHOD: Straight Flight Auger & Mud Rotary

LOCATION: See Figure 1

DEPTH, FT	SYMBOL	SAMPLES	DESCRIPTION OF MATERIAL	BLOWS PER FT	UNIT DRY WEIGHT, pcf	SHEAR STRENGTH, TONS/FT^2	PLASTICITY INDEX	% -200
			SURFACE ELEVATION: Existing Grade, ft					
			FAT CLAY (CH) stiff, dark brown, with roots extending down to a depth of about 2 ft	14				94
				9			46	
5			**LEAN CLAY (CL)** firm to stiff, brown, with calcareous nodules		94			90
				7			18	
10				11				
				9				98
15								
20			**FAT CLAY (CH)** stiff, light brown, with calcareous nodules Driller's Note: Converted to mud rotary drilling method at a depth of about 21-1/2 ft	10			37	
25				13				
30				15				95

SHEAR STRENGTH, TONS/FT^2: 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 3.5, 4.0
PLASTIC LIMIT, WATER CONTENT, LIQUID LIMIT: 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80

DEPTH DRILLED:	50.0 ft	**DEPTH TO WATER:**	8 ft	**PROJ. No.:**	ABA18-001-00
DATE DRILLED:	1/18/2018	**DATE MEASURED:**	1/18/2018	**FIGURE:**	4a

NOTE: THESE LOGS SHOULD NOT BE USED SEPARATELY FROM THE PROJECT REPORT

LOG OF BORING NO. B-3

Proposed Gymnasium Building Addition
Brownsville ISD Hanna Early College High School
Brownsville, Cameron County, Texas

RABA KISTNER
TBPE Firm Registration No. F-3257

DRILLING METHOD: Straight Flight Auger & Mud Rotary

LOCATION: See Figure 1

DEPTH, FT	SYMBOL	SAMPLES	DESCRIPTION OF MATERIAL	BLOWS PER FT	UNIT DRY WEIGHT, pcf	SHEAR STRENGTH, TONS/FT^2	PLASTICITY INDEX	% -200
			SURFACE ELEVATION: Existing Grade, ft					
			LEAN CLAY (CL) very stiff, light brown, with calcareous nodules	18			27	
40				17				
45				20				
				22				
50			Boring terminated at a depth of about 50 ft.					
			NOTES: During the drilling operations, groundwater was encountered at a depth of about 8 ft.					
55								
60								
65								

SHEAR STRENGTH, TONS/FT^2: 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 3.5, 4.0
PLASTIC LIMIT, WATER CONTENT, LIQUID LIMIT: 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80

DEPTH DRILLED:	50.0 ft	**DEPTH TO WATER:**	8 ft	**PROJ. No.:**	ABA18-001-00
DATE DRILLED:	1/18/2018	**DATE MEASURED:**	1/18/2018	**FIGURE:**	4b

NOTE: THESE LOGS SHOULD NOT BE USED SEPARATELY FROM THE PROJECT REPORT

KEY TO TERMS AND SYMBOLS

MATERIAL TYPES

SOIL TERMS


CALCAREOUS


CALICHE


CLAY


CLAYEY


GRAVEL


GRAVELLY


PEAT


SAND


SANDY


SILT


SILTY


FILL

ROCK TERMS


CHALK


CLAYSTONE


CLAY-SHALE


CONGLOMERATE


DOLOMITE


IGNEOUS


LIMESTONE


MARL


METAMORPHIC


SANDSTONE


SHALE


SILTSTONE

OTHER


ASPHALT


BASE


CONCRETE/CEMENT


BRICKS / PAVERS


WASTE


NO INFORMATION

WELL CONSTRUCTION AND PLUGGING MATERIALS


BLANK PIPE


SCREEN


BENTONITE


CEMENT GROUT


BENTONITE & CUTTINGS


CONCRETE/CEMENT


CUTTINGS


GRAVEL


SAND


VOLCLAY

SAMPLE TYPES


AIR ROTARY


GRAB SAMPLE


CORE


GEOPROBE SAMPLER


ROTOSONIC -DAMAGED


MUD ROTARY


NO RECOVERY


NX CORE


PITCHER


ROTOSONIC -INTACT


SHELBY TUBE


SPLIT BARREL


SPLIT SPOON


TEXAS CONE PENETROMETER


DISTURBED

STRENGTH TEST TYPES


POCKET PENETROMETER


TORVANE


UNCONFINED COMPRESSION


TRIAXIAL COMPRESSION UNCONSOLIDATED-UNDRAINED


TRIAXIAL COMPRESSION CONSOLIDATED-UNDRAINED

NOTE: VALUES SYMBOLIZED ON BORING LOGS REPRESENT SHEAR STRENGTHS UNLESS OTHERWISE NOTED

PROJECT NO. ABA18-001-00

KEY TO TERMS AND SYMBOLS (CONT'D)

TERMINOLOGY

Terms used in this report to describe soils with regard to their consistency or conditions are in general accordance with the discussion presented in Article 45 of SOILS MECHANICS IN ENGINEERING PRACTICE, Terzaghi and Peck, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1967, using the most reliable information available from the field and laboratory investigations. Terms used for describing soils according to their texture or grain size distribution are in accordance with the UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM, as described in American Society for Testing and Materials D2487-06 and D2488-00, Volume 04.08, Soil and Rock; Dimension Stone; Geosynthetics; 2005.

The depths shown on the boring logs are not exact, and have been estimated to the nearest half-foot. Depth measurements may be presented in a manner that implies greater precision in depth measurement, i.e 6.71 meters. The reader should understand and interpret this information only within the stated half-foot tolerance on depth measurements.

RELATIVE DENSITY

Penetration Resistance Blows per ft	Relative Density
0 - 4	Very Loose
4 - 10	Loose
10 - 30	Medium Dense
30 - 50	Dense
> 50	Very Dense

COHESIVE STRENGTH

Resistance Blows per ft	Consistency	Cohesion TSF
0 - 2	Very Soft	0 - 0.125
2 - 4	Soft	0.125 - 0.25
4 - 8	Firm	0.25 - 0.5
8 - 15	Stiff	0.5 - 1.0
15 - 30	Very Stiff	1.0 - 2.0
> 30	Hard	> 2.0

PLASTICITY

Plasticity Index	Degree of Plasticity
0 - 5	None
5 - 10	Low
10 - 20	Moderate
20 - 40	Plastic
> 40	Highly Plastic

ABBREVIATIONS

B = Benzene
T = Toluene
E = Ethylbenzene
X = Total Xylenes
BTEX = Total BTEX
TPH = Total Petroleum Hydrocarbons
ND = Not Detected
NA = Not Analyzed
NR = Not Recorded/No Recovery
OVA = Organic Vapor Analyzer
ppm = Parts Per Million

Qam, Qas, Qal = Quaternary Alluvium
Qat = Low Terrace Deposits
Qbc = Beaumont Formation
Qt = Fluviatile Terrace Deposits
Qao = Seymour Formation
Qle = Leona Formation
Q-Tu = Uvalde Gravel
Ewi = Wilcox Formation
Emi = Midway Group
Mc = Catahoula Formation
El = Laredo Formation
Kknm = Navarro Group and Marlbrook Marl
Kpg = Pecan Gap Chalk
Kau = Austin Chalk

Kef = Eagle Ford Shale
Kbu = Buda Limestone
Kdr = Del Rio Clay
Kft = Fort Terrett Member
Kgt = Georgetown Formation
Kep = Person Formation
Kek = Kainer Formation
Kes = Escondido Formation
Kew = Walnut Formation
Kgr = Glen Rose Formation
Kgru = Upper Glen Rose Formation
Kgrl = Lower Glen Rose Formation
Kh = Hensell Sand

KEY TO TERMS AND SYMBOLS (CONT'D)

TERMINOLOGY

SOIL STRUCTURE

Slickensided	Having planes of weakness that appear slick and glossy.
Fissured	Containing shrinkage or relief cracks, often filled with fine sand or silt; usually more or less vertical.
Pocket	Inclusion of material of different texture that is smaller than the diameter of the sample.
Parting	Inclusion less than 1/8 inch thick extending through the sample.
Seam	Inclusion 1/8 inch to 3 inches thick extending through the sample.
Layer	Inclusion greater than 3 inches thick extending through the sample.
Laminated	Soil sample composed of alternating partings or seams of different soil type.
Interlayered	Soil sample composed of alternating layers of different soil type.
Intermixed	Soil sample composed of pockets of different soil type and layered or laminated structure is not evident.
Calcareous	Having appreciable quantities of carbonate.
Carbonate	Having more than 50% carbonate content.

SAMPLING METHODS

RELATIVELY UNDISTURBED SAMPLING

Cohesive soil samples are to be collected using three-inch thin-walled tubes in general accordance with the Standard Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils (ASTM D1587) and granular soil samples are to be collected using two-inch split-barrel samplers in general accordance with the Standard Method for Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils (ASTM D1586). Cohesive soil samples may be extruded on-site when appropriate handling and storage techniques maintain sample integrity and moisture content.

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST (SPT)

A 2-in.-OD, 1-3/8-in.-ID split spoon sampler is driven 1.5 ft into undisturbed soil with a 140-pound hammer free falling 30 in. After the sampler is seated 6 in. into undisturbed soil, the number of blows required to drive the sampler the last 12 in. is the Standard Penetration Resistance or "N" value, which is recorded as blows per foot as described below.

SPLIT-BARREL SAMPLER DRIVING RECORD

Blows Per Foot	Description
25	25 blows drove sampler 12 inches, after initial 6 inches of seating.
50/7"	50 blows drove sampler 7 inches, after initial 6 inches of seating.
Ref/3"	50 blows drove sampler 3 inches during initial 6-inch seating interval.

NOTE: To avoid damage to sampling tools, driving is limited to 50 blows during or after seating interval.

RESULTS OF SOIL SAMPLE ANALYSES

PROJECT NAME: Proposed Gymnasium Building Addition
Brownsville ISD Hanna Early College High School
Brownsville, Cameron County, Texas

FILE NAME: ABA18-001-00.GPJ 1/25/2018

Boring No.	Sample Depth (ft)	Blows per ft	Water Content (%)	Liquid Limit	Plastic Limit	Plasticity Index	USCS	Dry Unit Weight (pcf)	% -200 Sieve	Shear Strength (tsf)	Strength Test
B-1	0.0 to 1.5	16	15	44	20	24	CL				
	2.5 to 4.0	17	32						94		
	5.0 to 7.0		26	34	21	13	CL	94		0.15	UC
	7.5 to 9.0	7	27								
	10.0 to 11.5	6	30						96		
	15.0 to 16.5	8	28								
	20.0 to 21.5	14	22								
	23.5 to 25.0	20	22								
B-2	0.0 to 1.5	18	15	51	22	29	CH				
	2.0 to 4.0		31					90	96	0.59	UC
	5.0 to 6.5	9	26								
	7.5 to 9.0	8	30	37	20	17	CL				
	10.0 to 11.5	7	28								
	15.0 to 16.5	9	29						98		
	20.0 to 21.5	19	24								
	23.5 to 25.0	22	23								
B-3	0.0 to 1.5	14	34						94		
	2.5 to 4.0	9	36	76	30	46	CH				
	5.0 to 7.0		27					94	90	0.30	UC
	7.5 to 9.0	7	31	40	22	18	CL				
	10.0 to 11.5	11	29								
	15.0 to 16.5	9	28						98		
	20.0 to 21.5	10	23	58	21	37	CH				
	25.0 to 26.5	13	22								
	30.0 to 31.5	15	25						95		
	35.0 to 36.5	18	25	48	21	27	CL				
	40.0 to 41.5	17	26								
	45.0 to 46.5	20	24								
	48.5 to 50.0	22	26								

PP = Pocket Penetrometer TV = Torvane UC = Unconfined Compression FV = Field Vane UU = Unconsolidated Undrained Triaxial

CU = Consolidated Undrained Triaxial CNBD = Cound Not Be Determined NP = Non-Plastic

Important Information about This

Geotechnical-Engineering Report

Subsurface problems are a principal cause of construction delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes.

While you cannot eliminate all such risks, you can manage them. The following information is provided to help.

Geotechnical Services Are Performed for Specific Purposes, Persons, and Projects

Geotechnical engineers structure their services to meet the specific needs of their clients. A geotechnical-engineering study conducted for a civil engineer may not fulfill the needs of a constructor — a construction contractor — or even another civil engineer. Because each geotechnical- engineering study is unique, each geotechnical-engineering report is unique, prepared *solely* for the client. No one except you should rely on this geotechnical-engineering report without first conferring with the geotechnical engineer who prepared it. *And no one — not even you* — should apply this report for any purpose or project except the one originally contemplated.

Read the Full Report

Serious problems have occurred because those relying on a geotechnical-engineering report did not read it all. Do not rely on an executive summary. Do not read selected elements only.

Geotechnical Engineers Base Each Report on a Unique Set of Project-Specific Factors

Geotechnical engineers consider many unique, project-specific factors when establishing the scope of a study. Typical factors include: the client's goals, objectives, and risk-management preferences; the general nature of the structure involved, its size, and configuration; the location of the structure on the site; and other planned or existing site improvements, such as access roads, parking lots, and underground utilities. Unless the geotechnical engineer who conducted the study specifically indicates otherwise, do not rely on a geotechnical-engineering report that was:

- not prepared for you;
- not prepared for your project;
- not prepared for the specific site explored; or
- completed before important project changes were made.

Typical changes that can erode the reliability of an existing geotechnical-engineering report include those that affect:

- the function of the proposed structure, as when it's changed from a parking garage to an office building, or from a light-industrial plant to a refrigerated warehouse;
- the elevation, configuration, location, orientation, or weight of the proposed structure;
- the composition of the design team; or
- project ownership.

As a general rule, *always* inform your geotechnical engineer of project changes—even minor ones—and request an assessment of their impact. *Geotechnical engineers cannot accept responsibility or liability for problems that occur because their reports do not consider developments of which they were not informed.*

Subsurface Conditions Can Change

A geotechnical-engineering report is based on conditions that existed at the time the geotechnical engineer performed the study. *Do not rely on a geotechnical-engineering report whose adequacy may have been affected by*: the passage of time; man-made events, such as construction on or adjacent to the site; or natural events, such as floods, droughts, earthquakes, or groundwater fluctuations. *Contact the geotechnical engineer before applying this report to determine if it is still reliable.* A minor amount of additional testing or analysis could prevent major problems.

Most Geotechnical Findings Are Professional Opinions

Site exploration identifies subsurface conditions only at those points where subsurface tests are conducted or samples are taken. Geotechnical engineers review field and laboratory data and then apply their professional judgment to render an opinion about subsurface conditions throughout the site. Actual subsurface conditions may differ — sometimes significantly — from those indicated in your report. Retaining the geotechnical engineer who developed your report to provide geotechnical-construction observation is the most effective method of managing the risks associated with unanticipated conditions.

A Report's Recommendations Are Not Final

Do not overrely on the confirmation-dependent recommendations included in your report. *Confirmation-dependent recommendations are not final,* because geotechnical engineers develop them principally from judgment and opinion. Geotechnical engineers can finalize their recommendations *only* by observing actual subsurface conditions revealed during construction. *The geotechnical engineer who developed your report cannot assume responsibility or liability for the report's confirmation-dependent recommendations if that engineer does not perform the geotechnical-construction observation required to confirm the recommendations' applicability.*

A Geotechnical-Engineering Report Is Subject to Misinterpretation

Other design-team members' misinterpretation of geotechnical-engineering reports has resulted in costly

problems. Confront that risk by having your geotechnical engineer confer with appropriate members of the design team after submitting the report. Also retain your geotechnical engineer to review pertinent elements of the design team's plans and specifications. Constructors can also misinterpret a geotechnical-engineering report. Confront that risk by having your geotechnical engineer participate in prebid and preconstruction conferences, and by providing geotechnical construction observation.

Do Not Redraw the Engineer's Logs

Geotechnical engineers prepare final boring and testing logs based upon their interpretation of field logs and laboratory data. To prevent errors or omissions, the logs included in a geotechnical-engineering report should *never* be redrawn for inclusion in architectural or other design drawings. Only photographic or electronic reproduction is acceptable, *but recognize that separating logs from the report can elevate risk.*

Give Constructors a Complete Report and Guidance

Some owners and design professionals mistakenly believe they can make constructors liable for unanticipated subsurface conditions by limiting what they provide for bid preparation. To help prevent costly problems, give constructors the complete geotechnical-engineering report, *but* preface it with a clearly written letter of transmittal. In that letter, advise constructors that the report was not prepared for purposes of bid development and that the report's accuracy is limited; encourage them to confer with the geotechnical engineer who prepared the report (a modest fee may be required) and/or to conduct additional study to obtain the specific types of information they need or prefer. A prebid conference can also be valuable. *Be sure constructors have sufficient time* to perform additional study. Only then might you be in a position to give constructors the best information available to you, while requiring them to at least share some of the financial responsibilities stemming from unanticipated conditions.

Read Responsibility Provisions Closely

Some clients, design professionals, and constructors fail to recognize that geotechnical engineering is far less exact than other engineering disciplines. This lack of understanding has created unrealistic expectations that have led to disappointments, claims, and disputes. To help reduce the risk of such outcomes, geotechnical engineers commonly include a variety of explanatory provisions in their reports. Sometimes labeled "limitations," many of these provisions indicate where geotechnical engineers' responsibilities begin and end, to help others recognize their own responsibilities and risks. *Read these provisions closely.* Ask questions. Your geotechnical engineer should respond fully and frankly.

Environmental Concerns Are Not Covered

The equipment, techniques, and personnel used to perform an *environmental* study differ significantly from those used to perform a *geotechnical* study. For that reason, a geotechnical-engineering report does not usually relate any environmental findings, conclusions, or recommendations; e.g., about the likelihood of encountering underground storage tanks or regulated contaminants. *Unanticipated environmental problems have led to numerous project failures.* If you have not yet obtained your own environmental information, ask your geotechnical consultant for risk-management guidance. *Do not rely on an environmental report prepared for someone else.*

Obtain Professional Assistance To Deal with Mold

Diverse strategies can be applied during building design, construction, operation, and maintenance to prevent significant amounts of mold from growing on indoor surfaces. To be effective, all such strategies should be devised for the *express purpose* of mold prevention, integrated into a comprehensive plan, and executed with diligent oversight by a professional mold-prevention consultant. Because just a small amount of water or moisture can lead to the development of severe mold infestations, many mold- prevention strategies focus on keeping building surfaces dry. While groundwater, water infiltration, and similar issues may have been addressed as part of the geotechnical- engineering study whose findings are conveyed in this report, the geotechnical engineer in charge of this project is not a mold prevention consultant; *none of the services performed in connection with the geotechnical engineer's study were designed or conducted for the purpose of mold prevention. Proper implementation of the recommendations conveyed in this report will not of itself be sufficient to prevent mold from growing in or on the structure involved.*

Rely, on Your GBC-Member Geotechnical Engineer for Additional Assistance

Membership in the Geotechnical Business Council of the Geoprofessional Business Association exposes geotechnical engineers to a wide array of risk-confrontation techniques that can be of genuine benefit for everyone involved with a construction project. Confer with you GBC-Member geotechnical engineer for more information.

GEOTECHNICAL BUSINESS COUNCIL
of the Geoprofessional Business Association

8811 Colesville Road/Suite G106, Silver Spring, MD 20910
Telephone: 301/565-2733 Facsimile: 301/589-2017
e-mail: info@geoprofessional.org www.geoprofessional.org

CONSULTANTS • ENVIRONMENTAL • FACILITIES • INFRASTRUCTURE

San Antonio, TX

Austin, TX	Dallas, TX	McAllen, TX
Brownsville, TX	El Paso, TX	Mexico
Corpus Christi, TX	Houston, TX	Salt Lake City, UT

RABA KISTNER
50 YEARS
Building Better Tomorrows

800 East Hackberry
McAllen, TX 78501
www.rkci.com

P 956.682.5332
F 956.682.5487
Toll Free 800.316.4912
TBPE Firm F-3257

Project No. ABA18-001-00
June 13, 2018

Mr. Fernando Villarreal, Project/Facilities Manager
Brownsville Independent School District (Brownsville ISD)
3750 Robindale Road
Brownsville, Texas 78521

Re: Supplemental Recommendations to Geotechnical Engineering Study
Proposed Gymnasium Building Addition to the
Brownsville ISD Hanna Early College High School Campus
2615 E. Price Road
Brownsville, Cameron County, Texas

Dear Mr. Villarreal:

On the basis of our telephone conversation held with Mr. Heriberto Cavazos, P.E., Partner with Green, Rubiano & Associates, the project's structural engineering firm, on Tuesday, June 13, 2018, **RABA KISTNER Consultants, Inc. (RKCI)** is pleased to submit this document providing supplemental recommendations to our original geotechnical engineering study for the above-referenced project site (**RKCI** Project No. ABA18-001-00, dated February 6, 2018), pertaining to a larger maximum allowable soil-bearing pressure for factors of safety less than 3.

We understand that a larger allowable soil-bearing pressure is being required for this project. This would require a reduction in the design factor of safety with respect to the measured soil shear strength. As such, we have been asked to provide the following maximum allowable end-bearing pressures for factors of safety of less than 3.

Design Parameters	FS = 3	FS = 2.5	FS = 2
Minimum depth below FGE:	24 in.	24 in.	24 in.
Minimum beam width:	12 in.	12 in.	12 in.
Maximum allowable soil-bearing pressure for continuous footings – grade beams:	1,700 psf	2,000 psf	2,500 psf
Maximum allowable soil-bearing pressure for spread footings – widened beams:	2,100 psf	2,500 psf	3,100 psf

Where psf = pounds per square feet
FS = Factor of Safety

All other recommendations and limitations remain as stated in our original Geotechnical Engineering Study for this project (**RKCI** Project No. ABA18-001-00, dated February 6, 2018).

We trust that this supplemental information will be helpful to the project team. If you should have any questions pertaining to this matter or if we may be of additional assistance, please do not hesitate to call.

Very truly yours,

RABA KISTNER CONSULTANTS, INC.

Saul Cruz
Graduate Engineer

Katrin M. Leonard, P.E.
Associate

S/KML

Copies Submitted: Above (1)
Green, Rubiano & Associates (1)
Gomez, Mendez, Saenz, Inc. (1)
Mejia & Rose, Inc. (1)

RABA KISTNER
Building Better Tomorrows

800 East Hackberry
McAllen, TX 78501
www.rkci.com

P 956.682.5332
F 956.682.5487
Toll Free 800.316.4912
TBPE Firm F-3257

Project No. ABA18-001-00
March 22, 2019

Mr. Fernando Villarreal, Project/Facilities Manager
Brownsville Independent School District (Brownsville ISD)
3750 Robindale Road
Brownsville, Texas 78521

RE: Supplemental Recommendations to Geotechnical Engineering Study
Proposed Gymnasium Building Addition to the
Brownsville ISD Hanna Early College High School Campus
2615 E. Price Road
Brownsville, Cameron County, Texas

Dear Mr. Villarreal:

On the basis of our meeting held with you and the design team on Tuesday, March 19, 2019, the purpose of this document is to provide supplemental recommendations to our original geotechnical engineering study (**RABA KISTNER Consultants, Inc. [RKCI]** Project No. ABA18-001-00, dated February 6, 2018) pertaining to the alternative potential vertical rise (PVR) options, as well as shallow and deep foundation recommendations for proposed gymnasium building addition to be located at the above-referenced project site.

EXPANSIVE SOIL-RELATED MOVEMENTS AND PVR REDUCTION RECOMMENDATIONS

As stated in our original geotechnical engineering report, the anticipated ground movements due to swelling of the underlying soils at this site were estimated for slab-on-grade construction using the empirical procedure, Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT) Tex-124-E, Method for Determining the Potential Vertical Rise (PVR). PVR values on the order of about 2 inches were estimated for the stratigraphic conditions encountered in the borings conducted during the course of our original study. The PVR value was estimated using a surcharge load of 1 pound per square inch (psi) for the concrete slab and dry moisture conditions within the regional zone of seasonal moisture variation.

As stated in our original geotechnical engineering study (**RKCI** Project No. ABA18-001-00, dated February 6, 2018), the finished grade elevation (FGE) of the proposed building addition was assumed to be 12 inches above the ground surface elevation existing at the time of our study. The following table presents various depths of overexcavation and properly-compacted, suitable, select fill replacement in order to reduce expansive, soil-related movements in at-grade construction beneath the proposed building addition to about 1 inch, 3/4 inch, and 1/2 inch.

Approximate Depth of Overexcavation (ft) *	Approximate Total Thickness of Suitable, Select Fill Placement Required (ft)	Estimated PVR, inch
0	1	1-3/4
2-1/2	3-1/2	1
3-1/2	4-1/2	3/4
4	5	1/2

* below the ground surface elevation existing at the time of our study.

Please note that selecting PVR reduction options of either 3/4 or 1/2 inch will require excavations close to the groundwater levels encountered during our field operations. The earthwork activities during the course of subgrade removal may cause for groundwater to raise and result in the bottom of the excavation to be too wet for the construction equipment to operate. Deep wells and/or well point systems, as well as sumps and pumps may be required to lower the groundwater level, in order to reduce the risk of impacts to the earthwork overexcavation activities within the building footprint area.

Keep in mind that the estimated PVR values are computed based on the recommendations for the selection and placement of suitable, select fill materials which are addressed in the *Foundation Construction Considerations* section of report (**RKCI** Project No. ABA18-001-00, dated February 6, 2018). It should be noted that once site grading plans are determined for the project, the PVR reduction recommendation presented previously may need to be revised.

FOUNDATION RECOMMENDATIONS

The following recommendations are based on the data obtained from our field and laboratory study, our past experience with geotechnical conditions similar to those at this site, and our engineering design analyses. The following alternatives are available to support the proposed building addition:

1) Conventional shallow foundation system in conjunction with the implementation of one of the site improvement procedures included in the *PVR Reduction Recommendations* subsection of the *Foundation Analyses* section of this letter; or
2) Drilled, straight-shaft pier deep foundation system, in conjunction with a ground-supported floor slab system following the implementation of one of the site improvement procedures included in the *PVR Reduction Recommendations* subsection of the *Foundation Analyses* section of this letter; or
3) Drilled, straight-shaft pier deep foundation system, in conjunction with a suspended slab.

The CLIENT may select one of these foundation and ground improvement systems depending on the performance criteria established for the proposed building addition. Cost analyses have not been conducted for any foundation system and are beyond the scope of this study.

FOUNDATION OPTION 1 – SHALLOW FOUNDATIONS

The proposed gymnasium building addition may be founded on conventional spread and/or continuous footing foundations in conjunction with a fill-supported concrete floor slab, provided that the shallow foundation type(s) can be designed to withstand the estimated soil-related movements (see the *Foundation Analyses* section of our original geotechnical engineering study [**RKCI** Project No. ABA18-001-00, dated February 6, 2018]) without impairing either the structural or the operational performance of the structure.

Allowable Soil-Bearing Capacity

Shallow foundations founded on new, properly-compacted, suitable, select fill materials may be proportioned using the design parameters shown in the following table:

Minimum depth below FGE:	24 in.
Minimum beam width:	12 in.
Maximum allowable soil-bearing pressure for continuous footings – grade beams:	1,700 psf
Maximum allowable soil-bearing pressure for spread footings – widened beams:	2,100 psf

Where psf = pounds per square feet

The maximum allowable soil-bearing pressures presented previously will provide a factor of safety of about 3 with respect to the measured soil shear strengths, provided that the subgrade is prepared in accordance with the recommendations outlined in the *Site Preparation* subsection of the *Foundation Construction Considerations* section of our original geotechnical engineering study (**RKCI** Project No. ABA18-001-00, dated February 6, 2018), and that one of the site improvement procedure included in the *PVR Reduction Recommendations* subsection of the *Foundation Analyses* section of this letter is implemented. We estimate total settlements to be on the order of about 1 inch. Differential settlements are typically estimated to be about one-half of the total estimated settlement for most subsurface conditions.

Furthermore, the design parameters presented on the previous table are contingent upon the fill materials being selected and placed in accordance with the recommendations presented in the *Select Fill* subsection of the *Foundation Construction Considerations* section of our original geotechnical engineering study (**RKCI** Project No. ABA18-001-00, dated February 6, 2018). Should select fill selection and placement differ from the recommendations presented in our original geotechnical engineering study, **RKCI** should be informed of the deviations in order to reevaluate our recommendations and design criteria.

FOUNDATION OPTIONS 2 AND 3 – DEEP FOUNDATIONS

Alternatively, drilled, straight-shaft piers may be considered for the proposed building addition. We recommend extending the piers to a minimum depth of 15 ft below the ground surface elevation existing at the time of our study or below final grade, whichever is greater. The piers may be designed as both end

bearing units and as friction units utilizing the maximum allowable end-bearing pressures and the allowable side shear resistance values tabulated in the following tables:

Approximate Depth Below the Ground Surface Elevations Existing at the Time of our Study (ft)	Maximum Allowable End-Bearing Pressure (ksf)
15 to 25	3.0
26 and below	5.5

Depth Range Below the Ground Surface Elevations Existing at the Time of our Study (ft)	Allowable Side Shear Resistance (ksf)
0 to 8	0
8 to 15	0.20
15 to 25	0.25
25 to 35	0.45
Below 35	0.50

If designed as skin friction units, the side shear resistance value shown previously should be used for the portion of the shaft extending below a depth of 8 ft. To proportion the drilled piers for axial compression, the side shear resistance should be neglected along the portion of the shaft located one shaft diameter from the bottom of the pier. The allowable values for end bearing and side shear resistance were evaluated using factors of safety of 3 and 2, respectively, with respect to the measured soil shear strength. Based on the 50-ft maximum depth of exploration, pier depths should not exceed a depth of 45-ft below the ground surface elevation existing at the time of our study.

Pier Shafts

The pier shafts will be subjected to potential uplift forces if the surrounding expansive soils within the active zone are subjected to alternate drying and wetting conditions. The maximum potential uplift force acting on the shafts may be estimated by:

$F_u = 30\ D$ (considering the existing soil conditions)

$F_u = 21\ D$ (considering the implementation of the site improvement to reduce the estimated PVR related values to about 1 inch, 3/4 inch, or 1/2 inch)

where: F_u = uplift force in kips; and
D = diameter of the shaft in feet.

It is recommended that the pier shafts be a minimum of 24 inches in diameter to facilitate reinforcing steel placement and shaft observation prior to placing concrete.

Allowable Uplift Resistance

Resistance to uplift forces exerted on the drilled, straight-shaft piers will be provided by the sustained compressive axial force (dead load) plus the allowable uplift resistance provided by the soil. The resistance provided by the soil depends on the shear strength of the soils adjacent to the pier shaft and below the depth of the active zone. The allowable uplift resistance values provided by the soils at this site are tabulated on the following table. These values were evaluated using a factor of safety of 2.

Depth Range Below the Pavement Surface Elevations Existing at the Time of our Study (ft)	Allowable Uplift Resistance (ksf)
0 to 8	0
8 to 15	0.15
15 to 25	0.17
25 to 35	0.30
Below 35	0.35

Reinforcing steel will be required for the entire length of each pier shaft to withstand a net force equal to the uplift force minus the sustained compressive load carried by the pier. We recommend that the pier be reinforced to withstand this net force or an amount equal to 1 percent of the cross-sectional area of the shaft, whichever is greater.

Pier Spacing

Where possible, we recommend that the drilled, straight-shaft piers be spaced at a center-to-center distance of at least three shaft diameters. Such spacing will not require a reduction in the load carrying capacity of the individual piers.

If design and/or construction restraints require that piers be spaced closer than the above recommended spacing, **RKCI** must be retained to re-evaluate the allowable bearing capacity presented above for the individual piers. Reductions in load-carrying capacities may be required depending upon individual loading and spacing conditions.

Grade Beams

Two alternatives are available to construct the grade beams. The CLIENT may select the alternative best satisfying the required performance criteria.

> **Foundation Option 2:** Grade beams interconnecting the piers may be ground-supported on properly-compacted, suitable select fill materials but designed to span piers, if the estimated movements will not improve the performance of the structure, provided that one of the ground improvement procedure presented in the *PVR Reduction*

Recommendation subsection of the *Foundation Analyses* section of this letter is implemented.

Foundation Option 3: Grade beams interconnecting the piers may be structurally suspended due to the anticipated ground movements. A positive void space of at least 8 inches, preferably more, should be provided between the soffits of grade beams and the underlying soils.

Floor Slabs

Two alternatives are available to construct the floor slab system. The CLIENT may select the alternative best satisfying the required performance criteria.

Foundation Option 2: Floor slabs within the superstructure may be ground-supported provided the anticipated movements discussed under the *Expansive, Soil-Related Movements* section of this letter will not impair the performance of the floor, frame, or roof systems.

If differential movements between the slab and the structure are objectionable, soil-supported floor slabs could be dowelled to the perimeter grade beams. Dowelled slabs that are subjected to heaving will typically crack and develop a plastic hinge along a line which will be approximately 5 to 10 ft inside and parallel to the grade beams. Slabs cast independent of the grade beams, interior columns and partitions should experience minimum cracking, but may create difficulties at critical entry points such as doors and may impact interior partitions that are secured to exterior walls.

We recommend that a vapor barrier comprised of polyethylene or polyvinyl chloride (PVC) sheeting be placed between the supporting select fill and the concrete floor slab.

Foundation Option 3: Floor slabs which have high performance criteria or which are movement sensitive in nature, should be structurally-suspended because of the anticipated ground movements. A positive void space of at least 8 inches, preferably more, should be provided between the slab and the underlying soils (see also *Crawl Space Considerations*).

FOUNDATION CONSTRUCTION CONSIDERATIONS

SHALLOW FOUNDATION EXCAVATIONS

Shallow foundation excavations should be observed by the Geotechnical Engineer or his representative prior to placement of reinforcing steel and concrete. This is necessary to document that the bearing soils at the bottom of the excavations are similar to those encountered in the borings and that excessive soft materials and water are not present in the excavations. If soft pockets of soil are encountered in the foundation excavations, they should be removed and replaced with a compacted non-expansive fill material or lean concrete up to the design foundation bearing elevations.

Disturbance from foot traffic and from the accumulation of excess water can result in losses in bearing capacity and increased settlement. If inclement weather is anticipated at the time construction, consideration should be given to protecting the bottoms of beam trenches by placing a thin mud mat (layer of flowable fill or lean concrete) at the bottom of trenches immediately following excavation. This will reduce disturbance from foot traffic and will impede the infiltration of surface water. All necessary precautions should be implemented to protect open excavations from the accumulation of surface water runoff and rain.

DRILLED PIERS

Drilled pier excavations must be examined by an **RKCI** representative who is familiar with the geotechnical aspects of the subsurface stratigraphy, the structural configuration, foundation design details, and assumptions prior to placing concrete. This is to observe that:

- The shaft has been excavated to the specified dimensions at the correct depth established by the previously mentioned criteria;
- The shaft has been drilled plumb within specified tolerances along its total length; and
- Excessive cuttings, buildup and soft, compressible materials have been removed from the bottom of the excavation.

Drilled pier excavation observations should be scheduled with the Geotechnical Engineer a minimum of 48 hours prior to pier drilling. Failure to do so will be the responsibility of the General Contractor.

REINFORCEMENT AND CONCRETE PLACEMENT

Reinforcing steel should be checked for size and placement prior to concrete placement. Placement of concrete should be accomplished as soon as possible after excavation to reduce changes in the moisture content or the state of stress of the foundation materials. Concrete should not be placed in the pier excavations without the approval of the Engineer. No foundation element should be left open overnight without concreting.

TEMPORARY CASING

Groundwater was observed during drilling operations at a depth as shallow as 7-1/2 ft below the ground surface elevations existing at the time of our study. Therefore, groundwater seepage and/or side sloughing will be encountered during pier construction at this site depending on climatic conditions. Therefore, we recommend that the bid documents require the foundation contractor to specify unit costs for different lengths of casing and/or slurry drilling techniques which will be required.

CRAWL SPACE CONSIDERATIONS

If the structurally-suspended floor system described as Foundation Option 3 under the *Floor Slab* section of this letter is selected, several special design issues should be considered for the resulting subfloor crawl space. These issues are discussed below.

Ventilation

Observations by members of our firm of open crawl spaces have indicated a need for adequate subfloor ventilation. Such ventilation helps promote evaporation of subgrade moisture which may accumulate in spite of special surface and subsurface drainage features. As a minimum, free flowing passive vents may need to be installed along the perimeter beam to provide cross ventilation. If structural configurations will limit the free flow of air through passive vents, forced air, power vents should be installed. All vents should be designed such that they will not allow the drainage of surface water into the crawl space.

A minimum clearance of 8 inches has been recommended between both the grade beams and floor slab and the underlying finished subgrade. Such a minimum clearance is also recommended between the subgrade and any utilities which may be suspended from the underside of the floor. This clearance will allow swell-related subgrade movements without damaging the utilities. It is recommended that the utility clearance not be provided by the addition of narrow trenches running parallel to and immediately below the utilities, unless proper slopes and drainage outlets are provided to prevent ponding of water in the trenches.

Drainage

As discussed throughout this letter, positive drainage is a key factor in the long term performance of any foundation. This is not only critical around the perimeter of the structure, but also in any subfloor crawl spaces. In crawl areas, surface drainage should be established that will direct water away from and will prevent water from ponding adjacent to piers. This positive drainage should be maintained both prior to and after construction.

Compaction control of the backfill around the perimeter of the building following the placement of soil retainer blocks is critical to the drainage away from the building following construction. Materials for the backfill around the perimeter of the building should be the on-site clays. These materials should be compacted in uniformly thin lifts (8-inch maximum loose thickness) to at least 90 percent of the maximum dry density as determined by ASTM D698. These clays should be placed and compacted at optimum to plus 3 percent above optimum moisture content. Compaction by hand operated mechanical tampers will help to avoid damage to the soil retainer blocks. Following backfilling operations, the soil retainer blocks should be checked to see that they have not been broken or collapsed during the compaction operations. Any soil retainer blocks that are broken or collapsed should be repaired or replaced.

Carton Forms

When carton forms are used to form subfloor void spaces, the forms often get wet or sometimes absorb water from humid air. This can result in collapse of the forms during the placement of concrete, thus diminishing the design void space. Conversely, if the carton forms are too strong and do not decompose sufficiently with time, they may not collapse as soil heave occurs, resulting in heave damage to the floor slab. Where there is sufficient moisture to cause the appropriate deterioration after construction, there may be a resulting moisture problem in the floor slab as a result of poor ventilation and the accumulation of condensation within the resulting unventilated void space. The lack of ventilation may also result in

increased soil movements that will diminish the design void space. For these reasons, we recommend that where possible, consideration be given to methods other than the use of carton forms to form the recommended void space beneath floor slabs. If project specifics require the use of carton forms, then as a minimum, care should be taken to ensure that the carton forms are designed for use in the project location, and that carton forms are properly stored, protected, and installed during construction.

INTERIOR WALLS

It is not uncommon for cracking to occur in interior partition walls that are supported by a "floating" floor slab and structurally tied to either an interior column or an exterior wall supported by deep foundations. This should be taken into account during the design phase of the project if a "floating" slab foundation is used to support the proposed building.

WET WEATHER CONDITIONS

Earthwork contractors should be made aware of the moisture sensitivity of the near surface soils and potential compaction difficulties. If construction is undertaken during wet weather conditions, the surficial soils may become saturated, soft, and unworkable. Drainage trenches within the soils to be excavated, reworked and/or recompacted may be required. Additionally, subgrade stabilization techniques, such as chemical (cement, flyash or hydrated lime) treatment, may be required to provide a more weather-resistant working surface during pad construction. Therefore, we recommend that consideration be given to construction during the dryer months. Alternatively, the contractor should protect all exposed areas once topsoil has been stripped, as well as provide positive drainage during earthwork operations.

All other recommendations and limitations remain as stated in our original geotechnical engineering report (**RKCI** Project No. ABA18-001-00, dated February 6, 2018).

We trust that this supplemental information will be helpful to the design team. If you should have any comments or questions pertaining to this matter of if we may be of additional assistance, please do not hesitate to call.

Very truly yours,

RABA KISTNER CONSULTANTS, INC.

Saul Cruz, EIT
Graduate Engineer

Katrin M. Leonard, P.E.
Associate

STATE OF TEXAS
KATRIN M. LEONARD
95810
LICENSED
PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER
March 22, 2019

SC/KML

Copies Submitted: Above (1)

RABA KISTNER
Building Better Tomorrows

800 East Hackberry
McAllen, TX 78501
www.rkci.com

P 956.682.5332
F 956.682.5487
Toll Free 800.316.4912
TBPE Firm F-3257

Project No. ABA18-001-01
May 22, 2019

Mr. Fernando Villarreal, Project/Facilities Manager
Brownsville Independent School District (Brownsville ISD)
3750 Robindale Road
Brownsville, Texas 78521

RE: Depth to Groundwater Measurements
Proposed Gymnasium Building Addition to the
Brownsville ISD Hanna Early College High School Campus
2615 E. Price Road
Brownsville, Cameron County, Texas

Dear Mr. Villarreal:

RABA KISTNER Consultants, Inc. (RKCI) is pleased to submit this letter presenting our depth-to-groundwater measurements, as part of our monthly groundwater measurement, for the above-referenced project. Written authorization for this study was received by our firm via electronic-mail attachment on April 16, 2019, by means of the Brownsville ISD Purchase Order (P.O.) No. P337800, dated April 8, 2019. As you may recall, two widely-spaced piezometers were installed at the Borings B-101 and B-102 locations on April 22, 2019, and we have been authorized to obtain periodic measurements of the groundwater levels on a monthly basis over a period of three months. In accordance with our executed contract, one of our staff members visited the project site on May 22, 2019 in order to measure the groundwater levels in the piezometers.

The groundwater levels measured up to date in the two temporary piezometers are as follows:

Measurement Date		Approximate Groundwater Depth (ft) *	
		B-101	B-102
During the Drilling Operations	April 22, 2019	8.5	8.5
Upon Completion of Piezometer Installation	April 22, 2019	3.5	3.5
Month One	May 22, 2019	4.0	3.8

* below the ground surface elevation existing at the time of the measurement date.

We appreciate the opportunity to be of professional service to you on this project. Should you have any questions about the information presented in this report, or if we may be of additional assistance, please call.

Very truly yours,

RABA KISTNER CONSULTANTS, INC.

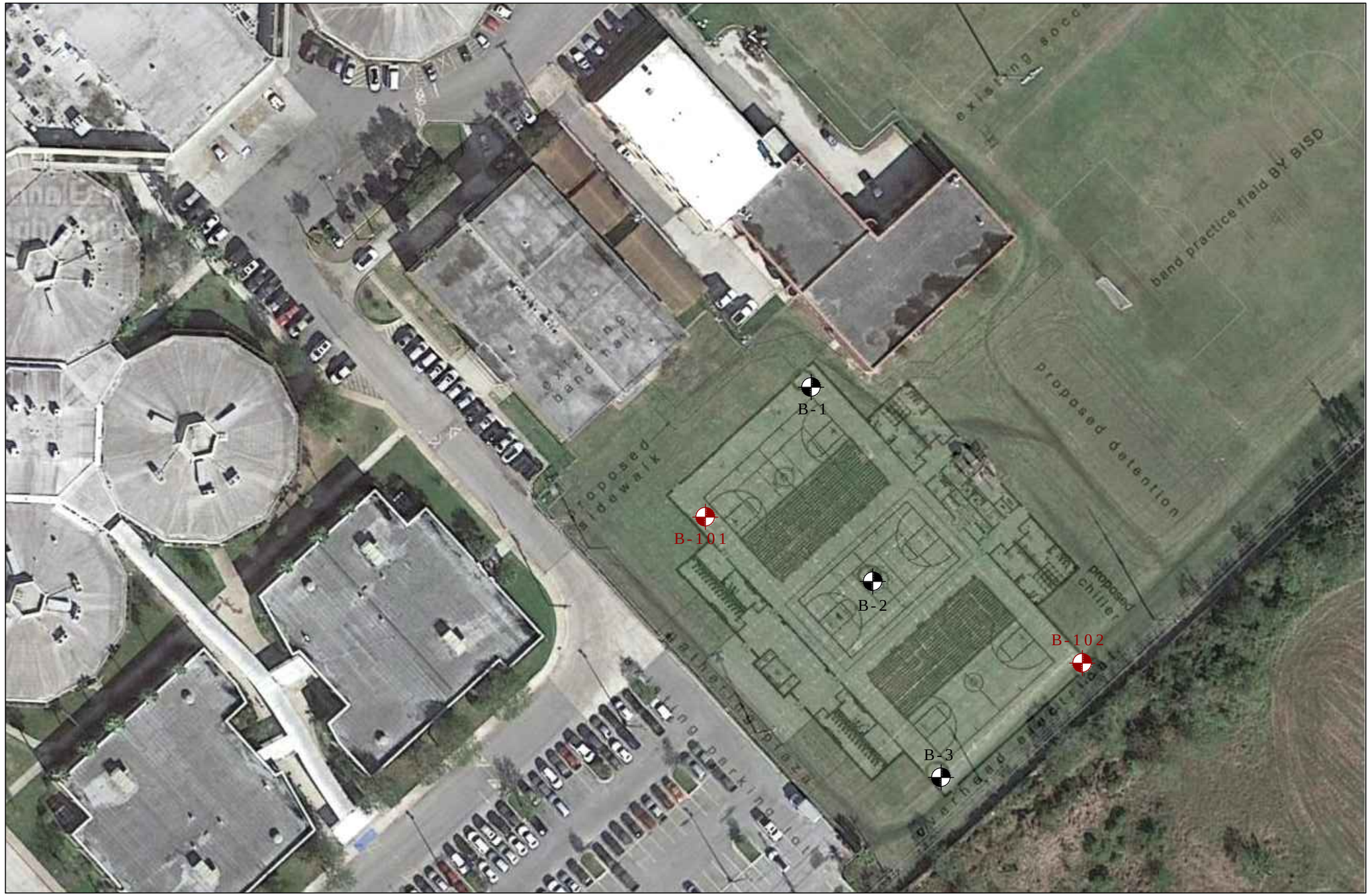
Saul Cruz, EIT
Graduate Engineer

Katrin M. Leonard, P.E.
Associate

SC/KML

Copies Submitted: Above (1)
Green, Rubiano & Associates (1)
Gomez, Mendez, Saenz, Inc. (1)
Mejia & Rose, Inc. (1)

Enclosures: Boring/Piezometer Location Map



= Borings conducted for this study.

= Borings conducted for the Geotechnical Engineering Study for RKCI Project No. ABA18-001-00, dated February 6, 2018.

RABA KISTNER CONSULTANTS
Engineering • Testing • Environmental
Facilities • Infrastructure

800 E. Hackberry Avenue
McAllen, Texas 78501
(956)682-5332 TEL
(956)682-5487 FAX
www.rkci.com
TBPE Firm F-3257

BORING/ PIEZOMETER LOCATION MAP
PROPOSED GYMNASIUM BUILDING ADDITION

BROWNSVILLE ISD
HANNA EARLY COLLEGE HIGH SCHOOL
BROWNSVILLE, CAMERON COUNTY, TEXAS

REVISIONS:

No.	DATE	DESCRIPTION

PROJECT No.:	ABA18-001-01
ISSUE DATE:	05-03-19
DRAWN BY:	DV
CHECKED BY:	SC
REVIEWED BY:	KML

FIGURE
1

GREEN, RUBIANO & ASSOCIATES

Structural Engineers
Firm Registration #: F-4145

1220 West Harrison
Harlingen, Texas 78550
(956) 428-4461
Fax (956) 428-0287

Project Memorandum

Date: June 11, 2019

To: David Monreal, A.I.A.
GMS Architects
Brownsville, TX

GRA Project#: 192-511
Project: BISD Hanna ECHS Gymnasium Facility
Re: Roof Components, Exterior Claddings & Fenestrations Design Wind Pressures

Below are the design wind pressures for roof components, exterior wall claddings and fenestration assemblies for the referenced project. Please make reference to these design wind pressures, and the associated roof diagram illustrated on our drawings, in your specifications and contract documents for modified bitumen roofing, metal soffit panels, masonry veneer, EIFS cladding, aluminum storefront windows & doors, hollow-metal doors, pre-engineered aluminum canopies & sunshade structures, louvers and any other roof, exterior wall or fenestration assembly included on this project. In addition, all exterior glazed openings and louver assemblies must be impact resistant per ASTM E 1886 & E 1996 (or glazing shall be protected by an impact resistant covering).

The roof components, exterior claddings and fenestrations, and anchoring of these items to the structure shall be tested per the building code requirements to meet the following design wind pressures:

Roof Systems & Roof Components			Exterior Wall Claddings, Door & Window Fenestrations	
Zone 1	Zone 2	Zone 3	P+ (towards the surface)	P- (away from the surface)
-26 psf	-44 psf	-66 psf	+24 psf	-32 psf

Roof top mechanical equipment and their support components (curbs, stands, sleepers, etc.), and anchoring of these items to the structure, shall be specified as a delegated design to be performed by the equipment's manufacturer, to meet the greater wind pressures calculated using the following design standards and parameters:

ASCE 7-10 Section 29.5.1		ASCE 7-05 Section 6.5.15.1	
Ultimate Design Wind Speed	152 mph	Nominal Design Wind Speed	120 mph
Risk Category	III	Importance Factor	1.0
Exposure Category	B	Exposure Category	B

We appreciate the opportunity to assist you with this project. Please feel free to contact us if you have any questions.

Sincerely,

Heriberto Cavazos, P.E.

Cc: Rolando Borrayo, Assoc. AIA (GMS Architects)
Cesar Gonzalez, P.E. (Ethos Engineering)
Cristian Guajardo, E.I.T (GRA)

DIVISION 1 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01010 - SUMMARY OF WORK:

1.1 Location: The project site for the BISD Hanna ECHS Gymnasium Facility is at 2615 Price Rd, Brownsville Texas 78521.

1.2 Approval of Working Surfaces: Any contractor performing work over the work of other contractors shall notify the Architect of any unsatisfactory condition. Beginning of work by any contractor shall constitute the acceptance of the previous work.

1.3 Checking Dimensions at Site: Before ordering any materials or doing any work, verify all measurements of the building and be responsible for the correctness of them. No extras will be allowed for variations from drawings in existing conditions or for work performed under this contract. Any discrepancies found shall be submitted to the Architect for instruction before proceeding. The Section shall be enforced diligently.

1.4 Cutting & Patching: No excessive cutting will be permitted, nor shall any structural members be cut without the approval of the Architect. Each contractor shall leave all chases and openings straight, true and of the proper size in his work as may be necessary for the proper installation of his and/or other contractor's work. After such work has been installed, he shall carefully fit around, close up, repair, patch and point up same as directed, to the entire satisfaction of the Architect.

1.5 Cooperation: The General Contractor, all other contractors and all sub-contractors shall coordinate their work with all adjacent work and shall cooperate with all other trades so as to facilitate the general progress of the work. Each trade shall afford all other trades every reasonable opportunity for installation of their work and storage of their materials.

1.6 Project Logbook: The project superintendent shall maintain a daily project logbook, indicating which sub-contractors were on the job, time of arrival, and the number of workers. Statements as to the daily progress shall be logged. This log book shall be made available to the Architect and shall be kept at the job site office.

1.7 Inspection and Tests: Architect and his representative shall at all times have access to the work whether it is in preparation or progress. Provide proper and safe facilities for such access and inspection. Make all inspections and test in connection with this entire contract as required by the Architect. All material testing shall be paid for by the Owner.

1.8 Security: Provide security fencing in all work areas. See Temporary Facilities.

1.9 Mock up Panel: Provide a mock-up for evaluation of product and application workmanship.

1. Install in area and of size designated by Architect.
   a. Construct mockup to illustrate backup wall, exterior sheathing, air barrier, cavity wall, connectors, weep holes, cavity vents, and through wall flashing.
   b. Construct mockup panel 72 inches by 72 inches to illustrate coursing, anchorage, mortar joints and color, window opening and flashing system.

2. Do not proceed with work until finish color, texture, pattern, joint sizes, and installation workmanship are approved by Architect.
3. Correct mock-up area as required to produce acceptable work.

2. ALLOWANCES:
See Paragraph 4.8 of the General Conditions.

2.1 Betterment Allowance: Include the sum set forth below as a Betterment Allowance which will, if needed, be expended on Betterment to the Project, as directed in writing by approved change orders

BETTERMENT ALLOWANCE: $ 200,000.00

2.2 Structural Allowance:

Reinforcing Bars = 10.0 tons @ $2,000 per ton = Total Allowance $20,000.00

Structural Steel = 5.0 tons @ $4,000 per ton = Total Allowance $20,000.00

2.3 Graphics Allowance: Include the sum set forth below as a Graphics Allowance which will, if needed be expended on Betterment to the Project, as directed in writing by approved change orders. (This allowance is to be used for <u>additional</u> graphics that are not already shown in the documents or are already specified).

GRAPHICS ALLOWANCE: $ 20,000.00

SECTION 0110 - BID SCHEDULE
1. BID SCHEDULE: All proposals and alternate bid items shall be subject to the General and Special Conditions and all other related sections of the specifications and requirements of the drawings. The Owner shall have the right to accept or reject any or all alternates.

1.1 BASE BID: The Contractor shall state on the General Contract Bid Proposal under the Base Bid, the amount for all work, complete in all respects in accordance with plans and specifications, to construct BISD Hanna ECHS Gymnasium Facility. The scope of work is defined in the plans and specifications.

1.2 ALTERNATES: The Contractor shall state on his Bid Form, under each Alternate the amount to add to his bid to perform all work, complete in all respects, in accordance with the plans and specifications to construct work required by the Alternates.

<u>Alternate #1:</u> Provide Center Court hung scoreboard as indicated in drawings and specifications.

<u>Alternate #2:</u> Provide Asphalt Overlay at existing parking lot as indicated in drawings and specifications.

<u>SECTION 0120 - AS BUILT DRAWINGS:</u>
As the work proceeds, keep careful records of piping, electrical circuits, duct work and other concealed work whose installed location varies from that shown on plans. Furnish

the Architect with one marked up set before final.

SECTION 0130 - REPORTS:
The Contractor will provide a written report to the Architect after each inspection conducted by the City Inspectors concerning their findings.

SECTION 0140 - QUANTITIES & WARRANTIES:
All guarantees and warranties expressed or implied shall be provided to the Architect in written form prior to final payment.

SECTION 0150 - PICTURES:
The Contractor will provide the Architect with sequence photographs showing the flashing in place prior to installation of exterior windows, doors and application of roofing material. This is MANDATORY. Close-ups of ALL flashing are required.

The Contractor is required to submit progress photos with each month's application for payment.

The Contractor is required to provide Aerial Photos (North, South, West, and East) monthly and submit with each month's application for payment until the project is substantially complete.

SECTION 0160 - CERTIFICATION OF CONSTRUCTION:
The building contractor or construction manager shall certify in writing that the facility has been constructed in accordance to the construction documents and its specifications.

SECTION 0170 - CERTIFICATION OF NON-USE OF ASBESTOS PRODUCTS
The General Contractor shall provide the Architect with written certification letters from all sub-contractors and suppliers that no asbestos products shall be used on this project.

SECTION 0180 - SCOPE AND SEQUENCE OF CONSTRUCTION
1.1 General:
Time extensions shall be submitted for review on a monthly basis.

The successful bidder shall under no circumstances leave this project unsecured or unprotected at any time during construction. The General Contractor is to refer to Section 01505 Temporary Facilities for any and all requirements required by this project.

The General Contractor to provide all necessary precautions and safeguards during construction for protection of any visitor whom might visit the project site. The General Contractor shall provide in a neat format project monthly reports with photos showing progress of construction for their review.

SECTION 01300 – ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

Electronic Submittal Procedures

A. Summary:
   1. Shop drawing and product data submittals shall be transmitted to Architect in electronic (PDF) format using a website service designed specifically for transmitting submittals between construction team members.
   2. The intent of electronic submittals is to expedite the construction process by reducing paperwork, improving information flow, and decreasing turnaround time.
   3. The electronic submittal process is not intended for color samples, color charts, or physical material samples.
   4. Providers: Submittal Exchange; Owner InSite; Procore; Viewpoint, etc.

B. Procedures:
   1. Electronic submittal preparation - Contractor may use any or all of the following options:
      a. Subcontractors and Suppliers provide electronic (PDF) submittals to Contractor via the electronic submittal website.
      b. Subcontractors and Suppliers provide paper submittals to Scanning Service which electronically scans and converts to PDF format.
   2. Contractor shall review and apply electronic stamp certifying that the electronic submittal complies with the requirements of the Contract Documents including verification of manufacturer / product, dimensions and coordination of information with other parts of the work.
   3. Contractor shall transmit each electronic submittal to Architect using the electronic submittal website.
   4. Architect / Engineer review comments will be made available on the electronic submittal website for downloading. Contractor will receive email notice of completed review.
   5. Distribution of reviewed submittals to subcontractors and suppliers is the responsibility of the Contractor.

C. Costs:
   1. General Contractor shall include the full cost of electronic submittal project subscription in their proposal. This cost is included in the Contract Amount. Contact electronic submittal service provider to verify cost prior to bid.
   2. At Contractor's option, training is available from electronic submittal service regarding use of website and PDF submittals.
   3. Internet Service and Equipment Requirements:
      a. Email address and Internet access at Contractor's main office.
      b. Adobe Acrobat (www.adobe.com), Bluebeam PDF Revu (www.bluebeam.com), or other similar PDF review software for applying electronic stamps and comments.

SECTION 01310

PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Coordination Drawings.
2. Administrative and supervisory personnel.
3. Project meetings.
4. Requests for Interpretation (RFIs).

B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility will be assigned to a specific contractor.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. RFI: Request from Contractor seeking interpretation or clarification of the Contract Documents.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
4. Where availability of space is limited, coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair of all components, including mechanical and electrical.

B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.

1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.

C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Preparation of Contractor's Construction Schedule.
2. Preparation of the Schedule of Values.
3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
5. Progress meetings.
6. Preinstallation conferences.
7. Project closeout activities.
8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
9. Project closeout activities.

D. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials.

1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. Refer to other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Prepare Coordination Drawings if limited space availability necessitates maximum utilization of space for efficient installation of different components or if coordination is required for installation of products and materials fabricated by separate entities.

1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Coordination Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:

a. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
b. Indicate required installation sequences.
c. Indicate dimensions shown on the Contract Drawings and make specific note of dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect for resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.

2. Sheet Size: At least 8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm) but no larger than 30 by 40 inches (750 by 1000 mm).

3. Provide Electronic Native PDF Files for review. Do not provide any hardcopies.

4. Refer to individual Sections for Coordination Drawing requirements for Work in those Sections.

B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including mobile and office telephone numbers. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as standbys in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.

1. Post copies of list in Project meeting room, in temporary field office, and by each temporary telephone. Keep list current at all times.

1.6 ADMINISTRATIVE AND SUPERVISORY PERSONNEL

A. General: In addition to Project superintendent, provide other administrative and supervisory personnel as required for proper performance of the Work.

1.7 PROJECT MEETINGS

A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
3. Minutes: Record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.

B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement. Hold the conference at Project site or another convenient location. Conduct the meeting to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.

1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:

a. Tentative construction schedule.
b. Phasing.
c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
e. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
f. Procedures for RFIs.
g. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
i. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
j. Submittal procedures.
k. Preparation of Record Documents.
l. Use of the premises and existing building.
m. Work restrictions.
n. Owner's occupancy requirements.
o. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
p. Construction waste management and recycling.
q. Parking availability.
r. Office, work, and storage areas.
s. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
t. First aid.
u. Security.
v. Progress cleaning.
w. Working hours.

3. Minutes: Record and distribute meeting minutes.

C. Pre-installation Conferences: Conduct a pre-installation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.

1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.

2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:

    a. The Contract Documents.
    b. Options.
    c. Related RFIs.
    d. Related Change Orders.
    e. Purchases.
    f. Deliveries.
    g. Submittals.
    h. Review of mockups.
    i. Possible conflicts.
    j. Compatibility problems.
    k. Time schedules.
    l. Weather limitations.
    m. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
    n. Warranty requirements.
    o. Compatibility of materials.
    p. Acceptability of substrates.
    q. Temporary facilities and controls.
    r. Space and access limitations.
    s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
    t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
    u. Installation procedures.
    v. Coordination with other work.
    w. Required performance results.
    x. Protection of adjacent work.
    y. Protection of construction and personnel.

3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to parties who should have been present.
5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

D. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at regular intervals. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.

1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.

    a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting.

Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's Construction Schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.

1) Review schedule for next period.

b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:

1) Interface requirements.
2) Sequence of operations.
3) Status of submittals.
4) Access.
5) Site utilization.
6) Temporary facilities and controls.
7) Work hours.
8) Hazards and risks.
9) Progress cleaning.
10) Quality and work standards.
11) Status of correction of deficient items.
12) Field observations.
13) RFIs.
14) Status of proposal requests.
15) Pending changes.
16) Status of Change Orders.

3. Minutes: Record the meeting minutes.
4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to parties who should have been present.

a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's Construction Schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

1.8 REQUESTS FOR INTERPRETATION (RFIs)

A. Procedure: Immediately on discovery of the need for interpretation of the Contract Documents, prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.

1. RFIs shall originate with Contractor. RFIs submitted by entities other than Contractor will be returned with no response.
2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing interpretation and the following:

1. Project name.
2. Date.
3. Name of Contractor.
4. Name of Architect.
5. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
6. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
7. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
8. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.

9. Contractor's suggested solution(s). If Contractor's solution(s) impact the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
10. Contractor's signature.
11. Attachments: Include drawings, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.

    a. Supplementary drawings prepared by Contractor shall include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments.

C. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and return it. Allow 10 (Ten) working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.

1. The following RFIs will be returned without action:

    a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    c. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    d. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    e. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    f. Incomplete RFIs or RFIs with numerous errors.

2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will start again.
3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Division 1

    a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.

D. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven 7 days if Contractor disagrees with response.

E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log regularly. Include the following:

1. Project name.
2. Name and address of Contractor.
3. Name and address of Architect.
4. RFI number including RFIs that were dropped and not submitted.
5. RFI description.
6. Date the RFI was submitted.
7. Date Architect's response was received.
8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
9. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01310

SECTION 01340 - SUBMITTALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specifications, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF REQUIREMENTS:
The types of submittal requirements for specified in this section including shop drawings, product data, samples and miscellaneous work related Submittals. Individual submittal requirements are specified in applicable sections for each unit of work. Refer to other Division 1 sections and other contract documents for requirements of administrative Submittals.

Definitions: Work related Submittals of this section are categorized for convenience as follows:

Shop drawings include specially prepared technical data for this project including drawings, diagrams; performance curves data sheets schedules, templates, patterns, reports, calculations, instructions, measurements and similar information not in standard printed form for general application to a range of similar projects.

Product data includes standard printed information on manufactured products that has not been specially prepared for this project, other than the designation of selections from among available choices printed therein.

Samples include both fabricated and un-fabricated physical examples of materials, products and units of work; both as complete units and as smaller portions of units of work; either for limited visual inspection or (where indicated) for more detailed testing and analysis.

Mock ups are special forms of samples, which are too large or otherwise inconvenient for handling in the manner specified for transmittal of sample Submittals.

Miscellaneous Submittals related directly to the work (non administrative) include warranties, maintenance agreements, workmanship bonds, project photographs, survey data and reports, physical work records quality testing and certification reports, copies of industry standards, record drawings, field measurement data, operating and maintenance manuals, overrun stock, and similar information, devices and materials applicable to the work and not processed as shop drawings, product data or samples.

GENERAL SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS:

Scheduling: Where appropriate in administrative submittals, (listing of products, manufacturers, suppliers and sub-contractors, and in job progress schedule), show principal work related submittals and time requirements for coordination of submittal activity with related work in each instance.

Listing: Prepare a separate listing; organized by related specification section number sequence, showing principal work related submittals and their initial submittal dates as required for coordination of the work. Submit listing within 45 days of date of commencement of the work.

Coordination and Sequencing: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with the performance of the work so that work will not be delayed by submittals. Coordinate and sequence different categories of submittals for same work, and for interfacing units of work, so that one will not be delayed for coordination of A/E's review with another.

Preparation of Submittals: Provide permanent marking on each submittal to identify project, date, Contractor, subcontractor, Submittal name, and similar information to distinguish it from other submittals. Show Contractor’s executed review and approval markings and provide space for the Architect/Engineer's "Action" marking. Package each submittal appropriately for transmittal and handling. Submittals which are received from sources other than through Contractor's office will be returned by A/E "without action".

SPECIFIC CATEGORY SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS:
General: Except as otherwise indicated in the individual work sections, comply with the requirements specified herein for each indicated category of submittal. Provide and process intermediate submittals, where required between initial and final, similar to initial submittals.

Shop Drawings: Provide newly prepared information, on reproducible sheets, with graphic information at accurate scale (except as otherwise indicated), with name of preparer indicated (firm name). Show dimensions and not which are based on field measurement. Identify materials and products in the work shown. Indicate compliance with standards and special coordination requirements. Do not allow shop drawing copies without appropriate final "Action” markings by the Architect/Engineer to be used in connection with the work.

Initial Submittal: Provide one electronic print with requested testing data, ICC-ES reports and TDI reports, where applicable.

Product Data: Collect required data into one submittal for each unit of work or system; and mark each copy to show which choices and options are applicable to project. Include manufacturer's standard printed recommendations for application and use, compliance with standards, application of labels and seals, notation of field measurements which have been checked, and special coordination requirements. Maintain one set of product data (for each submittal) at project site, available for reference by Architect/Engineer and others.

Submittals: Do not submit product data, or allow its use on the project, until compliance with requirements of contract documents has been confirmed by Contractor. Submittal is for information and record, unless otherwise indicated.

Initial submittal is final submittal unless returned promptly by Architect/Engineer, marked with an "Action” which indicates an observed non-compliance. Submit 3 copies where required for maintenance manuals.

Samples: Provide units identical with final condition of proposed materials or products for

the work. Include "range" samples (not less than 3 units) where unavoidable variations must be expected, and described or identify variations between units of each set. Provide full set of optional samples where Architect's/Engineer's selection is required. Prepare samples to match Architect's/Engineer's sample where so indicated. Include information with each sample to show generic description, source or product name and manufacturer, limitations, and compliance with standards. Samples are submitted for review and confirmation of color, pattern, texture and "kind" by Architect/Engineer. Architect/Engineer will not "test" samples (except as otherwise indicated) for compliance with other requirements, which are therefore the exclusive responsibility of Contractor.

Submittal: Provide a single set of samples for Architect's/Engineer's review and "Action".

Mock Ups and similar samples specified in individual work sections recognized as a special type of sample. Comply with requirements for "samples" to greatest extent possible, and process transmittal forms to provide a record of activity.

Inspection and Test Reports: Classify each as either "shop drawings" or "product data" depending upon whether report is uniquely prepared for project, or a standard publication of workmanship control testing at point of production and process accordingly.

Warranties: Refer to "Products" section for specific general requirements on warranties, product/workmanship bonds and maintenance agreements. In addition to copies desired for the Contractor's use, furnish 2 executed copies except furnish 2 additional (conformed) copies where required for maintenance manuals.

Closeout Submittals: Refer to Section 01705 Project Closeouts and to individual work sections for specific requirements on submittal of closeout information, materials, tools, and similar items.

Materials and Tools: Refer to individual work sections of for required quantities of spare parts, extra and overrun stock, maintenance tools and devices, keys, and similar physical units to be submitted.

General Distribution: Provide additional distribution of submittals (not included in foregoing copy submittal requirements) to subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, governing authorities, and others as necessary for the proper performance of the work. Include such additional copies in transmittal to the Architect/Engineer where the submittals are required to receive "Action" marking before final distribution. Record submittal distributions on transmittal forms.

ACTION ON SUBMITTALS

Architect/Engineer's Action: Where action and return is required or requested, the Architect/Engineer will review each submittal, mark with “Action", and where possible return within 2 weeks of receipt. If joint review is required with multiple consultants or item must be reviewed for Windstorm Compliance allow for 3 week review time.

Where the submittal must be held for coordination, Contractor will be so advised by A/E without delay.

Final Unrestricted Release: Work may proceed, provided it complies with the contract documents, when submittal is returned with the following:

Marking: "Reviewed – No Exceptions".
Marking: "Reviewed as Noted".

Final But Restricted Release: Work may proceed, provided it complies with notations and corrections on submittal and with contract documents, when submittal is returned with the following:

Marking: "Reviewed as Noted".

Returned for Resubmittal: Do not proceed with work. Revise submittal in accordance with notations thereon, and resubmit without delay to obtain a different action marking. Do not allow submittals with the following marking (or unmarked submittals where a marking is required) to be used in connection with performance of the work:

Marking: "Revise and Resubmit".

Other Action: Where the submittal is returned, for other reasons, with Architect/Engineer's explanation included, it will be marked as follows:

Marking: "Action Not Required".
Marking: "No Action".

Action Stamp: Architect's/Engineer's action stamp, for use on submittals to be returned to Contractor, is self-explanatory as marked.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable).

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable).

END OF SECTION 01340

SECTION 01505 - -TEMPORARY FACILITIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification sections, apply to the work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF REQUIREMENTS:

Definitions: Specific administrative and procedural minimum actions are specified in this section, as extensions of provisions in General Conditions and other contract documents. These requirements have been included for special purposes as indicated. Nothing in this section is intended to limit types and amounts of temporary work required, and no omission from this section will be recognized as an indication by Architect or Engineer that such temporary activity is not required for successful completion of the work and compliance with requirements of contract documents. Provisions of this section are applicable to, but not by way of limitation, utility services, construction facilities, support facilities, security/protection provisions, and support facilities.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:

General: In addition to compliance with governing regulations and rules/recommendation of franchised utility companies, comply with specific requirements indicated and with applicable local industry standards for construction work (published recommendations by local consensus "building councils").

ANSI Standards: Comply with applicable provisions of ANSI Al Series standards on construction safety, including A.10.3, A.10.4, A10.5, A10.6, A10.7, A10.8, A10.9, A10.10, A10.11, A10.12, A10.13, A10.14, A10.15, A10.17, A10.18, A10.20, and A10.22.

NFPA Code" Comply with NFPA Code 241 "Building Construction and Demolition Operations."

JOB CONDITIONS:

General: Establish and initiate use of each temporary facility at time first reasonably required for proper performance of the work. Terminate use and remove facilities at earliest reasonable time, when no longer needed or when permanent facilities have, with authorized use, replaced the need.

Conditions of Use: Install, operate, maintain and protect temporary facilities in a manner and at locations which will be safe, non hazardous, sanitary and protective of persons and property, and free of deleterious effects.

PART 2 AND 3 - PRODUCTS AND EXECUTION

TEMPORARY UTILITY SERVICES:

The types of services required include, but not by way of limitation, water, sewage, surface drainage, electrical power and telephones. Where possible and reasonable, connect to existing franchised utilities for required services; and comply with service

companies' recommendations on materials and methods, or engage service companies to install services. Locate and relocate services (as necessary) to minimize interference with construction operations.

TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES:

The types of temporary construction facilities required include, but not by way of limitation, water distribution, drainage, enclosure of work, heat, ventilation, electrical power distribution, lighting, hoisting facilities, stairs, ladders, and roads. Provide facilities reasonably required to perform construction operations properly and be large enough to accommodate meetings for 10 persons.

Water Distribution: Provide hose lengths sufficient to reach entire area of construction work, not less than 3/4" hose size. Prevent freezing of water distribution by either prompt drainage after each use, or by suitable protection.

Electrical Power: Provide weatherproof, grounded, power distribution system sufficient to accommodate construction operations requiring power, use of power tools, electrical heating, lighting, and start up testing of permanent electric powered equipment prior to its permanent connection to electrical system. Provide overload protection. Locate multiple outlets (not less than 4 gang boxes) at each story of construction, spaced so that entire area of construction can be reached by power tools on a single extension cord of 100' maximum length.

> Supply power for electric welding, if any, from either temporary power distribution system or by engine driven power generator sets, at Contractor's option.

Lighting: Provide sufficient temporary lighting to ensure proper workmanship everywhere; by combined use of daylight, general lighting, and portable plug in task lighting. Provide general lighting with local switching which will enable energy conservation during periods of varying activity (work in progress, traffic only security check, lock up, etc.).

> Provide uniformly spaced general lighting equivalent to not less than one 200 watt incandescent lamp per 1000 sq. ft. of floor area, and one 100 watt lamp per 50' of corridor and per flight of stairs.

Access Provisions: Provide ramps, stairs, ladders and similar temporary access elements as reasonably required to perform the work and facilitate its inspection during installation. Comply with reasonable requests of governing authorities performing inspections. When permanent stairs are available for access during construction, cover finished surfaces with sufficient protection to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of substantial completion.

SECURITY/PROTECTION PROVISION:

The types of temporary security and protection provision required include, but not by way of limitation, fire protection, barricades, fencing (wire), warning signs/lights, and similar provision intended to minimize property losses, personal injuries and claims for damages at project site.

Fire Extinguishers: Provide types, sizes, numbers and locations as would be reasonably effective in extinguishing fires during early stages, by personnel at project site. Provide Type A extinguishers at locations of low potential for either electrical or grease oil

flammable liquids fires; provide Type ABC dry chemical extinguishers at other locations; comply with recommendations of NFPA No. 10. Post warning and quick instructions at each extinguisher location, and instruct proper use of extinguishers and other available facilities at project site. Post local fire department call number on each telephone instrument at project site.

Permanent Fire Protection: Complete each fire protection facility at earliest reasonable date, make ready for emergency use, and instruct personnel at site on availability and proper use.

Building Enclosure and Lockup: At earliest possible date, secure building against unauthorized entrance at times when personnel are not working.

Temporary Fencing is required at all work areas (Building Addition, walk-way canopies, soccer field, new parking areas etc.) to provide protection for building occupants using the portion of the building being used. Coordinate locations with Owner.

TEMPORARY SUPPORT FACILITIES:

The types of temporary support facilities required include, but not by way of limitation, field offices, storage sheds, fabrication sheds, sanitary facilities, drinking water, first aid facilities, bulletin board, private telephones, project identification signs, clean up facilities, waste disposal service, and similar miscellaneous general services, all as may be reasonably required for proficient performance of the work and accommodation of personnel at the site including Owner's and Architect's/Engineer's personnel.

Discontinue and remove temporary support facilities, and make incidental similar use of permanent work of the project, only when and in manner authorized by Architect/Engineer; and, if not otherwise indicated, immediately before time of substantial completion. Locate temporary support facilities for convenience of users, and for minimum interference with construction activities.

Contractor's Field Offices: Provide adequate office space for field office personnel plus one spare work station for incidental use by subcontractor's personnel, suitably finished, furnished, equipped and conditioned.

Sanitary Facilities: At contractor's option, provide either piped (wet) toilets facilities or self-contained toilet units of type acceptable to governing authorities, adequate (at all stages of construction) for use of personnel at job site. Provide separate facilities for male and female personnel when both sexes are working (in any capacity) at project site.

Project Identification Sign: At locations(s) shown on site plans provide project identification sign complying with drawing in Contract Documents. Engage an experienced sign painter to paint graphics on sign as indicated. Construct sign of treated wood framing and posts, and 3/4" plywood panels of exterior type Grade B C sanded 2 sides.

END OF SECTION 01505

SECTION 01605 - PRODUCTS AND SUBSTITUTIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF REQUIREMENTS:

Definitions: "Products" is defined to include purchased items for incorporation into the work, regardless of whether specifically purchased for project or taken from Contractor's stock of previously purchased products. "Materials", is defined as products which must be substantially cut, shaped, worked, mixed, finished, refined or otherwise fabricated, processed, installed or applied to form units of work. "Equipment" is defined as products with operational parts, regardless of whether motorized or manually operated, and particularly including products with service connections (wiring, piping, etc.). Definitions in this paragraph are not intended to negate the meaning of other terms used in contract documents, including "specialties," "systems," "structure," "finishes," "accessories," "furnishings," "special construction," and similar terms, which are self explanatory and have recognized meanings in the construction industry.

Substitutions: The requirements for substitutions do not apply to specified Contractor options on products and construction methods. Revisions to contract documents, where requested by Owner, Architect or Engineer, are "changes" not "substitutions." Substitutions requested during bidding period, which have been accepted prior to Contract Date, are included in contract documents and are not subject to requirements for substitutions as specified herein. Contractor's determination of an compliance with governing regulations and orders issued by governing authorities do not constitute "substitutions;" and do not constitute a basis for change orders, except as provided for in contract documents. Otherwise, Contractor's requests for changes in products, materials and methods of construction required by contract documents after the bidding period are considered requests for "substitutions," and are subject to requirements hereof.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:

Source Limitations: To the greatest extent possible, for each unit of work, provide products, materials or equipment of a singular generic kind and from a single source.

Compatibility of Options: Where more than one choice is available as options for Contractor's selection of a product or material, select an option which is compatible with other products and materials already selected (which may have been from among options for those other products and materials). Total compatibility among options is not assured by limitations within contract documents, but must be provided by Contractor. Compatibility is a basic general requirement of product/material selections.

SUBMITTALS:

Requests for Substitutions: Submit 3 copies, fully identified for product or method being replaced by substitution, including related specification section and drawing number(s), and fully documented to show compliance with requirements for substitutions. Include product data/drawings, description of methods, samples where applicable, Contractor's detailed comparison of significant qualities between specified item and proposed substitution, statement of effect on construction time and coordination with other affected work, cost information or proposal, and Contractor's statement to the effect that proposed substitution will result in overall work equal to or better than work originally indicated.

PRODUCT DELIVER STORAGE HANDLING:

General: Deliver, handle and store products in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and by methods and means which will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss including theft. Control delivery schedules to minimize long term storage of products at site and overcrowding of construction spaces. In particular, provide delivery/installation coordination to ensure minimum holding or storage times for products recognized to be flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft and other sources of loss.

WARRANTIES (GUARANTEES):

Categories of Specific Warranties: Warranties on the work are in several categories, including those of General Conditions, and including (but not necessarily limited to) the following specific categories related to individual units of work specified in sections of Divisions 2 through 14 of these specifications:

Special Project Warranty (Guarantee): A warranty specifically written and signed by Contractor for a defined portion of the work; and, where required, countersigned by subcontractor, installer, manufacturer or other entity engaged by Contractor.

Specified Product Warranty: A warranty which is required by contract documents, to be provided for a manufactured product incorporated into the work; regardless of whether manufacturer has published a similar warranty without regard for specific incorporation of a product into the work, or has written and executed a special product warranty as a direct result of contract document requirements.

Coincidental Product Warranty: A warranty which is not specifically required by contract documents (other than as specified in this Section); but which is available on a product incorporated into the work, by virtue of the fact that manufacturer of product has published warranty in connection with purchases and uses of product without regard for specific applications except as otherwise limited by terms of warranty.

Refer to individual sections of Divisions 2 through 14 for the determination of units of work which are required to be specifically or individually warranted, and for the specific requirements and terms of those warranties (or guarantees).

General Limitations: It is recognized that specific warranties are intended primarily to protect Owner against failure of the work to perform as required, and against deficient, defective and faulty materials and workmanship, regardless of sources. Except as otherwise indicated, specific warranties do not cover failures in the work which result from: 1.) Unusual and abnormal phenomena of the elements, 2.) The Owner's misuse,

maltreatment or improper maintenance of the work, 3.) Vandalism after time of substantial completion, or 4.) Insurrection or acts of aggression including war.

Related Damages and Losses: In connection with Contractor's correction of warranted work which has failed, remove and replace other work of project which has been damaged as a result of such failure, or must be removed and replaced to provide access for correction of warranted work.

Consequential Damages: Except as otherwise indicated or required by governing regulation, special project warranties and product warranties are not extended to cover damage to building contents (other than work of Contract) which occurs as a result of failure of warranted work.

Reinstatement of Warranty Period: Except as otherwise indicated, when work covered by a special project warranty or product warranty has failed and has been corrected by replacement or restoration, reinstate warranty by written endorsement for the following time period, starting on date of acceptance of replaced or restored work.

A period of time is equal to original warranty period of time.

Replacement Cost, Obligations: Except as otherwise indicated, costs of replacing or restoring failing warranted units or products is Contractor's obligation, without regard for whether Owner has already benefited from use through a portion of anticipated useful service lives.

Rejection of Warranties: Owner reserves the right, at time of substantial completion or thereafter, to reject coincidental product warranties submitted by Contractor, which in opinion of Owner tend to detract from or confuse interpretation of requirements of contract documents.

Contractor's Procurement Obligations: Do not purchase, subcontract for, or allow others to purchase or sub subcontract for materials or units of work for materials or units of work for project where a special project warranty, specified product warranty, certification or similar commitment is required, until it has been determined that entities required to countersign such commitments are willing to do so.

Specific Warranty Forms: Where a special project warranty (guarantee) or specified project warranty is required, prepare a written document to contain terms and appropriate identification, ready for execution by required parties. Submit draft to Owner (through Architect/Engineer) for approval prior to final executions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

GENERAL PRODUCT COMPLIANCES:

General: The compliance requirements, for individual products as indicated in contract documents, are multiple in nature and may include generic, descriptive, proprietary, performance, prescriptive, compliance with standards, compliance with codes, conformance with graphic details and other similar forms and methods of indicating requirements, all of which must be complied with. Also "allowances" and similar provisions of contract documents will have a bearing on selection process.

Procedures for Selecting Products: Contractor's options for selecting products are limited by contract document requirements, and governing regulations, and are not controlled by industry and governing regulations, and are not controlled by industry traditions or procedures experienced by Contractor on previous construction projects.

Required procedures include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following for various indicated methods of specifying:

Single Product/Manufacturer Name: Provide product indicated, except advice Architect/Engineer before proceeding, where known that named product is not a feasible or acceptable selection.

Two or More Product/Manufacturer Names: Provide one of the named products, at Contractor's option; but excluding products which do not comply with requirements. Do not provide or offer to provide an unnamed product, except where none of named products comply with requirements or are a feasible selection; advise Architect/Engineer before proceeding.

"Or Equal": Where named products in specifications text are accompanied by the term "or equal", or other language of similar effect, comply with those contract document provisions concerning "substitutions" for obtaining Architect/Engineer's approval (by change order) to provide an unnamed product. This product must meet or exceed the original specified product specifications.
"Named", except as otherwise indicated, is defined to mean manufacturer's name for product, as recorded in published product literature, of latest issue as of date of contract documents. Refer requests to use products of a later (or earlier) model to Architect/Engineer's for acceptance before proceeding.

Standards, Codes and Regulations: Where only compliance with an imposed standard, code or regulation is required, selection from among products which comply with requirements including those standards, codes and regulations, is Contractor's option.

Performance Requirements: Provide products which comply with specific performances indicated, and which are recommended by manufacturer (in published product literature or by individual certification) for application indicated. Overall performance of a product is implied where product is specified with only certain specific performance requirements.

Prescriptive Requirements: Provide products which have been produced in accordance with prescriptive requirements, using specified ingredients and components, and complying with specified requirements for mixing, fabricating, curing, finishing, testing and similar operations in manufacturing process.

SUBSTITUTIONS:
Conditions: Contractor's request for substitution will be received and considered when extensive revisions to contract documents are not required and changes are in keeping with general intent of contract documents; when timely, fully documented and properly submitted; and when one or more of following conditions is satisfied, all as judged by Architect/Engineer. Otherwise, requests will be returned without action except to record non compliance with these requirements.

Where required product, material or method cannot be provided in a manner which is compatible with other materials of the work, or cannot be properly coordinated therewith,

or cannot be warranted as required, or cannot be used without adversely affecting Owner's insurance coverage on completed work, or will encounter other substantial non compliance which are not possible to otherwise overcome except by making requested substitution, which Contractor thereby certifies to overcome such non compatibility, non coordination, non warranty, non insurability or other non compliance as claimed.

Work Related Submittals: Contractor's submittal of (and Architect/Engineer's acceptance of) shop drawings, product data or samples which relate to work not complying with requirements of contract documents, does not constitute an acceptable or valid request for a substitution, nor approval thereof.

GENERAL PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS:

General: Provide products which comply with requirements, and which are undamaged and unused at time of installation, and which are complete with accessories, trim, finish, safety guards and other devices and details needed for a complete installation and for intended use and effect.

Standard Products: Where available, provide standard products of types which have been produced and used previously and successfully on other projects and in similar applications.

Nameplates: Except as otherwise indicated for required approval labels, and operating data, do not permanently attach or imprint manufacturer's or producer's nameplates or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products which will be exposed to view either in occupied spaces or on exterior of the work.

Labels: Locate required labels and stamps on a concealed surface or, where required for observation after installation, on an accessible surface which, in occupied spaces, is not conspicuous.

Equipment Nameplates: Provide permanent nameplate on each item of service connected or poser operated equipment. Indicate manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, speed, ratings and similar essential operating data. Locate nameplates on an easily accessed surface which, in occupied spaces, is not conspicuous.

PART 3 EXECUTION (not applicable)

END OF SECTION 01605

SECTION 01705 - PROJECT CLOSEOUTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF REQUIREMENTS:

Definitions: Closeout is hereby defined to include general requirements near the end of the Contract Time, in preparation for final acceptance, final payment, normal termination of contract, occupancy by Owner and similar actions evidencing completion of the work. Specific requirements for individual units of work are specified in sections of Divisions 2 through 16. Time of closeout is directly related to “Substantial Completion", and therefore may be either a single time period for entire work which have been certified as substantially complete at different dates. That time variation (if any) shall be applicable to other provisions of this section.

PREREQUISITES TO SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION:

General: Prior to requesting the Architect/Engineer's inspection for certification of substantial completion, (for either the entire work or for portions thereof), complete the following and list known exceptions in the request:

Submit specific warranties, workmanship/maintenance bonds, maintenance agreements, final certifications and similar documents.

Obtain and submit releases enabling Owner’s full, unrestricted use of the work and access to services and utilities (where required), include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.

Deliver tools, spare parts, extra stocks of materials, and similar physical items to the Owner.

Attic stock or extra materials for the Owner are not to be used for punch list or warranty work, unless permission is given. In such case, the material is to be restocked and provided to the Owner.

Make final changeover of locks and transmit the keys to the Owner, and advise the Owner's personnel of change over in security provisions.

Complete start up testing of systems, and instructions of the Owner’s operating and maintenance personnel. Discontinue or change over and remove temporary facilities and services from the project site, along with construction tools and facilities, mock ups, and similar elements.

Complete final cleaning up requirements, including touch up of painting of marred surfaces.

Inspection Procedures: Upon receipt of the Contractor's request Architect/Engineer will either proceed with inspection or advise Contractor of unfilled prerequisites. Following

the initial inspection, the Architect/Engineer will either prepare the certificate of substantial completion, or will advise the Contractor of work which must be performed prior to the issuance of certificate; and repeat the inspection when requested and when assured that the work has been substantially completed. Results of the completed inspection will form the initial "punch list" for final acceptance.

Attic Stock Quantities:

Vinyl Composition Tile:	(3) Boxes – Field Color
	(1) Box- Each Accent Color
Rubber Base:	60 LF
Corner Guards	(5) with anchors
Paint:	(2) 5-gallon - Field Color
	(1) 5-gallon – Each Accent Color
Ceramic Tile	(2) Cartons – 8x8 Floor Tile
	(2) Cartons – 4x12 Wall Tile
Acoustical Ceiling	(4) Boxes – Type I

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

- Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

SECTION 224713 - DRINKING FOUNTAINS

- Filter Cartridges: Equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each type and size indicated, but no fewer than 3 of each.

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

- Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

SECTION 233423 Power HVAC Ventilators

Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- Belts: One set for each belt-driven unit.

SECTION 237413 - PACKAGED, OUTDOOR, CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fan Belts: **One set** for each belt-drive fan (if applicable)
2. Filters: **One set** of filters for each unit.

SECTION 237433 - DEDICATED OUTDOOR-AIR UNITS

Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fan Belts: One set for each belt-driven fan.
2. Filters: One set for each unit.

SECTION 238126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: **One** set for each air-handling unit.
2. Fan Belts: **One** set for each air-handling unit fan.

SECTION 230900 – INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROLS

- Adjustable Limited Range Wall Temperature Sensors (Thermostats): Provide extra thermostats: 5 of each type.

SECTION 260943.23 - RELAY-BASED LIGHTING CONTROLS

Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lighting Control Relays: Provide five (five).

SECTION 262413 SWITCHBOARDS

Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- Potential Transformer Fuses: One of each type.
- Control-Power Fuses: Three of each type.
- Fuses and Fusible Devices for Fused Circuit Breakers: Three of each type.
- Fuses for Fused Switches: Three of each size and type.
- Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: One of each type.
- Indicating Lights: One of each type.

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- Keys: Provide five (five).
- Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and GFEP Types: Two of each type.
- Fuses for Fused Switches: Three of each type.

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- Service/Power Poles: One of each type
- Floor Service-Outlet Assemblies: One of each type
- Poke-Through, Fire-Rated Closure Plugs: One of each type

SECTION 262813 – FUSES

Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- Fuses: Three of each type.

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- Fuses: Three of each type.
- Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

SECTION 262913 - ENCLOSED CONTROLLERS

Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- Fuses for Fused Switches: Three of each type.
- Control Power Fuses: Three of each type.
- Indicating Lights: Two of each type and color installed.
- Auxiliary Contacts: Furnish one spare(s) for each size and type of magnetic controller installed.
- Power Contacts: Furnish three spares for each size and type of magnetic contactor installed.

SECTION 265116 - INTERIOR LIGHTING

Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- Light Fixtures: Lamps: Three of each type.
- Diffusers and Lenses: Five of each type.
- LED-luminaire-mounted emergency battery pack: Five of each type.
- Globes and Guards: Three of each type.

SECTION 265219 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- Light Fixtures: Two of each type.
- LED-luminaire-mounted emergency battery pack: Five of each type.
- Diffusers and Lenses: Two of each type.
- Globes and Guards: Two of each type.

○

SECTION 265621 - EXTERIOR LIGHTING

Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- Light fixtures: One of each type, no poles required.
- Diffusers and Lenses: Two of each type.
- Globes and Guards: Two of each type.

SECTION 267210 - FIRE ALARM SYSTEM

Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- Fire Alarm Initiating Devices: Three of each type.
- Fire Alarm Indicating Devices: Three of each type.

SECTION 267230 – SCHOOL INTERCOM AND PROGRAM EQUIPMENT

Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- Speakers Devices: Three of each type.
- Call-in switch devices: Three of each type.

SECTION 267240 - INTRUSION DETECTION

Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- Intrusion Detection Devices: Three of each type.

PREREQUISITES TO FINAL ACCEPTANCE:

General: Prior to requesting Architect/Engineer's final inspection for certification of final acceptance, and final payment, as required by the General Conditions, complete the following and list known exceptions, (if any), in request.

Submit the final payment request with final releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted. Include certificates of insurance for products and completed operations where required.

Submit an updated final statement, accounting for final additional changes to the Contract Sum.

Submit certified copy of the Architect/Engineer’s final punch list of itemized work to be completed or corrected, stating that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance and has been endorsed and dated by the Architect.

Submit consent of surety.

Re-inspection Procedure: Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice that the work has been completed, including punch list items resulting from earlier inspections, and excluding incomplete items delayed because of acceptable circumstances, the Architect/Engineer will re-inspect the work.

Upon completion of re-inspection, the Architect/Engineer will either prepare a certificate of final acceptance, or will advise the Contractor of work that is incomplete or obligations not fulfilled, as required for final acceptance. If necessary, procedure will be repeated.

RECORD DOCUMENT SUBMITTALS:

General: Specific requirements for record documents are indicated in individual sections of these specifications. Other requirements are indicated in the General Conditions. General submittal requirements are indicated in the "Submittals" sections. Do not use record documents for construction purposes; protect from deterioration and loss in a secure, fire resistive location; provide access to record documents for Architect/Engineer's reference during normal working hours.

Record Drawings: Maintain a white print set (blue line or white prints of contract drawings and shop drawings in a clean, undamaged condition with mark up of actual installations which vary substantially from the work as originally shown. Mark whichever drawing is most capable of showing the actual "field" condition fully and accurately; however, where shop drawings are used for mark up, record a cross reference at the corresponding location on the working drawings. Mark with legible erasable pencil and, where feasible, use other colors to distinguish between variations in separate categories of work. Verify colors will be visible during scanning of record drawings. Mark up new information which is recognized to be of importance to Owner, but was for some reason not shown on either contract drawings or shop drawings. Give particular attention to concealed work that would be difficult to measure and record at a later date. Note related change order numbers where applicable. Organize record drawing sheets into manageable sets, bind with durable paper cover sheets, and print suitable titles, dates and other identification on cover of each set.
Provide two electronic copies on CD of the record drawings to the Owner.

Record Specifications: Maintain one copy of specifications, including addenda, change orders and similar modifications issued in printed form during construction, and mark up variations (of substance) in the actual work in comparison with the text of the specifications and modifications as issued. Give particular attention to substitutions, selection of options and similar information on work where it is concealed or cannot otherwise be readily discerned at a later date by direct observation. Note related record drawing information and product data, where applicable. Upon completion of mark up, submit to Architect/Engineer for Owner’s records.

Record Product Data: Maintain one copy of each product data submittal, and mark up significant variations in actual work in performed in comparison with the submitted information. Include both variations in product as delivered to site, and variations from the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for installation. Give particular attention to concealed products and portions of the work which cannot otherwise be readily discerned at a later date by direct observation. Note related change orders and mark up of record drawings and specifications. Upon completion of mark up, submit complete set to Architect/Engineer for the Owners' records.

Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Refer to other sections of these specifications for requirements of miscellaneous record keeping and submittals in connection with the actual performance of the work. Immediately prior to the date(s) of substantial completion, complete miscellaneous records and place in good order, properly identified and bound or filed, ready for continued use and reference. Submit to the Architect/Engineer for the Owner's records.

Maintenance Manuals: Organize maintenance and operating manual information into suitable sets of manageable size, and bind into individual binders properly identified and indexed (thumb tabbed). Include emergency instructions, spare parts listing, and copies of warranties, wiring diagrams, recommended "turn around" cycles, inspection procedures, shop drawings, product data, and similar applicable information. Bind each

manual of each set of data in a heavy duty 2", 3 ring vinyl covered binder, and include pocket folders for folded sheet information. Mark identification on both front and spine of each binder.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (not applicable)

PART 3 EXECUTIONS

CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES:

General Operating and Maintenance Instructions: Arrange for each installer of work requiring continuing maintenance or operation, to meet with Owner's personnel, at the project site, to provide basic instruction needed for proper operation and maintenance of the entire work. Include instructions by the manufacturer's representatives where installers are not experts in the required procedures. Review maintenance manuals, record documentation, tools, spare parts and materials, lubricants, fuels identification system, control sequences, hazards, cleaning and similar procedures and facilities. For operational equipment, demonstrate start up, shut down, emergency operations, noise and vibration adjustments, safety, economy and efficiency adjustments energy effectiveness, and similar operations. Review maintenance and operations in relation with applicable warranties, agreements to maintain, bonds and similar continuing commitments.

FINAL CLEANING:

General: Special cleaning for specific units of work is specified in sections of Divisions 2 through 14. General cleaning during the progress of the work is specified in General Conditions and as "Temporary Facilities" section of this Division. Provide final cleaning of the work, at time indicated, consisting of cleaning each surface or unit of work to normal "clean" condition expected for a first class building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for cleaning operations. The following are examples but not by way of limitation, of cleaning levels required.

Remove labels which are not required as permanent labels.

Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and window/door glass, to a polished condition, removing substances which are noticeable as vision obscuring materials. Replace broken glass and damaged transparent materials.

Clean exposed exterior and interior hard surface finishes to a dirt free condition, free of dust, stains, films and similar noticeable distracting substances. Except as other-wise indicated, avoid disturbance of natural weathering of exterior surface. Restore reflective surfaces to their original reflective condition.

Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment clean, including elevator equipment and similar equipment; remove excess lubrication and other substances.

Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics and similar spaces.

Clean concrete floors in non-occupied spaces broom clean. Vacuum clean carpeted surfaces and similar soft surfaces.

Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains including those resulting from water exposure.

Clean food service equipment to a condition of sanitation ready and acceptable for intended food service use.

Clean light fixtures and lamps so as to function with full efficiency.

Clean project site (yard and grounds), including landscape development areas, of litter and foreign substances.

Sweep paved areas to a broom clean condition; remove stains, petro chemical spills and other foreign deposits. Rake ground which are neither planted nor paved, to a smooth, even textured surface.

Pest Control: Engage an experienced exterminator to make a final inspection of project and to rid project of rodents, insects, and other pests.

Removal of Protection: Except as otherwise indicated or requested by the Architect/Engineer, remove temporary protection devices and facilities which were installed during the course of the work to protect previously completed work during the remainder of the construction period.

Compliance: Comply with safety standards and governing regulations for cleaning operations. Do not burn waste materials at the site. Do not bury debris or excess materials on the Owner's property. Do not discharge volatile or other harmful or dangerous materials into drainage systems. Remove waste materials from site and dispose of in a lawful manner.

Close-Out Required Documents

Required Documents provided to Owner:

- 2 - Sets of As-Built Drawings (Hard Copy)
  - 1 Set is to be provided to Central Administration Facilities Manager
  - 1 Set is to be provided to the Project Specific Campus Facility Manager

- 1 – CD or USB of As-Built Drawings provided to Central Administration Facilities Manager

- 2 - Sets of Close-Out Binders
  - 1 Set is to be provided to Central Administration Facilities Manager
  - 1 Set is to be provided to the Project Specific Campus Facility Manager.

Required Electronic Documents sent to Owner's Representative:

- Punch Lists
- Special Tests
- Special Inspector Sign-Off
- Asbestos Affidavit
- Certificate of Occupancy
- Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion
- Owner Training / System Demonstrations (Sign-In sheet w/ hours)
- Change Orders

- As-Built Drawings
- Spare Parts / Attic Stock (Transmittal of delivery to Campus & IDEA sign-off)
- Subcontractor / Supplier Contact List
- Warranties
- Elevation Certificates
- Final Release of Liens
- Consent of Surety

END OF SECTION 01705

SECTION 019113 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Basis-of-Design documentation is referenced for information only, and not included here.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. General requirements for coordinating and scheduling commissioning.
2. Commissioning meetings.
3. Commissioning reports.
4. Equipment and systems installation, startup, and field quality-control testing indicated in the Contract Documents.
5. Use of test equipment, instrumentation, and tools for commissioning.
6. System readiness checklists, including, but not limited to, installation checks, startup, performance tests, and performance test demonstration.
7. Commissioning tests and commissioning test demonstration.
8. Work to correct commissioning issues.
9. Work to repeat tests when equipment and systems fail acceptance criteria.
10. Adjusting, verifying, and documenting identified systems and assemblies.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submittal procedures requirements for commissioning.
2. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for certificate of Construction Phase Commissioning Completion submittal requirements.
3. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for preliminary operation and maintenance data submittal.
4. Section 230800 "Commissioning of HVAC" for technical commissioning requirements for HVAC.
5. Section 260800 "Commissioning of Electrical Systems" for technical commissioning requirements for electrical systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Acceptance Criteria: Threshold of acceptable work quality or performance specified for a commissioning activity, including, but not limited to, system readiness checklists, performance tests, performance test demonstrations, commissioning tests and commissioning test demonstrations.

B. Basis-of-Design Document (BoD): A document prepared by Engineer, or Commissioning Authority that records concepts, calculations, decisions, and product selections used to comply with Owner's Project Requirements and to suit applicable regulatory requirements, standards, and guidelines.

C. Commissioning Authority (CxA): An entity engaged by Owner, and identified in Section 011000 "Summary," to evaluate Commissioning-Process Work.

D. Commissioning Plan: A document, prepared by Commissioning Authority, that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of commissioning.

E. Commissioning (Cx): A quality-focused process for verifying and documenting that the facility and all of its systems and assemblies are planned, designed, installed, and tested to comply with Owner's Project Requirements. The requirements specified here are limited to the construction phase commissioning activities. The scope of commissioning is defined in this section and is in accordance with the requirements in the IECC.

F. Construction Phase Commissioning Completion: The stage of completion and acceptance of commissioning when resolution of deficient conditions and issues discovered during commissioning and retesting until acceptable results are obtained has been accomplished. Owner will establish in writing the date Construction Phase Commissioning Completion is achieved. See Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for certificate of Construction Phase Commissioning Completion submittal requirements.

1. Commissioning is complete when the work specified in this Section and related Sections has been completed and accepted, including, but not limited to, the following:

    a. Completion of tests and acceptance of test results.
    b. Resolution of issues, as verified by retests performed and documented with acceptance of retest results.
    c. Comply with requirements in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
    d. Completion and acceptance of submittals and reports.

G. Functional Test: Test of dynamic function of systems, as opposed to components, under full operation in various modes through all control system’s sequences of operation using manual (direct observation) or monitoring methods following prescribed test procedures in sequential written form

H. Owner's Project Requirements (OPR): A document that details the functional requirements of a project and the expectations of how it will be used and operated, including Project goals, measurable performance criteria, cost considerations, benchmarks, success criteria, and supporting information.

I. Owner's Witness: Commissioning Authority, Owner's Project Manager, or Architect-designated witness authorized to authenticate test demonstration data and to sign completed test data forms.

J. Construction or System readiness Checklist: List, provided by Commissioning Authority to installer, of items to inspect and elementary component tests to conduct to verify proper installation of equipment prior to functional testing.

K. Sampling: Functionally testing only a fraction of total number of identical or near identical pieces of equipment.

L. Seasonal Commissioning: Testing of equipment that can be done only during periods of peak heating or cooling, when HVAC equipment is operating at full-load or heavy-load conditions.

M. Simulated Condition: Condition created for purpose of testing response of system.

N. "Systems," "Assemblies," "Subsystems," "Equipment," and "Components": Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components.

O. Test: Performance tests, performance test demonstrations, commissioning tests, and commissioning test demonstrations.

P. Trending: Monitoring using building control system.

1.4 COMPENSATION

A. Should Architect, Commissioning Authority, other Owner's witness, or Owner's staff perform additional services or incur additional expenses due to actions of Contractor listed below, compensate Owner for such additional services and expenses.

1. Failure to provide timely notice of commissioning activities schedule changes.
2. Failure to meet acceptance criteria for test demonstrations.

B. Contractor shall compensate Owner for such additional services and expenses at the rate of $150.00 per labor hour plus $100.00 per round trip plus per diem allowances for meals and lodging according to current U.S. General Services Administration (GSA) Per Diem Rates.

1.5 COMMISSIONING TEAM

A. Members Appointed by Contractor(s):

1. Commissioning Coordinator: A person or entity employed by Contractor to manage, schedule, and coordinate commissioning.
2. Project superintendent and other employees that Contractor may deem appropriate for a particular portion of the commissioning.
3. Subcontractors, installers, suppliers, and specialists that Contractor may deem appropriate for a particular portion of the commissioning.
4. Appointed team members shall have the authority to act on behalf of the entity they represent.

B. Members Appointed by Owner:

1. Commissioning Authority (CxA), plus consultants that CxA may deem appropriate for a particular portion of the commissioning.

a. CxA: Ethos Engineering, Mark Warren, PE. Cell (512) 563-3495

2. Owner representative(s), facility operations and maintenance personnel, plus other employees, separate contractors, and consultants that Owner may deem appropriate for a particular portion of the commissioning.

    a. Owner's Rep: To be designated

3. Architect, plus employees and consultants that Architect may deem appropriate for a particular portion of the commissioning.

    a. Architect: See Specifications for Contact Information.

4. MEP Engineer, plus employees and consultants that Architect may deem appropriate for a particular portion of the commissioning.

    a. MEP: Ethos Engineering, Guillermo Quintanilla. Cell (956) 564-2811.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submittal procedures general requirements for commissioning.

B. Commissioning Plan Information:

1. List of Contractor-appointed commissioning team members to include specific personnel and subcontractors to the performance of the various commissioning requirements.
2. Schedule of commissioning activities, integrated with the construction schedule. Comply with requirements in Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for construction schedule general requirements for commissioning.
3. Contractor personnel and subcontractors to participate in each test.
4. List of instrumentation required for each test to include identification of parties that will provide instrumentation for each test.

C. Commissioning schedule.

D. Two-week look-ahead schedules.

E. Test Reports:

1. Pre-Startup Report: Prior to startup of equipment or a system, submit signed, completed system readiness checklists.
2. Test Data Reports: At the end of each day in which tests are conducted, submit test data for tests performed.
3. Commissioning Issues Reports: Daily, at the end of each day in which tests are conducted, submit commissioning issue reports for tests for which acceptable results were not achieved.
4. Weekly Progress Report: Weekly, at the end of each week in which tests are conducted, submit a progress report.
5. Data Trend Logs: Submit data trend logs at the end of the trend log period.

6. System Alarm Logs: Daily, at the start of days following a day in which tests were performed, submit print-out of log of alarms that occurred since the last log was printed.

F. System readiness checklists:

1. Material checks.
2. Installation checks.
3. Startup procedures, where required.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Commissioning Report:

1. At Construction Phase Commissioning Completion, include the following:

a. Pre-startup reports.
b. Test data forms, completed and signed.
c. Commissioning issues report log.
d. Commissioning issues reports showing resolution of issues.
e. Correspondence or other documents related to resolution of issues.
f. Other reports required by commissioning.
g. List unresolved issues and reasons they remain unresolved and should be exempted from the requirements for Construction Phase Commissioning Completion.
h. Report shall include commissioning work of Contractor.

B. Request for Certificate of Construction Phase Commissioning Completion.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For proprietary test equipment, instrumentation, and tools to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.8 COMMISSIONING TEAM RESPONSIBILITIES

A. COMMISSIONING AUTHORITY: Responsibilities of the CxA during the Construction Phase include the following:
1. Coordinate and direct steps of the total Commissioning Process for systems being installed as part of this contract. Coordinate commissioning work schedule with Owner and Contractor.
2. Provide Commissioning Plan.
3. Attend planning and construction-site meetings as required to obtain information relating to Commissioning Process. Convene commissioning team meetings as required.
4. Plan and conduct commissioning scoping and coordination meetings. Provide notice to all Team members to attend scheduled commissioning meetings.
5. Request all information required for Commissioning Process from manufacturers, Contractor, and Design Professionals.
6. Verify that systems and equipment have been installed and started in accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations and with generally recognized construction standards, and that documentation of such has been provided.
7. Assist in resolving discrepancies.

8. Prepare System readiness checklists to ensure systems have been installed according to project specifications. Verify that System readiness checklists have been addressed by Contractor and are accurate. Deliver final System readiness checklists to Owner.
9. Prepare Functional Test procedures to demonstrate performance of systems according to project specifications. Observe and document performance of systems, as per process detailed in Functional Test procedures.
10. Verify the execution of commissioning process activities using random sampling. The sampling rate may vary from 1 to 100 percent. Verification will include, but is not limited to, equipment submittals, system readiness checklists, training, operating and maintenance data, tests, and test reports to verify compliance with the OPR. When a random sample does not meet the requirement, the CxA will report the failure in the Issues Log.
11. Prepare and maintain an Issues Log.
12. Compile test data, inspection reports, and certificates; include them in the systems manual and commissioning process report.
13. Review testing and balancing (TAB) reports; notify Owner of deficiencies.
14. Recommend acceptance or non-acceptance of systems to Owner.
15. Verify that training has taken place by collecting training documentation from Contractor.
16. Compile and maintain commissioning record.
17. Provide pre-final and final commissioning reports to all commissioning team members. The report shall include:
    a. Communications between Owner, CxA, Design Professionals, Vendors, and/or Contractor and Subcontractors related to Commissioning Process.
    b. Minutes of commissioning meetings.
    c. Findings and pertinent observations.
    d. A listing of any deficiencies, unresolved issues, and compromises in the environmentally responsive features.
    e. Manufacturer's start-up reports.
    f. An Issues Log which:
        1) Describes design, installation, and performance issues which are at variance with the Owner's project requirements and Contract Documents.
        2) Identifies and tracks issues as they are encountered, documenting the status of unresolved and resolved issues.
        3) Documents corrective modifications made.
    g. System readiness checklists.
    h. Testing plans and Functional Test reports.
    i. Listing of off-season test(s) not performed and a schedule for their completion.
18. Conduct an inspection of the building and its systems within 10 months after substantial completion and prior to the expiration of warranties. Prepare a report documenting findings that should be addressed prior to expiration of warranties.

B. CONTRACTOR: Responsibilities of the General Contractor (GC) as related to Commissioning Process include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Facilitate coordination of Commissioning work by CxA.
2. Attend Commissioning meetings or other meetings called by CxA to facilitate the Commissioning Process.
3. Integrate and coordinate commissioning process activities with construction schedule.
4. Review CxA's Functional Test procedures for feasibility, safety, and impact on warranty, and provide CxA with written comment on same.

5. Provide all documentation relating to manufacturer's recommended performance testing of equipment and systems.
6. Provide Operations and Maintenance Data to CxA for preparation of checklists and training manuals.
7. Provide testing and balancing report.
8. Provide As-built drawings and documentation to facilitate Functional Testing.
9. Assure and facilitate participation and cooperation of specialty subcontractors (electrical, mechanical, Building Automation, etc.), and equipment suppliers as required for the Commissioning Process.
10. Require subcontractors to inspect systems installed and fill-out System readiness checklists (provided by CxA) to verify installation has taken place in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, and in a workmanlike manner in accordance with project documents and generally accepted construction practices. Certify to CxA that installation work listed in System readiness checklists has been completed and accompany CxA during verification of completed System readiness checklists.
11. Install systems and equipment in strict conformance with project specifications, manufacturer's recommended installation procedures, and System readiness checklists, as prepared by CxA.
12. Provide data concerning performance, installation, and start-up of systems.
13. Provide copy of manufacturer's filled-out start-up forms for equipment and systems.
14. Ensure systems have been started and fully checked for proper operation prior to arranging for Functional Testing with CxA. Prepare and submit to CxA written certification that each piece of equipment and/or system has been started according to manufacturer's recommended procedure, and that system has been tested for compliance with operational requirements.
    a. GC shall carry out manufacturer's recommended start-up and testing procedures, regardless of whether or not they are specifically listed in CxA's Functional Test procedures.
    b. GC is not relieved of obligation for systems / equipment demonstration where performance testing is required by specifications, but a Functional Performance Test is not specifically designated by CxA.
15. Coordinate with CxA to determine mutually acceptable date of Functional Performance Tests.
16. Review and accept construction checklists provided by the CxA.
17. Direct and coordinate commissioning testing among subcontractors, suppliers, and vendors.
18. Complete commissioning process test procedures.
19. Provide qualified personnel to assist and participate in Commissioning.
20. Provide test instruments and communications devices, as prescribed by CxA and where identified in this specifications manual, as required for carrying out Functional Testing of systems.
21. Evaluate performance deficiencies identified in test reports and, in collaboration with entity responsible for system and equipment installation, recommend corrective action.
22. Cooperate with the CxA for resolution of issues recorded in the Issues Log.
23. Ensure deficiencies found in the Commissioning Process are corrected within the time schedule shown in the CA report.
24. Provide CxA with all submittals, start-up instructions manuals, operating parameters, and other pertinent information related to Commissioning Process. This information shall be provided directly to the CxA as a digital PDF file at the same time that the submittals are made to the architect and/or engineer.
25. Prepare and submit to CxA proposed Training Program outline for each system.

26. Coordinate and provide training of Owner's personnel. Provide CxA with proposed training agenda no less than 14 days prior to scheduled training sessions. Provide documentation that training took place (including system being trained on, trainer's name and contact information, sign-in sheet verifying who attended training, length of training, and signature of owner's authorized person certifying training took place satisfactorily).
27. Prepare Operation and Maintenance manuals and As-Built drawings in accordance with specifications; submit copy to CxA in addition to other contractually required submissions. Revise and resubmit manuals in accordance with Design Professionals and CxA's comments.
28. All costs associated with the participation of GC, Sub-Contractors, Design Professionals, and Equipment Vendors in the Commissioning Process shall be included as part of the Construction Contract.

C. Subcontractors and vendors shall prepare and submit to Commissioning Authority Manufacturer's installation and performance test procedures to demonstrate performance of systems according to these specifications and checklists prepared by Commissioning Authority.

D. Owner's Representative: Responsibilities of the Owner's Representative as related to Commissioning Process include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Provide the OPR documentation to the CxA and GC for information and use.
2. Assign operation and maintenance personnel and schedule them to participate in commissioning team activities.
3. Provide the BoD documentation, prepared by Architect and approved by Owner, to the CxA and GC for use in developing the commissioning plan, systems manual, and operation and maintenance training plan.
4. Manage contracts of Architect and GC.
5. Arrange for facility operating and maintenance personnel to attend various field commissioning activities and field training sessions.
6. Provide final approval for completion of Commissioning Work.
7. Warranty Period: Ensure that seasonal or deferred testing and deficiency issues are addressed.

E. Architect: Responsibilities of the Architect as related to Commissioning Process include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Attend commissioning scoping meeting and other commissioning team meetings as requested by Commissioning Authority and as selected by Architect.
2. Perform normal submittal review, construction observation, record drawing preparation, and operations and maintenance data preparation, as required by Contract Documents.
3. Coordinate resolution of system deficiencies identified during commissioning, as required by Contract Documents. Review Commissioning Issues Logs and issue directives to GC and/or Design Professionals as applicable.
4. Prepare and submit final as-built design intent documentation for inclusion in Operation and Maintenance Data Manual, and review and approve Operation and Maintenance Data Manual.
5. Review Commissioning Report and issue directive to resolve all outstanding deficiencies prior to project close-out.
6. Warranty Period: Coordinate resolution of design non-conformance and design deficiencies identified during warranty period commissioning.

F. Design Professionals Responsible for Design of Each Portion of Work Being Commissioned:

1. Perform normal submittal review, construction observations, and record drawing preparation, as required by Contract Documents. Perform site observation immediately preceding system startup.
2. Respond to deficiencies identified by Commissioning Authority as directed by Architect.
3. Provide design narrative and sequence documentation requested by Commissioning Authority. Assist, along with GC, in clarifying operation and control of commissioned equipment in areas where specifications, control drawings, or equipment documentation are not sufficient for writing detailed testing procedures.
4. Attend commissioning scoping meetings and other commissioning team meetings as requested by Commissioning Authority and as selected by Architect or responsible design professional.
5. Participate in resolution of system deficiencies identified during commissioning, as required by Contract Documents.
6. Prepare and submit final as-built design intent and operating parameters documentation for inclusion in Operation and Maintenance Manual, and review and approve Operation and Maintenance Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT, INSTRUMENTATION, AND TOOLS

A. Test equipment and instrumentation required to perform the commissioning shall remain the property of Contractor unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 REPORT FORMAT AND ORGANIZATION

A. General Format and Organization:

1. Bind report in three-ring binders.
2. Label the front cover and spine of each binder with the report title, volume number, project name, Contractor's name, and date of report.
3. Record report on compact disk.
4. Electronic Data: Portable document format (PDF); a single file with outline-organized bookmarks for major and minor tabs and tab contents itemized for specific reports.

B. Commissioning Report:

1. Include a table of contents and an index to each test.
2. Include major tabs for each Specification Section.
3. Include minor tabs for each test.
4. Within each minor tab, include the following:

a. Test specification.
b. Pre-startup reports.
c. Test data forms, completed and signed.

d. Commissioning issue reports, showing resolution of issues, and documentation related to resolution of issues pertaining to a single test. Group data forms, commissioning issue reports showing resolution of issues, and documentation related to resolution of issues for each test repetition together within the minor tab, in reverse chronological order (most recent on top).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Review preliminary system readiness checklists and preliminary test procedures and data forms.

3.2 GENERAL

A. Authority
1. The Commissioning Authority carries out the Cx responsibilities as the Owner's authorized agent in accordance with plans, specifications, and contractual requirements.
2. CxA reports deficiencies found to the GC, Architect and Owner.
3. The Architect evaluates deficiencies and issues directive to GC to remedy CxA's deficiencies lists, in accordance with contract documents.
4. No change in scope work is to take place without express written consent of Owner. Any deficiencies identified by CxA that are deemed by Architect to be outside of the scope of work shall be discussed with Owner for consideration.
5. GC and CxA are to copy Architect on all correspondence related to the commissioning process.

B. Participation In The Commissioning Process
1. GC shall attend meetings related to Commissioning process and arrange for attendance by subcontractors and vendors prior to commissioning of their systems, at the discretion of CxA.
2. Provide skilled technicians to start and test all systems, and place systems in complete and fully functioning service in accordance with contract documents and design intent.
3. Provide skilled technicians, experienced and familiar with systems being commissioned, to assist CxA in commissioning process.
4. Attend initial commissioning team scoping meeting, pre-commissioning meetings specific to each system, and other meetings requested by CxA as required to discuss resolution of deficiencies.
5. Coordinate with sub-Contractors and equipment vendors/representatives to set aside adequate time to address System readiness Checklists, Functional Testing, Operations and Maintenance Training, and associated coordination meetings.

C. Work Prior To Testing
1. A commissioning team scoping meeting shall be held at a time and place designated by Commissioning Authority. Owner, Architect, Commissioning Authority, Contractor, and Mechanical, Electrical, and Controls Contractors, shall be present at this meeting. The main objectives of the meeting are to familiarize all parties with the requirements of the commissioning process; to ensure that the responsibilities of each party are clearly

understood; and obtain information to develop the preliminary commissioning plan, including:

a. Personnel representing the various entities participating in the process (GC, subcontractors, Owner, Architect, Engineer, CxA)
b. Lines of communications;
c. Assignment of responsibilities;
d. Review system readiness checklists;
e. Submittal schedule;
f. Preliminary construction schedule

2. Following the initial commissioning team scoping meeting, and upon reviewing submittals, CxA shall prepare a preliminary Commissioning Plan outlining procedures and responsibilities, including names and contact information of responsible parties, tentative dates for commissioning activities, and system readiness checklists. Preliminary Commissioning Plan shall be distributed to GC and Owner electronically for review and comment. CxA shall modify the Commissioning Plan based on feedback from GC and Owner and will generate a final Cx Plan.
3. Prior to system readiness and functional testing, CxA will conduct site inspections at critical times and issue Cx Field Reports with observations on installation deficiencies so that they may be issued by Architect as deemed appropriate
4. GC shall complete all phases of the work so the systems can be started, tested, adjusted, balanced, and otherwise commissioned.
5. GC shall verify requirements of Divisions 22, 23 and 26 outlining responsibilities for start-up of equipment with obligations to complete systems, including all sub-systems so that they are fully functional.
6. A minimum of fourteen (14) days prior to date of system readiness performance test, submit to Commissioning Authority for review, detailed description of equipment start-up procedures which GC proposes to perform to demonstrate conformance of systems to specifications and commissioning checklists.
7. Convene system-specific pre-commissioning meetings prior to start of system readiness testing of each system. The GC shall hold a pre-commissioning meeting with all Team members in attendance. The purpose of the meeting is to review the system readiness checklists, and equipment start-up procedures for each system to be commissioned, confirm that systems are ready for testing, and define a schedule for testing activities.

D. System readiness checks and functional performance tests

1. The GC shall provide all materials, services, and labor required to operate equipment and/or system in order to perform the system readiness checks and functional performance tests. A system readiness check or functional performance test shall be aborted if any system deficiency prevents the successful completion of the test or if any participating commissioning team member of which participation is specified is not present for the test. The GC shall reimburse the Owner and A/E for all costs associated with effort lost due to tests that are aborted. These costs shall include salary, travel costs and per diem (where applicable).
2. Functional performance tests may sometimes duplicate the checking, testing, and inspection methods established in related Sections. Where checking, testing, and inspection methods are not specified in other Sections, methods shall be established which will provide required information. Testing and verification required by this section shall be performed during the Commissioning phase. Requirements in related Sections are independent from the requirements of this Section and shall not be used to satisfy any of the requirements specified in this Section without the approval of CxA.

3. Follow start-up and initial checkout procedures listed in article titled "RESPONSIBILITIES" in Part 1, and additional requirements specified in this Section. Divisions 22, 23 and 26 have startup responsibilities and are required to complete systems and sub-systems so systems are fully functional, meeting design requirements of Contract Documents. Commissioning procedures and functional testing do not relieve or lessen this responsibility or shift this responsibility, in whole or in part, to Commissioning Agent or Owner.

E. Work To Resolve Deficiencies
1. Complete corrective work in a timely manner to allow expeditious completion of commissioning process. If deadlines pass without resolution of identified problems, Owner reserves the right to obtain supplementary services and/or equipment to resolve the problem. Costs thus incurred will be GC's responsibility.

3.3 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with requirements listed in specifications and drawings as it relates to sustainability features that will be verified during the Commissioning process.

3.4 SYSTEM READINESS CHECKLISTS

A. General
1. System readiness checklists are important to ensure that equipment and systems are properly connected and operational, and installed in accordance with specifications, drawings, manufacturer's requirements, and all applicable codes.
2. Checklists ensure that functional performance testing (in-depth checkout) may proceed without unnecessary delays.
3. Performance of system readiness checklists, startup, and checkout shall be directed and executed by subcontractor or vendor. Only individuals that have direct knowledge and who witnessed that line item task on system readiness checklist was performed shall initial or check item off.
4. Each piece of equipment and major distribution system receive full system readiness checkout. No sampling strategies are used.
5. System readiness checkout for given system must be successfully completed prior to formal functional performance testing of equipment or subsystems of given system.

B. System readiness Checklist
1. System readiness performance tests shall be documented in a checklist format, as prepared and provided by CxA, for each piece of equipment. Each checklist shall be initialed by GC, verifying that all items on checklist have been addressed and completed.
2. Commissioning System readiness checklists are not to preclude GC from applying his own construction inspection checklists.
3. All system elements shall be checked to verify that they have been installed, adjusted, and calibrated properly, that all connections have been made correctly, and that it is ready to function as specified. Verify that each piece of equipment or system has been checked for proper lubrication, drive rotation, control sequence, and other conditions which may cause damage.
4. Verify that tests, meter readings and specific electrical characteristics agree with those required by equipment or system manufacturer.

5. All discrete elements and sub-systems shall be adjusted and shall be checked for proper operation. Verify wiring and support components for equipment are complete and tested.
6. Do not conduct start-up procedure recommended by equipment/system manufacturer at prior to system readiness testing.
7. Subcontractors shall clearly list outstanding items of initial start-up and system readiness procedures that were not completed successfully at bottom of procedures form or on separate sheet attached to form. Completed forms and attached sheets shall be provided to Commissioning Authority within 2 days of test completion. Installing subcontractor or vendor shall correct deficient or incomplete areas in timely manner and shall submit updated system readiness checklist and startup report with statement of correction on original non-compliance report.
8. When system readiness checklists for a particular system or subsystems are completed, GC will request verification by CxA. GC and subcontractors shall accompany CxA during system readiness checklist verification.
9. If during system readiness checklist verification, CxA finds a significant number of deficiencies, GC shall have all the checklists associated with similar system redone.

3.5 SYSTEM START-UP

A. GC will arrange for start-up of operating equipment and systems after (or at the same time as) system readiness testing and prior to scheduling Functional Testing.

B. Start-up of equipment and systems shall be performed only by a manufacturer's representative, or person(s) who are specifically manufacturer-approved. All start-up personnel shall be trained and authorized, experienced and knowledgeable in the operations of such equipment and systems.

C. Coordinate schedule for start-up of various equipment and systems so that subsystems required for major systems operation are tested first.

D. Manufacturer's start-up reports must be submitted to CxA prior to scheduling Functional Testing.

3.6 FUNCTIONAL TESTING

A. The objective of Functional Testing is to demonstrate that each system is operating according to documented design intent and Contract Documents, through all possible modes of operation.

B. GC and sub-Contractors shall include in his bid proposal all costs associated with preparation and execution of Testing Procedures for all systems to be commissioned.

C. Functional testing is intended to begin upon completion of each system and after system readiness checklists have been completed. Functional testing may proceed prior to completion of systems or sub-systems at discretion of Commissioning Authority. Beginning system testing before completion does not relieve GC from fully completing system, including system readiness checklists as early as possible.

D. GC and sub-Contractors shall provide detailed Testing Procedures that will allow all items on checklists to be verified.

E. Testing shall be conducted under specified operating conditions as recommended or approved by Commissioning Authority.

F. A Functional Performance Test shall be performed on each complete system. Each function shall be demonstrated to the satisfaction of Commissioning Authority in accordance with proposed test procedures developed to demonstrate compliance with specifications.

G. Each Functional Test shall be witnessed and signed off by Commissioning Authority upon satisfactory completion. Functional Test is not to be considered complete until Owner accepts Commissioning Authority's recommendation for completion.

H. All elements of system shall be tested to demonstrate that total systems satisfy all requirements of these specifications. Testing shall be accomplished on hierarchical basis. Test each piece of equipment for proper operation, followed by each subsystem, followed by the entire system, followed by any inter-ties to other major systems.

I. Notification, Scheduling Of Functional Testing and Re-Testing
   1. Notify CxA and Owner, in writing, of request for scheduling Functional Testing. Submit request no fewer than five days prior to desired date for beginning functional testing.
      a. GC must certify that systems and equipment are functioning satisfactorily, according to specifications and design intent, prior to requesting Functional Testing. Upon receipt of such certification, CxA will schedule with GC a time for the particular system test.
         1) CxA will attempt to schedule Functional Testing when convenient for GC and his vendors, and to minimize lost time to GC.
      b. GC will resolve all deficiencies identified during initial test prior to submitting request, in writing, for re-testing. Such request for re-testing shall certify that GC has resolved all deficiencies, or list reason why any deficiencies remain which cannot be resolved.
      c. CxA will re-test to ensure that all deficiencies have been resolved.
         1) Deficiencies that were not detected in first Functional Test, but are discovered in subsequent re-testing, are to be resolved by GC as if they had been discovered in initial testing.

J. Functional Testing Requirements And Procedures
   1. GC and sub-Contractors shall perform tests in the presence of CxA. Tests not witnessed by CxA shall not be considered complete.
   2. To facilitate Functional Testing, when requested by CxA, GC shall provide services of personnel to accompany CxA for the duration of Functional Testing, including any follow-up testing. Such personnel must be experienced, qualified, and intimately familiar with the system being tested.
      a. Participation by representative(s) of direct digital controls (DDC) systems is of particular importance in Functional Testing. All systems which are controlled and/or monitored by DDC are to be thoroughly tested, point by point, through all modes of operation, with the assistance of manufacturer's representative. DDC graphics, setpoints, and programming are to be included as a part of Functional Testing as well.
      b. GC must provide services of personnel to accompany CxA for equipment and systems which may pose particular health and safety concerns, such as boilers.
      c. Should he fail to provide representative to accompany CxA during Functional Testing, GC continues to bear full responsibility for equipment warranty. Owner

and CxA will not be held responsible for damage to equipment, or other actions which might impact warranty, when performing Functional Testing of systems where GC has not provided authorized accompanying representative to operate equipment.

3. Each system shall be operated through all modes of operation including, but not limited to seasonal, occupied, unoccupied, warm-up, cool-down, part-load, and full-load, where system response is specified.
    a. For multiple units, sampling strategy established by Commissioning Authority and subject to approval of Owner may be used.
    b. Verification of each sequence in sequences of operation is required.
    c. Proper responses to such modes and conditions as power failure, freeze condition, low oil pressure, no flow, equipment failure, and the like, shall also be tested.
4. Where possible, inspections carried out on systems by local Authorities Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) may serve as Functional Testing for purposes of Commissioning.
    a. CxA will accompany AHJ during testing procedures required by AHJ.
    b. It is responsibility of GC to arrange for testing by AHJ and to coordinate with CxA to find mutually convenient times for testing. Provide CxA a minimum of four days in advance of intent to schedule testing by AHJ.
    c. CxA will issue a separate report on results of testing.
    d. CxA reserves the right to require additional testing, should testing by AHJ not adequately cover all system components in all modes of operation.
5. Functional Testing is to be dedicated solely to testing of equipment and systems, and not to resolution of deficiencies. Deficiencies identified during testing process must be corrected by GC at a time other than during Functional Testing.
6. Within six days of performing functional test, CxA will issue test report with findings a list of deficiencies that must be addressed by GC or sub-Contractors.
7. Commissioning Authority shall submit a Final Report to Owner recommending acceptance or non-acceptance of individual system components as well as the systems as a whole.

K. Re-Testing And Failure To Remedy Deficiencies
1. Despite GC's best efforts to ensure systems are problem-free, it is expected that some deficiencies will be found during initial inspection of System readiness Checklist, and during initial Functional Testing; such deficiencies are expected to be minimal.
2. It is GC's responsibility to remedy identified deficiencies, both in System readiness Checklist and in Functional Testing phases of work, in a timely and thorough manner.
3. It is GC's responsibility to ensure that all deficiencies are corrected prior to requesting a re-inspection or re-test of systems and equipment. Do not request re-inspection or re-test until deficiencies are corrected.
    a. At his discretion, CxA may agree to re-testing systems or equipment where deficiencies remain which are beyond GC's control to resolve expeditiously.
    b. Typically such re-testing of incomplete systems and equipment will take place only if remaining deficiencies are minor in scope and nature, and are of such nature that they cannot be resolved in a timely manner (such as those due to difficulties in obtaining parts, or where Owner has requested a change that has delayed work, etc.)
4. CxA will carry out a second re-inspection or re-test of systems and equipment subsequent to receiving GC's request.
    a. If CxA finds deficiencies identified in initial inspection or test have not been remedied (with exception of un-resolvable deficiencies noted above), and such

remaining deficiencies are significant enough to require additional inspection or re-testing, GC will be back-charged for CxA's expenses, per Article 1.5.

3.7 DEFERRED TESTING

A. "Seasonal Commissioning" pertains to testing during peak heating or cooling seasons when HVAC equipment is operating at full-load or heavy-load conditions. Initial commissioning will be done as soon as contract work is completed, regardless of season. Seasonal Commissioning under full- or heavy-load conditions other than the current season will be handled at later time by GC and CxA.
   1. If adequate load may be artificially placed upon heating or cooling equipment, CxA, at his discretion, may perform functional testing during non-peak load periods.
   2. GC is to provide services of personnel and participate in seasonal testing process in the same manner as he would in non-seasonal testing.
   3. Until off-season commissioning can be accomplished, Owner may retain an amount from GC's payment sufficient to cover the cost of off-season testing.

B. Unforeseen Deferred Tests: If any check or test cannot be completed due to building structure, required occupancy condition, or other reason, execution of checklists and functional testing may be delayed upon approval of Owner. Tests shall be conducted in same manner as seasonal tests, as soon as possible. Services of required parties will be negotiated. Make final adjustments to Operation and Maintenance Manuals and record drawings due to unforeseen deferred tests.
   1. GC is to provide services of personnel and participate in deferred testing in the same manner as he would for normal commissioning.
   2. Until deferred testing can be accomplished, Owner may retain an amount from GC's payment sufficient to cover the cost of deferred testing.

3.8 TRAINING

A. The following requirements are in addition to operation and maintenance requirements specified elsewhere in this specifications manual. GC shall be responsible for training coordination and scheduling, and ultimately to ensure that training is completed.

B. Scheduling
   1. Organize training to fit Owner's schedule and to optimize the learning experience. Limit continuous sessions to no more than four hours, or otherwise only as approved by Owner and/or Architect.
   2. Provide an outline of the proposed training agenda for review by Owner and CxA a minimum of 10 days prior to proposed date for training session.
   3. Provide CxA a minimum 5 days advance notice of intent to carry out a training session.
   4. The CxA will not be required to attend all training sessions for building personnel, but will attend selected sessions and monitor progress and content.
   5. No training will take place prior to successful completion of Functional Testing.

C. Training Materials
   1. Develop Training Manuals to meet requirements of individual equipment specification sections.

2. Operating and Maintenance Manuals alone are NOT considered training manuals. O&M Manuals may be used as reference, but shall not be considered to meet requirements for training materials.
3. Develop a detailed outline showing how training program will be organized, including classroom and hands-on training as required by individual specifications sections.
4. Provide with training materials, a quick-reference "how-to" index which will allow operators to easily access information included in Training Manuals and/or O&M Manuals. This reference will include, as a minimum; routine normal operating instructions and sequences. Include regulation, control, stopping, shut-down, and emergency instructions.
5. Refer to individual equipment or system specifications for minimum material to be covered as part of the training program.

D. Documentation
1. All training sessions are to be fully documented. Document:
   a. Basic information on training session (name of system, time, date, and location of training, name of presenter, length of training session, etc.).
   b. Names of persons who attended the training session (provide a sign-in sheet).
   c. Signature from authorized Owner’s representative indicating that training took place and was satisfactory.
2. Provide CxA copy of sign-in sheet with training session documentation.

3.9 O&M MANUALS

A. Provide operation and maintenance manuals as specified in section 017700 Closeout Submittals, and as outlined in individual sections of Divisions 22, 23 and 26.

B. Provide CxA with a single copy of Operation and Maintenance Manuals for review. CxA’s copy of O&M manuals shall be submitted through Architect.

C. CxA shall review O&M Manuals and submit comments through the Architect.

3.10 SYSTEMS TO BE COMMISSIONED

A. Refer to commissioning specifications sections in Related Sections, including the following:
1. 230100 - COMMISSIONING OF MECHANICAL SYSTEMS: HVAC and Controls.
2. 260100 - COMMISSIONING OF ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS: Lighting and Lighting Controls.

END OF SECTION 019113

B.I.S.D. HANNA ECHS
GYMNASIUM FACILITY

SITEWORK SPECIFICATIONS

The intent of the plans and specifications is to prescribe a complete work or improvements which the Contractor undertakes to do, in full compliance with the plans, specifications, special provisions, proposal and contract. The Contractor shall do all work as provided in the plans, specifications, special provisions, proposal and contract and shall do such additional extra work as may be considered necessary to complete the work in a satisfactory and acceptable manner. The Contractor shall furnish all labor, tools, machinery, equipment and incidentals necessary to the prosecution of the work.

Except where otherwise specifically prescribed herein, all provisions of the following Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT) Standard Specifications for Construction of Highways, Streets and Bridges dated June 1, 2004 shall cover the work to be done under the specifications. Measurement and payment provision of the standards specification do not apply to this project.

Watering and sanitary sewer construction shall be governed by the Standard Specifications of the Brownsville Public Utilities Board (BPUB).

B.I.S.D. HANNA ECHS
GYMNASIUM FACILITY

SITEWORK SPECIFICATIONS
continued

ITEM 100
PREPARING RIGHT OF WAY

100.1. Description. Prepare the right of way and designated easements for construction operations by removing and disposing of all obstructions when removal of such obstructions is not specifically shown on the plans to be paid by other Items.

100.2. Construction. Protect designated features on the right of way and prune trees and shrubs as directed. Do not park equipment, service equipment, store materials, or disturb the root area under the branches of trees designated for preservation. When shown on the plans, treat cuts on trees with an approved tree wound dressing within 20 min. of making a pruning cut or otherwise causing damage to the tree. Follow all local and state regulations when burning. If burning of brush is approved, pile and burn at approved locations. When working in state or national forests or parks, coordinate work with state and federal authorities. Testing, removal, and disposal of hazardous materials will be in accordance with Article 6.10, "Hazardous Materials," Clear areas shown on the plans of all obstructions, except those landscape features that are to be preserved. Such obstructions include but are not limited to remains of houses and other structures, foundations, floor slabs, concrete, brick, lumber, plaster, septic tank drain fields, basements, abandoned utility pipes or conduits, equipment, fences, retaining walls, and other items as specified on the plans. Remove vegetation and other landscape features not designated for preservation, curb and gutter, driveways, paved parking areas, miscellaneous stone, sidewalks, drainage structures, manholes, inlets, abandoned railroad tracks, scrap iron, and debris, whether above or below ground, Removal of live utility facilities is not included in this Item. Remove culverts, storm sewers, manholes, and inlets in proper sequence to maintain traffic and drainage.

In areas receiving embankment, remove obstructions not designated for preservation to 2 ft. below natural ground. In areas to be excavated, remove obstructions to 2 ft. below the excavation level. In all other areas, remove obstructions to 1 ft. below natural ground. When allowed by the plans or directed, cut trees and stumps off to ground level. Plug the remaining ends of abandoned underground structures over 3 in. in diameter with concrete to form a tight closure. Backfill, compact, and restore areas where obstructions have been removed, unless otherwise directed. Use approved material for backfilling. Dispose of wells in accordance with Item 103, "Disposal of Wells."

Accept ownership, unless otherwise directed, and dispose of removed materials and debris at locations off the right of way in accordance with local, state, and federal requirements.

ITEM 110

EXCAVATION

110.1. Description. Excavate areas as shown on the plans or as directed. Remove materials encountered to the lines, grades, and typical sections shown on the plans and cross-sections.

110.2. Construction. Accept ownership of unsuitable or excess material and dispose *of* material in accordance with local, state, and federal regulations at locations outside the right of way.
Maintain drainage in the excavated area to avoid damage to the roadway section. Correct any damage to the subgrade caused by weather, at no additional cost to the Department,
Shape slopes to avoid loosening material below or outside the proposed grades. Remove and dispose of slides as directed.

A. **Rock Cuts.** Excavate to finish subgrade. Manipulate and compact subgrade in accordance with Article 132.3.D, "Compaction Methods," unless excavation is to clean homogenous rock at finish subgrade elevation. If excavation extends below finish subgrade, use approved embankment material compacted in accordance with Article 132.3.D to replace undercut material at no additional cost.

B. **Earth Cuts.** Excavate to finish subgrade. In areas where base or pavement structure will be placed on subgrade, scarify subgrade to a uniform depth at least 6 in. below finish subgrade elevation. Manipulate and compact subgrade in accordance with Article 132.3.D, "Compaction Methods."

If unsuitable material is encountered below subgrade elevations, take corrective measures as directed. Drying required deeper than 6 in. below subgrade elevation will be paid for in accordance with
Article 9.4, "Payment for Extra Work." Excavation and replacement of unsuitable material below subgrade elevations will be performed and paid for in accordance with the applicable bid items. However, if Item 132, "Embankment," is not included in the Contract, payment for replacement of unsuitable material will be paid for in accordance with Article 9.4.

C. **Subgrade Tolerances.** For turnkey construction, excavate to within 112 in. in cross-section and 112 in. in 16 ft. measured longitudinally. For staged construction, excavate to within 0.1 ft. in cross-section and 0.1 ft. in 16 ft. measured longitudinally.

ITEM 132
EMBANKMENT

132.1. Description. Furnish, place, and compact materials for construction of roadways, embankments, levees, dikes, or any designated section of the roadway where additional material is required.
132.2. Materials. Furnish approved material capable of forming a stable embankment from required excavation in the areas shown on the plans or from sources outside the right of way. Provide 1 or more of the following types as shown on the plans:

• Type A. Granular material that is free from vegetation or other objectionable material and meets the requirements of Table 1.

Table 1
Testing Requirements

Property	**Test Method**	**Specification Limit**
Liquid limit	Tex-104-E	45
Plasticity index (PI)	Tex-106-E	15
Bar linear shrinkage	Tex-107-E	> 2

The Linear Shrinkage test only needs to be performed as indicated in Tex-104-E,

- **Type B.** Materials such as rock, loam, clay, or other approved materials.
- **Type** C. Material meeting the specification requirements shown on the plans.
- **Type 11** Material from required excavation areas shown on the plans.

Retaining wall backfill material must meet the requirements of the pertinent retaining wall Items,

132.3. Construction. Meet the requirements of item 7, "Legal Relations and Responsibilities to the Public," when off right of way sources are used. To allow for required testing, notify the Engineer before opening a material source. Complete preparation of the right of way, in accordance with Item 100, "Preparing Right of Way," for areas to receive embankment.

Backfill tree-stump holes or other minor excavations with approved material and tamp. Restore the ground surface, including any material disked loose or washed out, to its original slope. Compact the ground surface by sprinkling in accordance with Item 204, "Sprinkling," and by rolling using equipment complying with Item 210, "Rolling," when directed.

Scarify and loosen the unpaved surface areas, except rock, to a depth of at least 6 in., unless otherwise shown on the plans. Bench slopes before placing material. Begin placement of material at the toe of slopes. Do not place trees, stumps, roots, vegetation, or other objectionable material in the embankment. Simultaneously recompact scarified material with the placed embankment material. Do not exceed the layer depth specified in Section 132.3.D, "Compaction Methods."

Construct embankments to the grade and sections shown on the plans. Construct the embankment in layers approximately parallel to the finished grade for the full width of the individual roadway cross sections, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Ensure that each section of the embankment conforms to the detailed sections or slopes. Maintain the finished section, density, and grade until the project is accepted.

A. **Earth Embankments.** Earth embankment is mainly composed of material other than rock, Construct embankments in successive layers, evenly distributing materials in lengths suited for sprinkling and rolling.

B. Obtain approval to incorporate rock and broken concrete produced by the construction project in the lower layers of the embankment. When the size of approved rock or broken concrete exceeds the layer thickness requirements in Section 132.3.D, "Compaction Methods," place the rock and concrete outside the limits of the completed roadbed. Cut and remove all exposed reinforcing steel from the broken concrete.

Move the material dumped in piles or windrows by blading or by similar methods and incorporate it into uniform layers. Featheredge or mix abutting layers of dissimilar material for at least 100 d. to ensure there are no abrupt changes in the material. Break down clods or lumps of material and mix embankment until a uniform material is attained.

Apply water free of industrial wastes and other objectionable matter to achieve the uniform moisture content specified for compaction.

When ordinary compaction is specified, roll and sprinkle each embankment layer in accordance with Section 132.3.D.1, "Ordinary Compaction." When density control is specified, compact the layer to the required density in accordance with Section 132.3.D.2, "Density Control."

B. **Rock Embankments.** Rock embankment is mainly composed of rock. Construct rock embankments in successive layers for the full width of the roadway cross-section with a depth of 18 in. or less. Increase the layer depth for large rock sizes as approved. Do not exceed a depth of 2-112 ft. in any case. Fill voids created by the large stone matrix with smaller stones during the placement and filling operations.
Ensure the depth of the embankment layer is greater than the maximum dimension of any rock. Do not place rock greater than 2 ft. in its maximum dimension, unless otherwise approved. Construct the final layer with graded material so that the density and uniformity is in accordance with Section 132.3.D, "Compaction Methods." Break up exposed oversized material as approved.

When ordinary compaction is specified, roll and sprinkle each embankment layer in accordance with Section 132,3.D.1, "Ordinary Compaction." When density control is specified, compact each layer to

the required density in accordance with Section 132.3.D.2, "Density Control." When directed, proof-roll each rock layer where density testing is not possible, in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling," to ensure proper compaction.

C. **Embankments Adjacent to Culverts and Bridges.** Compact embankments adjacent to culverts and bridges in accordance with Item 400, "Excavation and Backfill for Structures,"
D. **Compaction Methods.** Begin rolling longitudinally at the sides and proceed toward the center, overlapping on successive trips by at least 1/2 the width of the roller, On super elevated curves, begin rolling at the lower side and progress toward the high side. Alternate roller trips to attain slightly different lengths. Compact embankments in accordance with one of the following methods as shown on the plans:

1. **Ordinary Compaction.** Use approved rolling equipment complying with Item 210, "Rolling," to compact each layer. The plans or the Engineer may require specific equipment. Do not allow the loose depth of any layer to exceed 8 in,, unless otherwise approved. Before and during rolling operations, bring each layer to the moisture content directed. Compact each layer until there is no evidence of further consolidation. Maintain a level layer to ensure uniform compaction. If the required stability or finish is lost for any reason, recompact and refinish the subgrade at no additional expense to the Department.
2. **Density Control.** Compact each layer to the required density using equipment complying with Item 210, "Rolling," Determine the maximum lift thickness based on the ability of the compacting operation and equipment to meet the required density. Do not exceed layer thickness of 16 in, loose or 12 in. compacted material, unless otherwise approved. Maintain a level layer to ensure uniform compaction.
The Engineer will use Tex-114-E to determine the maximum dry density (D_a) and optimum moisture content (W_{opt}). Meet the requirements for field density and moisture content in Table 2, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Table 2
Field Density Control Requirements

Description	Density'	Moisture Content'
	Tex-115-E	
PI 5 15	98% D_a	
15 < PI < 35	98% Da and < 102% D_a	
P1>35	z 95% DE, and <_ 100% D_a	Wopt

Each layer is subject to testing by the Engineer for density and moisture content. During compaction, the moisture content of the soil should not exceed the value shown on the moisture-density curve, above optimum, required to achieve

- 98% dry density for soils with a PI greater than 15 but less than or equal to 35 or
- 95% dry density for soils with PI greater than 35.

When required, remove small areas of the layer to allow for density tests. Replace the removed material and recompact at no additional expense to the Department. Proof-roll in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling," when shown on the plans or as directed, Correct soft spots as directed.

E. **Maintenance of Moisture and Reworking.** Maintain the density and moisture content once all requirements in Table 2 are met. For soils with a PI greater than 15, maintain the moisture content no lower than 4 percentage points below optimum. Rework the material to obtain the specified compaction when the material loses the required stability, density, moisture, or finish. Alter the compaction methods and procedures on subsequent work to obtain specified density as directed.

F. Acceptance Criteria.

1. Grade Tolerances.

a. **Staged Construction.** Grade to within 0,1 ft. in the cross-section and 0.1 ft. in 16 ft. measured longitudinally,

b. **Turnkey Construction.** Grade to within 112 in. in the cross-section and 112 in. in 16 ft, measured longitudinally.

2. **Gradation Tolerances.** When gradation requirements are shown on the plans, material is acceptable when not more than 1 of the 5 most recent gradation tests is outside the specified limits on any individual sieve by more than 5 percentage points.

3. **Density Tolerances.** Compaction work is acceptable when not more than 1 of the 5 most recent density tests is outside the specified density limits, and no test is outside the limits by more than 3 lb. per cubic foot.

4. **Plasticity Tolerances.** Material is acceptable when not more than 1 of the 5 most recent PI tests is outside the specified limit by no more than 2 points.

ITEM 247
FLEXIBLE BASE

247.1. Description. Construct a foundation course composed of flexible base.

247.2. Materials. Furnish uncontaminated materials of uniform quality that meet the requirements of the plans and specifications, Notify the Engineer of the proposed material sources and of changes to material sources, The Engineer may sample and test project materials at any time before compaction throughout the duration of the project to assure specification compliance. Use Tex-100-E material definitions.

A. Aggregate. Furnish aggregate of the type and grade shown on the plans and conforming to the requirements of Table 1. Each source must meet Table 1 requirements for liquid limit, plasticity index, and wet ball mill for the grade specified. Do not use additives such as but not limited to lime, cement, or fly ash to modify aggregates to meet the requirements of Table 1, unless shown on the plans.

1. Material Tolerances. The Engineer may accept material if no more than 1 of the 5 most recent gradation tests has an individual sieve outside the specified limits of the gradation.

When target grading is required by the plans, no single failing test may exceed the master grading by more than 5 percentage points on sieves No. 4 and larger or 3 percentage points on sieves smaller than No. 4.

The Engineer may accept material if no more than 1 of the 5 most recent plasticity index tests is outside the specified limit, No single failing test may exceed the allowable limit by more than 2 points.

2. Material Types. Do not use fillers or binders unless approved. Furnish the type specified on the plans in accordance with the following:

a. **Type** A. Crushed stone produced and graded from oversize quarried aggregate that originates from a single, naturally occurring source. Do not use gravel or multiple sources.

b. **Type B.** Crushed or uncrushed gravel. Blending of 2 or more sources is allowed.

c. **Type C.** Crushed gravel with a minimum of 60% of the particles retained on a No. 4 sieve with 2 or more crushed faces as determined by Tex-460-A, Part I. Blending of 2 or more sources is allowed.

d. **Type D.** Type A material or crushed concrete. Crushed concrete containing gravel will be considered Type D material. Crushed concrete must meet the requirements in Section 247,2,A.3.b, "Recycled Material (Including Crushed Concrete) Requirements," and be managed in a way to provide for uniform quality. The Engineer may require separate dedicated stockpiles in order to verify compliance.

e. **Type E.** As shown on the plans.

3. Recycled Material. Recycled asphalt pavement (RAP) and other recycled materials may be used when shown on the plans. Request approval to blend 2 or more sources of recycled materials.

a. Limits on Percentage. When RAP is allowed, do not exceed 20% RAP by weight unless otherwise shown on the plans. The percentage limitations for other recycled materials will be as shown on the plans.

b. Recycled Material (Including Crushed Concrete) Requirements.

(1) **Contractor Furnished Recycled Materials.** When the Contractor furnishes the recycled materials, including crushed concrete, the final product will be subject to the requirements of Table 1 for the grade specified. Certify compliance with DMS-11000, "Evaluating and Using Nonhazardous Recyclable Materials Guidelines," for Contractor furnished recycled materials, In addition, recycled materials must be free from reinforcing steel and other objectionable material and have at most 1.5% deleterious material when tested in accordance with Tex-413-A. For RAP, do not exceed a maximum percent loss from decantation of 5.0% when tested in accordance with Tex-406-A. Test RAP without removing the asphalt.

(2) **Department Furnished Required Recycled Materials.** When the Department furnishes and requires the use of recycled materials, unless otherwise shown on the plans:

- Department required recycled material will not be subject to the requirements in Table 1,

- Contractor furnished materials are subject to the requirements in Table 1 and this Item,
  the final product, blended, will be subject to the requirements in Table 1, and
  for final product, unblended (100% Department furnished required recycled material), the liquid limit, plasticity index, wet ball mill, classification, and compressive strength is waived,

Crush Department-furnished RAP so that 100% passes the 2 in, sieve. The Contractor is responsible for uniformly blending to meet the percentage required.

(3) **Department Furnished and Allowed Recycled Materials.** When the Department furnishes and allows the use of recycled materials or allows the Contractor to furnish recycled materials, the final blended product is subject to the requirements of Table 1 and the plans.

c. Recycled Material Sources. Department-owned recycled material is available to the Contractor only when shown on the plans. Return unused Department-owned recycled materials to the Department stockpile location designated by the Engineer unless otherwise shown on the plans.

The use of Contractor-owned recycled materials is allowed when shown on the plans. Contractor-owned surplus recycled materials remain the property of the Contractor. Remove Contractor-owned recycled materials from the project and dispose of them in accordance with federal, state, and local regulations before project acceptance. Do not intermingle Contractor-owned recycled material with Department-owned recycled material unless approved by the Engineer.

B. **Water.** Furnish water free of industrial wastes and other objectionable matter.
C. Material Sources. When non-commercial sources are used, expose the vertical faces of all strata of material proposed for use. Secure and process the material by successive vertical cuts extending through all exposed strata, when directed.

247.3. Equipment. Provide machinery, tools, and equipment necessary for proper execution of the work, Provide rollers in accordance with Item 210, "Rolling," Provide proof rollers in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling," when required,

247.4. Construction. Construct each layer uniformly, free of loose or segregated areas, and with the required density and moisture content. Provide a smooth surface that conforms to the typical sections, lines, and grades shown on the plans or as directed.

Stockpile base material temporarily at an approved location before delivery to the roadway. Build stockpiles in layers no greater than 2 ft, thick. Stockpiles must have a total height between 10 and 16 ft. unless otherwise shown on the plans. After construction and acceptance of the stockpile, loading from the stockpile for delivery is allowed. Load by making successive vertical cuts through the entire depth of the stockpile.

Do not add or remove material from temporary stockpiles that require sampling and testing before delivery unless otherwise approved. Charges for additional sampling and testing required as a result of adding or removing material will be deducted from the Contractor's estimates.

Haul approved flexible base in clean trucks. Deliver the required quantity to each 100-ft. station or designated stockpile site as shown on the plans. Prepare stockpile sites as directed. When delivery is to the 100-ft. station, manipulate in accordance with the applicable Items.

A, Preparation of Subgrade or Existing Base. Remove or scarify existing asphalt concrete pavement in accordance with Item 105, "Removing Stabilized Base and Asphalt Pavement," when shown on the plans or as directed. Shape the sub grade or existing base to conform to the typical sections shown on the plans or as directed.

When new base is required to be mixed with existing base, deliver, place, and spread the new flexible base in the required amount per station. Manipulate and thoroughly mix the new base with existing material to provide a uniform mixture to the specified depth before shaping.

When shown on the plans or directed, proof roll the roadbed in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling," before pulverizing or scarifying. Correct soft spots as directed.

B. **Placing.** Spread and shape flexible base into a uniform layer with an approved spreader the same day as delivered unless otherwise approved. Construct layers to the thickness shown on the plans. Maintain the shape of the course. Control dust by sprinkling, as directed. Correct or replace segregated areas as directed, at no additional expense to the Department.

Place successive base courses and finish courses using the same construction methods required for the first course.

C. **Compaction.** Compact using density control unless otherwise shown on the plans. Multiple lifts are permitted when shown on the plans or approved. Bring each layer to the moisture content directed. When necessary, sprinkle the material in accordance with Item 204, "Sprinkling."
Begin rolling longitudinally at the sides and proceed towards the center, overlapping on successive trips by at least 112 the width of the roller unit. On superelevated curves, begin rolling at the low side and progress toward the high side. Offset alternate trips of the roller. Operate rollers at a speed between 2 and 6 mph as directed.

Rework, recompact, and refinish material that fails to meet or that loses required moisture, density, stability, or finish before the next course is placed or the project is accepted. Continue work until specification requirements are met, Perform the work at no additional expense to the Department.

1. **Ordinary Compaction.** Roll with approved compaction equipment as directed. Correct irregularities, depressions, and weak spots immediately by scarifying the areas affected, adding or removing approved material as required, reshaping, and recompacting.

2. Density Control. Compact to at least 100% of the maximum density determined by Tex-113-E unless otherwise shown on the plans. Determine the moisture content of the material at the beginning and during compaction in accordance with Tex-103-E.

The Engineer will determine roadway density of completed sections in accordance with Tex-115-E. The Engineer may accept the section if no more than 1 of the 5 most recent density tests is below the specified density and the failing test is no more than 3 pef below the specified density.

D. **Finishing,** After completing compaction, clip, skin, or tight-blade the surface with a maintainer or subgrade trimmer to a depth of approximately 114 in. Remove loosened material and dispose of it at an approved location. Seal the clipped surface immediately by rolling with a pneumatic tire roller until a smooth surface is attained. Add small increments of water as needed during rolling. Shape and maintain the course and surface in conformity with the typical sections, lines, and grades as shown on the plans or as directed.
In areas where surfacing is to be placed, correct grade deviations greater than 114 in. in 16 ft. measured longitudinally or greater than 114 in. over the entire width of the cross-section. Correct by loosening, adding, or removing material. Reshape and recompact in accordance with Section 247.4.C, "Compaction."

E. **Curing.** Cure the finished section until the moisture content is at least 2 percentage points below optimum or as directed before applying the next successive course or prime coat.

ITEM 260
LIME TREATMENT (ROAD-MIXED)

260.1. Description. Mix and compact lime, water, and subgrade or base (with or without asphaltic concrete pavement) in the roadway.

260.2. Materials. Furnish uncontaminated materials of uniform quality that meet the requirements of the plans and specifications. Notify the Engineer of the proposed material sources and of changes to material sources. Obtain verification from the Engineer that the specification requirements are met before using the sources. The Engineer may sample and test project materials at any time before compaction. Use Tex-100-E for material definitions.

A. **Lime.** Furnish lime that meets the requirements of DMS-6350 "Lime and Lime Slurry," and DMS-6330, "Lime Sources Prequalification of Hydrated Lime and Quicklime," Use hydrated lime, commercial lime slurry, or quicklime, as shown on the plans. When furnishing quicklime, provide it in bulk.
B. **Flexible Base.** Furnish base material that meets the requirements of Item 247, "Flexible Base," for the type and grade shown on the plans, before the addition of lime.
C. **Water.** Furnish water free of industrial wastes and other objectionable material.
D. **Asphalt.** When asphalt or emulsion is permitted for curing purposes, furnish materials that meet the requirements of Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions," as shown on the plans or as directed.
E. **Mix Design.** The Engineer will determine the target lime content and optimum moisture content in accordance with Tex-121-E or prior experience with the project materials. The Contractor may propose a mix design developed in accordance with Tex-121-E. The Engineer will use Tex-12I-E to verify the Contractor's proposed mix design before acceptance. Reimburse the Department for subsequent mix designs or partial designs necessitated by changes in the material or requests by the Contractor. When treating existing materials, limit the amount of asphalt concrete pavement to no more than 50% of the mix unless otherwise shown on the plans or directed.

260.3. Equipment. Provide machinery, tools, and equipment necessary for proper execution of the work. Provide rollers in accordance with Item 210, "Rolling." Provide proof rollers in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling," when required.

A. **Storage** Facility. Store quicklime and dry hydrated lime in closed, weatherproof containers.
B. **Slurry Equipment.** Use slurry tanks equipped with agitation devices to slurry hydrated lime or quicklime on the project or other approved location. The Engineer may approve other slurrying methods.
Provide a pump for agitating the slurry when the distributor truck is not equipped with an agitator. Equip the distributor truck with a sampling device in accordance with Tex-600-J, Part I, when using commercial lime slurry.

C. **Pulverization Equipment.** Provide pulverization equipment that:
- cuts and pulverizes material uniformly to the proper depth with cutters that plane to a uniform surface over the entire width of the cut,
- provides a visible indication of the depth of cut at all times, and
- uniformly mixes the materials.

260.4. Construction. Construct each layer uniformly, free of loose or segregated areas, and with the required density and moisture content, Provide a smooth surface that conforms to the typical sections, lines, and grades shown on the plans or as directed.

A. **Preparation of Subgrade or Existing Base for Treatment.** Before treating, remove existing asphalt concrete pavement in accordance with Item 105, "Removing Stabilized Base and Asphalt Pavement," when shown on the plans or as directed. Shape existing material in accordance with applicable bid items to conform to typical sections shown on the plans and as directed.

When shown on the plans or directed, proof roll the roadbed in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling," before pulverizing or scarifying existing material. Correct soft spots as directed.

When new base material is required to be mixed with existing base, deliver, place, and spread the new material in the required amount per station. Manipulate and thoroughly mix new base with existing material to provide a uniform mixture to the specified depth before shaping.

B. **Pulverization.** Pulverize or scarify existing material after shaping so that 100% passes a 2-1.12-in. sieve. If the material cannot be uniformly processed to the required depth in a single pass, excavate and windrow the material to expose a secondary grade to achieve processing to plan depth.

C. Application of Lime. Uniformly apply lime using dry or slurry placement as shown on the plans or as directed, Add lime at the percentage determined in Section 260.2.E, "Mix Design," Apply lime only on an area where mixing can be completed during the same working day.

Start lime application only when the air temperature is at least 35°F and rising or is at least 40°F. The temperature will be taken in the shade and away from artificial heat, Suspend application when the Engineer determines that weather conditions are unsuitable.

Minimize dust and scattering of lime by wind, Do not apply lime when wind conditions, in the opinion of the Engineer, cause blowing lime to become dangerous to traffic or objectionable to adjacent property owners. When pebble grade quicklime is placed dry, mix the material and lime thoroughly at the time of lime application, Use of quicklime can be dangerous. Inform users of the recommended precautions for handling and storage.

1. **Dry Placement.** Before applying lime, bring the prepared roadway to approximately optimum moisture content. When necessary, sprinkle in accordance with Item 204, "Sprinkling." Distribute the required quantity of hydrated lime or pebble grade quicklime with approved equipment. Only hydrated lime may be distributed by bag. Do not use a motor grader to spread hydrated lime.

2. **Slurry Placement.** Provide slurry free of objectionable materials, at or above the approved minimum dry solids content, and with a uniform consistency that will allow ease of handling and uniform application, Deliver commercial lime slurry to the jobsite or prepare lime slurry at the jobsite or other approved location by using hydrated lime or quicklime, as specified.

Distribute slurry uniformly by making successive passes over a measured section of roadway until the specified lime content is reached. Uniformly spread the residue from quicklime slurry over the length of the roadway being processed, unless otherwise directed.

D. Mixing. Begin mixing within 6 hours of application of lime. Hydrated lime exposed to the open air for 6 hours or more between application and mixing, or that experiences excessive loss due to washing or blowing, will not be accepted for payment.

Thoroughly mix the material and lime using approved equipment. Allow the mixture to mellow for 1 to 4 days, as directed, When pebble grade quicklime is used, allow the mixture to mellow for 2 to 4 days, as directed. Sprinkle the treated materials during the mixing and mellowing operation, as directed, to achieve adequate hydration and proper moisture content. After mellowing, resume mixing until a homogeneous, friable mixture is obtained.

After mixing, the Engineer will sample the mixture at roadway moisture and test in accordance with Tex-101-E, Part III, to determine compliance with the gradation requirements in Table 1.

Table 1
Gradation Requirements (Minimum % Passing)

Sieve Size	Base	Subgrade
1-314 in,	100	100
314 in.	85	85
No. 4	-	60

E. Compaction. Compact the mixture using density control, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Multiple lifts are permitted when shown on the plans or approved. Bring each layer to the moisture content directed. When necessary, sprinkle the treated material in accordance with Item 204, "Sprinkling." Determine the moisture content of the mixture at the beginning and during compaction in accordance with Tex-103-E.

Begin rolling longitudinally at the sides and proceed toward the center, overlapping on successive trips by at least one-half the width of the roller unit. On super elevated curves, begin rolling at the low side and progress toward the high side. Offset alternate trips of the roller. Operate rollers at a speed between 2 and 6 MPH, as directed.

Rework, recompact, and refinish material that fails to meet or that loses required moisture, density, stability, or finish before the next course is placed or the project is accepted. Continue work until specification requirements are met. Rework in accordance with Section 260.4.F, "Reworking a Section." Perform the work at no additional expense to the Department.

1. Ordinary Compaction. Roll with approved compaction equipment, as directed. Correct irregularities, depressions, and weak spots immediately by scarifying the areas affected, adding or removing treated material as required, reshaping, and recompacting.

2. Density Control. The Engineer will determine roadway density of completed sections in accordance with Tex-115-E. The Engineer may accept the section if no more than 1 of the 5 most recent density tests is below the specified density and the failing test is no more than 3 pcf below the specified density.

a. Subgrade. Compact to at least 95% of the maximum density determined in accordance with Tex-121-E, unless otherwise shown on the plans.
b. Base, Compact the bottom course to at least 95% of the maximum density determined in accordance with Tex-121-E, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Compact subsequent courses treated under this Item to at least 98% of the maximum density determined in accordance with Tex-121-E, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

F. Reworking a Section. When a section is reworked within 72 hours after completion of compaction, rework the section to provide the required density. When a section is reworked more than 72 hr. after completion of compaction, add additional lime at 25% of the percentage determined in Section 260,2.E, "Mix Design," Reworking includes loosening, adding material or removing unacceptable material if necessary, mixing as directed, compacting, and finishing. When density control is specified, determine a new maximum density of the reworked material in accordance with Tex-121-E, and compact to at least 95% of this density.

G. Finishing. Immediately after completing compaction of the final course, clip, skin, or tight-blade the surface of the lime-treated material with a maintainer or subgrade trimmer to a depth of approximately 114 in. Remove loosened material and dispose of at an approved location. Roll the clipped surface immediately with a pneumatic tire roller until a smooth surface is attained. Add small amounts of water as needed during rolling. Shape and maintain the course and surface in conformity with the typical sections, lines, and grades shown on the plans or as directed.

Finish grade of constructed subgrade in accordance with
Section 132.3.F.1, "Grade Tolerances." Finish grade of constructed base in accordance with Section 247.4.D, "Finishing."

H. Curing. Cure for the minimum number of days shown in Table 2 by sprinkling in accordance with Item 204, "Sprinkling," or by applying an asphalt material at a rate of 0.05 to 0.20 gal. per square yard as directed, Maintain moisture during curing, Upon completion of curing, maintain the moisture content in accordance with Article 132.3.E, "Maintenance of Moisture and Reworking" for subgrade and Article 247.4,E, "Curing" for bases prior to placing subsequent courses. Do not allow equipment on the finished course during curing except as required for sprinkling, unless otherwise approved. Apply seals or additional courses within 14 calendar days of final compaction.

Table 2
Minimum Curing Requirements Before Placing Subsequent Courses

Untreated Material	**Curing (Days)**
PIS35	2
P1>35	5

I. Subject to the approval of the Engineer. Proof rolling may be required as an indicator of adequate curing.

- Quicklime (Dry), or
- Quicklime (Slurry).

This price is full compensation for materials, delivery, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.
Lime used for reworking a section in accordance with Section 260.4.F, "Reworking a Section," will not be paid for directly but will be subsidiary to this Item.

B. Lime Treatment. Lime treatment will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Lime Treatment (Existing Material)," "Lime Treatment (New Base)," or "Lime Treatment (Mixing Existing Material and New Base)," for the depth specified. No payment will be made for thickness or width exceeding that shown on the plans. This price is full compensation for shaping existing material, loosening, mixing, pulverizing, providing lime, spreading, applying lime, compacting, finishing, curing, curing materials, blading, shaping and maintaining, replacing, disposing of loosened materials, processing, hauling, preparing secondary subgrade, water, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Item 300
Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions

1. DESCRIPTION

Provide asphalt cements, cutback and emulsified asphalts, performance-graded asphalt binders, and other miscellaneous asphalt materials as specified on the plans.

2. MATERIALS

Provide asphalt materials that meet the stated requirements when tested in accordance with the referenced Department, AASHTO, and ASTM test methods. Use asphalt containing recycled materials only if the recycled components meet the requirements of Article 6.9, "Recycled Materials." Provide asphalt materials that have been preapproved for use by the Construction Division in accordance with Tex-545-C, "Asphalt Binder Quality Program."

Acronyms used in this Item are defined in Table 1.

Table 1
Acronyms

Acronym	Definition
Test Procedure Designations	
Tex	Department
T or R	AASHTO
D	ASTM
Polymer Modifier Designations	
P	polymer-modified
SBR or L	styrene-butadiene rubber (latex)
SBS	styrene-butadiene-styrene block co-polymer
TR	tire rubber (from ambient temperature grinding of truck and passenger tires)
AC	asphalt cement
AE	asphalt emulsion
AE-P	asphalt emulsion prime
A-R	asphalt-rubber
C	cationic
EAP&T	emulsified asphalt prime and tack
H-suffix	harder residue (lower penetration)
HF	high float
MC	medium-curing
MS	medium-setting
PCE	prime, cure, and erosion control
PG	performance grade
RC	rapid-curing
RS	rapid-setting
S-suffix	stockpile usage
SCM	special cutback material
SS	slow-setting

2.1. **Asphalt Cement**. Provide asphalt cement that is homogeneous, water-free, and nonfoaming when heated to 347°F, and meets the requirements in Table 2.

Table 2
Asphalt Cement

Property	Test Procedure	Viscosity Grade									
		AC-0.6		AC-1.5		AC-3		AC-5		AC-10	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity	T 202										
140°F, poise		40	80	100	200	250	350	400	600	800	1,200
275°F, poise		0.4	–	0.7	–	1.1	–	1.4	–	1.9	–
Penetration, 77°F, 100g, 5 sec.	T 49	350	–	250	–	210	–	135	–	85	–
Flash point, C.O.C., °F	T 48	425	–	425	–	425	–	425	–	450	–
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–
Spot test	Tex-509-C	Neg.		Neg.		Neg.		Neg.		Neg.	
Tests on residue from Thin-Film Oven Test:	T 179										
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 202	–	180	–	450	–	900	–	1,500	–	3,000
Ductility,[1] 77°F 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	100	–	100	–	100	–	100	–	100	–

1. If AC-0.6 or AC-1.5 ductility at 77°F is less than 100 cm, material is acceptable if ductility at 60°F is more than 100 cm.

2.2. **Polymer-Modified Asphalt Cement**. Provide polymer-modified asphalt cement that is smooth, homogeneous, and meets the requirements of Table 3. Supply samples of the base asphalt cement and polymer additives if requested.

Table 3
Polymer-Modified Asphalt Cement

Property	Test Procedure	Polymer-Modified Viscosity Grade											
		AC-5 w/2% SBR		AC-10 w/2% SBR		AC-15P		AC-20XP		AC-10-2TR		AC-20-5TR	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Polymer		SBR		SBR		SBS		SBS		TR		TR	
Polymer content, % (solids basis)	Tex-533-C	2.0	–	2.0	–	3.0	–	–	–	2.0	–	5.0	–
Dynamic shear, G*/sin δ, 64°C, 10 rad/s, kPa	T 315	–	–	–	–	–	–	1.0	–	–	–	1.0	–
Dynamic shear, G*/sin δ, 58°C, 10 rad/s, kPa	T 315	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1.0	–	–	–
Viscosity													
140°F, poise	T 202	700	–	1,300	–	1,500	–	2,000	–	1,000	–	2,000	–
275°F, poise	T 202	–	7.0	–	8.0	–	8.0	–	–	–	8.0	–	10.0
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	120	–	80	–	100	150	75	115	95	130	75	115
Ductility, 5cm/min., 39.2°F, cm	T 51	70	–	60	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Elastic recovery, 50°F, %	Tex-539-C	–	–	–	–	55	–	55	–	30	–	55	–
Softening point, °F	T 53	–	–	–	–	–	–	120	–	110	–	120	–
Polymer separation, 48 hr.	Tex-540-C	None		None		None		None		None		None	
Flash point, C.O.C., °F	T 48	425	–	425	–	425	–	425	–	425	–	425	–
Tests on residue from RTFOT aging and pressure aging:	Tex-541-C and R 28												
Creep stiffness	T 313												
S, -18°C, MPa		–	–	–	–	–	300	–	300	–	300	–	300
m-value, -18°C		–	–	–	–	0.300	–	0.300	–	0.300	–	0.300	–

2.3. **Cutback Asphalt**. Provide cutback asphalt that meets the requirements of Tables 4, 5, and 6 for the specified type and grade. Supply samples of the base asphalt cement and polymer additives if requested.

Table 4
Rapid-Curing Cutback Asphalt

Property	Test Procedure	Type–Grade					
		RC-250		RC-800		RC-3000	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Kinematic viscosity, 140°F, cSt	T 201	250	400	800	1,600	3,000	6,000
Water, %	D95	–	0.2	–	0.2	–	0.2
Flash point, T.O.C., °F	T 79	80	–	80	–	80	–
Distillation test:	T 78						
Distillate, percentage by volume of total distillate to 680°F							
to 437°F		40	75	35	70	20	55
to 500°F		65	90	55	85	45	75
to 600°F		85	–	80	–	70	–
Residue from distillation, volume %		70	–	75	–	82	–
Tests on distillation residue:							
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 202	600	2400	600	2400	600	2400
Ductility, 5 cm/min., 77°F, cm	T 51	100	–	100	–	100	–
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–
Spot test	Tex-509-C	Neg.		Neg.		Neg.	

Table 5
Medium-Curing Cutback Asphalt

Property	Test Procedure	Type–Grade							
		MC-30		MC-250		MC-800		MC-3000	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Kinematic viscosity, 140°F, cSt	T 201	30	60	250	500	800	1,600	3,000	6,000
Water, %	D95	–	0.2	–	0.2	–	0.2	–	0.2
Flash point, T.O.C., °F	T 79	95	–	122	–	140	–	149	–
Distillation test:	T 78								
Distillate, percentage by volume of total distillate to 680°F									
to 437°F		–	35	–	20	–	–	–	–
to 500°F		30	75	5	55	–	40	–	15
to 600°F		75	95	60	90	45	85	15	75
Residue from distillation, volume %		50	–	67	–	75	–	80	–
Tests on distillation residue:									
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 202	300	1200	300	1200	300	1200	300	1200
Ductility, 5 cm/min., 77°F, cm	T 51	100	–	100	–	100	–	100	–
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–
Spot test	Tex-509-C	Neg.		Neg.		Neg.		Neg.	

Table 6
Special-Use Cutback Asphalt

Property	Test Procedure	Type–Grade					
		MC-2400L		SCM I		SCM II	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Kinematic viscosity, 140°F, cSt	T 201	2,400	4,800	500	1,000	1,000	2,000
Water, %	D95	–	0.2	–	0.2	–	0.2
Flash point, T.O.C., °F	T 79	150	–	175	–	175	–
Distillation test:	T 78						
Distillate, percentage by volume of total distillate to 680°F							
to 437°F		–	–	–	–	–	–
to 500°F		–	35	–	0.5	–	0.5
to 600°F		35	80	20	60	15	50
Residue from distillation, volume %		78	–	76	–	82	–
Tests on distillation residue:							
Polymer		SBR		–		–	
Polymer content, % (solids basis)	Tex-533-C	2.0	–	–	–	–	–
Penetration, 100 g, 5 sec., 77°F	T 49	150	300	180	–	180	–
Ductility, 5 cm/min., 39.2°F, cm	T 51	50	–	–	–	–	–
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–

2.4. **Emulsified Asphalt**. Provide emulsified asphalt that is homogeneous, does not separate after thorough mixing, and meets the requirements for the specified type and grade in Tables 7, 8, 9, and 10.

Table 7
Emulsified Asphalt

Property	Test Procedure	Type–Grade									
		Rapid-Setting		Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting			
		HFRS-2		MS-2		AES-300		SS-1		SS-1H	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol	T 72										
77°F, sec.		–	–	–	–	75	400	20	100	20	100
122°F, sec.		150	400	100	300	–	–	–	–	–	–
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1
Miscibility	T 59	–		–		–		Pass		Pass	
Cement mixing, %	T 59	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	2.0	–	2.0
Coating ability and water resistance:	T 59										
Dry aggregate/after spray		–		–		Good/Fair		–		–	
Wet aggregate/after spray		–		–		Fair/Fair		–		–	
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.02 N $CaCl_2$, %	T 59	50	–	–	30	–	–	–	–	–	–
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	–	1	–	1	–	1	–	1	–	1
Freezing test, 3 cycles[1]	T 59	–		Pass		–		Pass		Pass	
Distillation test:	T 59										
Residue by distillation, % by wt.		65	–	65	–	65	–	60	–	60	–
Oil distillate, % by volume of emulsion		–	0.5	–	0.5	–	5	–	0.5	–	0.5
Tests on residue from distillation:											
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	100	140	120	160	300	–	120	160	70	100
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	97.5	–	97.5		97.5	–	97.5	–	97.5	–
Ductility, 77°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	100	–	100		–	–	100	–	80	–
Float test, 140°F, sec.	T 50	1,200	–	–		1,200	–	–	–	–	–

1. Applies only when the Engineer designates material for winter use.

Table 8
Cationic Emulsified Asphalt

Property	Test Procedure	Type–Grade											
		Rapid-Setting				Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting			
		CRS-2		CRS-2H		CMS-2		CMS-2S		CSS-1		CSS-1H	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol													
77°F, sec.	T 72	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	20	100	20	100
122°F, sec.		150	400	150	400	100	300	100	300	–	–	–	–
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1
Cement mixing, %	T 59	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	2.0	–	2.0
Coating ability and water resistance:													
Dry aggregate/after spray	T 59	–		–		Good/Fair		Good/Fair		–		–	
Wet aggregate/after spray		–		–		Fair/Fair		Fair/Fair		–		–	
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.8% Sodium dioctyl sulfosuccinate, %	T 59	70	–	70	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	–	1	–	1	–	1	–	1	–	1	–	1
Particle charge	T 59	Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive	
Distillation test:													
Residue by distillation, % by wt.	T 59	65	–	65	–	65	–	65	–	60	–	60	–
Oil distillate, % by volume of emulsion		–	0.5	–	0.5	–	7	–	5	–	0.5	–	0.5
Tests on residue from distillation:													
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	120	160	70	110	120	200	300	–	120	160	70	110
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	97.5	–	97.5	–	97.5	–	97.5	–	97.5	–	97.5	–
Ductility, 77°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	100	–	80	–	100	–	–	–	100	–	80	–

Table 9
Polymer-Modified Emulsified Asphalt

Property	Test Procedure	Type–Grade											
		Rapid-Setting				Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting			
		RS-1P		HFRS-2P		AES-150P		AES-300P		AES-300S		SS-1P	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol	T 72												
77°F, sec.		–	–	–	–	75	400	75	400	75	400	30	100
122°F, sec.		50	200	150	400	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1
Miscibility	T 59	–		–		–		–		–		Pass	
Coating ability and water resistance:	T 59												
Dry aggregate/after spray		–		–		Good/Fair		Good/Fair		Good/Fair		–	
Wet aggregate/after spray		–		–		Fair/Fair		Fair/Fair		Fair/Fair		–	
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.02 N $CaCl_2$, %	T 59	60	–	50	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	–	1	–	1	–	1	–	1	–	1	–	1
Breaking index, g	Tex-542-C	–	80	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Distillation test:[1]	T 59												
Residue by distillation, % by wt.		65	–	65	–	65	–	65	–	65	–	60	–
Oil distillate, % by volume of emulsion		–	3	–	0.5	–	3	–	5	–	7	–	0.5
Tests on residue from distillation:													
Polymer content, wt. % (solids basis)	Tex-533-C	–	–	3.0	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	3.0	–
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	225	300	90	140	150	300	300	–	300	–	100	140
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	97.0	–	97.0	–	97.0	–	97.0	–	97.0	–	97.0	–
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 202	–	–	1,500	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1,300	–
Float test, 140°F, sec.	T 50	–	–	1,200	–	1,200	–	1,200	–	1,200	–	–	–
Ductility,[2] 39.2°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	–	–	50	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	50	–
Elastic recovery,[2] 50°F, %	Tex-539-C	55	–	55	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Tests on RTFO curing of distillation residue	Tex-541-C												
Elastic recovery, 50°F, %	Tex-539-C	–	–	–	–	50	–	50	–	30	–	–	–

1. Exception to T 59: Bring the temperature on the lower thermometer slowly to 350°F ±10°F. Maintain at this temperature for 20 min. Complete total distillation in 60 min. (±5 min.) from the first application of heat.
2. HFRS-2P must meet one of either the ductility or elastic recovery requirements.

Table 10
Polymer-Modified Cationic Emulsified Asphalt

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade											
		Rapid-Setting						Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting	
		CRS-1P		CRS-2P		CHFRS-2P		CMS-1P[3]		CMS-2P[3]		CSS-1P	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol	T 72												
77°F, sec.		–	–	–	–	–	–	20	100	–	–	20	100
122°F, sec.		50	150	150	400	100	400	–	–	50	400	–	–
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.8% Sodium dioctyl sulfosuccinate, %	T 59	60	–	70	–	60	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	–	1	–	1	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	1
Breaking index, g	Tex-542-C	–	80	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Particle charge	T 59	Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive	
Distillation test:[1]	T 59												
Residue by distillation, % by weight		65	–	65	–	65	–	65	–	65	–	62	–
Oil distillate, % by volume of emulsion		–	3	–	0.5	–	0.5	–	0.5	–	0.5	–	0.5
Tests on residue from distillation:													
Polymer content, wt. % (solids basis)	Tex-533-C	–	–	3.0	–	3.0	–	–	–	–	–	3.0	–
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	225	300	90	150	80	130	40	–	40	–	55	90
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 202	–	–	1,300	–	1,300	–	–	5,000	–	5,000	–	–
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	97.0	–	97.0	–	95.0	–	–	–	–	–	97.0	–
Softening point, °F	T 53	–	–	–	–	130	–	–	–	–	–	135	–
Ductility, 77°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	70	–
Float test, 140°F, sec.	T 50	–	–	–	–	1,800	–	–	–	–	–		
Ductility,[2] 39.2°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	–	–	50	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Elastic recovery,[2] 50°F, %	Tex-539-C	45	–	55	–	55	–	45	–	45	–	–	–
Tests on rejuvenating agent:													
Viscosity, 140°F, cSt	T 201	–	–	–	–	–	–	50	175	50	175	–	–
Flash point, C.O.C., °F	T 48	–	–	–	–	–	–	380	–	380	–	–	–
Saturates, % by weight	D2007	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	30	–	30	–	–
Solubility in n-pentane, % by weight	D2007	–	–	–	–	–	–	99	–	99	–	–	–
Tests on rejuvenating agent after TFO or RTFO:	T 240 or T 179												
Weight Change, %		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	6.5	–	6.5	–	–
Viscosity Ratio		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	3.0	–	3.0	–	–
Tests on latex:[4]													
Tensile strength, die C dumbbell, psi	D412[5]	–	–	–	–	–	–	500	–	500	–	–	–
Change in mass after immersion in rejuvenating agent, %	D471	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	40[6]	–	40[6]	–	–

1. Exception to T 59: Bring the temperature on the lower thermometer slowly to 350°F (±0°F). Maintain at this temperature for 20 min. Complete total distillation in 60 min. (±5 min.) from the first application of heat.
2. CRS-2P must meet one of either the ductility or elastic recovery requirements.
3. With all precertification samples of CMS-1P or CMS-2P, submit certified test reports showing that the rejuvenating agent and latex meet the stated requirements. Submit samples of these raw materials if requested by the Engineer.
4. Preparation of latex films: Use any substrate which produces a film of uniform cross-section. Apply latex using a drawdown tool that will deliver enough material to achieve desired residual thickness. Cure films for 14 days at 75°F and 50% relative humidity.
5. Cut samples for tensile strength determination using a crosshead speed of 20 in./min.
6. Specimen must remain intact after exposure and removal of excess rejuvenating agent.

2.5. **Specialty Emulsions**. Provide specialty emulsion that is either asphalt-based or resin-based and meets the requirements of Table 11.

Table 11
Specialty Emulsions

Property	Test Procedure	Type–Grade					
		Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting	
		AE–P		EAP&T		PCE[1]	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol	T 72						
77°F, sec.		–	–	–	–	10	100
122°F, sec.		15	150	–	–	–	–
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1
Miscibility[2]	T 59	–		Pass		Pass	
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.10 N $CaCl_2$, %	T 59	–	70	–	–	–	–
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	–	1	–	1	–	–
Particle size,[5] % by volume < 2.5 μm	Tex-238-F[3]	–	–	90	–	90	–
Asphalt emulsion distillation to 500°F followed by Cutback asphalt distillation of residue to 680°F:	T 59 & T 78						
Residue after both distillations, % by wt.		40	–	–	–	–	–
Total oil distillate from both distillations, % by volume of emulsion		25	40	–	–	–	–
Residue by distillation, % by wt.	T 59	–	–	60	–	–	–
Residue by evaporation,[4] % by wt.	T 59	–	–	–	–	60	–
Tests on residue after all distillation(s):							
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 202	–	–	800	–	–	–
Kinematic viscosity,[5] 140°F, cSt	T 201	–	–	–	–	100	350
Flash point C.O.C., °F	T 48	–	–	–	–	400	–
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	97.5	–	–	–	–	–
Float test, 122°F, sec.	T 50	50	200	–	–	–	–

Supply with each shipment of PCE:

- a copy of a lab report from an approved analytical lab, signed by a lab official, indicating the PCE formulation does not meet any characteristics of a Resource Conservation Recovery Act (RCRA) hazardous waste;
- a certification from the producer that the formulation supplied does not differ from the one tested and that no listed RCRA hazardous wastes or Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) have been mixed with the product; and
- a Material Safety Data Sheet.

Exception to T 59: In dilution, use 350 ml of distilled or deionized water and a 1,000-ml beaker.
Use Tex-238-F, beginning at "Particle Size Analysis by Laser Diffraction," with distilled or deionized water as a medium and no dispersant, or use another approved method.
Exception to T 59: Leave sample in the oven until foaming ceases, then cool and weigh.
PCE must meet either the kinematic viscosity requirement or the particle size requirement.

2.6. **Recycling Agent**. Recycling agent and emulsified recycling agent must meet the requirements in Table 12. Additionally, recycling agent and residue from emulsified recycling agent, when added in the specified proportions to the recycled asphalt, must meet the properties specified on the plans.

Table 12
Recycling Agent and Emulsified Recycling Agent

Property	Test Procedure	Recycling Agent		Emulsified Recycling Agent	
		Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol, 77°F, sec.	T 72	–	–	15	100
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	–	–	0.1
Miscibility[1]	T 59	–		No coagulation	
Residue by evaporation,[2] % by wt.	T 59	–	–	60	–
Tests on recycling agent or residue from evaporation:	T 48 T 201				
Flash point, C.O.C., °F		400	–	400	–
Kinematic viscosity,					
140°F, cSt		75	200	75	200
275°F, cSt		–	10.0	–	10.0

1. Exception to T 59: Use 0.02 N CaCl2 solution in place of water.
2. Exception to T 59: Maintain sample at 300°F until foaming ceases, then cool and weigh.

2.7. **Crumb Rubber Modifier**. Crumb rubber modifier (CRM) consists of automobile and truck tires processed by ambient temperature grinding.

CRM must be:

- free from contaminants including fabric, metal, and mineral and other nonrubber substances;
- free-flowing; and
- nonfoaming when added to hot asphalt binder.

Ensure rubber gradation meets the requirements of the grades in Table 13 when tested in accordance with Tex-200-F, Part I, using a 50-g sample.

Table 13
CRM Gradations

Sieve Size (% Passing)	Grade A		Grade B		Grade C		Grade D	Grade E
	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max		
#8	100	–	–	–	–	–	As shown on the plans	As approved
#10	95	100	100	–	–	–		
#16	–	–	70	100	100	–		
#30	–	–	25	60	90	100		
#40	–	–	–	–	45	100		
#50	0	10	–	–	–	–		
#200	–	–	0	5	–	–		

2.8. **Crack Sealer**. Provide polymer-modified asphalt-emulsion crack sealer meeting the requirements of Table 14. Provide rubber-asphalt crack sealer meeting the requirements of Table 15.

Table 14
Polymer-Modified Asphalt-Emulsion Crack Sealer

Property	Test Procedure	Min	Max
Rotational viscosity, 77°F, cP	D2196, Method A	10,000	25,000
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	0.1
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	–	1
Evaporation	Tex-543-C		
Residue by evaporation, % by wt.		65	–
Tests on residue from evaporation:			
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	35	75
Softening point, °F	T 53	140	–
Ductility, 39.2°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	100	–

Table 15
Rubber-Asphalt Crack Sealer

Property	Test Procedure	Class A		Class B	
		Min	Max	Min	Max
CRM content, Grade A or B, % by wt.	Tex-544-C	22	26	–	–
CRM content, Grade B, % by wt.	Tex-544-C	–	–	13	17
Virgin rubber content,[1] % by wt.		–	–	2	–
Flash point,[2] C.O.C., °F	T 48	400	–	400	–
Penetration,[3] 77°F, 150 g, 5 sec.	T 49	30	50	30	50
Penetration,[3] 32°F, 200 g, 60 sec.	T 49	12	–	12	–
Softening point, °F	T 53	–	–	170	–
Bond Test, non-immersed, 0.5 in specimen, 50% extension, 20°F[4]	D5329	–		Pass	

1. Provide certification that the Min % virgin rubber was added.
2. Agitate the sealing compound with a 3/8- to 1/2-in. (9.5- to 12.7-mm) wide, square-end metal spatula to bring the material on the bottom of the cup to the surface (i.e., turn the material over) before passing the test flame over the cup. Start at one side of the thermometer, move around to the other, and then return to the starting point using 8 to 10 rapid circular strokes. Accomplish agitation in 3 to 4 sec. Pass the test flame over the cup immediately after stirring is completed.
3. Exception to T 49: Substitute the cone specified in D217 for the penetration needle.
4. Allow no crack in the crack sealing materials or break in the bond between the sealer and the mortar blocks over 1/4 in. deep for any specimen after completion of the test.

2.9. **Asphalt-Rubber Binders**. Provide asphalt-rubber (A-R) binders that are mixtures of asphalt binder and CRM, which have been reacted at elevated temperatures. Provide A-R binders meeting D6114 and containing a minimum of 15% CRM by weight. Provide Types I or II, containing CRM Grade C, for use in hot-mixed aggregate mixtures. Provide Types II or III, containing CRM Grade B, for use in surface treatment binder. Ensure binder properties meet the requirements of Table 16.

Table 16
A-R Binders

Property	Test Procedure	Binder Type					
		Type I		Type II		Type III	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Apparent viscosity, 347°F, cP	D2196, Method A	1,500	5,000	1,500	5,000	1,500	5,000
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	25	75	25	75	50	100
Penetration, 39.2°F, 200 g, 60 sec.	T 49	10	–	15	–	25	–
Softening point, °F	T 53	135	–	130	–	125	–
Resilience, 77°F, %	D5329	25	–	20	–	10	–
Flash point, C.O.C., °F	T 48	450	–	450	–	450	–
Tests on residue from Thin-Film Oven Test:	T 179						
Retained penetration ratio, 39.2°F, 200 g, 60 sec., % of original	T 49	75	–	75	–	75	–

2.10. **Performance-Graded Binders**. Provide PG binders that are smooth and homogeneous, show no separation when tested in accordance with Tex-540-C, and meet the requirements of Table 17.

Separation testing is not required if:

- a modifier is introduced separately at the mix plant either by injection in the asphalt line or mixer,
- the binder is blended on site in continuously agitated tanks, or
- binder acceptance is based on field samples taken from an in-line sampling port at the hot-mix plant after the addition of modifiers.

Table 17
Performance-Graded Binders

Property and Test Method	Performance Grade																		
	PG 58			PG 64				PG 70				PG 76				PG 82		
	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28
Average 7-day max pavement design temperature, °C[1]	< 58			< 64				< 70				< 76				< 82		
Min pavement design temperature, °C[1]	>-22	>-28	>-34	>-16	>-22	>-28	>-34	>-16	>-22	>-28	>-34	>-16	>-22	>-28	>-34	>-16	>-22	>-28
Original Binder																		
Flash point, T 48, Min, °C	230																	
Viscosity, T 316:[2,3] Max, 3.0 Pa·s, test temperature, °C	135																	
Dynamic shear, T 315:[4] G*/sin(δ), Min, 1.00 kPa, Max, 2.00 kPa,[7] Test temperature @ 10 rad/sec., °C	58			64				70				76				82		
Elastic recovery, D6084, 50°F, % Min	–	–	30	–	–	30	50	–	30	50	60	30	50	60	70	50	60	70
Rolling Thin-Film Oven (Tex-541-C)																		
Mass loss, Tex-541-C, Max, %	1.0																	
Dynamic shear, T 315: G*/sin(δ), Min, 2.20 kPa, Max, 5.00 kPa,[7] Test temperature @ 10 rad/sec., °C	58			64				70				76				82		
Pressure Aging Vessel (PAV) Residue (R 28)																		
PAV aging temperature, °C	100																	
Dynamic shear, T 315: G*sin(δ), Max, 5,000 kPa Test temperature @ 10 rad/sec., °C	25	22	19	28	25	22	19	28	25	22	19	28	25	22	19	28	25	22
Creep stiffness, T 313:[5,6] *S*, max, 300 MPa, *m*-value, Min, 0.300 Test temperature @ 60 sec., °C	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18
Direct tension, T 314:[6] Failure strain, Min, 1.0% Test temperature @ 1.0 mm/min., °C	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18

1. Pavement temperatures are estimated from air temperatures using an algorithm contained in a Department-supplied computer program, may be provided by the Department, or by following the procedures outlined in AASHTO MP 2 and PP 28.
2. This requirement may be waived at the Department's discretion if the supplier warrants that the asphalt binder can be adequately pumped, mixed, and compacted at temperatures that meet all applicable safety, environmental, and constructability requirements. At test temperatures where the binder is a Newtonian fluid, any suitable standard means of viscosity measurement may be used, including capillary (T 201 or T 202) or rotational viscometry (T 316).
3. Viscosity at 135°C is an indicator of mixing and compaction temperatures that can be expected in the lab and field. High values may indicate high mixing and compaction temperatures. Additionally, significant variation can occur from batch to batch. Contractors should be aware that variation could significantly impact their mixing and compaction operations. Contractors are therefore responsible for addressing any constructability issues that may arise.
4. For quality control of unmodified asphalt binder production, measurement of the viscosity of the original asphalt binder may be substituted for dynamic shear measurements of G*/sin(δ) at test temperatures where the asphalt is a Newtonian fluid. Any suitable standard means of viscosity measurement may be used, including capillary (T 201 or T 202) or rotational viscometry (T 316).
5. Silicone beam molds, as described in AASHTO TP 1-93, are acceptable for use.
6. If creep stiffness is below 300 MPa, direct tension test is not required. If creep stiffness is between 300 and 600 MPa, the direct tension failure strain requirement can be used instead of the creep stiffness requirement. The m-value requirement must be satisfied in both cases.
7. Maximum values for unaged and RTFO aged dynamic shear apply only to materials used as substitute binders, as described in specification items, 340, "Dense-Graded Hot-Mix Asphalt (Small Quantity)," 341, "Dense-Graded Hot-Mix Asphalt," and 344, "Superpave Mixtures."

3. EQUIPMENT

Provide all equipment necessary to transport, store, sample, heat, apply, and incorporate asphalts, oils, and emulsions.

4. CONSTRUCTION

Typical Material Use. Use materials shown in Table 18, unless otherwise determined by the Engineer.

Table 18
Typical Material Use

Material Application	Typically Used Materials
Hot-mixed, hot-laid asphalt mixtures	PG binders, A-R binders Types I and II
Surface treatment	AC-5, AC-10, AC-5 w/2% SBR, AC-10 w/2% SBR, AC-15P, AC-20XP, AC-10-2TR, AC-20-5TR, HFRS-2, MS-2, CRS-2, CRS-2H, HFRS-2P,CRS-2P, CHFRS-2P, A-R binders Types II and III
Surface treatment (cool weather)	RS-1P, CRS-1P, RC-250, RC-800, RC-3000, MC-250, MC-800, MC-3000, MC-2400L
Precoating	AC-5, AC-10, PG 64-22, SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H
Tack coat	PG Binders, SS-1H, CSS-1H, EAP&T
Fog seal	SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H
Hot-mixed, cold-laid asphalt mixtures	AC-0.6, AC-1.5, AC-3, AES-300, AES-300P, CMS-2, CMS-2S
Patching mix	MC-800, SCM I, SCM II, AES-300S
Recycling	AC-0.6, AC-1.5, AC-3, AES-150P, AES-300P, recycling agent, emulsified recycling agent
Crack sealing	SS-1P, polymer mod AE crack sealant, rubber asphalt crack sealers (Class A, Class B)
Microsurfacing	CSS-1P
Prime	MC-30, AE-P, EAP&T, PCE
Curing membrane	SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H, PCE
Erosion control	SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H, PCE

4.1. **Storage and Application Temperatures**. Use storage and application temperatures in accordance with Table 19. Store and apply materials at the lowest temperature yielding satisfactory results. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for any agitation requirements in storage. Manufacturer's instructions regarding recommended application and storage temperatures supersede those of Table 19.

Table 19
Storage and Application Temperatures

Type–Grade	Application		Storage
	Recommended Range (°F)	Maximum Allowable (°F)	Maximum (°F)
AC-0.6, AC-1.5, AC-3	200–300	350	350
AC-5, AC-10	275–350	350	350
AC-5 w/2% SBR, AC-10 w/2% SBR, AC-15P, AC-20-5TR	300–375	375	360
RC-250	125–180	200	200
RC-800	170–230	260	260
RC-3000	215–275	285	285
MC-30, AE-P	70–150	175	175
MC-250	125–210	240	240
MC-800, SCM I, SCM II	175–260	275	275
MC-3000, MC-2400L	225–275	290	290
HFRS-2, MS-2, CRS-2, CRS-2H, HFRS-2P, CRS-2P, CMS-2, CMS-2S, AES-300, AES-300S, AES-150P, AES-300P	120–160	180	180
SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H, PCE, EAP&T, SS-1P, RS-1P, CRS-1P, CSS-1P, recycling agent, emulsified recycling agent, polymer mod AE crack sealant	50–130	140	140
PG binders	275–350	350	350
Rubber asphalt crack sealers (Class A, Class B)	350–375	400	–
A-R binders Types I, II, and III	325–425	425	425

5. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The work performed, materials furnished, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals will not be measured or paid for directly but is subsidiary or is included in payment for other pertinent Items.

ITEM 310
PRIME COAT

310.1. Description. Prepare and treat existing or newly constructed surface with a bituminous material. Apply blotter material as required.

310.2. Materials.

A. Bituminous. Use material of the type and grade shown on the plans in accordance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions."

B. Blotter. Unless otherwise shown on the plans or approved, use either base course sweepings obtained from cleaning the base or native sand as blotter materials.

310.3. Equipment. Provide applicable equipment in accordance with Article 316.3, "Equipment."

310.4. Construction.

A. General. Apply the mixture when the air temperature is 60°F and above, or above 50°F and rising. Measure the air temperature in the shade away from artificial heat. The Engineer will determine when weather conditions are suitable for application.

Do not permit traffic; hauling, or placement of subsequent courses over freshly constructed prime coats. Maintain the primed surface until placement of subsequent courses or acceptance of the work.

B. Surface Preparation. Prepare the surface by sweeping or other approved methods. When directed, before applying bituminous material, lightly sprinkle the surface with water to control dust and ensure absorption.

C. Application.

1 Bituminous. The Engineer will select the application temperature within the limits recommended in Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions." Apply material within 15°F of the selected temperature.

Distribute the material smoothly and evenly at the rate selected by the Engineer. When directed, roll the freshly applied prime coat with a pneumatic-tire roller to ensure penetration.

2. Blotter. Spread blotter material before allowing traffic to use a primed surface. When "Prime Coat and “Blotter” is shown on the plans as a bid item, apply blotter material to primed surface at the rate shown in the plans or as directed. When "Prime Coat" is shown on the plans as a bid item, apply blotter to spot locations or as directed to accommodate traffic movement through the work area. Remove blotter material before placing the surface. Dispose of blotter material according to applicable state and federal requirements.

ITEM 340
DENSE-GRADED HOT-MIX ASPHALT (METHOD)

340.1. Description. Construct a pavement layer composed of a compacted, dense-graded mixture of aggregate and asphalt binder mixed hot in a mixing plant,
340.2. Materials. Furnish uncontaminated materials of uniform quality that meet the requirements of the plans and specifications.

Notify the Engineer of all material sources. Notify the Engineer before changing any material source or formulation. When the Contractor makes a source or formulation change, the Engineer will verify that the requirements of this Item are mat and may require a new laboratory mixture design, trial batch, or both. The Engineer may sample and test project materials at any time during the project to verify compliance.

A. Aggregate. Furnish aggregates from sources that conform to the requirements shown in Table 1, and as specified in this Section, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide aggregate stockpiles that meet the definition in this Section for either coarse aggregate or fine aggregate. When reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP) is allowed by plan note, provide RAP stockpiles in accordance with this Section. Aggregate from RAP is not required to meet Table 1 requirements unless otherwise shown on the plans. Supply mechanically crushed gravel or stone aggregates that meet the definitions in Tex-100-E. The Engineer will designate the plant or the quarry as the sampling location. Samples must be from materials produced for the project. The Engineer will establish the surface aggregate classification (SAC) and perform Los Angeles abrasion, magnesium sulfate soundness, and Micro-Deval tests.
Perform all other aggregate quality tests listed in Table 1. Document all test results on the mixture design report. The Engineer may perform tests on independent or split samples to verify Contractor test results. Stockpile aggregates for each source and type separately. Determine aggregate gradations for mixture design and production testing based on the washed sieve analysis given in Tex-200-F, Part II. Do not add material to an approved stockpile from sources that do not meet the aggregate quality requirements of the Department's *Bituminous Rated Source Quality Catalog* (BRSQC) unless otherwise approved.

1. Coarse Aggregate. Coarse aggregate stockpiles must have no more than 20% material passing the No, 8 sieve. Provide aggregates from sources listed in the BRSQC. Provide aggregate from nonlisted sources only when tested by the Engineer and approved before use. Allow 30 calendar days for the Engineer to sample, test, and report results for nonlisted sources.

Provide coarse aggregate with at least the minimum SAC shown on the plans. SAC requirements apply only to aggregates used on the surface of travel lanes, unless otherwise shown on the plans. The SAC for sources on the Department's AQMP is listed in the BRSQC.

Class B aggregate meeting all other requirements in Table 1 may be blended with a Class A aggregate in order to meet requirements for Class A materials. When blending Class A and B aggregates to meet a Class A requirement, ensure that at least 50% by weight of the material retained on the No. 4 sieve comes from the Class A aggregate source. Blend by volume if the bulk specific gravities of the Class A and B aggregates differ by more than 0.300, When blending, do not use Class C or D aggregates, For blending purposes, coarse aggregate from RAP will be considered as Class B aggregate.

2. RAP. RAP is salvaged, milled, pulverized, broken, or crushed asphalt pavement. Crush or break RAP so that 100% of the particles pass the 2-in, sieve.

RAP from either Contractor- or Department-owned sources, including RAP generated during the project, is permitted only when shown on the plans, Department-owned RAP, if allowed for use, will be available at the location shown on the plans. When RAP is used, determine asphalt content and gradation for mixture design purposes, Perform other tests on RAP when shown on the plans.

When RAP is allowed by plan note, use no more than 30% RAP in Type A or B mixtures unless otherwise shown on the plans. For all other mixtures, use no more than 20% RAP unless otherwise shown on the plans.
Do not use RAP contaminated with dirt or other objectionable materials. Do not use the RAP if the decantation value exceeds 5% and the plasticity index is greater than 8. Test the stockpiled RAP for decantation in accordance with the laboratory method given in Tex-406-A, Part I. Determine the plasticity index using Tex-106-E if the decantation value exceeds 5%. The decantation and plasticity index requirements do not apply to RAP samples with asphalt removed by extraction.

Do not intermingle Contractor-owned RAP stockpiles with Department-owned RAP stockpiles. Remove unused Contractor owned RAP material from the project site upon completion of the project, Return unused Department-owned RAP to the designated stockpile location.

3. Fine Aggregate. Fine aggregates consist of manufactured sands, screenings, and field sands. Fine aggregate stockpiles must meet the gradation requirements in Table 2. Supply fine aggregates that are free from organic impurities. The Engineer may test the fine aggregate in accordance with Tex-408-A to verify the material is free from organic impurities. At most 15% of the total aggregate may be field sand or other uncrushed Fine aggregate. With the exception of field sand, use fine aggregate from coarse aggregate sources that meet the requirements shown in Table 1, unless otherwise approved. If 10% or more of the stockpile is retained on the No. 4 sieve, test the stockpile and verify that it meets the requirements in Table 1 for coarse aggregate angularity (Tex-460-A) and flat and elongated particles (Tex-280-F).

Table 1
Aggregate Quality Requirements

Property	Test Method	Requirement
Coarse Aggregate		
SAC	AQMP	As shown on plans
Deleterious material, %, max	Tex-217-F, Part I	1.5
Decantation, %, max	Tex-217-F, Part II	1.5
Micro-Deval abrasion, %, max	Tex-461-A	Note 1
Los Angeles abrasion, %, max	Tex-410-A	40
Magnesium sulfate soundness, 5 cycles, %, max	Tex-411-A	30[2]
Coarse aggregate angularity, 2 crushed faces, %,	Tex 460-A, Part I	85[3]
Flat and elongated particles 5:1, %, max	Tex-280-F	10
Fine Aggregate		
Linear shrinkage, %, max	Tex-107-E I	3
Combined Aggregate[4]		
Sand equivalent, %, min	Tex-203-F	45

1. Not used for acceptance purposes. Used by the Engineer as an indicator of the need for further investigation.
2. Unless otherwise shown on the plans.
3. Unless otherwise shown on the plans. Only applies to crushed gravel,
4. Aggregates, without mineral filler, RAP, or additives, combined as used in the job-mix formula (IMF).

Table 2
Gradation Requirements for Fine Aggregate

Sieve Size	% Passing by Weight or Volume
3/8'	100
#8	70-100
#200	0-30

B. Mineral Filler. Mineral filler consists of finely divided mineral matter such as agricultural lime, crusher fines, hydrated lime, cement, or fly ash. Mineral filler is allowed unless otherwise shown on the plans. Do not use more than 2% hydrated lime or cement, unless otherwise shown on the plans. The plans may require or disallow specific mineral fillers. When used, provide mineral filler that:

- is sufficiently dry, free-flowing, and free from clumps and foreign matter;
- does not exceed 3% linear shrinkage when tested in accordance with Tex-107-E; and
- meets the gradation requirements in Table 3.

Table 3
Gradation Requirements for Mineral Filler

Sieve Size	% Passing by Weight or Volume
#8	100
#200	55-100

C. Baghouse Fines. Fines collected by the baghouse or other dust-collecting equipment may be reintroduced into the mixing drum.
D, Asphalt Binder. Furnish the type and grade of performance-graded (PG) asphalt binder specified on the plans in accordance with Section 300.2.7, "Performance-Graded Binders."
E. Tack Coat. Unless otherwise shown on the plans or approved, furnish CSS-1H, SS-1H, or a PG binder with a minimum high-temperature grade of PG 58 for tack coat binder in accordance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions."
Do not dilute emulsified asphalts at the terminal, in the field, or at any other location before use. If required, verify that emulsified asphalt proposed for use meets the minimum residual asphalt percentage specified in Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions."

The Engineer will obtain at least 1 sample of the tack coat binder per project and test it to verify compliance with Item 300. The Engineer will obtain the sample from the asphalt distributor immediately before use.

F. Additives. When shown on the plans, use the type and rate of additive specified. Other additives that facilitate mixing or improve the quality of the mixture may be allowed when approved.
If lime or a liquid antistripping agent is used, add in accordance with Item 301, "Asphalt Antistripping Agents." Do not add lime directly into the mixing drum of any plant where lime is removed through the exhaust stream unless the plant has a baghouse or dust collection system that reintroduces the lime back into the drum.

340.3. Equipment. Provide required or necessary equipment in accordance with Item 320, "Equipment for Asphalt Concrete Pavement."

340.4. Construction. Design, produce, store, transport, place, and compact the specified paving mixture in accordance with the requirements of this Item, Unless otherwise shown on the plans, provide the mix design, The Department will perform quality assurance (QA) testing. Provide quality control (QC) testing as needed to meet the requirements of this Item.

A. Mixture Design.
1. Design Requirements. Use a Level H specialist certified by a Department-approved hot-mix asphalt certification program to develop the mixture design. Have the Level II specialist sign the design documents. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, use the typical weight design example given in Tex-204-F, Part I, to design a mixture meeting the requirements listed in Tables 1 through 6. Use an approved laboratory to perform the Hamburg Wheel test and provide results with the mixture design, or provide the laboratory mixture and request that the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test. The Construction Division maintains a list of approved laboratories, Furnish the Engineer with representative samples of all materials used in the mixture design. The Engineer will verify the mixture design. If the design cannot be verified by the Engineer, furnish another mixture design.

The Contractor may submit a new mixture design at anytime during the project, The Engineer will approve all mixture designs before the Contractor can begin production.
Provide the Engineer with a mixture design report using Department-provided software. Include the following items in the report:

- the combined aggregate gradation, source, specific gravity, and percent of each material used;
- results of all applicable tests;
- the mixing and molding temperatures;
- the signature of the Level II person or persons who performed the design;
- the date the mixture design was performed, and
- a unique identification number for the mixture design.

Table 4
Master Gradation Bands (% Passing by Weight or Volume)
and Volumetric Properties

Sieve Size	A Coarse Base	B Fine Base	C Coarse Surface	D Fine Surface	F Fine Mixture
1-1/2"	980-100.0	-	-	-	_
1"	78.0-94.0	98.0-100.0	-	-	-
3/4"	64.0-85.0	84.0-98.0	95,0-100.0	-	-
1/2"	50.0-70.0	-		98.0-1000	-
3/8"	-	60.0-80.0	70.0-85.0	85.0--100,0	98.0-100.0
#4	30.0-50.0	40.0-60.0	43.0-63,0	50.0-70.0	80.0-86.0
#8	22.0-36.0	29.0-43 0	32.0-44.0	35.0-46.0	38.0-48.0
#30	8.0-23.0	13.0-28.0	14.0-28.0	15.0-29.0	12.0-27.4
#50	3.0-19,0	6.0-20.0	7.0-21.0	7.0-20.0	6.0-19.0
#200	2.0-7.0	2.0-7.0	2.0-7.0	2.0-7,0	2.0-7.0
Design VMA[F], % Minimum					
-	**12.0**	**13.0**	**14.0**	**15.0**	**16.0**
Plant-Produced 'VMA, % Minimum					
-	11.0	12.0	13.0	14.0	15.0

1. Voids in Mineral Aggregates.

Table 5
Laboratory Mixture Design Properties

Property	Test Method	Requirement
Target laboratory-molded density, %	Tex-207-F	96.0[1]
Tensile strength (dry), psi (molded to 93% ±1% density)	Tex-226-F	85-200[2]
Boil test[3]	Tex-530-C	-

1. Unless otherwise shown on the plans.
2. May exceed 200 psi when approved and may be waived when approved.
3. Used to establish baseline for comparison to production results, May be waived when approved.

Table 6
Hamburg Wheel Test Requirements

High-Temperature Binder Grade	Minimum IS of Passes[2] @ 0.5" Rut Depth, Tested @ 122°F
PG 64 or lower	10,000
PG 70	15,000
PG 76 or higher	20,000

1. Tested in accordance with Tex-242-F.
2. May be decreased or waived when shown on the plans.

B. Job-Mix Formula Approval. The job-mix formula (JMF) is the combined aggregate gradation and target asphalt percentage used to establish target values for mixture production. JMF is the original laboratory mixture design used to produce the trial batch, The Engineer and the Contractor will verify JMF based on plant-produced mixture from the trial batch unless otherwise approved. The Engineer may accept an existing mixture design previously used on a Department project and may waive the trial batch to verify JMF. If the JMF is not verified by the Engineer from the trial batch, adjust the JMF or redesign the mix and produce as many trial batches as necessary to verify the JMF.

Provide the Engineer with split samples of the mixtures and blank samples used to determine the ignition oven correction factors. The Engineer will determine the aggregate and asphalt correction factors from the ignition oven using Tex-236-F.

The Engineer will use a Texas gyratory compactor calibrated in accordance with Tex-914-F in molding production samples.

The Engineer will perform Tex-530-C and retain the tested sample for comparison purposes during production. The Engineer may waive the requirement for the boil test.

C. JMF Field Adjustments. Produce a mixture of uniform composition closely conforming to the approved IMF.

If, during initial days of production, the Contractor or Engineer determines that adjustments to the JMF are necessary to achieve the specified requirements, or to more nearly match the aggregate production, the Engineer may allow adjustment of the IMF within the tolerances of Table 7 without a laboratory redesign of the mixture.

The Engineer will adjust the asphalt content to maintain desirable laboratory density near the optimum value while achieving other mix requirements.

Table 7
Operational Tolerances

Description	Test Method	Allowable Difference from JMF Target
Individual % retained for #8 sieve and larger	Tex-200-F or Tex-236-F	±5.0[1]
Individual % retained for sieves smaller than #8 and larger than #200		±3,0[1]
% passing the #200 sieve		±2.0[1]
Asphalt content, %	Tex-236-F	±0.3[1]
Laboratory-molded density, %	Tex-207-F	±1.0
VMA, %, min		Note 2

1. When within these tolerances, mixture production gradations may fail outside the master grading limits; however, the percent passing the #200 sieve will be considered out of tolerance when outside the master grading limits.
2. Test and verify that Table 4 requirements are met.

D. Production Operations. Perform a new trial batch when the plant or plant location is changed. The Engineer may suspend production for noncompliance with this Item. Take corrective action and obtain approval to proceed after any production suspension for noncompliance.

1. Operational Tolerances. During production, do not exceed the operational tolerances in Table 7. Stop production if testing indicates tolerances are exceeded on:

- 3 consecutive tests on any individual sieve,
- 4 consecutive tests on any of the sieves, or
- 2 consecutive tests on asphalt content.

Begin production only when test results or other information indicate, to the satisfaction of the Engineer, that the next mixture produced will be within Table 7 tolerances.

2. Storage and Heating of Materials. Do not heat the asphalt binder above the temperatures specified in Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions" or outside the manufacturer's recommended values. On a daily basis, provide the Engineer with the records of asphalt binder and hot-mix asphalt discharge temperatures in accordance with Item 320, "Equipment for Asphalt Concrete Pavement." Unless otherwise approved, do not store mixture for a period long enough to affect the quality of the mixture, nor in any case longer than 12 hr.

3. Mixing and Discharge of Materials. Notify the Engineer of the target discharge temperature and produce the mixture within 25°F of the target. Monitor the temperature of the material in the truck before shipping to ensure that it does not exceed 350°F. The Department will not pay for or allow placement of any mixture produced at more than 350°F. Control the mixing time and temperature so that substantially all moisture is removed from the mixture before discharging from the plant.

E. Hauling Operations. Before use, clean all truck beds to ensure mixture is not contaminated. When a release agent is necessary to coat truck beds, use a release agent on the approved list maintained by the Construction Division.

F. Placement Operations. Prepare the surface by removing raised pavement markers and objectionable material such as moisture, dirt, sand, leaves, and other loose impediments from the surface before placing mixture. Remove vegetation from pavement edges. Place the mixture to meet the typical section requirements and produce a smooth, finished surface with a uniform appearance and texture. Offset longitudinal joints of successive courses of hot mix by at least 6 in. Place mixture so longitudinal joints on the surface course coincide with lane lines, or as directed. Ensure that all finished surfaces will drain properly, Place mixture within the compacted lift thickness shown in Table 8, unless otherwise shown on the plans or allowed.

Table 8
Compacted Lift Thickness and Required Core Height

Mixture Type	Compacted Lift Thickness	
	Minimum (in.)	Maximum (in.)
A	3.00	6.00
B	2.50	5.00
C	2.00	4.00
D	1.50	3.00
F	1.25	2.50

1. **Weather Conditions.** Place mixture when the roadway surface temperature is 60°F or higher unless otherwise approved. Measure the roadway surface temperature with a handheld infrared thermometer. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, place mixtures only when weather conditions and moisture conditions of the roadway surface are suitable in the opinion of the Engineer.

2. **Tack** Coat. Clean the surface before placing the tack coat. Unless otherwise approved, apply tack coat uniformly at the rate directed by the Engineer. The Engineer will set the rate between 0.04 and 0.10 gal, of residual asphalt per square yard of surface area. Apply a thin, uniform tack coat to all contact surfaces of curbs, structures, and all joints. Prevent splattering of tack coat when placed adjacent to curb, gutter, and structures. Roll the tack coat with a pneumatic tire roller when directed. The Engineer may use Tex-243-F to
verify that the tack coat has adequate adhesive properties. The Engineer may suspend paving operations until there is adequate adhesion.

G. Lay-Down Operations.
1. Minimum Mixture Placement Temperatures. Use Table 9 for suggested minimum mixture placement temperatures.
2. Windrow Operations. When hot mix is placed in windrows, operate windrow pickup equipment so that substantially all the mixture deposited on the roadbed is picked up and loaded into the paver.

Table 9
Suggested Minimum Mixture Placement Temperature

High-Temperature Binder Grade	Minimum Placement Temperature (Before Entering Paver)
PG 64 or lower	260°F
PG 70	270°F
PG 76	280°F
PG 82 or higher	290°F

H. Compaction. Use air void control unless ordinary compaction control is specified on the plans, Avoid displacement of the mixture. If displacement occurs, correct to the satisfaction of the Engineer, Ensure pavement is fully compacted before allowing rollers to stand on the pavement. Unless otherwise directed, use only water or an approved release agent on rollers, tamps, and other compaction equipment. Keep diesel, gasoline, oil, grease, and other foreign matter off the mixture. Unless otherwise directed, operate vibratory rollers in static mode when not compacting, when changing directions, or when the plan depth of the pavement mat is less than 1-½ in.

Use tamps to thoroughly compact the edges of the pavement along curbs, headers, and similar structures and in locations that will not allow thorough compaction with the rollers. The Engineer may require rolling with a trench roller on widened areas, in trenches, and in other limited areas.

Allow the compacted pavement to cool to 160°F or lower before opening to traffic unless otherwise directed. When directed, sprinkle the finished mat with water or limewater to expedite opening the roadway to traffic.

1. Air Void Control. Compact dense-graded hot-mix asphalt to contain from 5% to 9% in-place air voids. Do not increase the asphalt content of the mixture to reduce pavement air voids.

a. Rollers. Furnish the type, size, and number or rollers required for compaction, as approved. Use a pneumatic-tire roller to seal the surface, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use additional rollers as required to remove any roller marks.

b. Air Void Determination. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, obtain 2 roadway specimens at each location selected by the Engineer for in-place air void determination. The Engineer will measure air voids in accordance with Tex-207-F and Tex-227-F. Before drying to a constant weight, cores may be predried using a Corelok or similar vacuum device to remove excess moisture. The Engineer will use the average air void content of the 2 cores to calculate the in-place air voids at the selected location.

c. Air Voids Out of Range. If the in-place air void content in the compacted mixture is below 5% or greater than 9%, change the production and placement operations to bring the in-place air void content within requirements. The Engineer may suspend production until the in-place air void content is brought to the required level, and may require a test section as described in Section 340.4,H.1.d, "Test Section."

d. Test Section. Construct a test section of I lane-width and at most 0.2 mi. in length to demonstrate that compaction to between 5% and 9% in-place air voids can be obtained. Continue this procedure until a test section with 5% to 9% inplace air voids can be produced. The Engineer will allow only 2 test sections per day. When a test section producing satisfactory in-place air void content is placed, resume full production.

2. Ordinary Compaction Control. Furnish the type, size, and number or rollers required for compaction, as approved. Furnish at least 1 medium pneumatic-tire roller (minimum 12-ton weight). Use the control strip method given in Tex-207-F, Part IV, to establish rolling patterns that achieve maximum compaction.

Follow the selected rolling pattern unless changes that affect compaction occur in the mixture or placement conditions. When such changes occur, establish a new rolling pattern. Compact the pavement to meet the requirements of the plans and specifications.

When rolling with the 3-wheel, tandem or vibratory rollers, start by first rolling the joint with the adjacent pavement and then continue by rolling longitudinally at the sides. Proceed toward the center of the pavement, overlapping on successive trips by at least 1 ft., unless otherwise directed. Make alternate trips of the roller slightly different in length. On superelevated curves, begin rolling at the low side and progress toward the high side unless otherwise directed.

I. Irregularities. Immediately take corrective action if surface irregularities, including but not limited to segregation, rutting, raveling, flushing, fat spots, mat slippage, color, texture, roller marks, tears, gouges, streaks, or uncoated aggregate particles, are detected. The Engineer may suspend production or placement operations until the problem is corrected.

At the expense of the Contractor and to the satisfaction of the Engineer, remove and replace any mixture that does not bond to the existing pavement or that has other surface irregularities identified above.

J. Ride Quality. Use Surface Test Type A to evaluate ride quality in accordance with Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces," unless otherwise shown on the plans.

ITEM 360

CONCRETE PAVEMENT

360.1. Description. Construct hydraulic cement concrete pavement with or without curbs on the concrete pavement.

360.2. Materials.

A. Hydraulic Cement Concrete. Provide hydraulic cement concrete in accordance with Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete," except that strength over-design is not required. Provide Class P concrete designed to meet a minimum average flexural strength of 570 psi or a minimum average compressive strength of 3,500 psi at 7 days or a minimum average flexural strength of 680 psi or a minimum average compressive strength of 4,400 psi at 28 days. Test in accordance with Tex-448-A or Tex-418-A,

When shown on the plans or allowed, provide Class HES concrete for very early opening of small pavement areas or leave-outs to traffic. Design Class HES to meet the requirements of Class P and a minimum average flexural strength of 400 psi or a minimum average compressive strength of 2,600 psi in 24 hr., unless other early strength and time requirements are shown on the plans or allowed. No strength over design is required. Type III cement is allowed for Class RES concrete.

Use Class A or P concrete for curbs that are placed separately from the pavement. Provide concrete that is workable and cohesive, possesses satisfactory finishing qualities, and conforms to the mix design and mix design slump.

13. Reinforcing Steel. Provide Grade 60 deformed steel for bar reinforcement in accordance with Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel." Provide approved positioning and supporting devices (baskets and chairs) capable of securing and holding the reinforcing steel in proper position before and during paving. Provide corrosion protection when shown on the plans.

1. Dowels. Provide smooth, straight dowels of the size shown on the plans, free of burrs, and conforming to the requirements of Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel," Coat dowels with a thin film of grease or other approved de-bonding material. Provide dowel caps on the lubricated end of each dowel bar used in an expansion joint. Provide dowel caps filled with a soft compressible material with enough range of movement to allow complete closure of the expansion joint.

2. Tie Bars. Provide straight deformed steel tie bars, Provide either multiple-piece tie bars or single-piece tie bars as shown on the plans. Provide multiple-piece tie bars composed of 2 pieces of deformed reinforcing steel with a coupling capable of developing a minimum tensile strength of 125% of the design yield strength of the deformed steel when tensile-tested in the assembled configuration. Provide a minimum length of 33 diameters of the deformed steel in each piece, Use multiple-piece tie bars from the list of "Prequalified Multiple Piece Tie Bar Producers" maintained by the Construction Division, or submit samples for testing in accordance with Tex-711-I,

C. **Curing Materials.** Provide Type 2 membrane curing compound conforming to DMS-4650, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants," Provide SS-1 emulsified asphalt conforming to Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions," for concrete pavement to be overlayed with asphalt concrete under this Contract unless otherwise shown on the plans or approved. Provide materials for other methods of curing conforming to the requirements of Item 420, "Concrete Structures."

D. **Epoxy.** Provide Type III epoxy in accordance with DMS-6100, "Epoxies and Adhesives," for installing all drilled-in reinforcing steel.

E. **Evaporation Retardant.** Provide evaporation retardant conforming to DMS-4650, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants."

F. **Joint Sealants and Fillers.** Provide Class 5 or Class 8 joint-sealant materials and fillers unless otherwise shown on the plans or approved and other sealant materials of the size, shape, and type shown on the plans in accordance with DMS-6310, "Joint Sealants and Fillers."

360.3. Equipment. Furnish and maintain all equipment in good working condition. Use measuring, mixing, and delivery equipment conforming to the requirements of item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete," Obtain approval for other equipment used.

A. Placing, Consolidating, and Finishing Equipment. Provide approved self-propelled paving equipment that uniformly distributes the concrete with minimal segregation and provides a smooth machine-finished consolidated concrete pavement conforming to plan line and grade, Provide an approved automatic grade control system on slip-forming equipment. Provide approved mechanically operated finishing floats capable of producing a uniformly smooth pavement surface. Provide equipment capable of providing a fine, light water fog mist.

Provide mechanically operated vibratory equipment capable of adequately consolidating the concrete. Provide immersion vibrators on the paving equipment at sufficiently close intervals to provide uniform vibration and consolidation of the concrete over the entire width and depth of the pavement and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Provide immersion vibrator units that operate at a frequency in air of at least 8,000 cycles per minute. Provide enough hand-operated immersion vibrators for timely and proper consolidation of the concrete along forms, at joints and in areas not covered by other vibratory equipment. Surface vibrators may be used to supplement equipment-mounted immersion vibrators. Provide tachometers to verify the proper operation of all vibrators.

For small or irregular areas or when approved, the paving equipment described in this Section is not required.

D. Forming Equipment.

1. **Pavement Forms.** Provide metal side forms of sufficient cross-section, strength, and rigidity to support the paving equipment and resist the impact and vibration of the operation without visible springing or settlement. Use forms that are free from detrimental kinks, bends, or warps that could affect ride quality or alignment. Provide flexible or curved metal or wood forms for curves of 100-ft. radius or less.
2. **Curb Forms.** Provide curb forms for separately placed curbs that are not slipformed that conform to the requirements of Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter, and Combined Curb and Gutter."

C. Reinforcing Steel Inserting Equipment. Provide inserting equipment that accurately inserts and positions reinforcing steel in the plastic concrete parallel to the profile grade and horizontal alignment in accordance to plan details.

D. Texturing Equipment.

1. Carpet Drag. Provide a carpet drag mounted on a work bridge or a moveable support system. Provide a single piece of carpet of sufficient transverse length to span the full width of the pavement being placed and adjustable so that a sufficient longitudinal length of carpet is in contact with the concrete being placed to produce the desired texture. Obtain approval to vary the length and width of the carpet to accommodate specific applications. Use an artificial grass-type carpet having a molded polyethylene pile face with a blade length of 5/8 in, to 1 in., a minimum weight of 70 oz. per square yard, and a strong, durable, rot-resistant backing material bonded to the facing.

2. **Timing Equipment.** Provide a self-propelled transverse metal tine device equipped with 4-in, to 6-in, steel tines and with crosssection approximately 1132 in, thick by 1112 in. wide, spaced at 1 in., center-to-center. Hand-operated timing equipment that produces an equivalent texture may be used only on small or irregularly shaped areas or, when permitted, in emergencies due to equipment breakdown.

E. Curing Equipment. Provide a self-propelled machine for applying membrane curing compound using mechanically pressurized spraying equipment with atomizing nozzles. Provide equipment and controls that maintain the required uniform rate of application over the entire paving area. Provide curing equipment that is independent of all other equipment when production rates are such that the first application of membrane curing compound cannot be accomplished immediately after texturing and after free moisture has disappeared. Hand-operated pressurized spraying equipment with atomizing nozzles may only be used on small or irregular areas or, when permitted, in emergencies due to equipment breakdown.

F. Sawing Equipment. Provide power-driven concrete saws to saw the joints shown on the plans. Provide standby power-driven concrete saws during concrete sawing operations. Provide adequate illumination for nighttime sawing.

G. Grinding Equipment. When required, provide self-propelled powered grinding equipment that is specifically designed to smooth and texture concrete pavement using circular diamond blades. Provide equipment with automatic grade control capable of grinding at least a 3-ft. width longitudinally in each pass without damaging the concrete.

H. Testing Equipment. Provide testing equipment regardless of jobcontrol testing responsibilities in accordance with Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete," unless otherwise shown in the plans or specified.

1. Coring Equipment. When required, provide coring equipment capable of extracting cores in accordance with the requirements of Tex-424-A.

J. Miscellaneous Equipment. Furnish both 10-ft. and 15-ft. steel or magnesium long-handled standard straightedges, Furnish enough work bridges, long enough to span the pavement, for finishing and inspection operations. Furnish date stencils to impress pavement placement dates into the fresh concrete, with numerals approximately 2 in. high by 1 in. wide by 114 in. deep.

360.4. Construction. Obtain approval for adjustments to plan grade-line to maintain thickness over minor subgrade or base high spots while maintaining clearances and drainage. Maintain subgrade or base in a smooth, clean, compacted condition in conformity with the required section and established grade until the pavement concrete is placed, Keep subgrade or base damp with water sufficiently in advance of placing pavement concrete. Adequately light the active work areas for all nighttime operations. Provide and maintain tools and materials to perform testing.

A Paving and Quality Control Plan. Submit a paving and quality control plan for approval before beginning pavement construction operations, Include details of all operations in the concrete paving process, including longitudinal construction joint layout, sequencing, curing, lighting, early opening, leave-outs, sawing, inspection, testing, construction methods, other details and description of all equipment. List certified personnel performing the testing. Submit revisions to the paving and quality control plan for approval,

B. Job-Control Testing. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, perform all fresh and hardened concrete job-control testing at the specified frequency. Provide job-control testing personnel meeting the requirements of Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete," Provide and maintain testing equipment, including strength testing equipment at a location acceptable to the Engineer. Use of a commercial laboratory is acceptable. Maintain all testing equipment calibrated in accordance with pertinent test methods. Make strength-testing equipment available to the Engineer for verification testing,

Provide the Engineer the opportunity to witness all tests. The Engineer may require a retest if not given the opportunity to witness. Furnish a copy of all test results to the Engineer daily. Check the first few concrete loads for slump, air, and temperature on start-up production days to check for concrete conformance and consistency, Sample and prepare strength test specimens (2 specimens per test) on the first day of production and for each 3,000 sq. yd. or fraction thereof of concrete pavement thereafter, Prepare at least 1 set of strength-test specimens for each production day. Perform slump, air, and temperature tests each time strength specimens are made. Monitor concrete temperature to ensure that concrete is consistently within the temperature requirements, The Engineer will direct random job-control sampling and testing, Immediately investigate and take corrective action as approved if any Contractor test result, including tests performed for verification purposes, does not meet specification requirements.

When job-control testing by the Contractor is waived by the plans, the Engineer will perform the testing; however, this does not waive the Contractor's responsibility for providing materials and work in accordance with this Item.

1. **Job-Control Strength.** Unless otherwise shown on the plans or permitted by the Engineer, use 7-day job-control concrete strength testing in accordance with Tex-448-A or Tex-418-A,

   For 7-day job-control by flexural strength, use a flexural strength of 520 psi or a lower job-control strength value proven to meet a 28-day flexural strength of 680 psi as correlated in accordance with Tex-427-A. For 7-day job-control by compressive strength, use a compressive strength of 3,200 psi or a lower job-control strength value proven to meet a 28-day compressive strength of 4,400 psi as correlated in accordance with Tex-427-A.

   Job control of concrete strength may be correlated to an age other than 7 days in accordance with Tex-427-A when approved, Job control strength of Class I S S concrete is based on the required strength and time.

   When a job-control concrete strength test value is more than 10% below the required job-control strength or when 3 consecutive jobcontrol strength values fall below the required job-control strength, investigate the strength test procedures, the quality of materials, the concrete production operations, and other possible problem areas to determine the cause. Take necessary action to correct the problem, including redesign of the concrete mix if needed. The Engineer may suspend concrete paving if the Contractor is unable to identify, document, and correct the cause of low strength test values in a timely manner. If any job-control strength is more than 15% below the required job-control strength, the Engineer will evaluate the structural adequacy of the pavements. When directed, remove and replace pavements found to be structurally inadequate at no additional cost.
2. **Split-Sample Verification Testing.** Perform split-sample verification testing with the Engineer on random samples taken and split by the Engineer at a rate of at least 1 for every 10 job control samples, The Engineer will evaluate the results of split sample verification testing. Immediately investigate and take corrective action as approved when results of split-sample verification testing differ more than the allowable differences shown in Table 1, or when the average of 10 job-control strength results and the Engineer's split-sample strength result differ by more than 10%.

Table 1
Verification Testin[g] Limits

Test Method	Allowable Differences
Temperature, Tex-422-A	2°F
Slump, Tex-415-A	1 in.
Air content, Tex-414-A or Tex-416-A	1 %
Flexural strength, Tex-448-A	19%
Compressive strength, Tex-418-A	10%

C. **Reinforcing Steel and Joint Assemblies.** Accurately place and secure in position all reinforcing steel as shown on the plans. Place dowels at mid-depth of the pavement slab, parallel to the surface. Place dowels for transverse contraction joints parallel to the pavement edge. Tolerances for location and alignment of dowels will be shown on the plans. Stagger the longitudinal reinforcement splices to avoid having more than 113 of the splices within a 2-ft. longitudinal length of each lane of the pavement. Use multiple-piece tie bars or drill and epoxy grout tie bars at longitudinal construction joints. Verify that tie bars that are drilled and epoxy into concrete at longitudinal construction joints develop a pullout resistance equal to a minimum of 3/4 of the yield strength of the steel after 7 days. Test 15 bars using ASTM E 488, except that alternate approved equipment may be used. All 15 tested bars must meet the required pullout strength. If any of the test results do not meet the required minimum pullout strength, perform corrective measures to provide equivalent pullout resistance. Repair damage from testing. Acceptable corrective measures include but are not limited to installation of additional or longer tie bars.

1. **Manual Placement,** Secure reinforcing bars at alternate intersections with wire ties or locking support chairs, Tie all splices with wire.
2. **Mechanical Placement.** If mechanical placement of reinforcement results in steel misalignment or improper location, poor concrete consolidation, or other inadequacies, complete the work using manual methods,

D. Joints. Install joints as shown on the plans. Joint sealants are not required on concrete pavement that is to be overlaid with asphaltic materials. Clean and seal joints in accordance with Item 438, "Cleaning and Sealing Joints and Cracks (Rigid Pavement and Bridge Decks)." Repair excessive spalling of the joint saw groove using an approved method before installing the sealant. Seal all joints before opening the pavement to all traffic. When placing of concrete is stopped, install a rigid transverse bulkhead, accurately notched for the reinforcing steel and shaped accurately to the cross-section of the pavement.

1. **Placing Reinforcement at Joints.** Where the plans require an assembly of parts at pavement joints, complete and place the assembly at the required location and elevation with all parts rigidly secured in the required position. Accurately notch joint materials for the reinforcing steel.
2. **Transverse Construction Joints,**

a. **Continuously Reinforced Concrete Pavement (CRCP).** Install additional longitudinal reinforcement through the bulkhead when shown on the plans. Protect the reinforcing steel immediately beyond the construction joint from damage, vibration, and impact.

b. Concrete Pavement Contraction Design (CPCD). When the placing of concrete is intentionally stopped, install and rigidly secure a complete joint assembly and bulkhead in the planned transverse contraction joint location. When the placing of concrete is unintentionally stopped, install a transverse construction joint either at a planned transverse contraction joint location or mid-slab between planned transverse contraction joints. For mid-slab construction joints, install tie bars of the size and spacing used in the longitudinal joints.

c. Curb Joints. Provide joints in the curb of the same type and location as the adjacent pavement. Use expansion joint material of the same thickness, type, and quality required for the pavement and of the section shown for the curb. Extend expansion joints through the curb. Construct curb joints at all transverse pavement joints. For non-monolithic curbs, place reinforcing steel into the plastic concrete pavement as shown on the plans unless otherwise approved. Form or saw the weakened plane joint across the full width of concrete pavement and through the monolithic curbs. Construct curb joints in accordance with Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter, and Combined Curb and Gutter."

E. **Placing and Removing Forms.** Use clean and oiled forms. Secure forms on a base or firm subgrade that is accurately graded and that provides stable support without deflection and movement by form riding equipment. Pin every form at least at the middle and near each end. Tightly join and key form sections together to prevent relative displacement.

Set side forms far enough in advance of concrete placement to permit inspection. Check conformity of the grade, alignment, and stability of forms immediately before placing concrete, and make all necessary corrections. Use a straightedge or other approved method to test the top of forms to ensure that the ride quality requirements for the completed pavement will be met. Stop paving operations if forms settle or deflect more than 1/8 in. under finishing operations. Reset forms to line and grade, and refinish the concrete surface to correct grade.

Avoid damage to the edge of the pavement when removing forms. Repair damage resulting from form removal and honeycombed areas with a mortar mix within 24 hr. after form removal unless otherwise approved. Clean joint face and repair honeycombed or damaged areas within 24 hr. after a bulkhead for a transverse construction joint has been removed unless otherwise approved. When forms are removed before 72 hr. after concrete placement, promptly apply membrane curing compound to the edge of the concrete pavement. Forms that are not the same depth as the pavement but are within 2 in. of that depth are permitted if the subbase is trenched or the full width and length of the form base is supported with a firm material to produce the required pavement thickness. Promptly repair the form trench after use. Use flexible or curved wood or metal forms for curves of 100-ft. radius or less,

F. **Concrete Delivery.** Clean delivery equipment as necessary to prevent accumulation of old concrete before loading fresh concrete. Use agitated delivery equipment for concrete designed to have a slump of more than 5 in. Segregated concrete is subject to rejection. Place agitated concrete within 60 min. after batching, Place non-agitated concrete within 45 min. after batching. In hot weather or under conditions causing quick setting of the concrete, times may be reduced by the Engineer. Time limitations may be extended if the Contractor can demonstrate that the concrete can be properly placed, consolidated, and finished without the use of additional water.

G. **Concrete Placement.** Do not allow the pavement edge to deviate from the established paving line by more than 1/2 in, at any point. Place the concrete as near as possible to its final location, and minimize segregation and rehandling. Where hand spreading is necessary, distribute concrete using shovels. Do not use rakes or vibrators to distribute concrete.

1. **Pavement.** Consolidate all concrete by approved mechanical vibrators operated on the front of the paving equipment, Use immersion-type vibrators that simultaneously consolidate the full width of the placement when machine finishing, Keep vibrators from dislodging reinforcement. Use hand-operated vibrators to consolidate concrete in areas not accessible to the machinemounted vibrators, Do not operate machine-mounted vibrators while the paving equipment is stationary. Vibrator operations are subject to review.
2. **Date Imprinting.** Imprint dates in the fresh concrete indicating the date of the concrete placement. Make impressions approximately 1 ft. from the outside longitudinal construction joint or edge of pavement and approximately 1 ft. from the transverse construction joint at the beginning of the placement day. Orient the impressions to be read from the outside shoulder in the direction of final traffic, Impress date in DD-MM-YY format. Imprinting of the Contractor name or logo in similar size characters to the date is allowed.
3. **Curbs.** Where curbs are placed separately, conform to the requirements of Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter, and Combined Curb and Gutter."
4. **Temperature Restrictions.** Place concrete that is between 40°F and 95°F when measured in accordance with Tex-422-A at the time of discharge, except that concrete may be used if it was already in transit when the temperature was found to exceed the allowable maximum. Take immediate corrective action or cease concrete production when the concrete temperature exceeds 95°F,

   Do not place concrete when the ambient temperature in the shade is below 40°F and falling unless approved. Concrete may be placed when the ambient temperature in the shade is above 35°F and rising or above 40°F. When temperatures warrant protection against freezing, protect the pavement with an approved insulating material capable of protecting the concrete for the specified curing period. Submit for approval proposed measures to protect the concrete from anticipated freezing weather for the first 72 hr. after placement. Repair or replace all concrete damaged by freezing.

H. Spreading and Finishing. Finish all concrete pavement with approved self-propelled equipment, Use power-driven spreaders, power-driven vibrators, power-driven strike-off, and screed, or approved alternate equipment. Use the transverse finishing equipment to compact and strike off the concrete to the required section and grade without surface voids, Use float equipment for final finishing. Use concrete with a consistency that allows completion of all finishing operations without addition of water to the surface. Use the minimal amount of water fog mist necessary to maintain a moist surface. Reduce fogging if float or straightedge operations result in excess slurry.

1. Finished **Surface.** Perform sufficient checks with long-handled 10-ft. and 15-ft. straightedges on the plastic concrete to ensure that the final surface is within the tolerances specified in Surface Test A in Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces," Check with the straightedge parallel to the centerline,
2. **Maintenance of *Surface* Moisture.** Prevent surface drying of the pavement before application of the curing system. Accomplish this by fog applications of evaporation retardant on the pavement surface, Apply evaporation retardant at the rate recommended by the manufacturer, Reapply the evaporation retardant as needed to maintain the concrete surface in a moist condition until curing system is applied, Do not use evaporation retardant as a finishing aid. Failure to take acceptable precautions to prevent surface drying of the pavement will be cause for shut down of pavement operations.
3. **Surface Texturing.** Perform surface texturing using a combination of a carpet drag and metal timing, Complete final texturing before the concrete has attained its initial set, Draw the carpet drag longitudinally along the pavement surface with the carpet contact surface area adjusted to provide a satisfactory coarsely textured surface.

A metal-tine texture finish is required unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide the metal-tine finish immediately after the concrete surface has set enough for consistent timing. Operate the metal-tine device to obtain grooves spaced at 1 in,, approximately 3116 in, deep, with a minimum depth of 118 in., and approximately 1112 in. wide. Do not overlap a previously tined area. Use manual methods for achieving similar results on ramps and other irregular sections of pavements. Repair damage to the edge of the slab and joints immediately after texturing. Do not tine pavement that will be overlaid.

4. **Small or Irregular Placements.** Where machine placements and finishing of concrete pavement are not practical, use hand equipment and procedures that produce a consolidated and finished pavement section to the line and grade.
5. **Emergency Procedures.** Use hand-operated equipment for applying texture, evaporation retardant, and cure in the event of equipment breakdown.
6. **Curing.** Keep the concrete pavement surface from drying by water fogging until the curing material has been applied. Maintain and promptly repair damage to curing materials on exposed surfaces of concrete pavement continuously for at least 3 curing days. A curing day is defined as a 24-hr. period when either the temperature taken in the shade away from artificial heat is above 50°F for at least 19 hr. or when the surface temperature of the concrete is maintained above 40°F for 24 hr. Curing begins when the concrete curing system has been applied. Stop concrete paving if curing compound is not being applied promptly and maintained adequately. Other methods of curing in accordance with Item 420, "Concrete Structures," may be used when specified or approved.

1. **Membrane Curing.** After texturing and immediately after the free surface moisture has disappeared, spray the concrete surface uniformly with 2 coats of membrane curing compound at an individual application rate of not more than 180 sq. ft. per gallon. Apply the first coat within 10 min, after completing texturing operations, Apply the second coat within 30 min. after completing texturing operations.

Before and during application, maintain curing compounds in a uniformly agitated condition, free of settlement. Do not thin or dilute the curing compound.

Where the coating shows discontinuities or other defects or if rain falls on the newly coated surface before the film has dried enough to resist damage, apply additional compound at the same rate of coverage to correct the damage. Ensure that the curing compound coats the sides of the timing grooves.

2. **Asphalt Curing.** When an asphaltic concrete overlay is required, apply a uniform coating of asphalt curing at a rate of 90 to 180 sq. ft. per gallon as required. Apply curing immediately after texturing and just after the free moisture (sheen) has disappeared, Obtain approval to add water to the emulsion to improve spray distribution. Maintain the asphalt application rate when using diluted emulsions, Maintain the emulsion in a mixed condition during application.

3. Curing Class HES Concrete. For all Class FES concrete pavement, provide membrane curing in accordance with Section 360.4.1.1, "Membrane Curing," followed promptly by water curing until opening strength is achieved but not less than 24 hr.

J. **Sawing Joints.** Saw joints to the depth shown on the plans as soon as sawing can be accomplished without damage to the pavement regardless of time of day or weather conditions. Some minor raveling of the saw cut is acceptable. Use a chalk line, string line, sawing template, or other approved method to provide a true joint alignment. Provide enough saws to match the paving production rate to ensure sawing completion at the earliest possible time to avoid uncontrolled cracking. Reduce paving production if necessary to ensure timely sawing of joints. Promptly restore membrane cure damaged within the first 72 hr. of curing.

K. **Protection of Pavement and Opening to Traffic.** Testing for early opening is the responsibility of the Contractor regardless of job-control testing responsibilities unless otherwise shown in the plans or directed. Testing result interpretation for opening to traffic is subject to the approval of the Engineer.

1. Protection of Pavement, Erect and maintain barricades and other standard and approved devices that will exclude all vehicles and equipment from the newly placed pavement for the periods specified. Before opening to traffic, protect the pavement from damage due to crossings using approved methods. Where a detour is not readily available or economically feasible, an occasional crossing of the roadway with overweight equipment may be permitted for relocating equipment only but not for hauling material. When an occasional crossing of overweight equipment is permitted, temporary matting or other approved methods may be required.
Maintain an adequate supply of sheeting or other material to cover and protect fresh concrete surface from weather damage. Apply as needed to protect the pavement surface from weather.

2. **Opening Pavement to** All Traffic. Pavement that is 7 days old may be opened to all traffic. Before opening to traffic, clean pavement, place stable material against the pavement edges, seal joints, and perform all other traffic safety related work,

3. **Opening Pavement to Construction Equipment.** Unless otherwise shown on the plans, concrete pavement may be opened early to concrete paving equipment and related delivery equipment after the concrete is at least 48 hr. old and opening strength has been demonstrated in accordance with Section 360.4.K,4, "Early Opening to All Traffic," before curing is complete. Keep delivery equipment at least 2 ft. from the edge of the concrete pavement. Keep tracks of the paving equipment at least 1 ft. from the pavement edge. Protect textured surfaces from the paving equipment. Restore damaged membrane curing as soon as possible. Repair pavement damaged by paving or delivery equipment before opening to all traffic.

4. **Early Opening to** All **Traffic.** Concrete pavement may be opened after curing is complete and the concrete has attained a flexural strength of 450 psi or a compressive strength of 2,800 psi, except that pavement using Class IIES concrete may be opened after 24 hr. if the specified strength is achieved.

a. **Strength Testing.** Test concrete specimens cured under the same conditions as the portion of the pavement involved.

b. **Maturity Method.** Unless otherwise shown on the plans, the maturity method, Tex-426-A, may be used to estimate concrete strength for early opening pavement to traffic. Install at least 2 maturity thermocouples for each day's placement in areas where the maturity method will be used for early opening. Thermocouples, when used, will be installed near the days final placement for areas being evaluated for early opening. Use test specimens to verify the strength-maturity relationship in accordance with Tex-426-A, starting with the first day's placement corresponding to the early opening pavement section.

c. After the first day, verify the strength-maturity relationship at least every 10 days of production. Establish a new strength maturity relationship when the strength specimens deviate more than 10% from the maturity-estimated strengths. Suspend use of the maturity method for opening pavements to traffic when the strength-maturity relationship deviates by more than 10% until a new strength-maturity relationship is established.

When the maturity method is used intermittently or for only specific areas, the frequency of verification will be as determined by the Engineer.

5. Emergency Opening to Traffic. Under emergency conditions, when the pavement is at least 72 hr. old, open the pavement to traffic when directed in writing. Remove all obstructing materials, place stable material against the pavement edges, and perform other work involved in providing for the safety of traffic as required for emergency opening.

L. Pavement Thickness. The Engineer will check the thickness in accordance with Tex-423-A unless other methods are shown on the plans. The Engineer will perform 1 thickness test consisting of 1 reading at approximately the center of each lane every 500 ft. or fraction thereof, Core where directed in accordance with Tex-424-A to verify deficiencies of more than 0.2 in. from plan thickness and to determine the limits of deficiencies of more than 0.75 in, from plan thickness. Fill core holes using a concrete mixture and method approved by the Engineer.

1. **Thickness Deficiencies Greater than 0.2 in.** When any depth test measured in accordance with Tex-423-A is deficient by more than 0.2 in, from the plan thickness, take one 4-in. diameter core at that location to verify the measurement.

   If the core is deficient by more than 0.2 in, but not by more than 0,75 in. from the plan thickness, take 2 additional cores from the unit (as defined in Section 360.4.L,3, "Pavement Units for Payment Adjustment") at intervals of at least 150 ft. and at locations selected by the Engineer, and determine the thickness of the unit for payment purposes by averaging the length of the 3 cores. In calculations of the average thickness of this unit of pavement, measurements in excess of the specified thickness by more than 0.2 in. will be considered as the specified thickness plus 0,2 in.

2. **Thickness Deficiencies** Greater than **0.75 in.** If a core is deficient by more than 0.75 in., take additional cores at 10 ft, intervals in each direction parallel to the centerline to determine the boundary of the deficient area. The Engineer will evaluate any area of pavement found deficient in thickness by more than 0.75 in. but not more than 1 in. As directed, remove and replace the deficient areas without additional compensation or retain deficient areas without compensation. Remove and replace any area of pavement found deficient in thickness by more than 1 in. without additional compensation.

3.

3. Pavement Units for Payment Adjustment. Limits for applying a payment adjustment for deficient pavement thickness from 0.20 in. to not more than 0.75 in. are 500 ft. of pavement in each lane. Lane width will be as shown on typical sections and pavement design
standards.

For greater than 0.75 in. deficient thickness, the limits for applying zero payment or requiring removal will be defined by coring or equivalent nondestructive means as determined by the Engineer. The remaining portion of the unit determined to be less than 0,75 in. deficient will be subject to the payment adjustment based on the average core thickness at each end of the 10 ft. interval investigation as determined by the Engineer.

Shoulders will be measured for thickness unless otherwise shown on the plans. Shoulders 6 ft, wide or wider will be considered as lanes. Shoulders less than 6 ft. wide will be considered part of the adjacent lane. Limits for applying payment adjustment for deficient pavement thickness for ramps, widenings, acceleration and deceleration lanes, and other miscellaneous areas are 500 ft. in length. Areas less than 500 ft, in length will be individually evaluated for payment adjustment based on the plan area,

M. Ride Quality. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, measure ride quality in accordance with Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces."

ITEM 529
CONCRETE CURB, GUTTER, AND COMBINED CURB AND GUTTER

529.1. Description. Construct hydraulic cement concrete curb, gutter, and combined curb and gutter.

529.2. Materials. Furnish materials conforming to:

- Item 360, "Concrete Pavement"
- Item 420, "Concrete Structures"
- Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete"
- Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel"

Use Class A concrete or material specified in the plans. Use Grade 8 coarse aggregate for extruded Class A concrete. Use other grades if approved by the Engineer.

529.3. Construction. Provide finished work with a well-compacted mass and a surface free from voids and honeycomb, in the required shape, line, and grade. Round exposed edges with an edging tool of the radius shown on the plans. Mix, place, and cure concrete in accordance with Item 420, "Concrete Structures." Construct joints at locations shown on the plans. Cure for at least 72 hr.
Furnish and place reinforcing steel in accordance with Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel."

Set and maintain a guideline that conforms to alignment data shown on the plans, with an outline that conforms to the details shown on the plans.

A. **Conventionally Formed Concrete.** Shape and compact subgrade, foundation, or pavement surface to the line, grade, and cross section shown on the plans. Lightly sprinkle subgrade or foundation material immediately before concrete placement.

Pour concrete into forms, and strike off with a template 114 to 318 in. less than the dimensions of the finished curb unless otherwise approved, After initial set, plaster surface with mortar consisting of 1 part hydraulic cement and 2 parts fine aggregate. Brush exposed surfaces to a uniform texture.

Place curbs, gutters, and combined curb and gutters in 50-ft. maximum sections unless otherwise approved.

B. **Extruded or Slipformed Concrete.** Hand-tamp and sprinkle subgrade or foundation material before concrete placement. Provide clean surfaces for concrete placement. If required, coat cleaned surfaces with approved adhesive or coating at the rate of application shown on the plans or as directed. Place concrete with approved self-propelled equipment.

The forming tube of the extrusion machine or the form of the slip form machine must be easily adjustable vertically during the forward motion of the machine to provide variable heights necessary to conform to the established grade line.

Attach a pointer or gauge to the machine so that a continual comparison can be made between the extruded or slip form work and the grade guideline. Other methods may be used when approved.
Finish surfaces immediately after extrusion or slip forming.

ITEM 530

INTERSECTIONS, DRIVEWAYS, AND TURNOUTS

530.1. Description. Construct and pave intersections, driveways, and turnouts. Pave existing intersections, driveways, and turnouts.

Intersections are considered to be areas off the travel lanes and shoulders of the Contract highway on the intersecting highway on the state system. The intersecting on-system highway work will be paid for under this Item only when shown on the plans.

Driveways are defined as private (residential or commercial) and public (county road and city street) access areas off the travel lanes and shoulders.

Turnouts include but are not limited to mailbox and litter barrel widenings.

530.2. Materials. Furnish materials that meet the following:

- Item 247, "Flexible Base"
- Item 260, "Lime Treatment (Road Mixed)"
  Item 263, "Lime Treatment (Plant Mixed)"
- Item 275, "Cement Treatment (Road Mixed)"
- Item 276, "Cement Treatment (Plant Mixed)"
- Item 292, "Asphalt Treatment (Plant Mix)"
- Item 316, "Surface Treatments"
- Item 330, "Limestone Rock Asphalt Pavement"
- Item 334, "Hot Mix-Cold Laid Asphalt Concrete Pavement"
- Item 340, "Dense-Graded Hot Mix Asphalt Concrete Pavement (Method)"
- Item 360, "Concrete Pavement"
- Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete"
- Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel."

530.3. Construction. Construct and pave intersections, driveways, and turnouts, and pave existing intersections, driveways, and turnouts as shown on the plans or as directed. Place materials in accordance with construction Articles of pertinent Items. Provide uninterrupted access to adjacent property unless otherwise directed. Ensure that abrupt elevation changes in driveway or turnout areas that serve as sidewalks do not exceed 114 in. and that the sidewalk area cross slope does not exceed 2%. Ready-mix concrete and hand finishing will be permitted when concrete pavement is specified unless otherwise shown in the plans for intersections.

ITEM 531
SIDEWALKS

531.1. Description. Construct hydraulic cement concrete sidewalks.

531.2. Materials. Furnish materials conforming to the following:

- Item 360, "Concrete Pavement"
- Item 420, "Concrete Structures"
- Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete"
- Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel"

Use Class A concrete or other concrete as specified. Use Grade 8 course aggregate for extruded Class A concrete Use other grades if approved by the Engineer.

531.3. Construction. Shape and compact subgrade, foundation, or pavement surface to the line, grade, and cross-section shown on the plans. Lightly sprinkle subgrade or foundation material immediately before concrete placement. Hand-tamp and sprinkle foundation when placement is directly on subgrade or foundation materials. Remove and dispose of existing concrete in accordance with Item 104, "Removing Concrete." Provide a clean surface for concrete placement directly on the surface material or pavement.

Mix and place concrete in accordance with the pertinent Items. Handfinishing is allowed for any method of construction. Finish exposed surfaces to a uniform transverse broom finish surface. Curb ramps must include a detectable warning surface and conform to details shown on the plans. Install joints as shown on the plans. Brush all exposed surfaces to a smooth and uniform surface. Ensure that abrupt changes in sidewalk elevation do not exceed 114 inch, sidewalk cross slope does not exceed 2%, curb ramp grade does not exceed 8.3%, and flares adjacent to the ramp do not exceed 10% slope. Where a sidewalk crosses a concrete driveway, ensure that the sidewalk depth and reinforcement are not less than the driveway cross-sectional details shown on the plans.

Provide finished work with a well-compacted mass, a surface free from voids and honeycomb, and the required true-to-line shape and grade. Cure for at least 72 hr. in accordance with Item 420, "Concrete Structures."

A. **Conventionally Formed Concrete.** Provide sidewalk sections separated by premold or board joint of the thickness shown on the plans in lengths greater than 8 ft. but less than 40 ft., unless otherwise directed. Terminate workday production at an expansion joint.

B. **Extruded or Slipformed Concrete.** Provide any additional surface finishing immediately after extrusion or slipforming as required on the plans. Construct joints at locations as shown on the plans or as directed.

ITEM 465

MANHOLES AND INLETS

465.1. Description. Construct manholes and inlets, complete in place or to the stage detailed, including furnishing and installing frames, grates, rings and covers. Drainage junction boxes are classified as manholes.

465.2. Materials. Furnish materials in accordance with the following:

- Item 420, "Concrete Structures"
- Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete"
- Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel"
- Item 471, "Frames, Grates, Rings, and Covers"

Precast manholes, inlets, risers, and appurtenances are acceptable unless otherwise shown. Alternate designs for precast items must be acceptable to the Engineer and not deviate from the functional dimensions given. Alternate designs are to be designed and sealed by a licensed professional engineer.

A. **Concrete.** Furnish Class A concrete for cast-in-place manholes and inlets unless otherwise shown on the plans. Furnish Class A concrete or concrete meeting ASTM C 478 for precast manholes and inlets. Air-entrained concrete will not be required in precast concrete members.

B. **Mortar.** Furnish mortar composed of 1 part hydraulic cement and 2 parts clean sand. Hydrated lime or lime putty may be added to the mix to a maximum of 10% by weight of the total dry mix,

C. **Bricks.** Furnish first-quality, sound, perfectly shaped bricks. Provide clay or shale bricks that are homogeneous and thoroughly and uniformly hard-burned and that meet ASTM C 32, Grade MS or MM, Provide concrete bricks meeting ASTM C 55, Type I (Grade S-I). The maximum allowable water absorption of completely dry bricks is 16% by weight when submerged in water for 24 hr.

D. **Concrete Blocks.** Provide concrete blocks that meet ASTM C 139.

E. **Cast Iron or Aluminum.** Provide supports and steps conforming to the shape and dimensions shown on the plans that meet the requirements of ASTM A 48, Class 3513, for gray iron castings or ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12, for ductile iron castings. Steps may also be aluminum meeting ASTM B 221, Alloy 6005-T5. Provide steps in accordance with ASTM C 478, Section 16, "Steps and Ladders."

F. Timber. Provide sound timber for temporary covers when used with Stage I construction (see Section 465.3, "Construction") that is a minimum of 3 in. nominal thickness and reasonably free of knots and warps.

G. **Other Materials.** Commercial-type hardware of other materials may be used with prior approval.

465.3. Construction.

A. **General.** All types of manholes and inlets may be built either in 1 stage or in 2 stages, described as Stage I and Stage II. Build manholes and inlets designed to match the final roadway surface in stages. Construct Stage II after the pavement structure is substantially complete unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. Construct the Stage I portion of manholes and inlets as shown on the plans or as specified in this Item. Furnish and install a temporary cover as approved by the Engineer.

For Stage I construction of cast iron or steel inlet units, furnish and install the sewer pipe and a temporary plug for the exposed end of the sewer pipe from the storm sewer to a point below the top of curb indicated on the plans.

For Stage II, construct the remaining wall height and top of manhole or inlet and furnish and install any frames, grates, rings and covers, manhole steps, curb beams, or collecting basins required.
Construct precast manholes and inlets in accordance with Item 420, "Concrete Structures," or ASTM C 478. Construct cast-in-place manholes and inlets in accordance with Item 420, Forms will be required for all concrete walls. Multi-project fabrication plants (as defined in Item 424, "Precast Concrete Structures (Fabrication)") that produce manholes and inlets will be approved by the Construction Division in accordance with DMS-7340, "Qualification Procedure for Multi-Project Fabrication Plants of Precast Concrete Manholes and Inlets." The Construction Division maintains a list of approved multiproject plants. Outside wall forms for cast-in-place concrete may be omitted with the approval of the Engineer if the surrounding material can be trimmed to a smooth vertical face. The outside form for concrete bases supporting brick walls may be omitted. Cast steps into the concrete walls when the concrete is placed, or drill and grout steps in place after concrete placement, Mortar steps into joints for brick walls. Use a full bed of mortar for brick work so the brick will thoroughly bond to the mortar. Construct full mortar joints no more than 112 in, wide for brick walls. Furnish a header course or bond course (laid perpendicular to the preceding courses) every fifth course of brick.

B. **Manholes and Inlets for Precast Concrete Pipe Sewers.** Construct manholes and inlets for precast concrete pipe sewers as soon as is practicable after sewer lines into or through the manhole or inlet locations are completed. Neatly cut all sewers at the inside face of the walls of the manhole or inlet and point up with mortar.

C. **Manholes and Inlets for Monolithic Pipe Sewers.** Construct bases for manholes and inlets on monolithic pipe sewers either monolithically with the sewer or after the sewer is constructed.

D. **Manholes for Box Sewers.** Cast bases for manholes for box sewers as an integral part of the sewer. Construct manholes before backfilling, or cover the manhole opening temporarily and backfill the sewer as a whole.

E. **Inverts.** Shape and route floor inverts passing out or through the manhole or inlet as shown on the plans. Shape by adding and shaping mortar or concrete after the base is cast or by placing the required additional material with the base.

F. **Finishing Complete Manholes and Inlets.** Complete manholes and inlets in accordance with the plans. Backfill to original ground elevation in accordance with Item 400, "Excavation and Backfill for Structures."

G. **Finishing Stage I Construction.** Complete Stage I construction by constructing the walls to the elevations shown on the plans and backfilling to required elevations in accordance with Item 400, "Excavation and Backfill for Structures."

H. **Stage** II **Construction.** Construct subgrade and base course or concrete pavement construction over Stage I manhole or inlet construction, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. Excavate to expose the top of Stage I construction and complete the manhole or inlet in accordance with the plans and these Specifications, including backfill and cleaning of all debris from the bottom of the manhole or inlet.

I. **Inlet Units.** Install cast iron or steel inlet units in conjunction with the construction of concrete curb and gutter. Set the inlet units securely in position before placing concrete for curb and gutter. Form openings for the inlets and recesses in curb and gutter as shown on the plans. Place and thoroughly consolidate concrete for curb and gutter adjacent to inlets and around the inlet castings and formed openings and recesses without displacing the inlet units.

SECTION 2 - EARTH WORK AND SITE PREPARATION

2.1. SCOPE. This section shall cover the removal and disposal of all materials, in both open cut and tunnel excavations, necessary for performing the work as shown on the drawings or called for in the proposal or special provisions, including sheeting and bracing, drainage, and other work incidental to the preparation of the site for subsequent construction work.

2.2. PREPARATION OF THE SITE. Prior to commencing construction operations, the CONTRACTOR shall make all the provisions necessary to assure the protection of all existing improvements, both public and private. He shall protect trees, shrubs, planting and grass areas and shall make provisions for maintaining public travel in an acceptable manner.

2.3. PROTECTION OF EXISTING IMPROVEMENTS. Before any excavation is started, adequate protection shall be provided for all lawns, trees, shrubs, landscape work, fences, sidewalks, hydrants, utility poles, street, alley and driveway paving, curbs, storm sewers, ditches, headwalls, catch basins, surface inlets and all other improvements that are to remain in place. Such protection shall be provided as long as necessary to prevent damage from the CONTRACTOR'S operations. Shrubs, bushes, small trees and flowers, which have to be removed to permit excavation for the waterline, shall be protected and replanted or replaced when the backfill is completed. The CONTRACTOR shall exercise every precaution to prevent damage to property within and outside easements. He shall remove all debris and rock from the site and restore the ground surfaces to the original grade after proper compaction, replace or repair all driveways, buildings, fences, retaining walls, culverts, drains, pavings, sidewalks, etc. which are removed or damaged during construction. Repair, restoration or replacements of any improvements damaged or removed shall be the obligation of the CONTRACTOR at no additional cost to OWNER.

2.4. PERMITS. OWNER will obtain all necessary permits in public and private rights-of-way from the City of Brownsville, Cameron County, Missouri Pacific Railroad, or the Texas State Highway Department, as required.

2.5. DRAINAGE. The CONTRACTOR shall make provisions for handling all flows in existing creeks, ditches, sewers, and trenches by pipes, flumes or other approved methods at all times when his operations would, in any way, interfere with the natural functioning of said creeks, ditches, sewers and drains. The CONTRACTOR shall at all times during construction provide and maintain sufficient equipment for the disposal of all water which enters the excavation, both in open cut trenches and in tunnels, to render such excavations firm and dry, until structures to be built thereupon are completed.

2.5.1. Methods. Pipe underdrains, well point systems, deep well pump or other suitable equipment and methods shall be used to keep all excavations firm and dry, at no additional cost to the OWNER unless otherwise provided in the proposal.

2.6. EXCAVATED MATERIALS. Materials of excavation shall be classified as earth excavation or as rock excavation and shall include whatever materials are encountered to the depth shown on the drawings, or as directed by the Engineer.

2.6.1. Disposal of Unsuitable Materials. Excavated materials which are neither surplus and not required or are unsuitable for backfilling shall be removed from the site of operations as soon as excavated. All excavated materials so removed shall be disposed of, at no additional cost to the OWNER on privately owned property for which the CONTRACTOR has made prior arrangements and shall not be disposed of on property of the OWNER, unless by permission of the engineer.

2.6.2. Storage of Suitable Materials. Excavated materials suitable and required for backfill shall be stored in neat piles adjacent to the excavation in a manner so as to interfere as little as possible with traffic, but shall not be placed at such heights above or closeness, to the sidewalks of the excavations to endanger such operations due to slides or cave-ins.

2.7. OPEN CUT EXCAVATION. Open cut excavation, in earth or other material, shall be safely supported and of sufficient width and depth to provide adequate room for the construction or installation of the work to the lines, grades and dimensions called for by the drawings.

2.7.1. Trench Preparation. The trench shall be dug so that the pipe can be laid to the alignment and depth required. It shall be excavated only so far in advance of pipe laying as permitted by the City of Los Fresnos. Unless otherwise ordered by the OWNER, all trenches shall be excavated to a width not less than the internal diameter of the pipe, plus 12 inches. The CONTRACTOR shall do all excavation of whatever substances encountered to depths specified. The trench shall be excavated to the depth required so as to provide for the installation of the pipe bedding material to the depth specified on the drawings and elsewhere in these specifications. Bell holes shall be provided at each joint to permit jointing to be made properly and inspected.

2.7.2. Unauthorized Excavation. Excavation shall not be carried below the required level. Excess excavation below the required level shall be backfilled at CONTRACTOR'S expense with earth, sand or gravel as directed by OWNER and shall be compacted to a minimum 95% Standard Proctor density.

2.7.3. Earth Excavation. Earth materials shall be excavated so that the open cut trenches conform with the lines, grades and dimensions shown and/or specified on the drawings.

2.7.3.1. When the bottom of the excavation is unsuitable as a foundation, it shall be excavated below subgrade and then filled with gravel which shall be mechanically compacted in 6" (six inch) layers to a minimum density of 95% Standard Proctor. OWNER will determine depth of removal and replacement of unstable soil. CONTRACTOR shall furnish pumps or well points to keep excavation free of water and also any necessary sheeting, shoring or bracing in conformance with Section 11 of these Standard Specifications to prevent cave-ins. Basis of payment shall be as indicated in the above mentioned specification.

2.7.3.2. Excavated earth materials may be used for a backfill in conformance with the provisions of Section 6 of these Standard Specifications, subject to the approval of the OWNER.

2.8. BORING AND JACKING. Construction of water or sewer lines by boring and jacking methods will be required as specified in the Plans and Specifications. In the event, line and grade cannot be obtained by boring and jacking, the CONTRACTOR will be required, at his expense, to construct a lined mined tunnel in lieu of a tunnel by boring and jacking.

2.8.1. Backstop. The backstop shall be of sufficient strength and shall be positioned to support the thrust of the boring equipment without incurring any vertical or horizontal displacement during the boring operations.

2.8.2. Guide Rails. The guide rails for the boring equipment may be of either timber or steel. They shall be laid accurately to line and grade and maintained in this position until completion of the boring operations.

SECTION 3 - WATERLINE PIPEWORK

3.1. SCOPE. This section shall cover the furnishing, laying, jointing and testing of all water pipe, including water appurtenances, both in open cut and in tunnels, as shown on the drawings or as directed by the engineer.

3.2. MATERIALS. The material used in pipework shall be furnished by the CONTRACTOR, as approved by the OWNER to meet the requirements of the work of the CONTRACTOR as specified herein.

3.2.1. Water Pipe. Water pipe for main lines may be of any of the following classifications. Any pipe found defective, not meeting the specifications or improperly installed, shall be rejected and so marked and shall be replaced by pipe approved by the OWNER at no additional cost to the OWNER.

3.2.1.1. Polyvinyl chloride pipe for waterline 14 inch to 36 inch shall conform to or exceed AWWA Standards "Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe" C905, Class 100 DR-25, or Class 150 DR-18, latest revision.

3.2.1.2. Polyvinyl chloride pipe for waterlines 4 inch to 12 inch shall conform to or exceed AWWA Standard "Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe" C900, Class 100 DR-25, or Class 150 DR-18, latest revision.

3.2.1.3. Polyvinyl chloride pipe for 2" waterlines shall be Schedule 40 PVC and shall conform to ASTM Standard "Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Plastic Pipe: D 1785, latest revision.

3.2.2. Waterline Fittings. Fittings for water lines may be of any of the following classifications. All fittings shall be wrapped in a plastic protector in conformance with AWWA Standard C-105 and ANSI A21.5 "Polyethylene Encasement for Gray and Ductile Cast-Iron piping for Water and Other Liquids," latest revision. Fitting wrapping shall installed in such a manner as to curtail or prevent corrosion of the metallic fittings. Any fittings found defective, not meeting the specifications, or improperly installed, shall be rejected and so marked, and shall be replaced by fittings approved by the OWNER, at no additional cost to the OWNER.

3.2.2.1. Fittings for polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe 4 inch through 36 inch shall meet AWWA Standard C-110 or C153 "Ductile-Iron Compact Fitting, 3 inch through 16 inch for Water and Other Liquids," and C104, latest revision, and shall be sized to fit PVC water pipe in conformance with 3.2.1.1 and 3.2.1.2. No adapters for fittings with outside diameters different from PVC pipe shall be used. Fittings shall be mechanical joint type.

3.2.2.2. Fittings for polyvinyl chloride (PVC) Schedule 40 pipe less than 4 inch shall conform to ASTM Standard D2466, latest revision.

3.2.3. Service Connections. Water service connections shall be installed with rubber gasket double strap bronze saddles. "Modified" double strap saddles will not be acceptable substitutes. The service lines and casings shall be of the following classifications. Any material found defective, not meeting the specifications, or improperly installed, shall be rejected and so marked and shall be replaced with material

approved by the engineer at no additional cost to the OWNER. Service line tubing crossings under travelled roadways shall be installed as specified on the plans with a minimum cover of 36" below roadway surface.

3.2.3.1. Copper tubing for water service lines shall be type "K" and shall conform to ASTM Standard "Seamless Copper Water Tube" B 88, latest revision.

3.2.3.2. Polyvinyl chloride casing for water services lines shall be Schedule 40 PVC and shall conform to ASTM Standard "Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Plastic Pipe" D 1785, latest revision.

3.3. PIPE LAYING. All water mains shall be installed as specified in plans with a minimum cover of 48 inches from the top of pipe to an established subgrade. Where pipe is installed beneath railroad tracks, there shall be a minimum vertical distance of 4 feet-0 inches from the top of pipe to top of railroad ties. Construction clearance to cross under railroad trackage will be obtained from Railroad Authority by OWNER. Any expense of bracing or supports to tracks during excavation operation beneath trackage shall be considered part of the contract. Where pipe is installed beneath State Highways, there shall be a minimum vertical distance of 4 feet from top of paving at center line of highway, or 2 feet from top of pipe to bottom of ditch (if existing), whichever is greater. In special locations, Highway Department may require additional cover. Construction clearance and other requirements to cross under State Highways shall be obtained by OWNER.

3.3.1. Procedure. After the trench is excavated to subgrade as specified, it shall be filled to grade as specified in SECTION 6 of these standard specifications. This material shall provide a smooth and uniform pipe bed for the entire length of the waterpipe barrel. Trenching and pipe laying shall be uniformly in a straight line and to uniform elevation unless otherwise specified on plans. Pipe, fittings and valves shall be carefully handled to avoid damage. Before placing pipe into the trench, the outside of the spigot and the inside of the bell shall be wiped clean and dry, free from oil and grease. Every precaution shall be taken to prevent foreign material from entering the pipe. During layout operation, no debris, tools, clothing or other material shall be placed into the pipe. After placing a length of pipe in the trench, the spigot end shall be centered in the bell, the pipe forced home, brought to the correct alignment and covered with an approved backfill material. Metallic tape shall be buried above pipe at a depth of 24 inches below finished grade for location purposes. At times when pipe laying is not in progress, the open ends of pipe shall be closed by a water tight plug or other approved means. This provision shall apply during the noon hour as well as overnight. If water is in the trench, the seal shall remain in place until the trench is pumped completely dry.

3.4. PIPE JOINTING. In laying the water pipe to line and grade, the pipe shall be jointed accordance in accordance with one of the following approved jointing methods. OWNER reserves the right, before construction or while construction is in progress, to change the type of joints if its engineer so directs.

3.4.1. Asbestos Cement Pipe Jointing. The CONTRACTOR shall furnish and install asbestos cement pipe in accordance with AWWA Standard "Installation of Asbestos Cement Pressure Pipe" C603-78, latest revision. The machined ends of the pipe to be jointed, coupling grooves and rubber rings shall be cleaned immediately before assembly. Care should be taken not to roll, pinch or reverse the gasket when placed in the bell. Each pipe joint shall be sealed with a coupling consisting of an asbestos cement sleeve and two rubber rings or an equivalent coupling or joint of equivalent strength and performance, as determined by engineer. The pipe joint shall not be deflected either vertically or horizontally beyond the limits recommended by the manufacturer.

3.4.2. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe Jointing. The CONTRACTOR shall make certain before jointing polyvinyl chloride pipe that the ring groove in the bell of the pipe is clean, with no dirt or foreign material that could interfere with proper seating of the ring. Make sure pipe end is clean. Wipe with a clean dry cloth around the entire circumference from the end to one inch beyond the reference mark. Lubricate the spigot end of the pipe, using only the lubricant supplied by the manufacturer. Be sure the entire circumference is covered. The coating should be the equivalent of a brush coat of enamel paint. It can be applied by hand, cloth, pad, sponge or glove. Do not lubricate the ring groove in the bell because such lubrication could cause ring displacement. The level end is then inserted into the bell so that it is in contact with the ring. Brace the bell, while the level end is pushed in under the ring, so that previously completed joints in the line will not be closed up. The spigot end is pushed until the reference mark on the spigot end is flush with the end of the bell. If undue resistance to inserting of the level is encountered or the reference mark does not reach the flush position, disassemble the joint and check the position of the ring. If is twisted or pushed out of its seat, clean the ring, bell and level end and repeat the assembly steps.

3.5. WET CONNECTIONS. Schedules of existing fittings and proposed new fittings needed to make wet connections to existing waterlines as shown on the plans are estimates only. It is to be recognized that after existing lines and fittings are uncovered, that some discrepancies may occur. When discrepancies occur, the CONTRACTOR shall request a decision by the OWNER as to how the connection in questions shall be made. CONTRACTOR shall plan his work concerning wet connections in such a way that a minimum of inconvenience shall occur to existing water customers due to water service interruptions. Before water service interruptions are made to any customer, CONTRACTOR shall notify designated official and cooperate with operating personnel in every way to minimize service interruptions due to wet conditions. In certain locations, other utility lines or conduit will be obstructing the normal patch of proposed waterlines. In such instances, gravity lines of all kinds hold priority as to grade over water pressure lines, gas lines, electrical conduits, or other obstruction conduits or combinations of conduits which may be encountered. CONTRACTOR is to analyze conditions carefully and then use best judgment in determining proper method of proceeding
through obstructed area with waterline construction, and shall notify the OWNER forty-eight (48) hours in advance of making such connection after obtaining approval from the engineer.

3.6. APPURTENANCES. Appurtenances to the waterline shall be provided and laid in accordance with the drawings and in the manner as specified herein.

3.6.1. Valves. Valves shall be installed at the locations indicated on, and with concrete thrust blocks as specified in the construction drawings, and shall be wrapped in polyethylene as described in 3.2.2., and shall conform to the following requirements:

3.6.1.1. Gate valves shall conform to AWWA Standard "Resilient Seated Gate Valves, 3 inch through 12 inch" C509, latest revision, and shall be utilized for lines 12 inch and smaller, unless otherwise specified in the construction drawings. All gate valves shall be iron body, bronze mounted, double disc parallel seats, non rising stem, internal wedging type, with mechanical joints. Valves must embody the best workmanship and finish, and open and close freely and easily. In closing, the gates must move without friction to their position opposite their ports, both discs being then closed squarely against the seat rings. When valves are in full open position, the disc shall be raised to clear the waterway and provide an

opening equal to the full nominal diameter of the valves. All gate valves shall open by turning hand wheel or square nut operator counterclockwise. Hydrostatic and leakage tests shall conform to AWWA Standard "Resilient Seated Gate Valves, 3 inch through 12 inch" C509-80, latest revision.

3.6.1.2. Butterfly valves shall conform to AWWA Standard "Rubber Seated Butterfly Valves" C504, latest revision; and shall be Class 150B, mechanical joint ended, and shall be utilized for lines 16 inch and larger, unless otherwise specified in the construction drawings. Valves shall be provided with manual operators with enclosed gear grease housing and hand wheels. Manual operators shall be composed of work gearing, totally enclosed in a grease-packed gear case. Work gears shall be bronze and worm geares shall be hardened steel. Manual operators shall be furnished with devices (externally mounted) to hold the valve in a fixed position for an extended period of time and to indicate valve position. All butterfly valves shall open by turning hand wheel or square nut operator counterclockwise. Hydrostatic and leakage tests shall conform to AWWA Standard "Rubber-Seated Butterfly Valves" C504, latest revision.

3.6.2. Fire Hydrants. Unless otherwise specified, fire hydrants shall conform to AWWA Standard "Dry-Barrel Fire Hydrants" C502, latest revision. Hydrants shall be cast iron, fully bronze mounted and have a working pressure of 150 psi, with mechanical joint-end. Fire hydrants shall have a minimum valve opening of 5-1/4 inch. All fire hydrants shall be located as shown in the plans, and in a manner to provide complete accessibility, and to minimize the possibility of damage from vehicles or injury to pedestrians. All hydrants shall stand plumb with the pumper nozzle facing the curb and the bury line of the hydrant at the finished grade. The barrel of the fire hydrant shall be set so that no portion of the pumper nozzle or hose nozzle will be less than 12 inches from the curb, walkway, or bike patch or more than 20 feet from the face of the curb. The preferred location for the fire hydrant shall be 2 feet clear of the right-of-way line. All fire hydrants shall be placed in accordance with any City or County ordinances. Fire hydrants installed near State Highways shall be in accordance with State Department of Highways and Public Transportation requirements. All fire hydrants shall be connected to the main in the manner shown in the Water Connection Standards.

3.7. TESTING. All newly laid sections of pipe shall be hydrostatically tested at a gauge pressure of 150 psi. CONTRACTOR has the option of running hydrostatic test before or after trench has been completely backfilled. Trenches must be at least partially backfilled before hydrostatic testing to prevent pipe shift. Hydrostatic tests shall be in accordance with AWWA Standard C600 Section 4 "Hydrostatic Testing," latest revision.

3.7.1. Hydrostatic Test Procedure. The CONTRACTOR shall provide all necessary equipment and shall perform all work required in connection with the tests. All pressure pipe, fittings and valves shall be subjected to a hydrostatic pressure of 150 psi. Air pressure testing will not be allowed. The line under test shall be slowly filled with water to the specified test pressure. The lowest elevation point of the section being tested shall be determined and any corrections necessary shall be corrected to the elevation of the test gauge by means of a hand pump, gasoline or electrically driven test pump connected to the pipe. A blow off or fire hydrant shall be installed at the end of the line under test. Before applying the specified test pressure, all air shall be expelled from the test section including service connections. If hydrants or blowoffs are not available at high places, tap at points of highest elevation shall be made before the test is made and brass plugs inserted after the test has been completed. The required test pressure shall be applied for not less than two (2) hours and longer if ordered by the OWNER. Leakage tests shall be conducted concurrently with pressure tests. OWNER will inspect all pipe, fittings, valves and joints under tests. Any faults found to be due to improper workmanship shall be corrected by the CONTRACTOR at no expense to OWNER.

3.8. STERILIZATION. Pipeline construction shall be in accordance with Section 4 of AWWA Standard C651-01, latest revision. Upon or during completion of the hydrostatic test, the new section of pipe shall be sterilized in accordance with AWWA Standard "Disinfecting Water Mains" C651, latest revision; and the State of Texas Health Standards. Chlorine may be applied by the following methods: Continuous Feed Method and Chlorine Table Method. CONTRACTOR shall provide all equipment and chemicals necessary for sterilization.

3.8.1. Continuous Feed Method. This method is suitable for general application. Water from the existing distribution system or other approved sources of supply shall be made to flow at a constant, measured rate into the newly-laid pipeline. The water shall receive a dose of chlorine, also fed at a constant, measured rate. The two rates shall be proportioned so that the chlorine concentration in the water in the pipe is maintained at a minimum of 50 mg/1 available chlorine. During the application of the chlorine, valves shall be manipulated to prevent the treatment dosage from flowing back into the line supplying the water. Chlorine application shall not cease until the entire main to be tested if filled with the chlorine solution. The chlorine water shall be retained in the main for at least 24 hours during which time all valves and hydrants in the section treated shall be operated in order to disinfect the appurtenances. At the end of this 24 hour period, the treated water shall contain no less than 25 mg/1 chlorine throughout the length of the main.

3.8.2. Chlorine Tablet Method. Tablet disinfection is best suited to short extensions (up to 2,500 feet and small diameter mains (up to 12 inches). Because the preliminary flushing step must be eliminated, this method shall be used only when scrupulous cleanliness has been exercised. It shall not be used if trench water or foreign material has entered the main or if the water is below 5`C (41`F). Calcium hypochlorite tablets are placed in each section of pipe and also in hydrants, hydrant branches and other appurtenances. They shall be attached by an adhesive, except for the tablets placed in hydrants and in the joints between the pipe sections. All the tablets within the main must be at the top of the main. If the tablets are fastened before the pipe section is placed in the trench, their position should be marked on the section to assure that there will be no rotation. In placing tablets in joints, they are either crushed or placed on the inside annular space or, if the type of assembly does not permit, they are rubbed like chalk on the butt ends of the sections to coat them with calcium hypochlorite. The adhesive may be Permatex No. 1 or any alternative approved by the OWNER. There shall be no adhesive on the tablet except on the broad side next to the surface to which the tablet is attached. Is desired, the calcium hypochlorite may be placed in the pipe in granular form at a rate of one (1) cup (4 fl. oz.) per each pipe. When installation has been completed, the main shall be filled with water at a velocity of less than 1-ft./- sec. This water shall remain in the pipe for at least 24 hours. Valves shall be manipulated so that the strong chlorine solution in the line being treated will not flow back into the line supplying the water.

3.8.3. Final Flushing. After the applicable retention period, the heavily chlorinated water shall be flushed from the main until the chlorine concentration in the water leaving the main is no higher than that generally prevailing in the system, or less than 1 mg/1. Chlorine residual determination shall be made to ascertain that the heavily chlorinated water has been removed from the pipeline.

3.8.4. Bacteriologic Tests. After final flushing, and before the water main is placed in service, a sample or samples shall be collected from the end of the line and tested for bacteriologic quality and shall show the absence of coliform organisms. If the number and frequency or samples is not prescribed by the public health authority having jurisdiction, at least one sample shall be collected from chlorinated supplies when a chlorine residual is maintained throughout the new main. From unchlorinated supplies, at least two samples shall be collected at least 24 hours apart. In the case of extremely long mains, it is desirable that samples be collected the length of the line as well as at its end. Samples for bacteriologic analysis shall be collected in sterile bottles treated with sodium thiosulfate. No hose or fire hydrant shall be used in collection of samples. A suggested sampling tap consists of a standard corporation cock installed in the main with a copper tube gooseneck assembly. After samples have been collected, the gooseneck assembly may be removed and retained for future use.

3.8.5. Repetition of Procedure. If the initial disinfection fails to produce satisfactory samples, disinfection shall be repeated until satisfactory samples have been obtained. The table method cannot be used in these subsequent disinfections. When the samples are satisfactory, the main may be placed in service.

SECTION 4 - SANITARY SEWER PIPEWORK

Work Included:

4.1. Under this section is included the furnishing, laying, jointing and testing of all sewer pipe, including sewer pipe, including sewer appurtenances, both in open cut and in tunnels, as shown on the drawings or as directed by the engineer.

4.2. MATERIALS.. The materials to be used in pipework shall be furnished by the contractor, as approved by the engineer to meet the requirements of the work of this contract as specified herein.

4.2.1. Gravity Sewer Pipe. Gravity sewer pipe may be of any of the following classifications. Any pipe found defective, not meeting the specifications, or improperly installed shall be rejected and so marked and shall be replaced by pipe approved by the engineer at no additional cost to OWNER.

4.2.1.1. Pipe and fittings shall be manufactured in conformance with the materials and methods described in ASTM Specification D-3084. Joint seals shall be compression type rubber gaskets in compliance with the requirements of ASTM Specification D-1869.

4.2.1.2. Pipe and fittings shall be manufactured in conformance with the materials and methods described in ASTM Specification F-789 and UNI-B-10. Gaskets shall comply with the requirements of ASTM Specification F-477.

4.2.2. Force Mains. Pressure sewer pipe may be of any of the following classifications. Any pipe found defective, not meeting the specifications, or improperly installed shall be rejected and so marked and shall be replaced by pipe approved by the engineer at no additional cost to OWNER.

4.2.2.1. Polyvinyl chloride pipe for force mains shall conform to AWWA Standard "Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe" C-900 - 750 Class 100 DR25, latest revision. Fittings for polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe shall be "Compact Fittings" short body, tar coated (not cement lined). Transition gaskets shall also be included, unless otherwise noted on the contract bid document or drawings.

4.2.3. Watertight Joint Materials. The contractor must exert every reasonable effort to secure a watertight joint and prevent infiltration of ground water into or exfiltration of sewage out of all pipe sewers and property service connections. To achieve this, joint material shall be made of the materials as specified herein, unless otherwise set forth in Special Provisions or Proposal. Any joint materials found to be defective or not meeting the specifications shall be rejected and replaced by approved joint materials at no additional cost to OWNER.

4.2.3.1. Factory fabricated joints for vitrified clay pipe shall be made in accordance with ASTM Standards for "Compression Joints for Vitrified Clay Bell and Spigot Pipe," C-425, Round-o-Ring type, latest revision; however, the rubber gaskets shall meet the specific test requirements set forth in Section 4.2.3. of the specifications under "Quality of Rubber Gaskets."

4.2.3.2. All rubber gaskets used in jointing vitrified clay pipe shall meet the following requirements:

1. Tensile Strength (ASTM D-412) Min. 2,300 psi
2. Elongation at Break (ASTM D-412) Min. 425%
3. Shore Durometer, Type A (ASTM D-676) 40, +5
4. Compression Set (ASTM D-395 Method B) Max. 15%
5. Water Absorption (ASTM D-471) Max. 5%
6. Specific Gravity (ASTM D-297) Max. var. + 0.03%
7. Ozone Resistance Rating (ASTM D-1171)1
   Properties after Air Oven Aging (96 hrs. at 158° F.)
8. Tensile Strength (ASTM D-412) 85% of Original
9. Elongation (ASTM D-412) 80% of Original.

The pipe manufacturer shall submit a "Statement of Findings," which shows the results of the above test for each shipment of pipe. It shall be the contractor's responsibility to require the above tests of the gaskets and to furnish the required "Statement of Findings" to OWNER. Gaskets shall be rubber; neoprene is not acceptable.

4.2.3.3. Water stop joints shall be Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) or other similar approved joint materials.

4.3. Property service connections shall be installed using Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe (PVC). The pipe shall be SDR-35 and shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D-3034. The joints shall be compression type rubber gasket joints conforming to ASTM D-1869. The location of all laterals and service lines shall be shown on the plans. Where not approved street grade has been established, the depth of the connection shall be based on the assumed future street grade or on the present street or ground surface, as determined by the engineer. At times when pipe laying is not in process, the open ends of the pipe shall be closed by a watertight plug or other approved means. This provision shall apply during the noon hour as well as overnight. If water is in the trench, the seal shall remain in place until the trench is pumped completely dry.

4.4. Sewer Pipe Laying Procedures. After the trench is excavated to a subgrade as specified, it shall be filled to grade with a minimum 6 inch gravel layer. This material shall be mechanically tamped to a density minimum of 90%. This material shall provide a smooth and uniform pipe bed for the entire length of the sewer pipe barrel. Ditching and pipe laying shall be uniformly in a straight line and to uniform elevations, unless otherwise specified on the plans. Pipe and fittings shall be carefully handled to avoid damage. Before placing pipe into the trench, the outside of the spigot and the inside of the bell shall be wiped clean and dry, free from oil and grease. Every precaution shall be taken to prevent foreign material from entering the pipe. During layout operation, no debris, tools, clothing or other material shall be placed into the pipe. After placing a length of pipe into the trench, the spigot end shall be centered in the bell, the pipe forced home, brought to the correct alignment and covered with an approved backfill material. When the pipe is installed, metallic tape shall be buried 1 foot above top of pipe for location purposes.

4.5. Pipe Jointing. In laying the sewer pipe to line and grade, the pipe shall be jointed in accordance with one of the approved jointing methods. OWNER reserves the right, before construction is in progress, to change the type of joints if its engineer so directs.

4.5.1. Vitrified Clay Pipe Jointing. The contractor shall furnish and install Vitrified Clay Pipe with factory-fabricated joints and rubber gaskets (see Section 4.2.3. of the Specification for joint material requirements). After the pipes are aligned in the trench and are ready to be jointed, all joint surfaces shall be thoroughly cleaned. The groove and the rubber gasket shall be lubricated, if and as required by the manufacturer's instructions and the rubber gasket placed in the groove. Then the bell and/or gasket shall be lubricated, if and as required; and the pipe shall then be carefully pushed or pulled home into place by an approved method, without damage to pipe or gasket, to form a watertight joint. Suitable devices shall be used to join the pipes together so that they will fit with a minimum open recess inside and outside and have tightly sealed joints. Care shall be taken not to use force to wedge apart and split bell or groove ends.

4.5.2. Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe (PVC) Jointing. The contractor shall make certain before jointing polyvinyl chloride pipe that the ring groove in the bell of the pipe is clean with no dirt or foreign material that could interfere with proper seating of the ring. Make sure pipe end is clean. with a clean dry cloth around the entire circumference from the end to one (1) inch beyond the reference mark. Lubricate the spigot end of the pipe, using only the lubricant supplied by the manufacturer. Be sure the entire circumference is covered. The coating shall be the equivalent of a brush coat of enamel paint. It can be applied by hand, cloth, pad, sponge, or glove. Do not lubricate the rubber ring or the ring groove in the bell because such lubricant could cause ring displacement. The level end is then inserted into the bell so that it is in contact with the ring. Brace the bell, while the level end is pushed in under the ring, so that previously completed joints in the line will not be closed up. The spigot end is pushed until the reference mark on the spigot end is flush with the end of the bell. If undue resistance to insertion of the level end is encountered or the reference mark does not reach the flush position, disassemble the joint and check the position of the ring. If it is twisted or pushed out of its seat, lean the ring, bell and level end and repeat the assembly steps.

4.6. Sewer Appurtenances. Appurtenances to the sewer shall be provided and laid in accordance with the drawings and in the manner as specified herein. Appurtenances in addition to those required by the drawings or the proposal, as approved or directed by the engineer, shall be paid for under the appropriate items of the proposal.

4.6.1. Branches and Fittings. Branches and fittings shall be provided and laid as and where directed. T-branches and Y-branches, placed in the sewer for property service connections, shall be located by the contractor, as directed by the engineer, at such points in the sewer so as to result in the property service connection having the shortest length possible between the sewer and property line or easement line, unless otherwise indicated on the drawing or directed by the engineer.

4.6.2. Stubs. Stubs for future sewer pipe shall be installed as indicated by the drawings. If the specified length of the stub is exceeded, there will be no additional cost to OWNER unless the extra length is ordered by the engineer. Existing sewer pipe stubs shall be removed as required, but only when directed by the engineer.

4.6.3. Stacks. Stacks shall be constructed as and where directed. The height of the stack shall be as indicated on the drawings, set forth in the proposal, as determined by the engineer. The stack shall be encased in concrete in accordance with the "Typical Sewer Details" drawings.

4.6.4. Drop Inlets. Drop inlets to the manhole shall be constructed as and where indicated by the drawings or either of the types shown on the "Typical Sewer Details" drawings, as directed by the engineer.

4.6.5. Cleanouts. Cleanouts on all service laterals shall be installed at the location shown on the plans and in accordance with the Wastewater Construction Standards.

4.6.6. Manholes. Manholes shall be constructed of the type shown on the "Typical Sewer Details" drawings to the elevations shown on the plan-profile sheets, or as directed. The manholes specified shall be Glass Fiber-Reinforced Polyester Manholes for use in sanitary sewer applications. They shall be a one-piece unit of one class, fabricated in a composite laminate. Walls shall be of uniform thickness and shall be free from thin spots and voids. Exterior surface shall be free of ridges and sharp protrusions and reinforcement. Interior surface shall also be smooth and free of ridges so as to facilitate self-cleaning. The exterior surface shall be covered with graded sand to facilitate bonding to the concrete base pad, cement stabilized sand backfill and cement grout used to seal around all incoming lines. The main line over which the manhole cut-out will be set shall be fitted with a seal ring as manufactured by Johns-Manville Manufacturing or equal. The manholes shall conform to ASTM D. 3753-81, Standard Specifications for Glass Fiber-Reinforced Polyester Manholes and all noted applicable documents. Materials, method of manufacture and manufacturing requirements must all conform to the above mentioned specification. The manufacture shall submit written certification that their product meets the requirements of ASTM D. 3753-81 with test results of specified manholes included.

4.6.7. Stoppers and Bulkheads. Open ends of pipes and branches small than 15 inches in diameter shall be sealed with stoppers, cemented into place in an acceptable manner using a rubber gasket between the stopper and socket. (See Section 4.5.1.). Openings 15 inches in diameter and larger shall be closed with brick bulkheads at least 4 inches thick or by other approved methods as authorized. All openings to the pipeline shall be satisfactorily protected from the entrance of earth, water or other material. If a temporary bulkhead is constructed to prevent sewage from backing into the trench excavation or to prevent foreign material from entering the sewer from the new sewer trench, the Contractor shall be responsible for reconstructing, repairing, or replacing those portion of the existing sewers removed or damaged by his operations. Existing bulkheads shall be removed as indicated by the drawings or set forth in the proposal, but not until directed by the engineer.

4.7. Air Testing. T his shall cover the testing of completed sections of installed air pressure. The contractor shall conduct low air pressure tests on completed sections of sewer mains. The air test results will be used to evaluate materials and construction methods on the pipe line sections, and successful air tests shall be mandatory for the acceptance of the lines.

4.7.1. Materials for Air Testing. The following materials will be utilized for air testing sewer mains.

4.7.1.1. Compressor Air Supply: Any source which will provide at least three hundred (300) cubic feet per minute at one hundred (100) pounds per square inch. The compressor air supply shall be furnished by the contractor.

4.7.1.2. Plugs , valves, pressure gauges, air hose, connections and other equipment necessary to conduct the air test shall be furnished by the owner. The test equipment for air testing will consist of valves, plugs, and pressure gauges used to control the rate at which air flows to the test section and to monitor the air pressure inside the plugs. Test equipment shall be assembled as follows:

a. hose connection
b. shut off valve
c. throttle valve
d. pressure reduction valve
e. monitoring pressure gauge

4.7.2. Test procedures. The following procedures will be utilized for air testing sewer mains:

4.7.2.1. Determine section of line to be tested.

4.7.2.2. Apply air pressure until the pressure inside the pipe reaches 4 psig.

4.7.2.3. Allow the pressure inside the pipe to stabilize, then bleed back to 3.5 psig.

4.7.2.4. At 3.5 psig., the time, temperature and pressure will be observed and recorded. A minimum of five (5) readings will be required for each test. If the time in seconds for the air pressure to decrease from 3.5 psig to 2.5 psig is greater than that shown in the following table, the pipe shall be presumed to be free from defect. When these rates are exceeded, pipe breakage, joint leakage, or leaking plugs are indicated and an inspection must be made to determine the cause. The contractor shall effect such repairs as may be required to accomplish a successful air test.

Table 1 minimum Test Time for Various Pipe Sizes

Nominal Pipe Size, in.	T(time) min/100 ft.	Nominal Pipe Size, in.	T(time) min/100 ft.
3	0.2	21	3.0
4	0.3	24	3.6
6	0.7	27	4.2
8	1.2	30	4.8
10	1.	33	5.4
12	1.8	36	6.0
15	2.1	39	6.6
18	2.4	42	7.3

4.8. Leakage Test. A leakage test may be requested by the engineer at any time to determine whether or not there is excessive infiltration and to assure that the sewer section is sub-stantially watertight. The engineer may order the contractor to make leakage tests of as many sections as may be necessary to determine whether the work complies with the criteria for the rate of leakage. A section shall consist of

a reach from one manhole to the next manhole provided the manholes are at least 300 feet apart and preferable 400 feet. Leakage tests shall be conducted, and measurements made, for a minimum of one hour. The tests may be conducted over a longer period of time with no reduction in the rate of leakage.

4.8.1. Leakage into the Sewer. Leakage into the sewer including manholes, shall not exceed a rate of 250 gallons per 24 hours per inch diameter per mile of sewer. There shall be no gushing or spurting streams entering the sewer or manhole and where encountered they shall be repaired regardless of the rate of infiltration at no additional cost to OWNER. Where practicable, the tests for leakage into the sewers shall be made at a time when the groundwater level is at a maximum, but it must be at least one foot above the top of the pipe of the highest elevation in the section being tested.

4.8.2. Leakage out of the Sewer. Where the groundwater level is less than one foot above the top of the pipe and where conditions will permit, the sewers shall be subjected to an internal pressure by plugging the pipe at both ends and then filling the sewer and manholes with clean water to a height above the top of the pipe sufficient to obtain satisfactory measurements to determine the rate of leakage. The rate of leakage from the sewers may be determined by either the amount of subsidence in the water surface level of the amount of water required to maintain the original water surface level above the top of the pipe. Leakage from the sewers as specified in Section 4.8.1., except that an allowance of an additional 10 percent of gallonage shall be permitted for each additional 2 feet of head over a basic 2 foot minimum internal head.

4.8.3. Requirements of the Contractor. The contractor shall construct such weirs or other means of measurements as may be required, shall furnish water and shall do all necessary pumping to enable the tests to be properly made. When a leakage test fails, the contractor shall do such other work as may be necessary until the rate of leakage meets the above requirements, as determined by additional leakage tests.

4.9. Deflection Testing for Gravity PVC Sewer Lines. No sooner than 30 days, nor later than 12 months after the pipe has been installed and backfilling has been completed, tests for deflection shall be made. A deflection of more than 5 percent of the inside diameter of the pipe shall be cause for rejection, and the line will be removed and replaced at the contractor's expense. A GO NO-GO Deflection Testing Mandrel, to be furnished by the contractor, and certified by the engineer, shall be used. The testing shall consist of the following:

1. Completely flush the line, if required, making sure the pipe is clean of any mud or debris that would hinder the passage of the mandrel.
2. During the final flushing of the line, attach a floating block or ball to the end of the mandrel pull rope and float the rope through the line.
3. After the rope is threaded through the line, connect the pull rope to the mandrel and place the mandrel in the entrance of the pipe.
4. Connect a retrieval rope to the back of the mandrel to pull it back if necessary.
5. Remove all slack in the pull rope and place a tape marker on the rope at the ends of the pipe where the mandrel will exit, determining the location of the mandrel in the line.
6. Using manhole guide pulleys, draw mandrel through the sewer line, if any irregularity of pipe deformation exceeding the allowable 5 percent is encountered in the line, the line shall be uncovered at the point.

7. If an obstructed or over-deflected section is found, locate it; dig down and uncover pipe; inspect the pipe; if any damaged pipe is found, replace it. If pipe is not damaged, re-round the pipe, replace and thoroughly tamp the embedment and initial backfill; replace remainder of backfill.
8. Re-test this entire section for deflection.
9. Any pipe removed shall be replaced by use of gasketed repair couplings. Each and every deflection test shall be conducted in the presence of the owner's or engineer's representative.

SECTION 6 - BACKFILL

6.1. WORK INCLUDED. Under this section is included the filling of excavated trenches and spaces around the completed structures to the original grades, unless otherwise shown on the drawings or set forth in the proposal.

6.2. OPEN CUT BACKFILL. Backfilling of excavated trenches in open cut shall be commenced as soon as possible after the water or sewer line is laid and the jointing and alignment are approved, but not until authorized by the OWNER.

6.2.1. Materials. The following materials shall be used to backfill the trenches in accordance with and in the manner indicated by the requirements specified herein, unless otherwise set forth in drawings or proposal.

6.2.1.1. Sandy Backfill Materials. Backfill in trenches for waterlines, sewer lines, property sewer service connections, and structures within the limits of existing or proposed paved surfaces shall be made with sand or sandy materials containing not more than 20 percent clay, and free from rocks, lumps and debris. The sand or sandy material shall be furnished by the CONTRACTOR, but shall be subject to the approval of the OWNER.

6.2.1.2. Selected Excavated Materials. Backfill in trenches for waterlines, sewer lines, property sewer connections, and structures outside the limits of existing or proposed paved surfaces, shall be made with selected excavated materials taken from the trench excavation, free from rocks and lumps greater than six (6) inches in their largest dimension, and free from debris. The OWNER will, at his discretion, reject any material he deems unsuitable for backfill.

6.3. BEDDING PROCEDURES. The following bedding procedures will be used for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe, Asbestos Cement Pipe and Vitrified Clay Pipe. Before pipes have been tested and approved, partial backfilling shall be done with approved material free from large clods.

Sand bedding zone shall extend from a point at least 6 inches below bottom of pipe to a point at least 6 inches above top of pipe, as well as at least 6 inches on each side of pipe and shall be compacted to at least 90% of maximum density as determined by ASTM Standard D698, latest revision.

Sand bedding from 6 inches below bottom of pipe to bottom of pipe shall be placed in one lift and shall be mechanically tamped. Sand bedding from bottom of pipe to spring line of pipe shall be placed by hand in 4 inch lifts and shall be hand tamped with proper tools. Sand bedding from spring line of pipe to 6 inches above top of pipe shall be placed in 6 inch lifts and shall be mechanically tamped.

When trench bottom is unstable, or when pipe is to be placed under groundwater (below water table), foundation preparation shall be required, preferably with ground water drawdown procedures. If drawdown equipment is not used or gravel stabilization or approved substitute shall be required and no pipe will be laid until stabilization is to the satisfaction of the OWNER.

6.3.1. Final Backfill Above Pipe Zone (6"Above Pipe or Conduit to Top of Ground). The backfill above the pipe zone shall be, until otherwise indicated on the drawings, in accordance with the following.

6.3.1.1. Class "A" Mechanical Compaction. Trench under flexible pavements and gravel surfaces - place Type "D" sand backfill material in layers not to exceed six (6) inches loose measurement. Compact with mechanical tampers to a dry density of at least 95% of maximum density as determined by ASTM Standard D698, latest revision. Each layer, before compaction, shall be leveled and evenly distributed on both sides of the pipe so as not to disturb, displace or damage the water or sewer line in any way. When the material does not contain sufficient moisture to obtain thorough compaction, it shall be moistened or wetted as directed by the OWNER. Use under proposed road.

6.3.1.2. Class "B" Mechanical Compaction. Trench under unimproved roadways, unsurfaced road shoulders, unimproved driveways and under turfed or seeded lawn areas- place Type "E" excavated material in backfill layers not to exceed twelve (12) inches loose measurement. Compact with mechanical tampers to at least 90% of maximum density as determined by ASTM Standard D698, latest revision. Each layer, before compaction, shall be leveled and evenly distributed on both sides of the pipe so as not to disturb, displace or damage the water or sewer line in any way. When the material does not contain sufficient moisture to obtain thorough compaction, it shall be moistened or wetted as directed by the OWNER.

6.4. SPECIAL BACKFILL CONDITIONS The trenches need not be completely back- filled until all required pressure and leakage tests are performed and until the utilities system as installed conform to the requirements specified.

Trenches improperly backfilled shall be reopened to the depth required for proper compaction, and refilled and compacted as specified, or the condition shall be otherwise corrected as permitted by the OWNER. The surface shall be restored to its original condition as nearly as practicable and as hereinafter specified. Immediately after the pipe, or utility lines, is bedded and joined, as indicated on the drawings or specified, the backfill material shall be deposited within the pipe zone in uniform layers not to exceed (6) inches at the proper moisture content. The layers shall be compacted with mechanical hand tampers or other approved equipment to the density herein specified. The backfill shall rise the same on each side of the pipe and coincidentally be tamped in layers until there is a cover of 12 inches over the top of the pipe. Walking or working over the pipe will not be permitted until the trench is backfilled to 12 inches above the pipe.

Where pavement on a State Highway is cut, final backfill material and pavement shall be replaced in accordance with State Highway Department requirements.

Where pavement is cut in locations other than State Highways, whether gravel topping or hard surfaced, the surfaced shall be restored to its original finish and in equal condition and quantities as found at the beginning of construction. Trenches on hard surfaced roads and State Highways shall be backfilled to a density of 95% as determined by the American Association of State Highway Officials Method T99 for compaction and density of soils.

Successful CONTRACTOR shall determine all requirements of various controlling agencies in connection with backfilling, pavement replacement and general construction before starting construction.

In traffic areas including individual driveways, CONTRACTOR shall restore traffic surfaces to usable condition immediately upon completion of pipe installation. In such locations, OWNER will rely upon hydrostatic test to determine acceptability of construction. All excess dirt from all construction work shall be disposed of promptly by CONTRACTOR, either by hauling or at directions of OWNER.

6.5. BACKFILLING AT STRUCTURE. Shall not begin until construction below finish grade has been approved, undergound utilities systems have been inspected, tested and approved, forms removed, and the excavation cleaned of trash and debris. Backfill shall be brought to indicate finish grade. All forms, shoring and bracing shall be removed before backfilling is started. Care shall be taken to prevent any wedging action of backfill against a structure, and slopes bounding the excavation shall be stepped or serrated to prevent such wedge action. Backfill shall be placed in uniform layers, dried or moistened as required to obtain approximate optimum moisture content, and tamped with mechanical hand tampers or other approved equipment to a density of at least 95 percent of maximum density at optimum moisture. The thickness of each loose layer shall not exceed six inches.

6.5.1. Backfilling Walls of Lift Station Structures. During backfilling operations and in the formation of embankments, equipment that will overload the structure in passing over and compacting these fills shall not be use. Heavy equipment for spreading and compacting backfill shall not be operated closer to foundation or retaining walls than a distance equal to the height of backfill above the top of footing; the area remaining shall be compacted in layers not more than 6 inches in compacted thickness with power-driven hand tampers suitable for the material being compacted. Backfill shall not be placed against foundation walls prior to 7 days after completion of the walls. Backfill shall be brought up to finished elevation indicated on drawings, on each side of the wall. Foundation walls shall be backfilled in a maximum of 3'-0" intervals until finished grade has been established.

6.6. COMPACTION - General. Backfill materials shall be placed in uniform layers and compacted to percentage of density hereinafter specified. Moisture shall be controlled between optimum and 2 percentages points over. Methods to secure optimum moisture content shall be CONTRACTOR'S responsibility. Compacting equipment and method of compaction shall be the responsibility of CONTRACTOR and shall be such that uniform density will be obtained over entire area and depth of material being compacted. Fill material shall be thoroughly broken up before being spread into uniform layers.

Backfill not otherwise specified shall be compacted to at least 95% of maximum density as determined by ASTM Specification D698.

6.7. DETERMINATION OF DENSITY. Determination of density of backfill, shall be made in conformance with the requirements of ASTM D2922, ASTM D1556 or ASTM D2167.

Determination of density of cohesionless material shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2049. Relative density of 75% shall be considered as satisfactory for cohesionless material.

Testing shall be performed by a soil consultant employed by the OWNER and at no expense to the CONTRACTOR to test compaction of backfill material. When soil tests indicate densities less than those specified by this section, the material shall be recompacted and tested at the CONTRACTOR'S expense.

6.8. CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT. Ditching machines will be permitted at CONTRACTOR'S option, subject to the approval of the OWNER, whenever their use is applicable and practical for work shown on the drawings. A certain amount of hand excavation may be required due to special field conditions and to minimize damage to improvements and trees.

In compacting by rolling or operating heavy equipment parallel with the pipe, displacement of or injury to the pipe shall be avoided. Any pipe damaged thereby shall be repaired or replaced at the option of the OWNER and at the expense of the CONTRACTOR.

6.9. RESTORATION AND CLEANUP. The CONTRACTOR shall restore or replace all removed or damaged paving, curbing sidewalks, gutters, shrubbery, fences, sod, or other disturbed surfaces of structures in a condition equal to that before the work began and to the satisfaction of the OWNER and shall furnish all labor and material incidental thereto, in restoring improved surfaces, new pavement shall be laid. No permanent surface shall be placed within 30 days after the backfilling has been completed, except by order of the OWNER.

Surplus pipeline material, tools and temporary structures shall be removed by the CONTRACTOR. All dirt, rubbish, and excess earth from excavations shall be hauled to a dump provided by the CONTRACTOR, and the construction site shall be left clean, to the satisfaction of the OWNER.

SECTION 11 - CONTRACTOR'S TRENCH EXCAVATION SYSTEM AND SHORING SAFETY PLAN

11.1. SCOPE. This item shall cover CONTRACTORS furnishing a Safety System Plan, and all labor and materials for installation and maintenance of the Trench Safety System.

11.2. APPLICATION. For any trench excavation at a depth of five (5) feet or greater or where shown on plans, provide trench safety system. Trench safety system shall be in accordance with details shown on CONTRACTOR'S Trench Excavation and Shoring Safety Plan.

11.3. QUALITY ASSURANCE. Trench Safety System to meet appropriate requirements established in Section 756.022 of the Texas Health and Safety Code and Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) Safety & Health Regulations, 29 CFR 1926, Subpart P - Excavations, Trenching and Shoring, as may be amended, and OSHA's proposed standard on trenching excavation published in Volume 54, Page 209, of the Federal Register, October 31, 1989; Pages 45959-45991. Those standards are incorporated into these specifications by reference. Should the applicable OSHA standards be modified or amended, the more stringent standards shall apply.

11.4. SUBMITTALS. The CONTRACTOR shall provide Trench Safety System Plan for Project prior to Award of the Contract. The Plan shall incorporate the detailed plans and specifications for a Trench Safety System conforming to OSHA standards. The Plan shall account for project site conditions, CONTRACTOR's trench construction means, methods, techniques or procedures, the relationship of spoil to edge of trench, and CONTRACTOR's equipment to be used in construction of project facilities requiring trench Safety System(s). CONTRACTOR shall submit a certificate signed and sealed by a Registered Professional Engineer licensed in the State of Texas stating that CONTRACTOR's Trench Safety System Plan has been designed in conformance with appropriate OSHA standards and applicable specifications as required by this item. CONTRACTOR's Trench Safety System Plan shall demonstrate the type(s) of Trench Safety System to be used on the project.

11.5. MATERIALS. The materials used in the Trench Safety System shall be furnished by the CONTRACTOR, as approved by the OWNER, to comply with the requirements of the work of the CONTRACTOR as specified therein.

11.5.1. Timber. Trench sheeting materials to be full size, a minimum of two inches in thickness, solid and sound, free from weakening defects such as loose knots and splits.

11.5.2. Steel Sheet Piling. Steel sheet piling shall at a minimum conform to one of the following specifications:

a. ASTM A328.
b. ASTM A572, Grade 50.
c. ASTM A690.

Steel for stringers (wales) and cross braces shall conform to ASTM A588.

11.5.3. Steel Trench Boxes. Portable steel trench box shall at a minimum be constructed of steel conforming to ASTM Specification A-36. Connecting bolts used shall conform to Specifications ASTM A-307. Welds to conform to requirements of AWS Specification D1.1.

11.5.4. Other Materials. Other materials to be utilized shall at a minimum conform to applicable ASTM standards.

11.6. INSTALLATION. Trench safety system shall be constructed, installed, and maintained in accordance with the Trench Safety System Plan prepared by the CONTRACTOR'S Registered Professional Engineer.

11.6.1. Timber Sheeting. Timber sheeting and size of uprights, stringers (wales), and cross bracing to be installed in accordance with CONTRACTOR'S plan. Place cross braces in true horizontal position, spaced vertically, and secured to prevent sliding, falling, or kickouts. Cross braces to be placed at each end of stringers (wales), in addition to other locations required. Cross braces and stringers (wales) to be placed at splices of uprights, in addition to other locations required.

11.6.2. Steel Sheet Piling. Steel sheet piling of equal or greater strength may be used in lieu of timber trench shoring shown in the OSHA tables (proposed standards). Drive steel sheet piling to at least minimum depth below trench bottom as recommended by CONTRACTOR'S Registered Professional Engineer providing design. Place cross braces in true horizontal position, spaced vertically and secured to prevent sliding, falling, or kickouts. Cross braces to be placed at each end of stringers (wales), in addition to other locations required.

11.6.3. Trench Boxes. Portable trench box may be used in lieu of timber trench shoring shown in the OSHA tables (proposed standards) and shall be designed to provide equal or greater protection than timber trench shoring shown in the OSHA tables. In cases where top of portable trench box will be below top of trench, the trench must be sloped to the maximum allowable slope for the soil conditions existing on the Project. In areas where a sloped trench will affect the integrity of existing structures, CONTRACTOR to protect structures prior to sloping trench.

11.6.4. Trench Jacks. When trench jacks are used for cross bracing and/or stringers (wales), the trench jacks shall provide protection greater than or equal to the timber cross bracing shown in the OSHA tables (proposed standards). Trench jacks to be placed at each end of stringers (wales) in addition to other locations required.

11.7. SUPERVISION. CONTRACTOR must provide competent supervisory personnel at each trench while work is in progress to ensure CONTRACTOR'S methods, procedures, equipment, and materials pertaining to the safety systems in this Item are sufficient to meet requirements of Texas Law and OSHA Standards.

11.8. MAINTENANCE OF SAFETY SYSTEM. The safety system shall be maintained in the condition as shown on the Trench Excavation and Shoring Safety Plan as designed by the CONTRACTOR'S Registered Professional Engineer. The CONTRACTOR shall take all necessary precaution to ensure the safety systems are not damaged during their use. If at any time during its use a safety system is damaged, personnel shall be immediately removed from the trench excavation area and the safety system repaired. The CONTRACTOR shall take all necessary precautions to ensure no loads, except those provided for in the plan, are imposed upon the trench safety system.

11.9. INSPECTION. CONTRACTOR shall make daily inspection of trench safety system to ensure that the system meets OSHA requirements. Daily inspection to be made by competent personnel. If evidence of possible cave-ins or slides is apparent, all work in the trench shall cease until necessary precautions have been taken to safeguard personnel entering trench. CONTRACTOR to maintain permanent record of daily inspections.

11.10. REMOVAL. Bed and backfill pipe to a point at least one (1) foot above top of pipe or other embedded items prior to removal of any portion of trench safety system. Bedding and backfill to be in accordance to other applicable specification items. Backfilling and removal of trench supports shall be in accordance with CONTRACTOR'S Trench Excavation and Shoring Safety Plan. Removal of trench safety system to be accomplished in such a manner to cause no damage to pipe or other embedded items. Remove no braces or trench supports until all personnel have evacuated the trench. Backfill trench to within five (5) feet of natural ground prior to removal of entire trench safety system.

ITEM 471

FRAMES, GRATES, RINGS, AND COVERS

471.1. Description. Furnish and install frames, grates, rings and covers for inlets, manholes, and other structures.

471.2. Materials.

A. **Welded Steel Grates and Frames.** Provide welded steel grates and frames as an assembly conforming to the member size, dimensions, and details shown on the plans. Fabricate these assemblies in accordance with Item 441, "Steel Structures." Use steel that meets ASTM A 36 or equal,

B. **Frame, Grate, Ring, and Cover Castings.** Provide clean castings conforming to the shape and dimensions shown on the plans. Ensure that the castings are free from sand and blow holes or other defects and that surfaces of the castings are reasonably smooth, Remove runners, risers, fins, and other cast-on pieces from the castings, and grind these areas smooth. Cast or machine the bearing surfaces between manhole rings and covers and between grates and frames with such precision that uniform bearing is provided throughout the perimeter area of contact. Matchmark pairs of machined castings for proper identification at installation.

   Provide steel castings conforming to ASTM A 27. Furnish Grade 70-36 unless otherwise specified. Provide gray iron castings conforming to ASTM A 48, Class 35B. Provide ductile iron castings conforming to ASTM A 536. Use Grade 65-45-12 unless otherwise specified. Frame, grate, ring, and cover castings must meet the proof-load testing requirements of AASHTO M 306. Use commercial type frames, rings, risers or appurtenances only with prior approval of the Engineer,

C. **Documentation.** Furnish mill test reports or manufacturer's certification to the Engineer for each lot or shipment of steel and iron materials. For castings, also furnish a manufacturer's certification stating that the casting meets the proof-load testing requirements of AASHTO M 306.

471.3. **Construction.** Construct and install frames, grates, rings, and covers in accordance with the details shown on the plans. Weld in accordance with Item 448, "Structural Field Welding." Tack-weld grates and covers to the frame or ring when directed by the Engineer,

Galvanize steel castings and welded steel grates and frames in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanizing." Galvanizing is not required for iron castings unless used in conjunction with structural steel shapes or shown on the plans.

Provide galvanized bolts and nuts in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanizing."

ITEM 479

ADJUSTING MANHOLES AND INLETS

479.1. Description. Adjust or cap existing manholes or inlets. Drainage junction boxes will be classified as manholes.

479.2. Materials. Reuse removed manhole and inlet rings, plates, grates, covers, and brick if they are in good condition as determined by the Engineer. Provide additional materials in accordance with Item 465, "Manholes and Inlets," at no cost to the Department. Single- or multiple piece prefabricated metal extension rings may be used for the adjustment of manholes as approved. Provide concrete that meets Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete."

479.3. Construction. Perform all work in accordance with Item 465, "Manholes and Inlets," Excavate and backfill in accordance with Item 400, "Excavation and Backfill for Structures." Carefully remove manhole and inlet rings, covers, plates, and grates to be reused. Clean mortar and grease from the contact areas of all reused items. Dispose of unused removed material as directed. Use construction methods described in Sections 479.3.A, "Lowering the Top of a Manhole or Inlet;" and 479.3.B, "Raising the Top of a Manhole or Inlet," unless otherwise shown on the plans.

A. **Lowering the Top of** a **Manhole or Inlet.** Remove a sufficient depth of brick courses or concrete to permit reconstruction on a batter not exceeding 1 in. horizontal to 2 in. vertical. Where brickwork is present, clean the mortar from the top course of brick, Rebuild the manhole or inlet to the original top dimensions or to the dimensions shown in the plans. Install the manhole or inlet ring and the cover, plate, or grate to conform to the proposed new surface contour.

B. **Raising the Top of** a **Manhole or Inlet.** Clean the top surface of brick or concrete. Construct to the proper new elevation using new brick, brick salvaged from other manholes or inlets, prefabricated metal extension rings, concrete rings, or Class A concrete, Install the manhole or inlet ring and the cover, plate, or grate to conform to the proposed new surface contour. Install prefabricated extension rings in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. **Capping an Inlet or Manhole.** Remove the inlet or manhole to a minimum of 1 ft. below subgrade elevation or as indicated on the plans. Cap as shown on the plans.

ITEM 400

EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL FOR STRUCTURES

400.1. Description. Excavate for placement and construction of structures and backfill structures, Cut and restore pavement.

400.2. Materials. Use materials that meet the requirements of the following Items:

- Item 401, "Plowable Backfill"
- Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete"
- DMS-4600, "Hydraulic Cement"

400.3. Construction.

A. Excavation.

1. General. Excavate to the lines and grades shown on the plans or as directed, Provide slopes, benching, sheeting, bracing, pumping, and bailing as necessary to maintain the stability and safety of excavations up to 5 ft. deep. Excavation protection for excavations deeper than 5 ft. are governed by Item 402, "Trench Excavation Protection," and Item 403, "Temporary Special Shoring." Use satisfactory excavated material as backfill or as embankment fill in accordance with Item 132, "Embankment." Dispose of material not incorporated into the final project off the right of way in accordance with federal, state, and local regulations.

When excavating for installation of structures across private property or beyond the limits of the embankment, keep any topsoil removed separate, and replace it, as nearly as feasible, in its original position, Restore the area to an acceptable condition.
Excavate drilled shafts in accordance with Item 416, "Drilled Shaft Foundations."

a. Obstructions. Remove obstructions to the proposed construction, including trees and other vegetation, debris, and structures, over the width of the excavation to a depth of 1 ft, below the bottom of excavation, If abandoned storm drains, sewers, or other drainage systems are encountered, remove as required to clear the new structure, and plug in an approved manner. After removing obstructions, restore the bottom of the excavation to grade by backfilling in accordance with this Item. Dispose of surplus materials in accordance with federal, state, and local regulations.

b. Excavation in *Streets.* When structures are installed in streets, highways, or other paved areas, cut pavement and base to neat lines. Restore pavement structure after completion of excavation and backfilling.

Maintain and control traffic in accordance with the approved traffic control plan and the TMUTCD.

c. Utilities. Comply with the requirements of Article 7,12, "Responsibility for Damage Claims."

d. Conduct work with minimum disturbance of existing utilities, and coordinate work in or near utilities with the utility owners. Inform utility owners sufficiently before work begins to allow them time to identify, locate, reroute, or make other adjustments to utility lines.

Avoid cutting or damaging underground utility lines that are to remain in place. If damage occurs, promptly notify the utility company, If an active sanitary sewer line is damaged during excavation, provide temporary flumes across the excavation while open, and restore the lines when backfilling has progressed to the original bedding lines of the cut sewer.

e. De-Watering. Do not construct or place structures in the presence of water unless approved. Place precast members, pipe, and concrete only on a dry, firm surface. Remove water by bailing, pumping, well-point installation, deep wells, underdrains, or other approved method.

If structures are approved for placement in the presence of water, remove standing water in a manner that does not allow water movement through or alongside concrete being placed. Do not pump or bail while placing structural concrete or for a period of at least 36 hr. thereafter unless from a suitable sump separated from the concrete work. Pump or bail during placement of seal concrete only to the extent necessary to maintain a static head of water within the cofferdam, Do not pump or bail to de-water inside a sealed cofferdam until the seal has aged at least 36 hr.
If the bottom of an excavation cannot be de-watered to the point that the subgrade is free of mud or it is difficult to keep reinforcing steel clean, place a stabilizing material in the bottom of the excavation. Stabilizing material may be flexible base, cement-stabilized base or backfill, lean concrete, or other approved material. If lean concrete is used, provide concrete with at least 275 lb. of cement per cubic yard, and place to a minimum depth of 3 in. Stabilizing material placed for the convenience of the Contractor will be at the Contractor's expense.

2. **Bridge Foundations and Retaining Walls.** Do not disturb material below the bottom of footing grade. Do not backfill to compensate for excavation that has extended below grade. If excavation occurs below the proposed footing grade, fill the area with concrete at the time the footing is placed. The additional concrete placed will be at the Contractor's expense.

   If requested, take cores to determine the character of the supporting materials. Provide an intact sample adequate to judge the character of the founding material. Take these cores when the excavation is close to completion, Cores should be approximately 5 ft. deeper than the proposed founding grade,
   If the founding stratum is rock or other hard material, remove loose material, clean, and cut to a firm surface that is level, stepped, or serrated, as directed. Clean out soft seams, and fill with concrete at the time the-footing is placed.

   If the material at the footing grade of a retaining wall, bridge bent, or pier is a mixture of compressible and incompressible material, do not place the foundation until the Engineer has inspected the excavation and authorized changes have been made to provide a uniform bearing condition.

3. **Cofferdams.** The term "cofferdam" designates any temporary or removable structure constructed to hold surrounding earth, water, or both out of the excavation whether the structure is formed of soil, timber, steel, concrete, or a combination of these. Cofferdams may require the use of pumping wells or well points for de-watering.

   For sheet-pile or other types of cofferdams requiring structural members, submit details and design calculations bearing the seal of a licensed professional engineer for review before constructing the cofferdam, The Department reserves the right to reject designs. Design structural systems to comply with the AASHTO *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges* or AASHTO *LRFD Bridge Design Specifications.* Interior dimensions of cofferdams must provide sufficient clearance for the construction, inspection, and removal of required forms and, if necessary, sufficient room to allow pumping outside the forms. In general, extend sheet-pile cofferdams well below the bottom of the footings, and make concrete seals as well braced and watertight as practicable.

For foundation seals, use Class E concrete unless otherwise specified. Place concrete foundation seals in accordance with Item 420, "Concrete Structures." Seals placed for the convenience of the Contractor will be at the Contractor's expense.

When the Engineer judges it to be impractical to de-water inside a cofferdam and a concrete seal is to be placed around piling driven within the cofferdam, make the excavation deep enough to allow for swelling of the material at the base of the excavation during pile-driving operations. Amer driving the piling, remove swelling material to the bottom of the seal grade. Where it is possible to dewater inside the cofferdam without placing a seal, remove the foundation material to exact footing grades after driving piling. Do not backfill a foundation to compensate for excavation that has been extended below grade; fill such areas below grade with concrete at the time the seals or footings are placed.

Unless otherwise provided, remove cofferdams after completing the substructure without disturbing or damaging the structure.

4. Culverts and Storm Drains. When the design requires special bedding conditions for culverts or storm drains, an excavation diagram will be shown on the plans. Do not exceed these limits of excavation.

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, construct pipe structures in an open cut with vertical sides extending to a point 1 ft. above the pipe. When site conditions or the plans do not prohibit sloping the cut, the excavation may be stepped or laid back to a stable slope beginning 1 ft. above the pipe. Maintain the stability of the excavation throughout the construction period.

For pipe to be installed in fill above natural ground, construct the embankment to an elevation at least 1 ft. above the top of the pipe, and then excavate for the pipe.

a. Unstable Material. When unstable soil is encountered at established footing grade, remove the material to a depth of no more than 2 ft. below the grade of the structure unless the Engineer authorizes additional depth. Replace soil removed with stable material in uniform layers at most 8 in. deep (loose measurement). Each layer must have enough moisture to be compacted by rolling or tamping as required to provide a stable foundation for the structure.

When it is not feasible to construct a stable foundation as outlined above, use special materials such as flexible base, cement-stabilized base, cement-stabilized backfill, or other approved material.

b. Incompressible Material. If rock, part rock, or other incompressible material is encountered at established footing grade while placing prefabricated elements, remove the incompressible material to 6 in. below the footing grade, backfill with an approved compressible material, and compact in accordance with Section 400.3.C, "Backfill."

B. Shaping and Bedding. For precast box sections, place at least 2 in, of fine granular material on the base of the excavation before placing the box sections. For pipe installations, use bedding as shown in Figure 1, Use Class C bedding unless otherwise shown on the plans. The Engineer may require the use of a template to secure reasonably accurate shaping of the foundation material. Where cement-stabilized backfill is indicated on the plans, undercut the excavation at least 4 in. and backfill with stabilized material to support the pipe or box at the required grade.

C. Backfill.

1. General. As soon as practical, backfill the excavation after placement of the permanent structure. Use backfill free from stones large enough to interfere with compaction; large or frozen lumps that will not break down readily under compaction; and wood or other extraneous material. Obtain backfill material from excavation or from other sources.

In areas not supporting a completed roadbed, retaining wall, or embankment, place backfill in layers at most 10 in. deep (loose measurement). In areas supporting a portion of a roadbed, retaining wall, or embankment, place backfill in uniform layers at most 8 in. deep (loose measurement). Compact each layer to meet the density requirements of the roadbed, retaining wall, embankment material, or as shown on the plans.

Bring each layer of backfill material to the moisture content needed to obtain the required density. Use mechanical tamps or rammers to compact the backfill. Rollers may be used to compact backfill if feasible.

Cohesionless materials such as sand may be used for backfilling. Compact cohesionless materials using vibratory equipment, waterponding, or a combination of both.

2. Bridge Foundations, Retaining Walls, and Box Culverts. Do not place backfill against the structure until the concrete has reached the design strength required in Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete."

Backfill retaining walls with material meeting the requirements of Item 423, "Retaining Walls." Backfill around bridge foundations and culverts using material with no particles more than 4 in, in greatest dimension and with a gradation that permits thorough compaction. Rock or gravel mixed with soil may be used if the percentage of fines is sufficient to fill all voids and ensure a uniform and thoroughly compacted mass of proper density.

Where backfill material is being placed too close to the structure to permit compaction with blading and rolling equipment, use mechanical tamps and rammers to avoid damage to the structure.

Avoid wedging action of backfill against structures. To prevent such action, step or serrate slopes bounding the excavation. Place backfill uniformly around bridge foundations. Place backfill along both sides of culverts equally and in uniform layers.

The Engineer may require backfilling of structures excavated into hard, erosion-resistant material, and subject to erosive forces, with stone or lean concrete.

Box culverts may be opened to traffic as soon as sufficient backfill and embankment has been placed over the top to protect culverts against damage from heavy construction equipment. Repair damage to culvert caused by construction traffic at no additional expense to the Department.

3. **Pipe.** After installing bedding and pipe as required, bring backfill material to the proper moisture condition and place it equally along both sides of the pipe in uniform layers at most 8 in, deep (loose measurement), Compact each lift mechanically. Thoroughly compact materials placed under the haunches of the pipe to prevent damage or displacement of the pipe. Continue to place backfill in this manner to the top-of-pipe elevation. Place and compact backfill above the top of the pipe in accordance with Section 400.3.C.1, "General."

The Engineer may reject backfill material containing more than 20% by weight of material retained on a 3-in. sieve; with large lumps not easily broken down; or that cannot be spread in loose layers. Material excavated by a trenching machine will generally meet the requirements of this Section as long as large stones are not present.

Where pipe extends beyond the toe of slope of the embankment and the depth of cover provided by backfill to the original ground level is less than the minimum required by the specifications for the type of pipe involved, place and compact additional material until the minimum cover has been provided.

4, Cement-Stabilized Backfill. When shown on the plans, backfill the excavation to the elevations shown with cement-stabilized backfill. Use cement-stabilized backfill that contains aggregate, water, and a minimum of 7% hydraulic cement based on the dry weight of the aggregate, in accordance with Tex-120-E. Use clean sand as aggregate for cement-stabilized backfill unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use only approved aggregate.

Place cement-stabilized backfill equally along the sides of structures to prevent strain on or displacement of the structure, Fill voids when placing cement-stabilized backfill. Use hand operated tampers if necessary to fill voids.

5. Plowable Backfill. When shown on the plans, backfill the excavation with flowable backfill to the elevations shown. Prevent the structure from being displaced during the placement of the flowable fill, and prevent flowable fill from entering culverts and drainage structures.

ITEM 402

TRENCH EXCAVATION PROTECTION

402.1. Description. Furnish and place excavation protection for trenches deeper than 5 ft.

402.2. Construction. Provide vertical or sloped cuts, benches, shields, support systems, or other systems providing the necessary protection in accordance with OSHA Standards and Interpretations, 29 CFR 1926, Subpart P, "Excavations."

ITEM 420
CONCRETE STRUCTURES

420.1. Description. Construct concrete structures.

420.2. Materials.

A. Concrete. Provide concrete conforming to Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete," For each type of structure or unit, provide the class of concrete shown on the plans or in pertinent governing specifications.

B. Grout or Mortar. Provide grout or mortar conforming to Section 421.2.F', "Mortar and Grout."

C. Latex. Provide an acrylic-polymer latex admixture (acrylic resin emulsion per DMS-4640, "Chemical Admixtures for Concrete") suitable for producing polymer-modified concrete or mortar. Do not allow latex to freeze.

D. Reinforcing Steel. Provide reinforcing steel conforming to Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel."

E. Expansion Joint Material. Provide materials that conform to the requirements of DMS-6310, "Joint Sealants and Fillers":

- Provide preformed fiber expansion joint material that conforms to the dimensions shown on the plans.
- Provide preformed bituminous fiber material unless otherwise specified.
- Provide a Class 4, 5, or 7 low-modulus silicone sealant unless otherwise directed,
- Provide asphalt board that conforms to dimensions shown on the plans.
- Provide re-bonded neoprene filler that conforms to the dimensions shown on the plans

F. Waterstop. Provide rubber or polyvinyl chloride (PVC) waterstops that conform to DMS-6160, Waterstops, Nylon Reinforced Neoprene Sheet, and Elastomeric Pads," unless otherwise shown on the plans.

G. Evaporation Retardants. Provide evaporation retardants that conform to the requirements of DMS-4650, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants."

H. Curing Materials. Provide membrane curing compounds that conform to the requirements of DMS-4650, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants."

Provide cotton mats that consist of a filling material of cotton "bat" or "bats" (at least 12 oz. per square yard) completely covered with unsized cloth (at least 6 oz. per square yard) stitched longitudinally with continuous parallel rows of stitching spaced at less than 4 in., or tuft both longitudinally and transversely at intervals less than 3 in. Provide cotton mats that are free from tears and in good general condition. Provide a flap at least 6 in. wide consisting of 2 thicknesses of the covering and extending along 1 side of the mat.
Provide polyethylene sheeting that is at least 4 mils thick and free from visible defects. Provide only clear or opaque white sheeting when the ambient temperature during curing exceeds 60°F or when applicable to control temperature during mass pours.

Provide burlap-polyethylene mats made from burlap impregnated on 1 side with a film of opaque white pigmented polyethylene, free from visible defects. Provide laminated mats that have at least 1 layer of an impervious material such as polyethylene, vinyl plastic, or other acceptable material (either as a solid sheet or impregnated into another fabric) and are free of visible defects.

I. **Epoxy.** Unless otherwise specified, provide epoxy materials that conform to DMS-6100, "Epoxy and Adhesives."

420.3. Equipment.

A. Fogging Equipment. Use fogging equipment that can apply water in a fine mist, not a spray. Produce the fog using equipment that pumps water or water and air under high pressure through a suitable atomizing nozzle. Use hand-held mechanical equipment portable enough to use in the direction of any prevailing wind and adaptable for intermittent use to prevent excessive wetting of the concrete.

B. Transporting and Placing Equipment. Use appropriate transporting and placing equipment such as buckets, chutes, buggies, belt conveyors, pumps, or other equipment as necessary, Do not transport or convey concrete through equipment made of aluminum, Use carts with pneumatic tires for carting or wheeling concrete over newly placed slabs.

Use tremies to control the fall of concrete or for underwater placement, Use tremies that are watertight and of large enough diameter to allow the placement of the concrete but less than 14 in. in diameter. For underwater placements, construct the tremie so that the bottom can be sealed and opened once the tremie has been fully charged with concrete.

Use pumps with lines at least 5 in. I,D, where Grade 2 or smaller coarse aggregate is used, and at least 8 in. I.D. for Grade 1 coarse aggregate.

C. Vibrators. Use immersion-type vibrators for consolidation of concrete. Provide at least I standby vibrator for emergency use.

D. Screeds and Work Bridges for Bridge Slabs. For bridge slabs use a self-propelled transverse screed or a mechanical longitudinal screed. Use transverse screeds that are able to follow the skew of the bridge for skews greater than 15° unless otherwise approved, Equip transverse screeds with a pan float. Manually operated screeding equipment may be used if approved for top slabs of culverts, small placements, or unusual conditions. Use screeds that are rigid and heavy enough to hold true to shape and have sufficient adjustments to provide for the required camber or section. Equip the screeds, except those of the roller drum type, with metal cutting edges.

For bridge slabs, use sufficient work bridges for finishing operations, Mount a carpet drag to a work bridge or a moveable support system that can vary the area of carpet in contact with the concrete, Use carpet pieces long enough to cover the entire width of the placement. Splice or overlap the carpet as necessary. Ensure that enough carpet is in contact longitudinally with the concrete being placed to provide the desired surface finish, Use artificial grass-type carpeting having a molded polyethylene pile face with a blade length between 5/8 and 1 in, and with a minimum weight of 70 oz. per square yard. Ensure that the carpet has a strong, durable backing not subject to rot and that the facing is adequately bonded to the backing to withstand the intended use. A burlap drag, attached to the pan float on a transverse screed, may be used instead of the carpet drag.

E. Temperature Recording Equipment. For mass concrete operations or as otherwise specified, use strip chart temperature recording devices, recording maturity meters in accordance with Tex-426-A, or other approved devices that are accurate to within ±2°F within the range of 32 to 2I2°F.

F. Artificial Heating Equipment. Use artificial heating equipment as necessary for maintaining the concrete temperatures as specified in Section 420.4,0,1 I, "Placing Concrete in Cold Weather."

G. Sawing Equipment. Use sawing equipment capable of cutting grooves in completed bridge slabs and top slabs of direct-traffic culverts. Provide grooves that are 118 to 3116 in, deep and nominally 1/8 in. wide. Groove spacing may range from 5/8 to 1 in. Use sawing equipment capable of cutting grooves in hardened concrete to within 18 in, of the barrier rail or curb.

H. Spraying Equipment. Use mechanically powered pressure sprayers, either air or airless, with appropriate atomizing nozzles for the application of membrane curing, Mechanically driven spraying

equipment, adaptable to the rail system used by the screeds, may be used for applying membrane curing to bridge slabs. If approved, use hand-pressurized spray equipment equipped with 2 or 3 fan-spray nozzles. Ensure that the spray from each nozzle overlaps the spray from adjacent nozzles by approximately 50%.

I. Concrete Testing Equipment. Provide testing equipment for use by the Engineer in accordance with Section 421.3.C, "Testing Equipment."

420.4. Construction. Before starting work, obtain approval for proposed construction methods. Approval of construction methods and equipment does not relieve the Contractor's responsibility for safety or correctness of methods, adequacy of equipment, or completion of work in full accordance with the Contract.

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, it is the Contractor's option to perform testing on structural concrete (structural classes of concrete are identified in Table 5 of Section 421.4.A, "Classification and Mix Design") to determine the in-situ strength to address the schedule restrictions in Section 420.4.A, "Schedule Restrictions," The Engineer may require the Contractor to perform this testing for concrete placed in cold weather. For Contractor-performed testing, make enough test specimens to ensure that strength requirements are met for the operations listed in Section 420,4,A. Make at least 1 set of test specimens for each element cast each day. Cure these specimens under the same conditions as the portion of the structure involved for all stages of construction. Ensure safe handling, curing, and storage of all test specimens. Provide testing personnel, and sample and test the hardened concrete in accordance with Section 421.4.G, "Sampling and Testing of Concrete." The maturity method, Tex-426-A, may be used for in-situ strength determination for schedule restrictions if approved. Coring will not be allowed for in-situ strength determination for schedule restrictions. Provide the Engineer the opportunity to witness all testing operations. Report all test results to the Engineer.

If the Contractor does not wish to perform schedule restriction testing, the Engineer's 7-day lab-cured tests, performed in accordance with Section 421.4.0.5, "Adequacy and Acceptance of Concrete," will be used for schedule restriction determinations, The Engineer may require additional time for strength gain to account for field curing conditions such as cold weather.

A. Schedule Restrictions. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, construct and open completed structures to traffic with the following limitations:

1. Setting Forms. Attain at least 2,500 psi compressive strength before erecting forms on concrete footings supported by piling or drilled shafts, or on individual drilled shafts. Erect forms on spread footings and culvert footings after the footing concrete has aged at least 2 curing days as defined in Section 420,4.J, "Curing Concrete." Place concrete only after the forms and reinforcing steel have been inspected by the Engineer. Support tie beam or cap forms by falsework on previously placed tie beams only if the tie beam concrete has attained a compressive strength of 2,500 psi and the member is properly supported to eliminate stresses not provided for in the design. Maintain curing as required until completion of the curing period,
Place superstructure forms or falsework on the substructure only if the substructure concrete has attained a compressive strength of 3,000 psi.

2. Removal of Forms and Falsework. Keep in place weight supporting forms and falsework for bridge components and culvert slabs until the concrete has attained a compressive strength of 2,500 psi in accordance with Section 420.4.K, "Removal of Forms and Falsework." Keep all forms for mass placements defined in Section 420.4.0.14, "Mass Placements," in place for 4 days following concrete placement.

3. Placement of Superstructure Members. Do not place superstructure members before the substructure concrete has attained a compressive strength of 3,000 psi.

4. Longitudinal Screeding of Bridge Slabs. Place a longitudinally screed directly on previously placed concrete slabs to check and grade an adjacent slab only after the previously placed slab has aged at least 24 hr. Place and screed the concrete after the previously placed slabs have aged at least 48 hr. Maintain curing of the previously placed slabs during placement.

5. Staged Placement of Bridge Slabs on Continuous Steel Units. When staged placement of a slab is required, ensure that the previously placed concrete attains a compressive strength of 3,000 psi before placing the next stage placement. Multiple stages may be placed in a single day if approved.

6. Storage of Materials on the Structure. Obtain approval to store materials on completed portions of a structure once a compressive strength of 3,000 psi has been attained. Maintain proper curing if materials will be stored on structures before completion of curing.

7. Placement of Equipment and Machinery. Do not place erection equipment or machinery on the structure until the concrete has attained the design strength specified in Section 421.4.A, "Classification and Mix Design," unless otherwise approved.

8. Carting of Concrete. Once the concrete has attained a compressive strength of 3,000 psi, it may be carted, wheeled, or pumped over completed slabs. Maintain curing during these operations.

9. Placing Bridge Rails. Reinforcing steel and concrete for bridge rails may be placed on bridge slabs once the slab concrete has attained a compressive strength of 3,000 psi. If slipforming methods are used for railing concrete, ensure the slab concrete has attained its design strength specified in Section 421.4.A, "Classification and Mix Design," before placing railing concrete.

10. Opening to Construction Traffic. Bridges and direct-traffic culverts may be opened to all construction traffic when the design strength specified in Section 421.4.A, "Classification and Mix Design," has been attained if curing is maintained.

11. Opening to Full Traffic. Bridges and direct-traffic culverts may be opened to the traveling public when the design strength specified in Section 421.4.A, "Classification and Mix Design," has been attained for all structural elements including railing subject to impact from traffic, when curing has been completed for all slabs, and when the concrete surface treatment has been applied in accordance with Item 428, "Concrete Surface Treatment." Obtain approval before opening bridges and direct-traffic culverts to the traveling public, Other noncritical structural and nonstructural concrete may be opened for service upon the completion of curing unless otherwise specified or directed.

12. Post-Tensioned Construction. For structural elements designed to be post-tensioned ensure that strength requirements on the plans are met for stressing and staged loading of structural elements.

13. Backfilling. Backfill in accordance with Section 400.3.C, "Backfill."

B. Plans for Falsework and Forms. Submit 2 copies of plans for falsework and forms for piers, superstructure spans over 20 ft. long, bracing systems for girders when the overhang exceeds 3 ft. 6 in., and bridge widening details. Submit similar plans for other units of the structure as directed. Show all essential details of proposed forms, falsework, and bracing. Have a licensed professional engineer design, seal, and sign these plans. Department approval is not required, but the Department reserves the right to request modifications to the plans. The Contractor is responsible for the adequacy of these plans.

C. Falsework. Design and construct falsework to carry the maximum anticipated loads safely, including wind loads, and to provide the necessary rigidity. Submit details in accordance with Section 420,4.B, "Plans for Falsework and Forms."

Design job-fabricated falsework assuming a weight of 150 pcf for concrete, and include a liveload allowance of 50 psf of horizontal surface of the form. Do not exceed 125% of the allowable stresses used by the Department for the design of structures.

For commercially produced structural units used in falsework, do not exceed the manufacturer's maximum allowable working loads for moment and shear or end reaction. Include a liveload allowance of 35 psf of horizontal form surface in determining the maximum allowable working load for commercially produced structural units.

Provide timber that is sound, in good condition, and free from defects that would impair its strength. Provide timber that meets or exceeds the species, size, and grade requirements in the submitted falsework plans. Provide wedges made of hardwood or metal in pairs to adjust falsework to desired elevations to ensure even bearing. Do not use wedges to compensate for incorrectly cut bearing surfaces.

Use sills or grillages that are large enough to support the superimposed load without settlement. Take precautions to prevent settling of the supporting material unless the sills or grillages are founded on solid rock, shale, or other hard materials.

Place falsework that cannot be founded on a satisfactory spread footing on piling or drilled shafts with enough bearing capacity to support the superimposed load without settlement. Drive falsework piling to the required resistance determined by the applicable formula in Item 404, "Driving Piling." Design drilled shafts for falsework to carry the superimposed load using both skin friction and point bearing,
Weld in conformance with Item 448, "Structural Field Welding." Securely brace each falsework bent to provide the stiffness required, and securely fasten the bracing to each pile or column it crosses.

Remove falsework when it is no longer required or as indicated on the submitted falsework plan. Pull or cut off foundations for falsework at least 2 ft. below finished ground level. Completely remove falsework, piling, or drilled shafts in a stream, lake, or bay to the approved limits to prevent obstruction to the waterway.

D. Forms. Submit formwork plans in accordance with Section 420.4.B, "Plans for Falsework and Forms."

1. General. Except where otherwise specified or permitted, provide forms of either timber or metal. Design forms for the pressure exerted by a liquid weighing 150 pcf. Take the rate of concrete placement into consideration in determining the depth of the equivalent liquid, Include a liveload allowance of 50 psf of horizontal surface for job-fabricated forms. Do not exceed 125% of the allowable stresses used by the Department for the design of structures.

For commercially produced structural units used for forms, do not exceed the manufacturer's maximum allowable working loads for moment and shear or end reaction, Include a liveload allowance of 35 psf of horizontal form surface in determining the maximum allowable working load for commercially produced structural units. Provide steel forms for round columns unless otherwise approved. Refer to Item 427, "Surface Finishes for Concrete," for additional requirements for off-the-form finishes. Provide commercial form liners for imprinting a pattern or texture on the concrete surface as shown on the plans and specified in Section 427.4.B.2,d, "Form Liner Finish."

Provide forming systems that are practically mortar-tight, rigidly braced, and strong enough to prevent bulging between supports, and maintain them to the proper line and grade during concrete placement. Maintain forms in a manner that prevents warping and shrinkage. Do not allow offsets at form joints to exceed 1/16 in.

For forms to be left in place, use only material that is inert, nonbiodegradable, and nonabsorptive.

Attachment of forms or screed supports for bridge slabs to steel I-beams or girders may be by welding subject to the following requirements:

- Do not weld to tension flanges or to areas indicated on the plans.
  Weld in accordance with Item 448, "Structural Field Welding."

Take into account:

deflections due to cast-in-place slab concrete and railing shown in the dead load deflection diagram in the setting of slab forms,

- differential beam or girder deflections due to skew angles and the use of certain stay-in-place slab forming systems, and
- deflection of the forming system due to the wet concrete.

For bridge approach slabs, securely stake forms to line and grade and maintain in position. Rigidly attach inside forms for curbs to the outside forms.

Construct all forms to permit their removal without marring or damaging the concrete. Clean all forms and footing areas of any extraneous matter before placing concrete. Provide openings in forms if needed for the removal of laitance or foreign matter

Treat the facing of all forms with bond-breaking coating of composition that will not discolor or injuriously affect the concrete surface, Take care to prevent coating of the reinforcing steel.

Complete all preparatory work before requesting permission to place concrete.

If the forms show signs of bulging or sagging at any stage of the placement, cease placement and remove the portion of the concrete causing this condition immediately if necessary. Reset the forms and securely brace them against further movement before continuing the placement.

2. **Timber Forms.** Provide properly seasoned good-quality lumber that is free from imperfections that would affect its strength or impair the finished surface of the concrete. Provide timber or lumber that meets or exceeds the requirements for species and grade in the submitted formwork plans.

Maintain forms or form lumber that will be reused so that it stays clean and in good condition. Do not use any lumber that is split, warped, bulged, or marred or that has defects that will produce inferior work, and promptly remove such lumber from the work.

Provide form lining for all formed surfaces except:

- the inside of culvert barrels, inlets, manholes, and box girders;
- the bottom of bridge slabs between beams or girders;
- surfaces that are subsequently covered by backfill material or are completely enclosed; and
- any surface formed by a single finished board or by plywood.

Provide form lining of an approved type such as masonite or plywood. Do not provide thin membrane sheeting such as polyethylene sheets for form lining.
Use plywood at least 314 in. thick. Place the grain of the face plies on plywood forms parallel to the span between the supporting studs or joists unless otherwise indicated on the submitted form drawings.

Use plywood for forming surfaces that remain exposed that meets the requirements for B-B Plyform Class 1 or Class II Exterior of the U.S. Department of Commerce Voluntary Product Standard PS 1.

Space studs and joists so that the facing form material remains in true alignment under the imposed loads.

Space wales closely enough to hold forms securely to the designated lines, scabbed at least 4 ft. on each side of joints to provide continuity. Place a row of wales near the bottom of each placement.

Place facing material with parallel and square joints, securely fastened to supporting studs.

For surfaces exposed to view and receiving only an ordinary surface finish as defined in Section 420.4.M, "Ordinary Surface Finish," place forms with the form panels symmetrical (long dimensions set in the same direction). Make horizontal joints continuous.

Make molding for chamfer strips or other uses of materials of a grade that will not split when nailed and that can be maintained to a true line without warping. Dress wood molding on all faces. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, fill forms at all sharp corners and edges with triangular chamfer strips measuring 314 in. on the sides.

To hold forms in place, use metal form ties of an approved type or a satisfactory substitute of a type that permits ease of removal of the metal. Cut back wire ties at least 112 in. from the face of the concrete.
Use devices to hold metal ties in place that are able to develop the strength of the tie and adjust to allow for proper alignment.

Entirely remove metal and wooden spreaders that separate the forms as the concrete is being placed.

Provide adequate clean-out openings for narrow walls and other locations where access to the bottom of the forms is not readily attainable.

3. **Metal Forms.** Requirements for timber forms regarding design, mortar-tightness, filleted corners, beveled projections, bracing, alignment, removal, reuse, and wetting also apply to metal forms except that metal forms do not require lining unless specifically noted on the plans.

   Use form metal thick enough to maintain the true shape without warping or bulging. Countersink all bolt and rivet heads on the facing sides, Design clamps, pins, or other connecting devices to hold the forms rigidly together and to allow removal without damage to the concrete. Use metal forms that present a smooth surface and that line up properly. Keep metal free from rust, grease, and other foreign materials.
4. **Form Supports for Overhang Slabs**. Form supports that transmit a horizontal force to a steel girder or beam or to a prestressed concrete beam are permitted provided a satisfactory structural analysis has been made of the effect on the girder or beam as indicated in the submitted formwork plans.

   When overhang brackets are used on prestressed concrete beam spans with slab overhangs not exceeding 3 it 6 in., use beam bracing as indicated in the plans. For spans with overhangs exceeding this amount, use additional support for the outside beams regardless of the type of beam used. Submit details of the proposed bracing system in accordance with Section 420.4.13, "Plans for Falsework and Forms."

Punch or drill holes full size in the webs of steel members for support of overhang brackets, or torch-cut them to 114 in, under size and ream them full size, Do not burn the holes full size. Leave the holes open unless otherwise shown on the plans. Never fill the holes by welding.

E. **Drains.** Install and construct weep holes and roadway drains as shown on the plans.

F. **Placing Reinforcement.** Place reinforcement as provided in Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel." Do not weld reinforcing steel supports to I-beams or girders or to reinforcing steel except where shown on the plans,

   Place post-tensioning ducts in accordance with the approved prestressing details and in accordance with Item 426, "Prestressing." Keep ducts free of obstructions until all post-tensioning operations are complete.

G. **Placing Concrete.** Give the Engineer sufficient advance notice before placing concrete in any unit of the structure to permit the inspection of forms, reinforcing steel placement, and other preparations,

   Follow the sequence of placing concrete shown on the plans or specified.

Do not place concrete when impending weather conditions would impair the quality of the finished work. If conditions of wind, humidity, and temperature are such that concrete cannot be placed without the potential for shrinkage cracking, place concrete in early morning or at night or adjust the placement schedule for more favorable weather. Consult the evaporation rate nomograph in the Portland Cement Association's *Design and Control of Concrete Mixtures* for shrinkage cracking potential. When mixing, placing, and finishing concrete in non-daylight hours, adequately illuminate the entire placement site as approved.

If changes in weather conditions require protective measures after work starts, furnish adequate shelter to protect the concrete against damage from rainfall or from freezing temperatures as outlined in this Item. Continue operations during rainfall only if approved. Use protective coverings for the material stockpiles. Cover aggregate stockpiles only to the extent necessary to control the moisture conditions in the aggregates. Allow at least 1 curing day after the concrete has achieved initial set before placing strain on projecting reinforcement to prevent damage to the concrete.

1. Placing Temperature. Place concrete according to the following temperature limits for the classes of concrete defined in
Section 421.4.A, "Classification and Mix Design":

- Place Class C, F, H, K, or SS concrete only when its temperature at time of placement is between 50 and 95°F. Increase the minimum placement temperature to 60°F if ground-granulated blast furnace (GGBF) slag is used in the concrete.
- When used in a bridge slab or in the top slab of a direct-traffic culvert, place Class CO, DC, or S concrete only when its temperature at the time of placement is between 50 and 85°F. Increase the minimum placement temperature to 60°F if GGBF slag is used in the concrete. The maximum temperature increases to 95°F if these classes are used for other applications.
- Place Class A, B, and D concrete only when its temperature at the time of placement is greater than 50°F.
- Place mass concrete, defined by Section 420.4.G,14, "Mass Placements," only when its temperature at the time of placement is between 50 and 75°F.

2. Transporting Time. Place concrete delivered in agitating trucks within 60 min. after batching. Place concrete delivered in nonagitating equipment within 45 min. after hatching. Revise the concrete mix design as necessary for hot weather or other conditions that contribute to quick setting of the concrete. Submit for approval a plan to demonstrate that these time limitations can be extended while ensuring the concrete can be properly placed, consolidated, and finished without the use of additional water.

3. Workability of Concrete. Place concrete with a slump as specified in Section 421.4.A.5, "Slump." Concrete that exceeds the maximum slump will be rejected. Water may be added to the concrete before discharging any concrete from the truck to adjust for low slump provided that the maximum mix design water-cement ratio is not exceeded. After introduction of any additional water or chemical admixtures, mix concrete in accordance with Section 421.4.E, "Mixing and Delivering Concrete." Do not add water or chemical admixtures after any concrete has been discharged.

4. Transporting Concrete. Use a method and equipment capable of maintaining the rate of placement shown on the plans or required by this Item to transport concrete to the forms. Transport concrete by buckets, chutes, buggies, belt conveyors, pumps, or other methods.

Protect concrete transported by conveyors from sun and wind to prevent loss of slump and workability, Shade or wrap with wet burlap pipes through which concrete is pumped as necessary to prevent loss of slump and workability.

Arrange and use chutes, troughs, conveyors, or pipes so that the concrete ingredients will not be separated. When necessary to prevent segregation, terminate such equipment in vertical downspouts. Extend open troughs and chutes, if necessary, down inside the forms or through holes left in the forms.

Keep all transporting equipment clean and free from hardened concrete coatings. Discharge water used for cleaning clear of the concrete.

5. Preparation of Surfaces. Thoroughly wet all forms, prestressed concrete panels, T-beams, and concrete box beams on which concrete is to be placed before placing concrete on them. Remove any remaining puddles of excess water before placing concrete. Provide surfaces that are in a moist, saturated surface-dry condition when concrete is placed on them.

Ensure that the subgrade or foundation is moist before placing concrete for bridge approach slabs or other concrete placed on grade, Lightly sprinkle the subgrade if dry.

6. Expansion Joints. Construct joints and devices to provide for expansion and contraction in accordance with plan details and the requirements of this Section and Item 454, "Bridge Expansion Joints."
Prevent bridging of concrete or mortar around expansion joint material in bearings and expansion joints. Use forms adaptable to loosening or early removal in construction of all open joints and joints to be filled with expansion joint material. To avoid expansion or contraction damage to the adjacent concrete, loosen these forms as soon as possible after final concrete set to permit free movement of the span without requiring full form removal.

When the plans show a Type A joint, provide preformed fiber joint material in the vertical joints of the roadway slab, curb, median, or sidewalk, and fill the top 1 in. with the specified joint sealing material unless noted otherwise, Install the sealer in accordance with Item 438, "Cleaning and Sealing Joints and Cracks (Rigid Pavement and Bridge Decks)," and the manufacturer's recommendations. Use light wire or nails to anchor any preformed fiber joint material to the concrete on 1 side of the joint.

Ensure that finished joints conform to the plan details with the concrete sections completely separated by the specified opening or joint material.

Remove all concrete within the joint opening soon after form removal and again where necessary after surface finishing to ensure full effectiveness of the expansion joint.

7. Construction Joints. A construction joint is the joint formed by placing plastic concrete in direct contact with concrete that has attained its initial set. Monolithic placement means that the manner and sequence of concrete placing does not create a construction joint.

Make construction joints of the type and at the locations shown on the plans. Do not make joints in bridge slabs not shown on the plans unless approved. Additional joints in other members are not permitted without approval. Place authorized additional joints using details equivalent to those shown on the plans for joints in similar locations.

Unless otherwise required, make construction joints square and normal to the forms. Use bulkheads in the forms for all vertical joints.

Thoroughly roughen the top surface of a concrete placement terminating at a horizontal construction joint as soon as practical after initial set is attained.

Thoroughly clean the hardened concrete surface of all loose material, laitance, dirt, and foreign matter, and saturate it with water. Remove all free water and moisten the surface before concrete or bonding grout is placed against it.

Draw forms tight against the existing concrete to avoid mortar loss and offsets at joints.

Coat the joint surface with bonding mortar, grout, epoxy, or other material as indicated in the plans or other Items. Provide Type V epoxy per DMS-6100, "Epoxies and Adhesives," for bonding fresh concrete to hardened concrete. Place the bonding epoxy on a clean, dry surface, and place the fresh concrete while the epoxy is still tacky. Place bonding mortar or grout on a surface that is saturated surface-dry, and place the concrete. before the bonding mortar or grout dries. Place other bonding agents in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

8. Handling and Placing. Minimize segregation of the concrete and displacement of the reinforcement when handling and placing concrete. Produce a uniform dense compact mass.

Do not allow concrete to free-fall more than 5 ft. except in the case of drilled shafts, thin walls such as in culverts, or as allowed by other Items. Remove any hardened concrete splatter ahead of the plastic concrete.
Fill each part of the forms by depositing concrete as near its final position as possible. Do not deposit large quantities at 1 point and run or work the concrete along the forms.

Deposit concrete in the forms in layers of suitable depth but not more than 36 in. deep unless otherwise permitted. Avoid cold joints in a monolithic placement, Sequence successive layers or adjacent portions of concrete so that they can be vibrated into a homogeneous mass with the previously placed concrete before it sets. When re-vibration of the concrete is shown on the plans, allow at most 1 hr. to elapse between adjacent or successive placements of concrete except as otherwise allowed by an approved placing procedure. This time limit may he extended by 112 hr, if the concrete contains at least a normal dosage of retarding admixture.

Use an approved retarding agent to control stress cracks and cold joints in placements where differential settlement and setting time may induce cracking.

9. Consolidation. Carefully consolidate concrete and flush mortar to the form surfaces with immersion type vibrators, Do not use vibrators that operate by attachment to forms or reinforcement except where approved on steel forms.

Vibrate the concrete immediately after deposit. Systematically space points of vibration to ensure complete consolidation and thorough working of the concrete around the reinforcement, embedded fixtures, and into the corners and angles of the forms. Insert the vibrator vertically where possible except for slabs where it may be inserted in a sloping or horizontal position. Vibrate the entire depth of each lift, allowing the vibrator to penetrate several inches into the preceding lift. Do not use the vibrator to move the concrete to other locations in the forms. Do not drag the vibrator through the concrete. Thoroughly consolidate concrete along construction joints by operating the vibrator along and close to but not against the joint surface. Continue the vibration until the concrete surrounding reinforcements and fixtures is completely consolidated. Hand-spade or rod the concrete if necessary to ensure flushing of mortar to the surface of all forms.

10. Installation of Dowels and Anchor Bolts. Install dowels and anchor bolts by casting them in-place or by grouting with grout, epoxy, or epoxy mortar unless noted otherwise. Form or drill holes for grouting.

Drill holes for anchor bolts to accommodate the bolt embedment required by the plans. Make holes for dowels at least 12 in. deep unless otherwise shown on the plans. When using grout or epoxy mortar, make the diameter of the hole at least twice the dowel or bolt diameter, but the hole need not exceed the dowel or bolt diameter diameter plus 1-½ in. When using epoxy, make the hole diameter 1/16 to ¼ in. greater than the dowel or bolt diameter.

Thoroughly clean holes of all loose material, oil, grease, or other bond-breaking substance, and blow them clean with filtered compressed air. Ensure that holes are in a surface dry condition when epoxy type material is used and in a surface moist condition when hydraulic cement grout is used. Develop and demonstrate for approval a procedure for cleaning and preparing the holes for installation of the dowels and anchor bolts. Completely fill the void between the hole and dowel or bolt with grouting material. Follow exactly the requirements for cleaning outlined in the product specifications for prepackaged systems.

For cast-in-place or grouted systems, provide hydraulic cement grout in accordance with Section 421..2.F, "Mortar and Grout," epoxy, epoxy mortar, or other prepackaged grouts as approved. Provide a Type III epoxy per DMS-6100, "Epoxies and Adhesives," when neat epoxy is used for anchor bolts or dowels. Provide Type VIII epoxy per DMS-6100 when an epoxy grout is used. Provide grout, epoxy, or epoxy mortar as the binding agent unless otherwise indicated on the plans.

Provide other anchor systems as required in the plans.

11. Placing Concrete in Cold Weather. Protect concrete placed under weather conditions where weather may adversely affect results. Permission given by the Engineer for placing during cold weather does not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for producing concrete equal in quality to that placed under normal conditions. If concrete placed under poor conditions is unsatisfactory, remove and replace it as directed at Contractor's expense.

Do not place concrete in contact with any material coated with frost or having a temperature of 32°F or lower. Do not place concrete when the ambient temperature in the shade is below 40°F and falling unless approved. Concrete may be placed when the ambient temperature in the shade is 35°F and rising or above 40°F. Provide and install recording thermometers, maturity meters, or other suitable temperature measuring devices to verify that all concrete is effectively protected as follows:

- Maintain the temperature of the top surface of bridge slabs and top slabs of direct-traffic culverts at 50°F or above for 72 hr. from the time of placement and above 40°F for an additional 72 hr.
- Maintain the temperature at all surfaces of concrete in bents, piers, culvert walls, retaining walls, parapets, wingwalls, bottoms of bridge slab or culvert top slabs, and other similar formed concrete at 40°F or above for 72 hr. from the time of placement,
- Maintain the temperature of all other concrete, including the bottom slabs (footings) of culverts, placed on or in the ground above 32°F for 72 hr. from the time of placement.

Use additional covering, insulated forms, or other means and, if necessary, supplement the covering with artificial heating. Avoid applying heat directly to concrete surfaces. Cure as specified in Section 420.4.J, "Curing Concrete," during this period until all requirements for curing have been satisfied.
When impending weather conditions indicate the possible need for temperature protection, have on hand all necessary heating and covering material, ready for use, before permission is granted to begin placement.

12. Placing Concrete in Hot Weather. Use an approved retarding agent in all concrete for superstructures and top slabs of direct-traffic culverts, except concrete containing GGBF slag, when the temperature of the air is above 85°F unless otherwise directed.

Keep the concrete at or below the maximum temperature at time of placement as specified in Section 420.4.0.1, "Placing Temperature," Sprinkle and shade aggregate stockpiles or use ice, liquid nitrogen systems, or other approved methods as necessary to control the concrete temperature.

13. Placing Concrete in Water. Deposit concrete in water only when shown on the plans or with approval. Make forms or cofferdams tight enough to prevent any water current passing through the space in which the concrete is being deposited. Do not pump water during the concrete placing or until the concrete has set for at least 36 hr.

Place the concrete with a tremie or pump, or use another approved method, and do not allow it to fall freely through the water or disturb it after it is placed. Keep the concrete surface approximately level during placement.

Support the tremie or operate the pump so that it can be easily moved horizontally to cover all the work area and vertically to control the concrete flow. Submerge the lower end of the tremie or pump hose in the concrete at all times. Use continuous placing operations until the work is complete.

For concrete to be placed under water, design the concrete mix in accordance with Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete," with a minimum cement content of 650 lb. per cubic yard. Include an anti-washout admixture in the mix design as necessary to produce a satisfactory finished product.

14. Mass Placements. Mass placements are defined as placements with a least dimension greater than or equal to 5 ft., or designated on the plans. For monolithic mass placements, develop and obtain approval for a plan to ensure the following during the heat dissipation period:

· the temperature differential between the central core of the placement and the exposed concrete surface does not exceed 35°F and
· the temperature at the central core of the placement does not exceed 160°F.

Base this plan on the equations given in the Portland Cement Association's *Design and Control of Concrete Mixtures.* Cease all mass placement operations and revise the plan as necessary if either of the above limitations is exceeded.

Include a combination of the following elements in this plan:

- selection of concrete ingredients including aggregates, gradation, and cement types, to minimize heat of hydration;
- use of ice or other concrete cooling ingredients;
- use of liquid nitrogen dosing systems;
- controlling rate or time of concrete placement;
- use of insulation or supplemental external heat to control heat loss;
- use of supplementary cementing materials; or
- use of a cooling system to control the core temperature.

Furnish and install 2 sets of temperature recording devices, maturity meters, or other approved equivalent devices at designated locations. Use these devices to simultaneously measure the temperature of the concrete at the core and the surface. Maintain temperature control methods for 4 days unless otherwise approved. Maturity meters may not be used to predict strength of mass concrete.

15. Placing Concrete in Foundation and Substructure. Do not place concrete in footings until the depth and character of the foundation has been inspected and permission has been given to proceed.

Placing of concrete footings upon seal concrete is permitted after the cofferdams are free from water and the seal concrete cleaned. Perform any necessary pumping or bailing during the concreting from a suitable sump located outside the forms.

Construct or adjust all temporary wales or braces inside cofferdams as the work proceeds to prevent unauthorized construction joints,

When footings can be placed in a dry excavation without the use of cofferdams, omit forms if approved, and fill the entire excavation with concrete to the elevation of the top of footing.

Place concrete in columns monolithically between construction joints unless otherwise directed. Columns and caps or tie beams supported on them may be placed in the same operation or separately. If placed in the same operation, allow for settlement and shrinkage of the column concrete by placing it to the lower level of the cap or tie beam, and delay placement between 1 and 2 hr. before proceeding with the cap or tie beam placement.

16. Placing Concrete in Box Culverts. Where the top slab and walls are placed monolithically in culverts more than 4 ft. in clear height, allow between 1 and 2 hr. to elapse before placing the top slab to allow for settlement and shrinkage in the wall concrete.

Accurately finish the footing slab at the proper time to provide a smooth uniform surface. Finish top slabs that carry direct-traffic as specified in this Item, Give top slabs of fill type culverts a float finish.

17. Placing Concrete in Superstructure. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, place simple span bridge slabs without transverse construction joints by using either a self-propelled transverse finishing machine or a mechanical longitudinal screed. For small placements or for unusual conditions such as narrow widening, variable cross-slopes, or transitions, use of manually operated screeding equipment may be permitted. Support the screed adequately on a header or rail system stable enough to withstand the longitudinal or lateral thrust of the equipment. Adjust the profile grade line as necessary to account for variations in beam camber and other factors to obtain the required slab thickness and concrete cover over the slab reinforcement. Set beams and verify their surface elevations in a sufficient number of spans so that when adjustment is necessary, the profile grade line can be adjusted over suitable increments to produce a smooth riding surface. Take dead load deflection into account in setting the grades of headers and rail systems. Use construction joints, when required or permitted for slab placements on steel or prestressed concrete beams, as shown on the plans. Before placing concrete on steel girder or truss spans, release falsework under the spans and swing the spans free on their permanent supports.

Make 1 or more passes with the screed over the bridge slab segment before placing concrete on it to ensure proper operation and maintenance of grades and clearances. Use an approved system of checking to detect any vertical movement of the forms or falsework. Maintain forms for the bottom surface of concrete slabs, girders, and overhangs to the required vertical alignment during concrete placing.

Fog unformed surfaces of slab concrete in bridge slabs and in top slabs of direct-traffic culverts from the time of initial strikeoff of the concrete until finishing is completed and requi[r]ed interim during is in place, Do not use fogging as a means to add finishing water, and do not work moisture from the fog spray into the fresh concrete.

For simple spans, retard the concrete only if necessary to complete finishing operations or as required by this Section. When filling curb forms, bring the top of curb and sidewalk section to the correct camber and alignment, and finish them as described in this Item.

a. Transverse Screeding. Install rails for transverse finishing machines that are supported from the beams or girders so that the supports may be removed without damage to the slab. Prevent bonding between removable supports and the concrete in an acceptable manner. Do not allow rail support parts that remain embedded in the slab to project above the upper mat of reinforcing steel. Rail or screed supports attached to I-beams or girders are subject to the requirements of this Item. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, for transverse screeding the minimum rate of concrete placement is 30 linear feet of bridge slab per hour. Deposit concrete parallel to the skew of the bridge so that all girders are loaded uniformly along their length. Deposit slab concrete between the exterior beam and the adjacent beam before placing concrete in the overhang portion of the slab. Furnish personnel and equipment capable of placing, finishing, and curing the slab at an acceptable rate to ensure compliance with the specifications, Place concrete in transverse strips. On profile grades greater than 1-½%, start placement at the lowest end.

b. Longitudinal Screeding. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, use of temporary intermediate headers will be permitted for placements over 50 ft. long if the rate of placement is rapid enough to prevent a cold joint and if these headers are designed for easy removal to permit satisfactory consolidation and finish of the concrete at their locations. Deposit slab concrete between the exterior beam and the

adjacent beam before placing concrete in the overhang portion of the slab. Place concrete in longitudinal strips starting at a point in the center of the segment adjacent to 1 side except as this Section indicates, and complete the strip by placing uniformly in both directions toward the ends. For spans on a profile grade of 1-½%or more, start placing at the lowest end. Use strips wide enough that the concrete within each strip remains plastic until placement of the adjacent strip. Where monolithic curb construction is specified, place the concrete in proper sequence to be monolithic with the adjacent longitudinal strips of the slabs.

c. Placements on Continuous Steel Units. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, place slabs on continuous steel units in a single continuous operation without transverse construction joints using a self-propelled transverse finishing machine or a mechanical longitudinal screed. Retard the initial set of the concrete sufficiently to ensure that concrete remains plastic in at least 3 spans immediately preceding the slab being placed. Use construction joints, when required for slab placements on steel beams or girders, as shown on the plans. When staged placement of a slab is required in the plans, ensure that the previously placed concrete attains a compressive strength of 3,000 psi before placing the next stage concrete. Multiple stages may be placed in a single day if approved. Where plans permit staged placing without specifying a particular order of placement, use an approved placing sequence that will not overstress of any of the supporting members.

d. Slab and Girder Units. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, place girders, slab, and curbs of slab and girder spans monolithically. Fill concrete girder stems first, and place the slab concrete within the time limits specified in this Item. If using a t[r]ansverse screed, place concrete in the stems for a short distance and then place the concrete in transverse strips. If using a longitudinal screed, fill the outside girder stem first, beginning at the low end or side, and continue placement in longitudinal strips.

H. Treatment and Finishing of Horizontal Surfaces Other Than Bridge Slabs. Strike off to grade and finish all unformed upper surfaces. Do not use mortar topping for surfaces constructed under this Section.

After the concrete has been struck off, float the surface with a suitable float, Give bridge sidewalks a wood float or broom finish, or stripe them with a brush.

Slightly slope the tops of caps and piers between bearing areas from the center toward the edge, and slope the tops of abutment and transition bent caps from the backwall to the edge, as directed, so that water drains from the surface. Give the concrete a smooth trowel finish, Construct bearing areas for steel units in accordance with Section 441.3.1C.5, "Bearing and Anchorage Devices." Give the bearing area under the expansion ends of concrete slabs and slab and girder spans a steel-trowel finish to the exact grades required. Give bearing areas under elastomeric bearing pads or nonreinforced bearing seat buildups a textured, wood float finish. Do not allow the bearing area to vary from a level plane more than 1116 in. in all directions.

Cast bearing seat buildups or pedestals for concrete units integrally with the cap or with a construction joint. Provide a latex-based mortar, an epoxy mortar, or an approved proprietary bearing mortar for bearing seat buildups cast with a construction joint. Mix mortars in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Construct pedestals of Class C concrete, reinforced as shown on the plans or as indicated in Figure 1 and Figure 2.

I. Finish of Bridge Slabs. Provide camber for specified vertical curvature and transverse slopes.

For concrete flat slab and concrete slab and girder spans cast in place on falsework, provide additional camber to offset the initial and final deflections of the span as indicated in the plans. For concrete slab and girder spans using pan forms, provide camber of approximately 318 in. for 30-ft. spans and 112 in. for 40-ft, spans to offset initial and final deflections unless otherwise directed. For concrete flat slab and concrete slab and girder spans not using pan forms, when dead load deflection is not shown on the plans, provide a camber of 1/8 in. per 10 ft. of span length but no more than ½ in.

Provide a camber of 114 in, in addition to deflection for slabs without vertical curvature on steel or prestressed concrete beams,

Use work bridges or other suitable facilities to perform all finishing operations and to provide access, if necessary, for the Engineer to check measurements for slab thickness and reinforcement cover. As soon as the concrete has been placed and vibrated in a section wide enough to permit working, level, strike off, and screed the surface, carrying a slight excess of concrete ahead of the screed to fill all low spots.

Move longitudinal screeds across the concrete with a saw-like motion while their ends rest on headers or templates set true to the roadway grade or on the adjacent finished slab, Move transverse screeds longitudinally approximately 115 of the drum length for each complete out-and-back pass of the carriage.

Screed the surface of the concrete enough times and at intervals to produce a uniform surface true to grade and free of voids.

Work the screeded surface to a smooth finish with a long-handled wood or metal float or hand-float it from work bridges over the slab. Floating may not be necessary if the pan float attached to a transverse screed produces an acceptable finish, Avoid overworking the surface of the concrete. Avoid overuse of finish water.

Perform sufficient checks, witnessed by the Engineer, with a longhandled 16-ft. straightedge on the plastic concrete to ensure that the final surface will be within specified tolerances. Make the check with the straightedge parallel to the centerline, Lap each pass half over the preceding pass. Remove all high spots, and fill and float all depressions over 1/16 in. deep with fresh concrete. Continue checking and floating until the surface is true to grade and free of depressions, high spots, voids, or rough spots. Fill screed-rail support with holes with concrete, and finish them to match the top of the slab.

Finish the concrete surface to a uniform texture using a carpet drag, burlap drag, or broom finish. Finish the surface to a smooth sandy texture without blemishes, marks, or scratches deeper than 1/16 in. Apply the surface texturing using a work bridge or platform immediately after completing the straightedge checks. Draw the carpet or burlap drag longitudinally along the concrete surface, adjusting the surface contact area or pressure to provide a satisfactory coarsely textured surface. A broom finish may be performed using a fine bristle broom transversely.

Coat the concrete surface immediately after the carpet or burlap drag, or broom finish with a single application of evaporation retardant at a rate recommended by the manufacturer. Do not allow more than
10 min. to elapse between the texturing at any location and application of evaporation retardant. The evaporation retardant may be applied using the same work bridge used for surface texturing. Do not work the concrete surface once the evaporation retardant has been applied.

Apply interim and final curing in accordance with Section 420.4.J, "Curing Concrete."

The Contractor is responsible for the ride quality of the finished bridge slab. The Engineer will use a 10-ft. straightedge (1/8 in. in 10 ft.) to verify ride quality and to determine locations where corrections are needed. If the Engineer determines that the ride quality is unacceptable, submit a plan for approval to produce a ride of acceptable quality. Make all corrections for ride before saw-cutting grooves.

Saw-cut grooves in the hardened concrete of bridge slabs, bridge approach slabs, and direct-traffic culverts to produce the final texturing after completion of the required curing period. Cut grooves perpendicular to the structure centerline. Cut grooves continuously across the slab to within 18 in. of the barrier rail, curb, or median divider. At skewed metal expansion joints in bridge slabs, adjust groove cutting by using narrow-width cutting heads so that all grooves end within 6 in. of the joint, measured perpendicular to the centerline of the metal joint. Leave no ungrooved surface wider than 6 in. adjacent to either side of the joint. Ensure that the minimum distance to the first groove, measured perpendicular to the edge of the concrete joint or from the junction between the concrete and the metal leg of the joint, is 1 in. Cut grooves continuously across construction joints or other joints in the concrete that are less than 1/2 in. wide. Apply the same procedure described above where barrier rails, curbs, or median dividers are not parallel to the structure centerline to maintain the 18-in. maximum dimension from the end of the grooves to the gutter line. Cut grooves continuously across formed concrete joints.

When the plans call for a concrete overlay to be placed on the slab (new construction) or on prestressed concrete box beams or other precast elements, give a carpet drag, burlap drag, or broom finish to all concrete surfaces to be overlaid. Saw-grooving is not required in this case. Provide an average texture depth for the finish of approximately 0.035 in, with no individual test falling below 0.020 in., unless otherwise shown on the plans, when tested in accordance with Tex-436-A. If the texture depth falls below what is intended, revise finishing procedures to produce the desired texture.

When the plans require an asphalt seal, with or without overlay, on the slab (new construction), on prestressed concrete box beams, or on other precast elements, give all concrete surfaces to be covered a lightly textured broom or carpet drag finish. Provide an average texture depth of approximately 0.025 in. when tested in accordance with Tex-436-A.

J. Curing Concrete. Obtain approval of the proposed curing methods, equipment, and materials before placing concrete. The Engineer may require the same curing methods for like portions of a single structure. Inadequate curing or facilities may delay all concrete placement on the job until remedial action is taken.

A curing day is a calendar day when the temperature, taken in the shade away from artificial heat, is above 50°F for at least 19 hr. or, on colder days if the temperature of all surfaces of the concrete is maintained above 40°F, for the entire 24 hr. The required curing period begins when all concrete has attained its initial set. Tex-440-A may be used to determine when the concrete has attained its initial set.

Cure all concrete for 4 consecutive days except as noted in Table 1.

Table 1
Exceptions to 4-Day Curing

Description	Type of Cement	Required Curing Days
Upper surfaces of bridge slabs, top slab of direct-traffic culverts, and concrete overlays	I or III	8
	II or 1/11	10
	All types with supplementary cementing materials	10
Concrete piling buildups	All	6

For upper surfaces of bridge slabs, bridge approach slabs, median and sidewalk slabs, and culvert top slabs constructed using Class S concrete, apply interim curing using a Type 1-D curing compound as soon as possible after application of the evaporation retardant and after the water sheen has disappeared, but no more than 45 min. after application of the evaporation retardant. Apply membrane interim curing using a work bridge or other approved apparatus to ensure a uniform application. Water-cure for final curing in accordance with this Section, starting as soon as possible without damaging the surface finish. Maintain the water curing for the duration noted in Table 1.

Place polyethylene sheeting, burlap-polyethylene blankets, laminated mats, or insulating curing mats in direct contact with the slab when the air temperature is expected to drop below 40°F during the first 72 hr. of the curing period. Weigh down these curing materials with dry mats to maintain direct contact with the concrete and to provide insulation against cold weather. Supplemental heating or insulation may be required in cold and wet weather if the insulating cotton mats become wet or if the concrete drops below the specified curing temperature. Avoid applying heat directly to concrete surfaces.

For the top surface of any concrete unit upon which concrete is to be placed and bonded at a later interval (stub walls, risers, etc.) and other superstructure concrete (curbs, wingwalls, parapet walls, etc.), use only water curing in accordance with this Section.

Cure all other concrete as specified in the pertinent Items. Use the following methods for curing concrete, subject to the requirements of this Item.

1. Form Curing. When forms are left in intimate contact with the concrete, other curing methods are not required except for exposed surfaces and for cold weather protection. If forms are removed before the 4-day required curing period, use another approved curing method.

2. Water Curing. Keep all exposed surfaces of the concrete wet continuously for the required curing time. Use water curing that meets the requirements for concrete mixing water in Section 421.2.D, "Water." Do not use seawater or water that stains or leaves an unsightly residue.

a. Wet Mats. Keep the concrete continuously wet by maintaining wet cotton mats in direct contact with the concrete for the required curing time, If needed, place damp burlap blankets made from 9-oz. stock on the damp concrete surface for temporary protection before applying cotton mats. Then place the dry mats and wet them immediately after they are placed. Weight the mats adequately to provide continuous contact with all concrete. Cover surfaces that cannot be cured by direct contact with mats, forming an enclosure well anchored to the forms or ground so that outside air cannot enter the enclosure. Provide sufficient moisture inside the enclosure to keep all surfaces of the concrete wet.

b. Water Spray. Overlap sprays or sprinklers to keep all unformed surfaces continuously wet.

c. Ponding. Cover the surfaces with at least 2 in. of clean granular material, kept wet at all times, or at least 1 in. deep water. Use a dam to retain the water or saturated granular material.

3. Membrane Curing. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, choose either Type 1-D or Type 2 membrane-curing compound when membrane curing is permitted. Type 1-D (Resin Base Only) is required for interim curing bridge slabs and top slabs of direct traffic culverts and all other surfaces that require a higher grade of surface finish. For substructure concrete provide only 1 type of curing compound on any 1 structure.

Apply membrane curing just after free moisture has disappeared at a rate of approximately 180 sq. ft. per gallon, Do not spray curing compound on projecting reinforcing steel or concrete that will later form a construction joint. Do not apply membrane curing to thy surfaces, Dampen formed surfaces and surfaces that have been given a first rub so that they are moist at the time of application of the membrane.

When membrane is used for complete curing, leave the film unbroken for the minimum curing period specified. Correct damaged membrane immediately by reapplication of membrane. Polyethylene sheeting, burlap-polyethylene mats, or laminated mats in close contact with the concrete surfaces are equivalent to membrane curing.

K. Removal of Forms and Falsework. Unless otherwise directed, forms for vertical surfaces may be removed after the concrete has aged 12 hr. after initial set provided the removal can be done without damage to the concrete. Keep forms for mass placements, defined in Section 420,4,G.14, "Mass Placements," in place for 4 days following concrete placement.

Remove forms for inside curb faces and for bridge rails whenever removal can be done without damage to the curb or railing.

Leave in place weight-supporting forms and falsework spanning more than 1 ft. for all bridge components and culvert slabs except as directed otherwise until the concrete has attained a compressive strength of 2,500 psi. Remove forms for other structural components as necessary.

Remove inside forms (walls and top slabs) for box culverts and sewers after concrete has attained a compressive strength of 1,800 psi if an approved overhead support system is used to transfer the weight of the top slab to the walls of the box culvert or sewer before removal of the support provided by the forms.

Forms or parts of forms may be removed only if constructed to permit removal without disturbing forms or falsework required to be left in place for a longer period on other portions of the structure.
Remove all metal appliances used inside forms for alignment to a depth of at least 112 in. from the concrete surface. Make the appliances so that metal may be removed without undue chipping or spalling of the concrete, and so that it leaves a smooth opening in the concrete surface when removed. Do not burn off rods, bolts, or ties.

Remove all forms and falsework unless otherwise directed.

L. Defective Work. Repair defective work as soon as possible. Remove and replace at the expense of the Contractor any defect that cannot be repaired to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

M. Ordinary Surface Finish, Apply an ordinary surface finish to all concrete surfaces as follows:

- Chip away all loose or broken material to sound concrete where porous, spalled, or honeycombed areas are visible after form removal.
- Repair spalls by saw-cutting and chipping at least 1/2 in. deep, perpendicular to the surface to eliminate feather edges. Repair shallow cavities using a latex adhesive grout, cement mortar, or epoxy mortar as approved. Repair large areas using concrete as directed or approved.

- Clean and fill holes or spalls caused by the removal of form ties, etc., with latex grout, cement grout, or epoxy grout as approved. Fill only the holes. Do not blend the patch with the surrounding concrete. On surfaces to receive a rub finish in accordance with Item 427, "Surface Finishes for Concrete," chip out exposed parts of metals chairs to a depth of 112 in. and repair the surface.

- Remove all fins, runs, drips, or mortar from surfaces that will be exposed. Smooth all form marks and chamfer edges by grinding or dry-rubbing.
- Ensure that all repairs are dense, well bonded, and properly cured. Finish exposed large repairs to blend with the surrounding concrete where a higher class of finish is not specified.

Unless noted otherwise, apply an ordinary surface finish as the final finish to the following exposed surfaces:

- inside and top of inlets,
- inside and top of manholes,
- inside of sewer appurtenances,
- inside of culvert barrels,
- bottom of bridge slabs between girders or beams, and
- vertical and bottom surfaces of interior concrete beams or girders.

Form marks and chamfer edges do not need to be smoothed for the inside of culvert barrels and the bottom of bridge slabs between girders or beams.

ITEM 440
REINFORCING STEEL

440.1. Description. Furnish and place reinforcing steel of the sizes and details shown on the plans.

440.2. Materials.

A. Approved Mills. Before furnishing steel, producing mills of reinforcing steel for the Department must be pre-approved in accordance with DMS-7320, "Qualification Procedure for Reinforcing Steel Mills," by the Construction Division, which maintains a list of approved producing mills. Reinforcing steel obtained from unapproved sources will not be accepted.

B. Deformed Bar And Wire Reinforcement. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, reinforcing steel must be Grade 60, and bar reinforcement must be deformed. Reinforcing steel must conform to one of the following:

- A,ST'M A 615, Grades 40 or 60;
- ASTM A 996, Type A, Grades 40 or 60;
- ASTM A 996, Type R, Grade 60, permitted in concrete pavement only (Furnish ASTM A 996, Type R. bars as straight bars only and do not bend them,):lend tests are not required.), or
- ASTMA 706.

The provisions of this Item take precedence over ASTM provisions.

The nominal size, area, and weight of reinforcing steel bars covered by this Item are shown in Table 1. Designate smooth bars up to No. 4 by size number and above No, 4 by diameter in inches.

Table 1

Size$_s$ Area, and Weight of Reinforcing Steel Bars

Bar Size Number (in.)	Bar Size Number (ram)	Diameter (in.)	Area (Sq. in.)	Weight per Ft.
3	10	0.375	0,11	0.376
4	13	0.504	0.20	0.668
5	16	0.625	0.31	1.043
6	19	0.750	0.44	1.502
7	22	0.875	0.60	2.044
8	25	1.000	0.79	2.670
9	29	1.128	1.00	3.400
10	32	1.270	1.27	4.303
11	36	1.410	1.56	5.313
14	43	1.693	2.25	7.650
18	57	2.257	4.00	13.60

Note: Bar size numbers (in.) are based un the number of eighths of an inch included in the nominal diameter of the bar. Bar size numbers (mm) approximate the number of millimeters included in the nominal diameter of the bar.

C. Smooth Bar and Spiral Reinforcement. Smooth bars and dowels for concrete pavement must have a minimum yield strength of 60 ksi and meet ASTM A 615. For smooth bars that are larger than No. 3, provide steel conforming to ASTM A 615 or meet the physical requirements of ASTM A 36.

Spiral reinforcement may be smooth or deformed bars or wire of the minimum size or gauge shown on the plans. Bars for spiral reinforcement must comply with ASTM A 615, Grade 40; ASTM A 996, Type A, Grade 40; or ASTM A 675, Grade 80, meeting dimensional requirements of ASTM A 615, Smooth wire must comply with ASTM A 82, and deformed wire must comply with ASTM A 496.

D. Weldable Reinforcing Steel. Reinforcing steel to be welded must comply with ASTM A 706 or have a carbon equivalent (C.E,) of at most 0.55%. A report of chemical analysis showing the percentages of elements necessary to establish C.E. is required for reinforcing steel that does not meet ASTM A 706 to be structurally welded, These requirements do not pertain to miscellaneous welds on reinforcing steel as defined in Section 448.4.B.t.a, "Miscellaneous Welding Applications."

Calculate C.E. using the the following formula:

$$C.E. = \%C + \frac{\%Mn}{6} + \frac{\%Cu}{40} + \frac{\%Ni}{20} + \frac{\%Cr}{10} - \frac{\%Mo}{50} \_ \frac{\%V}{10}$$

L. Welded Wire Fabric. For fabric reinforcement, use wire that conforms to ASTM A 82 or A 496. Use wire fabric that conforms to ASTM A 185 or A 497. Observe the relations shown in Table 2 among size number, diameter in inches, and area when ordering wire by size numbers, unless otherwise specified. Precede the size number for deformed wire with "D" and for smooth wire with "W."

Designate welded wire fabric as shown in the following example; 6 x 12 - W16 x W8 (indicating 6-in. longitudinal wire spacing and 12-in. transverse wire spacing with smooth No. 16 wire longitudinally and smooth No, 8 wire transversely).

Table 2
Wire Size Number Diameter, and Area

Size Number (in.)	Size Number (mm)	Diameter (inc.)	Area (sq. in.)
31	200	0.628	0.310
30	194	0.618	0.300
28	181	0.597	0.280
26	168	0.575	0.260
24	155	0.553	0.240
22	142	0.529	0.220
20	129	0.505	0.200
18	116	0.479	0.180
16	103	0.451	0.160
14	90	0.422	0.140
12	77	0.391	0.120
10	65	0.357	0.100
8	52	0.319	0.080
7	45	0.299	0.070
6	39	0.276	0.060
5.5	35	0.265	0.055
5	32	0.252	0.050
4.5	29	0.239	0.045
4	26	0.226	0.040
3.5	23	0.211	0.035
2.9	19	0.192	0.035
2.5	16	0.178	0.025
2	13	0.160	0.020
1.4	9	0.134	0.014
1.2	8	0.124	0.012
0.5	3	0.080	0.005

Note. Size numbers (in.) are the nominal cross-sectional area of the wire in hundredths of a square inch. Size numbers (mm) tire the nominal Gross sectional area of the wire in square millimeters. Fractional sizes between the sizes listed above ore also available and acceptable for use.

F. Epoxy Coating. Epoxy coating will he required as shown on the plans. Before furnishing epoxy-coated reinforcing steel, an epoxy applicator must be pre-approved in accordance with OMS-7330, "Qualification Procedure for Reinforcing Steel Epoxy Coating Applicators," The Construction Division maintains a list or approved applicators.

Coat reinforcing steel in accordance with Table 3.

Table 3
Epoxy Coating Requirements for Reinforcing Steel

Material	Specification
Bar	ASTM A 775 or A 934
Wire or fabric	ASTM A 884 Class A or B
Mechanical couplers	As shown on the plans
Hardware	As shown on the plans

Use epoxy coating material and coating repair material that complies with DMS-8130, "Epoxy Powder Coating for Reinforcing Steel." Do not patch more than 1/4 in. total length in any foot at the applicator's plant,

Epoxy-coated reinforcement will be sampled and tested in accordance with Tex-739-1.

Maintain identification of all reinforcing throughout the coating and fabrication and until delivery to the project site. Furnish 1 copy of a written certification that the coated reinforcing steel meets the requirements of this Item and 1 copy of the manufacturer's control tests.

C. Mechanical Couplers. When mechanical splices in reinforcing steel bars are shown on the plans, use the following types of coupler:

- sleeve-filler,
- sleeve-threaded,
- sleeve-swaged, or
- sleeve-wedge.

Furnish only couplers that have been produced by a manufacturer that has been prequalified in accordance with DMS-4510, "Mechanical Couplers," Sleeve-wedge type couplers will not be permitted on coated reinforcing, Couplers for use on individual projects must be sampled and tested in accordance with DMS-4510. Furnish couplers only at locations shown on the plans.

440.3. Construction.

A. Bending. Cold-bend the reinforcement accurately to the shapes and dimensions shown on the plans. Fabricate in the shop if possible, Field-fabricate, if permitted, using a method approved by the Engineer. Replace improperly fabricated, damaged, or broken bars at no additional expense to the Department, Repair damaged or broken bars embedded in a previous concrete placement using a method approved by the Engineer.

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, the inside diameter of bar bends, in. terms of the nominal bar diameter (d), must be as shown in Table 4.

Table 4
Minimum Inside Diameter of Bar Bends

Bend	Bar Size Number (in.)	Bar Size Number (mm)	Diameter
Bends of 90° and greater in stirrups, ties, and other secondary bars that enclose another bar in the bend	3, 4, 5	10, 13, 16	4d
	6, 7, 8	19, 22, 25	6d
Bends in main bars and in secondary bars not covered above	3 through 8	10 through 25	6d
	9, 10, 11	29, 32, 36	8d
	14, 18	43, 57	10d

Note: Bar size numbers (in.) are based on the number of eighths of an inch included in the nominal diameter of the bar. Bar size numbers (min) approximate the number of millimeters included in the nominal diameter of the bar.

Where bending No. 14 or No. 18 Grade 60 bars is required, bend-test representative specimens as described for smaller bars in the applicable ASTM specification. Make the required 90° bend around a pin with a diameter of 10 times the nominal diameter of the bar.

B. Tolerances. Fabrication tolerances for bars are shown in Figure 1.

C . Storage Store steel reinforcement above the ground on platforms, skids, or other supports, and protect it from damage and deterioration. Ensure that reinforcement is free from dirt, paint, grease, oil, and other foreign materials when it is placed in the work. Use reinforcement free**.** from defects such as cracks and delaminations. ns. Rust, surface seams, surface irregularities, or mill scale will not be cause for rejection if the minimum cross-sectional area of a hand wire-brushed specimen meets the requirements for the size of steel specified.

D. Splices. Lap-splice, weld-splice, or mechanically splice bars as shown on the plans. Additional splices not shown on the plans will require approval. Splices not shown on the plans will be permitted in slabs 15 in, or less in thickness, columns, walls, and parapets.

- Unless otherwise approved, splices will not be permitted in bars 30 ft. or less in plan length. For bars exceeding 30 ft. in plan length, the distance center-to-center of splices must be at least 30 ft. minus 1 splice length, with no more than 1 individual bar length less than 10 ft. Make lap splices not shown on the plans, but otherwise permitted, in accordance with Table 5. Maintain the specified concrete cover and spacing at splices, and place the lap-spliced bars in contact, securely tied together.

Table 5
Minimum Lap Requirements for Bar Sizes through No. 11

Bar Size Number in.)	Bar Size Number (mm)	Uncoated Lap Length	Coated Lap Length
3	10	1 ft. 4 in.	2ft. 0in.
4	13	1 ft. 9 in.	2 ft. 8 in.
5	16	2 ft. 2in.	3 ft. 3in.
6	19	2 ft. 7 in.	3 ft. 11 in.
7	22	3 ft. 5 in	5 ft. 2 in.
8	25	4 ft. 6in.	6ft.9in.
9	29	5 ft. 8in.	8ft.6in
10	32	7 ft. 3 in.	10 ft. 11 in.
11	36	8 ft. 11in.	13 ft. 5 in.

Note: Bar size numbers (in.) are based on the number of eighths of an inch included in the nominal diameter of the bar. Bar size numbers (mm) approximate the number of millimeters included in the nominal diameter of the bar.

- Do not lap No. 14 or No, 18, bars,
- Lap spiral stool at least 1 turn.
- Splice welded wire fabric using a lap length that includes the overlap of at least 2 in. cross wires plus 2 in. on each sheet or roll. Splices using bars that develop equivalent strength and are lapped in accordance with Table 5 are permitted.

- For box culvert extensions with less than 1 ft. of fill, lap the existing longitudinal bars with the new bars as shown in Table 3. For extensions with more than 1 ft. of fill, lap at least 1 ft. 0 in.
- Ensure that welded splices conform to the requirements of the plans and of Item 448, "Structural Field Welding." Field-prepare ends of reinforcing bars if they will be butt-welded, Delivered bars must be long enough to permit weld preparation,
- Install mechanical coupling devices in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations at locations shown on the plans. Protect threaded male or female connections, and make sure the threaded connections are clean when making the connection. Do not repair damaged threads.
- Mechanical coupler alternate equivalent strength arrangements, to be accomplished by substituting larger bar sizes or more bars, will be considered if approved in writing before fabrication of the systems.

E. Placing. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, dimensions shown for reinforcement are to the centers of the bars. Place reinforcement as near as possible to the position shown on the plans, In the plane of the steel parallel to the nearest surface of concrete, bars must not vary from plan placement by more than 1/12 of the spacing between bars. In the plane of the steel perpendicular to the nearest surface of concrete, bars must not vary from plan placement by more than ¼ in. Cover of concrete to the nearest surface of steel must be at least 1 in. unless otherwise shown on the plans.

For bridge slabs, the clear cover tolerance for the top mat or reinforcement is -0, + ½ in.

Locate the reinforcement accurately in the forms, and hold it firmly in place before and during concrete placement by means of bar supports that are adequate in strength and number to prevent displacement and to keep the steel at the proper distance from the forms, Support bars by standard bar supports with plastic tips, approved plastic bar supports, or precast mortal' or concrete blocks when supports are in contact with removable or stay-in place forms. Use bright basic bar supports to support reinforcing steel placed in slab overlays on concrete panels or on existing concrete slabs. Bar supports in contact with soil or subgrade must be approved.

For bar supports with plastic tips, the plastic protection must be at least 3/32 in, thick and extend upward on the wire to a point at least 1/2 in. above the formwork.

All accessories such as tie wires, bar chairs, supports, or clips used with epoxy-coated reinforcement must be of steel, fully coated with epoxy or plastic. Plastic supports approved by the Engineer may also be used with epoxy-coated reinforcement.

Cast mortar or concrete blocks to uniform dimensions with adequate bearing area, Provide a suitable tie wire in each block for anchoring to the steel. Cast the blocks to the thickness required in approved molds. The surface placed adjacent to the form most be a true plane, free of surface imperfections. Cure the blocks by covering then with wet burlap or mats for a period of 72 hr. Mortar for blocks should contain approximately 1 part. hydraulic cement to 3 parts sand. Concrete for blocks should contain 850 lb. of hydraulic cement per cubic yard of concrete.

Place individual bar supports in rows at 4-ft, maximum spacing in each direction, Place continuous type bar supports at 4-ft, maximum spacing. Use continuous bar supports with permanent metal deck forms.

The exposure of the ends of longitudinals, stirrups, and spacers used to position the reinforcement in concrete pipe and in precast box culverts or storm drains is not cause for rejection.

Tie reinforcing steel for bridge slabs, top slabs of direct traffic culverts, and top slabs of prestressed box beams at all intersections, except tie only alternate intersections where spacing is loss than 1 ft. in each direction. For reinforcing steel cages for other structural members, tie the steel at enough intersections to provide a rigid cage of steel. Fasten mats of wire fabric securely at the ends and edges. Before concrete placement, clean mortar, mud, dirt, debris, oil, and other foreign material from the reinforcement. Do not place concrete until authorized.

If reinforcement is not adequately supported or tied to resist settlement, reinforcement is floating upward, truss bars are overturning, or movement is detected in any direction during concrete placement, stop placement until corrective measures are taken.

F. Handling, Placement, and Repair of Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel.

1. Handling. Provide systems for handling coated reinforcement with padded contact areas. Pad bundling bands or use suitable banding to prevent damage to the coating. Lift bundles of coated reinforcement with a strongback, spreader bar, multiple supports, or a platform bridge. Transport the bundled reinforcement carefully, and store it on protective cribbing. Do not drop or drag the coated reinforcement.

2. Construction Methods. Do not flame-cut coated reinforcement. Saw or shear-cut only when approved.

Coat cut ends as specified in Section 440.3.F.3, "Repair of Coating."

Do not weld or mechanically couple coated reinforcing steel except where specifically shown *on* the plans. Remove the epoxy coating at least 6 in. beyond the weld limits before welding and 2 in. beyond the limits of the coupler before assembly, After welding or coupling, clean the steel of oil, grease, moisture, dirt, welding contamination (slag or acid residue), and rust to a near-white finish, Check the existing epoxy for damage. Remove any damaged or loose epoxy back to sound epoxy coating.

After cleaning, coat the splice area with epoxy repair material to a thickness of 7 to 17 mils after curing. Apply a second application of repair material to the bar and coupler interface to ensure complete sealing of the joint.

3. **Repair of Coating.** For repair of the coating, use material that complies *with* the requirements of this Item and ASTM D 3963. Make repairs in accordance with procedures recommended by the manufacturer of the epoxy coating powder. For areas to be patched, apply at least the same coating thickness as required for the original coating. Repair all visible damage to the coating.

   Repair sawed and sheared ends, cuts, breaks, and other damage promptly before additional oxidation occurs. Clean areas to be repaired to ensure that they are free from surface contaminants. Make repairs in the shop or in the field as required.

ITEM 462
CONCRETE BOX CULVERTS AND STORM DRAINS

462.1. Description. Furnish, construct, and install concrete box culverts and storm drains.

462.2. Materials.

A. **General.** Furnish materials in accordance with the following:

- Item 420, "Concrete Structures"
- Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete"
- Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel"
- Item 464, "Reinforced Concrete Pipe."

Provide cast-in-place or precast, formed or machine-made, box culverts and storm drains. For culverts with overlay or a 1- to 2-course surface treatment or if the top slab is the final riding surface, use Class S concrete for top slabs of cast-in-place concrete culverts unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use Class C concrete for the rest of the culvert and for all other cast-in-place boxes. Culverts with fill do not require Class S concrete.

Furnish concrete for machine-made precast boxes in accordance with ASTM C 1433.

When sulfate-resistant concrete is required, do not use Class C fly ash.

B. Fabrication.

1. **Cast-in-Place,** Meet Item 420, "Concrete Structures."
2. **Formed Precast.** Meet Item 424, "Precast Concrete Structures (Fabrication)."
3. **Machine-Made Precast.** Furnish machine-made precast boxes in accordance with ASTM C 1433, Ensure that concrete is placed uniformly in the forms. Compact by mechanical devices to ensure dense concrete. Mix concrete in a central batch plant or other approved batching facility from which the quality and uniformity of the concrete can be ensured. Do not use transit-mixed concrete.

C. **Testing.**

1. **Cast-in-Place.** Provide test specimens that meet Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete."
2. **Formed Precast.** Produce test specimens in accordance with Tex-704-I.
3. **Machine-Made Precast.** Make test specimens in test cylinders at the same time and in the same manner as the box sections they represent. Make a minimum of 4 test cylinders for each day's production run and each mix design. Cure test cylinders in the same manner and for the same times as the boxes they represent. Test the specimens in accordance with Tex-704-I.
4. **Testing Equipment.** The producer must furnish all equipment required for testing concrete for boxes produced in a precasting plant.

D. Lifting Holes. For precast boxes, provide no more than 4 lifting holes in each section. Lifting holes may be cast, cut into fresh concrete after form removal, or drilled. Provide lifting holes of sufficient size for adequate lifting devices based on the size and weight of the box section. Do not use lifting holes larger than 3 in. in diameter. Do not cut more than 1 longitudinal wire or 2 circumferential wires per layer of reinforcing steel when locating lift holes. Repair spilled areas around lifting holes.

E. Marking. Mark precast boxes with the following:

- name or trademark of the producer;
- date of manufacture;
- box size;
- minimum and maximum fill heights; and
- match marks proper installation, when required, under Section 462.2,F, "Tolerances."

For boxes without lifting holes, mark 1 end of each box section on the inside and outside walls to indicate the top or bottom as it will be installed.

Indent markings into the box section or paint them on each box with waterproof paint.

F. Tolerances. Ensure that precast sections of either type meet the following requirements:

- The inside vertical and horizontal dimensions do not vary from plan requirements by more than 1/2 in. or 1%, whichever is greater.
- The horizontal or vertical plane at each end of the box section does not vary from perpendicular by more than 1/2 in. or 1%, whichever is greater, measured on the inside faces of the section.
- The sides of a section at each end do not vary from being perpendicular to the top and bottom by more than 1/2 in, or 1%, whichever is greater, when measured diagonally between opposite interior corners.

Ensure that wall and slab thicknesses are not less than shown on the plans except for occasional deficiencies not greater than 114 in. or 5%, whichever is greater. If proper jointing is not affected, thicknesses in excess of plan requirements are acceptable.

Deviations from the above tolerances will be acceptable if the sections can be fitted at the plant or job site and the joint opening at any point does not exceed 1 in. Use match marks for proper installation on sections that have been accepted in this manner.

G. Defects and Repair. Fine cracks on the surface of the member that do not extend to the plane of the nearest reinforcement are acceptable unless the cracks are numerous and extensive. Repair cracks that extend into the plane of the reinforcing steel in an approved manner. Excessive damage, honeycomb, or cracking will be subject to structural review. The Engineer may accept boxes with repairs that are sound, properly finished, and cured in conformance with pertinent specifications. When fine cracks on the surface indicate poor curing practices, discontinue further production of precast sections until corrections are made and proper curing is provided.

H. Storage and Shipment. Store precast sections on a level surface, Do not place any load on the sections until design strength is reached and curing is complete. Shipment of sections is permissible when the design strength and curing requirements have been met.

462.3. Construction.

A. Excavation, Shaping, Bedding, and Backfill. Excavate, shape, bed, and backfill in accordance with Item 400, "Excavation and Backfill for Structures," except where jacking, boring, or tunneling methods are shown on the plans or are permitted. Jack, bore, or tunnel in accordance with Item 476, "Jacking, Boring, or Tunneling Pipe or Box." For all box structures where joints consist of materials other than mortar, immediate backfilling is permitted. Take precautions in placing and compacting the backfill to avoid any movement of the boxes or damage to the joints. Remove and replace boxes damaged by the Contractor at no expense to the Department.

B. Placement of Boxes. When precast boxes are used to form multiple barrel structures, place the box sections in conformance with the plans or as directed. Place material to be used between barrels as shown on the plans or as directed. Unless otherwise authorized, start the laying of boxes on the bedding at the outlet end and proceed toward the inlet end with the abutting sections properly matched. Fit, match, and lay the boxes to form a smooth, uniform conduit true to the established lines and grades. For trench installations, lower the box sections into the trench without damaging the box or disturbing the bedding and the sides of the trench. Carefully clean the ends of the box before it is placed, Prevent the earth or bedding material from entering the box as it is laid. Remove and re-lay, without extra compensation, boxes that are not in alignment or that show excessive settlement after laying. Form and place cast-in-place boxes in accordance with Item 420, "Concrete Structures."

B. Jointing. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, use any of the jointing materials in accordance with the jointing requirements specified in Item 464, "Reinforced Concrete Pipe."

C. Connections and Stub Ends. Make connections of boxes to existing boxes, pipes, storm drains, or storm drain appurtenances as shown on the plans. Mortar or concrete the bottom of existing structures if necessary to eliminate any drainage pockets created by the connections, Connect boxes to any required headwalls, wingwalls, safety end treatments or riprap, or other structures as shown on the plans or as directed. Repair any damage to the existing structure resulting from making the connections. Finish stub ends for connections to future work not shown on the plans by installing watertight plugs into the free end of the box.

For precast boxes, fill lifting holes with mortar or concrete and cure. Precast concrete or mortar plugs may be used.

ITEM 464
REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE

464.1. Description. Furnish and install reinforced concrete pipe, materials for precast concrete pipe culverts, or precast concrete storm drain mains, laterals, stubs, and inlet leads.

464.2. Materials.

A. Fabrication. Provide precast reinforced concrete pipe that conforms to the design shown on the plans and to the following:

- ASTM C 76 or ASTM C 655 unless otherwise shown on the plans for circular pipe, or
- ASTM C 506 for arch pipe, or
- ASTM C 507 for horizontal elliptical pipe.

Provide precast concrete pipe that is machine-made or cast by a process that will provide for uniform placement of the concrete in the form and compaction by mechanical devices that will assure a dense concrete. Mix concrete in a central batch plant or other approved batching facility where the quality and uniformity of the concrete is assured. Do not use transit-mixed concrete for precast concrete pipe. When sulfate-resistant concrete is required, do not use Class C fly ash.

Do not place more than 2 holes for lifting and placing in the top section of precast pipe, Cast, cut, or drill the lifting holes in the wall of the pipe. The maximum hole diameter is 3 in. at the inside surface of the pipe wall and 4 in, at the outside surface. Do not cut more than I longitudinal wire or 2 circumferential wires per layer of reinforcing steel when locating lift holes.

B. Design.

1. General. The class and D-load equivalents are shown in Table I. Furnish arch pipe in accordance with ASTM C 506 and the dimensions shown in Table 2. Furnish horizontal elliptical pipe in accordance with ASTM C 507 and the dimensions shown in Table 3. For arch pipe and horizontal elliptical pipe the minimum height of cover required is 1 ft.

Table 1 Circular Pipe
ASTM C 76 & ASTM C 655

Class	D-Load
I	800
II	1,000
III	1,350
IV	2,000
V	3,000

Table 2 Arch Pipe

Design Size	Equivalent Diameter (in.)	Rise (in.)	Span (in.)
1	18	13-½	22
2	21	15–½	26
3	24	18	28–½
4	60	22-½	36-¼
5	36	26–5/8	43-¾
6	42	31-5/16	51-1/8
7	48	36	58-½
8	54	40	65
9	60	45	73
10	72	54	88

Table 3 Horizontal Elliptical Pipe

Design Size	Equivalent Diameter in.)	Rise (in.)	Span (in.)
1	18	14	23
2	24	19	30
3	27	22	34
4	30	24	38
5	33	27	42
6	36	29	45
7	39	32	49
8	42	34	53
9	48	38	60
10	54	43	68

2. Jacking, Boring, or Tunneling. Design pipe for jacking, boring, or tunneling considering the specific installation conditions such as the soil conditions, installation methods, anticipated deflection angles, and jacking stresses. When requested, provide design notes and drawings signed and sealed by a Texas licensed professional engineer.

C. Physical Test Requirements. Acceptance of the pipe will be determined by the results of the following tests:

- material tests required in ASTM C 76, C 655, C 506, or C 507,
- absorption tests in accordance with ASTM C 497,
- three-edge bearing tests in accordance with ASTM C 497 (Perform 3-edge bearing tests on 1 pipe for each 300 pipes or fraction thereof for each design or shape, size, class, or D-load produced within 30 calendar days. Test for the load to produce a 0.01-in. crack or 15% in excess of the required D-load, whichever is less. Test the pipe to ultimate load if so directed. Tested pipe that satisfies the requirements of Section 464.2.F., "Causes for Rejection," may be used for construction. As an alternate to the 3edge bearing test, concrete pipe 54 in. in diameter and larger may be accepted on the basis of compressive strength of cores cut from the wall of the pipe. The manufacturer must determine the compressive strength of the samples. Obtain, cure, prepare, and test the cores in accordance with ASTM C 497. The manufacturer must plug and seal core holes in the pipe wall after testing.), and
- inspection of the finished pipe to determine its conformance with the required design and its freedom from defects.

D. Marking. Clearly mark the following information on each section of pipe:

- class or D-load of pipe,
- ASTM designation,
- date of manufacture,
- name or trademark of the manufacturer, and
- pipe to be used for jacking and boring.

For pipe with elliptical reinforcement, clearly mark 1 end of each section during the process of manufacture or immediately thereafter. Mark the pipe on the inside and the outside of opposite walls to show the location of the top or bottom of the pipe as it should be installed unless the external shape of the pipe is such that the correct position of the top and bottom is obvious. Mark the pipe section by indenting or painting with waterproof paint.

E. Inspection. Provide facilities and access to allow for inspection regarding the quality of materials, the process of manufacture, and the finished pipe at the pipe manufacturing plant. In addition, provide access for inspection of the finished pipe at the project site before and during installation.

F. Causes for Rejection. Individual sections of pipe may be rejected for any of the following:

- fractures or cracks passing through the shell, with the exception of a single end crack that does not exceed the depth of the joint;
- defects that indicate imperfect proportioning, mixing, and molding;
- surface defects indicating honeycombed or open texture;
- damaged ends where such damage would prevent making a satisfactory joint;
- any continuous crack having a surface width of 0.01 in. or more and extending for a length of 12 in. or more.

G. Repairs. Make repairs if necessary because of occasional imperfections in manufacture or accidental damage during handling. The Engineer may accept pipe with repairs that are sound, properly finished, and cured in conformance with pertinent specifications.

H. Rejections. Allow access for the marking of rejected pipe. Rejected pipe will be plainly marked by the Engineer by painting colored spots over the Department monogram on the inside wall of the pipe and on the top outside wall of the pipe. The painted spots will be no larger than 4 in. in diameter. The rejected pipe will not be defaced in any other manner, Remove the rejected pipe from the project and replace with pipe meeting the requirements of this Item.

I. Jointing Materials. Use any of the materials described herein for the making of joints, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Furnish a manufacturer's certificate of compliance for all jointing materials except mortar.

1. Mortar. Provide mortar for joints that meets the requirements of Section 464.3,C, "Jointing."

2. Cold-Applied, Plastic Asphalt Sewer Joint Compound. Provide a material that consists of natural or processed asphalt base, suitable volatile solvents, and inert filler. The consistency is to be such that the ends of the pipe can be coated with a layer of the compound up to 112 in, thick by means of a trowel. Provide a joint compound that cures to a firm, stiff plastic condition after application. Provide a material of a uniform mixture. If any small separation occurs in the container, stir to a uniform mix before using.

Provide a material that meets the requirements of Table 4 when tested in accordance with Tex-526-C.

Table 4
Cold-Applied, Plastic Asphalt Sewer Joint Compound
Material Requirements

Composition	Analysis
Asphalt base, I00%-% volatiles-% ash, % by weight	28-45
Volatiles, 212°F evaporation, 24 hr., % by weight	10-26
Mineral matter, determined as ash, % by weight	30-55
Consistency, cone penetration, 150 q, 5 sec,, 77°F	150-275

3. Rubber Gaskets. Provide gaskets that conform to ASTM C 361 or C 443. Meet the requirements of ASTM C 443 for design of the joints and permissible variations in dimensions.

4. Pre-Formed Flexible Joint Sealants. Pre-formed flexible joint sealants may be used for sealing joints of tongue-and-groove concrete pipe, Provide flexible joint sealants that meet the requirements of ASTM C 990. Use flexible joint sealants that do not depend on oxidizing, evaporating, or chemical action for its adhesive or cohesive strength. Supply in extruded rope form of suitable cross section, Provide a size of the pre-formed flexible joint sealant in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and large enough to property seal the joint. Flexible joint sealants must be protected by a suitable wrapper, and the jointing material must maintain integrity when the wrapper is removed.

464.3. Construction.

A. Excavation, Shaping, Bedding, and Backfill. Excavate, shape, bed, and backfill in accordance with Item 400, "Excavation and Backfill for Structures," except where jacking, boring, or tunneling methods are permitted, Jack, bore, or tunnel the pipe in accordance with Item 476, "Jacking, Boring, or Tunneling Pipe or Box." If joints consist of materials other than mortar, immediate backfilling is permitted. Take special precautions in placing and compacting the backfill to avoid any movement of the pipe or damage to the joints. Unless otherwise shown on the plans or permitted in writing, do not use heavy earth-moving equipment to haul over the structure until a minimum of 4 ft. of permanent or temporary compacted fill has been placed over the structure. Remove and replace pipe damaged by the Contractor at no expense to the Department.

B. Laying Pipe. Unless otherwise authorized, start the laying of pipe on the bedding at the outlet end with the spigot or tongue end pointing downstream, and proceed toward the inlet end with the abutting sections properly matched, true to the established lines and grades. Fit, match, and lay the pipe to form a smooth, uniform conduit, Where bell and-spigot pipe is used, cut cross trenches in the foundation to allow the barrel of the pipe to rest firmly upon the bedding. Do not cut cross trenches more than 2 in, larger than the bell ends of the pipe. Lower sections of pipe into the trench without damaging the pipe or disturbing the bedding and the sides of the trench, Carefully clean the ends of the pipe before the pipe is placed, Prevent the earth or bedding material from entering the pipe as it is laid. When elliptical pipe with circular reinforcing or circular pipe with elliptical reinforcing is used, lay the pipe in the trench so that the markings for the top or bottom are not more than 5° from the vertical plane through the longitudinal axis of the pipe. Remove and re-lay, without extra compensation, pipe that is not in alignment or that shows excessive settlement after laying.

Lay multiple lines of reinforced concrete pipe with the centerlines of the individual barrels parallel, Unless otherwise shown on the plans, use the clear distances between outer surfaces of adjacent pipes shown in Table 5. For arch pipe or horizontal elliptical pipe use the equivalent diameter from Table 2 or Table 3 to determine the clear distance requirement in Table 5.

Table 5
Minimum Clear Distance between Pines

Equivalent Diameter	Min. Clear Distance
18 in.	9 in.
24 in.	11 in.
30 in.	1 ft. 1 in.
36 in.	1 ft. 3 in.
42 in,	1 ft. 5 in.
48 in,	1 ft. 7 in.
54 in.	1 ft. 11 in.
60 to 84 in.	2 ft.

C. Jointing. Make available an appropriate rolling device similar to an automobile mechanic's "creeper" for conveyance through small-size pipe structures.

1. **Joints Sealed with Hydraulic Cement Mortar.** Use mortar consisting of 1 part cement, 2 parts sand, and enough water to make a plastic mix. Clean and wet the pipe ends before making the joint, Plaster the lower half of the bell or groove and the upper half of the tongue or spigot with mortar. After the pipes are tightly jointed, pack mortar into the joint from both inside and outside the pipe. Finish the inside smooth and flush with adjacent joints of pipe. For tongue-and-groove joints, form a bead of semicircular cross section over the joint outside the pipe, extending at least 1 in. on each side of the joint. For bell-and-spigot joints, form the mortar to a 45° fillet between the outer edge of the bell and the spigot. Cure mortar joints by keeping the

joints wet for at least 48 hr. or until the backfill has been completed, whichever comes first. When mortar joints are used, do not place fill or backfill until the jointing material has cured for at least 6 hr. Do not conduct jointing when the atmospheric temperature is at or below 40°F. Protect mortared joints against freezing by backfilling or other approved methods for at least 24 hr.

Driveway culverts do not require morta[r] banding on the outside of the pipe.

With approval, pipes that are large enough for a person to enter may be furnished with the groove between ½ in. and 3/4 in. longer than the tongue. Such pipe may be laid and backfilled without mortar joints. After the backfilling has been completed, clean the space on the interior of the pipe between the end of the tongue and the groove of all foreign material, thoroughly wet and fill with mortar around the entire circumference of the pipe, and finish flush.

2. **Joints Using Cold-Applied, Plastic Asphalt Sewer Joint Compound.** Ensure that both ends of the pipes are clean and dry, Trowel or otherwise place a ½ in.-thick layer of the compound in the groove end of the pipe covering at least 2/3 of the joint face around the entire circumference. Next, shove home the tongue end of the next pipe with enough pressure to make a tight joint. After the joint is made, remove any excess mastic projecting into the pipe, Backfill after the joint has been inspected and approved.

3. **Joints Using Rubber** Gaskets. Make the joint assembly according to the recommendations of the gasket manufacturer. When using rubber gaskets, make joints watertight, Backfill after the joint has been inspected and approved.

4. **Joints Using Pre-Formed Flexible Joint Sealants.** Install pre-formed flexible joint sealants in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Place the joint sealer so that no dirt or other deleterious materials come in contact with the joint sealing material. Pull or push home the pipe with enough force to properly seal the joint. Remove any joint material pushed out into the interior of the pipe that would tend to obstruct the flow. When the atmospheric temperature is below 60°F', store pre-formed flexible joint sealants in an area warmed to above 70°F or artificially warm to this temperature in an approved manner. Apply flexible joint sealants to pipe joints immediately before placing pipe in trench, and then connect pipe to previously laid pipe, Backfill after the joint has been inspected and approved.

D. Connections and Stub Ends. Make connections of concrete pipe to existing pipes, pipe storm drains, or storm drain appurtenances as shown on the plans,

Mortar or concrete the bottom of existing structures if necessary to eliminate any drainage pockets created by the connections. Repair any damage to the existing structure resulting from making the connections.

Unless otherwise shown in the plans, make connections between concrete pipe and corrugated metal pipe with a suitable concrete collar having a minimum thickness of 4 in.

Finish stub ends for connections to future work not shown on the plans by installing watertight plugs into the free end of the pipe.

Fill lift holes with concrete, mortar, or precast concrete plugs after the pipe is in place.

ITEM 466

HEADWALLS AND WINGWALLS

466.1. Description. Furnish, construct, and install concrete headwalls and wingwalls for drainage structures and underpasses.

466.2. Materials.

A. General. Furnish materials in accordance with the following:

- Item 420, "Concrete Structures"
- Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete"
- Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel."

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, use Class C concrete for cast-in-place and precast concrete units. Furnish cast-in-place or precast headwalls and wingwalls unless otherwise shown on the plans.

B. Fabrication.

1. General. Fabricate cast-in-place concrete units and precast units in accordance with Item 420, "Concrete Structures." For headwalls and wingwalls use the following definitions:

- "Headwalls" refers to all walls, including wings, at the ends of single-barrel and multiple-barrel pipe culvert structures.
- "Wingwalls" refers to all walls at the ends of single-barrel or multiple-barrel box culvert structures.

2. Lifting Holes. For precast units, provide no more than 4 lifting holes in each section. Lifting holes may be cast, cut into fresh concrete after form removal, or drilled. Provide lifting holes large enough for adequate lifting devices based on the size and weight of the section. The maximum hole diameter is 3 in. at the inside surface of the wall and 4 in. at the outside surface, Do not cut more than I longitudinal wire or 2 circumferential wires per layer of reinforcing steel when locating lift holes. Repair spalled areas around lifting holes.

3. Marking. Before shipment from the casting or fabrication yard, clearly mark the following on each precast unit:

- the date of manufacture,
- the name or trademark of the manufacturer, and
- the type and size designation.

4. **Storage and Shipment.** Store precast units on a level surface, Do not place any loads on precast concrete units until design strength is reached. Do not ship units until design strength requirements have been met.
5. **Causes for Rejection.** Precast units may be rejected for not meeting any one of the specification requirements. Individual units may also be rejected for fractures or cracks passing through the wall or surface defects indicating honeycombed or open texture surfaces. Remove rejected units from the project, and replace them with acceptable units meeting the requirements of this Item.

6. **Defects and Repairs.** Occasional imperfections in manufacture or accidental damage sustained during handling may be repaired. The repaired units will be acceptable if they conform to the requirements of this Item and the repairs are sound, properly finished, and cured in conformance with pertinent specifications.

466.3. Construction.

A. **General.** Remove portions of existing structures in accordance with Item 430.3, "Construction." Drill, dowel, and grout in accordance with Item 420, "Concrete Structures."

B. **Excavation, Shaping, Bedding, and Backfill.** Excavate, shape, bed, and backfill in accordance with Item 400, "Excavation and Backfill for Structures." Take special precautions in placing and compacting the backfill to avoid any movement or damage to the units. Bed precast units on foundations of firm and stable material accurately shaped to conform to the bases of the units.

C. **Placement of Precast Units.** 'Provide adequate means to lift and place the precast units. Fill lifting holes with mortar or concrete and cure. Precast concrete or mortar plugs may be used.

D. **Connections.** Make connections to new or existing structures in accordance with the details shown on the plans, Furnish jointing material in accordance with Item 464, "Reinforced Concrete Pipe," or as shown on the plans.

When removing existing headwalls, also remove a length of the existing pipe from the headwall to the joint as shown on the plans or as approved. Re-lay the removed pipe if approved, or furnish and lay a length of new pipe.

ITEM 473

LAYING CULVERT AND STORM DRAIN PIPE

473.1. Description. Install furnished culvert and storm drain pipe.

473.2. Materials. Pipe furnished may be new or salvaged or a combination of both. Bituminous coating must meet the requirements of Section 460.2.B, "Protective Coating."

473.3. Construction. Obtain and haul pipe from designated locations. Excavate, bed, and backfill in accordance with Item 400, "Excavation and Backfill for Structures." Install concrete pipe in accordance with Item 464, "Reinforced Concrete Pipe," Install corrugated metal pipe in accordance with Item 460, "Corrugated Metal Pipe." Make connections to existing structures as shown on the plans and in conformance to the requirements for connections in the pertinent pipe specifications or as approved. Connect reinforced concrete pipe to corrugated metal pipe with a suitable concrete collar having a minimum thickness of 4 in. or as shown on the plans. Use a coating of bituminous material to insulate portions of aluminum pipe that are to be in contact with metal other than aluminum, Extend the coating a 1 ft, minimum beyond area of contact. Replace Contractor-damaged items designated for reuse with new material, or restore to previous condition as approved.

ITEM 502

BARRICADES, SIGNS, AND TRAFFIC HANDLING

502.1. Description. Provide, install, move, replace, maintain, clean, and remove upon completion of work all barricades, signs, cones, lights, and other traffic control devices used for traffic handling as indicated on the plans and as directed.

502.2. Construction. Provide traffic control devices that conform to details shown on the plans, the TMUTCD, and the Compliant Work Zone Traffic Control Device List (CWZTCDL) maintained by the Traffic Operations Division.

A. **Implementation.** Before beginning work, designate in writing a Contractor's Responsible Person (CRP) to be the representative of the Contractor who is responsible for taking or directing corrective measures of installation and maintenance deficiencies as soon as possible. The CRP must be accessible by phone and able to respond to emergencies 24 hours per day.

Follow the traffic control plan (TCP) and install traffic control devices as shown on the plans and as directed. Install traffic control devices straight and plumb. Do not make changes to the location of any device or implement any other changes to the TCP without the approval of the Engineer. Minor adjustments to meet field constructability and visibility are allowed.

Submit Contractor-proposed TCP changes, signed and sealed by a licensed professional engineer, to the Engineer for approval. The Engineer may develop, sign, and seal Contractor-proposed changes. Changes must conform to guidelines established in the TMUTCD using approved products from the CWZTCDL. Maintain traffic control devices by taking corrective action as soon as possible. Corrective action includes but is not limited to cleaning, replacing, straightening, covering, or removing devices, Maintain the devices such that they are properly positioned, spaced, and legible, and that retroreflective cha[r]acteristics meet requirements during darkness and rain.

B. **Flaggers.** Provide a Contractor representative who has been certified as a flagging instructor through courses offered by the Texas Engineering Extension Service, the American Traffic Safety Services Association, the National Safety Council, or other approved organizations. Provide the certificate indicating course completion when requested. This representative is responsible for training and assuring that all flaggers are qualified to perform flagging duties. A qualified flagger must be independently certified by one of the organizations listed above or trained by the Contractor's certified flagging instructor. Provide the Engineer with a current list of qualified flaggers before beginning flagging activities. Use only flaggers on the qualified list.

Flaggers must be courteous and able to effectively communicate with the public. When directing traffic, flaggers must use standard attire, flags, signs, and signals and follow the flagging procedures set forth in the TMUTCD.

C. **Removal.** Upon completion of work, remove all barricades, signs, cones, lights, and other traffic control devices used for work-zone traffic handling, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

ITEM 506
TEMPORARY EROSION, SEDIMENTATION, AND ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

506.1. Description. Install, maintain, and remove erosion, sedimentation, and environmental control devices. Remove accumulated sediment and debris.

506.2. Materials.

A. Rock Filter Dams.

1. Aggregate. Furnish aggregate with hardness, durability, cleanliness, and resistance to crumbling, flaking, and eroding acceptable to the Engineer. Provide the following:

- **Types 1, 2, and 4 Rock Filter Dams.** Use 3 to 6 in. aggregate.
- **Type 3 Rock Filler Dams.** Use 4 to 8 in. aggregate.

2. Wire. Provide minimum 20 gauge galvanized wire for the steel wire mesh and tie wires for Types 2 and 3 rock filter dams. Type 4 dams require:

- a double-twisted, hexagonal weave with a nominal mesh opening of 2-1/2 in. x 3-114 in.;
- minimum 0.0866 steel wire for netting;
- minimum 0.1063 in. steel wire for selvages and corners; and minimum 0,0866 in. for binding or tie wire.

3. Sandbag Material. Furnish sandbags meeting Section 506.2.1, "Sandbags," except that any gradation of aggregate may be used to fill the sandbags.

B. Temporary Pipe Slope Drains. Provide corrugated metal pipe, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe, flexible tubing, watertight connection bands, grommet materials, prefabricated fittings, and flared entrance sections that conform to the plans, Recycled and other materials meeting these requirements are allowed if approved.

Furnish concrete in accordance with Item 432, "Riprap."

C. Baled Hay. Provide hay bales weighing at least 50 lb., composed entirely of vegetable matter, measuring 30 in. or longer, and bound with wire, nylon, or polypropylene string.

D. Temporary Paved Flumes, Furnish asphalt concrete, hydraulic cement concrete, or other comparable non-erodible material that conforms to the plans. Provide rook or rubble with a minimum diameter of 6 in. and a maximum volume of ½ cu. ft. for the construction of energy dissipaters.

E. Construction Exits. Provide materials that meet the details shown on the plans and this Section.

1. Rock Construction Exit. Provide crushed aggregate for long and short-term construction exits. Furnish aggregates that are clean, hard, durable, and free from adherent coatings such as salt, alkali, dirt, clay, loam, shale, soft, or flaky materials and organic and injurious matter. Use 4- to 8-in. aggregate for Type 1 and 2- to 4in. aggregate for Type 3.

2. Timber Construction Exit. Furnish No. 2 quality or better railroad ties and timbers for long-term construction exits, free of large and loose knots and treated to control rot, Fasten timbers with nuts and bolts or lag bolts, of at least 1/2 in. diameter, unless otherwise shown on the plans or allowed. For short-term exits, provide plywood or pressed wafer board at least 1/2 in. thick.

3. Foundation Course. Provide a foundation course consisting of flexible base, bituminous concrete, hydraulic cement concrete, or other materials as shown on the plans or directed.

F. Embankment for Erosion Control. Provide rock, loam, clay, topsoil, or other earth materials that will form a stable embankment to meet the intended use.

G. Pipe. Provide pipe outlet material in accordance with Item 556, "Pipe Underdrains," and details shown on the plans.

H. Construction Perimeter Fence.

1. Posts. Provide essentially straight wood or steel posts that are at least 60 in. long. Furnish soft wood posts with a minimum diameter of 3 in. or use 2 x 4 boards, Furnish hardwood posts with a minimum cross-section of 1-1/2 x 1-1/5 in. Furnish T- or L-shaped steel posts with a minimum weight of 1.3 lb. per foot.

2. Fence. Provide orange construction fencing as approved by the Engineer.

3. Fence Wire. Provide 12-½ gauge or larger galvanized smooth or twisted wire. Provide l6 gauge or larger tie wire.

4. Flagging. Provide brightly-colored flagging that is fade-resistant and at least 3/4 in. wide to provide maximum visibility both day and night.

5. Staples. Provide staples with a crown at least 1/2 in. wide and legs at least 1/2 in. long.

6. Used Materials. Previously used materials meeting the applicable requirements may be used if accepted by the Engineer.

I. Sandbags. Provide sandbag material of polypropylene, polyethylene, or polyamide woven fabric with a minimum unit weight of 4 oz. per square yard, a Mullen burst-strength exceeding 300 psi, and an ultraviolet stability exceeding 70%.

Use natural coarse sand or manufactured sand meeting the gradation given in Table 1 to fill sandbags. Filled sandbags must be 24 to 30 in. long, 16 to 18 in. wide, and 6 to 8 in. thick.

Table 1
Sand Gradation

Sieve #	**Maximum Retained (% by Weight)**
4	3%
100	80%
200	95%

K. Temporary Sediment Control Fence. Provide a net-reinforced fence using woven geo-textile fabric. Logos visible to the traveling public will not be allowed.

1. Fabric. Provide fabric materials in accordance with DMS-6230, "Temporary Sediment Control Fence Fabric."
2. Posts. Provide essentially straight wood or steel posts with a minimum length of 48 in., unless otherwise shown on the plans. Soft wood posts must be at least 3 in. in diameter or nominal 2 x 4 in. Hardwood posts must have a minimum cross-section of 1-½ x 1-½ in. T- or L-shaped steel posts must have a minimum weight of 1.3 lb. per foot.

3. Net Reinforcement. Provide net reinforcement of at least 12-½ gauge galvanized welded wire mesh, with a maximum opening size of 2 x 4 in., at least 24 in. wide, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

4. Staples. Provide staples with a crown at least 3/4 in. wide and legs ½ in. long.

5. Used Materials. Use recycled material meeting the applicable requirements if accepted by the Engineer.

506.3. Equipment. Provide a backhoe, front end loader, blade, scraper, bulldozer, or other equipment as required when "Earthwork for Erosion Control" is specified on the plans as a bid item.

506.4. Construction.

A. Contractor Responsibilities. Implement the Department's Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWP3) for the project site in accordance with the specific or general storm water permit requirements. Develop and implement an SWP3 for project-specific material supply plants within and outside of the Department's right of way in accordance with the specific or general storm water permit requirements. Prevent water pollution from storm water associated with construction activity from entering any surface water or private property on or adjacent to the project site.

B. General.

1. Phasing. Implement control measures in the area to be disturbed before beginning construction, or as directed. Limit the disturbance to the area shown on the plans or as directed. If, in the opinion of the Engineer, the Contractor cannot control soil erosion and sedimentation resulting from construction operations, the Engineer will limit the disturbed area to that which the Contractor is able to control. Minimize disturbance to vegetation.

2. Maintenance. Immediately correct ineffective control measures. Implement additional controls as directed, Remove excavated material within the time requirements specified in the applicable storm water permit.

3. Stabilization. Stabilize disturbed areas where construction activities will be temporarily stopped in accordance with the applicable storm water permit, Establish a uniform vegetative cover. The project will not be accepted until a 70% density of existing adjacent undisturbed areas is obtained, unless otherwise shown on the plans, When shown on the plans, the Engineer may accept the project when adequate controls are in place that will control erosion, sedimentation, and water pollution until sufficient vegetative cover can be established.

4. Finished Work. Upon acceptance of vegetative cover, remove and dispose of all temporary control measures, temporary embankments, bridges, matting, falsework, piling, debris, or other obstructions placed during construction that are not a part of the finished work, or as directed.

5. Restricted Activities. Do not locate disposal areas, stockpiles, or haul roads in any wetland, water body, or streambed.

Do not install temporary construction crossings in or across any water body without the prior approval of the appropriate resource agency and the Engineer. Restrict construction operations in any water body to the necessary areas as shown on the plans or applicable permit, or as directed. Use temporary bridges, timber mats, or other structurally sound and non-eroding material for stream crossings.

Provide protected storage area for paints, chemicals, solvents, and fertilizers at an approved location. Keep paints, chemicals, solvents, and fertilizers off bare ground and provide shelter for stored chemicals.

C. Installation, Maintenance, and Removal Work. Perform work in accordance with the specific or general storm water permit. Install and maintain the integrity of temporary erosion and sedimentation control devices to accumulate silt and debris until earthwork construction and permanent erosion control features are in place or the disturbed area has been adequately stabilized as determined by the Engineer. If a device ceases to function as intended, repair or replace the device or portions thereof as necessary. Remove sediment, debris, and litter. When approved, sediments may be disposed of within embankments, or in the right of way in areas where the material will not contribute to further siltation. Dispose of removed material in accordance with federal, state, and local regulations.

Remove devices upon approval or when directed. Upon removal, finish-grade and dress the area. Stabilize disturbed areas in accordance with the permit, and as shown on the plans or directed. The Contractor retains ownership of stockpiled material and must remove it from the project when new installations or replacements are no longer required.

1. Rock Filter Darns for Erosion Control. Remove trees, brush, stumps, and other objectionable material that may interfere with the construction of rock filter dams. Place sandbags as a foundation when required or at the Contractor's option.

For Types 1, 2, 3, and 5, place the aggregate to the lines, height, and slopes specified, without undue voids. For Types 2 and 3, place the aggregate on the mesh and then fold the mesh at the upstream side over the aggregate and secure it to itself on the downstream side with wire ties, or hog rings, or as directed. Place rock filter dams perpendicular to the flow of the stream or channel unless otherwise directed. Construct filter dams according to the following criteria, unless otherwise shown on the plans:

a. Type 1 (Non-reinforced).

(1) **Height.** At least 18 in. measured vertically from existing ground to top of filter dam.
(2) **Top Width.** At least 2 ft.
(3) **Slopes.** At most 2:1.

b. Type 2 **(Reinforced).**

(1) **Height.** At least 18 in. measured vertically from existing ground to top of filter dam,
(2) **Top Width.** At least 2 ft.
(3) **Slopes.** At most 2:1.
(4)

c. Type 3 (Reinforced).

(1) **Height.** At least 36 in. measured vertically from existing ground to top of filter dam.
(2) **Top** Width. At least 2 ft,
(3) Slopes. At most 2:1.

d. Type 4 (Sack Gabions). Unfold sack gabions and smooth out kinks and bends. For vertical filling, connect the sides by lacing in a single loop-double loop pattern on 4- to 5-in, spacing, At one end, pull the end lacing rod until tight, wrap around the end, and twist 4 times, At the filling end, fill with stone, pull the rod tight, cut the wire with approximately 6 in. remaining, and twist wires 4 times.

For horizontal filling, place sack flat in a filling trough, fill with stone, and connect sides and secure ends as described above.

Lift and place without damaging the gabion. Shape sack gabions to existing contours.

e. Type 5. Provide rock filter dams as shown on the plans.

2. Temporary Pipe Slope Drains. Install pipe with a slope as shown on the plans or as directed. Construct embankment for the drainage system in 8-in, lifts to the required elevations. Hand-tamp the soil around and under the entrance section to the top of the embankment as shown on the plans or as directed, Form the top of the embankment or earth dike *over* the pipe slope drain at least 1 ft. higher than the top of the inlet pipe at all points, Secure the pipe with hold-downs or hold-down grommets spaced a maximum of 10 ft. on center. Construct the energy dissipators or sediment traps as shown on the plans or as directed. Construct the sediment trap using concrete or rubble riprap in accordance with Item 432, "Riprap," when designated on the plans.

3. Baled Hay for Erosion and Sedimentation Control. Install hay bales at locations shown on the plans by embedding in the soil at least 4 in. and, where possible, approximately 112 the height of the bale, or as directed. Fill gaps between bales with hay.

4. Temporary Paved Flumes. Construct paved flumes as shown on the plans or as directed. Provide excavation and embankment (including compaction of the subgrade) of material to the dimensions shown on the plans, unless otherwise indicated. Install a rock or rubble riprap energy dissipater, constructed from the materials specified above to a minimum depth of 9 in. at the flume outlet to the limits shown on the plans or as directed.

5. Construction Exits. When tracking conditions exist, prevent traffic from crossing or exiting the construction site or moving directly onto a public roadway, alley, sidewalk, parking area, or other right of way areas other than at the location of construction exits. Construct exits for either long or short-term use.

a, Long-Term. Place the exit over a foundation course, if necessary. Grade the foundation course or compacted subgrade to direct runoff from the construction exits to a sediment trap as shown on the plans or as directed. Construct exits with a width of at least 14 ft. for one-way and 20 ft. for two-way traffic for the full width of the exit, or as directed.

(1) Type 1. Construct to a depth of at least 8 in. using crushed aggregate as shown on the plans or as directed.

(2) Type 2. Construct using railroad ties and timbers as shown on the plans or as directed.

b. Short-Term.

(1) **Type** 3. Construct using crushed aggregate, plywood, or wafer board. This type of exit may be used for daily operations where long-term exits are not practical.

(2) **Type** 4. Construct as shown on the plans or as directed.

6. Earthwork for Erosion Control. Perform excavation and embankment operations to minimize erosion and to remove collected sediments from other erosion control devices.

a. Excavation and Embankment for Erosion Control Features. Place earth dikes, swales, or combinations of both along the low crown of daily lift placement, or as directed, to prevent runoff spillover. Place swales and dikes at other locations as shown on the plans or as directed to prevent runoff spillover or to divert runoff. Construct cuts with the low end blocked with undisturbed earth to prevent erosion of hillsides. Construct sediment traps at drainage structures in conjunction with other erosion control measures as shown on the plans or as directed.

Where required, create a sediment basin providing 3,600 cu. ft. of storage per acre drained, or equivalent control measures for drainage locations that serve an area with 10 or more disturbed acres at one time, not including offsite areas.

b. Excavation of Sediment and Debris. Remove sediment and debris when accumulation affects the performance of the devices, after a rain, and when directed.

7. Construction Perimeter Fence. Construct, align, and locate fencing as shown on the plans or as directed.

a. **Installation of Posts.** Embed posts 18 in. deep or adequately anchor in rock, with a spacing of 8 to 10 it.
b. **Wire Attachment.** Attach the top wire to the posts at least 3 ft. from the ground. Attach the lower wire midway between the ground and the top wire.
c. **Flag Attachment.** Attach flagging to both wire strands midway between each post. Use flagging at least 18 in. long. Tie flagging to the wire using a square knot.

8. Sandbags for Erosion Control. Construct a berm or dam of sandbags that will intercept sediment-laden storm water runoff from disturbed areas, create a retention pond, detain sediment, and release water in sheet flow. Fill each bag with sand so that at least the top 6 in. of the bag is unfilled to allow for proper tying of the open end. Place the sandbags with their tied ends in the same direction. Offset subsequent rows of sandbags 112 the length of the preceding row. Place a single layer of sandbags downstream as a secondary debris trap. Place additional sandbags as necessary or as directed for supplementary support to berms or dams of sandbags or earth.

9. Temporary Sediment-Control Fence. Provide temporary sediment-control fence near the downstream perimeter of a disturbed area to intercept sediment from sheet flow. Incorporate the fence into erosion-control measures used to control sediment in areas of higher flow. Install the fence as shown on the plans, as specified in this Section, or as directed.

a. **Installation of Posts.** Embed posts at least 18 in. deep, or adequately anchor, if in rock, with a spacing of 6 to 8 ft. and install on a slight angle toward the run-off source.

b. **Fabric Anchoring.** Dig trenches along the uphill side of the fence to anchor 6 to 8 in. of fabric. Provide a minimum trench cross-section of 6 x 6 in. Place the fabric against the side of the trench and align approximately 2 in of fabric along the bottom in the upstream direction. Backfill the trench, then hand-tamp.

c. **Fabric and Net Reinforcement Attachment.** Unless otherwise shown under the plans, attach the reinforcement to wooden posts with staples, or to steel posts with T -clips, in at least 4 places equally spaced. Sewn vertical pockets may be used to attached reinforcement to end posts. Fasten the fabric to the top strand of reinforcement by hog rings or cord every 15 in. or less.

d. **Fabric and Net Splices.** Locate splices at a fence post with a minimum lap of 6 in. attached in at least 6 places equally spaced, unless otherwise shown under the plans. Do not locate splices in concentrated flow areas. Requirements for installation of used temporary sediment control fence include the following:

- fabric with minimal or no visible signs of biodegradation (weak fibers),
- fabric without excessive patching (more than l patch every 15 to 20 ft.),
- posts without bends, and
- backing without holes.

SECTION 02060 - DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL:

SUBMITTALS:
The procedures proposed for the accomplishment of salvage and demolition work shall be submitted for approval. The procedures shall provide for safe conduct of the work, careful removal and disposition of materials specified to be salvaged, protection of property which is to remain undisturbed, coordination with other work in progress, and timely disconnection of utility services. The procedures shall include a detailed description of the methods and equipment to be used for each operation, and the sequence of operations.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS:
The work includes demolition or removal of all construction indicated or specified. All materials resulting from demolition work, except as indicated or specified otherwise, shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from the limits of the property. Rubbish and debris shall be removed from the property daily unless otherwise directed so as to not allow accumulation inside or outside the building. Materials that cannot be removed daily shall be stored in areas specified by the Architect.

DUST CONTROL:
The amount of dust resulting from demolition shall be controlled to prevent the spread of dust to occupied portions of the building and to avoid creation of a nuisance in the surrounding area. Use of water will not be permitted when it will result in, or create, hazardous or objectionable conditions such as ice, flooding and pollution.

PROTECTION:
1. Protection of Existing Work: Before beginning any cutting or demolition work, the Contractor shall carefully survey the existing work and examine the drawings and specifications to determine the extent tot the work. The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to insure against damage to existing work to remain in place, to be reused, or to remain the property of the owner, and any damage to such work shall be repaired or replaced as approved by the Architect at no additional cost to the owner. The Contractor shall carefully coordinate the work of this section with all other work and construct and maintain shoring, bracing and supports, as required. The Contractor shall insure that structural elements are not overloaded and be responsible for increasing structural supports or adding new supports as may be required as a result of any cutting, removal, or demolition work performed under any part of this contract.

2. Protection of building from the Weather: The interior of the building and all materials and equipment shall be protected form the weather at all times.

3. Protection of Trees: Trees within the project site which might be damaged during demolition and which is indicated to be left in place shall be protected by a 6-foot high fence. The fence shall be securely erected a minimum of 5-feet from the trunk of individual trees of follow the outer perimeter of branches or clumps of trees. Any tree designated to remain that is damaged during the work under this contract shall be replaced.
4. Environmental protection: All work and Contractor operations shall comply with the requirements of SECTION: ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION.

BURNING: The use of burning at the project site of the disposal of refuse and debris will not be permitted.

USE OF EXPLOSIVES: Use of explosives will not be permitted.

PART 2 - EXECUTION:

EXISTING FACILITIES:

1. Structural, Walls, and Partitions: Existing walls and partitions indicated shall remain.

DISPOSITION OF MATERIAL:

1. Title of Materials: Title to all materials and equipment to be demolished, excepttting owners salvage and historical items, is vested in the Contractor upon receipt of notice to proceed. The owner will not be responsible for the condition, loss or damage to such property after notice to proceed.

2. Material for Contractor Salvage: Material for salvage shall be stored as approved by the Architect. Salvage materials shall be removed form Owner's property before completion of the Contract. Material for salvage shall not be sold on the site.

CLEAN UP:

1. Debris and Rubbish: Debris created by the demolition of existing roofs shall be removed form site and buildings.

2. Debris Control: Debris shall be removed and transported in a manner as to prevent spillage on streets or adjacent areas.

3. Regulations: Local regulations regarding hauling and disposal apply.

END OF SECTION 02060

SECTION 02281 - TERMITE CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

Provide soil treatment for termite control, as herein specified.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:

In addition to requirements of these specifications, comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for work, including preparation of substrate and application.

Engage professional pest control operator, licensed in accordance with regulations of governing authorities for application of soil treatment solution.

JOB CONDITIONS:

Restrictions: Do not apply soil treatment solution until excavating, filling and grading operations are completed, except as otherwise required in construction operations.

To insure penetration, do not apply soil treatment to frozen or excessively wet soils or during inclement weather. Comply with handling and application instructions of the soil treatment manufacturer.

SUBMITTALS:

Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data and application instructions.

SPECIFIC PRODUCT WARRANTY:

Furnish written warranty certifying that applied soil poisoning treatment will prevent infestation of subterranean termites and, that if subterranean termite activity is discovered during warranty period, Contractor will re -treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.

Provide warranty for a period of 5 years from date of treatment, signed by Applicator and Contractor. (Include in Project Close Out-Documents)

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

Talstar P Professional Insecticide

SOIL TREATMENT SOLUTION:

Use an emulsible concentrate insecticide for dilution with water, specially formulated to prevent infestation by termites. Fuel oil will not be permitted as a dilutant. Provide a solution consisting of one of the following chemical elements and concentrations:

Chloropyrifos (Dursban TC); 1.0% in water emulsion.

Permathrin (Dragnet, Torpedo); 0.5% in water emulsion.

Cypermethrin (Prevail FT); 0.25% in water emulsion.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

APPLICATION:

Surface Preparation: Remove foreign matter which could decrease effectiveness of treatment on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated, except previously compacted areas under slabs and foundations. Toxicant may be applied before placement of compacted fill under slabs, if recommended by toxicant manufacturer.

Application Rates: Apply soil treatment solution as follows:

Under slab on grade structures, treat soil before concrete slabs are placed using either power sprayer or tank -type garden sprayer.

Apply 4 gallons of chemical solution per 10 lineal feet to soil critical areas under slab, including entire inside perimeter inside of foundation walls, along both sides of interior partition walls, and around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating slab, and around interior column footers.

Apply one gallon of chemical solution per 10 square feet as an overall treatment under slab and attached slab areas where fill is soil or unwashed gravel. Apply 1 -1/2 gallons of chemical solution to areas where fill is washed gravel or other coarse absorbent material.

Elsewhere: Apply uniformly under sidewalks and all other paved areas within five feet of building, at rate of one gallon per ten square feet.

At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs will be penetrated, at rate of 4 gallons per 10 lineal feet of penetration.

Allow not less than 12 hours for drying after application, before beginning concrete placement or other construction activities.

Post signs in areas of application warning workers that soil poisoning has been applied. Remove signs when areas are covered by other construction.

Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation or other construction activities following application.

END OF SECTION 02281

SECTION 02444 - CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:
Extent of chain link fences and gates is shown on drawings.
- Sliding Traffic Gates
- Wire Fabric
- Fencing

QUALITY ASSURANCE

Provide chain link fences and gates as complete units controlled by a single source including necessary erection accessories, fittings, and fastenings.

SUBMITTALS

Product data in the form of manufacturer's technical data, specifications, and installation instructions for metal fencing and gates.

PART 2 PRODUCT

GENERAL

Dimensions shown form pipe, roll formed, and H sections are outside dimensions.

MANUFACTURERS

Galvanized Steel Fencing and Fabric:
Allied Tube and Conduit Corp.
Anchor Fence, Inc.
Colorguard Corp.
Davis Walker Corp.
Dominion Fence and Wire Prod.
United States Steel.

STEEL FENCING (STFN):
Fabric: No. 9 ga. (0.148") finished steel wires, 2" mesh, with top selvages knuckled for fabric 60" high and under, and both top and bottom selvages twisted and barbed for fabric over 60" high.

Furnish one piece fabric widths for fencing up to 12' high.
Fabric finish, galvanized, ASTM A392, Class I, with not less than 12 oz. zinc per sq. ft. of surface.

Comply with ASTM 668, Class 2, except provide fabric with diameter (gage) of core wire equivalent to fabric diameter specified when measured prior to application of non metallic coating.

HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES:

Framework: Galvanized steel, ASTM A 120 or A 123, with not less than 1.8 oz. zinc per sq. ft. of surface.

End, Corner, and Pull Posts: Minimum sizes and weights as follows:

Up to 6 feet fabric height: 2.375 inch OD steel pipe, 3.65 lbs. per lin. ft., or 3.5 inch by 3.5 inch roll formed sections weighing 4.85 lb. per lin. ft.

Over 6 feet fabric height: 2.875 inch OD steel pipe, 5.79 lbs. per lin. ft., or 3.5 inch by
3.5 inch roll formed sections weighing 4.85 lbs. per lin. ft.

Welded Wire Mesh: fabric to be hot dipped galvanized before being secured to fence posts. Mesh to be 4" X 4" x 2.5 mm.

Line posts Space 10' o.c. maximum, unless otherwise indicated, of following minimum sizes and weights.

Up to 6 feet fabric height: 1.90 inch OD steel pipe, 2.70 lbs. per lin. ft. or 1.875" x 1.625" C sections, 228 lbs. per lin. ft.

6' to 8' fabric height, 2.375" OD steel pipe, 3.65 lbs. per lin. ft. or 2.25" x 1.875" H sections, 2.64 lbs. per lin. ft.

Over 8 feet fabric height: 2.875 inch OD steel pipe, 5.79 lbs. per lin. ft. or 2.25" x 1.875" H sections, 3.26 lbs. per lin. ft.

Gate Posts: Furnish posts for supporting single gate leaf, or one leaf of a double gate installation, for nominal gate widths as follows:

Leaf Width		Gate Post	Lbs./Lin. Ft.
Up to 6"		3.5" x 3.5" roll formed section	4.85
	or	2.875" OD pipe	5.79
Over 6' to 13'		4.000" OD pipe	9.11
Over 13' to 18'		6.625" OD pipe	18.97
Over 18'		8.625" OD pipe	28.55

Tension Wire: 7 gage, coated coil spring wire, metal finish to match fabric. Locate at bottom of fabric.

Provide 1.90" O.D. steel pipe at top rail of fencing.

Top Rail: Provide 1 -5/8" diameter galvanized steel.

Post Brace Assembly: Manufacturer's standard adjustable brace at end and gate posts and at both sides of corner and pull posts, with horizontal brace located at mid height of fabric. Use same material as top rail for brace, and truss to line posts with 0.375"diameter rod and adjustable tightener.

Post Tops: Weathertight closure cap for tubular posts. Provide one cap for each post.

Stretcher Bars: One piece lengths equal to full height of fabric, with minimum cross section of 3/16" x 3/4". Provide one stretcher bar for each gate and end post, and two for each corner and pull post, except where fabric is integrally woven into post.

Corner Bracing: Install diagonal cross bracing consisting of 3/8" diameter adjustable length truss rods on corner posts to ensure frame rigidity without sag or twist, if required.

Stretcher Bar Bands: Space not over 15" oc., to secure stretcher bars to end, corner, pull and gate posts.

GATES

Fabrication: Fabricate gate perimeter frames of 1.90" OD pipe.
Metal and finish to match fence framework. Provide horizontal and vertical members to ensure proper gate operation and attachment of fabric, hardware, and accessories. Space frame members maximum of 8 feet apart.

Assemble gate frames by welding or with special fittings and rivets, for rigid connections. Use same fabric as for fence, unless otherwise indicated. Install fabric with stretcher bars at vertical edges. Bars may also be used at top and bottom edges. Attach stretchers to gate frame at not more than 15" o.c. Attach hardware to provide security against removal or breakage.

Install diagonal cross bracing consisting of 3/8" diameter adjustable length truss rods on gates to ensure frame rigidity without sag or twist, if required.

Gate Hardware: Furnish the following hardware and accessories for each gate.

Hinges: Size and material to suite gate size, non lift off type, offset to permit 180 deg gate opening. Provide 1 1/2 pair of hinges for each leaf over 6 foot nominal height.

Security kit: Provide for pedestrian gates, Lockey USA model # PS62S Standard Panic Shield Security Kit with Detex V-40 exit device.

Closer: Provide TB950-LINX for Mounting TB950 on Chain Link

Keeper: Provide keeper for vehicle gates, which automatically engages gate leaf and holds it in open position until manually released.

Sliding Gates: Provide manufacturer's standard heavy duty track, ball bearing hanger sheaves, overhead framing and supports, guides, stays, bracing, hardware, and accessories as required.

Wire Ties: For tying fabric to line posts, use wire ties spaced 12" o.c. For typing fabric to rails and braces, use wire ties spaced 24" o.c. For tying fabric to tension wire, use hog rings spaced 24" o.c.

Manufacturers standard procedure will be accepted if of equal strength and durability.

FINISH: Factory powder coated to match other hardware and or gate, unless otherwise noted.

Concrete: Provide concrete consisting of portland cement, ASTM C150, aggregates, ASTM C33, and clean water. Mix materials to obtain concrete with a minimum 28 day compressive strength of 2500 psi using at least 4 sacks of cement per cu. yd., 1" maximum size aggregate, maximum 3" slump, and 2% to 4% entrained air.

PART 3 EXECUTION

INSTALLATION

Do not begin installation and erection before final grading is completed, unless otherwise permitted.

Excavation: Drill holes for posts to diameters and spacings shown, in firm, undisturbed or compacted soil.

If not shown on drawings, excavate holes for each post to minimum diameter recommended by fence manufacturer.

Unless otherwise indicated, excavate hole depths approximately 3 inches lower than post bottom, with bottom of posts set not less than 36 inches below finish grade surface.

Setting Posts: Center and align posts in holes 3 inches above bottom of excavation.

Place concrete around posts and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Check each post for vertical and top alignment, and hold in position during placement and finishing operations.

Center Rails: Provide center rails where shown. Install in one piece between posts and flush with post on fabric side, using special offset fittings where necessary.

Brace Assemblies: Install braces so posts are plumb when diagonal rod is under proper tension.

Tension Wire: Install tension wires before stretching fabric and tie to each post with not less than 6 ga. galvanized wire. Fasten fabric to tension wire using 11 gage galvanized steel hog rings of spaced 24 inches o.c.

Fabric: Leave approximately 2 inches between finish grade and bottom selvage unless otherwise indicated. Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, rails, and tension wires. Install fabric on security side of fence, and anchor to framework so that fabric remains in tension after pulling force is released.

Stretcher Bars: Thread through or clamp to fabric 4 inches o.c., and secure to posts with metal bands spaced 15 inches o.c.

Gates: Install gates plumb, level, and secure for full opening without interference. Install ground set items in concrete for anchorage as recommended by manufacturer. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.

Tie Wires: Use U shaped wire, conforming to diameter of pipe to which attached, clasping pipe and fabric firmly with ends twisted at least 2 full turns. Bend wire to minimize hazard to persons or clotheing.

Fasteners: Install nuts for tension bands and hardware bolts on side of fence opposite fabric side. Peen ends of bolts or score threads to prevent removal of nuts.

END OF SECTION 02444

SECTION 02466 – DRILLED PIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Dry-installed straight shaft drilled piers with casings.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 3 – Section 03300 "Cast-In-Place Concrete" for general structural and building applications of concrete.

1.3 BASIS OF BIDS

A. Base bids on indicated number of drilled piers; design length from top elevation to bottom of shaft, and diameter of shaft.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings Provide Electronic PDF’s: For concrete reinforcement detailing fabricating, bending, and placing.

C. Design Mixes: For each class of concrete. Include revised mix proportions when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1. Laboratory Test Reports: For evaluation of concrete materials and mix design.

D. Welding certificates.

E. Qualification Data: For Drilled Pier Subcontractor and testing agency.

F. Record drawings at Project closeout according to Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drilled-Pier Standard: Comply with provisions in ACI 336.1, "Reference Specifications for the Construction of Drilled Piers," unless modified in this Section.

B. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to perform surveys, layouts, and measurements for drilled piers. Before excavating, lay out each drilled pier to lines and levels required. Record actual measurements of each drilled pier's location, shaft diameter, bottom and top elevations, deviations from specified tolerances, and other specified data.

1. Record and maintain information pertinent to each drilled pier and cooperate with Owner's testing and inspecting agency to provide data for required reports.

C. Welding Standards: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
2. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."

D. Trial Drilled Pier: Construct trial drilled pier of diameter and depth and at location indicated or, if not indicated, of same diameter and depth as drilled piers located at least three diameters clear of permanent drilled piers, to demonstrate Installer's construction methods, equipment, standards of workmanship, and tolerances.

1. Excavate shaft, install reinforcement, fill with concrete, and terminate trial drilled pier 30 inches below subgrade and leave in place.
2. Install and remove temporary casings, as required.
3. If Architect or Geotechnical Engineer determine that trial drilled pier does not comply with requirements, excavate for and cast another until it is accepted.

E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Existing Utilities: Locate existing underground utilities before excavating drilled piers. If utilities are to remain in place, provide protection from damage during drilled-pier operations.

1. Should uncharted or incorrectly charted piping or other utilities be encountered during excavation, adapt drilling procedure if necessary to prevent damage to utilities. Cooperate with Owner and utility companies in keeping services and facilities in operation without interruption. Repair damaged utilities to satisfaction of utility owner.

B. Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project and is included elsewhere in the Project Manual for information only.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.

B. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.

1. Fly Ash Admixture: ASTM C 618, Class C.

B. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33, uniformly graded, 1-inch maximum aggregate size.

C. Water: Potable, complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements.

D. Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material and to be compatible with other admixtures and cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
2. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.
3. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type G.
4. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

E. Sand-Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type II; clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404; and water to result in grout with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 1000 psi (6.9 MPa), of consistency required for application.

2.3 STEEL CASINGS

A. Steel Pipe Casings: ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C; or ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plate, with joints full-penetration welded according to AWS D1.1.

2.4 CONCRETE MIX

A. Prepare design mixes according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301 for each type and strength of concrete determined by either laboratory trial mix or field test data bases.

1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs for laboratory trial mix basis.

B. Proportion mixes according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301 to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:

1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4,000 psi
2. Minimum Slump: Capable of maintaining the following slump until completion of placement:
   a. 7 inches (+/- 1 inch).

3. Do not air entrain concrete for drilled piers.

C. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 limits as if concrete were exposed to deicing chemicals.

D. Concrete-mix design adjustments may be considered if characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant. Resubmit and obtain approval of proposed changes to concrete-mix proportions.

2.5 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.

1. Do not add water to concrete mix after mixing.
2. Maintain concrete temperature to not exceed 90 deg F (32 deg C).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, vibration, and other hazards created by drilled-pier operations.

3.2 EXCAVATION

A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavation is unclassified and includes excavation to bearing elevations regardless of character of materials or obstructions encountered.

1. Obstructions: Unclassified excavation includes removal of unanticipated boulders, concrete, masonry, or other subsurface obstructions.
2. Obstructions: Removal of unanticipated boulders, concrete, masonry, or other unforeseen obstructions that cannot be removed by conventional augers fitted with soil or rock teeth, drilling buckets of size, power, torque, and downthrust necessary for the Work, will be paid according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.

B. Classified Excavation: Excavation is classified as standard excavation, special excavation, and obstruction removal and includes excavation to bearing elevations, as follows:

1. Standard excavation includes excavation accomplished with conventional augers fitted with soil or rock teeth, drilling buckets of size, power, torque, and downthrust necessary for the Work.
2. Special excavation includes excavation that requires special equipment or procedures above or below indicated depth of drilled piers where drilled-pier excavation equipment used in standard excavation, operating at maximum power, torque, and downthrust, cannot advance the shaft.

    a. Special excavation requires use of special rock augers, core barrels, air tools, blasting, or other methods of hand excavation.
    b. Earth seams, rock fragments, and voids included in rock excavation area will be considered rock for full volume of shaft from initial contact with rock.

3. Obstructions: Removal of unanticipated boulders, concrete, masonry, or other unforeseen obstructions that cannot be removed by conventional augers fitted with soil or rock teeth, drilling buckets of size, power, torque, and downthrust necessary for the Work, will be paid according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.

C. Prevent surface water from entering excavated shafts. Conduct water to site drainage facilities.

D. Excavate shafts for drilled piers to indicated elevations. Remove loose material from bottom of excavation.

1. Excavate bottom of drilled piers to level plane within 1:12 tolerance.
2. Remove water from excavated shafts before concreting.
3. Excavate rock sockets of dimensions indicated.
4. Cut series of grooves about perimeter of shaft to height from bottom of shaft, vertical spacing, and dimensions indicated.

E. Notify and allow Owner's testing and inspecting agency to test and inspect bottom of excavation. If unsuitable bearing stratum is encountered, make adjustments to drilled piers as determined by Architect.

1. Do not excavate shafts deeper than elevations indicated, unless approved by Architect.
2. Additional authorized excavation will be paid according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.

F. Excavate shafts for closely spaced drilled piers and those occurring in fragile or sand strata, only after adjacent drilled piers are filled with concrete and allowed to set.

G. Temporary Casings: Provide watertight steel casings of sufficient length and thickness to prevent water seepage into shaft; to withstand compressive, displacement, and withdrawal stresses; and to maintain stability of shaft walls.

1. Remove temporary casings, maintained in plumb position, during concrete placement and before initial set of concrete.

H. Tolerances: Construct drilled piers to remain within ACI 336.1 tolerances.

1. If location or out-of-plumb tolerances are exceeded, provide corrective construction. Submit design and construction proposals to Architect for review before proceeding.

I. Inspection: Each drilled pier must be inspected and tested by Owner's testing and inspecting agency before placing concrete.

1. Provide and maintain facilities with equipment required for testing and inspecting excavations. Cooperate with testing and inspecting personnel to expedite the Work.
2. Notify Architect and testing agency at least 24 hours before excavations are ready for tests and inspections.

3.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Comply with recommendations in CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, and other materials that reduce or destroy bond with concrete.

C. Fabricate and install reinforcing cages symmetrically about axis of shafts in a single unit.

D. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement during concreting. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.

E. Use templates to set anchor bolts, leveling plates, and other accessories furnished in work of other Sections. Provide blocking and holding devices to maintain required position during final concrete placement.

F. Protect exposed ends of extended reinforcement, dowels, or anchor bolts from mechanical damage and exposure to weather.

3.4 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Place concrete in continuous operation and without segregation immediately after inspection and approval of shaft by Owner's independent testing and inspecting agency.

1. Construct a construction joint if concrete placement is delayed more than one hour. Level top surface of concrete. Before placing remainder of concrete, clean surface laitance, roughen, and slush concrete with commercial bonding agent or with sand-cement grout mixed at ratio of 1:1.

B. Dry Method: Place concrete to fall vertically down the center of drilled pier without striking sides of shaft or steel reinforcement.

1. Where concrete cannot be directed down shaft without striking reinforcing, place concrete with chutes, tremies, or pumps.
2. Vibrate top 60 inches of concrete.

C. Coordinate withdrawal of temporary casings with concrete placement to maintain at least a 60-inch head of concrete above bottom of casing.

1. Vibrate top 60 inches of concrete after withdrawal of temporary casing.

D. Screed concrete at cutoff elevation level and apply scoured, rough finish. Where cutoff elevation is above the ground elevation, form top section above grade and extend shaft to required elevation.

E. Protect concrete work, according to ACI 301, from hot and cold temperatures that could cause physical damage or reduced strength.
1. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
2. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other mineral-containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators.

F. When hot-weather conditions exist that would seriously impair quality and strength of concrete, place concrete according to ACI 301 to maintain delivered temperature of concrete at no greater than 90 deg F (32 deg C).

1. Place concrete immediately on delivery. Keep exposed concrete surfaces and formed shaft extensions moist by fog sprays, wet burlap, or other effective means for a minimum of seven days.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to sample materials, perform tests, and submit reports during excavation and concrete placement for drilled piers.

B. A drilled-pier report will be prepared by Owner's testing and inspecting agency for each drilled pier as follows:

1. Actual top and bottom elevations.
2. Top of rock elevation.
3. Description of soil materials.
4. Description, location, and dimensions of obstructions.
5. Final top centerline location and deviations from requirements.
6. Variation of shaft from plumb.
7. Shaft excavating method.
8. Design and tested bearing capacity of bottom.
9. Depth of rock socket.
10. Levelness of bottom and adequacy of cleanout.
11. Ground-water conditions and water-infiltration rate, depth, and pumping.
12. Description, diameter, and top and bottom elevations of temporary or permanent casings.
13. Description of soil or water movement, sidewall stability, loss of ground, and means of control.
14. Shaft dimensions and variations from original design.
15. Date and time of starting and completing excavation.
16. Inspection report.
17. Position of reinforcing steel.
18. Concrete placing method, including elevation of consolidation and delays.
19. Elevation of concrete during removal of casings.
20. Locations of construction joints.
21. Remarks, unusual conditions encountered, and deviations from requirements.
22. Concrete testing results.

C. Soil Testing: Bottom elevations, bearing capacities, and lengths of drilled piers indicated have been estimated from available soil data. Actual elevations and drilled-pier lengths and bearing capacities will be determined by Owner's testing and inspecting agency. Final evaluations and approval of data will be determined by Architect.

1. Bearing Stratum Tests: Owner's testing agency will take undisturbed core samples from drilled-pier bottoms; test each sample for compression, moisture content, and density; and report results and evaluations.

D. Concrete: Sampling and testing of concrete for quality control may include the following:

1. Sampling Fresh Concrete: ASTM C 172, except modified for slump to comply with ASTM C 94/C 94M.

    a. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each compressive-strength test, but no fewer than one test for each concrete load.
    b. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each set of compressive-strength specimens.
    c. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; one set of four standard cylinders for each compressive-strength test, unless otherwise indicated. Mold and store cylinders for laboratory-cured test specimens, unless field-cured test specimens are required.
    d. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; one set for each drilled pier, but not more than one set for each truck load. One specimen will be tested at 7 days, 2 specimens will be tested at 28 days, and one specimen will be retained in reserve for later testing if required.

2. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five strength tests for a given class of concrete, testing will be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
3. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, evaluate current operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
4. Strength level of concrete will be considered satisfactory if averages of sets of 3 consecutive strength test results equal or exceed specified compressive strength and no individual strength test result falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.45 MPa).
5. Test results will be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 24 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests will contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, concrete type and class, location of concrete batch in drilled pier, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete-mix proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
6. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted but shall not be used as sole basis for acceptance or rejection.
7. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency will make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate concrete strengths or other requirements have not been met.

    a. Continuous coring of drilled piers may be required, at Contractor's expense, when temporary casings have not been withdrawn within specified time limits or where observations of placement operations indicate deficient concrete quality, presence of voids, segregation, or other possible defects.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF MATERIALS

A. Remove surplus excavated material and concrete and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 02466

SECTION 02514 - CONCRETE WALKS, FLATWORK, CURBS & APPROACHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Requirements of Drawings, General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 apply to work of this section.

SCOPE:

Provide all concrete walk, curb and paving work including but not necessarily limited to:
Walks

Related work specified elsewhere:

Earthwork	Section 02200
Concrete Work	Section 03010
Joint Sealers	Section 07900

QUALITY ASSURANCE:

Comply with local governing regulations of more stringent than herein specified.

SUBMITTALS:

Furnish samples, manufacturer's product data, test reports and materials certifications as required in the referenced Sections for concrete and joint fillers and sealers. Submit data on color admixtures or color finish materials and samples of exposed aggregate if applicable to project.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:

Cast mockup of size directed by Architect of each type of concrete walk to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, color and standard of workmanship for Architect's review and acceptance.

When Architect determines that mockup does not meet requirements, demolish and review if from the site and cast another until the mockup is accepted.

Keep accepted mockup undisturbed during construction as a standard for judging completed paving. Undamaged mockup may be incorporated into the work.

Demolish accepted mockup and remove from site when directed by Architect.

PROJECT CONDITIONS

Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities. Utilize flagmen, barricades, warning signs and warning lights as required.

PART 2

MATERIALS:

Forms: steel, wood or other suitable material of size and strength to resist movement during concrete placement and to retain horizontal and vertical alignment until removal. Use straight forms, free of distortion and defects, to provide continuous, straight, smooth

exposed surfaces.

Use flexible spring steel forms of laminated boards to form radius bends as required.

Coat forms with a non-staining form release agent that will not discolor or deface the surface of the concrete.

Plain , cold-drawn steel wire: ASTM A182.

Welded wire mesh 6”x6”: Welded plain cold-drain steel wire fabric, ASTM A 185.

Furnish in flat sheets, not rolls, unless other acceptable to Architect.

Reinforcing bars: deformed steel bards, ASTM A615, Grade 60, unless otherwise indicated.

Joint dowel bards: plain steel bars, ASTM A 615, Grade 60, unless otherwise indicated. But bards true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

Metal expansion caps: furnish for one end of each dowel bar in expansion joints. Design caps with one end closed and a minimum length of 3" to allow bar movement of not less than 1", unless otherwise indicated.

Hook bolts: ASTM A307, Grade ! Bolts, internally and externally threaded. Design hook bolt joint assembly to hold the coupling against pavement form and in position during concreting operation and to permit removal without damage to concrete or hook bolt.

Supports for reinforcement: chairs, spacers, dowel bar supports and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bards, welded wire fabric and dowels in place. Use wire type for supports complying with CRSI specifications.

Use support with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
Concrete materials: comply with requirements of applicable DIVISION 3 Sections for concrete materials, admixtures, bonding materials, curing materials and others as required.

Bonding Agent: Acrylic or styrene butadiene.

Expansion joint materials: comply with requirements of SECTION 07900 for preformed expansion joint fillers and sealers.

CONCRETE MIX, DESIGN & TESTING

Comply with requirements of applicable DIVISION 3 Sections for concrete mix design, sampling and testing, and quality control and as herein specified.

Design the mix to produce standard -weight concrete consisting of portland cement, aggregate and water to produce the following properties:

Compressive strength:	3000 psi, minimum at 28-days
Slump range:	2" to 4"

PART 3 - EXECUTION

INSPECTION:

Examine areas and conditions under which concrete walks are to be installed. Do not proceed with the work until satisfactory conditions have been corrected.

SURFACE PREPARATION

Remove loose material from compacted sub-base surface immediately before placing concrete.

Proof-roll prepared sub-base surface to check for unstable areas and need for additional compaction. Do not begin paving work until such conditions have been corrected and are ready to receive paving.

FORM CONSTRUCTION

Set forms to required grades and lines, rigidly braced and secured.

Install sufficient quantity of forms to allow continuous progress of the work and so that forms can remain in place at least 24-hours after concrete pavement.

Check completed formwork for grade and alignment to the following tolerances:

Top of forms not more than 1/8" in 10'

Vertical face on longitudinal axis, not more than 1/4" in 10'

Clean forms after each use, and coat with form release agent as often as required to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

REQUIREMENTS

Locate, place and support reinforcement as specified in SECTION 03010.

CONCRETE PLACEMENT

Comply with requirements of SECTION 03010 for mixing and placing concrete and as herein specified.

Do not place concrete until sub-base and forms have been checked for lime and grade. Moisten sub-base if requirements to provide a uniform dampened condition at the time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment. Remove snow, ice or frost from subbase surface and reinforcing before placing concrete.

Place concrete using methods which prevent segregation of mix. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse, joints. Use only square=faced shovels for hand-spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocation of reinforcing, dowels and joint devices.

Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints, as far as possible. If interrupted for more than ½ hour, place a construction joint.

When adjacent walks are placed in separate pours, do not operate equipment on concrete until concrete has attained sufficient strength to carry the loads without injury.

JOINTS

Construct expansion, weakened-plane (construction), and construction joints true-to-line with face perpendicular to surface of concrete, as shown on drawings. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.

When joining existing structures, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints, unless otherwise indicated.

Provide weakened-plane (contraction) joints, sectioning concrete into areas as shown on Drawings. Construct weakened-plane joints for a depth equal to at least 1/4 concrete thickness, as follows:

Tooled joints: form weakened-plane joints in fresh concrete by grooving and finishing edges with a radiused jointing tool.

Provide expansion joints of premolded joint filler for expansion joints abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks and other fixed objects, unless otherwise indicated.

Locate expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated, at following spacings:
Walks 40' - 0" o.c.

Extend joint fillers full-width and depth of joint, and not less than ½" or more than 1" below finished surface where joint sealer is indicated. If not joint sealer, place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surfaces.

Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths for full width being placed, where possible. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint filler sections together.

Protect top edge of joint filler during concrete placement with a metal cap or other temporary materials. Remove protection after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.

Comply with requirements of SECTION 01900 for preparation of joints, materials, installation and performance, and as herein specified.

Where load transfer-slip dowel devices are used, install so that one end of each dowel bar is free to move.

CONCRETE FINISHING

After striking-off and consolidating concrete, smooth surface by screeding and floating. Use hand methods only where mechanical floating is not possible. Adjust floating to compare surfaces and produce a uniform texture.

After floating, test surface for trueness with a 10' straightedge.

Distribute concrete as required to remove surface irregularities, and refloat repaired areas to provide a continuous smooth finish. Finish surfaces to true planes within a tolerance of 1/4" in 10 feet in any direction.

Work edges of slabs, gutters, back to p edge of curb, and formed joints with an edging tool, and round to 3/8" radius, unless otherwise indicted.

Eliminate any tool marks on concrete surface.

After completion of floating and when excess moisture or surface sheen has disappeared, complete surface finishing, as follows:

Provide heavy broom finish by drawing a fine-hair broom across concrete surface, perpendicular to line of traffic. Repeat operation if required to provide a fine line texture acceptable to Architect.

On inclined slab surfaces, provide a coarse, non-slip finish by scoring surface with a stiff-bristled broom, 1/16" to 1/8" deep, perpendicular to line of traffic.

Do not remove forms for 24-hours after concrete has been placed. After form removal, clean ends of joints and point-up any minor honeycombed areas. Remove and replace areas or sections with major defects as directed by Architect.

CURING

Protect and cure finished concrete surfaces, complying with applicable requirements of SECTION 03010. Use moist-curing methods for initial curing whenever possible.

REPAIRS & PROTECTIONS

Remove and replace broken, damaged or defective concrete, concrete with defective finishes, or concrete that does not meet the requirements of this Section.

Protect concrete from damage until acceptance of work. Exclude traffic from walks for at least 14-days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain walks as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur and covering with suitable cover.

Maintain concrete walks free of stains, discolorations, dirt and other foreign material, sweep and clean concrete walks just prior to Substantial Completion inspection.

Protect adjacent construction from concrete splatter. Clean off any splatter and remove any concrete spills from ground surfaces.

END OF SECTION 02514

SECTION 02810 – IRRIGATION

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE

A. An automatic underground irrigation system for exterior landscaped areas including, but not limited to, supply an installation of water meter, backflow device and controller, boring and sleeving, rotary heads and spray heads in lawn areas and spray heads and drip lines in shrub, ground cover, and flower bed areas.

NOTE: This project is adjacent to and includes an area with existing irrigation, lawns and landscape. Contractors shall protect existing irrigation, lawns, landscape, etc. All existing irrigation must remain operational and active throughout construction. Any damage whatsoever to existing irrigation, landscape or lawns shall be repaired and replaced at contractor's expense.

1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Design Requirements:
   1. Provide connection to water source (existing mainline) and new water meters as specified and in accordance with local code requirements.
   2. Provide for an electro-mechanical controller.

B. Performance Requirements: Provide for irrigation at a rate of 1 in. per week applied at 2 or 3 day intervals.

1.03 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Irrigation work to be performed by a Texas licensed irrigation company specializing in commercial irrigation installation with a minimum of five (5) years experience on similar projects. Owner/SSP Design to review qualifications and approve subcontractor prior to commencing work.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall be formatted electronically in a PDF file with a table of contents and tabs identifying each section. The following submittals are required for this section:
   1. Product Data: Manufacturers' technical data (Cut Sheets) and installation information for all components including: Backflow Assembly (Pressure Vacuum Breaker PVB or Reduced Pressure, Backflow Preventer RPZ (as specified), Y strainer (if required), Ball valves, PVC pipe, PVC fittings, PVC primers, solvents, cement, glue, etc., Control wire / tracking wire, Wire connectors, Pump stations, booster pumps (if specified), Pump enclosures (if specified), Controller (incl. communications modules, etc.), Rain/freeze sensors, Valves, Valve boxes, Decoders (if specified), Rotors, Sprays, Nozzles, Bubblers, Drip line, Drip filters, Drip indicators (operind), Air relief valves

1.05 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Submit verification of water pressure at meter or point of connection.

1.06 MAINTENANCE/WARRANTY

A. Provide the following extra materials to the Owner:
   1. Two (2) quick coupler hose bib keys.
   2. Four (4) keys for the controller door lock.

B. Maintenance Requirements: Maintain the work of this Section for ninety days after 'substantial completion' and until final acceptance by Owner. Notify the owner in writing of

'substantial completion'. Maintenance period begins after owner's acceptance of 'substantial completion'.

C. Maintenance Service: Perform the following maintenance operations at least once a week:
   a. Test entire system and adjust timer as necessary and as directed by landscape contractor, landscape designer or owner.
   b. Replace or repair any broken parts or equipment.
   c. Report any significant problems in writing to landscape contractor, owner and landscape designer.

D. Warranty: Warranty shall cover all parts and equipment for a period of one year from the date of final acceptance. Repairs and replacements shall be completed within two weeks of notification from owner.

PART 2- PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 2241-83, SDR21, class 160 lateral piping; ASTM D1785, class 200 mainline piping.

B. Pipe Fittings:
   1. Pipe under 3 in., id: Socket type, ASTM D 2466-78, with solvent Cement, ASTM D 2564-80.
   2. Pipe 3 in. id and Larger: Gasketed fittings of epoxy coated steel with non-hardening pipe dope or Teflon tape for threads.

C. Concrete: 2500 psi min. compressive strength.

2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Controller: Electro-mechanical, 24 hr./14-day clock with manual operation capacity, with adequate number of stations for system operating requirements (two wire) (see irrigation equipment table). Provide both freeze-protection and rain-sensor devices with controller. Provide ground-fault interrupt and lightning protection. Provide flow control, ET Management, and IQ System. Contractor to coordinate setup and connection to IQ software including training.

B. Water Meters: Water meters in locations shown on plans. Contractor to coordinate application, permit and installation with local utility company. Contractor responsible for water meters and all associated installation costs.

C. Booster Pump: If required contractor shall furnish and install booster pump with enclosure as specified in plans/details. Contractor shall also provide a concrete pad and any and all electrical connections, fittings, adaptors, connections, enclosure, etc. for the complete installation and proper operation of booster pump.

D. Backflow Preventers: Provide and install backflow devices per local codes, specifications and requirements. Provide steel mesh enclosure per plans/schedule.

E. Electric Valves: Normally closed, 24v AC, 60 cycle, solenoid actuated, globe pattern, diaphragm type. Cast brass or plastic body and nylon reinforced nitrile rubber diaphragm.

F. Quick coupling Valves: Cast brass body with self-closing cover. Provide (2) brass keys with 1 in. female threaded outlet.

G. Sprinkler Heads: Heavy-duty plastic sprinkler case, high density plastic sprinkler body, corrosion-resistant internal parts, plastic spray nozzles with adjustable flow and direction features.

H. Control Wire: 24v UL/UF., approved for direct burial. Provide color-coded wire with white used for common (14-gauge, single-strand copper) and red for control (14-gauge single-strand copper).

I. Tracking Wire: 18 gauge copper (only where mainline and wiring bundle are separated)

J. Valve Boxes: Heavy-duty commercial grade, fiberglass reinforced, plastic with locking covers. Rainbird VB series, 10” Round or Standard Rectangular Min. or approved equal.

K. Swing Joints: 3 high density polyethylene street ells with 8 in. Schedule 80 PVC nipple; sized the same as inlet to sprinkler head.

L. Sleeves: Schedule 40 PVC. Boring as required under all existing pavement, walls or curbs.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Examine the site and conditions under which irrigation work is to be performed. Irrigation contractor shall notify the landscape contractor in writing, with a copy to Construction Manager, if the site is unsatisfactory. Do not begin the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to irrigation contractor. Beginning of work indicates acceptance of the site as satisfactory by the irrigation contractor.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install tracking wire along mainline pipe if separate from valve wiring bundle.

B. Excavating and Filling:
1. Cover for Piping:
    a) Mains: 18 in. min.
    b) Laterals: 12 in. min.
2. Use clean backfill material without stones larger than 1/2 in., debris or extraneous material that may damage pipe assembly.
3. Compact all trenches to a minimum 95% Standard Proctor Density.

C. Pipe:
1. Install in existing sleeves under pavement or provide boring and sleeves under pavement as required.
2. Clean pipe and joints before making connections. Purple primer to be used on all joints before applying solvent. Per TCEQ Regulations.
3. Attach joints according to manufacturer's instructions. Threaded joints to be coated with "Teflon" tape. Allow joints to set for at least 24 hrs. before applying water pressure to the system.
4. Thoroughly flush piping before sprinkler heads are installed and test under pressure for leaks in each line separated by valves.

D. Water Meters: Provide and install water meters per local codes, specifications and requirements. Coordinate permit and application with owner and local utility company. Adjust locations as necessary to coordinate with existing water line locations.

E. Back Flow Protection: Provide and install backflow devices per local codes, specifications

and requirements including enclosure.

F. Valves:
1. Provide isolation valve on inlet side of every electric control valve (if specified).
2. Install electric and gate valves with at lest 10 in. of cover over the valve and at least 6 in. of cover over the stem.
3. Install valve box centered over the flow control handle. Provide 1 cu. ft. of clean pea gravel in the bottom of each valve box with filter fabric below.
4. In lawn areas, valve boxes to be set flush with existing grade; in planting bed areas valve boxes shall be set 2” above grade.

G. Controllers: Hard wire to nearest power source and CAT6 data line (if available). If no data line is available, provide IQ cartridge with cell/satellite module). Coordinate installation and connections with general contractor. Install on exterior wall in location as shown on plans or as directed/approved by Owner / SSP.

H. Sprinkler Heads: Install all heads on swing joint assemblies and flush with finish grade.

I. Wiring:
1. Bundle and tape wires at 10 ft. o.c., max.
2. Snake wire in trenches to allow for expansion. Provide expansion coils at 100 ft. o.c. max., and at the entry to each valve box.
3. Splice wires using mechanical sealant connector for a waterproof connection. Make all wire splices within valve boxes. Use RB WPCONN N90300 or approved equal.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY WORK

A. General: Notify the Construction Manager at least 48 hours before testing is begun.
B. Hydrostatic Test: Test mainline piping to a hydrostatic pressure of not less than 100 psi for a minimum of 24 hours. Piping may be tested in sections to expedite work. Remove and repair piping and connections which do not pass hydrostatic testing.
C. Operational Testing: Perform operational testing after hydrostatic testing is completed, backfill is in place, and sprinkler heads adjusted to final position.

3.04 ADJUSTING

A. Check sprinkler heads for arc of spray. Adjust as necessary to provide 100% coverage of all landscaped areas.
B. Adjust layout to conform to actual layout of landscape plantings.

3.05 DEMONSTRATION

A. Demonstrate operation of the system to Owner's personnel and staff.

3.06 CLOSE-OUT DOCUMENTS

A. As-Built Drawings: Submit ‘As-Built’ drawings before project close-out showing the irrigation system layout, including line locations and sizes, spray heads and types, points of connection, booster pump, location of backflow device(s), controller, and other installation information.
B. Warranty Letters: Submit one year warranty letters for all irrigation items including labor.
C. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit Manufacturers' operation and maintenance instructions and laminated colored (11x17) valve Zoning Diagram (hard copies and pdf).

END OF SECTION

SECTION 02900 – PLANTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE

A. Supply and installation of all approved materials, labor, equipment, transportation and services required and incidental thereto, in conformity with the plans and specifications, including but not limited to; vegetation protection/pruning, fine grading, earth mounding, bed excavation and preparation, bed edging, planting soil/compost mixes, fertilizer, mulch, trees, palms, shrubs, ground covers, staking, paving, site furniture, clean-up, maintenance, and warranty.

NOTE: This project is adjacent to and includes an area with existing irrigation, lawns and landscape. Contractors shall protect existing irrigation, lawns, landscape, etc. All existing irrigation must remain operational and active throughout construction. Any damage whatsoever to existing irrigation, landscape or lawns shall be repaired and replaced at contractor's expense.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Irrigation – 02810
   2. Lawns – 02930

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. General: "Hortus Third," 1976.

B. Texas Association of Nurserymen, Grades and Standards for Nursery Stock.

C. Plant Material: "American Standard for Nursery Stock," ANSI Z60.1-1990.

D. National Arborist Association Standards

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Specimen Plants: Plants having exceptional character, superiority in form and branching, and the best attributes of the species; all as determined by the Architect, Landscape Designer or Owner.

1.04 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Landscape work to be performed by a single firm specializing in commercial landscape work with a minimum of five (5) years experience on similar type projects. Owner/SSP Design to review qualifications and approve subcontractor prior to commencing work.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall be formatted electronically in a pdf file with a table of contents and tabs identifying each section. The following submittals are required for this section:
   1. Landscape Construction Sequence
   2. Edging Materials
   3. Post emergent Herbicides
   4. Pre emergent Herbicides
   5. Soils, Compost and Mulch
   6. Sources of all Plant Materials (including address and telephone numbers)
   7. Product Data Material Safety Data Sheets

8. Paving Materials
9. Staking Materials
10. Samples: One foot sections of edging (as specified on plans), one pound bag sample of each; topsoil, premium compost, mulch, decomposed granite, river rock, washed gravel and example boulder/rocks.
11. Photographs of all plant material prior to ordering/installation
12. Name and License Number of Subcontractor for pruning trees (Certified I.S.A. Arborist required)

1.05 PROTECTION

A. Before commencing work, contractor shall place orange construction fencing around all vegetation labeled “to remain” on landscape plans. Fencing shall be placed squarely around each tree 6’ x 6’ and at least 60” in height or continuously around groups of vegetation as shown on plans. No work may begin until this requirement is fulfilled. All other vegetation not labeled “to remain” shall be cleared and grubbed including root systems.

B. In order to avoid damage to roots, bark or lower branches, no truck or other equipment shall be driven or parked within the drip line of any tree, unless the tree overspreads a paved way.

C. The contractor shall use any and all precautionary measure when performing work around trees, walks, pavements, utilities, and any other features either existing or previously installed under this Contract.

D. The Contractor shall adjust depth of earthwork and loaming when working immediately adjacent to any of the aforementioned features in order to prevent disturbing tree roots, undermining walks and pavements, and damage in general to any existing or newly incorporated item.

E. Where excavating, fill or grading is required within the branch spread of trees that are to remain, the work shall be performed as follows:

a. TRENCHING: When trenching occurs around trees to remain, the tree roots shall not be cut but the trench shall be tunneled under or around the roots by careful hand digging and without injury to the roots.

b. RAISING GRADES: When the existing grade at tree is below the now finished grade, and fill not exceeding 16 inches (16") is required, clean, washed gravel graded from one to two inches (1" - 2") in size shall be placed directly around the tree trunk. The gravel shall extend out from trunk on all sides a minimum of 18 inches (18") and finish approximately two inches (2") above the finished grade at tree. Install gravel before any earth fill is placed. New earth fill shall not be left in contact with the trunks of any trees requiring fill. Where fill exceeding 16 inches (16") is required, a dry laid tree well shall be constructed around the trunk of the tree. The tree well shall extend out from the trunk on all sides a minimum of three feet (3') and to three inches (3") above finish grade. Coarse grade rock shall be placed directly around the tree well extending out the drip line of the tree. Clean, washed gravel graded from one to two inches (1" - 2") in size shall be placed directly over the coarse rock to a depth of three inches (3"). Approved backfill material shall be placed directly over the washed gravel to desired finished grade.

c. LOWERING GRADES: Existing trees in areas where the now finished grade is to be lowered shall have regarding work done by hand to elevation as indicated. Roots as required shall be cut cleanly three inches (3") below finished grade and scars covered with tree paint.

d. Trees marked for preservation that are located more than six inches (6") above proposed

grades shall stand on broad rounded mounds and be graded smoothly into the lower level. Trees located more than 16 inches (16") above proposed grades shall have a dry laid stonewall, or other retaining structure as detailed on the plans, constructed a minimum of five feet (5') from the trunk. Exposed or broken roots shall be cut clean and covered with topsoil.

F. Contractor is responsible for all protection measures listed above. If these procedures are not followed, contractor is responsible for replacement of existing trees with approved trees of equal caliper and height.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packing and Shipping: Transport plant materials covered or in closed vehicles to protect from exposure to heat and wind. Spray trees and in full leaf with anti-desiccant - as recommended by the manufacturer - before shipping. Take precautions to protect plant materials from desiccation and from damage to bark, branches and roots. Do not allow root balls to crack. Schedule shipments to coincide with planting work schedule.

B. Storage and Protection: If planting is delayed after delivery, keep plants in a shaded area, cover roots with mulch or topsoil, and keep plants constantly watered until planted.

1.07 MAINTENANCE/WARRANTY

A. Maintenance Requirements: Maintain the work of this Section throughout construction and for ninety days after 'substantial completion' and until final written acceptance by Owner. Notify the owner in writing of 'substantial completion'. Maintenance period begins after owner's written acceptance of 'substantial completion'.

B. Maintenance Service: Perform the following maintenance operations at least once a week:
   1. Remove and replace dead plant material. Prune plants to remove dead wood and to maintain health of plants.
   2. Maintain all mulched areas at a 2 in. depth. Remove weeds and grass from shrub and ground cover areas and from watering basins.
   3. Provide insect and disease control to maintain health of plants.
   4. Irrigation:
      a) If the irrigation system is operating, program and monitor the system to provide adequate water for plants.
      b) If the irrigation system is not operating, hand water plants. Deep water trees each week.
   5. Dispose of all maintenance debris/clippings off-site. Owner's dumpsters shall not be used.
   6. Keep all site areas tidy and free of grass clippings, mulch or other foreign materials.
   7. Submit dates, descriptions and receipts of all maintenance operations to SSP Design for approval.

C. Warranty: Warranty shall cover all shrubs/groundcovers for a period of three months and trees/palms for a period of one year from the date of final acceptance. Any plant material deemed dead or unrecoverable by the owner shall be replaced with similar species and size within two weeks of notification from owner.

1.08 RIGHT OF REJECTION

A. The Owner/SSP Design reserve the right to inspect and reject plants at any time and at any place.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Fertilizer: 13-13-13 Osmocote slow release fertilizer granules or approved equal.

B. Planting tablets: Agraform 21 gram slow release fertilizer tablets or approved equal.

C. Compost: Premium grade compost ('9 Kids Compost' or approved equal).

D. Topsoil: Fertile, agricultural soil, typical for locality, capable of sustaining vigorous plant growth, taken from drained site; free of subsoil, clay or impurities, plants, weeds and roots; minimum pH value of 5.4 and maximum 7.0; organic matter to exceed 1.5%, magnesium to exceed 100 units; phosphorus to exceed 150 units; potassium to exceed 120 units; soluble salts/conductivity not to exceed 900 ppm/0.9 mmhos/GC in soil.

E. Sand: Clean, screened inorganic masonry sand. Silica sand only. River sand not acceptable. Mathis sand, Wright Materials, Plant 3 masonry sand (361) 387-0293 or approved equal

F. Mulch:
1. Shrub and Ground Cover Planting Areas: Grade A Shredded Hardwood; long, fibrous bark strands free from wood chips. Texas Natives or Approved Equal.
2. Watering basins: Grade A Shredded Hardwood; long, fibrous bark strands free from wood chips. Texas Natives or Approved Equal.

G. Plants:
1. General: Provide plant materials that are healthy and free from disease, insects, and larvae and without damage to bark, branches, and roots.
2. Approval: All plants must be approved by Owner/SSP Design prior to installation. Any plants not approved by Owner/SSP Design shall be subject to rejection. All trees/palms must be inspected, approved and tagged by Owner/SSP Design at their place of origin or as directed in writing by Owner/SSP Design. Container grown trees shall be obtained by Glen Flora Farms, Inc. or approved equal.
3. Sizes: Measured after pruning and in accordance with the plant schedule.
4. Root Treatment: As follows in accordance with the Reference Standards:
    i. Palms: Balled and burlapped or containerized if they have been in the container for at least one growing season.
    ii. Trees, Shrubs, Ground Cover Plants: Container grown with a well-established fibrous root system.
5. Palms: All new palms shall be field dug or containerized material in specified sizes shown in plant schedule. All palms shall have good form (straight trunks) consistent of its species, free of scares/abrasions/burn marks and disease and insects, with large healthy root systems. Rootballs sizes for B/B material must meet the following minimum specifications:
    a) Sabal Palms - 44" diameter, 36" height
    b) Washingtonia Palms - 44" diameter, 36" height
    c) Cuban Royal Palms, Mediterranean Fan Palms, Cocos Palms - 30" diameter, 30" height

H. Staking material:
1. Tree stakes shall be commercial grade T-Posts, 1.25 Gauge, 8' Ht., Green with orange safety caps on tops. Note: Do not drive through stakes through root balls.
2. Tree ties shall be Poly Chain Lock – 1" width, black, ProLock or approved equal
3. Palm stakes shall be treated timber braces, stakes, and battens including burlap protection and steel straps sized per palm planting detail. Ground stakes must be at least 48" in length with at least 42" securely embedded in undisturbed soil.

I. Edging:
   1. Concrete Edging: Extruded, colored, fibermesh reinforced concrete edging (per details) *Curb Appeal (or approved equal)*
   2. Tree Rings: 4" Ht., 30" Dia., Black Anodized Aluminum tree rings. *Dreamscapes (or approved equal)*
   3. Aluminum edging: 4" Ht., Black Anodized Aluminum Edging. *Dreamscapes (or approved equal)*

2.2 PLANTING SOILS

A. Planting Mix: 75 percent sandy-loam topsoil; 25 percent premium compost; (3:1 ratio by volume); and specified fertilizer or planting tablets.

B. Shrub and Ground Cover Areas:
   1. Where no topsoil has been installed: Remove twelve inches of existing soil and replace with ten inches of 'Planting Mix' as described in Item A above.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Examine the site and conditions under which landscape work is to be performed. Have the installer notify the Contractor in writing, with a copy to SSP Design if the site is unsatisfactory. Do not begin the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to installer. Beginning of work indicates acceptance of the site as satisfactory by the installer.

3.02 EXECUTION

A. Site Preparation: Contractors must visit and review site prior to bidding. Compacted soils and sub-soils from construction activities must be ripped and tilled until a loose, friable and free-draining condition is met. All existing weeds, grass, stabilized sub-base material, rubble, excavated soil and other material shall be removed from the site and disposed of by the contractor prior to starting any new landscape work. Soil conditions around entire site must be approved by Owner/SSP Design prior to rough and finished grading operations. Contractor shall not install any fill or topsoil in landscape areas prior to site condition approval by Owner/SSP Design.

B. Drainage: Landscape contractor shall follow grading as shown and specified on Civil Engineer's grading plans. Landscape contractor shall coordinate grading operations with site contractor. Landscape contractor shall ensure final grades conform to the Civil Engineer's grading plan including grades around building, swales, sidewalk under-drains/swales, roof drains, splash blocks and rock swales through planting beds.

C. Vegetation Protection: Contractors are responsible for protection of existing vegetation labeled on plans "to remain". Protection of existing vegetation includes supply and installation of protective fencing around all existing planting areas.

D. Bed Preparation and herbicide: All planting areas shall be free of weeds, grass, insects, or any other deleterious material prior to bed preparation. Contractor shall herbicide all planting areas with 'RoundUp' or approved equal at least two times prior to installation of any new plants. Pre-emergent herbicide shall be applied after planting and before placement of mulch.

E. Planting Beds: Excavate 12" of existing soil within planting beds and replace with 8" of imported topsoil and 2" of premium compost. Mechanically till into top six inches of bed until a loose, friable soil condition is met. Final grades within all planting beds shall be 2-3" below adjacent curbs to allow for mulch. Contractor to ensure positive drainage throughout all landscape areas. Adjust grades as necessary to direct water away from planting beds. Report any discrepancies on all drainage issues in writing to Construction Manager or the Civil Engineer. Owner or SSP Design to approve planting beds prior to planting operations.

F. Edging: Edging shall be installed as shown on plans. Edging shall allow for tapered drainage points to ensure free drainage away from all structures and walkways. Edging shall be set flush with adjacent paving, sidewalks or driveways.

G. Grass Areas: Scarify, float and fine grade all areas to receive sod or hydromulch for approval by SSP prior to placement of sod or application of hydromulch. Supply additional topsoil as necessary to fill any/all low areas and ensure positive drainage away building / planting beds. (see specification on lawns for further requirements).

H. Berms and Mounding: Supply topsoil and construct berms as indicated on plans. Berms shall have a maximum slope of 1:4. Owner or Construction manager to approve berming and mounding prior to planting operations.

I. Planting:

1. Installation:
    a) Excavate planting pit and french drains to depth and width indicated on details in drawings.
    b) Set root ball on undisturbed or compacted soil in planting pit. Remove burlap, rope, wire, and all other wrapping material from top of ball. Remove any binding rope which is not biodegradable completely. Top of root ball shall be set 1" above adjacent finished grade.
    c) Fill planting pit 2/3 full with planting mix, soak with water and allow settling, and adding fertilizer tablets as detailed. Finish filling pit with planting mix and tamp lightly.
    d) Construct a watering basin as detailed (or install aluminum edge tree ring) and install 2 in. layer of mulch. Water-in to completely saturate the root ball and planting mix. Add planting mix where any settling or air pockets occur.
    e) Stake all trees/palms immediately after planting as detailed.

2. Palms: New Washingtonia palms shall be cleaned (skinned) completely of their leafstem bases and fibers to a height 4 feet below the crown. Sabal palms shall be planted with their leafstem bases remaining but cleaned and trimmed evenly. All palms shall be planted with several petioles or fronds tied up straight with natural twine. Remaining fronds shall be trimmed or 'hurricane cut' to lighten wind load on terminal bud. Contractor is responsible for removing or cutting the twine supporting the fronds at the appropriate time. All palms must be inspected and approved on site by SSP Design prior to installation.

3. Shrubs: All plants shall be of species denoted on plans and shall be container-grown material at specified sizes. All plants shall be of size equal or greater than T.A.N. standards for their respective container size. All material shall be vigorous, well established, of good form consistent of species, free of disease and insects, with large healthy root systems and with no evidence of being restricted or damaged. All plants shall be inspected and approved on site by SSP Design prior to installation.

4. Planting Holes: All tree/palm holes shall be excavated with a diameter at least two times the rootball size and to a depth equal to the height of the rootball. The bottoms and sides of each hole shall be scarified with a pick to allow for free drainage and maximum root penetration. After tree/palm placement, the hole shall be backfilled with a mixture of excavated soil and premium compost mixture (9 Kids Compost or approved equal). All holes shall be tested/inspected by SSP Design for free drainage prior to installation of trees.

5. Tree Rings: Tree rings shall be installed on trees within grass areas as indicated on plans. Tree rings are to be aluminum edge or extruded concrete per plans and details. A minimum of 2 inches of specified mulch shall be placed within the tree rings. Tree rings must be maintained and kept free of weeds during the entire maintenance period.

6. Watering Basins: Watering basins for all trees/palms that do not include an aluminum edge tree ring shall be constructed in a ring shape around each tree or palm trunk. This earthen berm shall be constructed 6" in height and 36" in diameter so as to hold water and allow infiltration around root ball. A minimum of 2 inches of specified mulch shall be placed within the watering basin. Watering basins must be maintained and kept free of weeds during the entire maintenance period.

J. Insect and Disease Control: Apply treatment as frequently as required during construction and 90-day maintenance period to prevent damage to plant material. Use only chemicals specifically approved by TNRCC.

K. Pruning: All existing and new vegetation shall be pruned/trimmed by a Certified I.S.A. Arborist as directed on site by SSP Design.

3.03 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. Remove debris from landscaped areas daily and sweep clean adjacent pavements, if soiled by landscape activities.
B. Provide temporary barriers or fences as required to protect landscaping from damage or theft until final acceptance.

3.04 CLOSE-OUT DOCUMENTS

A. As-Built Drawings: Submit 'As-Built' drawings before project close-out showing the landscape layout, including revised plant material, and other installation information.

B. Warranty Letters: Submit one year warranty letters for all landscape items including trees / palms / lawns / shrubs / amenities.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 02930 – LAWNS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: The establishment of a complete and uniform lawn by sodding and/or hydromulching.

NOTE: This project is adjacent to and includes an area with existing irrigation, lawns and landscape. Contractors shall protect existing irrigation, lawns, landscape, etc. All existing irrigation must remain operational and active throughout construction. Any damage whatsoever to existing irrigation, landscape or lawns shall be repaired and replaced at contractor's expense.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 02810-Irrigation
2. Section 02900-Planting

1.02 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Lawn work to be performed by a single firm specializing in commercial landscape work with a minimum of five (5) years experience on similar type projects. Owner/SSP Design to review qualifications and approve subcontractor prior to commencing work.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall be formatted electronically in a pdf file with a table of contents and tabs identifying each section. The following submittals are required for this section:

1. Product Data: Manufacturer's specifications and application instructions for fertilizer.

2. Hydromulch mixes, percentages, lbs per acre, etc. for SSP review and approval before application.

3. Samples: Topsoil, compost, silica sand for SSP review and approval before installation.

4. Certificates: Inspection certificate from Texas Department of Agriculture indicating sod has been found free of diseases, insects and larvae.

5. Certificates: Breakdown of seed types, percentages, and mixture composition.

6. Sod Delivery Tickets: One per truckload indicating sod species, nursery certification, date and time of cutting.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Sod Delivery: Have sod delivered within forty-eight hours of cutting. Stack sod with roots to roots, protected from exposure to elements during shipment.

B. Storage: Lay sod as soon a practicable after delivery. If installation is delayed more than four hours, store sod under shade and keep constantly moist. Sod must be laid within forty-eight hours of cutting. Do not pile more than two foot depth of sod. Do not tear, stretch or drop sod. Do not allow soil to break free of turf roots.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Utility Construction: Do not lay sod or begin hydro-mulching until all underlying utility work is complete, trenches backfilled, compacted and graded, and topsoil placed and fine graded and sports fields laser leveled and approved by Owner/SSP.

1.06 MAINTENANCE/WARRANTY

A. Maintenance Service: Maintain the work of this Section throughout construction until the Date of Substantial Completion and ninety (90) days thereafter until a complete and uniform lawn has been established and accepted by the Owner / SSP.

1. Establish hydro-mulched or sodded lawns per planting plans. Reapply hydro-mulch or re-sod as necessary until **full and uniform** coverage is obtained.
2. Mow general lawn areas **at least once per week** to maintain height of grass at 2 inches or as directed by Owner/SSP. Mowing of general lawn areas may be carried out using standard rotary type mowing equipment.
3. Mow Sports Fields **at least twice per week** to maintain an initial height of 2" for the establishment period then begin lowering the height over the next 90-days to achieve a final height of one inch. Mowing of Sports Field areas shall be carried out using reel type mowers only. Rotary mowers will not be accepted for Sports Field maintenance.
4. Trim/edge all lawn areas adjacent to watering basins, pavements, driveways, walls, structures, curbs, planting beds, edges and islands.
5. Provide insect and disease control to maintain health of grass.
6. Apply pre and post emergent herbicides as required or directed to control weed growth throughout the establishment and maintenance periods.
7. Fertilize general lawn areas (minimum two applications) with balanced commercial grade lawn fertilizer until complete and uniform coverage is obtained.
8. Fertilize Sports Field areas (minimum four applications) using a high nitrogen formula such as HJ 25-0-0 with Wolftrax or Scotts Sierrablen 27+5+5+Fe or Scotts Fairwaymaster 20+5+8 or approved equal.
   Note: Submit fertilizer type for SSP review and approval prior to application. Depending on time of year, SSP may require a fertilizer that includes pre or post emergent herbicide.
9. Verti-cut or de-thatch Sports Field turf at least one time during the maintenance period.
10. Apply top dressing (clean inorganic sand) to level any divots, depressions or low spots during the maintenance period.
11. Irrigation:
    a) If the irrigation system is operating, program and monitor the system to provide adequate water for grass.
    b) If the irrigation system is not operating, hand water grass.
12. Submit receipts/dates of all maintenance operations to SSP Design for approval.

B. Warranty: Warranty shall cover all lawn grasses for a period of three months from the date of final acceptance. Final acceptance will not be approved until full and uniform lawns are completely established and proof of all fertilizations including receipts have been reviewed and accepted.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Topsoil: Fertile, agricultural soil, typical for locality, capable of sustaining vigorous plant growth, taken from drained site; free of subsoil, clay or impurities, plants, weeds and roots; minimum pH value of 5.4 and maximum 7.0; organic matter to exceed 1.5%, magnesium to exceed 100 units; phosphorus to exceed 150 units; potassium to exceed 120 units; soluble salts/conductivity not to exceed 900 ppm/0.9 mmhos/cm in soil.

B. Sand: For athletic/sports fields. Silica sand, clean, screened and free of debris. (Mathis Sand, Wright Materials Plant-3, Tel. (361) 387-0293 or approved equal).

C. Sod: (See schedule for type). Provide premium #1 certified sod grown in a sod nursery on sandy soil, at least 1 yr. old with a heavy top and a strong, well-knit root system, and not more than five percent weeds or foreign grasses.

D. Hydromulch Material. Material for hydraulic mulching shall consist of virgin wood fibers manufactured expressly from clean whole wood chips. The chips shall be processed in such a manner as to contain no growth or germination inhibiting factors. Fiber shall not be produced from recycled materials such as sawdust, paper, cardboard, or residue from pulp and pure plants. The wood cellulose fiber mulch shall be dyed green to aid in visual metering during application. The dye shall be biodegradable and not inhibit plant growth. The wood cellulose fibers of the mulch must maintain uniform suspension in water under agitation. Upon application, the moist material shall form a blotter-like mat covering the ground. This mat shall have the characteristics of moisture absorption, percolation, and shall cover and hold seed in contact with the soil. The Contractor shall obtain certifications from suppliers that laboratory, field-testing of their product has been accomplished, and that it meets all of the foregoing requirements pertaining to wood cellulose fiber mulch. Terra-Mulch Terra-Blend with UltraGro or approved equal.

E. Fertilizer: Starter fertilizer (BCF 15-15-15) shall be used in hydro-mulch mix. The Contractor shall provide a Soil Analysis Report and shall use report to determine quantity and ratio of fertilizer for sustained growth of grass.

F. Soil and Mulch Tackifier: Tackifier used with mulch shall be organic. Tackifier shall be mixed and applied with the hydromulch at an appropriate rate to stabilize soils and minimize erosion. Tackifier shall be pH stable with fertilizer and shall hydrate and disperse in mixing tank with water and other materials to form homogeneous slurry. Tackifier shall leave loose, chain-like stabilizing film on surface of soil, allow moisture to percolate into soil during seed germination and seedling growth, and break itself down through microbial action. Tackifier shall not inhibit plant germination or growth.

1. Organic Tackifier. Organic tackifier shall be, starch-based tackifier formulated for use with conventional mulches. Active ingredient in tackifier shall be 100 percent derived from plant starch.

2. Dry powder tackifier shall be blended with insolubilizer. After blending and mixing with water, tackifier shall swell, become sticky, and be suitable for use during heavy rain. Tackifier shall be applied at rate of 80 pounds per acre. Emulsion shall cure on surface of soil and become insoluble. Tackifier shall not inhibit plant germination or growth.

G. Fertilizer: 12-4-8 (N-P-K), formulated for slow-release Nitrogen.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Examine the site and conditions under which this work is to be performed. Have the installer notify the Contractor in writing, with a copy to SSP Design, if the site is unsatisfactory. Do not begin the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to installer. Beginning of work indicates acceptance of the site as satisfactory by the installer.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Topsoil: Refer to Section 02900 'Landscaping' for topsoil amendment.

B. Site Preparation: Contractors must visit and review site prior to bidding. Compacted soils and sub-soils from construction activities must be ripped and tilled until a loose, friable and free-draining condition is met. All existing weeds, grass, stabilized sub-base material, rubble, excavated soil and other material shall be removed from the site and disposed of by the contractor prior to starting any new landscape work. Soil conditions around entire site must be approved by SSP Design prior to rough and finished grading operations. Contractor shall not install any fill or topsoil in landscape areas prior to site condition approval by SSP Design.

3.03 INSTALLATION – HYDROMULCH

A. All exterior ground within the limit of contract or any other areas site areas disturbed by construction for egress, laydown areas, storage areas, staging areas, etc. shall be hydromulched or planted as shown on drawings. Furnish topsoil, finish grading, hydromulch and maintain areas as indicated on the drawings.

B. Lawn Area Preparations - Grade areas to finish grades, filling as needed or removing surplus material. Float all lawn areas to a smooth, uniform grade as indicated on engineers grading plans. All lawn areas shall slope to drain away from structures and planting beds. Where no grades are shown, areas shall have a smooth and continual grade between existing or fixed controls (such as walks, curbs, catch basin, elevational steps or structures) and elevations shown on plans. Contractor to ensure proper drainage around all structures. Adjust grades as necessary to direct water away from structures and planting beds. Report any discrepancies on all drainage issues in writing to SSP Design or the project engineer.

C. Roll, scarify, rake and level as necessary to obtain true, even lawn surfaces. All finish grades shall meet approval of the SSP, before seeding/hydromulching operations. Loosen soil to a depth of three inches (3") in lawn areas by approved method of

scarification and grade to remove edges and depressions. Remove stones or foreign matter over one half inch (1/2") in diameter from the top two inches (2") of soil. Float lawn areas to finish grades as shown on civil plans.

D. Lawn areas should be permitted to settle or should be firmed by rolling before seeding/hydromulching.

E. Hydromulching shall not be performed in windy weather.

F. Lawn areas shall be seeded by hydro-mulching evenly with an approved mechanical hydro-mulcher. Hydromulch mixture shall include a minimum of 3 lbs. seed, 45-50 lbs. of wood fiber mulch, 20 lbs. of fertilizer, and tackifier per 1000 sq. ft. Contractor shall add fresh annual rye grass seed if hydromulching between the months of November to April. In areas inaccessible to hydro-mulching equipment, the seeded ground shall be lightly raked with flexible rakes and rolled with a water ballast roller. After rolling, seeded areas are to be lightly mulched with wheat straw or approved erosion control material.

G. Lawns shall be maintained by the Contractor for at least 90 days after substantial completion or as long as necessary to establish a uniform stand of the specified grasses, or until final acceptance of lawns, whichever is later.

H. Water seeded/hydromulched areas twice the first week to a minimum depth of six inches (6") with a fine spray and once per week thereafter as necessary to supplement natural rain to the equivalent of one inch (1") or to a six-inch (6") depth.

I. The surface layer of soil for seeded/hydromulched areas must be kept moist during the germination period. After first cutting, water as specified above.

J. Make weekly inspections to determine the moisture content of the soil and adjust the watering schedule established by the irrigation system installer to fit conditions

K. After grass growth has started, all areas or parts of areas, which fail to show a uniform stand of grass for any reason whatsoever shall be reseeded/hydromulched in accordance with the plans and as specified herein. Such areas and parts of areas shall be reseeded, hydromulched or sodded repeatedly until all area are covered with a satisfactory growth of grass at no additional cost to the Owner.

L. Watering shall be done in such a manner and as frequently as is deemed necessary by SSP to assure continued growth of healthy grass. All areas of the site shall be watered in such a way as to prevent erosion due to excessive quantities applied over small areas and to avoid damage to the finished surface due to the watering equipment.

M. Water for the execution and maintenance of this work shall be provided by the Owner at no expense to the Contractor. The Contractor shall, however, furnish his own portable tanks, pumps, hose, pipe, connections, nozzles, and any other equipment required to transport the water from the available outlets and apply it to the seeded area in an approved manner.

N. Mowing of the seeded, hydromulched or sodded areas shall be initiated when the grass has attained a height of one and one-half to two inches (1-1/2" to 2"). Grass height shall be maintained between one and one and one-half inches (1' to 1½") at subsequent cutting depending on the time of year. Not more than one third (1/3) of the grass leaf shall be removed at any cutting and cutting shall not occur more than seven (7) days apart. Mowing of these general site areas can be completed using a rotary type mower. Sports and athletic fields shall be mowed at a height of one inch (1”) and may require

mowing more than once per week during the growing season and must be accomplished utilizing a reel type mower. Rotary mowers will not be accepted for cutting grass on sports and athletic fields.

O. When the amount of grass is heavy, it shall be removed to prevent destruction of the underlying turf. If weeds or other undesirable vegetation threaten to smother the planted species, such vegetation shall be mowed or, in the case of rank growths, shall be uprooted, raked and removed from the area by methods approved by the SSP.

P. Protect seeded/hydromulched areas against trespassing while the grass is germinating. Furnish and install fences, signs, barriers or any other necessary temporary protective devices. Damage resulting from trespass, erosion, washout, settlement or other causes shall be repaired by the Contractor at their expense.

Q. Remove all fences, signs, barriers or other temporary protective devices after final acceptable.

3.04 INSTALLATION – SOD

A. Sod shall be installed to all areas as indicated on plans.

B. Sod Bed Preparation - Grade areas to finish grade, filling as needed or removing surplus dirt, stone, debris, etc. and floating areas to a smooth, uniform grade as indicated on grading plans. All lawn areas are to slope to drain.

C. Sod shall be laid within 24 hrs of being cut. Only healthy vigorous growing sod is to be laid.

D. Always lay sod across slope and tightly together so as to make a solid area.

E. Roll all new sod with a 1 ton mechanical vibratory roller sufficiently to set or press sod into underlying soil and to level all seams and joints.

F. Contractor to fill any gaps or seams in the sodded areas using clean top dressing sand.

G. After sodding has been completed, clean up and thoroughly moisten by sprinkler newly sodded areas.

3.05 FERTILIZING – GRASS

A. General lawn areas shall have fertilizer applied in two (2) applications with a thorough watering immediately following each application. The first application shall be one (1) week after the hydro-seeding using a ‘starter fertilizer’ at manufacturer’s recommended rates. The second application shall be done after 30-60 days with an approved turf builder fertilizer at manufacturer’s recommended rates and as approved by SSP.

B. Sports Field areas shall have a minimum of four (4) applications with a thorough watering immediately following each application. The first application shall be one (1) week after the hydro-seeding using a ‘starter fertilizer’ at manufacturer’s recommended rates. Subsequent applications shall be done after 30 days, 60 days and 90 days with a balanced or higher nitrogen fertilizer at manufacturer’s recommended rates and as approved by SSP.

C. Soil analysis and time of year shall be considered with SSP to determine fertilizer type, composition and final application rates . Submit fertilizer type and analysis to SSP for

approval before any application. Document fertilizer application with photos and receipts of fertilizer purchases.

3.06 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. Remove debris from landscaped areas daily and sweep clean adjacent pavements, if soiled by landscape activities.

B. Protect lawns from damage, theft or vandalism until final acceptance. Install stakes and flagging or temporary fencing if required to keep traffic off newly established lawn areas until final acceptance.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03010 CONCRETE WORK

PART 1 GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work specified in this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

Extent of concrete work shown on drawings.

Concrete paving and walks are specified in Division 2.

Precast concrete is specified in other Division 3 sections.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:

Codes and Standards: Comply with provisions of following codes, specifications and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified:

ACI 301 "Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings".

ACI 318 "Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete."

Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute, "Manual of Standard Practice".

Concrete Testing Service: The Owner shall employ a testing laboratory to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixes.

Materials and installed work may require testing and retesting, as directed by Architect, at any time during progress of work. Allow free access to material stockpiles and facilities. Tests, including retesting of rejected materials and installed work, shall be done at Contractor's expense.

SUBMITTALS:
Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data with application and installation instructions for proprietary materials and items, including reinforcement and forming accessories, admixtures, patching compounds, water stops, joint systems, curing compounds, dry shake finish materials, and others as requested by Architect.

Shop Drawings; Reinforcement: Submit shop drawings for fabrication, bending, and placement of concrete reinforcement. Comply with ACI 315 "Manual of Standard Practice for Detailing Reinforced Concrete Structures" showing bar schedules, stirrup spacing, diagrams of bent bars, and arrangement of concrete reinforcement. Include special reinforcement required at openings through concrete structures.

Laboratory Test Reports: Submit laboratory test reports for concrete materials and mix design test as specified.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

FORM MATERIALS:
Forms for Exposed Finish Concrete: Unless otherwise indicated, construct formwork for exposed concrete surfaces with plywood, metal, metal framed plywood faced or other acceptable panel type materials, to provide continuous, straight, smooth, exposed surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints and to conform to joint system shown on drawings. Provide form material with sufficient thickness to withstand pressure of newly placed concrete without bow or deflection.

Forms for Unexposed Finish Concrete: Form concrete surfaces which will be unexposed in finished structure with plywood, lumber, metal or other acceptable material. Provide lumber dressed on at least 2 edges and one side for tight fit.

Form Coatings: Provide commercial formulation form coating compounds that will not bond with, stain nor adversely affect concrete surfaces, and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

REINFORCING MATERIALS:

Reinforcing Bars (Rebar): ANSI/ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed. No. 3 bars may be grade 40.

Welded Wire Fabric (WWF): ANSI/ASTM A 185, welded steel wire fabric.

Supports for Reinforcement: Provide brick bat supports for reinforcement for supporting and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire fabric in place. Use wire bar type supports complying with CRSI recommendations, unless otherwise acceptable.

For slabs on grade: Use Brick bats (1/2 of full brick) to support slab and beam reinforcing.

For exposed to view concrete surfaces, where legs of supports are in contact with forms, provide supports with legs which are plastic protected (CRSI, Class I) or stainless steel protected (CRSI, Class 2).

CONCRETE MATERIALS:

Portland Cement: ANSI/ASTM C 150, Type I.

Use one brand of cement throughout project, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.

Normal Weight Aggregates: ANSI/ASTM C 33, and as herein specified. Provide aggregates from a single source for exposed concrete.

Water: Potable.

Moisture Barrier: Provide moisture barrier cover over prepared base material where indicated. Use only materials which are resistant to decay when tested in accordance with ANSI/ASTM E 154, as follows:

Clear Polyethylene Sheet not less than 6 mils thick.

Chemical Hardener (ChHd Fn): Colorless aqueous solution containing a blend of magnesium flousilicate and zinc flousilicate combined with a wetting agent, containing not less than 2 lbs. of flousilicates per gal.

Non slip Aggregate Finish (NSAg Fn): Provide fused aluminum oxide grits, or crushed emery, as abrasive aggregate for non slip finish with emery aggregate containing not less than 40% aluminum oxide and not less than 25% ferric oxide. Use material that is factory graded, packaged, rust proof and non glazing, and is unaffected by freezing, moisture and cleaning materials.

Absorptive Cover: Burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz. per sq. yd., complying with AASHTO M 182, Class 2.

Moisture Retaining Cover: One of the following, complying with ANSI/ASTM C 171.

10 mil polyethylene vapor barrier (clear).

Liquid Membrane Forming Curing Compound: (Typical): ASTM C309 Type 1; approved by Asphalt and Vinyl Composition Tile Institute; 30% minimum solids content.

Products: offered by manufacturers to comply with the requirements for membrane forming curing compounds include the following:

"Klearseal:; Setcon Industries.
"Floor Coat"; The Eeuclid Chemical Corp.
"MB 429"; Master Builders
"Kure N Seal 800"; Sonneborn Contech.
"Klorkure 800"; Setcon Industries.
"Clear Seal 800"; W. R. Grace
"Dress and Seal"; L & M Construction Chemicals.
"Sealco 800"; Gifford Hill.

Note: Verify that selected product will not affect bonding of subsequent wall finishes or floor coverings.

PROPORTIONING AND DESIGN OF MIXES:
Prepare design mixes for each type and strength of concrete by either laboratory trial batch or field experience methods as specified in ACI 301. If trial batch method used, use an independent testing facility acceptable to Architect for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs. The testing facility shall not be the same as used for field quality control testing unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.

Submit written reports to Architect of each proposed mix for each class of concrete at least 15 days prior to start of work. Do not begin concrete production until mixes have been reviewed by Architect.

Design mixes to provide normal weight concrete with the following properties unless otherwise noted on the structural drawings, as indicated on drawings and schedules:

All concrete, except curb concrete, shall be flowable concrete comprised of:

1. Not less than 470# (5 sacks) of cement Type I per yard of concrete. (Unless water reducing agent is provided.)

2. Water reducer shall be used equal to WRDA No. 79, 20 oz. per yard by manufacturer by Grace Chemical.

3. Air 2% to 5 %.

4. 5" max. slump after additive placed in mix.

5. All concrete shall have a minimum compressive 28 day strength of 3,000 PSI. (Unless noted otherwise on construction drawings.)

Design Test cylinders and compression breaks of the above mix shall be submitted to the Architect/Engineer for approval. Should cylinders fail to meet specifications, the cement added shall be increased to satisfy the required strength.

Curb concrete shall be 4 sack per yard minimum cement factor and have a w/c maximum ratio of 0.65 with a minimum 28 day compressive strength of 2,500 PSI. Max slump shall be 3".

CONCRETE MIXES:

Ready Mix Concrete: Comply with requirements of ANSI/ASTM C 94, and as herein specified.
Addition of water to the batch will not be permitted.

During hot weather, or under conditions contributing to rapid setting of concrete, a shorter mixing time than specified in ASTM C 94 may be required.

When air temperature is between 85 degrees F (30 degrees C) and 90 degrees F (32 degrees C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1 1/2 hours to 75 minutes, and when air temperature is above 90 degrees F (32 degrees C),reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes. Ice or other means of cooling shall be added to mix should concrete exceed 95 deg. F.

Admixtures:

Use air entraining in all concrete, unless otherwise shown or indicated. Add air entraining admixture at the manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having air content within the following limits: 2% to 5% air.
When air entrainment is used, reduce the maximum water content of the design mixes.

A water reducing additive such as Master Builders' Pozzolith or Gifford Hills' PSI shall be used for all concrete. Such shall be used in strict compliance with manufacturer's recommendations, such as to provide a flowable mix.

Use amounts of admixtures as recommended by the manufacturer for climate conditions prevailing at the time of placing. Adjust quantities of admixtures as required to maintain quality control. All such shall be subject to approval of the Engineer and Architect.

Calcium Chloride: Do not use calcium chloride in concrete, except as otherwise authorized in writing by the Architect. Do not use any admixtures containing calcium chloride where concrete is placed against any galvanized steel, post tension steel or in any mix using high early strength cement.

PART 3 EXECUTION

FORMS:
Design, erect, support, brace and maintain formwork to support vertical and lateral loads that might be applied until such loads can be supported by concrete structure. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of correct size, shape, alignment, elevation and position. Use wood forming for the full surfaces of the exterior side of all grade beams.

Design formwork to be readily removable without impact, shock or damage to cast in place concrete surfaces and adjacent materials.
Construct forms to sizes shapes, lines and dimensions shown, and to obtain accurate alignment, location, grades, level and plumb work in finished structures. Provide for openings, offsets, sinkages, keyways, recesses, moldings, rustications, reglets, chamfers, blocking, screeds, bulkheads, anchorages and inserts, and other features required in work. Use selected materials to obtain required finishes. Solidly butt joints and provide backup at joints to prevent leakage of cement paste.

Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush plates or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces where slope is too steep to place concrete with bottom forms only. Kerf wood inserts for forming keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, to prevent swelling and for easy removal.

Provide temporary openings where interior area of formwork is inaccessible for cleanout, for inspection before concrete placement, and for placement of concrete. Securely brace temporary openings and set tightly to forms to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings on forms at inconspicuous locations.

Chamfer exposed corners and edges as indicated, using wood, metal, PVC or rubber chamfer strips fabricated to produce uniform smooth lines and tight edge joints.

Provisions for Other Trades: Provide openings in concrete formwork to accommodate work of other trades. Determine size and location of openings, recesses and chases from trades providing such items. Accurately place and securely support items built into forms.

Cleaning and Tightening: Thoroughly clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt or other debris just before concrete is placed. Retighten forms and bracing after concrete placement is required to eliminate mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

PLACING REINFORCEMENT:
Comply with Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute's recommended practice for "Placing Reinforcing Bars", for details and methods of reinforcement placement and supports, and as herein specified.

Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other materials which reduce or destroy bond with concrete.

Accurately position, support and secure reinforcement against displacement by formwork, construction, or concrete placement operations. Locate and support

reinforcing by metal chairs, runners, bolsters, spacers, and hangers, as required.

Place reinforcement to obtain at least minimum coverages for concrete protection. Arrange, space and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement operations. Set wire ties so ends are directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

Install welded wire fabric in as long lengths as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh and lace splices with wire. Offset end laps in adjacent widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

Chuting of concrete in excess of 25' (twenty five feet) of slab perimeter is not approved. "Pumping Placement" of all concrete shall be required of all foundation work beyond 25' (twenty five feet) of perimeter.

JOINTS:

Construction Joints: Locate and install construction joints, which are not shown on drawings, so as not to impair strength and appearance of the structure, as acceptable to Architect.

Provide keyways at least 1 1/2" deep in construction joints in walls, slabs and between walls and footings; accepted bulkheads designed for this purpose may be used for slabs.

Place construction joints perpendicular to the main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints.

Joint sealant materials are specified in Division 7 sections of these specifications.

INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS:

General: Set and build into work anchorage devices and other embedded items required for other work that is attached to, or supported by, cast in place concrete. Use setting drawings, diagrams, instructions and directions provided by suppliers of items to be attached thereto.

Edge Forms and Screed Strips for Slabs: Set edge forms or bulkheads and intermediate screed strips for slabs to obtain required elevations and contours in finished slab surface. Provide and secure units sufficiently strong to support types of screed strips by use of strike off templates or accepted compacting type screeds.

PREPARATION OF FORM SURFACES:
Coat contact surfaces of forms with a form coating compound before reinforcement is placed.

Thin form coating compounds only with thinning agent of type, and in amount, and under conditions of form coating compound manufacturer's directions. Do not allow excess form coating material to accumulate in forms or to come into contact with concrete surfaces against which fresh concrete will be placed. Apply in compliance with manufacturer's instructions.

CONCRETE PLACEMENT:
Contractor shall notify Architect's office 48 hours prior to placement of concrete for on-

site visual inspection by Structural Engineer.

Preplacement Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, reinforcing steel, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other crafts to permit installation of their work; cooperate with other trades in setting such work. Moisten wood forms immediately before placing concrete where form coatings are not used.

Coordinate the installation of joint materials and moisture barriers with placement of forms and reinforcing steel.

General: Comply with ACI 304and as herein specified.

Deposit concrete continuously or in layers of such thickness that no concrete will be placed on concrete which has hardened sufficiently to cause the formation of seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as herein specified. Deposit concrete as nearly as practicable to its final location to avoid segregation.

Placing Concrete in Forms: Deposit concrete in forms in horizontal layers not deeper than 24" and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints. Where placement consists of several layers, place each layer while preceding layer is still plastic to avoid cold joints.

Consolidate placed concrete by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding or tamping. Use equipment and procedures for consolidation of concrete in accordance with ACI recommended practices.

Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations not farther than visible effectiveness of machine. Place vibrators to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6" into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to set. At each insertion limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing segregation of mix.

Placing Concrete Slabs: Deposit and consolidate concrete slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until the placing of a panel or section is completed.

Consolidate concrete during placing operations so that concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.

Bring slab surfaces to correct level with straightedge and strikeoff. Use bull floats or darbies to smooth surface, free of humps or hollows. Do not disturb slab surfaces prior to beginning finishing operations.

Maintain reinforcing in proper position during concrete placement operations.

Cold Weather Placing: Place no concrete when temperature is less than 40 degrees F or 45 degrees F and falling.

Hot Weather Placing: When hot weather conditions exist that would seriously impair

quality and strength of concrete, place concrete in compliance with ACI 305 and as herein specified.

Cover reinforcing steel with water soaked burlap if it becomes too hot, so that steel temperature will not exceed the ambient air temperature immediately before embedment in concrete.

Wet forms thoroughly before placing concrete.

FINISH OF FORMED SURFACES:

Rough Form Finish: For formed concrete surfaces not exposed to view in the finish work or by other construction, unless otherwise indicated. This is the concrete surface having texture imparted by form facing material used, with tie holes and defective areas repaired and patched and fins and other projections exceeding 1/4" in height rubbed down or chipped off.

Smooth Form Finish: For formed concrete surfaces exposed to view, or that are to be covered with a coating material applied directly to concrete, or a covering material applied directly to concrete, such as waterproofing, dampproofing, painting or other similar system. This is as cast concrete surface obtained with selected form facing material, arranged orderly and symmetrically with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch defective areas with fins or other projections completely removed and smoothed.

Smooth Rubbed Finish: Provide smooth rubbed finish to scheduled concrete surfaces, which have received smooth form finish treatment, not later than one day after form removal.

Moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or other abrasive until a uniform color and texture is produced. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
Related Uniformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets surfaces occurring adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

MONOLITHIC SLAB FINISHES:
Scratch Finish: Apply scratch finish to monolithic slab surfaces that are to receive concrete floor topping or mortar setting beds for tile, portland cement terrazzo, and other bonded applied cementitious finish flooring material, and as otherwise indicated.

After placing slabs, plane surface to a tolerance not exceeding 1/2" in 10' when tested with a 10' straightedge. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required. After leveling, roughen surface before final set, with stiff brushes, brooms or rakes.

Float Finish: Apply float finish to monolithic slab surfaces to receive trowel finish and other finishes as hereinafter specified, and slab surfaces which are to be covered with membrane or elastic waterproofing, membrane or elastic roofing, or sand bed terrazzo, and as otherwise indicated.

After screening, consolidating, and leveling concrete slabs, do not work surface until ready for floating. Begin floating when surface water has disappeared or when concrete has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of power driven floats, or both. Consolidate

surface with power driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Check and level surface plane to a tolerance not exceeding 1/4" in 10' when tested with a 10' straight edge. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Uniformly slope surfaces to drains. Immediately after leveling, refloat surface to a uniform, smooth, granular texture.

Trowel Finish: Apply trowel finish to monolithic slab surfaces to be exposed to view, and slab surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile, paint or other thinfilm finish coating system.

After floating, begin first trowel finish operation using a power driven trowel. Begin final troweling when surface produces a ringing sound as trowel is moved over surface. Consolidate concrete surface by final hand troweling operation, free of trowel marks, uniform in texture and appearance, and with a surface plane tolerance not exceeding

1/8" in 10' when tested with a 10' straightedge. Grind smooth surface defects which would telegraph through applied floor covering system.

Non Slip Broom Finish: Apply non slip broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.

Immediately after trowel finishing, slightly roughen concrete surface by brooming with fiber bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

Chemical Hardener Finish: Apply chemical hardener finish to interior concrete floors where indicated. Apply liquid chemical hardener after complete curing and drying of the concrete surface. Dilute liquid hardener with water, and apply in 3 coats; first coat, 1/3 strength; secondcoat, 1/2 strength; third coat, 2/3 strength. Evenly apply each coat, and allow 24 hours for drying between coats.

Apply proprietary chemical hardeners, in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

After final coat of chemical hardener solution is applied and dried, remove surplus hardener by scrubbing and mopping with water.

Non slip Aggregate Finish: Apply non slip aggregate finish to concrete stair treads, platforms, ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.

After completion of float finishing, and before starting trowel finish, uniformly spread 25 lbs. of dampened non slip aggregate per 100 sq. ft. of surface. Tamp aggregate flush with surface using a steel trowel, but do not force below surface. After broadcasting and tamping, apply trowel finishing as herein specified.

After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush, or an abrasive stone, and water to expose non slip aggregate.

CONCRETE CURING AND PROTECTION:

General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.

Start initial curing as soon as free water has disappeared from concrete surface after placing and finishing. Weather permitting, keep continuously moist for not less than 72 hours.

Begin final curing procedures immediately following initial curing and before concrete has dried. Continue final curing for at least 7 days in accordance with ACI 301 procedures. Avoid rapid drying at end of final curing period.

Curing Methods: Perform curing of concrete by moist curing, by moisture retaining cover curing, by curing compound, and by combinations thereof, as herein specified.

Provide moisture curing by following methods.

Keep concrete surface continuously wet by covering with water.

Continuous water fog spray.

Covering concrete surface with specified absorptive cover, thoroughly saturating cover with water and keeping continuously wet. Place absorptive cover to provide coverage of concrete surfaces and edges, with 4" lap over adjacent absorptive covers.

Provide moisture cover curing as follows:
Cover concrete surfaces with moisture retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width with sides and ends lapped at least 3" and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.

Provide curing compound to slab as follows:
Apply specified curing and sealing compound to concrete slabs as soon as final finishing operations are complete (within 2 hours). Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's directions. Recoat areas immediately after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period. Apply 2 separate coatings of spray cure. Second coat shall be applied in a pattern at 90 deg. to the first coat.

Do not use membrane curing compounds on surfaces which are to be covered with coating material applied directly to concrete, liquid floor hardener, waterproofing, dampproofing, membrane roofing, flooring, painting, and other coatings and finish materials, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.
Curing Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including undersides of beams, supported slabs and other similar surfaces by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period or until forms are removed. If forms are removed, continue curing by methods specified above, as applicable.

Curing Unformed Surfaces: Cure unformed surfaces, such as slabs, floor topping, and other flat surfaces by application of appropriate curing compound. Final cure concrete surfaces to receive liquid floor hardener or finish flooring by use of moisture retaining cover, unless otherwise directed.

REMOVAL OF FORMS:

Formwork not supporting weight of concrete, such as sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the work, may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 degrees F. (10 degrees C) for 24 hours after placing concrete, provided concrete is

sufficiently hard to not be damaged by form removal operations, and provided curing and protection operations are maintained.

Formwork supporting weight of concrete, such as beam soffits, joints, slabs and other structural elements, may not be removed in less than 14 days and until concrete has attained design minimum compressive strength at 28 days. Determine potential compressive strength of inplace concrete by testing field cured specimens representative of concrete location or members.

Form facing material may be removed 4 days after placement, only if shores and other vertical supports have been arranged to permit removal of form facing material without loosening or disturbing shores and supports.

RE USE OF FORMS:

Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be re used in work. Split, frayed, delaminated or otherwise damaged form facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form coating compound as specified for new formwork.

When forms are extended for successive concrete placement, thoroughly clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten forms to close joints. Align and secure joint to avoid offsets. Do not use "patched" forms for exposed concrete surfaces, except as acceptable to Architect.

MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS:

Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures for passage of work by other trades, unless otherwise shown or directed, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place and cure concrete as herein specified, to blend with in place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling shown or required to complete work.

Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations, as shown on drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment to template at correct elevations, complying with certified diagrams or templates of manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.

CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS:

Patching Defective Areas: Repair and patch defective areas with cement mortar immediately after removal of forms, when acceptable to Architect.

Cut out honeycomb, rock pockets, voids over 1/4" in any dimension, and holes left by tie rods and bolts, down to solid concrete but, in no case to a depth of less than 1". Make edges of cuts perpendicular to the concrete surface. Thoroughly clean, dampen with water and brush coat the area to be patched with specified bonding agent. Place patching mortar after bonding compound has dried.

For exposed to view surfaces, blend white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match color surrounding. Provide test areas at inconspicuous location to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.

Repair of Formed Surfaces: Remove and replace concrete having defective surfaces if defects cannot be repaired to satisfaction of Architect. Surface defects, as such, include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycomb, rock pockets; fins and other projections on surface; and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning. Flush out form tie holes, fill with dry pack mortar, or precast cement cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.

Repair concealed formed surfaces, where possible, that contain defects that affect the durability of concrete. If defects cannot be repaired, remove and replace concrete.

Repair of Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as monolithic slabs, for smoothness and verify surface plane to tolerances specified for each surface and finish. Correct low and high areas as herein specified. Test unformed surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope, in addition to smoothness, using a template having required slope.

Repair finished unformed surfaces that contain defects which affect durability of concrete. Surface defects, as such, include crazing, cracks in excess of 0.01" wide or which penetrate to reinforcement or completely through non reinforced sections regardless of width, spalling, pop outs, honeycomb, rock pockets, and other objectionable conditions.

Correct high areas in unformed surfaces by grinding, after concrete has cured at least 14 days.

Correct low areas in unformed surfaces during, or immediately after completion of surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with fresh concrete. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete. Proprietary patching compounds may be used when acceptable to Architect.

Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes not exceeding 1" diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas to sound concrete with clean, square cuts and expose reinforcing steel with at least 3/4" clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding compound. Mix patching concrete of same materials to provide concrete of same type or class as original concrete. Place, compact and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in the same manner as adjacent concrete.

Repair isolated random cracks and single holes not over 1" in diameter by dry pack method. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean of dust, dirt and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding compound. Mix dry pack, consisting of one part portland cement to 2 1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 mesh sieve, using only enough water as required for handling and placing. Place dry pack after bonding compound has dried. Compact dry pack mixture in place and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for not less than 72 hours.

Use epoxy based mortar for structural repairs, where directed by Architect.
Repair methods not specified above may be used, subject to acceptance of Architect.

QUALITY CONTROL TESTING DURING CONSTRUCTION:
The Owner will employ a testing laboratory to perform other tests and to submit test reports.

Sampling and testing for quality control during placement of concrete may include the following, as directed by Architect.

Sampling Fresh Concrete: ASTM C 172, except modified for slump to comply with ASTM C 94.

Slump: ASTM C 143; the first three trucks will be tested for adequate slump, and every fifth truck thereafter. Those trucks exceeding the maximum 5" slump WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED.

Compression Test Specimen: ASTM C 31; one set of 3 standard cylinders for each compressive strength test, unless otherwise directed. Mold and store cylinders for laboratory cured test specimens except when field cure test specimens are required. All making and handling of test specimens shall be by Laboratory personnel.

Compressive Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; one set for each 50 cu. yds.or fraction thereof, of each concrete class placed in any one day for each 5,000 sq. ft. of surface area placed: 1 specimen tested at 7 days, 1 specimens tested at 28 days, and one specimen retained in reserve for later testing if required.

Strength level of concrete will be considered satisfactory if averages of sets of three consecutive strength test results equal or exceed specified compressive strength, and no individual strength test result falls below specified compressive by more than 500 psi.

Test results will be reported in writing to Architect and Contractor on same day that tests are made. Reports of compressive strength tests shall contain the project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing service, concrete type and class, location of concrete batch in structure, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mix proportions and materials; compressive breaking strength and type of break for both 7 day tests and 28 day tests.

Additional Tests: The testing service will make additional tests of in place concrete when test results indicate specified concrete strengths and other characteristics have not been attained in the structure, as directed by Architect. Testing service may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42, or by other methods as directed. Contractor shall pay for such tests conducted, and any other additional testing as may be required, when unacceptable concrete is verified.

END OF SECTION 03010

SECTION 03100 − CONCRETE FORMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Formwork for cast-in-place concrete including shoring, bracing and anchorage.

B. Openings for other Work.

C. Release agents and other related form accessories.

D. Form stripping.

1.2 RELATED SECTION

A. Section 03200 - Concrete Reinforcement

B. Section 03300 - Cast-In-Place Concrete

1.3 REFERENCES

A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):

1. 347, Recommended Practice for Concrete Formwork.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Concealed: For Work required under this Section, the term "concealed" will mean "not exposed to view in finished construction."

B. Exposed: For Work required under this Section, the term "exposed" will mean "exposed to view in finished construction."

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Grading Rules. Rules of the following associations apply to materials furnished under this Section:

1. Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (SPIB).
2. Western Wood Products Association (WWPA).

B. Tolerances: Follow ACI 301 (Table 4.3.1).

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store off ground in ventilated and protected manner to prevent deterioration from moisture.

1.7 DESIGN CRITERIA

A. Design, engineering, fabrication, erection, maintenance and removal of formwork shall be responsibility of Contractor.

B. Construct forms following ACI 318, ACI 347, OSHA, state and local requirements.

C. Provide forms with sufficient strength to withstand pressures resulting from concrete placement and vibration.

D. Responsibility for properly bracing and shoring to support subsequent construction loads rests solely with Contractor.

E. Responsibility for removal of forms at any time before concrete has obtained certified specified design strength rests solely with Contractor.

F. The Engineer’s efforts are aimed at designing a project which will be safe after full completion. The Engineer has no expertise in, and takes no responsibility for, construction means and methods or job Site safety during construction which are exclusively Contractor's responsibility. Processing and/or approving submittals made by Contractor which may contain information related to construction methods or safety issues, or participation in meetings where such issues might be discussed must not be construed as voluntary assumption by Engineer of any responsibility for safety procedures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS / PRODUCTS

A. Use forms specified in the general notes of the structural drawings. Provide in largest practical sizes to minimize number of required joints.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Wood Form Materials:

1. Reference general structural notes in sheet S1.1 for wood grade requirements.

B. Preformed Steel Forms: Minimum 16 gauge (0.06"/1.5mm) matched, tight fitting, stiffened to support weight of concrete without deflection detrimental to tolerances and appearance of finished surfaces.

C. Form Release Agent: Colorless chemical form coating or mineral oil which will not stain concrete or absorb moisture.

D. Form Ties: Standard coil or snap galvanized adjustable ties with 3/4" diameter plastic cones on exposed surfaces. Provide manufacturer's recessed plugs of gray plastic or concrete to seal tie holes.

E. Nails, Spikes, Lag Bolts, Through Bolts and Anchorages: Sizes required; of sufficient strength and character to maintain formwork in place while placing concrete.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify lines, levels and centers before proceeding with formwork.

B. Verify that dimensions agree with drawings.

3.2 ERECTION / INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

A. Follow ACI 301 and 347.

B. Provide forms as follows:

1. Concealed Surfaces: Rough or board form finish left by clean, straight formed lumber.
2. Exposed Surfaces (Typical): Hardboard or plywood lined concrete forms.

C. Provide bracing to ensure stability of formwork. Shore or strengthen formwork subject to over-stressing by construction loads.

D. Arrange and assemble formwork to permit dismantling and stripping. Do not damage concrete during stripping.

E. Align joints and make watertight. Keep form joints to minimum.

F. Obtain approval before framing openings in structural members which are not shown.

G. Provide 1" chamfer strips in exposed exterior corners of beams, girders, columns, walls or foundation forms, around tops of all foundation slabs and elsewhere shown.

H. Provide temporary ports or openings in formwork required for cleaning out debris, adjusting reinforcing steel and to facilitate inspection.

I. Coordinate with Work of other Sections which require attachment of components to formwork.

J. Coat forms with non-staining form release agent. No other coating will be permitted unless specifically approved by Architect.

K. Inserts, Embedded Parts and Openings:

1. Provide formed openings required for items to be embedded in or passing through concrete Work.
2. Locate and set in place items which will be cast directly into concrete.
3. Coordinate with Work of other Sections in forming and placing openings, slots, reglets, recesses, sleeves, bolts, anchors, collars, thimbles, ties, sockets, nailing blocks, other inserts and components of other Work.
4. Obtain required setting information before proceeding.

L. Install accessories following manufacturer's instructions, straight, level and plumb. Ensure items are not disturbed during concrete placement.

M. Form Removal:

1. Do not remove forms or bracing until concrete has gained sufficient strength to carry its own weight and imposed loads.
2. Loosen forms carefully. Do not wedge pry bars, hammers or tools against exposed concrete surfaces.
3. Store removed forms in manner that surfaces to be in contact with fresh concrete will not be damaged. Discard damaged forms.

N. Do not construct any masonry walls on concrete floors or walls until concrete has attained its design strength and forms and shoring have been removed.

O. Terminate embedded form ties 1-1/2" from formed face of concrete. Construct ties so that ends and fasteners can be removed without causing spalling of face of concrete.

P. Repair form tie holes as follows:

1. Below Grade Surfaces: Fill tie holes with waterproof bituminous mastic to prevent water infiltration.
2. Above Grade Surfaces - Concealed: Fill tie holes with compatible materials flush with adjacent concrete.
3. Above Grade Surfaces - Exposed: Fill tie holes with compatible materials flush with adjacent concrete. Repairs shall blend in inconspicuously with surrounding surfaces. Follow Section 03 30 00.

Q. Finishes. Follow ACI 301 unless specifically shown otherwise.

3.3 TOLERANCES

A. Formwork: Follow ACI 301.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect erected formwork, shoring and bracing to ensure that Work follows formwork design and that supports, fastenings, wedges, ties and items are secure.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Clean forms as erection proceeds to remove foreign matter within forms.

B. Clean formed cavities of debris prior to placing concrete.

C. Flush with water or use compressed air to remove remaining foreign matter. Ensure that water and debris drain to exterior through clean-out ports.

END OF SECTION 03100

SECTION 03200 − CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Reinforcing steel, welded wire fabric, tie wires and other related accessories.

B. Work includes reinforcing for interior and exterior cast-in-place concrete and reinforced concrete unit masonry Work.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 03300 - Cast-In-Place Concrete

B. Section 04200 - Concrete Masonry Units

1.3 REFERENCES

A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):

1. 301, Structural Concrete.
2. 315, Manual of Standard Practice for Detailing Reinforced Concrete Structures.
3. 318, Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete.

B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

1. A82, Cold Drawn Steel Wire for Concrete Reinforcement.
2. A185, Welded Steel Wire Fabric for Concrete Reinforcement.
3. A615, Deformed and Plain Billet Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement (including supplementary requirements)

C. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI):

1. Manual of Practice.
2. 63, Recommended Practice For Placing Reinforcing Bars.
3. 65, Recommended Practice for Placing Bar Supports, Specifications and Nomenclature.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit:

1. Shop drawings. Provide electronic (PDF) copies of each drawing.

a. Show reinforcing steel and wire fabric sizes, spacings, locations and quantities, bending and cutting schedules and supporting and spacing devices.
b. Indicate visual method of identification of bar strengths following ASTM standard for steel type used.

2. Certified copies of mill test reports of reinforcement materials analysis (upon request).

B. Provide submittals within 30 days after Contract date.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Maintain 1 copy of each referenced document at Site.

B. Fabrication and Placement Tolerances: Follow ACI 301.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver to Site free of rust and scale, clearly marked as to bar strength.

B. Store reinforcing materials on pallets or other materials off ground. Avoid surface contamination before placement and prevent bending or warping.

1.7 ALLOWANCE

A. Include in lump sum allowance for additional reinforcing steel material (fabricated and installed) required to complete the work equal to **10.0 tons** of reinforcing steel. Any unused tonnage will be credited to the owner at a cost of **$2,000.00 per ton**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615, Grade 60 (60,000 psi yield strength) billet steel bars; unfinished. Provide in sizes shown on plans provide deformed bars typically and plain bars where dowels are shown.

B. Stirrup Steel: #3 reinforcing bars may by ASTM A615 Grade 40.

C. Welded Wire Fabric (WWF): ASTM A185, plain type; unfinished. Provide in sheet form not in rolls. Provide as sized if shown or as follows if not shown:

1. Provide 1 layer of 6 x 6-W2.9 x W2.9 in sidewalk and toppings 4" or less in thickness.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Tie Wire: Minimum 16 gauge (0.06") annealed type.

B. Chairs, Bolsters, Bar Supports and Spacers: Sized and shaped for strength and support of reinforcement during concrete placement conditions.

C. Special Chairs, Bolsters, Bar Supports and Spacers Adjacent to Weather Exposed Concrete Surfaces: Stainless steel type; sizes and shapes required.

2.3 FABRICATION

A. Fabrication: Follow CRSI Manual of Practice.

B. Locate reinforcing splices not shown at points of minimum stress.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Foundations and Footings:

1. Clean excavations of loose debris and earth. Cut sides of excavations square and remove loose material.
2. Pump out standing water from excavations before placing reinforcement. Remove and replace mud or frozen soil with lean concrete.

B. Clean reinforcement completely before concrete placing. Reinforcement shall be free from loose, flaky rust, mud, oil or other coatings that would destroy or reduce bond with concrete at time concrete is placed. Reinspect reinforcement and clean off any dried cement, mortar or dirt when placement is delayed.

C. Obtain Owner's Engineer's approval of reinforcement installations prior to placement of any concrete.

3.2 ERECTION / INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

A. Position reinforcement following ACI 301, ACI 315 and drawn details.

B. Provide reinforcing steel in concrete footings, foundation walls, thickened slabs, retaining walls and elsewhere shown.

C. Provide reinforcing steel in concrete unit masonry walls, bond beams and elsewhere shown.

D. Provide corner reinforcing steel in footings at corners and at intersections of walls unless shown otherwise:

1. Bar size and spacing shall match wall or footing reinforcing.
2. Return bars minimum of 36 diameters on each end.
3. WELDING OF REINFORCING IS NOT PERMITTED.

E. Provide the following minimum concrete cover requirements for reinforcing steel unless shown otherwise:

1. Concrete Cast Against and Permanently Exposed to Earth: 3".
2. Concrete Exposed to Earth or Weather:

a. #5 Bars and Smaller: 1-1/2".
b. Others: 2".

F. Provide minimum splice requirements for reinforcing steel shown or required by ACI 318. Stagger splices so that no more than 1/2 of horizontal reinforcing steel is spliced at any given cross section.

G. Provide a bond breaker such as plastic sleeves at all dowel bars occurring at control and expansion joints.

H. Place, support and secure reinforcement against displacement. Do not deviate from required position.

1. Provide bolsters and chairs required to maintain reinforcing steel at proper elevation in slab.

I. Lap welded wire fabric minimum 6" or 1 full mesh on sides and 1 foot or 2 full meshes on ends and extend to within 2" of slab edges. Chair support welded wire fabric so that welded wire fabric is in upper half of slab while placing slabs on grade unless specifically shown otherwise.

J. Carry welded wire fabric and reinforcing steel through control (contraction) joints but not through construction and expansion joints unless shown otherwise.

1. Grease dowels thoroughly and paper wrap to allow for horizontal movement at expansion joints.
2. Cut alternate wires of welded wire fabric at control joints.

K. Take care to avoid disturbing reinforcement and vapor retarder during placing of concrete. Remove and reinstall disturbed or improperly installed reinforcement when discovered or instructed by Owner's Engineer before continuing concrete placement.

L. Accommodate placement of formed openings.

END OF SECTION 03200

SECTION 03300 − CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Interior and exterior plain and reinforced site-placed concrete, vapor retarders, expansion joints, curing compounds and other related accessories.

1.2 PRODUCTS INSTALLED BUT NOT FURNISHED UNDER THIS SECTION

A. Concrete Reinforcement

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 03200 – Concrete Reinforcement

1.4 REFERENCES

A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):

1. 301, Structural Concrete.
2. 302, Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.
3. 304, Measuring, Mixing, Transporting and Placing Concrete.
4. 305R, Hot Weather Concreting.
5. 308, Curing Concrete.
6. 309, Recommended Practice for Consolidation of Concrete.
7. 318, Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete.

B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

1. C31, Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.
2. C33, Concrete Aggregates.
3. C39, Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.
4. C94, Ready Mixed Concrete.
5. C143, Test Method for Slump of Portland Cement Concrete.
6. C150, Portland Cement.
7. C171, Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete.
8. C172, Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete.
9. C231, Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method.
10. C260, Air Entraining Admixtures for Concrete.
11. C309, Liquid Membrane - Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.
12. C494, Chemical Admixtures for Concrete.
13. C618, Fly Ash and Raw or Calcinated Natural Pozzolan for Use as a Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete.

1.5 DEFINITIONS

A. Concealed: For Work required under this Section, the term "concealed" will mean "not exposed to view in finished construction."

B. Exposed: For Work required under this Section, the term "exposed" will mean "exposed to view in finished construction."

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit: Provide electronic (PDF) copies of all required submittal information.
   1. Concrete mix designs. Follow ACI 301. Submit a mix design for each class of concrete required within 30 days after Contract date and prior to placing any concrete.
   2. Product data including installation requirements for curing/sealer compounds, mineral and chemical admixtures and joint devices.
   3. Concrete delivery tickets.
      a. Submit to Owner's Engineer at Site.
      b. Follow ASTM C94. Also include:
         1) Batch number.
         2) Mix by class of concrete and bag content with maximum aggregate size used
         3) Air content.
         4) Quantities and types of admixtures.
         5) Slump.
         6) Time of loading.
      c. Delivery tickets not showing time of loading will be grounds for rejection of load.
   4. Testing laboratory reports.
      a. Submit directly to Owner's Engineer, Contractor and ready-mix supplier.

   5. Certification or test results indicating compliance of material or source of material with these specifications (upon request).

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Maintain 1 copy of each referenced document at Site.

B. Acquire cement and aggregate from same source for all Work.

C. Tolerances: Place and finish cast-in-place concrete within tolerance limits specified in ACI 301 and as follows:

   1. Formed Surfaces: Follow ACI 301 (Table 4.3.1.)

D. Acceptance of Work: Presence or evidence of nonconforming Work shall be sufficient cause for Owner's Engineer to require entire section of concrete affected be torn out and rebuilt properly at Contractor's expense.
   1. Such unacceptable Work includes:
      a. Horizontal or vertical misalignment.
      b. Cracking.
      c. Honeycombing.
      d. Spalling.
      e. Embedded debris.
   2. If by tests or on-site observation, Owner's Engineer determines that any of Contract requirements have not been fully met in completion of this Work, he may require additional testing or retesting to determine composition, soundness and actual structural capacity of any concrete.
   3. Costs for such testing shall be paid by Contractor if such tests subsequently establish that Work is unacceptable and by Owner if Work is found to be acceptable.
   4. Remove and replace all unacceptable Work including related Work which was acceptable but which must be disturbed as a result of replacement if such tests establish that Work is unacceptable with regard to compliance with these specifications.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Concrete Delivery: Follow ACI 304 and ASTM C94.

B. Deliver packaged materials in manufacturer's unopened, labeled containers.

C. Store materials to provide protection from weather and damage.

D. Deliver concrete in agitating or revolving type equipment. DO NOT USE NON-AGITATING EQUIPMENT.

E. Discharge concrete at Site within 1-1/2 hours or 300 revolutions, whichever comes first, after water has been added to cement and aggregates or cement batches with aggregates unless a longer time is specifically authorized by Owner's Engineer.

F. Owner's Engineer may require a reduction in this elapsed time during hot weather, when high early strength cement is being used or under other conditions contributing to quick stiffening of concrete.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Coordinate Work of other trades who will furnish and install items of Work (sleeves, piping, conduit, inserts, etc.) to be cast in concrete. Place no concrete until such items are in place.

B. Place concrete at ambient temperatures between 50°F and 95°F.

C. Follow instructions for special procedures at end of this Section should it be necessary to place concrete in colder or hotter weather.

D. Protect freshly placed concrete from rainfall, water leaks, falling objects, traffic of any kind and other hazards to surfaces. Provide barricades and lights if necessary.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement:

1. ASTM C150 Type I (Normal) or Type II (Moderate).
2. Cement shall be free of false set when tested following ASTM C451.
3. Use same brand, type and source throughout.

B. Aggregates:

1. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C33; natural or manufactured sand, clean, hard and durable, uncoated grains, free from deleterious matter. Average fineness modulus shall be between 2.5 and 3.0.
2. Coarse Aggregate: ACI 301 and ASTM C33.
   a. Interior and Concealed Exterior Applications: Crushed gravel or stone, durable uncoated particles free from deleterious matter.
   b. Exposed Exterior Applications: Crushed dolomite, granite or limestone.
   c. Grading: ASTM C33 No. 57. Exception: Use grade size No. 8 masonry core fill.

C. Admixtures:

1. Mineral Admixtures:
   a. Fly Ash: ASTM C618 Class C; maximum 25% fly ash may be used as a cement substitute; maximum 6% loss on ignition.
   b. Fly ash source must be approved by Owner’s Engineer. Preapproved sources are:
      1) Class C: Boral Manufacturing
2. Chemical Admixtures:
   a. Air Entraining Admixtures: ASTM C260.
   b. Water Reducing Admixtures: ASTM C494 Type A (Water Reducing).
      1) Type E (Water Reducing and Accelerating) may be used during cold weather and Type D (Water Reducing and Retarding) during hot weather with Engineer’s prior approval.

2) Type F (Water Reducing - High Range) or Type G (Water Reducing High Range and Retarding) admixtures (superplasticizers) may used be used with Engineer's prior approval.

c. Calcium chloride, thiocyanates, corrosive admixtures or admixtures containing more than 0.05% chloride ions (total) are not permitted.

3. DO NOT USE ANY OTHER ADMIXTURES WITHOUT AEPSC'S PRIOR WRITTEN APPROVAL.

D. Water: Potable; free from objectionable quantities of foreign materials harmful to concrete such as silt, organic matter, acids, alkali, salt and other deleterious substances.

E. Vapor Retarders: Sheet Vapor Retarder ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Xtreme 10 mil by Tex-Trude LP, 281-452-5961(www.tex-trude.com) or approved equivalent product by one of the following:
   a. Fortifiber Building Systems Group.
   b. Grace Construction Products; W.R. Grace & Co. -- Conn.
   c. Insulation Solutions, Inc.
   d. Poly-America, L.P.
   e. Raven Industries, Inc.
   f. Reef Industries, Inc.
   g. Stego Industries, LLC.
   h. W.R. Meadows, Inc.

F. Seam Tape: Xtreme Thin Tape, Xtreme Seam Tape or Xtreme GripBack Tape by Tex-Trude LP, 281-452-5961 (www.tex-trude.com), or seam tape compatible with approved equivalent vapor retarder.

G. Expansion Joint Filler Strips: ASTM D1751 non-extruding and resilient type, asphalt impregnated fiberboard or felt or ASTM D1752 closed cell foam with resiliency recovery of 95% if not compressed more than 50% of original thickness; 3/8" thick for interior and 1/2" thick for exterior unless shown otherwise.

H. Liquid Curing/Sealer Compound (Typical): ASTM C309 Type 1; approved by Asphalt and Vinyl Composition Tile Institute; 30% minimum solids content.

I. Sheet Curing Membranes: ASTM C171; absorptive mats, waterproof paper or polyethylene film.

2.2 CONCRETE MIXES

A. General Requirements:

1. Concrete Mixing: Follow ASTM C94. BATCH MIXING OF CONCRETE ON SITE IS NOT PERMITTED EXCEPT FOR MISCELLANEOUS MIXES.
2. Mixing Procedures: Follow ACI 301.
3. Handling and Weighing: Follow ACI 304.
4. Measure water, air entraining admixtures and water reducing admixtures by weight or volume. Measure all other materials by weight.
5. Provide admixtures for entrainment in concrete Work subject to vehicle abrasion or freeze - thaw cycles either during construction or afterwards. AIR ENTRAINED CEMENT IS NOT ACCEPTABLE.
6. Provide water reducing admixtures in all Classes of concrete Work.
7. No dry-packaged mixtures are allowed.
8. Provide fly ash as supplementary cementitious material in concrete Work. Fly ash content shall not exceed 25% of the cementitious material weight within a concrete batch.
9. Exposed concrete is to meet requirements for potentially destructive exposure.
10. Admixtures are to be added at batch plant.
11. Do not add water to mix on job unless previously approved by Owner's Engineer. Note amount of water added on delivery ticket.
12. Nominal maximum allowable slump of concrete (except for controlled density fill) is 4".
13. Follow Exhibit 03300 for water/cementitious ratio of concrete.
14. Provide minimum 3 day compressive strength of 1800 psi for concrete used for floors.

B. Concrete Properties and Proportions:

1. Provide concrete meeting the following properties and performance specifications

a. Cast-In-Place Concrete (Class 1)

F'c	4,000 psi (28-day compressive strength)
Portland Cement	ASTM C 150 Type I/II
Fly Ash	ASTM C 618 Class C (Maximum of 25% of cementitous material)
Water/Cementitious Material Ratio	0.60 Maximum
Slump	5" (+/- 1") measured from the discharge of the truck
Coarse Aggregate	1" maximum with gradation requirements prescribed in Table 2 of ASTM C33 Size No. 57
Air Entrainment	Air entrainment shall not be used for concrete with exposed steel troweled surfaces
Total Air Content	3% Maximum (by volume)
Concrete Temperature	95ºF Maximum

b. Drilled Piers (Class 2)

F'c	4,000 psi (28-day compressive strength)
Portland Cement	ASTM C 150 Type II
Fly Ash	ASTM C 618 Class C (Maximum of 25% of cementitous material)
Water/Cementitious Material Ratio	0.60 Maximum
Slump	7" (+/- 1") measured from the discharge of the truck
Coarse Aggregate	1" maximum with gradation requirements prescribed in Table 2 of ASTM C33 Size No. 57
Air Entrainment	Air entrainment shall not be used for concrete with exposed steel troweled surfaces
Total Air Content	3% Maximum (by volume)
Concrete Temperature	95ºF Maximum

c. Masonry Grout Fill (Class 3)

F'c	3,000 psi (28-day compressive strength)
Portland Cement	ASTM C 150 Type II
Fly Ash	ASTM C 618 Class C (Maximum of 25% of cementitous material)
Slump	8" to 11" measured from the discharge of the truck
Coarse Aggregate	3/8" maximum with gradation requirements prescribed in Table 2 of ASTM C33 Size No. 8

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine Site conditions and excavations for earth forms to verify that they are neatly and accurately cut and correctly located.

B. Examine formwork to verify that it is sound and correctly located, that conditions are proper for concrete installation and that excavations are sufficient to permit placement, inspection and removal of forms.

C. Examine reinforcement to verify requirements for concrete cover.

D. Examine areas of Work to be cast to determine that substrates are properly installed, required reinforcement, inserts and embedded items are in place and that correct finish top of cast elevations can be obtained.

1. Verify that conduit and piping is installed below slab. NO UTILITIES ARE TO BE BUILT INTO SLAB OR TOPPING.
2. Verify depths of depressed conditions are correct for specified delayed finishes. Slabs to receive finishes over 1/8" in thickness shall be depressed as required to allow for alignment with adjacent finish materials.
3. Verify base and sub-base slope correctly at floor drains. Slab thickness shall be maintained in sloped areas.

E. Do not start Work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Ensure availability of sufficient labor, equipment and materials to place concrete correctly following Project requirements and scheduled casting.

B. Notify Owner's Engineer at least 48 hours in advance of placing any concrete. Place concrete only when Owner's Engineer is present unless this requirement is specifically waived. Excavations must be inspected and approved by soils engineer.

C. Place no concrete before embedded items are in place and before forms, reinforcing and affected Work of other trades have been examined.

1. Coordinate placement of joint devices with erection of formwork and placement of form accessories.

D. Drill holes in previously poured concrete, insert steel dowels and pack solid with non-shrink grout in locations where new concrete is dowelled to existing Work including at bases and pads.

E. Immediately Before Placing Concrete:

1. Clean debris from forms, decks, base slabs, bottoms of forms, etc. to receive concrete.
2. Thoroughly wet base of slabs poured directly on earth, sand, stone, concrete or gravel.
3. Verify sizes and locations of openings required.
4. Secure approval of conditions from Owner's Engineer. Allow a minimum of 1 hour for Owner's Engineer's inspection after installation of reinforcing and before placing concrete.

3.3 ERECTION / INSTALLATION /APPLICATION

A. Follow ACI 301.

B. Place concrete only when Owner's Engineer is present unless this requirement is specifically waived by Owner's Engineer upon notice of scheduled pour.

C. Notify Owner's Engineer not less than 48 hours (excluding holidays and weekends) in advance of placing concrete.

D. Provide concrete of following various classes unless shown otherwise.

1. Class 1: Cast-In-Place Concrete
2. Class 2: Drilled Piers
3. Class 3: Masonry Grout Fill

E. Provide uniform slope at rate shown on structural foundation plans. Exterior walkways shall slope as indicated on Architectural plans.

F. Install vapor retarder under interior and exterior slabs, walks, bases and pads on grade.

1. Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Lay film directly on slab base just before setting reinforcing and pouring concrete slabs. Provide widest widths practical and oriented to obtain least lineal footage of joint.
3. Lap and seal joints. Lap film a minimum of 6" at joints with top lap placed in direction of spreading of concrete. Seal joints watertight by taping or applying sealant at overlapping edges and ends.
4. Carry film up walls, columns, etc. and secure in place with cement or tape. Fold and cement corners or otherwise make vaporproof.
5. Provide sealed contact with piping and other penetrating items. Cut film carefully around opening for pipes, ducts, conduit, wiring, etc. Tape film to insure maximum barrier effectiveness.
6. Exercise care so that film is not punctured. Seal joints, cuts, punctures, etc. with tape, cement or hot iron.
7. Trim exposed film at floor line after concrete has cured and hardened.
8. Repair vapor retarder damaged during placement of concrete reinforcing.

G. Provide sufficient workmen to allow for placement of concrete and other operations within time limits required in Article 1.07 herein.

H. Keep delivery carts and buggies on runways. Do not allow them to bear on reinforcing or uncured concrete.

I. Deposit concrete within 6 feet of its final location to avoid segregation due to rehandling or flowing. Do not drop concrete freely where reinforcing will cause segregation. Chuting procedure is subject to approval of Owner's Engineer. Maximum allowable drop is 5 feet. SPREADING WITH VIBRATORS IS PROHIBITED.

J. Place concrete quickly and vibrate thoroughly with a vibratory screed or other device approved by Owner's Engineer. Maintain specified position of mesh and reinforcement. Follow ACI 309 for use and type of vibrators.

K. Deposit concrete continuously, or when continuous placement is not possible, provide construction joints at locations approved by Owner's Engineer.

L. Do not deposit partially set concrete, retempered concrete or any concrete failing slump or air content tests.

M. Consolidate concrete by internal vibration to maximum practical density so that it is free from pockets of coarse aggregate and trapped air, fits tightly against subgrades, forms and embedded items and leaves smooth, dense surfaces.

N. Operate vibrators using experienced workers and where possible use same operators throughout Project. DO NOT USE VIBRATORS AGAINST FORMS OR REINFORCEMENT.

O. Finishes: Follow ACI 301 (Chapter 11). Perform finishing using only experienced, skilled workers.

1. Flatwork:
   a. Slab finish shall be as noted on structural foundation plans. Reference structural general notes for flatness requirements pertaining to surface finish.
   b. Detectable Warning Finish: For exterior handicapped curb cuts (ramp only not on flared sides), textured or imprinted concrete using rollers or aluminum tools to produce 0.9" diameter x 0.2" high (nominal) truncated domes at 2.35" on center following requirements of Americans With Disabilities Act (ADA).
2. Vertical and Miscellaneous Work:
   a. Exposed Surfaces: Smooth, Do Not Rub Cement Paste on Exposed Concrete Surfaces.
   b. Concealed Surfaces: Rough form finish.

P. Control (Contraction) Joints:

1. General Requirements:

a. Provide joints in walks, pads, slabs and toppings shown or specified.
b. Make joints approximately 1/8" wide and minimum depth of 1/4 slab thickness.
c. Locate as shown or as follows if not shown. Verify final locations with Owner's Engineer before proceeding.

2. Interior Locations:
a. Provide sawed control joints where shown or at maximum 20 feet on center in each direction in slabs and toppings if not shown.
b. Install sawed joints immediately after final finishing to depth of 1/4 slab thickness with Soff-Cut saw.
c. Saw control joints 1/8" wide unless otherwise approved. A construction joint may be located where sawed joint is required.

Q. Curing and Protection: Follow ACI 308.

1. Prevent excessive moisture loss from formed surfaces. Cure formed surfaces by moist-curing or application of curing compound for remainder of curing period if forms are removed before 7 days have elapsed.
2. Provide 1 application of liquid curing/sealer compound immediately after finishing of concrete on interior and exterior concrete slabs.
a. Exception #1: Floors scheduled to receive ceramic tile and quarry tile shall be sheet membrane/water (moist) cured for minimum of 10 days.
1) Begin water curing as soon as concrete has hardened sufficiently to prevent damage from water or cover material.
2) Water curing shall consist of ponding or with sprinkling, spraying or covering with wet burlap, sand or waterproof barrier such as polyethylene or building paper.
3) Maintain 100% coverage continuously over water cured slabs for minimum of 4 days for ponding and for 7 days for spraying and membrane curing.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test and inspect materials and operations as Work progresses. Failure to detect defective Work shall not prevent rejection when defect is discovered nor shall it obligate Owner for final acceptance.

B. Costs for any retesting resulting from Work found to be in non-compliance shall be paid for by Contractor.

C. Strength: ASTM C31, C39 and C172.

1. Conduct strength tests of all classes of concrete (except miscellaneous mixes).
2. Secure composite samples following ASTM C172. For strength tests, a sample shall be obtained from same batch of concrete on a representative, random basis. A sample consists of six specimens.
3. Mold and cure each sample following ASTM C31.
4. Test 1 specimen at 7 days, test 2 specimens at 28 days and 1 specimen at 56 days following ASTM C39. Results shall be average of strengths of 2 specimens, except that if 1 specimen in a test manifests evidence of improper sampling, molding or testing, it shall be discarded.
5. Record exact location of Work represented by each sample on test reports.
6. Provide a sample for each amount or fraction thereof of each class of concrete placed each day as follows:

a. 0-100 Cubic Yards: 1 Sampling of 4 Cylinders.

D. Air Content: ASTM C231.

E. Slump: ASTM C143.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Provide materials, methods and finishes for cleaning, patching and other repairs consistent with similar concrete Work in place, approved by Owner's Engineer before beginning repair Work and performed at Contractor's expense.

B. Repair any slabs which do not meet finish requirements performing all grinding, filling of cracks or patching and leveling procedures as required. Replace slabs which cannot be successfully repaired.

C. Point carefully around piping, conduit and other penetrations on both interior and exterior surfaces.

D. Obtain Owner's Engineer prior approval of any corrective measures for slabs which are dusting or showing other signs of improper curing. These may include additional applications of sealer or hardener, grinding or covering with coating or topping.

E. Remove from interior and exterior exposed surfaces any stain-producing elements such as pyrites, nails, wire, reinforcing steel and form ties immediately prior to final acceptance.

F. Remove stains completely. Use of weak acids or patented cleaners is acceptable but surface is to be completely neutralized after use.

G. Blend in surfaces of exposed repairs inconspicuously with surrounding surfaces.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect newly placed concrete from weather and construction traffic damage.

3.7 SPECIAL PROCEDURES

A. It is Project intent to continue concrete Work required to keep Project on schedule throughout summer and winter.

B. Hot Weather Concreting:

1. Follow ACI 305R.
2. Obtain approval to use a retarder in concrete.
3. Temperature of concrete shall not exceed 95oF.
4. Cool water and aggregate to lower temperature of concrete.
5. Cool subgrade and forms by sprinklering with water immediately before placing.
6. Schedule trucks to reduce waiting time at Site.
7. Cure immediately after finishing.

C. Replace any concrete injured or destroyed by reason of freezing, hot or cold weather at Contractor's own expense including cost of replacing any Work embedded in concrete.

END OF SECTION 03300

SECTION 04200 - UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

Extent of each type of masonry work is indicated on drawings and schedule.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:

Field Constructed Mock Ups: Prior to installation of masonry work, erect sample wall representative of completed masonry work required for project with respect to qualities of appearance, materials and construction. Locate mock-ups on site in locations indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Retain mock-ups during construction as standard for judging completed masonry work. For the following types of masonry, build mock-ups which are approximately 4' long by 4' high by full thickness including back-up wythes. When directed, demolish mock-up and remove from site.

Each type of exposed unit masonry work.

SUBMITTALS:

Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data for each type of masonry unit, accessory, and other manufactured products, including certifications each type complies with specified requirements.

Samples: Submit, for verification purposes, samples of each exposed masonry unit and colored masonry mortar, if any. Include in each set of samples the full range of exposed colors and textures to be expected in completed work.

JOB CONDITIONS:
Protection of Work: During erection, cover top of walls with heavy waterproof sheeting at end of each days' work. Cover partially completed structures when work is not in progress.

Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.

Do not apply uniform floor or roof loading for at least 12 hours after building masonry walls or columns.

Do not apply concentrated loads for at least 3 days after building masonry walls or columns.

Staining: Prevent grout or mortar or soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Remove immediately grout or mortar in contact with such masonry.

Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter by means of coverings spread on ground and over wall surface.

Protect sills, ledges and projections from droppings of mortar.

Cold Weather Protection:

Do not lay masonry units which are wet or frozen or when temperature is 45 Degrees F and falling.

Protect completed masonry and masonry not being worked on in the following manner. Temperature ranges indicated apply to mean daily air temperatures except for grouted masonry. For grouted masonry temperature ranges apply to anticipated minimum night temperatures.

40 F (4 deg. C) to 32 deg. F (0 deg. C):

Protect masonry from rain or snow for at least 24 hours by covering with weather-resistive membrane.

32 F (0 deg. C) to 20 deg. F (-7 deg. C):

Completely cover masonry with weather-resistive insulating blankets or similar protection for at least 24 hours, 48 hours for grouted masonry.

20 deg. F (-7 deg. C) and below:

Except as otherwise indicated, maintain masonry temperature above 32 F (0 deg) for 24 hours using enclosures and supplementary heat, electric heating blankets, infrared lamps or other methods proven to be satisfactory. For grouted masonry maintain heated enclosure to 40 deg. F (4 deg. C) for 48 hours.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:
Acme Brick
Forterra – Texas Collection

MASONRY UNITS, GENERAL:
Manufacturer, obtain masonry units from one manufacturer, of uniform texture and color for each kind required, for each continuous area and visually related areas. All units shall be made in the USA.

Masonry Unit Characteristics: Provide units complying with standards referenced and requirements indicated.

Manufacturer, obtain masonry units from one manufacturer, of uniform texture and color for each kind required, for each continuous area and visually related areas. All units shall be made in the USA.

Masonry Unit Characteristics: Provide units complying with standards referenced and requirements indicated.

BRICK:
Size: Unless otherwise indicated, provide bricks manufactured to the following actual dimensions:

Basis of Design: Forterra Brick
Modular Size, Velour Texture – 3-5/8" x 2-1/4" x 7-5/8" - allow up to three (3) brick types.
Color: V-140 (Red) Field Brick
V-240 (Grey) Accent Brick #1
V-500 (dark grey) Accent Brick #2

Provide special molded shapes where indicated and for application requiring brick of form, size and finish on exposed surfaces which cannot be produced from standard brick sizes by sawing.

For sills, caps and similar applications resulting in exposure of brick surfaces which otherwise would be concealed from view, provide un-cored or un-frogged units with all exposed surfaces finished.

Facing Brick (FogBrk): U.S. Made ASTM C 216, and as follows:

Grade SW

Grade MW, except Grade SW, where indicated by ASTM C 216 grade requirements for applicable weathering index and exposure.

Type FBS (normal size and color variations)

Application: Use where brick is exposed, unless otherwise indicated.

Texture and Color:
Two colors
Little range, no blends.

CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS (CMU):
Size: U. S. Made. Manufacturer's standard units with nominal face dimensions of 16" long x 8" (15-5/8" x 7-5/8" actual), unless otherwise indicated.

GROUND-FACE CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

A. Ground-face concrete masonry units shall be made from natural and manufactured aggregates, cement and color. All of these materials are derived from nature and will vary in uniformity of size, shape, and texture and particle color. The manufacturer shall exercise reasonable care in the manufacturing process to minimize these variations in size, shape, texture and particle color so that completed product will match approved samples and mockup. Some variation in color and texture will be acceptable to the extent the approved samples and mockup exhibit variation. Edge and corner chips will be acceptable to the extent ASTM C90, paragraph 7.2.1 allows chips and cracks.
B. Basis of Design: Provide Hill Country Stone as manufactured by Featherlite Building Products, 508 McNeil Road, Round Rock, Texas 78681 (512) 255-2573.

1. All ground faces shall have a factory-applied coating of clear, VOC-compliant acrylic sealer.
2. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sash, control joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
3. Provide bull-nose/square-edged/chamfered units for outside corners, as indicated on plans.
4. All ground-face units shall be manufactured with integral water repellent “Dry-Block” as manufactured by Grace Construction Products.
5. Comply with ASTM C90 or C 129 and as follows:
   a. Unit compressive strength:
      1) ASTM C90 1,900 psi
      2) ASTM C129 600 psi
   b. Weight classification: light weight or medium weight depending on color selection.
   c. Size: Manufactured to the dimensions indicated on drawings within tolerances specified in ASTM C90, except that grinding removes approximately 1/16” additional per face.
   d. Finish: Exposed faces of ground-face units shall match color, pattern, and texture of architect’s submittal selection.

C. Ground-face Concrete Masonry Cleaner: Clean ground-face masonry using Burnished Custom Masonry Cleaner as manufactured by ProSoCo, Inc. Follow ProSoCo’s product data instructions for proper application. No other cleaning agents may be used without specific written approval of Architect.

MORTAR MATERIALS:
Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I. Provide natural color or as required to produce required mortar color.

MASONRY CEMENT: ASTM C91

Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.

Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144, except for joints less than 1/4" use aggregate graded with 100% passing the No. 16 sieve.

Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.

Water: Clean and potable.

MASONRY ACCESSORIES:
Horizontal Joint Reinforcing and Ties for Masonry:

Provide welded wire units prefabricated in straight lengths of not less than 10', with matching corner ("L") and intersecting ("T") units. Fabricate from cold-drawn steel wire complying with ASTM A 82, with deformed continuous side rods and plain cross rods, into units with widths of approximately 2" less than nominal width of walls and partitions

as required to position side rods for full embedment in mortar with mortar coverage of not less than 5/8" on joint faces exposed to exterior and not less than 1/2" elsewhere. Provide the following type of joint reinforcing unless otherwise indicated.

Coated or corrosion-resistant metal meeting or exceeding applicable standard:

Zinc-coating flat metal: ASTM A153
Zinc-coating of wire: Hot Dipped Galvanized
Provide job fabricated corner sections for all type of reinforcement.

Types: Wire Mesh:
Minimum Gage: 20
Mesh: 1/2 inch
Galvanized Wire:
Width: 1 inch less than width of masonry

Wall Reinforcement:
Wire Gage: 9 gage (side and cross rods) cross rods not more than 16" o.c.
Types: Truss
Provide with "V" drip.

Anchors and Ties:

Provide straps, bars, bolts and rods fabricated from 1/4" diameter rod stock, unless otherwise indicated
Paint all welds with red primer.

Flexible Anchors: Where masonry is indicated to be anchored to structural framework with flexible anchors, provide 2-piece anchors which will permit horizontal and vertical movement of masonry but will provide lateral restraint.

Adjustable Wire Anchors:

Wire Anchors: Hohmann & Barnard 14 ga. DW-10 with Hot dipped Galvanized Finish

Wire: All wire to meet ASTM A82 for steel wire.

Triangular Wire Loops: Vee Byna-Tie 3/16” Diam (Standard). Length as on drawings or as required by manufacturer for proper anchoring.

For interior work, including devices which extend only into interior wythes of exterior masonry, fabricate from steel with mill galvanized.

For devices which extend into exterior wythe, fabricate from steel with hot-dip galvanized coating, ASTM A 153, Class B-2.

Flashings for Masonry:
Provide concealed flashing, where noted on construction documents.

Virgin polyvinyl chloride with plasticizers and other modifiers, formed into uniform flexible sheets not less than 40-mils thick and black in color, unless otherwise indicated.
Henry – Blueskin TWF
Grace - Vycor

MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES:
Reinforcing Bars: Deformed steel, ASTM A 615, Grade 60 for bars No3" x 3" x “10. 3 to No. 18.

Bond Breaker Strips: 15-lb. Asphalt roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, or 15-lb, coal-tar roofing felt complying with ASTM D 227.

Pre-molded Control Joint Strips: Solid rubber strips with a Shore A durometer hardness of 60 to 80, designed to fit standard sash block and maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

Plastic Weep holes: Equal to Hohmann & Barnard QV-Quadro-Vent – Clear.

Mortar Net – Equal to Hohmann & Barnard 1” thick Mortar Trap Mesh.

MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES:
Do not lower the freezing point of mortar by use of admixtures or anti-freeze agents.

Masonry Cement - Must comply with ASTM C91.

Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, for types of mortar required, unless otherwise indicated.

Use Type S mortar for reinforced masonry and where indicated.

Use Type N mortar for exterior, above grade load bearing and non-load bearing walls; for interior load bearing walls; and for other applications where another type is not indicated.

Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476 for grout for use in construction of reinforced and non-reinforced unit masonry. Use grout of consistency indicated or if not otherwise indicated, of consistency (fine or coarse) at time of placement which will completely fill all spaces intended to receive grout.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

INSTALLATION, GENERAL:
Thickness: Build masonry construction to the full thickness shown, except, build single-wythe walls (if any) to the actual thickness of the masonry units, using units of nominal thickness shown or specified.

Build chases and recesses as shown and as required for the work of other trades. Provide not less than 8” of masonry between chase or recess and jamb of openings, and between adjacent chases and recesses.

Cut masonry units with motor-driven saws to provide clean, sharp, un-chipped edges. Cut units as required to provide pattern shown and to fit adjoining work neatly. Use full units without cutting where possible. Use dry cutting saws to cut concrete masonry units.

Chipped block shall not be used where visible.

Do not wet concrete masonry units.

Pattern Bond: Lay exposed masonry in the bond pattern shown, or if not on, lay in running bond vertical joint in each course centered on units in courses above and below. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe bonded by lapping not less than 2". Bond and unlock each course of each wythe at corners, unless otherwise shown.

Layout walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns, with uniform joint widths and to accurately locate openings, movement-type joints, returns and offsets. Avoid the use of less-than-half size units at corners, jambs and wherever possible at other locations.

Lay-up walls plumb and with courses level, accurately spaced and coordinated with other work.

Lay-up walls: Lay up walls with the good side of the units towards the hallways or larger walls.

Stopping and Resuming Work: Rack back 1/2-masonry unit length in each course; do not tooth. Clean exposed surfaces of set masonry, wet units lightly (if required) and remove loose masonry units and mortar prior to laying fresh masonry.

Built-In Work: As the work progresses, build-in items specified under this and other sections of these specifications. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.

Fill space between hollow metal frames and masonry solidly with mortar.

Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.

Fill CMU cores with grout 3 courses (24") under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts and similar conditions, unless otherwise indicated.

Intersecting Load bearing Walls: If carried up separately, block vertical joint with 8" maximum offsets and provide rigid steel anchors spaced not more than 4'-0" o.c. vertically, or omit blocking and provide rigid steel anchors at not more than 2'-0" o.c. vertically. Form anchors of galvanized steel not less than 1-1/2" x 1/4" x 2'-0" long with ends turned up not less than 2" or with cross-pins. If used with hollow masonry units, embed ends in mortar filled cores.

Non-Load bearing Interior Partition Walls: Build full height of story to underside of solid structure above, unless otherwise indicated.

MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING:
Lay brick and solid concrete masonry units with completely filled bed, head and collar joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not slush head joints.

Lay hollow concrete masonry units with full mortar coverage on horizontal and vertical face shells. Bed webs in mortar in starting course on footings and foundation walls and in all courses of piers, columns and pilasters, and where adjacent to cells or cavities to be reinforced or filled with concrete or grout. For starting course on footings where cells are not grouted, spread out full mortar bed including areas under cells.

Joints: Maintain joint widths shown, except for minor variations required to maintain bond alignment. If not otherwise indicated, lay walls with 3/8" joints.

Cut joints flush for masonry walls which are to be concealed or to be covered by other materials.

Tool horizontal joints with a 2'-0" or 3'-0" sledge runner. All joints to be uniform.

Tool exposed joints slightly concave using a jointer larger than joint thickness. Tool horizontal joint with a 2' - 3' sledge runner, all joints shall be uniform. Rake out mortar in preparation for application of caulking or sealants where shown.

Remove masonry units disturbed after laying; clean and relay in fresh mortar. Do not pound corners at jambs to fit stretcher units which have been set in position. If adjustments are required, remove units, clean off mortar, and reset in fresh mortar.

CAVITY WALLS:
Keep cavity clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Strike joints facing cavity, flush.

Tie exterior wythe to back with continuous horizontal joint reinforcing embedded in mortar joints at not more than 16" o.c. vertically.

Provide weep holes in exterior wythe of cavity, composite and veneer walls located immediately above ledges and flashing, spaced 2' -0 " o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

HORIZONTAL JOINT REINFORCING:
Provide continuous horizontal joint reinforcing as shown and specified. Fully embed longitudinal side rods in mortar for their entire length with a minimum cover of 5/8" on exterior side of walls, 1/2" at other locations. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6".

Do not bridge control and expansion joints with reinforcing, unless otherwise indicated. Provide continuity at corners and wall intersections by use of job fabricated "L" and "T" sections. Cut and bend units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures and other special conditions.

Space continuous horizontal reinforcement as follows:

For multi-wythe walls (solid or cavity) where continuous horizontal reinforcing acts as structural bond or tie between wythe, space reinforcing as required by code but not less than 16" o.c. vertically.

For single-wythe walls, space reinforcing at 16" o.c. vertically, unless otherwise indicated.

Reinforce masonry openings greater than 1'-0" wide, with horizontal joint reinforcement placed in 2 horizontal joints approximately 8" apart, immediately above the lintel and immediately below the sill. Extend reinforcement a minimum of 2'-0" beyond jambs of the opening, bridging control joints, where provided.

ANCHORING MASONRY WORK:

Provide anchor devices of type indicated. If not indicated, provide standard type for facing and back-up involved.

Anchor masonry to structural members where masonry abuts or faces structural members to comply with the following:

Provide an open space not less than 1” in width between masonry and structural member, unless otherwise indicated.
Keep open space free of mortar or other rigid materials.

Anchor masonry to structural members with metal ties embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure. Provide anchors with flexible ties sections, unless otherwise indicated.

Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24” o.c. vertically and 36" o.c. horizontally.

Anchor single wythe masonry veneer to backing with metal ties as follows:

Anchor veneer to structural members with metal anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure. Provide anchors with flexible tie section, unless otherwise indicated.

Space veneer anchors as shown, or if not shown, space not more than 16" o.c. vertically and 24" o.c. horizontally. Provide additional anchors within 1 - 0" of openings and space not more than 3 - 0" around perimeter.

LINTELS:
Install loose lintels of hot-dipped galvanized steel and other materials where shown.

Provide masonry lintels where shown and wherever openings of more than 1' 0" are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels. Provide precast or formed-in-place masonry lintels. Thoroughly cure precast lintels before handling and installation. Temporarily support formed in place lintels.

For hollow concrete masonry unit walls, use specially formed "U" shaped lintel units with reinforcing bars placed as shown and filled with grout of consistency required to completely fill space between reinforcing bars and masonry unit.

Provide minimum bearing at each jamb, of 4" for openings less than 6' 0" wide, and 8" for wider openings.

CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS:
Provide vertical and horizontal expansion, control and isolation joints in masonry where shown. Build-in related masonry accessory items as the masonry work progresses. Space joints a maximum of 20 feet (exterior walls) and 30 feet (interior walls) unless otherwise shown on Drawings.

See Division 7 Sections for "Joint Sealers".

Build in joint fillers where shown, specified in a Division 7 section "Joint Sealers". Joint width for sealants: 3/8" unless otherwise indicated.

FLASHING OF MASONRY WORK:
Provide concealed flashings in masonry work at, or above, all shelf angles, lintels, ledges and other obstructions to the downward flow of water in the wall so as to divert

such water to the exterior. Prepare masonry surfaces smooth and free from projections which could puncture flashing. Place through-wall flashing on bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Seal penetrations in flashing with mastic before covering with mortar.

Extend flashings the full length of lintels and shelf angles and minimum of 4” into masonry each end. Extend flashing from a line 1/2" in from exterior face of outer wythe of masonry, through the outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 4", and through the inner wythe to within 1/2" of the interior face of the wall in exposed work. Where interior surface of inner wythe is concealed by furring, carry flashing completely through the inner wythe and turn up approximately 2". At heads and sills turn up ends not less than 2" to form a pan.

Provide weep holes in the head joints of the same course of masonry bedded in the flashing mortar.

Interlock end joints of deformed metal flashings by overlapping deformations not less than 1-1/2" and seal lap with elastic sealant.

Install flashing in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related work where shown to be built into masonry work.

REPAIR, POINTING AND CLEANING:
Remove and replace masonry units which are loose, chipped, broken, stained or otherwise damaged, or if units do not match adjoining units as intended.

Provide new units to match adjoining units and install in fresh mortar or grout, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.

Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge any voids or holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point-up all joints including corners, openings and adjacent work to provide a neat, uniform appearance, prepared for application of caulking or sealant compounds.

Clean exposed brick masonry surfaces by the bucket and brush hand cleaning method or by high pressure water method. Comply with requirements of BIA Techanical Notes No. 20 "Cleaning Brick Masonry."

Use commercial cleaning agents in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.

Clean exposed CMU masonry by dry brushing at the end of each day's work and after final pointing to remove mortar spots and droppings. Comply with recommendations in NCMA TECK Bulletin No. 28.

END OF SECTION 04200

SECTION 04220 − CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Concrete masonry units, lintels, mortar and other related accessories.

1.2 PRODUCTS INSTALLED BUT NOT FURNISHED UNDER THIS SECTION

A. Reinforcing steel.

B. Masonry accessories.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 03200 – Concrete Reinforcement

B. Section 03300 – Cast-In-Place Concrete

1.4 REFERENCES

A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):

1. 530, Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures.
2. 530.1, Specifications for Masonry Structures.

B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

1. C33, Concrete Aggregates.
2. C90, Load-Bearing Concrete Masonry Units.
3. C140, Methods of Testing Concrete Masonry Units.
4. C150, Portland Cement.
5. C331, Lightweight Aggregates for Concrete Masonry Units.
6. C618, Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use as a Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete.

C. Portland Cement Association (PCA): Recommended Practices For Laying Concrete Block.

1.5 DEFINITIONS

A. Concealed: For Work required under this Section, the term "concealed" will mean "not exposed to view in finished construction."

B. Exposed: For Work required under this Section, the term "exposed" will mean "exposed to view in finished construction."

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit: Provide electronic (PDF) copies of all required submittal information.

1. Provide independent test reports following ASTM C140 for sampling and testing of CMU. Test reports shall be dated within six months of start of project. Test reports shall include net area compressive strength, absorption and density results, average width, height and length of each unit, minimum face shell thickness, average face shell thickness, minimum web thickness, average web thickness, and all other test reporting requirements as noted in ASTM C140.
2. Color samples for precolored units.
3. Masonry unit assembly components such as horizontal wire reinforcement, control joint material and masonry veneer ties.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Follow ACI 530 and 530.1.

B. Maintain 1 copy of each referenced document at Site.

C. Manufacturer: Current NCMA member.

D. Provide units from single manufacturing source to ensure uniform texture for continuous and visually related areas.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver to Site only units properly cured and following these specifications.

B. Protect masonry units from damage and against moisture and weather, particularly against freezing and thawing. Maintain hollow concrete masonry units in their initial dry state until after they are laid up in wall.

C. Stack masonry units in dry place, off ground on prepared plank platform and in manner to promote circulation of air through and around block. Protect stacked block by shed roof or tarpaulin arranged to allow for circulation of air around and above stacked block.

D. Carefully handle masonry units. Do not build units into Work with chipped edges, spalls or other damage to their appearance which would show in finished wall.

E. Do not store adjacent to materials which can cause staining or discoloration.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Do not erect masonry when, in Owner's Engineer's opinion, atmospheric conditions or limited facilities prevent proper setting, bonding and curing.

B. Protect tops of masonry walls against weather. Use strong, non-staining waterproof membrane secured with metal masonry wall clamps or properly weighted down. Maintain this protection during construction of walls and after their completion, properly anchored, repaired and replaced until tops of walls are covered by Work of others.

C. Leave necessary openings for passage of pipes, drains, ducts, wires and utility lines. Form chases shown, required or directed. Return and solidly close all openings at completion of Work of other trades. Remove rubbish and sweep out area before closing up any pipe chase, duct space or similar limited access or inaccessible area.

D. Coordinate with other trades and make provisions that will permit installation of their Work in manner to avoid cutting and patching. Build in items furnished by other trades as Work progresses.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150 Type 1.

B. Lime: ASTM C207 Type S.

C. Pozzolans: ASTM C618.

D. Aggregates: ASTM D33 normal weight or ASTM C331 lightweight. Provide either normal, medium or light weight units unless shown otherwise.

E. Mortar: Type S, following ASTM C270 Unit Proportion Requirements using preblended masonry cement.

F. Integral Water Repellent: ASTM E514 Class E.

1. Approved Product: Grace Construction Products' "Dry-Block" admixture.

G. Integral Color: Integral color pigment mixed with cement and aggregates during fabrication to match local licensee's color selection(s).

2.2 CONCRETE BLOCK

A. Hollow Units: ASTM C90 Type I; 1900 psi minimum compressive strength (net).

2.3 FABRICATION:

A. Follow ACI and NCMA.

B. Provide the following finishes and colors:

1. Exterior Concrete Block: Manufacturer's regular (smooth) molded finish and precolored during fabrication.

C. Provide integral water repellent in all exterior concrete block and exterior split face block units.

D. Provide concrete masonry units with modular dimension; standard units 7-5/8" high, 1'-3-5/8" long and 3/8" less nominal widths or thicknesses shown or required, with permissible variation of 1/16".

E. Provide special units for 90° corners, bond beams, bullnosed corners, control joint fillers, etc. shown or required.

F. Cure units minimum 14 days in presence of moist air following ASTM C426.

1. Provide block properly cured to 30% of maximum absorption. Questionable block will be tested and shipment rejected if average moisture content is found to exceed specification limits.
2. Do not build in block with moisture content exceeding specification requirements into Work. Dry block containing excess moisture to acceptable maximum either by further air drying or use of heat before being used.
3. No extension of time for completion will be allowed due to delay cause by failure of Contractor to maintain stored block at acceptable moisture content.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive Work.

B. Inspect materials for defects before starting installation.

C. Reject any chipped or broken block. DO NOT BUILD DAMAGED UNITS INTO WORK.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Direct and coordinate placement of metal anchors supplied to other sections.

B. Provide temporary bracing during installation of masonry Work. Maintain in place until building structure provides permanent bracing.

3.3 ERECTION / INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

A. Follow ACI and NCMA.

B. See Sections under which materials to be installed are furnished for additional installation requirements.

C. Use thoroughly dry concrete block with sharp, square, unbroken corners and edges and no cracks. DO NOT WET MASONRY UNITS.

D. Take special care in handling and storage of units for exposed block Work. Do not install chipped or marred block where exposed.

E. Lay block in running bond with each course lapping block below by 1/2 block unless shown otherwise.

F. Lay solid block units with full mortar coverage on head and bed joints and hollow block units with face shell bedding on head and bed joints. Mortar hollow block unit web joints in load bearing piers or pilasters, in starting course on footings or solid foundation walls and next to cores grouted solid.

1. Do not shift or tap masonry after mortar has achieved initial set. Remove mortar and replace where adjustments must be made.
2. Buttering corners of joints or excessive furring of mortar joints are not permitted.

G. Build walls and partitions true to dimension, plumb and square, laid to line in level courses, accurately spaced and coordinated with other Work. Keep individual face units "in plane" with walls rising together. Use double lines in multiple-tier walls with each tier plumb and all units "in plane."

H. Lay out Work to avoid fractional pieces. Interlock external corners. Set partitions on structural floor slabs before finish floor is laid unless shown otherwise.

I. Perform required cutting with power equipment which will produce true, straight, clean edges free of chipping and undamaged surfaces. CUTTING WITH HAMMER AND CHISEL WILL NOT BE PERMITTED. Use 100% solid block where webs would be exposed. Minimum length of cut units on exposed Work shall be 1/2 unit.

J. Cut units accurately to fit around pipes, ducts, openings, structural framing, etc. and slush voids full.

K. Take particular care to embed conduits and pipes within block without fracturing exposed shells and to fit units around switch, receptacle and other boxes set in walls. Grind and cut units before building in service where electric conduit, outlets, switch boxes and similar items occur.

L. Fill voids and joints between block and different types of materials with mortar.

M. Make joints approx. 3/8" wide. Line up joints vertically. Remove burrs with burlap or carpet after tooling.

N. Neatly tool interior and exterior joints below grade and in exposed masonry firm to slightly concave profile when mortar is thumbprint hard unless shown otherwise. Cut off flush and brush off surplus as Work progresses. Tool vertically then horizontally. Furnish all masons with joint tools of same diameter. Exception: Strike flush interior concealed joints (such as in chases and plenums) or those covered with directly applied finish materials.

O. Install vertical and horizontal masonry reinforcing where shown. Grout cores solid full length of reinforcing with masonry core grout specified in Section 03300. Maintain position of reinforcing within 1/2" of dimensioned position.

P. Fill voids receiving anchor bolts, wedge anchors, expansion bolts, etc. solid with masonry grout specified under Section 03300.

Q. Provide solid masonry bearing surface under lintels, beams, bearing plates, etc. as shown. Provide the following minimum solid bearing (as applicable) if not shown:

1. Lintels: Solid masonry bearing for full thickness of wall by length of bearing plus 8" by 8" high.
2. Beams: Solid masonry bearing for full thickness of wall by length of bearing plus 1'-4" by 2 ft high.

R. Provide solid masonry for course directly below corbelled masonry walls. Max corbel for each course is 1".

S. Provide closure, lintels, bond beams, jamb units, sash, corners headers and other special shapes shown or required. Provide standard manufactured sizes or cut full size block for fractional course heights and lengths. Provide sash blocks or other shapes designed to receive specified control joint filler strips.

T. Provide bullnosed units at exterior corners unless shown otherwise. Field grind to Owner's Engineer's satisfaction all external corners not installed bullnosed.

1. Exception: Provide square cornered blocks at window jambs.

U. Step back unfinished Work for joining with new Work. Toothing will not be permitted unless specifically approved by Owner's Engineer. Remove loose masonry and mortar and clean thoroughly before new Work is started.

V. Build in chases, openings, reinforcement, anchors, access doors, lintels, flashings and other items required. Provide centering required to properly support masonry until mortar attains design strength. Build in sleeves except where shown to be installed in other Sections.

W. Build hollow metal door frames into wall. Plumb and brace. Thoroughly embed frame anchors. Slush frame jambs full with mortar. Allow 1/4" for caulking around frame in exterior walls and 1/8" on interior unless shown otherwise. Rake out joints for caulking.

X. Fill masonry units solid with mortar 2 cores wide at each door jamb and 1 core wide at each window jamb for full height of opening.

Y. Hold block down approximately 2" below roof structural members such as beams, joists and roof deck subject to deflection at non-bearing walls.

Z. Provide control and expansion joints in all block Work. Reference Architectural Contract Drawings for masonry joint locations. Joints spacing shall not exceed 22 ft. on center nor shall a joint be located within two feet of an opening.

AA. Build in control joint filler strips in control joints as masonry is laid up allowing for caulking on each side of wall. Reference architectural for caulking material. Exception: Do not carry horizontal joint reinforcement through control or expansion joints.

BB. Maintain lateral support of intersecting masonry non- load bearing walls with wire mesh ties placed across joint between walls and spaced 1'-4" on center vertically.

CC. Install concealed masonry flashing where shown. Provide clean smooth surfaces set in full mortar bed and cover with full mortar bed. Seal penetrations and joints with mastic.

DD. Build in exposed sheet metal flashing, expansion joints and reglets occurring in masonry. Cut out mortar joint and set flashing or reglet in new mortar bed in existing construction.

EE. Build in bond beams grouting full and carefully position reinforcing where shown. Lap rebars a minimum length of 48 bar diameters. Field modify standard units required to receive required reinforcing where bond beam units are not available in specified finish.

FF. Any masonry Work found deficient in respect to these specifications will require entire wall to be removed and relayed at Contractor's expense.

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation From Unit to Adjacent Unit: 1/32".

B. Maximum Variation From Plane of Wall: 1/4" in 10 feet and 1/2" in 20 feet or more.

C. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/4" per story non-cumulative; 1/2" in 2 stories or more.

D. Maximum Variation From Level Coursing: 1/8" in 3 feet, 1/4" in 10 feet and 1/2" in 30 feet.

E. Maximum Variation From Joint Thickness: 1/8" in 3 feet.

F. Maximum Variation From Cross Sectional Thickness of Walls: 1/4".

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Replace any masonry units which are loose or damaged and repair defective mortar joints. Make these repairs such that evidence of repair is not apparent.

B. Remove surplus mortar, drippings, splatter, etc. from exterior and interior masonry as Work progresses.

C. Clean, point & dry brush all exposed Work at end of each working day. Fill holes from line pins and nails.

D. Point joints to provide a neat uniform appearance. Cut out unrepairable defective joints. Fill solidly with mortar and tool to match adjacent Work. DO NOT CORRECT IMPERFECTIONS WITH SPACKLE.

E. Thoroughly rub out exposed Work to remove any projections. Fill indentations flush with surface.

F. Clean masonry surfaces upon completion from top down with water and fiber brushes to remove stains. ACID CLEANING OF MASONRY IS NOT PERMITTED.

END OF SECTION 04220

SECTION 05040 − HOT-DIP GALVANIZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Hot-dip galvanizing of iron and steel materials

1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Steel materials, fabrications and assemblies are specified to be furnished and installed in various other sections

1.3 REFERENCES

A. Publications

1. American Galvanizers Association (AGA):

a. Inspection of Products Hot-dip Galvanized After Fabrication
b. The Design of Products to be Hot-dip Galvanized After Fabrication
c. Recommended Details of Galvanized Structures
d. Quality Assurance Manual

2. Research Council on Structural Connections of the Engineering Foundation:

a. Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 bolts.

B. Reference standards

1. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

a. A 123 / A 123M Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
b. A 143 Practice for Safeguarding Against Embrittlement of Hot-Dip Galvanized Structural Steel Products and Procedure for Detecting Embrittlement
c. A 153 / A 153M Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
d. A 384 Practice for Safeguarding Against Warpage and Distortion During Hot-Dip Galvanizing of Steel Assemblies
e. A 385 Practice for Providing High-Quality Zinc Coatings (Hot-Dip)
f. A 767 / A 767M Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
g. A 780 Repair of Damaged Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings
h. B 6 Specification for Zinc
i. D 6386 Practice for Preparation of Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coated Iron and Steel Product and Hardware Surfaces for Painting
j. E 376 Practice for Measuring Coating Thickness by Magnetic-Field or Eddy-Current (Electromagnetic) Test Methods

2. Federal specifications

a. DOD-P-21035 Paint, High Zinc Dust Content, Galvanizing Repair
b. MIL-P-26915 Primer Coating, Zinc Dust Pigmented

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Coating applicator: Company specializing in hot-dip galvanizing after fabrication and following the procedures in the Quality Assurance Manual of the American Galvanizers Association.

B. Coordination Between Fabricator and Galvanizer: Prior to fabrication, fabricators shall submit approved fabrication shop drawings to the galvanizer. The Galvanizer shall review fabricator's shop drawings for suitability of materials for galvanizing and coatings and coordinate any required fabrication modifications.

C. Materials: For steel to be hot-dip galvanized, provide steel chemically suitable for metal coatings complying with the following requirements: carbon below 0.25%, phosphorous below 0.04%, manganese below 1.3%, and silicon below 0.04%. Notify the galvanizer if steel does not meet these requirements so that suitability for galvanizing may be determined and whether special processing techniques are required.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING

A. Load and store galvanized articles in accordance with accepted industry standards.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE COATING APPLICATORS

A. Members of the AGA or equal approved by the architect and/or engineer.

2.2 STEEL MATERIALS

A. Material for galvanizing to be geometrically suitable for galvanizing as described in ASTM A 384 and A 385. Steel materials suitable for galvanizing include structural shapes, pipe, sheet, fabrications and assemblies.

B. Recommended steel materials for hot-dip galvanizing include but are not limited to:

1. Structural shapes and plates: ASTM A 36, A 242 type 2, A 283, A 441, A 500, A 501, A 529, A 572, A 588 and A 992.
2. Steel for fasteners:

General Category	Bolt Material	Nut Material
Carbon Steel	A 307 Gr A or B	A 563 Gr A
High-strength	A 325 Type 1	A 563 Gr DH
Tower Bolts	A 394	A 563 Gr A
Quenched & Tempered (*Carbon Steel Bolts*)	A 499	A 563 Gr C
Quenched & Tempered (Alloy Steel Bolts)	A 354 Gr BC	A 563 Gr DH

3. Steel for sheet metal articles: ASTM A 569 or A 570.
4. Steel for pipe or tubing: ASTM A 53, A 120 or A 595, Gr A or B.

2.3 FABRICATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Fabricate structural steel in accordance with Class I, II, III guidelines as described in AGA's Recommended Details for Galvanized Structures.

B. Fabrication practices for products to be in accordance with the applicable portions of ASTM A 143, A 384, and A 385, except as specified herein. Avoid fabrication techniques that could cause steel distortion or embrittlement.

C. The fabricator shall consult with architect/engineer and hot-dip galvanizer regarding potential concerns, including handling issues, during the galvanizing process that may require design modification before fabrication proceeds.

D. Remove all welding slag, splatter, anti-splatter compounds and burrs prior to delivery for galvanizing.

E. Provide holes and/or lifting lugs to allow for handling during galvanizing.

F. Avoid unsuitable marking paints. Consult with the galvanizer about removal of grease, oil, paint and other deleterious material prior to fabrication.

G. Remove by blast-cleaning, or other methods, surface contaminants and coatings that are not removable by the normal chemical cleaning process in the galvanizing operation.

H. Whenever possible, slip joints should be used to minimize field welding of material.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. Pre-clean steel work in accordance with accepted methods to produce an acceptable surface for quality hot-dip galvanizing.

3.2 COATING APPLICATION

A. Galvanize steel members, fabrications and assemblies after fabrication by the hot-dip process in accordance with ASTM A 123 / 123M.

B. Galvanize bolts, nuts, washers and iron and steel hardware components in accordance with ASTM A 153 / 153M.

C. Safeguard products against steel embrittlement in conformance with ASTM A 143.

D. Galvanize reinforcing steel in accordance with ASTM A 767.

E. Handle all articles to be galvanized in such a manner as to avoid any mechanical damage and to minimize distortion.

3.3 COATING REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to paragraph 6.1 of ASTM A 123 / 123M, Table 1 of ASTM A 153 / 153M, or Table 2 of A 767, as appropriate.

B. Surface Finish: Continuous, adherent, as smooth and evenly distributed as possible and free from any defect detrimental to the stated end use of the coated article.

C. Adhesion: Withstand normal handling consistent with the nature and thickness of the coating and normal use of the article.

3.4 TESTS

A. Inspection and testing of hot-dip galvanized coatings shall be done under the guidelines provided in the AGA publication Inspection of Products Hot-dip Galvanized After Fabrication.

B. Include visual examination and tests in accordance with ASTM A 123 / 123M, A 153 / 153M, or A 767, as applicable, to determine the thickness of the zinc coating on the metal surface.

C. If requested by owner or architect/engineer, the steel fabricator shall be prepared to furnish notarized Certificate of Compliance with ASTM standards and specifications herein listed. The Certificate must be signed by the galvanizer and contain a detailed description of the material processed. The Certificate shall include information as to the ASTM standard used for the coating.

3.5 REPAIR OF DAMAGED COATING

A. The maximum area to be repaired is defined in accordance with ASTM A 123 / 123M, Section 6.2, current edition.

1. The maximum area to be repaired in the field shall be determined in advance by mutual agreement between parties.

B. Repair areas damaged by welding, flame cutting or during handling, transport or erection by one of the approved methods in accordance with ASTM A 780 whenever damage exceeds 3/16” in width. Minimum thickness requirements for the repair are those described in ASTM A 123 / 123M, Section 6.2, current edition.

END OF SECTION 05040

SECTION 05120 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Structural steel.
2. Architecturally exposed structural steel.
3. Grout.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
2. Division 5 Section "Steel Deck" for field installation of shear connectors.
3. Reference Architectural specifications for surface preparation and priming requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," that support design loads.

B. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel: Structural steel designated as architecturally exposed structural steel in the Contract Documents.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings of all structural steel members. Provide electronic (PDF) copies of each drawing. Shop drawings shall include fabrication piece drawings and field erection drawings. Structural construction drawings shall not be photocopied and submitted.

1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
2. Include embedment drawings.
3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld.
4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned bolted connections.
5. For structural steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparations.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.

E. Mill Test Reports: Submit mill test reports upon request by project engineer. Mill test reports shall be signed by manufacturers certifying that the following products comply with requirements:

1. Structural steel including chemical and physical properties.
2. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
3. Direct-tension indicators.
4. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
5. Shear stud connectors.
6. Shop primers.
7. Nonshrink grout.

F. Source quality-control test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Erector Qualifications: A qualified erector who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CSE. In lieu of AISC certification, erector may, at the general contractor's recommendation and request, provide an in-house quality control program indicating compliance with minimum steel erection quality control requirements noted in AISC 360 – 10 "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings", Chapter N, subsection N2.

B. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, under Building QMS Certification Program, Category BU. In lieu of AISC certification, fabricator may, at the general contractor's recommendation and request, provide an in-house quality control program indicating compliance with quality control procedures meeting minimum fabrication requirements noted in AISC 360 – 10 "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings", Chapter N, subsection N2.

C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

D. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:

1. AISC 303 "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
2. AISC 360 "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design."
3. AISC's "Specification for the Design of Steel Hollow Structural Sections."
4. AISC's "Specification for Allowable Stress Design of Single-Angle Members.
5. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

E. Mockups: Build mockups of architecturally exposed structural steel to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Coordinate finish painting requirements with Division 9 painting Sections.
2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from erosion and deterioration.

1. Store fasteners in a protected place. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.

2. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Furnish anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

1.8 ALLOWANCE

A. Include in bid a lump sum allowance for additional structural steel materials (fabricated and installed) required to complete the Work equal to **5.0 tons** of structural steel. Any unused tonnage will be credited to Owner at a cost of **$4,000.00 per ton**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M, ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345).

B. Channels, Angles Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M for general use, and ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345) for metal building built-up plate section members.

D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B, structural tubing.

E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B.

1. Weight Class: As indicated on structural drawings.
2. Finish: Primed.

F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts;

1. Finish: Plain
2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325 (ASTM F 959M, Type 8.8,) compressible-washer type.

a. Finish: Plain.

B. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, round head steel structural bolts with splined ends; ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) hardened carbon-steel washers.

1. Finish: Plain.

C. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1, Type B.

D. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.

1. Configuration: Straight.
2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy hex carbon steel.
3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
4. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) hardened carbon steel.
5. Finish: Plain.

E. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 straight.

1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy hex carbon steel.
2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
3. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) hardened carbon steel.
4. Finish: Plain.

F. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6).

1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy hex carbon steel.
2. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) hardened and ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
3. Finish: Plain.

G. Turnbuckles: ASTM A 108, Grade 1035, cold-finished carbon steel.

H. Eye Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 108, Grade 1030, cold-finished carbon steel.

I. Sleeve Nuts: ASTM A 108, Grade 1018, cold-finished carbon steel.

2.3 PRIMER

A. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer.

1. SSPC-Paint 25, Type I, zinc oxide, alkyd, linseed oil primer.

2.4 GROUT

A. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404, Size No. 2. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.

B. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

C. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC's Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design.

1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
2. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/ A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
3. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
4. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.

5. Fabricate with exposed surfaces smooth, square, and free of surface blemishes including pitting, rust, scale, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, and roughness.
6. Remove blemishes by filling or grinding or by welding and grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.

B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.

1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1.

C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.

D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.

E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning"

F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for passage of other work through steel framing members.

1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
2. Base-Plate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
2. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.
3. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances. Prevent weld show-through on exposed steel surfaces.

a. Grind butt welds flush.
b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:

1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Surfaces to be field welded.
3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
5. Galvanized surfaces.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:

1. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils (0.038 mm). Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
2. Apply two coats of shop paint to inaccessible surfaces after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

D. Painting: Apply a 1-coat, nonasphaltic primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide 7.00, "Painting System Guide 7.00: Guide for Selecting One-Coat Shop Painting Systems," to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils (0.038 mm).

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner will engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.

B. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

C. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

D. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:

1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

E. In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded shear connectors will be tested and inspected according to requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:

1. Bend tests will be performed if visual inspections reveal either a less-than- continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.

2. Tests will be conducted on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, with steel erector present, for compliance with requirements.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

3.3 ERECTION

A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design".

B. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting base and bearing plates. Clean bottom surface of base and bearing plates.

1. Set base and bearing plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
2. Weld plate washers to top of base plate.
3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base or bearing plate before packing with grout.
4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and base or bearing plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.

C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel and architecturally exposed structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

D. Align and adjust various members forming part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.

1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.

E. Splice members only where indicated.

F. Remove erection bolts on welded, architecturally exposed structural steel; fill holes with plug welds; and grind smooth at exposed surfaces.

G. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Engineer. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1.

H. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

I. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Comply with AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design" for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, alignment, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.
4. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances.

    a. Grind butt welds flush.
    b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.

B. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

C. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1.

1. In addition to visual inspection, field welds may be tested according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:

    a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
    b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
    c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
    d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

D. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists and accessories, bearing plates, and abutting structural steel.

1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.

END OF SECTION 05120

SECTION 05210 - STEEL JOISTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. K-series steel joists.
2. KCS-type K-series steel joists.
3. K-series steel joist substitutes.
4. LH Joists
5. Joist girders.
6. Joist accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. SJI "Specifications": Steel Joist Institute's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders."

B. Special Joists: Steel joists or joist girders requiring modification by manufacturer to support nonuniform, unequal, or special loading conditions that invalidate load tables in SJI's "Specifications."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design:
1. Joist shall be designed to meet SJI load table for specified joist sections and spans.
2. Joist shall be designed to meet additional uplift and concentrated loads as specified in contract structural drawings.

B. Structural Performance: Provide special joists and connections capable of withstanding design loads indicated.

C. Design special joists to withstand design loads with live load deflections no greater than the following:

1. Floor Joists: Total Vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span.
2. Roof Joists: Total Vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span.
3. Special Joists: Reference drawings for specific deflection criteria.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show layout, designation, number, type, location, and spacings of joists. Include joining and anchorage details, bracing, bridging, joist accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.

1. Indicate locations and details of bearing plates to be embedded in other construction.
2. Comprehensive engineering analysis of special joists signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for its preparation.

3. Sealed joist calculations for each joist layout, type, and span, and loading condition.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that joists comply with requirements.

E. Mill Certificates: Signed by bolt manufacturers certifying that bolts comply with requirements.

F. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.

G. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.

H. Research/Evaluation Reports: For joists.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying with applicable standard specifications and load tables of SJI "Specifications."

1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services for designing special joists to comply with performance requirements.

B. SJI Specifications: Comply with standard specifications in SJI's "Specifications" that are applicable to types of joists indicated.

C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications."

B. Protect joists from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Steel: Comply with SJI's "Specifications" for web and steel-angle chord members.

B. Steel Bearing Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

C. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Threaded Fasteners: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and threaded fasteners; carbon-steel nuts; and flat, unhardened steel washers.

1. Finish: Plain, uncoated.

D. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) hardened carbon-steel washers.

1. Finish: Plain.

E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.2 PRIMERS

A. Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, or manufacturer's standard shop primer complying with performance requirements in SSPC-Paint 15.

B. Primer: Provide shop primer that complies with Division 9 painting Sections.

2.3 K-SERIES AND LH-SERIES STEEL JOISTS

A. Manufacture steel joists of type indicated according to Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series and LH-Series in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord.
   1. Joist Type: K-series steel joists and KCS-type K-series steel joists.
   2. Joist Type: LH-series steel joists.

B. Steel Joist Substitutes: Manufacture according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle or -channel members.

C. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

D. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.

E. Top-Chord Extensions: Extend top chords of joists with SJI's Type S top-chord extensions where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."

F. Extended Ends: Extend bearing ends of joists with SJI's Type R extended ends where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."

G. Camber joists according to SJI's "Specifications."

H. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48).

2.4 JOIST GIRDERS

A. Manufacture joist girders according to "Standard Specifications for Joist Girders" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members; with end and top-chord arrangements as indicated.

B. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

C. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joist girders.

D. Camber joist girders according to SJI's "Specifications."

E. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48).

2.5 JOIST ACCESSORIES

A. Bridging: Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal or diagonal bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span. Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.

B. Bridging: Schematically indicated. Detail and fabricate according to SJI's "Specifications." Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.

C. Bridging: Fabricate as indicated and according to SJI's "Specifications." Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.

D. Fabricate steel bearing plates with integral anchorages of sizes and thicknesses indicated. Shop prime paint.

E. Steel bearing plates with integral anchorages are specified in Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications."

F. Supply miscellaneous accessories, including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist installation.

2.6 CLEANING AND SHOP PAINTING

A. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2 or power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3, as deemed necessary by the joist manufacturer’s paint and primer requirements.

B. Apply 1 coat of shop primer to joists and joist accessories to be primed to provide a continuous, dry paint film not less than 1 mil (0.025 mm) thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting substrates, embedded bearing plates, and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.

B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements in this Section.

1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
4. Delay rigidly connecting bottom-chord extensions to columns or supports until dead loads have been applied.

C. Field weld joists to supporting steel bearing plates and framework. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

D. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using carbon-steel bolts.

E. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts. Comply with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.

F. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Contractor shall will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and bolted connections and to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test and inspection reports.

B. Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following procedures, as applicable:

1. Radiographic Testing: ASTM E 94.
2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709.
3. Ultrasonic Testing: ASTM E 164.
4. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.

D. Bolted connections will be visually inspected.

E. High-strength, field-bolted connections will be tested and verified according to procedures in RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts."

F. Correct deficiencies in Work that test and inspection reports have indicated are not in compliance with specified requirements.

G. Additional testing will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

3.4 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, bearing plates, abutting structural steel, and accessories.

1. Clean and prepare surfaces by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2, or power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.

2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.

C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that joists and accessories are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05210

SECTION 05310 – STEEL DECK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION REQUIREMENTS

A. Submittals: Product Data & Shop Drawings. Provide electronic (PDF) copies of all required submittal information.

B. Select deck categories from options in paragraph below.

C. Comply with SDI Publication No. 29, "Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck

D. Comply with AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653 structural steel, and as follows:

1. Zinc-Coating Weight: G60 min.

2.2 DECKING

A. Roof Deck: Fabricate panels from galvanized steel sheet without top-flange stiffening grooves and as follows:

1. Deck Profile: Type 1.0CSV, wide rib.
2. Profile Depth: 1 inch
3. Design Uncoated Steel Thickness: 26 GA (0.0179 inch)
4. Grade: Fy = 60 KSI

B. Floor Deck: Fabricate panels from galvanized steel sheet without to flange stiffening grooves as follows:

1. Deck Profile: 0.6 C
2. Profile Depth: 9/16 inch
3. Design Uncoated Steel Thickness: 28 GA (0.0149 inch)
4. Grade: Fy = 60 KSI

C. Sheet Metal Accessories: ASTM A653, galvanized, unless noted otherwise. Provide accessories of every kind required to complete the installation of metal decking in the system shown. Finish sheet metal items to match deck including, but not limited to, the following items:

1. Metal Cover Plates: For end-abutting deck units, to close gaps at changes in deck direction, columns, walls and openings. Same quality as deck units but not less than 1.3 mm (18 gauge) sheet steel.
2. Continuous sheet metal edging: at openings and concrete slab edges. Same quality as deck units but not less than 1.3 mm (18 gauge) steel. Side and end closures supporting concrete and their attachment to supporting steel shall be designed by the manufacturer to safely support the wet weight of concrete and construction loads. The deflection of cantilever closures shall be limited to 3 mm (1/8 inch) maximum.

3. Metal Closure Strips: For openings between decking and other construction, of not less than 1.3 mm (18 gauge) sheet steel of the same quality as the deck units. Form to the configuration required to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of flutes and sides of decking.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS

A. Accessories: Manufacturer's recommended roof deck accessory materials

B. Submit shop drawings indicating roof deck material, gage, and finish. Shop drawings shall provide deck sheet lengths and attachment weld patterns and side lap fastener requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DECK INSTALLATION

A. Install 1.0CSV, 26 GA roof deck panels and accessories according to SDI Publication No. 29. Using 5/8” puddle welds (weld washers required) and #10 Tek side lap fasteners. Reference plans for fastening pattern. Fasten deck to perimeter angle using 5/8” diameter puddle welds at 6” o/c.

B. Install 0.6C 28 GA floor deck panels and accessories according to manufacturer’s recommendations. Using 5/8” paddle welds (weld washers required). Reference plans for fastening patterns.

C. Place, adjust, align, and bear deck panels on structure. Do not stretch or contract side lap interlocks.

D. Place deck panels flat and square and weld to structure without warp or deflection.

E. Cut, reinforce, and fit deck panels and accessories around openings and projections as required in structural drawings.

F. Roof Deck Accessories: Install sump pans, sump plates, ridge and valley plates, finish strips, cover plates, end closures, and reinforcing channels. Weld to substrate.

G. Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces as required in structural drawings.

H. Wire brush, clean, and paint scarred areas, welds, and rust spots on both surfaces of painted deck panels.

I. Do not start installation of metal decking until corresponding steel framework has been plumbed, aligned and completed and until temporary shoring, where required, has been installed. Remove any oil, dirt, paint, ice, water and rust from steel surfaces to which metal decking will be welded.

J. Do not use roof deck units for storage or working platforms until permanently secured. Do not overload deck units once placed. Replace any deck units that become damaged after erection at no cost to the Owner.

K. Provide steel decking in sufficient lengths to extend over 3 or more spans, except where structural steel layout does not permit.

L. Welding to conform to AWS D1.3 and done by competent experienced welding mechanics.

M. Areas scarred during erection and welds shall be thoroughly cleaned and touched-up with zinc rich galvanizing repair paint.

N. Cutting and Fitting:

1. Cut all metal deck units to proper length in the shop prior to shipping.

2. Field cutting by the metal deck erector is restricted to bevel cuts, notching to fit around columns and similar items, and cutting openings that are located and dimensioned on the structural drawings.
3. Other penetrations shown on the approved metal deck shop drawings but not shown on the structural drawings are to be located, cut and reinforced by the trade requiring the opening.
4. Make all cuts neat and trim using a metal saw, drill or punchout device; cutting with torches is expressly prohibited.
5. Do not make any cuts in the metal deck that are not shown on the approved metal deck drawings. If an additional opening not shown on the approved shop drawings is required, submit a sketch, to scale, locating the required new opening and any other openings and supports in the immediate area. Do not cut the opening until the sketch has been reviewed and accepted by the Engineer. Provide any additional reinforcing or framing required for the opening at no cost to the Owner. Failure to comply with these requirements is cause for rejection of the work and removal and replacement of the affected metal deck.
6. Reinforcement at Openings: Provide additional metal reinforcement and closure pieces as required for strength, continuity of decking and support of other work shown.

END OF SECTION 05310

SECTION 05400 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
2. Soffit Framing.
3. Ceiling joist framing.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for masonry shelf angles and connections.
2. Division 09 Section "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.
3. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board Shaft Wall Assemblies" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud-framed, shaft-wall assemblies.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed metal framing product and accessory indicated in the drawings including mechanical fasteners, reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

B. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency, unless otherwise stated, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests for current products:

1. Steel sheet.
2. Expansion anchors.
3. Power-actuated anchors.
4. Mechanical fasteners.
5. Vertical deflection clips.
6. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated.

B. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency or in-house testing with calibrated test equipment indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, ductility, and metallic-coating thickness.

C. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."

D. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Prescriptive Method for One and Two Family Dwellings."

E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering cold-formed metal framing that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide cold-formed metal framing by one of the following:

1. Clark Dietrich Building Systems.
2. Consolidated Fabricators Corp.; Building Products Division.
3. The Steel Network, Inc.

C. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for connector devices is based on Clark Dietrich, Inc. as indicated in other Part 2 Articles.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:

1. Grade: ST33H for 18 gage studs and thinner and ST50H for 16 gage studs and thicker.
2. Coating: G60 .

B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection and Miscellaneous Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:

1. Grade: 50, Class 1 or 2.
2. Coating: G90.

2.3 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:

1. 8 inch, 16 ga studs
   a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0566 inch
   b. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches
   c. Section Properties: 800S162-54 minimum Ix = 5.74 in4 ; Sx = 1.43 in3

B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Matching steel studs.
2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches.

C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard head clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web. Mechanical attachment to structure and screw attachment to stud web using step-bushings to permit frictionless vertical movement; 68 mils minimum thickness, size as required by structural design calculations. Use only vertical deflection connection products that have a valid ICC ES Report complying with ICC Acceptance Criteria AC261, such as ICC-ESR-1903 or equivalent.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Clark Dietrich, Inc.
   a. Exterior Side of Wall: Clark Dietrich, Inc. Fast Clip Slide Clip (FCSC 3.1/2” and 5.1/2”)
   b. Exterior Head of Wall: Clark Dietrich, Inc. Fast Clip Top Clip (FTC3 and FTC 5).
   c. Non Deflection Clips: Clark Dietrich, Inc. Uni-Clip End Clip (UCEC).

2.4 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.

B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:

1. Supplementary framing.
2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
3. Web stiffeners.
4. Anchor clips.
5. End clips.
6. Foundation clips.
7. Gusset plates.
8. Stud kickers, knee braces, and girts.
9. Joist hangers and end closures.
10. Hole reinforcing plates.
11. Backer plates.

2.5 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.

B. Cold-Formed Steel Connections: ASTM 653/A653, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A123/A 123M.

C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Shall be Hilti x-u (Dia=0.157”) with minimum concrete embedment of 1-1/4” and full penetration into steel. Reference drawings for spacing and edge distances.

E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.

1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 .

B. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, nonleaching.

2.7 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.

1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
3. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by screw fastening standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
   a. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to manufacturer’s instructions, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.
4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by screw fastening according to manufacturer’s instructions.

B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.

C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:

1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.

B. Install sealer gaskets to isolate the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.

B. Install cold-formed metal framing according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions" and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.

D. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.

1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
2. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by screw fastening. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    a. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to manufacturer's instructions, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.

E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.

F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.

G. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.

H. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:

1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.

B. Fasten both flanges of studs to bottom track, unless otherwise indicated. Install built up stud jambs at window and door openings and other locations as indicated on structural drawings. Space studs as follows:

1. Stud Spacing: 16 inches or as indicated on structural drawings for special conditions.

C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.

D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.

1. Mechanically fasten vertical deflection clips to infill studs and anchor to building structure.

E. Install horizontal bridging in curtain-wall studs, spaced in rows indicated on Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.

1. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, continuously inserted through punched web of stud and mechanically fastened to the web of each stud.

F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.

C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

D. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05400

SECTION 05500 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

SUMMARY

This section includes the following metal fabrications:

- Lintels
- Trench Grate Covers
- Toilet Partitions
- Floor Trough
- Knox Box

Miscellaneous framing and supports for the following:

Related Sections: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this section.

DEFINITIONS

SUBMITTALS:

General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

Product Data: for products used in miscellaneous metal fabrications, including paint products and grout.

Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for fabrication and erection of miscellaneous metal fabrications. Include plans, elevations and details of sections and connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide templates for anchors and bolts specified for installation by other sections.

Samples: representative of materials and finished products as may be requested by Architect.

SUBSTITUTIONS
Submit proposed substitutions in writing to Architect no less than 10 days before bids are due. Submit samples and a side by side product data comparison to demonstrate acceptability of proposed substitution. Acceptance will be by Addendum only.

QUALITY ASSURANCE

Fabricator Qualifications: Firm experienced in successfully producing metal fabrications similar to that indicated for this project, with sufficient production capacity to produce required units without causing delay in the work.

Installer Qualifications: Arrange for installation of metal fabrications specified in this section by same firm that fabricated them.

Qualify welding processes and welding operators in accordance with AWS D1.1

"Structural Welding Code - Steel," D1.3 "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel", and D1.2 "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

Certify that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and, if pertinent, has undergone recertification.

PROJECT CONDITIONS

Field Measurements: Check actual locations of walls and other construction to which metal fabrications must fit, by accurate field measurements before fabrication; show recorded measurements on final shop drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delay of Work.

Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, guarantee dimensions and proceed with fabrication of products without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual opening dimensions correspond to guaranteed dimensions. Allow for trimming and fitting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS:

FERROUS METALS:

Metal Surfaces, General: For metal fabrications exposed to view upon completion of the Work, provide materials selected for their surface flatness, smoothness, and freedom form surface blemishes. Do not use materials whose exposed surfaces exhibit pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, roughness, and, for steel sheet, variations in flatness exceeding those permitted by reference standards for stretcher-leveled sheet.

A. Structural-Steel Shapes: ASTM A 572 or ASTM A 992 (Fy=50 ksi)
B. Structural steel pipe: ASTM A53, standard weight (Schedule 40), black finish.
C. Steel Tubing: Cold-formed steel tubing complying with ASTM A 500, GR B.
D. Plates, bars and angles: ASTM A36.
E. Anchor Rods, Bolts, Nuts: ASTM A 36.
F. Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, high-strength heavy hex steel structural bolts, heavy hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers, uncoated.
G. Primer: Lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer.

For exterior installations and where indicated, provide fabrications with hot-dip galvanized coating.

Uncoated Structural Steel Sheet: Product type (manufacturing method), quality, and grade, as follows:

A. Cold-Rolled Structural Steel Sheet: ASTM A 611, grade as follows:
B. Grade A, unless otherwise indicated or required by design loading.
C. Hot-Rolled Structural Steel Sheet: ASTM A 570, grade as follows:
D. Grade 30, unless otherwise indicated or required by design loading.

Uncoated Steel Sheet: Commercial quality, product type (method of manufacture) as follows:

A. Cold - Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 366.
B. Hot - Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 569

Galvanized Steel Sheet: Quality as follows:

A. Structural Quality: ASTM A 446; Grade A, unless another grade required for design loading, and G90 coating designation unless otherwise indicated.
B. Commercial Quality: ASTM A 526, G90 coating designation unless otherwise indicated.
C. Type S, Grade A standard weight (schedule 40), unless otherwise indicated, or another grade or weight or both required by structural loads.

Provide Hot Dipped Galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.

Brackets, Flanges and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of the same type material and finish as supported rails, unless otherwise indicated.

Concrete Inserts: Threaded or wedge type; galvanized ferrous castings, either malleable iron, ASTM A 47, or cast steel, ASTM A 27. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as required, hot-dip galvanized per ASTM A 153.

Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select in accordance with AWS specifications for the metal alloy to be welded.

GROUT AND ANCHORING CEMENT

Non-shrink Nonmetallic Grout: ASTM C 1107; recommended by manufacturer for exterior applications.

Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated in the work include but are not limited to the following:

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

Non-shrink Nonmetallic Grouts:

"Basal Construction Grout"; W. R. Bonsal Co.
"Euco N-S Grout"; Euclid Chemical Co.
"Kemset"; Chem-Masters Corp.
"Masterflow 713"; Master Builders.
"Sealtight 588 Grout"; W. R. Meadows, Inc.
"Sonogrout"; Sonneborn Building Products Div., Rexnord Chemical Products, Inc.
"Five Star Grout"; U. S. Grout Corp.
"Vibropruf #11"; Lambert Corp.

Fasteners:

General: Provide zinc coated fasteners for exterior use or where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for the type, grade and class required.

A. Bolts and Nuts: Regular Hexagon head type, ASTM A 307, Grade A.
B. Lag Bolts: Square head type, FS FF-B-561.
C. Machine Screws: Cadmium plated steel, FS FF-S-92.
D. Wood Screws: Flat head carbon steel, FS FF-W-92.
E. Plain Washers: Round, carbon steel, FS FF-W-92.
F. Drilled- In Expansion Anchors: Expansion anchors complying with FS FF-S-325, Group VIII (anchors, expansion, (non-drilling), Type I(internally threaded tubular

expansion anchor); and machine bolts complying with FS FF-B-575, Grade 5.

G. Toggle Bolts: Tumble-wing type, FS FF-B-588, type, class, and style as required.
H. Lock Washers: Helical spring type carbon steel, FS FF-W-84.

Paint:

Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Manufacturer's or fabricator's standard, fast-curing, lead-free, universal modified alkyd primer selected for good resistance to normal atmospheric corrosion, for compatibility with finish paint systems indicated, and for capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats despite prolonged exposure complying with performance requirements of FS TT-P-645.

Galvanizing Repair Paint: High zinc dust content paint for re-galvanizing welds in galvanized steel, with dry film containing not less than 94 percent zinc dust by weight, and complying with DOD - P- 21035 or SSPC-Paint-20.

Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt mastic complying SSPC-Paint 12 except containing no asbestos fibers.

Zinc Chromate Primer: FS TT-P-645.

Fabrication:

Fabrication shop shall have a minimum of three years experience in the field of steel fabrication. Steel erector shall have same minimum experience.

Allow for thermal movement resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient temperature in the design, fabrication, and installation of installed metal assemblies to prevent buckling, opening up of joints, and overstressing of welds and fasteners. Base design calculations on actual surface temperatures of metals due to both solar heat gain and nighttime sky heat loss.

Temperature Change (Range): 100 deg F (55.5 deg C).

General: Shear and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease exposed edges. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without impairing work.

Submit shop drawings of all structural steel members. Shop drawings shall include fabrication piece drawings and field erection drawings. Structural construction drawings shall not be photocopied and submitted. Contractor to provide electronic copies for engineering review.

Welding: Weld corners and seams continuously. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals. At exposed connections, finish welds and surfaces smooth with contour of welded surface matching those adjacent. Fabrication shop shall provide AWS welder certifications as requested by owner’s engineer.

Fabricate loose lintels from steel angles. Loose lintel angles shall be hot dipped galvanized unless noted otherwise.

Fabricate steel pipe columns with steel top plates drilled for connection bolts and welded to pipe with continuous fillet weld same size as pipe wall thickness.

1. Provide base plates as scheduled on construction documents.

Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners wherever possible. Use exposed fasteners of type indicated or, if not indicated, Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

Provide for anchorage of type indicated, coordinated with supporting structure. Fabricate and space anchoring devices to provide adequate support for intended use.

Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

Cut, reinforce, drill and tap miscellaneous metal work as indicated to receive finish hardware and similar items.

Fabricate joints which will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water or provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

ERECTION

Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing miscellaneous metal fabrications. Set metal fabrication accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack.

Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints.

All bolted moment conection shall have high strength bolts using “Turn-of-Nut” method according to RCSC’s specification structural joints using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts and AISC “Manual of Steel Construction”.

A qualified independent inspector shall be hired by the contractor to provide inspection of all bolted and welded connections.

Loose Steel Lintels

Fabricate loose structural steel lintels form steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Use hot-dipped galvanized angles at exterior.

Design loose lintels for equal bearing of one inch per foot of clear span. Minimum bearing shall be not less than 8 inches bearing at each side of openings, unless otherwise indicated.

Hot-dipped galvanized loose steel lintels are required at all exterior wall openings.

Trench Castings: Heavy Duty with Solid Cover:
NEENAH Foundry Company; R-4990-CX (12”x 1-1/2” x 10) with Type D solid checkered top. Gray Iron Class 35-B.

Toilet Partition / Urinal Frames:

Fabricate steel tube frame using 1-1/2" and 2-1/2" x 3/16" vertical and horizontal numbers with 1/4" x 3/16" plates as shown on drawings. hot dipped galvanized, and painted. Shop drawings must be submitted to Architects office prior to fabrication. Provide Hardware as required for erection.

Knox Box: Provide Knox Box Model 3262, Color: Black, Size: 4”Hx5”Wx3”D at each gate operator. Verify locations with Fire Department.

END OF SECTION 05500

SECTION 05511 FIXED ALUMINUM ACCESS LADDERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes: Fixed, wall mounted, vertical, aluminum and heavy duty, hatch access ladders.

B. Related sections:

1. Section 06100 - Rough Carpentry: Blocking in metal stud walls and partitions for anchorage of access ladders.

2. Section 07725 - Roof Hatch: Manufactured roof hatch to be accessed by aluminum ladder.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

1. ANSI A14.3 - Ladders, Fixed, Safety Requirements.

B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Publications:

1. ASTM B209 - Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate.

2. ASTM B221 - Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bar, Rod, Wire, Shape, and Tube.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Provide in accordance with Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures:

1. Product data for access ladders and accessories.

2. Shop drawings showing elevations, dimensions, connections, and fabrication details.

3. Installation and maintenance instructions.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Access ladders shall be designed and installed to comply with ANSI A14.3. and OSHA 1910.27

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. UPNOVR, Inc., 3Crane Way, New Hampshire 03106; 603-625-8639.

B. O'Keeffe's, Inc., 325 Newhall Street, San Fransisco, CA 94124; 888.653.3333

C. Substitutions: Submit proposed substitutions in writing to Architect no less than 10 days before bids are due. Submit samples and a side by side product data comparison to demonstrate acceptability of proposed substitution. Acceptance will be by Addendum only.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Extruded aluminum: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063 Temper T-6, non-spark.

B. Sheet aluminum: ASTM B209 6063 Temper T-6.

C. Finish: Mill finished aluminum.

2.3 GENERAL FABRICATION

A. Field verify ladder dimensions prior to fabrication.

B. Fabricate to designs indicated on Drawings and to meet performance requirements specified in Paragraph 1.4.

C. Components shall be welded. Ladder shall not require field assembly.

2.4 SHIP LADDER

A. Ships Ladder.
   1. Provide two (2) Model 520 as manufactured by O'Keeffe's Inc.
B. Incline:
   1. 75 degree.
C. Rungs: 1-1/4 wide by 1-1/4 inches tube by [18] [24] inches long with corrugated surfaces and capable of 1,500 pounds load. Space 12 inches on center. Attach rungs in centerline of side rails by welding.
D. Ship Ladders: Not less than 1-1/4 inches (32mm) high, 4-1/8 inch (105 mm) deep and 2 feet (610 mm) wide; tread spacing shall be 1 foot (305 mm) on center. Handrails shall be aluminum pipe, not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter with hemispheric end caps.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Support brackets:
   1. Wall brackets: Support ladder at top and bottom and at 48 inches maximum intermediate points with 2 by 1/4 inch minimum flat bar aluminum wall brackets. Allow 7 inches minimum clearance from wall to center line of rungs.
   2. Floor brackets: Anchor side rails to floor with 2 by 1/4 inch minimum flat bar aluminum floor brackets. Allow 7 inches minimum clearance from wall to center line of rungs.

B. Security door: Provide hinged security door to cover bottom rungs and prevent unauthorized roof access.
   1. Construction: Fabricate from 11 gage flat aluminum sheet covering front of ladder. Provide side flanges extending toward wall and meeting aluminum flange mounted to wall.
   2. Equip door with continuous aluminum hinge and lock.

C. Safety post extension: Post extension for fixed ladders constructed of tubular aluminum sections with adjustable mounting brackets for attachment to top of ladder.
   1. Operation: Upward and downward movement controlled by manual operation. Manually locks when fully extended.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Prior to fabrication, field verify required dimensions.
B. Coordinate provision of access ladder with provision of roof hatch specified in Section 07725 - Roof Hatch to ensure height and position of ladder is compatible with roof hatch curb.
C. Coordinate ladder installation with construction of metal stud walls specified in Section 05400 - Cold Formed Metal Framing to ensure adequate support and blocking to ensure adequate support and blocking] for attachment of brackets and support of ladder.
D. Insulate dissimilar metals to prevent electrolysis with bituminous paint or non-absorptive isolation pad to prevent contact.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install ladder in accordance with reviewed shop drawings.
B. Position ladder such that side rails [end 3 inches above] [contact] floor and center of rungs are 7 inches from wall.

C. Securely anchor support brackets with fasteners of type and size recommended by manufacturer. Place wall brackets at top and bottom of ladder and place floor brackets at bottom of ladder. Place intermediate wall brackets at 48 inches maximum.
D. Ensure ladder is vertical, plumb, aligned with center of roof hatch, and rigid.
E. Install security door assembly and adjust for smooth operation.
F. Safety post extension: Attach to top 2 rungs of ladder and centered between side rails. Adjust post to extend 42 inches above top rung when roof hatch is open and post is fully extended.
G. After installation inspect ladder to verify proper, secure, and safe installation.
H. Clean ladder using clean water and mild detergent. Do not use abrasive agent, steel wool, or harsh chemicals. Rinse with clean water.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06100 – ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS

A. Product data for engineered wood products, insulating sheathing, underlayment, metal framing anchors, and construction adhesives.

B. Provide electronic (PDF) copies of all required submittal information.

PART 2 - PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMBER, GENERAL

A. Furnish grade stamped lumber that is dressed S4S and complies with PS 20 and applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.

1. Provide seasoned lumber with 19 percent moisture content at time of dressing and shipment, for sizes 2 inches or less in thickness.
2. For exposed lumber, apply grade stamps to ends or back of each piece or omit grade stamps entirely and issue certificate of grade compliance.

2.2 DIMENSION LUMBER

A. Provide lumber of the following product classification in grade and species indicated:

1. Plates	Southern Yellow Pine	No. 2	SPIB
2. Studs	Spruce-Pine Fir	No. 2	NLGA
3. Rafters/Headers	Southern Yellow Pine	No. 2	SPIB
4. Floor Girders	Southern Yellow Pine	No. 1	SPIB

2.3 LUMBER FOR MISCELLANEOUS USES

A. Unless otherwise indicated, provide "No. 2" grade light-framing-size lumber of any species for support of other construction, including rooftop equipment and support bases, cant strips, bucks, nailers, blocking, furring, grounds, stripping and similar members.

2.4 FASTENERS

A. Of size and type indicated that comply with the following requirements. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, or in areas of high relative humidity, provide hot-dip zinc-coated fasteners per ASTM A 153 or AISI Type 304 stainless steel fasteners.

1. Nails, Wire and Brads: FS FF-N-105
2. Power Driven Fasteners: National Evaluation Report NER-272.
3. Wood Screws: ANSI B18.6.1.

4. Lag Bolts: ANSI B18.2.1.
5. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and where indicated, flat washers.

2.5 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

A. Provide metal framing anchors of type, size, metal, and finish indicated that comply with requirements specified including the following:

1. Current Evaluation/Research Reports: Provide products for which model code evaluation/research reports exist that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and that evidence compliance of metal framing anchors for application indicated with the building code in effect for this project.
2. Allowable Design Loads: As published by manufacturer and determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and verified through comprehensive testing by a qualified independent testing laboratory.
3. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated by hot-dip process to comply with ASTM A 525, Coating Designation G60, and complying with ASTM A 446, Grade A; ASTM A 526; or ASTM A 527.

B. Use stainless steel framing anchors for rough carpentry exposed to weather, in ground contact, or in area of high relative humidity, and where indicated.

2.6 LUMBER AND PLYWOOD TREATMENT

A. Preservative pressure treat lumber and plywood with water-borne preservatives to comply with AWPA C2 and C9, respectively, and with requirements indicated below. Mark each treated item with the AWPB or SPIB Quality Mark Requirements.

B. Pressure-treat above-ground items with water-borne preservatives to a minimum retention of 0.25 pcf. For interior uses, after treatment, kiln-dry lumber and plywood to a maximum moisture content, respectively, of 19 percent and 15 percent. Treat indicated items and the following:

1. Wood, cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
3. Wood framing members less than 18 inches above grade.

C. Pressure-treat wood members in contact with the ground or fresh water with water-borne preservatives to a minimum retention of 0.40 pcf.

D. Complete fabrication of treated items prior to treatment, where possible. If cut after treatment, coat cut surfaces to comply with AWPA M4. Inspect each piece of lumber or plywood after drying and discard damaged or defective pieces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install rough carpentry work to comply with the International Building Code, 2012 edition, and the National Design Standard, and the following:

1. Recommendations of engineered wood products manufacturer.
2. Recommendations of manufacturer of sheathing, underlayment and other products not covered in above publications.

B. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb and true and cut to fit.

C. Securely attach carpentry work to substrates and supporting members using fasteners of size that will not penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view to receive finish materials.

D. Install fasteners without splitting wood; fasten panel products to allow for expansion at joints unless otherwise indicated.

E. Provide wood framing members of size and spacing indicated; do not splice structural members between supports. Fire stop concealed spaces with wood blocking not less than 2 inches thick, if not blocked by other framing members.

F. Contact Architect / Engineer for framing inspection prior to installing interior gypsum board, roofing paper or exterior vapor barrier.

G. Fasten construction panel products as follows:

1. Sheathing:

a. Nail to framing. Reference structural drawings for nailing schedule.

END OF SECTION 06100

SECTION 06200 - FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:
Definition: Finish carpentry includes carpentry work which is exposed to view, is non - structural, and which is not specified as part of other sections.

Types of finish carpentry work in this section include:

- Fascias
- Trim
- Wall Mounted Plastic Laminate

Rough carpentry is specified in another Division 6 section.

Builders Hardware and wood doors are specified in Division 8 sections.

Architectural woodwork is specified in another Division 6 section.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:
Factory mark each piece of lumber and plywood with type, grade, mill and grading agency identification; except omit marking from surfaces to receive transparent finish, and submit mill certificate that material has been inspected and graded in accordance with requirements if it cannot be marked on a concealed surface.

SUBMITTALS:
Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions for each item of factory fabricated siding and paneling.

PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:
Protect finish carpentry materials during transit, delivery, storage and handling to prevent damage, soiling and deterioration.

Do not deliver finish carpentry materials, until painting, wet work, grinding and similar operations which could damage, soil or deteriorate woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If, due to unforeseen circumstances, finish carpentry materials must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas meeting requirements specified for installation areas.

JOB CONDITIONS:
Conditioning: Installer shall advise Contractor of temperature and humidity requirements for finish carpentry installation areas. Do not install finish carpentry until required temperature and relative humidity have been stabilized and will be maintained in installation areas.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

WOOD PRODUCT QUALITY STANDARDS:
Softwood Lumber Standards: Comply with PS 20 and with applicable grading rules of the respective grading and inspecting agency for the species and product indicated.

Plywood Standard: Comply with PS 1/ANSI A199.1.

Hardwood Lumber Standard: Comply with National Hardwood Lumber Association (NHLA) rules.

Hardwood Plywood Standard: Comply with PS 51.

Woodworking Standard: Where indicated for specific products comply with specified provision of the following:

Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI) "Quality Standards."

Glued -up Lumber Standard: Comply with PS 56.

MATERIALS:
General:
Nominal sizes are indicated, except as shown by detailed dimensions. Provide dressed or worked and dressed lumber, as applicable, manufactured to the actual sizes as required by PS 20 or to actual sizes and pattern as shown, unless otherwise indicated.

Moisture Content of Softwood Lumber: Provide kiln -dried (KD) lumber having moisture content from time of manufacture until time of installation not greater than 6% to 11%.

Moisture Content of Hardwood Lumber: Provide kiln -dried (KD) lumber having moisture content from time of manufacture until time of installation from 6% to 11%.

Lumber for Transparent Finish (Stained or Clear): Use good grade pieces made of Cedar.

Lumber for Painted Finish: Any closed grain hardwood, AWI Section 300, custom grade.

Underlayment: Sharkskin Ultra SA

INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY:
Shelving: 1" shelves 36" wide or over #1 SYP and ¾” for shelves under 36".

Cleats: #1 SYP.

Plastic Laminate: Countertops and backsplashes as per drawings.

16 ga Stainless Steel Countertop as indicated on drawings.

Standards: Meet requirements and recommendations of applicable portions of standards listed.

Federal Specifications: FS equal to Wilson Art

Examining:

Examine surfaces that are to receive Laminated Plastic. Report unsatisfactory laminate condition.

Do not star installation of Laminated Plastic until satisfactory conditions have been corrected.

Proceeding with installation of Laminated Plastic will be constructed as evidence of acceptance of conditions under which work will be done.

Protecting:
Handle Laminated Plastic and items to avoid injury to person and to avoid damage to materials or to work in place. Satisfactorily repair or remove and replace work that has been damaged.

Protect adjacent surfaces from damage, soiling and adhering of adhesives and extra materials.

Protect Laminated Plastic from damage by weather and construction. Install necessary protective covering for surfaces that may have traffic during construction period.

Remove protective covering upon completion of project. Remove and replace work that has been damaged.

Delivering and Storing:

Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened, labeled containers or packages.

Submit samples for approval of the Architect.

APPLICATION:
Trim shall be plumb and/or level with miter joints and finished as earlier specified. Pre-finished trim shall be required.

Application shall not take place sooner than 24 hours of temperatures less than 42 deg F.

Miscellaneous Materials:

Fasteners and Anchorages: Provide nails, screws and other anchoring devices of the type, size, materials and finish required for application indicated to provide secure attachment, concealed where possible, and complying with applicable Federal Specifications.

All interior and exterior nails shall be galvanized.

Where finish carpentry is exposed on exterior or in areas of high relative humidity, provide fasteners and anchorages with a hot-dipped zinc coating (ASTM A 153).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

PREPARATION:
Condition wood materials to the average humidity condition in installation areas prior to installing.

Back prime lumber for painted finish exposed on the exterior or, where indicated, to moisture and high relative humidity on the interior. Comply with requirements of section on painting within Division 9 for primers and their application.

INSTALLATION:
Discard units of material which are unsound, warped, bowed, twisted, improperly treated, not adequately seasoned or too small to fabricate work with minimum of joints or optimum jointing arrangements, or which are of defective manufacturer with respect to surfaces, sizes or patterns.

Install the work plumb, level, true and straight with no distortions. Shim as required using concealed shims. Install to a tolerance of 1/8" in 8' -0" for plumb and level countertops; and with 1/16" maximum offset in flush adjoining 1/8" maximum offsets in revealed adjoining surfaces.

Scribe and cut work to fit adjoining work, and refinish cut surfaces or repair damaged finish at cuts.

Anchor finish carpentry work to anchorage devices or blocking built -in or directly attached to substrates. Secure to grounds, stripping and blocking with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for a complete installation. Except where pre-finished matching fasteners heads are required, use fine finishing nail for exposed nailing, countersunk and filled flush with finished surface, and matching final finish where transparent is indicated.

MILLWORK AND TRIM:
Exterior and interior millwork and trim shall conform to design and details shown. Where practical, work shall be finished and assembled at the mill. All mill work and trim shall be furnished smooth and free from machine and tool marks that will show through the finish. All nail heads shall be set to receive putty.

Doors and other movable parts shall be accurately fitted with proper clearances and left in perfect working order. Passage doors shall have a minimum clearance of 1/8" at sides and top, and doors and hardware shall be fitted to template so that they may be interchanged from opening to opening. All refitting necessary due to swelling shrinking, assembly or installation shall be done by this Contractor, for a period of one year after completion and acceptance of the building.

When dressing or cutting has been done, these surfaces shall be refinished. The work shall be left clean and free from warp, twist, open joints or other defects.

Metal thresholds: Fit and set metal thresholds in mastic.

LOCATION OF FINISH HARDWARE:
Locate hardware for door and door frames as follows unless shown otherwise on the drawings:

Center door knobs 38" above floor. Offset screen door latches to clear door locksets.

Center door pulls 42" above floor and push plates 48" above floors.

INSTALLATION OF WINDOWS:
Install windows and operating sash closed and locked, and set plumb, true, and centered in openings; securely anchored in place, using approved manufacturers anchors specifically designed for use in the openings detailed.

Check all windows for smooth operation and proper function and adjust as required, prior to acceptance by the Architect.

ADJUSTMENT, CLEANING, FINISHING AND PROTECTION:
Repair damaged and defective finish carpentry work wherever possible to eliminate defects functionally and visually; where not possible to repair properly, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

Refer to Division 9 sections for final finishing of installed finish carpentry work.

Protection: Installer of finish carpentry work shall advise Contractor of final protection and maintained conditions necessary to ensure that work will be without damage or deterioration at time of acceptance.

END OF SECTION 06200

SECTION 06400 - ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:
Extent of each type of architectural woodwork is indicated on drawings and in schedules.

Types of architectural woodwork include the following:
- Shelving
- Millwork
- Countertops
- Toilet Partitions

Finish carpentry is specified in another section of Division 6.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:
AWI Quality Marking: Mark each assembled unit of architectural woodwork with manufacturer's identification and grade mark evidencing compliance with indicated AWI quality grade. Locate grade mark on surfaces which will not be exposed after installation. For other items requiring field assembly, a certification of compliance may be substituted for marking of individual pieces.

Arrange for architectural woodwork with sequence matched wood veneers to be produced by a single firm.

REFERENCES:
AWI Quality Standard: Comply with applicable requirements of “Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" published by the Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI), excets otherwise indicated.

SUBMITTALS:
Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions for each item of factory fabricated woodwork.

Certification: Include certification that fire -retardant treated materials comply with governing regulations.

Quality Certification: Submit Manufacturer's (Fabricator's) certification, stating that fabricated work complies with quality grades and other requirements indicated.

Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large scale details, attachment devices and other components. Submit shop drawings for the following:

- Framed openings and lights, including trim.
- Shelving

PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:
Protect woodwork during transit, delivery, storage and handling to prevent damage, soiling and deterioration.

Do not deliver woodwork, until painting, wet work, grinding and similar operations which could damage, soil or deteriorate woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If, due to unforeseen circumstances, woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas meeting requirements specified for installation areas.

JOB CONDITIONS:
Conditioning: Woodwork Manufacturer and Installer shall advise Contractor of temperature and humidity requirements for woodwork installation and storage areas. Do not install woodwork until required temperature and relative humidity have been stabilized and will be maintained in installation areas.

Maintain temperature and humidity in installation area as required to maintain moisture content of installed woodwork within a 1.0 percent tolerance of optimum moisture content, from date of installation through remainder of construction period.

The fabricator of woodwork shall determine optimum moisture content and required temperature and humidity condition.

PART 2 PRODUCTS
General: Except as otherwise indicated, comply with following requirements for architectural woodwork not specifically indicated as prefabricated or pre-finished standard products.

Wood Moisture Content: Provide kiln dried (KD) lumber with an average content range of 6% to 11% for interior work. Maintain temperature and relative humidity during fabrication, storage and finishing operations so that moisture content values for woodwork at time of installation do not exceed the following:

Interior Wood Finish: 5% - 10% for mild regions (as defined by AWI).

Plywood: Closed grain hardwood plywood with exterior glue complying with requirements for specified woodwork grade.

Fabricated Stainless steel countertops cut to size:

- 16 gauge type 304 stainless steel.
- Square edge with continuous 4” backsplash

Plastic Laminate: Comply with NEMA LD-3 for type, thickness, color, pattern and finish as indicated for each application, or if not indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard products as well as the following;

Wilsonart -	All Available Colors, including Premium Colors
Formica -	All Available Colors, including Premium Colors
Nevamar-	All Available Colors, including Premium Colors

Quality Standards: For following types of architectural woodwork; comply with indicated standards as applicable:

Standing and Running Trim: AWI Section 300.
Casework and Countertops: AWI Section 400.
Shelving: AWI Section 600.
Miscellaneous Work: AWI Section 700.

Exterior Frames: AWI Section 900.

Design and Construction Features: Comply with details shown for profile and construction of architectural woodwork, and, where not otherwise shown, comply with applicable Quality Standards, with alternate details as Fabricator's option.

Pre -Cut Openings: Fabricate architectural woodwork with pre -cut openings, where possible, to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing -in diagrams for proper size and shape. Smooth edges of cutoffs and, where located in countertops and similar exposures seal edges of cutouts with a water -resistant coating.

Measurements: Before proceeding with fabrication of woodwork required to be fitted to other construction, obtain field measurements and verify dimensions and shop drawing details as required for accurate fit.

Where sequence of measuring substrates before fabrication would delay the project, proceed with fabrication (without field measurements) and provide ample borders and edges to allow for subsequent scribing and trimming of woodwork for accurate fit.

INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK:
Core: Plywood. Particle core panels will not be accepted.

Construction: Reveal overlay.

Exposed Surfaces: Provide high pressure laminate in grades indicated for the following types of surfaces:

Horizontal Surfaces: GP -50 (0.050" nominal thickness).
Post Formed Surfaces: PF -42 (0.042" nominal thickness).
Vertical Surfaces: GP -28 (0.028" nominal thickness).

Except as otherwise indicated, provide separate plastic laminate countertops (installed over closed grain plywood substrate) to comply with requirements for casework for plastic laminate finish. Provide with coved backsplash. Note at science lab countertops, provide epoxy resin tops, black in color.

Fabricate exposed edges of casework, including edges of doors and drawers when open, with matching plastic laminate, except as otherwise indicated.

Shelves: 1" thick, reversible, plastic laminate finish all sides and all edges.

General: These requirements do not apply to shelving which is either integral with or indicated as "casework"; comply with casework requirements for those units of shelving.

Grade: Custom.

FINISH FOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK:
General: The priming and pre-finishing (if any) of architectural woodwork required to be performed at the shop or factory is specified as work of this section. Refer to Division 9 sections for final finishing of installed architectural woodwork.

At the Contractor's option, he may use plastic laminate interior finish in lieu of painted surfaces.

Preparations for Finish: Comply with AWI Quality Standards, Section 1500, for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, back priming and similar preparations for finishing of architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.

CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORY MATERIALS:

General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural woodwork, except for units which are specified as "door hardware" in other sections of these specifications.

Hardware Standards: Except as otherwise indicated, comply with ANSI A156.9 " American National Standard for Cabinet Hardware".

Quality Level: Type 2 (institutional), unless otherwise indicated.

Quality Certification: Where available, provide cabinet hardware bearing the BHMA certification label, affixed either to hardware or its packaging, showing compliance with BHMA.

Cabinet Hardware Standard 201.

Cabinet Hardware: Provide all cabinet hardware required for proper installation and operation, whether listed below or not.

Metal Shelf Standards and Brackets: Provide one of the following:

No. 87 Standards and No. 187 Brackets; Knape & Vogt Mfg. Co.
Finish: Nickel-plated.

Pivoted Hinges: model no. Snap on 300 Series Hinge by Grass America

Finish for Butts and Hinges: Stain nickel-plated.

Cabinet Door Pulls: Steel Wire Pulls 4” C/C, Satin Chrome Finish

Door Pull Finish: Satin Chrome

Magnetic Cabinet Catches: Provide one of the following:

Aluminum, satin finish, No.916, Knape & Vogt.
Aluminum, satin finish, No.46 ALD, Standley Hardware Div.

Drawer Slides: KV 4100 Low Profile - Knape & Vogt Mfg. Co.

Locks: Master Lock Five (5) pin tumbler at all drawers and doors. Typical

Cabinet Door Hardware: Provide hinges, catches and pulls of types indicated, to accommodate each door size and style.

Drawer Hardware: Provide slides and pulls of types indicated, to accommodate each drawer size and style.

Equip each drawer with side-mounted, full-extension, ball-bearing, nylon roller drawer slides with load capacity of 75 lbs. per pair.

Locks: provide standard pin-type or disc-type (5 pins or discs) tumbler locks, keyed alike in each room, at all base and wall cabinets unless noted otherwise.

Shelf Supports: Where shelving is indicated as "adjustable:, provide slotted-type standards and brackets of type needed to properly support shelves with uniform 40-lb per sq. ft. loading.

Closet Bars: Telescoping steel or brass tubing, with forged end brackets; size and wall thickness as required to support full continuous hanging of clothing.

Exposed Hardware Finish: Provide exposed hardware with BHMA Code 626 satin chromium plate finish (US26D). Where not available, provide either satin aluminum or satin stainless steel finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

PREPARATION:
Condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas prior to installing.

Prior to installation of architectural woodwork, examine shop fabricated work for completion, and complete work as required, including back priming and removal of packing.

INSTALLATION:
Install woodwork plumb, level, true and straight with no distortions. Shim as required using concealed shims. Install to a tolerance of 1/8" in 8' -0" for plumb and level (including countertops); and with 1/16" maximum offset in flush adjoining surfaces, 1/8" maximum offsets in revealed adjoining surfaces.

Scribe and cut work to fit adjoining work, and refinish cut surfaces or repair damaged finish at cuts.

Standing and Running Trim: Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to the greatest extent possible. Stagger joints in adjacent and related members. Cope at returns, miter at corners and comply with referenced Quality Standards for joinery.

Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built -in or directly attached to substrates. Secure to grounds, stripping and blocking with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for a complete installation. Except where pre-finished matching fasteners heads are required, use fine finishing nails for exposing nailing, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork, and matching final finish where transparent finish is indicated.

Wood Storage Shelving: Complete the assembly of units and install in the areas indicated, including hardware and accessories as indicated.

ADJUSTMENT, CLEANING, FINISHING AND PROTECTION:
Repair damaged and defective woodwork where possible to eliminate defects functionally and visually; where not possible to repair replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

Clean woodwork on exposed and semi -exposed surfaces. Touch up shop applied finishes restoring damaged or soiled areas.

Protection: Installer of architectural woodwork shall advise Contractor of final protection and maintained conditions necessary to ensure that work will be without damage or deterioration at time of acceptance.

END OF SECTION 06400

Section 06640 - Plastic (FRP) Paneling

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Glass-fiber reinforced plastic (FRP) wall paneling, trim accessories, and supplementary items necessary for installation.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Manufacturer’s technical literature for each product and system indicated.

1. Include manufacturer's specifications for materials, finishes, construction details, installation instructions, and recommendations for maintenance.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.

C. Samples for Verification Purposes: Sets for each color, texture, and pattern specified, showing the full range of variations expected in these characteristics, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

D. Product Schedule: Use same designations indicated on the Finish Schedule and Drawings.

E. Product Test Reports: Written reports based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by qualified testing agency indicating that each product complies with requirements.

F. Manufacturer’s Project Acceptance Document: Certification by the manufacturer that its product(s) are approved, acceptable, suitable for use in specific locations, for specific details, and for applications indicated, specified, or required.

G. Qualification Data: For installer.

1. For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of Architects and Owners, and other information specified.

H. Maintenance Data: To include in maintenance manuals.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Experience: Installer with not less than 2 years experience in performing specified Work similar to scope of this Project, with a record of successful in-service performance and completion of projects for a period of not less than 2 years, and with sufficient production capability, facilities, and personnel to produce required Work.

2. Supervision: Installer shall maintain a competent supervisor who is at Project during times specified Work is in progress, and, who is experienced in installing systems similar to type and scope required for Project.
3. Manufacturer Acceptance: Installer shall be certified, approved, licensed, or acceptable to manufacturer to install products.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
3. Testing Agency: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install plastic paneling until spaces are enclosed and weathertight and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of products and systems with interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a successful installation without failure.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Acceptable Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements of Contract Documents as judged by the Architect, provide product by one of manufacturers listed. If not listed, submit as substitution according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 01 Section “Substitution Procedures”.

1. Marlite (Basis of Design)
2. Crane Composites, Inc. (Kemlite).
3. Nudo Products, Inc.

B. Basis of Design (Product Standard): Contract Documents are based on products and systems specified to establish a standard of quality.

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Single Source Responsibility: Furnish each type of product from single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials only as recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.

2.3 PLASTIC (FRP) SHEET PANELING

A. General: Gelcoat-finished, glass-fiber reinforced plastic panels complying with ASTM D 5319.

1. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.09 in (2.2 mm).
2. Surface Finish: Molded pebble texture.
3. Color: White (Provide Sample)

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Trim Accessories: Manufacturer's standard vinyl extrusions designed to retain and cover edges of panels. Provide division bars, inside corners, outside corners, and caps as needed to conceal edges.

1. Color: Match panels.

B. Exposed Fasteners: Nylon drive rivets as recommended by panel manufacturer.

C. Concealed Mounting Splines: Continuous, H-shaped aluminum extrusions designed to fit into grooves routed in edges of factory-laminated panels and to be fastened to substrate.

D. Adhesive: As recommended by plastic paneling manufacturer.

1. VOC Content: 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. Sealant: Sealant as recommended by plastic paneling manufacturer and complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Acceptance of Surfaces and Conditions: Examine substrates to receive products and systems and associated work for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance. Proceed only when unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner complying with Contract Documents. Starting work within a particular area will be construed as acceptance of surface conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Installation Quality Standards: In addition to standards listed elsewhere, perform Work according to following, unless otherwise specified:

1. Respective manufacturer’s written installation instructions.
2. Accepted submittals.
3. Contract Documents.

3.3 PREPARATION

A. General: Comply with manufacturer’s instructions, recommendations, and specifications for cleaning and surface preparation. Surfaces shall have no defects, contaminants, or errors which would result in poor or potentially defective installation or would cause latent defects in Work.

B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of adhesive, including oil, grease, dirt, and dust.

C. Condition panels by unpacking and placing in installation space before installation according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

D. Lay out paneling before installing. Locate panel so that trimmed panels at corners are not less than 12 in (300 mm) wide.

1. Mark plumb lines on substrate at trim accessory locations for accurate installation.
2. Locate trim accessories to allow clearance at panel edges according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Install plastic paneling according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install panels in a full spread of adhesive.

C. Install trim accessories with adhesive.

D. Fill grooves in trim accessories with sealant before installing panels and bed inside corner trim in a bead of sealant.

E. Maintain uniform space between panels and wall fixtures. Fill space with sealant.

F. Remove excess sealant and smears as paneling is installed. Clean with solvent recommended by sealant manufacturer and then wipe with clean dry cloths until no residue remains.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07115 - SHEET WATERPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

Extent of each type of sheet waterproofing work is indicated on drawings.

Types of sheet waterproofing specified in this section include the following;
Bathroom Sheet Waterproofing

QUALITY ASSURANCE:

Manufacturer: Obtain primary waterproofing materials of each type required from a single manufacturer, to greatest extent possible. Provide secondary materials only as recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.

Installer: Firm with not less than 3 years of successful experience in installation of waterproofing similar to requirements for this project and which is acceptable to manufacturer of primary waterproofing materials.

SUBMITTALS:

Product Data: Submit product data and general recommendations from waterproofing materials manufacturer, for types of waterproofing required. Include data substantiating that materials comply with requirements.

JOB CONDITIONS:

Substrate: Proceed with work after substrate construction, openings, and penetrating work have been completed.

Weather: Proceed with waterproofing and associated work only when existing and forecasted weather conditions will permit work to be performed in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations and warranty requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

MATERIALS:

General: Provide sheet waterproofing materials complying with required performance. Other similar materials certified in writing to be equal-or-better than specified may be used if acceptable to Architect.

WATERPROOFING:
Sheet Membrane Waterproofing as manufactured by Schluter® and carrying name brand permanently imprinted at regular intervals, shall be used for all concealed flashing and/or

membrane waterproofing, and installed in accordance with the manufactures directions and recommendations.

Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

Schluter®- equal to KERDI Shower System system
All other products must receive prior approval

MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS:

Adhesives: Provide types of adhesive compound and tapes recommended by waterproofing sheet manufacturer, for bonding to substrate (if required), for waterproof sealing of seams in membrane, and for waterproof sealing of joints between membrane and flashings, adjoining surfaces and projections through membrane.

Primers: Provide type of concrete primer recommended by manufacturer of sheet waterproofing material for applications required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

PREPARATION:

Prior to installation of waterproofing and associated work, meet at project site with Installer of each component of associated work, inspection and testing agency representatives (if any), and installers of work requiring coordination with waterproofing work. Review material selections and procedures to be followed in performing work.

INSTALLATION:

Comply with manufacturer's instructions for handling and installation of sheet waterproofing materials.

1. The substrate must be clean, even, and load bearing. The thin-set mortar used for bonding KERDI must be appropriate for the substrate, and it must penetrate and engage the KERDI fleece. Generally, an unmodified thin-set mortar is used. Cut KERDI to size prior to application.
2. Apply thin-set mortar to the substrate using a 1/4" x 3/16" (6 mm x 5 mm) V-notched trowel or the Schluter®-KERDI-TROWEL, which features a 1/8" x 1/8" (3 mm x 3 mm) square-notched design (Note the open time of the mortar). Press KERDI fully into the bond coat. Work the KERDI into the mortar by applying pressure to the membrane with the flat side of the trowel (held at an angle) in smooth, diagonal sweeps. Air bubbles must be removed.
3. Seams can be constructed by overlapping the edges of the KERDI by 2" (5 cm) using unmodified thin-set mortar, or by abutting the edges and covering the joint with Schluter®-KERDI-BAND using an unmodified thin-set mortar.
4. For inside and outside corners, adhere preformed Schluter®-KERDI-KERECK-F corners. For floor/wall connections, use KERDI-BAND. Install Schluter®-KERDI-SEAL-PS pipe seals at the showerhead, body sprays, etc. and Schluter®-KERDI-SEAL-MV at the mixing valve. As an alternative to KERDI-SEAL-PS/-MV, Schluter®-KERDI-FIX or other suitable sealant can be used to seal pipe protrusions and protect moisture-sensitive solid backing panels at the mixing valve.
5. Connections to fixed building elements can be achieved by using KERDI, KERDI-

BAND, or KERDI-FLEX in conjunction with KERDI-FIX, suitable trowel-applied waterproofing materials (such as urethane or similar), that require atmospheric moisture to cure, or other suitable sealing compounds.

6. KERDI shall be separated at existing expansion, structural, and flexible edge joints. Cover the joints with KERDI-FLEX. To allow for greater movement, the center section of the KERDI-FLEX can be tucked into the cavity of the expansion joint prior to bonding.
7. Once the entire membrane — with seams, corners, and connections — has been completely bonded, and therefore waterproofed, the covering may be applied.
8. Water testing of the assembly prior to setting tile, wait 24 hours to allow for final set of the mortar before testing to ensure waterproof performance of the assembly at seams and connections.
9. For tile installations using the thin-bed method, apply unmodified thin-set mortar directly to the exposed KERDI surface and install the tiles, ensuring full coverage. For acid-resistant coverings, use an epoxy adhesive to set and grout the tile.

Coordinate installation of waterproofing materials and associated work to provide complete system complying with combined recommendations of manufacturers and installers involved in work. Schedule installation to minimize period of exposure of sheet waterproofing materials.

Extend waterproofing sheet and flashings as shown to provide complete membrane over area indicated to be waterproofed. Seal to projections through membrane and seal seams. Bond to vertical surfaces and also, where shown or recommended by manufacturer, bond to horizontal surfaces.

At structural steel members, mechanically fasten waterproofing to top flange or steel members at 48 inches o.c. and a maximum of 24" vertically.

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS:

PROTECTION:
Institute all required procedures for protection of completed membrane during installation of work over membrane and throughout remainder of construction period. Do not allow traffic of any type on unprotected membrane.

END OF SECTION 07115

SECTION 07200 - INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

Extent of insulation work is shown on drawings and indicated by provisions of this section.

Applications of insulation specified in this section include the following:

Blanket type building insulation

Board Type Building Insulation, concealed

QUALITY ASSURANCE:
Thermal Conductivity: Thicknesses indicated are for thermal conductivity (k value at 75 degrees F or 24 degrees C) specified for each material. Provide adjusted thicknesses as directed for equivalent use of material having a different thermal conductivity. Where insulation is identified by "R" value, provide thickness required to achieve indicated value.

Fire and Insurance Ratings: Comply with fire resistance, flammability and insurance ratings indicated, and comply with regulations as interpreted by governing authorities.

Federal Specifications: Where compliance with FS standard is indicated, specified requirements for marking individual boards/batts/blankets are waived, provided packages of units are labeled to show compliance.

SUBMITTALS:
Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product specifications and installation instructions for each type of insulation and vapor barrier material required.

PRODUCT HANDLING:
General Protection: Protect insulations from physical damage and from becoming wet, soiled, or covered with ice or snow. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for handling, storage and protection during installation.

Protection for plastic insulation:

Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.

Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to project site ahead of installation time. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

MATERIALS:

Cavity Wall Insulation: Extruded Polystyrene Board Insulation (EPsBd Ins): Rigid, Closed cell, extruded polystyrene thermal board insulation with integral high density skin; complying with ASTM C 578-95, Type IV, min 25 psi compressive strength, k vale of 0.20; maximum water absorption 0.1% by volume; 1.1 perm inch max. water vapor transmission. Thickness: As Noted. Provide manufacturer's standard lengths and widths.

Available Manufacturers:

Dow Chemical Co.; Midland, MI
UC Industries/U.S. Gypsum; Chicago, IL

Mastic: 1. For Styrofoam SM: Styrofoam Brand No. 11.

Mineral/Glass Fiber Blanket/Batt Insulation (M/GFB Ins): Inorganic (non-asbestos) fibers formed with hinders into resilient flexible blankets or semi rigid batts; FS HH I 521, Type as indicate, densities of not less than 0.5 lb. per cu. ft. for glass fiber units and not less than 2.5 lb. per cu. ft. for mineral wool units, k value of 0.27; manufacturer's standard lengths and widths as required to coordinate with spaces to be insulated; types as follows:

Provide Type I - to be used in metal stud exterior partitions, “Thermal FSK-25 Faced Batts” EcoTouch Pink FIBERGLAS by Owens Corning or equal with the following characteristics:

Mildew and Fungi resistance, Maximum Flame Spread Index 25 or less, Smoke Developed index of 50.
Provide an R-value of 19, when 6" studs are used and an R-value of 13 when 3-5/8” studs are used.

Available Manufacturer's:
Certain Teed Products Corp.; Valley Forge, PA.
Clecon Inc.; Cleveland, OH.
Manville Bldg. Materials Corp.; Denver, Co.
Mizell Bros. Co.; Atlanta, GA.
Owens Corning Fiberglass Corp.; Toledo, OH.

Provide sound attenuation blankets at interior metal stud partitions. Refer to Section 07201 for more information.

Provide Type II: Foam-in-place cavity wall insulation, with R-value including 8" cmu, 14.29 at 60lb. Density. The foamed -in-place is to be placed in the walls per manufacturer’s specifications. The material shall be applied in such a manner as to assure complete cavity fill. The product shall be applied with a liquid ratios at the mixing gun being within the manufacturer’s specified range. A cubic foot of the fresh foam shall weigh between 2lb. 80z. And 3lb. 6oz. After the installation of the material, allow two weeks for curing before painting the walls.
The installation of Thermco foam insulation shall be contracted only by a firm which is certified and/ or approved by the manufacturer of the insulation.

After the foam is installed and cured, walls shall be protected from excessive moisture (rain) for 24 hours.

PART 3 EXECUTION

INSPECTION AND PREPARATION:

Installer must examine substrates and conditions under which insulation work is to be performed, and must notify Contractor in writing of unsatisfactory conditions. Do not proceed with insulation work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to Installer.

Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulations or vapor barriers, including removal of projections which might puncture vapor retarders.

INSTALLATION

GENERAL:

Comply with manufacturer's instructions for particular conditions of installation in each case. If printed instructions are not available or do not apply to project conditions, consult manufacturer's technical representative for specific recommendations before proceeding with work.

Extend insulation full thickness as shown over entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions, and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections which interfere with placement.

Apply a single layer of insulation of required thickness, unless otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

CAVITY - WALL AND MASONRY-CELL INSULATION:

On units of plastic insulation, install small pads of adhesive spaced approximately 1'-0" o.c. both ways on inside face, as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions in cavity, with edges butted tightly both ways. Press units firmly against inside width of masonry or other construction as shown.

Wedge insulation from outside wythe of construction with small fragments of masonry materials spaced 2' -0" o.c. both ways.

GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION:

Apply insulation units to substrate by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's recommendations. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.

Set vapor retarder faced units with vapor retarder to warm side of construction, except as otherwise indicated. Do not obstruct ventilation spaces, except for fire stopping.

Set reflective foil faced units accurately with air space in front of foil as shown. Provide not less than 0.75" air space where possible.

Lap edges of sheets of vapor barrier not less than 4" so as to provide complete coverage of protected areas.

PROTECTION:

General: Protect installed insulation and vapor retarders from harmful weather exposures and from possible physical abuses, where possible by non-delayed installation of concealing work or, where that is not possible, by temporary covering or enclosure. Installer shall advise Contractor of exposure hazards, including possible sources of deterioration and fire hazards.

CLEAN-UP:

Remove and dispose of excess insulation, wrappings and other waste materials.

END OF SECTION 07200

SECTION 07201 - SOUND ATTENUATION BLANKETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

SCOPE

A. Perform all work required completing the Sound Attenuation Blanket Installation as indicated by the Contract Documents and furnish all supplementary items necessary for their proper installation.

B. The requirements of Division 0 - "Bidding and Contract Requirements" and Division 1 - "General Requirements" of this Project Manual shall apply to all work required for this Section.

SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Submit manufacturer's literature and mark sufficiently to indicate compliance with these specifications.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

ACCEPTABLE PRODUCT/MATERIAL MANUFACTURERS

A. A specific product or material manufactured by any of the following listed manufacturers is "acceptable" (not "approved") only if the specific product or material can evidence exact compliance with the Contract Documents.

    1. Owens/Corning Fiberglass Corp.;
    2. Forty-eight Insulations, Inc.
    3. Manville
    4. Certain Teed Corporation
    5. United States Gypsum

B. Refer to Section 01630 - Substitutions and Product Options for manufacturers not listed above.

MATERIALS

A. INSULATION: Sound Attenuation Blanket, 3 5/8” thickness for 4” partition and 6 ½” thick for 6" partition, unless otherwise indicated. Rated noncombustible when tested per ASTM E136.

PART 3 - EXECUTION:

INSTALLATION

A. Install at metal stud wall locations indicated.
B. Install in exact accordance with manufacturer's latest published requirements, specifications and details, and as indicated.

PROTECTION AND CLEANING

A. Protect all finished surfaces from damage or staining. Remove and replace all damaged or stained products.

B. Remove excess materials and debris from site.

END OF SECTION 07201

07220 LIGHTWEIGHT INSULATING CONCRETE ROOF INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Lightweight Insulating Concrete Application to Prepared Substrate

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section [06100] - Rough Carpentry

B. Section [05310] - Roof Deck

C. Section [07520] – Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing

D. Section [07600] - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

References in these specifications to standards, test methods and codes, are implied to mean the latest edition of each such standard adopted. The following is an abbreviated list of associations, institutions, and societies which may be used as references throughout these specifications.

ASTM American Society for Testing and Materials
Philadelphia, PA

FM Factory Mutual Engineering and Research
Norwood, MA

UL Underwriters Laboratories
Northbrook, IL

1.04 SUBMITTALS

All submittals which do not conform to the following requirements will be rejected.

A. Submittal of Equals: Submit lightweight insulating concrete systems to be considered as equals to the specified roof system no less than 10 days prior to bid date. Primary lightweight insulating concrete systems which have been reviewed and accepted as equals to the specified system will be listed in an addendum prior to bid date; only then will equals be accepted at bidding. Submittals shall include the following:

1. Submit manufacturer's instructions for proper placement of the proposed lightweight insulating concrete roof insulation system.

2. Submit documentation confirming compliance with FM **1-195** Windstorm Resistance (-97.5 psf maximum design pressure). Classification utilizing the specific roof membrane system proposed for use on this project.

a) Submit documentation confirming that the specific expanded polystyrene proposed for use on this project is approved by Factory Mutual for use in conjunction with the proposed lightweight insulating concrete system.

3. Submit a letter from the supplier of the proposed lightweight insulating concrete system confirming that the expanded polystyrene used as a component in the lightweight insulating concrete system is to be furnished by the supplier of the proposed lightweight insulating concrete system.

4. Submit shop drawings including a roof plan, roof slopes, and thickness of insulation.

5. Submit a sample copy of the warranty covering the proposed lightweight insulating concrete system.

6. Submit a sample copy of the roof system guarantee covering the proposed lightweight insulating concrete system and roof membrane system.

7. Submit a letter from the roof membrane manufacturer confirming the intention to issue the roof system guarantee covering the proposed lightweight insulating concrete system and roof membrane system at project completion.

8. Submit a letter from the proposed lightweight insulating concrete system supplier confirming that the Contractor is approved to install the proposed lightweight insulating concrete system.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Acceptable Contractor: The contractor must be certified in writing prior to bid by the supplier to install the proposed lightweight insulating concrete system.

B. Agency Approvals: The proposed lightweight insulating concrete system shall conform to the following requirements. No other testing agency approvals will be accepted.

1. **Underwriters Laboratories:** Tested by Underwriters Laboratories in accordance with the procedures of ASTM E 119 and listed in the most recent Underwriters Laboratories Fire Resistance Directory. Lightweight insulating concrete roof insulation components are defined by Underwriters Laboratories under sections CCVW for foamed plastic and CCOX for floor or roof - topping mixture in the latest edition of the Underwriters Laboratories Fire Resistance Directory.

2. **Factory Mutual:** Tested by Factory Mutual Research and listed in FM Global RoofNav as non-combustible or Class 1, and for **1-195** windstorm classification(-97.5 psf maximum design pressure) utilizing the specific roof membrane system proposed for use on this project.

1.06 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Delivery: Deliver materials in the supplier's original unopened packages, fully identified as to manufacturer, brand or other identifying data and bearing the proper Underwriters Laboratories label.

B. Storage: Store Insulcel concentrate at temperatures between 52ºF and 80ºF (11º - 27º C). Expanded polystyrene board should not be stored in areas of standing water prior to application but can be exposed to rainwater before application. Boards must be clean and free from foreign substances.

1.07 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

A. Requirements Prior to Job Start

1. **Notification:** Give a minimum of 5 days notice to the Owner and manufacturer prior to commencing any work and notify both parties on a daily basis of any change in work schedule.

2. **Permits:** Obtain all permits required by local agencies and pay all fees which may be required for the performance of the work.

3. **Safety:** Familiarize every member of the application crew with all fire and safety regulations recommended by OSHA, NRCA and other industry or local governmental groups.

B. Environmental Requirements

1. **Precipitation:** Do not apply materials during precipitation or in the event there is a probability of precipitation during application. Take adequate precautions to ensure that materials and building interiors are protected from possible moisture damage or contamination.

2. **Temperature Restrictions:** When air temperatures of 40ºF (4.4ºC) or above are predicted to occur within the first 24 hours after placement, normal mixing and application procedures may be used. When air temperatures of 32ºF to 40ºF (0ºC - 4.4ºC) are predicted to occur within the first 24 hours after placement, the Contractor may opt to increase the Portland cement quantity 15% by weight. Do not install the lightweight insulating concrete system when air temperatures are below 32ºF (0ºC).

1.08 WARRANTY/GUARANTEE

A. Insulation System Warranty: Upon successful completion of the project, and after all post installation procedures have been completed, furnish the Owner with the insulation system manufacturer's 30 year labor and materials warranty. The insulation system warranty shall include the composite roof deck system consisting of pregenerated foam and polystyrene insulation panels. All repair or replacement costs covered under the guarantee shall be borne by the insulation system manufacturer. The guarantee shall be a term type, without deductibles or limitations on coverage amount, and be issued at no additional cost to the Owner. Specific items covered during the term of the insulation system warranty include:

1. The actual resistance to heat flow through the roof insulation will be at least 80% of the design thermal resistance, provided that the roofing membrane is free of leaks.

2. The roof insulation will remain in a reroofable condition should the roof membrane require replacement (excluding damage caused by fastener pullout during removal of the old membrane.)

3. The Insulating Concrete Warranty will not limit, by geographic location, the owners rights for claims, actions, and/or proceedings.

4. The roof insulation material will not cause structural damage to the building as a result of expansion from thermal or chemical action.

B. Roof System Guarantee: Upon successful completion of the project, and after all post installation procedures have been completed, furnish the Owner with the roof system manufacturer's 10 year labor and materials roof system guarantee. The roof system guarantee shall include both the roofing and flashing membranes, and the specified new lightweight insulating concrete system consisting of pre-generated foam, patented-pre-formed polystyrene panels, and base sheet fasteners. All repair or replacement costs covered under the guarantee shall be borne by the roofing membrane manufacturer. The guarantee shall be a term type, without deductibles or limitations on coverage amount, and be issued at no additional cost to the Owner. Specific items covered under the roof system guarantee include:

1. The actual resistance to heat flow through the roof insulation will be at least 80% of the design thermal resistance, provided that the roofing membrane is free of leaks;

2. Should a roof leak occur, the insulating performance of the roof insulation will be at least 80% of the design thermal resistance within a 2 year period following repair of the leak.

3. The roof insulation will remain in a reroofable condition should the roof membrane require replacement (excluding damage caused by fastener pullout during removal of the old membrane.)

4. The roof insulation material will not cause structural damage to the building as a result of expansion from thermal or chemical action.

> 30 Year Roof System Guarantee

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Provide a lightweight insulating concrete roof insulation system incorporating pregenerated foam and expanded polystyrene board supplied by a single manufacturer.

> Equal to Insulcel Roof Insulation System by Siplast, Inc., Irving, TX

2.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Lightweight Concrete System Description: Provide materials used in the lightweight concrete roof insulation system conforming to the following.

1. Galvanized Metal Deck: Corrugated steel decking incorporating a pre-applied galvanized coating conforming to a minimum Class G-60 as specified in ASTM A 525 and having slots in the flutes equal to a minimum of 0.5% of the deck area. Refer to general notes on the structural drawings and Specification Section 05300 for metal deck specifications and attachment requirements.

2. Portland Cement: Portland cement conforming to Type I, II, or III as defined by ASTM C 150.

3. Foam Concentrate: Protein based foam concentrate conforming to ASTM C 869 and ASTM C 796.

   > Equal to Insulcel PB Foam Concentrate by Siplast, Inc., Irving, TX

4. Expanded Polystyrene Insulation Board: Expanded polystyrene (EPS) insulation board having a nominal density of 1 pcf (16 kg/m³) defined as Type I by ASTM C 578 and containing approximately 3% open area. Each bundle of board shall be delivered to the job site with clear identification as to manufacturer and shall carry the Factory Mutual approval label and the Underwriter's Laboratories Classified label on each bundle.

   > Equal to Insulperm Insulation Board by Siplast, Inc., Irving, TX

5. Water: Potable water that is clean and free of deleterious amounts of acid, alkali and organic materials.

2.03 MIX DESIGN

A. Density: Mix Portland cement and pregenerated foam with water to achieve a wet density ranging from 38 to 48 pcf (609 to 769 kg/m³), resulting in a minimum dry density of 30 pcf (481 kg/m³) and minimum compressive strength of 200 psi (1380 kPa).

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. General: Ensure that all surfaces to receive lightweight insulating concrete are free of oil, grease, paints/primers, loose mill scale, dirt, or other foreign substances. Where necessary, cleaning or other corrections of surfaces to receive lightweight insulating concrete is the responsibility of the party causing the unacceptable condition of the substrate.

B. Substrate Acceptance: With the general contractor present, examine surfaces to receive the roof insulation system and determine that the surfaces are acceptable prior to placement of the lightweight insulating concrete system.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. General: Remove water or any other substance that would interfere with bonding of the lightweight concrete system.

3.03 APPLICATION

A. General: Provide equipment and application procedures conforming to the material supplier's application instructions.

B. Applications Not Incorporating Expanded Polystyrene Panels: Place lightweight insulating concrete in a 2 inch (25 mm) minimum thickness over the top corrugation of metal decks, over the surface of a prepared substrate, or over the existing membrane surface in recover applications.

C. Applications Incorporating Expanded Polystyrene Panels: When the specified expanded polystyrene insulation panels are to be incorporated into the lightweight insulating concrete system, place a 1/8 inch (3 mm) minimum thickness of insulating concrete slurry coat over top of the prepared substrate or for metal deck applications, fill the flutes and place a 1/8 inch (3 mm) minimum slurry over the top corrugation of metal deck before embedding the expanded polystyrene insulation panels. Place the thickness of expanded polystyrene insulation panels shown in the approved shop drawings within 30 minutes of applying the insulating concrete slurry coat to the substrate. When metal deck substrates are used, place the expanded polystyrene insulation panels in a brick-like pattern. The maximum allowable panel step in a stair-step design is 1 inch (25 mm). Fill the holes in the expanded polystyrene insulation panels and place a 2 inch (51 mm) minimum thickness of insulating concrete over top of the expanded polystyrene insulation panels within the same day's application.

D. Thermal Resistance: Install the specified lightweight insulating concrete system to provide for an [average/minimum] thermal value of R-[25] or as shown on the architectural details/drawings.

E. Slope: Install the specified lightweight insulating concrete system to provide for a minimum positive roof slope of [1/4"] inch per foot. See the structural drawings for slope provided by the roof framing system.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Protection: Avoid roof-top traffic over the roof insulation system until one can walk over the surface without creating surface damage.

B. Compressive Strength Testing: The Architect has the option to select an independent testing laboratory to randomly sample the top placement of insulating concrete to verify the thickness and density, and to secure and test compressive strength cylinders in accordance with ASTM C 495. The Owner will be responsible for the cost and engagement of the independent testing laboratory services.

C. Application Monitoring: Monitor the thickness and wet density of the lightweight insulating concrete at the time of placement to determine conformance to the manufacturer's

requirements. Monitor the placement of proper thickness of polystyrene insulation board in accordance with the contract documents.

D. Fastener Withdrawal Testing: Conduct a base ply fastener pull test 3 or more days following the application of the lightweight insulating concrete to ensure a minimum withdrawal resistance of 40 pounds (18 kg) per fastener.

3.05 PATCHING

A. Patching: Perform all patching and repairing of insulating concrete using Zono-Patch or other materials approved by the lightweight insulating concrete supplier.

SECTION 07240 - EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM CLASS PB

PART I – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. This document is to be used in preparing specifications for projects utilizing the Dryvit Outsulation System. For complete product description and usage refer to:
   1. Dryvit Outsulation System Data Sheet, DS447
   2. Dryvit Outsulation System Application Instructions, DS204
   3. Dryvit Outsulation System Installation Details, DS107

B. Related Sections
   1. Unit Masonry – Section 04200
   2. Concrete – Sections 03010
   3. Cold Formed Metal Framing – Section 05400
   4. Wood Framing – Section 06100
   5. Joint Protection – Section 07900
   6. Flashing – Section 07600
   7. Air Barrier System– Section 07250

1.02. REFERENCES

A. Section Includes
   1. ASTM B 117 (Federal Test Standard 141A Method 6061) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
   2. ASTM C 150 Standard Specification for Portland Cement
   3. ASTM C 297 Standard Test Method for Flatwise Tensile Strength of Sandwich Constructions
   4. ASTM C 1177 Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing
   5. ASTM C 1396 (formerly C 79) Standard Specification for Gypsum Board
   6. ASTM D 968 (Federal Test Standard 141A Method 6191) Standard Test Methods for Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coatings by Falling Abrasive
   7. ASTM D 2247 (Federal Test Standard 141A Method 6201) Standard Practice for Testing Water Resistance of Coatings in 100% Relative Humidity
   8. ASTM D 2898 Standard Test Method for Accelerated Weathering of Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood for Fire Testing
   9. ASTM D 3273 Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber
   10. ASTM D 4060 Standard Test Method for Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coatings by the Taber Abraser
   11. ASTM E 84 Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
   12. ASTM E 96 Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
   13. ASTM E 119 Standard Method for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials
   14. ASTM E 330 Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
   15. ASTM E 331 Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
   16. ASTM E 2098 Test Method for Determining the Tensile Breaking Strength of Glass Fiber Reinforcing Mesh for use in Class PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS), after Exposure to Sodium Hydroxide Solution
   17. ASTM E 2134 Test Method for Evaluating the Tensile-Adhesion Performance of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS)
   18. ASTM E 2430 Standard Specification for Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) Thermal Insulation Boards for use in Exterior Insulation and Finish System (EIFS)

19. ASTM E 2485 (formerly EIMA Std. 101.01) Standard Test Method for Freeze-Thaw Resistance of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) and Water-Resistive Barrier Coatings
20. ASTM E 2486 (formerly EIMA Std. 101.86) Standard Test Method for Impact Resistance of Class PB and PI Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS)
21. ASTM E 2568 Standard Specification for PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems
22. ASTM G 155 (Federal Test Standard 141A Method 6151) Standard Practice for Operating-Xenon Arc Light Apparatus, for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials
23. DS131, Dryvit Expanded Polystyrene Insulation Board Specification
24. DS135, Specification for Outsulation System with Mechanical Fasteners
25. DS151, Custom Brick™ Polymer System Specifications for Use on Vertical Walls
26. DS152, Dryvit Cleaning and Recoating
27. DS153, Dryvit Expansion Joints and Sealants
28. DS159, Dryvit Water Vapor Transmission
29. DS456, Rapidry DM™ 35-50 or DS457, Rapidry DM™ 50-75 Data Sheets
30. DS494, Dryvit AquaFlash® System
31. DS455, Backstop® NT™
32. DS705, Reflectit™
33. Mil Std E5272 Environmental Testing
34. Mil Std 810B Environmental Test Methods
35. UBC Std 26-4 (Formerly UBC 17-6) Multi-Story Fire Evaluation of Exterior Non Load-Bearing Foam Plastic Insulated Wall Systems
36. NFPA 268 Standard Test Method for Determining Ignitibility of Exterior Wall Assemblies Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source
37. NFPA 285 Standard Method of Test for the Evaluation of Flammability Characteristics of Exterior Non Load-Bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components Using the Intermediate-Scale, Multistory Test Apparatus
38. ULC S101 Standard Methods of Fire Endurance Tests of Building Construction Materials
39. ANSI FM 4880 Evaluating Insulated Wall or Wall and Roof/Ceiling Assemblies; Plastic Interior Finish Materials; Plastic Exterior Building Panels; Wall/Ceiling Coating Systems; Interior or Exterior Finish Systems

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Base Coat: Material used to encapsulate one or more layers of reinforcing mesh fully embedded that is applied to the outside surface of the EPS.
B. Building Expansion Joint: A joint through the entire building structure designed to accommodate structural movement.
C. Contractor: The contractor that installs the Outsulation System to the substrate.
D. Dryvit: Dryvit Systems, Inc., the manufacturer of the Outsulation System, a Rhode Island corporation.
E. Expansion Joint: A structural discontinuity in the Outsulation System.
F. Finish: An acrylic-based coating, available in a variety of textures and colors that is applied over the base coat.
G. Insulation Board: Expanded polystyrene (EPS) insulation board, which is affixed to the substrate and creates a layer of continuous insulation.
H. Panel Erector: The contractor who installs the panelized Outsulation System.
I. Panel Fabricator: The contractor who fabricates the panelized Outsulation System.
J. Reinforcing Mesh: Glass fiber mesh(es) used to reinforce the base coat and to provide impact resistance.
K. Sheathing: A substrate in sheet form.
L. Substrate: The material to which the Outsulation System is affixed.
M. Substrate System: The total wall assembly including the attached substrate to which the Outsulation System is affixed.

1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. General: The Dryvit Outsulation System is an Exterior Insulation and Finish System, Class PB, consisting of an adhesive, expanded polystyrene insulation board, base coat, reinforcing mesh(es) and finish. Mechanically attached systems shall conform to Dryvit specification DS135.

B. Methods of Installation

1. Field Applied: The Outsulation System is applied to the substrate system in place.
2. Panelized: The Outsulation System is shop-applied to the prefabricated wall panels.

C. Design Requirements

1. Acceptable substrates for the Outsulation System shall be:
   a. Exterior grade gypsum sheathing meeting ASTM C 1396 (formerly C 79) requirements for water-resistant core or Type X core at the time of application of the Outsulation System.
   b. Exterior sheathing having a water-resistant core with fiberglass mat facers meeting ASTM C 1177.
   c. Exterior fiber reinforced cement or calcium silicate boards.
   d. APA Exterior or Exposure 1 Rated Plywood, Grade C-D or better, nominal 1/2 in (12.7 mm), minimum installed with the C face out.
2. Deflection of substrate systems shall not exceed 1/240 times the span.
3. The substrate shall be flat within 1/4 in (6.4 mm) in a 4 ft (1.2 m) radius.
4. The slope of inclined surfaces shall not be less than 6 in 12 (27°), and the length shall not exceed 12 in (305 mm).
5. All areas requiring an impact resistance classification higher than “standard”, as defined by ASTM E 2486 (formerly EIMA Std. 101.86), shall be as detailed in the drawings and described in the contract documents. Refer to Section 1.04.D.1.c of this specification.
6. Expansion Joints
   a. Design and location of expansion joints in the Outsulation System is the responsibility of the project designer and shall be noted on the project drawings. As a minimum, expansion joints shall be placed at the following locations:
      1) Where expansion joints occur in the substrate system
      2) Where building expansion joints occur
      3) At floor lines in wood frame construction
      4) At floor lines of non-wood framed buildings where significant movement is expected
      5) Where the Outsulation System abuts dissimilar materials
      6) Where the substrate type changes
      7) Where prefabricated panels abut one another
      8) In continuous elevations at intervals not exceeding 75 ft (23 m)
      9) Where significant structural movement occurs such as changes in roofline, building shape or structural system
7. Terminations
   a. Prior to applying the Dryvit Outsulation System, wall openings shall be treated with Dryvit AquaFlash System or Flashing Tape. Refer to Dryvit Outsulation System Installation Details, DS107.
   b. The Outsulation System shall be held back from adjoining materials around openings and penetrations such as windows, doors and mechanical equipment a minimum of 3/4 in (19 mm) for sealant application. See Dryvit's Outsulation System Installation Details, DS107.
   c. The system shall be terminated a minimum of 8 in (203 mm) above finished grade.
   d. Sealants
      1) Shall be manufactured and supplied by others.

2) Shall be compatible with Outsulation System materials. Refer to current Dryvit Publication DS153 for listing of sealants tested by sealant manufacturer for compatibility.
3) The sealant backer rod shall be of closed cell.

8. Vapor Retarders – The use and location of vapor retarders within a wall assembly is the responsibility of the project designer and shall comply with local building code requirements. The type and location shall be noted on the project drawings and specifications. Vapor retarders may be inappropriate in certain climates and can result in condensation within the wall assembly. Refer to Dryvit Publication DS159 for additional information.
9. Dark Colors - The use of dark colors must be considered in relation to wall surface temperature as a function of local climatic conditions. Use of dark colors in high temperature climates can affect the performance of the system.
10. Flashing: Shall be provided at all roof-wall intersections, windows, doors, chimneys, decks, balconies and other areas as necessary to prevent water from entering behind the Outsulation System.

D. Performance Requirements
1. The Outsulation System shall have been tested as follows:
a. Durability

TEST	TEST METHOD	CRITERIA	RESULTS
Abrasion Resistance	ASTM D 968	No deleterious effects after 528 quarts (500 liters)	No deleterious effects after 1056 quarts (1000 liters)
Accelerated Weathering	ASTM G 155 Cycle 1	No deleterious effects after 2000 hours	No deleterious effects after 5000 hours
	ASTM G 154 Cycle 1 (QUV)		No deleterious effects after 5000 hours
Freeze-Thaw	ASTM E 2485 Method A	No deleterious effects after 60 cycles	Passed - No deleterious effects after 90 cycles
	ASTM C 67 modified	No deleterious effects after 60 cycles	Passed - No deleterious effects after 60 cycles
	ASTM E 2485 Method A	No deleterious effects after 10 cycles	Passed - No deleterious effects after 10 cycles
Mildew Resistance	ASTM D 3273	No growth during 28 day exposure period	No growth during 60 day exposure period
Water Resistance	ASTM D 2247*	No deleterious effects after 14 days exposure	No deleterious effects after 42 days exposure
Taber Abrasion	ASTM D 4060	N/A	Passed 1000 cycles
Salt Spray Resistance	ASTM B 117*	No deleterious effects after 300 hours exposure	No deleterious effects after 1000 hours exposure
Water Penetration	ASTM E 331*	No water penetration beyond the inner-most plane of the wall after 2 hours at 6.24 psf (299 Pa)	Passed
Water Vapor Transmission	ASTM E 96 Procedure B	Vapor permeable	EPS 5 perm-inch Base Coat* 40 Perms

			Finish** 40 Perms
* Base Coat perm value based on Dryvit Genesis® ** Finish perm value based on Dryvit Quarzputz			

b. Structural

TEST	TEST METHOD	CRITERIA	RESULTS
Tensile Bond	ASTM C 297/E 2134*	Minimum 15 psi (104 kPa) substrate or insulation failure	Minimum 19.1 psi (132 kPa)
Transverse Wind Load	ASTM E 330*	Withstand positive and negative wind loads as specified by the building code	Minimum 90 psf (4.3 kPa)[1] 16 in o.c. framing, 1/2 in sheathing screw attached at 8 in (203 mm) o.c.
* ASTM E 2568 Standard Specification for PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems 1. All Dryvit components remain intact – for higher wind loads contact Dryvit Systems, Inc.			

c. Impact Resistance: In accordance with ASTM E 2486* (formerly EIMA Standard 101.86).

Reinforcing Mesh[1]/Weight oz/yd² (g/m²)	Minimum Tensile Strengths	EIMA Impact Classification	EIMA Impact Range in-lbs (Joules)		Impact Test Results in-lbs (Joules)	
Standard Plus - 6 (203)	200 lbs/in (36 g/cm)	Medium	50-89	(6-10)	56	(6)
Detail Mesh® Short Rolls - 4.3 (146)	150 lbs/in (27 g/cm)	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
Corner Mesh™ - 7.2 (244)	274 lbs/in (49 g/cm)	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
* It shall be colored blue and bear the Dryvit logo for product identification						

d. Fire performance

TEST	TEST METHOD	CRITERIA	RESULTS
Fire Resistance	ASTM E 119	No effect on the fire resistance of a rated wall assembly	Passed 1 & 2 hour non-load bearing
			Passed 2-hour load bearing over wood framing
Ignitability	NFPA 268*	No ignition at 12.5 kw/m² at 20 minutes	Passed
Full Scale Multi-Story Fire Test	UBC Std. 26-4 (formerly 17-6)	1. Resist vertical spread of flame within the core of	Passed over steel framing

		the panel from one story to the next 2. Resist flame propagation over the exterior surface 3. Resist spread of vertical flame over the interior surface from one story to the next 4. Resist significant lateral spread of flame from the compartment of fire origin to adjacent spaces	and wood framing
Intermediate Multi-Story Fire Test	NFPA 285* (UBC 26-9)	1. Resist flame propagation over the exterior surface 2. Resist vertical spread of flame within combustible core/component of panel from one story to the next 3. Resist vertical spread of flame over the interior surface from one story to the next 4. Resist lateral spread of flame from the compartment of fire origin to adjacent spaces	Passed
Full Scale Multi-Story[1] (corner test)	ANSI FM 4880	Resist flame propagation over the exterior surface.	Passed; No height restrictions*
* ASTM E 2568 Standard Specification for PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems [1] Dryvit FM products must be specified			

2. The Outsulation components shall be tested for:
   a. Fire

TEST	TEST METHOD	CRITERIA	RESULTS
Surface Burning Characteristics	ASTM E 84*	All components shall have a: Flame Spread $\leq$ 25 Smoke Developed $\leq$ 450	Passed
* ASTM E 2568 Standard Specification for PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems			

   b. Durability

TEST	TEST METHOD	CRITERIA	RESULTS
Reinforcing Mesh Alkali Resistance of Reinforcing Mesh	ASTM E 2098*	> 120 pli (21dN/cm) retained tensile strength after exposure	Passed
EPS (Physical Properties) Density	ASTM C 303, D 1622	0.95-1.25 lb/ft^3 (15.2-20.0 kg/m^3)	Passed
Thermal Resistance	ASTM C 177, C	4.0 @ 40 °F (4.4 °C)	Passed

	518	3.6 @ 75 °F (23.9 °C)	Passed
Water Absorption	ASTM C 272	2.5 % max. by volume	Passed
Oxygen Index	ASTM D 2863	24% min. by volume	Passed
Compressive Strength	ASTM D 1621 Proc. A	10 psi (69 kPa) min.	Passed
Flexural Strength	ASTM C 203	25 psi (172 kPa) min.	Passed
Flame Spread Smoke Developed	ASTM E 84* ASTM E 84*	25 max. 450 max.	Passed Passed
* ASTM E 2568 Standard Specification for PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems.			

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data – The contractor shall submit to the owner/architect the manufacturer's product data sheets describing products, which will be used on this project.

B. Shop Drawing for Panelized Construction: The panel fabricator shall prepare and submit to the owner/architect complete drawings, showing: wall layout, connections, details, expansion joints and installation sequence.

C. Samples: The contractor shall submit to the owner/architect two (2) samples of the Outsulation System for each finish, texture and color to be used on the project. The same tools and techniques proposed for the actual installation shall be used. Samples shall be of sufficient size to accurately represent each color and texture being utilized on the project.

D. Test Reports – The contractor shall submit to the owner/architect copies of selected test reports verifying the performance of the Outsulation System. Provide TDI test reports showing product meets project wind pressures.

E. Environmental Product Declaration: When requested, the contractor shall submit to the owner/architect copies of the Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) describing the estimated environmental impacts of the Outsulation System.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications

1. System Manufacturer: Shall be Dryvit Systems, Inc. All materials shall be manufactured or sold by Dryvit and shall be purchased from Dryvit or its authorized distributors.
   a. Materials shall be manufactured at a facility covered by a current ISO 9001:2008 and ISO 14001:2004 certification. Certification of the facility shall be done by a registrar accredited by the American National Standards Institute, Registrar Accreditation Board (ANSI-RAB).
2. Contractor: Shall be knowledgeable in the proper installation of the Dryvit Outsulation System and shall be experienced and competent in the installation of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems. Additionally, the contractor shall possess a current Outsulation System Trained Contractor Certificate* issued by Dryvit Systems, Inc.
3. Insulation Board Manufacturer: Shall be listed by Dryvit Systems, Inc., shall be capable of producing the Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) in accordance with current Dryvit Specification for Insulation Board, DS131, and shall subscribe to the Dryvit Third Party Certification and Quality Assurance Program.
4. Panel Fabricator: Shall be a contractor experienced and competent in the fabrication of architectural wall panels and shall possess a current Outsulation System Contractor Certificate* issued by Dryvit Systems, Inc.
5. Panel Erector: Shall be experienced and competent in the installation of architectural wall panel systems and shall be:
   a. The panel fabricator, or
   b. An erector approved by the panel fabricator or
   c. An erector under the direct supervision of the panel fabricator

B. Regulatory Requirements
1. The EPS shall be separated from the interior of the building by a minimum 15-minute thermal barrier.
2. The use and maximum thickness of EPS shall be in accordance with the applicable building codes.

C. Certification
1. The Outsulation System shall be recognized for the intended use by the applicable building code(s).

D. Mock-Up
1. The contractor shall, before the project commences, provide the owner/architect with a mock-up for approval.
2. The mock-up shall be of suitable size as required to accurately represent the products being installed, as well as each color and texture to be utilized on the project.
3. The mock-up shall be prepared with the same products, tools, equipment and techniques required for the actual application. The finish used shall be from the same batch that is being used on the project.
4. The approved mock-up shall be available and maintained at the job site.
5. For panelized construction, the mock-up shall be available and maintained at the panel fabrication location.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. All Dryvit materials shall be delivered to the job site in the original, unopened packages with labels intact.

B. Upon arrival, materials shall be inspected for physical damage, freezing or overheating. Questionable materials shall not be used.
1. Materials shall be stored at the job site, and at all times, in a cool, dry location, out of direct sunlight, protected from weather and other sources of damage. Minimum storage temperature shall be as follows:
a. DPR, PMR™, HDP™, Weatherlastic® and E™ Finishes, Color Prime™, Primus®, Genesis® and NCB™:
40 °F (4 °C).
b. For other products, refer to specific product data sheets.
2. Maximum storage temperature shall not exceed 100 °F (38 °C). NOTE: Minimize exposure of materials to temperatures over 90 °F (32 °C). Finishes exposed to temperatures over 110 °F (43 °C) for even short periods may exhibit skinning, increased viscosity and should be inspected prior to use.

C. Protect all products from inclement weather and direct sunlight.

1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Requirements
1. Application of wet materials shall not take place during inclement weather unless appropriate protection is provided. Protect materials from inclement weather until they are completely dry.
2. At the time of Dryvit product application, the air and wall surface temperatures shall be from 40 °F (4 °C) minimum to 100 °F (38 °C) maximum for the following products:
a. DPR, PMR, HDP, Weatherlastic and E Finishes™, Color Prime, Primus, Genesis and NCB.
b. For other products, refer to specific product data sheets.
3. These temperatures shall be maintained with adequate air ventilation and circulation for a minimum of
24 hours (48 hours for Weatherlastic Finishes, Ameristone, TerraNeo and Lymestone) thereafter, or until the products are completely dry. Refer to published product data sheets for more specific information.

B. Existing Conditions - The contractor shall have access to electric power, clean water, and a clean work area at the location where the Dryvit materials are to be applied.

1.09 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Installation of the Outsulation System shall be coordinated with other construction trades.
B. Sufficient manpower and equipment shall be employed to ensure a continuous operation, free of cold joints, scaffold lines, texture variations, etc.

1.10 LIMITED MATERIALS WARRANTY

A. Dryvit Systems, Inc. shall provide a written limited materials warranty against defective material upon written request. Dryvit shall make no other warranties, expressed or implied. Dryvit does not warrant workmanship. Full details are available from Dryvit Systems, Inc.
B. The applicator shall warrant workmanship separately. Dryvit shall not be responsible for workmanship associated with installation of the Outsulation System.

1.11 DESIGN RESPONSIBILITY

A. It is the responsibility of both the specifier and the purchaser to determine if a product is suitable for its intended use. The designer selected by the purchaser shall be responsible for all decisions pertaining to design, detail, structural capability, attachment details, shop drawings and the like. Dryvit has prepared guidelines in the form of specifications, installation details and product data sheets to facilitate the design process only. Dryvit is not liable for any errors or omissions in design, detail, structural capability, attachment details, shop drawings, or the like, whether based upon the information prepared by Dryvit or otherwise, or for any changes which purchasers, specifiers, designers, or their appointed representatives may make to Dryvit's published comments.

1.12 MAINTENANCE

A. Maintenance and repair shall follow the procedures noted in Dryvit Outsulation Application Instructions, DS204.
B. All Dryvit products are designed to require minimal maintenance. However, as with all building products, depending on location, some cleaning may be required. See Dryvit publication DS152 on Cleaning & Recoating.
C. Sealants and flashings should be inspected on a regular basis and repairs made as necessary.

PART II – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER

A. All components of the Outsulation System shall be supplied or obtained from Dryvit or its authorized distributors. Substitutions or additions of materials other than specified will void the warranty.

Basis of Design: Dryvit Outsulation Plus MD System for Coastal Area

Other acceptable manufacturers systems:
BASF – Senerflex Secondary Weather Barrier Design
Sto Corp – Sto Therm ci Essence

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: Shall be Type I or II, meeting ASTM C 150, white or gray in color, fresh and free of lumps.
B. Water: Shall be clean and free of foreign matter.

C. Mechanical Fasteners (required when installing in accordance with DS135): Shall be Wind-lock's Wind Devil™ plates, or equivalent, used in conjunction with corrosion resistant fasteners appropriate for the substrate system.

2.03 COMPONENTS

A. Flashing Materials: Used to protect substrate edges at terminations.
   1. Liquid Applied: An extremely flexible water-based polymer material, ready for use.
      a. Shall be AquaFlash and AquaFlash Mesh
   2. Sheet Type:
      a. Shall be Flashing Tape and Surface Conditioner
         1) Dryvit Flashing Tape™: A high density polyethylene film backed with a rubberized asphalt adhesive available in rolls 4 in (102 mm), 6 in (152 mm) and 9 in (229 mm) wide by 75 ft (23 m) long.
         2) Dryvit Flashing Tape Surface Conditioner™: A water-based surface conditioner and adhesion promoter for the Dryvit Flashing Tape.

B. Air/Water-Resistive Barrier Components (when specified):
   1. Dryvit Backstop NT: A flexible, polymer-based noncementitious water-resistive coating and air barrier available in Texture and Smooth. See DS180 and DS181; DS830 and DS831.
   2. Dryvit Grid Tape™: An open weave fiberglass mesh tape with pressure sensitive adhesive available in rolls 4 in (102 mm) wide by 100 yds (91 m) long.
   3. Dryvit Backstop DMS: A sprayable single step water-resistive membrane/air barrier and adhesive. See DS704.

   NOTE: Backstop DMS is not approved for use over wood based substrates.

C. Adhesives: Used to adhere the EPS to the substrate, shall be compatible with the substrate and the EPS.
   1. Cementitious: A liquid polymer-based material, which is field mixed with Portland cement for use over non wood-based substrates.
      a. Shall be Primus®, Genesis® or Genesis® FM
   2. Ready mixed: A dry blend cementitious, copolymer-based product, field mixed with water for use over non wood-based substrates.
      a. Shall be Primus® DM, Genesis® DM, Genesis® DMS, Rapidry DM 35-50 or Rapidry DM 50-75.
   3. Noncementitious: A factory-mixed, fully formulated water-based adhesive for use over wood-based substrates.
      a. Shall be ADEPS®.

D. Insulation Board: Expanded polystyrene meeting Dryvit Specification for Insulation Board, DS131.
   1. Thickness of insulation board shall be minimum 3/4 in (19 mm) and shall be maintained at all locations. Note: Dryvit recommends that a minimum of 1 in (25 mm) thick insulation board be installed to maintain the minimum thickness after rasping, reveals are installed, etc.
   2. The insulation board shall be manufactured by a board supplier listed by Dryvit Systems, Inc.

E. Base Coat: Shall be compatible with the EPS insulation board and reinforcing mesh(es).
   1. Cementitious: A liquid polymer-based material, which is field mixed with Portland cement.
      a. Shall be Primus, Genesis or Genesis FM.
   2. Noncementitious: A factory-mixed, fully formulated, water-based product.
      a. Shall be NCB™.
   3. Ready mixed: A dry blend cementitious, copolymer-based product, field mixed with water.

a. Shall be Primus DM, Genesis DM, Genesis DMS, Rapidry DM 35-50 or Rapidry DM 50-75.

F. Reinforcing Mesh: A balanced open weave, glass fiber fabric treated for compatibility with other system materials. Note: Reinforcing meshes are classified by impact resistance and specified by weight and tensile strength as Section 1.04.D.1.c.
1. Shall be Standard, Standard Plus, Intermediate, Panzer 15, Panzer 20, Detail and Corner Mesh.

G. Finish: Shall be the type, color and texture as selected by the architect/owner and shall be one or more of the following:
1. Elastomeric DPR (Dirt Pickup Resistance): Water-based elastomeric acrylic coating with integral color and texture and formulated with DPR chemistry:
a. Weatherlastic® Sandpebble
b. Weatherlastic® Sandpebble Fine
2. Color Selections: 105 (Dark Beige - Accent), 107(Light Beige – Field), 31301-130TSW (Dark Yellow), 31303-80130 TSW (Light Yellow), 35220 (Dark Blue), 35210 (Light Blue). Submit Color selection chart to make final selections and provide samples for final approval.

PART III – EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Prior to installation of the Outsulation System, the contractor shall verify that the substrate:
1. Is of a type listed in Section 1.04.C.1.
2. Is flat within 1/4 in (6.4 mm) in a 4 ft (1.2 m) radius.
3. Is sound, dry, connections are tight, has no surface voids, projections or other conditions that may interfere with the Outsulation System installation or performance.

B. Prior to the installation of the Outsulation System, the architect or general contractor shall insure that all needed flashings and other waterproofing details have been completed, if such completion is required prior to the Outsulation application. Additionally, the Contractor shall ensure that:
1. Metal roof flashing has been installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s requirements, Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association (ARMA) Standards and Dryvit Outsulation System Installation Details, DS107, or as otherwise necessary to maintain a watertight envelope.
2. Openings are flashed in accordance with the Outsulation System Installation Details, DS107, or as otherwise necessary to prevent water penetration.
3. Chimneys, balconies, and decks have been properly flashed.
4. Windows, doors, etc. are installed and flashed per manufacturer's requirements and the Outsulation System Installation Details, DS107.

C. Prior to the installation of the Outsulation System, the contractor shall notify the general contractor, and/or architect, and/or owner of all discrepancies.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. The Outsulation materials shall be protected by permanent or temporary means from inclement weather and other sources of damage prior to, during, and following application until completely dry.

B. Protect adjoining work and property during Outsulation installation.

C. The substrate shall be prepared as to be free of foreign materials, such as, oil, dust, dirt, form release agents, efflorescence, paint, wax, water repellants, moisture, frost and any other condition that inhibit adhesion.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. The system shall be installed in accordance with the current Dryvit Outsulation System Application Instructions, DS204.
B. The overall minimum base coat thickness shall be sufficient to fully embed the mesh. The recommended method is to apply the base coat in two (2) passes.
C. Sealant shall not be applied directly to textured finishes or base coat surfaces. Dryvit Outsulation System base coat surfaces in contact with sealant shall be coated with Demandit Smooth or Color Prime.
D. When installing the Outsulation System, the notched trowel method of adhesive application shall be used over gypsum sheathing substrates.
E. High impact meshes shall be installed as specified at ground level, high traffic areas and other areas exposed to or susceptible to impact damage.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. The contractor shall be responsible for the proper application of the Outsulation materials.
B. Dryvit assumes no responsibility for on-site inspections or application of its products.
C. If required, the contractor shall certify in writing the quality of work performed relative to the substrate system, details, installation procedures, workmanship and as to the specific products used.
D. If required, the EPS supplier shall certify in writing that the EPS meets Dryvit's specifications.
E. If required, the sealant contractor shall certify in writing that the sealant application is in accordance with the sealant manufacturer's and Dryvit's recommendations.

3.05 CLEANING

A. All excess Outsulation System materials shall be removed from the job site by the contractor in accordance with contract provisions and as required by applicable law.
B. All surrounding areas, where the Outsulation System has been installed, shall be left free of debris and foreign substances resulting from the contractor's work.

3.06 PROTECTION

A. The Outsulation System shall be protected from inclement weather and other sources of damage until dry and permanent protection in the form of flashings, sealants, etc. are installed.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07410 - PREFORMED ROOFING AND SIDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:
Extent of each type of preformed roofing and siding is indicated on the drawings and by provisions of this section. Provide exposed flashing gutters and trim to match. Preformed roofing/siding is hereby defined to include panels which are structurally capable of spanning between supports spaced as indicated.

The types of panels required include the following:
Formed sheet panels, intended for lapped seam installation.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:
Field Measurements: Where possible, prior to fabrication of prefabricated panels, take field measurements of structure or substrates to receive panel system. Allow for trimming panel units where final dimensions cannot be established prior to fabrication.

SUBMITTALS:
Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product specifications, standard details, certified product test results, installation instructions and general recommendations, as applicable to materials and finishes for each component and for total system of preformed panels.

Metal roof system must be tested in accordance with ASTM E 1592-95 for negative loading. Determine panel bending and clips-to-panel strength by testing in accordance with ASTM E 1592-95 procedures.

Samples: Submit 2 samples 12" square, of each exposed finish material.

Shop Drawings: Submit small scale layouts of panels on walls and roofs, and large scale details of edge conditions, joints, corners, custom profiles, supports, anchorages, trim, flashings, closures, and special details. Distinguish between factory and field assembly work.

Submit documentation panel assemblies have been tested in compliance with Structural Engineer Design Pressures and Texas Department of Insurance Guidelines.

WARRANTY:
Owner shall receive one (1) warranty from manufacturer of roof panels covering all of the following criteria. Multiple warranties are not acceptable.

1. Manufacturer’s 15 + 15 year watertight warranty, including coverage for all trim, flashings, and penetrations associated with the roof area.
2. 20 year coverage on finish including checking, crazing, peeling, chalking, fading and/or adhesion.
3. 20 year material coverage.
4. Warranty shall commence on date of substantial completion or final payment, whichever is agreed by contract.

The Contractor, in writing, will guarantee the job to manufacturer for two (2) years from the date of acceptance by the Owner and the Roofing System Manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:
Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering preformed roofing and siding products which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to the following:

METAL SIDING:

(A) Entry Tower Soffit Panels: Equal to MBCI FW-120 with beads 24 GA 12" Panels (Color: – Submit Color Selection Chart for final selection)

SHEET MATERIALS:
Steel for Painting/Coating: Hot dip coated steel sheet, ASTM A446, Grade A except where higher strength required for performance, G90 zinc coating, surface treated for maximum coating performance.

METAL FINISHES:
General: Apply coatings either before or after forming and fabricating panels, as required by coating process and as required for maximum coating performance capability. Protect coating promptly after application and cure, by application of strippable film or removable adhesive cover, and retain until installation has been completed. Provide colors or color matches as indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

Flouropolymer Coating: Full strength 70% "Kynar 500" coating baked on for 15 minutes at 450 degrees F. (232 degree C), in a dry film thickness of 1.0 mil, 30% reflective gloss (ASTM D523), over min. 0.2 mil baked on modified epoxy primer.

Warranty: Owner shall receive one (1) warranty from manufacturer of roof panels covering all of the following criteria. Multiple warranties are not acceptable.

1. Manufacturer's 15 + 15 year watertight warranty, including coverage for all trim, flashings, and penetrations associated with the roof area.
2. 20 year coverage on finish including checking, crazing, peeling, chalking, fading and/or adhesion.
3. 20 year material coverage.
4. Warranty shall commence on date of substantial completion or final payment, whichever is agreed by contract.

The Contractor, in writing, will guarantee the job to manufacturer for two (2) years from the date of acceptance by the Owner and the Roofing System Manufacturer.

MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS:
Internal Panel Framing: Manufacturer's standard, as required for 100 MPH wind loading.

Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard non-corrosive types, with exterior heads gasketed.

Seam Lock: Wall Panels are required to have optional seam lock feature to comply with wind loading requirements.

Accessories: All exposed fascia, metal trim shall match metal roof color. Except as indicated as work of another specification section, provide components required for a complete roofing/siding system, including trim, copings, fascias, gravel stops, mullions, sills, corner units, ridge closures, clips, seam covers, battens, flashings, gutters, louvers, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips and similar items. Match materials/finishes of preformed panels.

Membrane over Plywood Substrate: Acceptable Product: Sharkskin Ultra SA™ as manufactured by: Kirsch Building Products LLC, 1464 Madera Road, Suite 387, Simi Valley, CA 93065; Tel: (805) 750-0084 Fax: 805-526-1116; www.sharkskin.us.

Provide a self-adhered roof underlayment that has passed the requirements set forth in ICC/ES Report 1708 and Miami/Dade TAS 103.

PANEL FABRICATION; PERFORMANCES:
General: Fabricate and finish panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, and as required to fulfill indicated performance requirements which have been demonstrated by factory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and dimensional requirements, and with structural requirements. Provide only full length sheets.

Metal Gages: Thicknesses shall be 24 gage.

Required Performances: Fabricate panels and other components of roof/wall system for the following installed as indicated performances:

Water Penetration: No significant, uncontrolled leakage at 4 lbs. per sq. ft. pressure with spray test.

Air Infiltration: 0.02 cfm per sq. ft. for gross roof/wall areas, with 4 lbs. per sq. ft. differential pressure.

Apply bituminous coating or other permanent separation materials on concealed panel surfaces where panels would otherwise be in direct contact with substrate materials which are non-compatible or could result in corrosion or deterioration of either material or finishes.

Condensation: Fabricate panels for control of condensation, including proper inclusion of seals and provisions for breathing, venting, weeping and draining.

PART 3 - EXECUTION
INSTALLATION:
General: Comply with panel fabricator's and material manufacturers' instructions and recommendations for installation, as applicable to project conditions and supporting substrates. Anchor panels and other components of the work securely in place, with provisions for thermal/structural movement. Metal roof panels must be installed in accordance with UL 90 Construction method.

Install panels with concealed fasteners.

Installation tolerances: Shim and align panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4: in 20' 0" on level/plumb/slope and location/line as indicated, and within 1/8" offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers and sealants where indicated and where required for weatherproof performance of panel systems. Provide types of gaskets and sealants/fillers indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, types recommended by panel manufacturer.

Refer to other sections of these specifications for product and installation requirements applicable to indicated joint sealers.

Joint Sealers: Refer to other sections of these specifications for post installation requirements on joint sealers; not work of this section.

CLEANING AND PROTECTION:
Damaged Units: Replace panels and other components of the work which have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by means of finish touch up or similar minor repair procedures.

Cleaning: Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films (if any) as each panel is installed. Upon completion of panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by panel manufacturer, and maintain in a clean condition during construction.
END OF SECTION 07410

SECTION 07520 MODIFIED BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE ROOFING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Preparation of Substrate to Receive Roofing Materials

B. Base Sheet or Roof Insulation Application to Prepared Substrate

C. Roof Membrane Application

D. Roof Flashing Application

E. Incorporation of Sheet Metal Flashing Components and Roofing Accessories into the Roof System

1.02 PRODUCTS INSTALLED BUT NOT FURNISHED UNDER THIS SECTION

A. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim

B. Sheet Metal Roofing Specialties

1.03 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 06100 - Rough Carpentry

B. Section 05310 - Roof Decks

C. Section 03520 – Lightweight Concrete Roof Insulation

D. Section 07600 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

References in these specifications to standards, test methods and codes, are implied to mean the latest edition of each such standard adopted. The following is an abbreviated list of associations, institutions, and societies which may be used as references throughout this specification section.

ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials Philadelphia, PA
FM	Factory Mutual Engineering and Research Norwood, MA
NRCA	National Roofing Contractors Association Rosemont, IL
OSHA	Occupational Safety and Health Administration

Washington, DC

SMACNA Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association
Chantilly, VA

UL Underwriters Laboratories
Northbrook, IL

1.05 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

Project Type: New construction Specification #: 2030 CBT

Substrate: Equal to Insulcel RT Lightweight Concrete Roof Insulation. See Specification Section 03 52 00.

Roof System: Equal to Paradiene 20 HV TS, torch applied;

Equal to Paradiene 30 FR TG BW, torch applied.

Flashing System: Equal to Paradiene 40 FR TG BW, or Parafor 30 TG BW; torch applied.

1.06 SUBMITTALS

All submittals which do not conform to the following requirements will be rejected.

A. Submittal of Equals: Submit primary roof systems to be considered as equals to the specified roof system no less than 10 days prior to bid date. Primary roof systems which have been reviewed and accepted as equals to the specified roof system will be listed in an addendum prior to bid date; only then will equals be accepted at bidding. Submittals shall include the following:

1. Two 3 inch x 5 inch samples of the primary roofing and flashing sheets.

2. Latest edition of the roofing system manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions.

3. Evidence that the manufacturer of the proposed roofing system utilizes a quality management system that is ISO 9001 certified. Documentation of ISO 9001 certification of foreign subsidiaries without domestic certification will not be accepted.

4. Evidence and description of manufacturer's quality control/quality assurance program for the primary roofing products supplied. The quality assurance program description shall include all methods of testing for physical and mechanical property values. Provide confirmation of manufacturer's certificate of analysis for reporting the tested values of the actual material being supplied for the project prior to issuance of the specified guarantee.

5. Descriptive list of the materials proposed for use.

6. Evidence of Underwriters' Laboratories Class A acceptance of the proposed roofing system (including mopping asphalt or cold adhesive) without additional requirements for gravel or coatings. No other testing agency approvals will be accepted.

7. Evidence that the roof configuration (including fastening of insulation) has been tested by an accredited independent testing agency to meet the design windload pressure indicated in Part 1.07 C2.

8. The roof membrane configuration shall be approved by FM for Class 1-SH (severe hail) exposure.

9. Letter from the proposed primary roofing manufacturer confirming that a phased roof application, with only the modified bitumen base ply in place for a period of up to 10 weeks, is acceptable and approved for this project.

10. List of 3 of the proposed primary roofing manufacturer's projects, located in the United States, of equal size and degree of difficulty which have been performing successfully for a period of at least 10 years.

11. Letter from the proposed primary roofing manufacturer confirming that the filler content in the elastomeric blend of the proposed roof membrane and flashing components does not exceed 35% in weight.

12. Complete list of material physical and mechanical properties for each sheet including: weights and thicknesses; low temperature flexibility; peak load; ultimate elongation; dimensional stability; compound stability; high temperature stability; granule embedment and resistance to thermal shock for foil faced products.

13. Evidence that the roof system shall pass 500 cycles of ASTM D 5849 Resistance to Cyclic Joint Displacement (fatigue) at 14°F (-10°C). Passing results shall show no signs of membrane cracking or interply delamination after 500 cycles. The roof system shall pass 200 cycles of ASTM D 5849 after heat conditioning performed in accordance with ASTM D 5147.

14. Sample copy of the proposed guarantee.

15. Completed Product Substitution Request Form included with this specification section.

B. Submittals Prior to Contract Award:

1. Letter from the proposed primary roofing manufacturer confirming that the bidder is an acceptable Contractor authorized to install the proposed system.

2. Letter from the primary roofing manufacturer stating that the proposed application will comply with the manufacturer's requirements in order to qualify the project for the specified guarantee.

C. Submittals Prior to Project Close-out:

1. Certificate Of Analysis from the testing laboratory of the primary roofing materials manufacturer, confirming the physical and mechanical properties of the roofing membrane components. Testing shall be in accordance with the parameters published in ASTM D 5147 and ASTM D 7051 and indicate Quality Assurance/Quality Control data as required to meet the specified properties. A separate Certificate Of Analysis for each production run of material shall indicate the following information:

   a) Material type

b) Lot number
c) Production date
d) Dimensions and Mass (indicate the lowest values recorded during the production run);
   - Roll length
   - Roll width
   - Selvage width
   - Total thickness
   - Thickness at selvage (coating thickness)
   - Weight
e) Physical and Mechanical Properties;
   - Low temperature flexibility
   - Peak load
   - Ultimate Elongation
   - Dimensional stability
   - Compound Stability
   - Granule embedment
   - Resistance to thermal shock (foil faced products)

2. Manufacturer's printed recommendations for proper maintenance of the specified roof system including inspection frequencies, penetration addition policies, temporary repairs, and leak call procedures.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Acceptable Products: Primary roofing products, including each type of sheet, all manufactured in the United States, shall be supplied by a single manufacturer which has been successfully producing the specified types of primary products for not less than 10 years. The primary roofing products shall have maintained a consistent composition for a minimum of five years.

B. Product Quality Assurance Program: Primary roofing materials shall be manufactured under a quality management system that is monitored regularly by a third party auditor under the ISO 9001 audit process. A certificate of analysis for reporting/confirming the tested values of the actual material being supplied for the project will be required prior to project close-out.

C. Agency Approvals: The proposed roof system shall conform to the following requirements. No other testing agency approvals will be accepted.

   1. Underwriters Laboratories Class A acceptance of the proposed roofing system.

   2. Evidence by an accredited independent testing agency or agencies that the roof configuration meets a design windload pressure of - 75 psf or greater.

D. Acceptable Contractor: Contractor shall have a minimum of 2 years experience in successfully installing the same or similar roofing materials and be certified in writing by the roofing materials manufacturer to install the primary roofing products.

E. Scope of Work: The work to be performed under this specification shall include but is not limited to the following: Attend necessary job meetings and furnish competent and full time supervision, experienced roof mechanics, all materials, tools, and equipment necessary to complete, in an acceptable manner, the roof installation in accordance with this specification. Comply with the latest written application instructions of the manufacturer of

the primary roofing products. In addition, application practice shall comply with requirements and recommendations contained in the latest edition of the Handbook of Accepted Roofing Knowledge (HARK) as published by the National Roofing Contractor's Association, amended to include the acceptance of a phased roof system installation.

F. Local Regulations: Conform to regulations of public agencies, including any specific requirements of the city and/or state of jurisdiction.

G. Manufacturer Requirements: Ensure that the primary roofing materials manufacturer provides direct trained company personnel to attend necessary job meetings, perform periodic inspections as necessary, and conducts a final inspection upon successful completion of the project.

1.08 PRODUCT DELIVERY STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Delivery: Deliver materials in the manufacturer's original sealed and labeled containers and in quantities required to allow continuity of application.

B. Storage: Store materials out of direct exposure to the elements on pallets placed over clean, flat and dry surfaces. Storage of pallets over dirt, grass-covered ground or newly placed concrete may result in upward moisture transpiration and contamination of product. Store rolls of roofing on end. For roof-top storage, avoid overloading of deck and building structure. Factory packaging is not intended for job site protection. Slit factory packaging immediately upon arrival at the job site to prevent build-up of condensation and cover materials using a breathable cover such as a canvas. Polyethylene or other non-breathable plastic coverings shall not be used. Store flammable or temperature sensitive materials away from open flame, ignition sources or excessive heat.

C. Handling: Handle all materials in such a manner as to preclude damage and contamination with moisture or foreign matter. Handle rolled goods to prevent damage to edges or ends.

D. Damaged Material: Any materials that are found to be damaged or stored in any manner other than stated above will be automatically rejected, and will require removal and replacement at the Contractor's expense.

1.09 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

A. Requirements Prior to Job Start

1. Notification: Give a minimum of 5 days notice to the Owner and manufacturer prior to commencing any work and notify both parties on a daily basis of any change in work schedule.

2. Permits: Obtain all permits required by local agencies and pay all fees which may be required for the performance of the work.

3. Safety: Familiarize every member of the application crew with all fire and safety regulations recommended by OSHA, NRCA and other industry or local governmental groups.

B. Environmental Requirements

1. Precipitation: Do not apply roofing materials during precipitation or in the event there is a probability of precipitation during application. Take adequate precautions to ensure that materials, applied roofing, and building interiors are protected from possible moisture damage or contamination.

2. Temperature Restrictions - self-adhesive: The minimum required substrate temperature at point of application is 40°F (4°C). Maintain a minimum roof membrane material temperature above 60° F (16° C). In low temperature conditions, keep materials warm prior to application. Consider using the specified tacky primer, required for vertical applications, in temperatures below 60° F (16° C) to facilitate proper bonding of self-adhered membrane for horizontal applications. The minimum ambient temperature range at the time of tacky primer application is 45°F to 105°F (7°C - 40°C). Suspend application in situations where the self-adhered base ply cannot be kept at temperatures allowing for proper adhesion.

C. Protection Requirements

1. Membrane Protection: Provide protection against staining and mechanical damage for newly applied roofing and adjacent surfaces throughout this project.

2. Torch Safety: Crew members handling torches shall be trained by an Authorized Certified Roofing Torch Applicator (CERTA) Trainer, be certified according to CERTA torch safety guidelines as published by the National Roofing Contractor's Association (NRCA), and follow torch safety practices as required by the contractor's insurance carrier. Designate one person on each crew to perform a daily fire watch. The designated crew member shall watch for fires or smoldering materials on all areas during roof construction activity, and for the minimum period required by CERTA guidelines after roofing material application has been suspended for the day.

3. Limited Access: Prevent access by the public to materials, tools and equipment during the course of the project.

4. Debris Removal: Remove all debris daily from the project site and take to a legal dumping area authorized to receive such materials.

5. Site Condition: Complete, to the owner's satisfaction, all job site clean-up including building interior, exterior and landscaping where affected by the construction.

1.10 GUARANTEE/WARRANTY

A. Roof System Guarantee: Upon successful completion of the project, and after all post installation procedures have been completed, furnish the Owner with the roof system manufacturer's 30 year labor and materials roof system guarantee. The roof system guarantee shall include both the roofing and flashing membranes, and the specified new lightweight insulating concrete system consisting of aggregate fill, pre-generated foam, and patented-pre-formed polystyrene panels. All repair or replacement costs covered under the guarantee shall be borne by the roofing membrane manufacturer. The guarantee shall be a term type, without deductibles or limitations on coverage amount, and be issued at no additional cost to the Owner. Specific items covered under the roof system guarantee include:

1. The actual resistance to heat flow through the roof insulation will be at least 80% of the design thermal resistance, provided that the roofing membrane is free of leaks;

2. Should a roof leak occur, the insulating performance of the roof insulation will be at least 80% of the design thermal resistance within a 2 year period following repair of the leak.

3. The roof insulation will remain in a reroofable condition should the roof membrane require replacement (excluding damage caused by fastener pullout during removal of the old membrane.)

4. The roof insulation material will not cause structural damage to the building as a result of expansion from thermal or chemical action.

    > 30 Year Roof System Guarantee

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 ROOFING SYSTEM ASSEMBLY/PRODUCTS

A. Lightweight Concrete Roof Insulation. See Specification Section 03520.

2.02 DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEMS

A. Roofing Membrane Assembly: A roof membrane assembly consisting of two plies of a prefabricated, reinforced, homogeneous Styrene-Butadiene-Styrene (SBS) block copolymer modified asphalt membrane, applied over a prepared substrate. Reinforcement mats shall be impregnated/saturated and coated each side with SBS modified bitumen blend. The modified bitumen base ply shall be coated with factory applied asphalt-adhesive strips staggered diagonally on the back surface of the sheet to provide a bonded area of 50% of the total surface area. The modified bitumen finish ply shall be coated on one side with a high quality torch grade SBS bitumen blend. The asphalt-adhesive strips of the base ply and the adhesive layer of the finish ply shall be manufactured using a process that embosses the surface with a grooved pattern to provide optimum burn-off of the plastic film and to maximize application rates. The cross sectional area of the sheet material shall contain no oxidized or non-SBS modified bitumen. The roof system shall pass 500 cycles of ASTM D 5849 Resistance to Cyclic Joint Displacement (fatigue) at 14°F (-10°C). Passing results shall show no signs of membrane cracking or interply delamination after 500 cycles. The roof system shall pass 200 cycles of ASTM D 5849 after heat conditioning performed in accordance with ASTM D 5147. The assembly shall possess waterproofing capability, such that a phased roof application, with only the modified bitumen base ply in place, can be achieved for prolonged periods of time without detriment to the watertight integrity of the entire roof system.

    > Equal to Siplast Paradiene 20 HVTS / 30 FR TG BW torchable roof system

    1. Modified Bitumen Base Ply

        a) Thickness (avg): 132 mils (2.3 mm) (ASTM D 5147)
        b) Thickness (min): 126 mils (2.2 mm) (ASTM D 5147)
        c) Weight (min per 100 ft² of coverage): 76 lb (3.7 kg/m²)
        d) Maximum filler content in elastomeric blend - 35% by weight

e) Low temperature flexibility @ -15ºF (-26ºC): PASS (ASTM D 5147)
f) Peak Load (avg) @ 73ºF (23ºC): 30 lbf/inch (5.3 kN/m) (ASTM D 5147)
g) Peak Load (avg) @ 0ºF (-18ºC): 70 lbf/inch (12.3 kN/m) (ASTM D 5147)
h) Ultimate Elongation (avg.) @ 73ºF (23ºC): 50% (ASTM D 5147)
i) Dimensional Stability (max): 0.1% (ASTM D 5147)
j) Compound Stability (min): 250ºF (121ºC)
k) Approvals: UL Class listed, FM Approved (products shall bear seals of approval)
l) Reinforcement: fiberglass mat or other meeting the performance and dimensional stability criteria

> Equal to Siplast Paradiene 20 HV TS

2. Modified Bitumen Stripping Ply

a) Thickness (avg): 114 mils (2.9 mm) (ASTM D 5147)
b) Thickness (min): 110 mils (2.8 mm) (ASTM D 5147)
c) Weight (min per 100 ft² of coverage): 76 lb (3.7 kg/m²)
d) Maximum filler content in elastomeric blend: 35% by weight
e) Low temperature flexibility @ -15ºF (-26ºC): PASS (ASTM D 5147)
f) Peak Load (avg) @ 73ºF (23ºC): 30 lbf/inch (5.3 kN/m) (ASTM D 5147)
g) Peak Load (avg) @ 0ºF (-18ºC): 75 lbf/inch (13.2 kN/m) (ASTM D 5147)
h) Ultimate Elongation (avg.) @ 73ºF (23ºC): 50% (ASTM D 5147)
i) Dimensional Stability (max): 0.1% (ASTM D 5147)
j) Compound Stability (min): 250ºF (121ºC) (ASTM D 5147)
k) Approvals: UL Class listed, FM Approved (products shall bear seals of approval)
l) Reinforcement: fiberglass mat or other meeting the performance and dimensional stability criteria

> Equal to Siplast Paradiene 20 - torchable grade

3. Modified Bitumen Finish Ply

a) Thickness (avg): 138 mils (3.5 mm) (ASTM D 5147)
b) Thickness at selvage (coating thickness) (avg): 118 mils (3.0 mm) (ASTM D 5147)
c) Thickness at selvage (coating thickness) (min): 114 mils (2.9 mm) (ASTM D 5147)
d) Weight (min per 100 ft² of coverage): 112 lb (5.4 kg/m²)
e) Maximum filler content in elastomeric blend: 35% by weight
f) Low temperature flexibility @ -15ºF (-26ºC): PASS (ASTM D 5147)
g) Peak Load (avg) @ 73ºF (23ºC): 30 lbf/inch (5.3 kN/m) (ASTM D 5147)
h) Peak Load (avg) @ 0ºF (-18ºC): 75 lbf/inch (13.2 kN/m) (ASTM D 5147)
i) Ultimate Elongation (avg.) @ 73ºF (23ºC): 55% (ASTM D 5147)
j) Dimensional Stability (max): 0.1% (ASTM D 5147)
k) Compound Stability (min): 250ºF (121º C) (ASTM D 5147)
l) Granule Embedment (max loss): 2.0 grams per sample (ASTM D 5147)
m) Approvals: UL Class listed, FM Approved (products shall bear seals of approval)
n) Reinforcement: fiberglass mat or other meeting the performance and dimensional stability criteria
o) Surfacing: Specially formulated bright white mineral granules

> Equal to Siplast Paradiene 30 FR BW - torchable grade

B. Flashing Membrane Assembly. A flashing system consisting of a prefabricated, granule surfaced, reinforced, Styrene-Butadiene-Styrene (SBS) block copolymer modified asphalt

flashing membrane. The reinforcement mat shall be impregnated and coated each side with SBS modified bitumen blend.

> Equal to Siplast Paradiene 40 FR TG BW, flashing system

1. Cant Backing Sheet and Flashing Reinforcing Ply

   a) Thickness (avg): 102 mils (2.6 mm) (ASTM D 5147)
   b) Thickness (min): 98 mils (2.5 mm) (ASTM D 5147)
   c) Weight (min per 100 ft² of coverage): 72 lb (3.5 kg/m²)
   d) Maximum filler content in elastomeric blend: 35% by weight
   e) Low temperature flexibility @ -15° F (-26° C) - PASS (ASTM D 5147)
   f) Peak Load (avg) @ 73°F (23°C): 30 lbf/inch (5.3 kN/m) (ASTM D 5147)
   g) Peak Load (avg) @ 0°F (-18°C): 75 lbf/inch (13.2 kN/m) (ASTM D 5147)
   h) Ultimate Elongation (avg.) @ 73°F (23°C): 50% (ASTM D 5147)
   i) Dimensional Stability (max): 0.1% (ASTM D 5147)
   j) Compound Stability (min - sheet): 250°F (121°C) (ASTM D 5147)
   j) Compound Stability (min – adhesive coating): 212°F (100°C) (ASTM D 5147)
   k) Approvals: UL Class listed, FM Approved (products shall bear seals of approval)
   l) Reinforcement: fiberglass mat or other meeting the performance and dimensional stability criteria
   m) Back Surfacing: polyolefin film

      > Equal to Siplast Paradiene 20 SA

2. Modified Bitumen Flashing Ply

   a) Thickness (avg): 153 mils (3.9 mm) (ASTM D 5147)
   b) Thickness at selvage (coating thickness) (avg): 130 mils (3.3 mm) (ASTM D 5147)
   c) Thickness at selvage (coating thickness) (min): 126 mils (3.2 mm) (ASTM D 5147)
   d) Weight (min per 100 ft² of coverage): 108 lb (5.3 kg/m²)
   e) Maximum filler content in elastomeric blend: 35% by weight
   f) Low temperature flexibility @ -15°F (-26°C) - PASS (ASTM D 5147)
   g) Peak Load (avg) @ 73°F (23°C): 80 lbf/inch (14.1 kN/m) (ASTM D 5147)
   h) Peak Load (avg) @ 0°F (-18°C): 150 lbf/inch (26.5 kN/m) (ASTM D 5147)
   i) Ultimate Elongation (avg.) @ 73°F (23°C): 80% (ASTM D 5147)
   j) Dimensional Stability (max): 0.1% (ASTM D 5147)
   k) Compound Stability (min): 250°F (121°C) (ASTM D 5147)
   l) Granule Embedment (max individual loss): 2.0 grams per sample (ASTM D 5147)
   m) Approvals: UL Class listed, FM Approved (products shall bear seals of approval)
   n) Reinforcement: fiberglass scrim/fiberglass mat or other meeting the performance and dimensional stability criteria
   o) Surfacing: ceramic granules specially treated for cool roof applications.

      > Equal to Siplast Paradiene 40 FR TG BW

C. Catalyzed Acrylic Resin Flashing System: A specialty flashing system consisting of a PMMA-based, fully reinforced membrane installed over a prepared or primed substrate. The flashing system consists of a catalyzed acrylic resin primer, basecoat and topcoat, combined with a non-woven polyester fleece. The use of the specialty flashing system shall be specifically approved in advance by the membrane manufacturer for each application.

> Equal to Parapro 123 Flashing System by Siplast; Irving, TX

2.03 ROOFING ACCESSORIES

A. Roofing Adhesives

1. Mastic: An asphalt cutback mastic, reinforced with non-asbestos fibers, used as a base for setting metal flanges conforming to ASTM D 4586 Type II requirements.

> Equal to Siplast PA-1021 Plastic Cement by Siplast; Irving, TX

B. Primers

1. Primer: An asphalt, solvent blend conforming to ASTM D 41 requirements.

> Equal to Siplast PA-1125 Asphalt Primer by Siplast; Irving, TX

2. Primer for Self-Adhesive Sheets: A quick drying, low-VOC, water-based, high-tack primer specifically designed to promote adhesion of roofing and waterproofing sheets to approved substrates. Primer shall meet South Coast Air Quality District and Ozone Transport Commission requirements.

> Equal to Siplast TA-119 Primer by Siplast; Irving, TX

C. Sealant: A moisture-curing, elastomeric sealant designed for roofing applications. The sealant shall be approved by the roof membrane manufacturer for use in conjunction with the roof membrane materials. Acceptable types are as follows:

> Equal to PS-209 Elastomeric Sealant by Siplast; Irving, TX
> Equal to PS-715 NS Elastomeric Sealant by Siplast; Irving, TX

D. Ceramic Granules: No. 11 grade specification ceramic granules of color scheme matching the granule surfacing of the finish ply.

E. Perlite Cant Strips: A cant strip composed of expanded volcanic minerals combined with waterproofing binders. The top surface shall be pre-treated with an asphalt based coating. The face of the cant shall have a nominal 4 inch dimension.

F. Fasteners

1. Flashing Reinforcing Sheet Fasteners for Wood/Plywood Substrates to Receive Flashing Coverage: Fasteners shall be approved by the manufacturer of the primary roofing products. Acceptable fasteners for specific substrate types are listed below.

a) Wood/Plywood Substrates

- A 12 gauge, spiral or annular threaded shank, zinc coated steel roofing fastener having a minimum 1 inch head.

> Equal to Square Cap by Maze Nails; Peru, IL
> Equal to Simplex Cap Nail by Simplex Nails, Inc., Americus, GA

G. Walktread: A prefabricated, puncture resistant polyester core reinforced, polymer modified bitumen sheet material topped with a ceramic-coated granule wearing surface.

1. Thickness: 0.217 in (5.5 mm)
2. Weight: 1.8 lb/ft² (8.8 kg/m²)
3. Width: 30 in (76.2 cm)

> Equal to Paratread Roof Protection Material by Siplast; Irving, TX

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Primer for Self-Adhesive Bituminous Membranes: Apply the specified tacky primer by roller or spray in an even film. Refer to the manufacturer's literature for the approved rate of application over various substrate types. Allow the primer to dry until it leaves a slightly sticky surface without transfer when touched.

B. Asphaltic Primer: Prime metal and concrete and masonry surfaces with a uniform coating of the specified asphalt primer.

3.02 SUBSTRATE PREPARATION

A. Lightweight Concrete Roof Insulation. See Specification Section 03 52 00.

B. Substrate Preparation – Lightweight Insulating Concrete Surface: Prior to application of the modified bitumen base ply, thermally activate the surface treatment pellets embedded into the lightweight insulating concrete system. Apply direct torch heat to the lightweight insulating concrete surface using a hand torch or torch wagon. The surface treatment pellets will turn glossy black when exposed to torch heat and flow outward from the embedment depression. When the liquefied outflow of the pellets is approximately 1/4 inch in diameter, the surface is properly prepared. The surface treatment cannot be properly activated simultaneously with torch heat used to apply the base ply. Surface preparation must be accomplished as a separate step.

3.03 ROOF MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

A. Membrane Application: Apply roofing in accordance with roofing system manufacturer's instructions and the following requirements. Application of roofing membrane components shall immediately follow application of base sheet and/or insulation as a continuous operation.

B. Aesthetic Considerations: Construction of an aesthetically pleasing overall appearance of the finished roof application is a standard requirement for this project. Make necessary preparations, utilize recommended application techniques, apply the specified materials including granules, and exercise care in ensuring that the finished application is acceptable to the Owner.

C. Bitumen Consistency: Cutting or alterations of bitumen, primer, and sealants will not be permitted.

D. Roofing Application: Apply all layers of roofing free of wrinkles, creases or fishmouths. Exert sufficient pressure on the roll during application to ensure prevention of air pockets.

1. Apply all layers of roofing perpendicular to the slope of the deck.

2. Torch apply the base ply to the properly prepared concrete deck surface, utilizing minimum 3 inch side laps. Place a 12-inch wide strip of the specified base sheet centered beneath the area where adjoining sections of base ply will be seamed. The specified base sheet can be partially attached using dollops of elastomeric sealant. Abut adjoining ends of the base ply. Do not lap. Fully torch a minimum 12 inch wide strip of stripping ply centered over the joints of the base ply. Probe “T” laps to ensure full adhesion.

3. Fully bond the finish ply to the base ply, utilizing minimum 3 inch side and end laps. Apply each sheet directly behind the torch applicator. Stagger end laps of the finish ply a minimum 3 feet. Cut a dog ear angle at the end laps on overlapping selvage edges. Using a clean trowel, apply top pressure to top seal T-laps immediately following sheet application. Stagger side laps of the finish ply a minimum 12 inches from side laps in the underlying base ply. Stagger end laps of the finish ply a minimum 3 feet from end laps in the underlying base ply.

4. Maximum sheet lengths and special fastening of the specified roof membrane system may be required at various slope increments where the roof deck slope exceeds 1/2 inch per foot. The manufacturer shall provide acceptable sheet lengths and the required fastening schedule for all roofing sheet applications to applicable roof slopes.

E. Granule Embedment: Broadcast mineral granules over all bitumen overruns on the finish ply surface, while the bitumen is still hot or the adhesive is soft, to ensure a monolithic surface color.

F. Flashing Application: Cut the cant backing sheet into 12 inch widths and peel the release film from the back of the sheet. Set the sheet into place over the primed substrate extending 6 inches onto the field of the roof area and 6 inches up the vertical surface utilizing minimum 3 inch laps. Set the non-combustible cant into place dry prior to installation of the roof membrane base ply. Flash walls and curbs using the reinforcing sheet and the metal foil flashing membrane. After the base ply has been applied to the top of the cant, prime the base ply surfaces to receive the reinforcing sheet. Fully adhere the reinforcing sheet, utilizing minimum 3 inch side laps onto the primed base ply surface and up the primed wall or curb to the desired flashing height. After the final roofing ply has been applied to the top of the cant, prepare the surface area that is to receive flashing coverage by torch heating granular surfaces or by application of asphalt primer; allowing primer to dry thoroughly. Torch apply the metal foil-faced flashing into place using three foot widths (cut off the end of roll) always lapping the factory selvage edge. Stagger the laps of the metal foil flashing layer from lap seams in the reinforcing layer. Extend the flashing sheet a minimum of 4 inches beyond the toe of the cant onto the prepared surface of the finished roof and up the wall or curb to the desired flashing height. Exert pressure on the flashing sheet during application to ensure complete contact with the vertical/horizontal surfaces, preventing air pockets; this can be accomplished by using a damp sponge or shop rag. Check and seal all loose laps and edges. Nail the top edge of the flashing on 9 inch centers. (See manufacturer's schematic for visual interpretation).

G. Catalyzed Acrylic Resin Flashing System: Install the liquid-applied primer and flashing system in accordance with the membrane system manufacturer's printed installer's guidelines and other applicable written recommendations as provided by the manufacturer.

H. Water Cut-Off: At end of day's work, or when precipitation is imminent, construct a water cut-off at all open edges. Cut-offs can be built using asphalt or plastic cement and roofing felts, constructed to withstand protracted periods of service. Cut-offs must be completely removed prior to the resumption of roofing.

3.04 ROOF SYSTEM INTERFACE WITH RELATED COMPONENTS

A. Roof Moisture Relief Vents - vented lightweight insulating concrete substrates: The installation of the topside vents must be completed daily, immediately following the application of the base ply, and in accordance with the most recent version of the technical bulletin for venting Siplast roof membrane and roof insulation systems. Completely prime the metal flanges and allow to dry prior to installation. After the base ply has been applied, mark the venting designations. Cut a 2 inch diameter core from the roof membrane assembly. Set the vent flange in mastic, centered over the core cut. Strip-in the flange using the stripping-ply material, extending a minimum of 4 inches beyond the edge of the flange. Terminate the finish ply at the flange-throat juncture of the vent. SEE ITEM: SEALANT for finish of this detail.

B. Walktread: Cut the walktread into maximum 5 foot lengths and allow to relax until flat. Adhere the sheet using the specified plastic cement. Apply the specified cement in a 3/8 inch thickness to the back of the product in 5 inch by 5 inch spots in accordance with the pattern as supplied by the walktread manufacturer. Walk-in each sheet after application to ensure proper adhesion. Use a minimum spacing of 2 inches between sheets to allow for proper drainage.

C. Sealant: Apply a smooth continuous bead of the specified sealant at the exposed finish ply edge transition to metal flashings incorporated into the roof system.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL AND INSPECTIONS

A. Site Condition: Leave all areas around job site free of debris, roofing materials, equipment and related items after completion of job.

B. Notification Of Completion: Notify the manufacturer by means of manufacturer's printed Notification of Completion form of job completion in order to schedule a final inspection date.

C. Final Inspection

1. Post-Installation Meeting: Hold a meeting at the completion of the project, attended by all parties that were present at the pre-job conference. A punch list of items required for completion shall be compiled by the Contractor and the manufacturer's representative. Complete, sign, and mail the punch list form to the manufacturer's headquarters.

D. Issuance Of The Guarantee: Complete all post installation procedures and meet the manufacturer's final endorsement for issuance of the specified guarantee.

SECTION 07600 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 — GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including the Conditions of the Contract and Division 01 Specification Sections apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Provide all labor, equipment, and materials to fabricate and install the following.

1. Edge strip and flashing.

2. Fascia and trim.

3. Coping cap at parapets.

4. Fascia and edge metal.

B. Related Work Specified Elsewhere:

1. Division 06 Rough Carpentry

2. Division 07 Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing

3. Division 07 Roof Accessories

4. Division 07 Roof & Deck Insulation

5. Division 07 Manufactured Metal Roof Panels

1.3 REFERENCES

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

1. ASTM A653 Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.

2. ASTM A792 Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy Coated by the Hot-Dip Process.

3. ASTM B209 Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate.

4. ASTM B221 Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes.

5. ASTM D692 Standard Specification for Coarse Aggregate for Bituminous Paving Mixtures.

B. American National Standards Institute and Single Ply Roofing Institute (ANSI/SPRI)

1. ANSI/SPRI ES-1 Testing and Certification Listing of Shop Fabricated Edge Metal

C. Warnock Hersey International, Inc., Middleton, WI (WH)

D. Factory Mutual Research Corporation (FMRC)

E. Underwriters Laboratories (UL)

F. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA)

1. Latest Edition Architectural Sheet Metal Manual

2. Roofing and Waterproofing Manual

G. National Roofing Contractors Association (NRCA)

H. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE)

1. ASCE 7-05 Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures.

1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

A. Product Data:

1. Provide manufacturer's specification data sheets for each product.

2. Metal material characteristics and installation recommendations.

3. Submit color chart prior to material ordering and/or fabrication so that equivalent colors to those specified can be approved.

B. Samples: Submit two (2) samples, illustrating typical metal edge, coping, gutters, fascia extenders for material and finish.

C. Shop Drawings

1. For manufactured and shop fabricated gravel stops, fascia, scuppers, and all other sheet metal fabrications.

2. Indicate material profile, jointing pattern, jointing details, fastening methods, flashing, terminations, and installation details.

3. Indicate type, gauge and finish of metal.

D. Specimen Warranty: Provide an unexecuted copy of the warranty specified for this Project, identifying the terms and conditions required of the Manufacturer and the Owner.

1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

A. Design Loads: Any material submitted must be accompanied by a report signed and sealed by a professional engineer licensed in the state of Texas. This report shall show that the submitted equal meets the wind uplift and perimeter attachment requirements according to ASCE 7-05 and ANSI/SPRI ES-1. Submitals without licensed engineer approval will be rejected for non-conformance.

B. A letter from an officer of the manufacturing company certifying that the materials furnished for this project are the same as represented in tests and supporting data.

C. Mill production reports certifying that the steel thicknesses are within allowable tolerances of the nominal or minimum thickness or gauge specified.

D. Certification of work progress inspection. Refer to Quality Assurance Article below.

E. Certifications:

1. Submit certification that the perimeter/edge metal products being used on this project have been tested according to ANSI/SPRI ES-1 criteria. Certification submitted must be provided by either NRCA, Independent Test Agency or the perimeter/edge metal manufacturer.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Engage an experienced roofing contractor specializing in sheet metal flashing work with a minimum of five (5) years experience.

B. Maintain a full-time supervisor/foreman who is on the job-site at all times during installation. Foreman must have a minimum of five (5) years experience with the installation of similar system to that specified.

C. Upon request fabricator/installer shall submit work experience and evidence of financial responsibility. The Owner's representative reserves the right to inspect fabrication facilities in determining qualifications.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened containers or packages with labels intact and legible.

B. Stack pre-formed and pre-finished material to prevent twisting, bending, or abrasion, and to provide ventilation. Slope metal sheets to ensure drainage.

C. Prevent contact with materials which may cause discoloration or staining.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Determine that work of other trades will not hamper or conflict with necessary fabrication and storage requirements for pre-formed metal edge system.

1.9 DESIGN AND PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

A. Wind Uplift Pressures: Metal edge system must meet minimum design load pressures as determined by ASCE 7. Provide completed calculations to show ANSI/SPRI ES-1 test results meet the minimum wind uplift pressures.

B. Thermal expansion and contraction:

1. Completed metal edge flashing system shall be capable of withstanding expansion and contraction of components caused by changes in temperature without buckling, producing excess stress on structure, anchors or fasteners, or reducing performance ability.

1.10 WARRANTIES

A. Owner shall receive one (1) warranty from manufacturer covering all of the following criteria. Multiple warranties are not acceptable.

1. Pre-finished metal material shall require a written twenty (20)-year non-prorated warranty covering fade, chalking and film integrity. The material shall not show a color change greater than 5 NBS color units per ASTM D2244 or chalking excess of 8 units per ASTM D659. If either occurs material shall be replaced per warranty, at no cost to the Owner.

2. Changes: Changes or alterations in the edge metal system without prior written consent from the manufacturer shall render the system unacceptable for a warranty.

3. Warranty shall commence on date of substantial completion or final payment, whichever is agreed by contract.

4. The Contractor shall provide the Owner with a notarized written warranty assuring that all sheet metal work including caulking and fasteners to be watertight and secure for a period of (2) two years from the date of final acceptance of the building. Warranty shall include all materials and workmanship required to repair any leaks that develop, and make good any damage to other work or equipment caused by such leaks or the repairs thereof.

PART 2 — PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Common Product Requirements."

B. Comply with all manufacturer and contractor/fabricator quality and performance criteria specified in Part 1.

2.3 ACCEPTABLE FABRICATORS

A. Any fabricator which has been certified by the NRCA (National Roofing Contractors Association) to fabricate their ANSI/SPRI ES-1 tested profiles on their Gravel-Stop, Metal Edge, Fascia and Coping Cap products**.**

B. Provide a product carrying a signed and sealed Performance Test Report from a testing company for ANSI/SPRI ES-1 on their Gravel-Stop, Metal Edge, Fascia and Coping Cap products.

C. Any fabricator with a Gravel-Stop, Metal Edge, Fascia and Coping Cap products that has been tested in accordance with ANSI/SPRI ES-1 standards. Proof of this testing must be provided via a report signed and sealed by a qualified third party testing agency. This report shall show that the submitted equal meets the wind uplift and perimeter attachment requirements according to ASCE 7-05 and ANSI/SPRI ES-1. Substitution requests submitted without licensed engineer approval will be rejected for non-conformance

2.4 MATERIALS

A. Materials:

1. Exposed base metal material:

a. Aluminum, ASTM B209, alloy 3105-H14, in thickness of .032" nom. or .040" nom. or .050" nom. or .063" nom.

2. Unexposed base metal material:

a. Zinc-coated steel, ASTM A653, coating designation G-90, in thickness of 0.0299 nom./ 22 gauge, 36" to 48" by coil length, chemically treated, commercial or lock-forming quality.

3. Minimum gauge of steel or thickness of Aluminum to be specified in accordance with Architectural Sheet Metal Manual, Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractor's National Association, Inc. recommendations.

B. Finishes:

1. Exposed surfaces for coated panels:

a. Steel Finishes: fluorocarbon finish. Epoxy primer baked both sides, .2-.25 mils thickness as approved by finish coat manufacturer.

Weathering finish as referred by National Coil Coaters Association (NCCA).

PROPERTY	TEST METHOD	FLUOROCARBON*
Pencil Hardness	ASTM D3363 NCCA II-2	HB-H
Bend	ASTM D-4145 NCCA II-19	O-T
Cross-Hatch Adhesion	ASTM D3359	no loss of adhesion
Gloss (60° angle)	ASTM D523	25+/-5%
Reverse Impact	ASTM D2794	no cracking or loss of adhesion
Nominal Thickness	ASTM D1005	
Primer		0.2 mils
Topcoat		0.8 mils
TOTAL		1.0 mils

* Subject to minimum quantity requirements

b. Color shall match MBCI “Slate Gray” wall panels. Refer to Specification Section 07410.

2. Exposed and unexposed surfaces for mill finish flashing, fascia, and coping cap, shall be as shipped from the mill.

3. Exposed and unexposed surfaces for anodized aluminum flashing, fascia, and coping cap, shall be as shipped from mill.

2.4 RELATED MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES

A. Metal Primer: Zinc chromate type.

B. Plastic Cement: ASTM D 4586

C. Sealant: Tuff-Stuff One part polyurethane sealant.

D. Underlayment: ASTM D2178, No15 asphalt saturated roofing felt.

E. Slip Sheet: Rosin sized building paper.

F. Fasteners:

1. Corrosion resistant screw fastener as recommended by metal manufacturer. Finish exposed fasteners same as flashing metal.

2. Fastening shall conform to Factory Mutual requirements or as stated on section details, whichever is more stringent.

G. Gutter and Downspout Anchorage Devices: Material as specified for system.

PART 3 — EXECUTION

3.1 EXECUTION, GENERAL

A. Refer to Division 07 Section Common Work Results for Thermal and Moisture Protection.

3.2 PROTECTION

A. Isolate metal products from dissimilar metals, masonry or concrete with bituminous paint, tape, or slip sheet. Use gasketed fasteners where required to prevent corrosive reactions.

3.3 GENERAL

A. Secure fascia to wood nailers at the bottom edge with a continuous cleat.

B. Fastening of metal to walls and wood blocking shall comply with building code standards.

C. All accessories or other items essential to the completeness of sheet metal installation, whether specifically indicated or not, shall be provided and of the same material as item to which applied.

D. Allow sufficient clearances for expansion and contraction of linear metal components. Secure metal using fasteners as required by the system. Exposed face fastening will be rejected.

3.4 INSPECTION

A. Verify that curbs are solidly set and nailing strips located.

B. Perform field measurements prior to fabrication.

C. Coordinate work with work of other trades.

D. Verify that substrate is dry, clean and free of foreign matter.

E. Commencement of installation shall be considered acceptance of existing conditions.

3.5 SHOP-FABRICATED SHEET METAL

A. Metal work shall be shop fabricated to configurations and forms in accordance with recognized sheet metal practices.

B. Hem exposed edges.

C. Angle bottom edges of exposed vertical surfaces to form drip.

D. Lap corners with adjoining pieces fastened and set in sealant.

E. Form joints for gravel stop fascia system, coping cap with a 3/8" opening between sections. Back the opening with an internal drainage plate formed to the profile of fascia piece.

F. Install sheet metal to comply with referenced ANSI/SPRI, SMACNA and NRCA standards.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Clean installed work in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

B. Replace damaged work than cannot be restored by normal cleaning methods.

3.8 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT

A. Remove and properly dispose of waste products generated. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction

3.09 FINAL INSPECTION

A. At completion of installation and associated work, meet with Contractor, Architect, installer, installer of associated work, Owner, roofing system manufacturer's representative, and other representatives directly concerned with performance of roofing system.

B. Inspect work and flashing of roof penetrations, walls, curbs and other equipment. List all items requiring correction or completion and furnish copy of list to each party in attendance.

C. Repair or replace deteriorated or defective work found at time above inspection as required to a produce an installation which is free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.

D. Notify the Contractor upon completion of corrections.

E. Following the final inspection, provide written notice of acceptance of the installation from the roofing system manufacturer.

F. Immediately correct roof leakage during construction. If the Contractor does not respond within twenty-four (24) hours, the Owner will exercise rights to correct the Work under the terms of the Conditions of the Contract.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07720 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following: Factory fabricated roof curbs.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, materials, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:
1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.
4. Coordinate dimensions with shop drawings of equipment to be supported.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Substitutions: Requests for substitution shall be submitted in writing at least 10 days prior to bid date and shall be accompanied by product literature and samples. No substitution will be permitted after bid date.

B. Standards: Comply with the following:
1. SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" details for fabrication of units, including flanges and cap flashing to coordinate with type of roofing indicated.
2. NRCA's "Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" details for installing units.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. G-90 galvanized steel with paint-grip coating.

B. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard rigid or semirigid glass-fiber board of 2” thickness, 1-1/2lb density, R8 value.

C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, complying with AWPA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.

D. Fasteners: Stainless steel metal as recommended by manufacturer. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened.

E. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, or PVC; or flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.

F. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type bituminous mastic, nominally free of sulfur and containing no asbestos fibers, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coating.

G. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene; nonhardening, nonskinning, nondrying, nonmigrating sealant.

H. Elastomeric Sealant: Generic type recommended by unit manufacturer that is compatible with joint surfaces; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, and Uses NT, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.

I. Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, nonasbestos, fibrated asphalt cement designed for trowel application or other adhesive compatible with roofing system.

2.2 ROOF CURBS

A. General: Provide roof curbs capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction to be supported on roof curbs. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

B. Fabrication: Unless otherwise indicated or required for strength, fabricate units from minimum 16 gauge, galvanized steel with paint grip coating, with welded corners and with seams joined by continuous water and air-tight welds. Tack or spot welding is unacceptable.
1. All external welds shall be prepared and coated with corrosion inhibitor compound.
2. Curb walls shall be insulated with 1-1/2” thick, three-pound density insulation. Exposed edges shall be encapsulated to ensure no insulation erodes into the air stream. Insulation shall be either foil faced or coated with antimicrobial coating such that the fibers are not airborne over the life of the building.
3. Provide preservative-treated wood nailers at tops of curbs and formed flange at perimeter bottom for mounting to roof.
4. Provide formed cants and base profile coordinated with roof insulation thickness.
5. The Manufacturer shall limit static pressure gain to .25 inches/water gauge
6. Fabricate units to minimum height of 18 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Changes in airflow direction to be accomplished by 90-degree elbows with turning vanes.
8. Curbs shall be manufactured in one piece except when width exceeds 108”. If width exceeds 108”, the curb shall be designed with prefabricated joints for ease of installation. It will be manufactured in separate pieces with the number and length of the pieces determined by the total length of the unit. The Manufacturer shall supply drawings for assembly and installation.
9. Curbs shall provide full support of the new unit and shall include 3/8” gasketing.
10. Counter flashing shall extend over the original curb a minimum of 1” and be welded and weatherproof.

2.3 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Surface preparation: Oil, grease and other deposits of surface contamination shall be removed by solvent or detergent washing. All surfaces must be clean, dry and free of any dirt, dust, grease, oil or other deleterious materials prior to coating. Care shall be taken to ensure surfaces remain clean before and during coating process.

B. Application system:
   1. Coating shall provide a standard 5 year manufacturer's limited warranty.
   2. Metal surfaces shall be finished with a corrosion protection system equal to one of the following:
      a. Energy Guard ZRU Primer. Finish coat shall consist of EnergyGuard DCC Cabinet Casing polyurethane coating. Coatings shall be applied by a certified applicator and shall result in a finish with an ASTMB117-90 salt spray rating of 10,000 hours.
      b. Prime coat of ICI Devran 201 Universal Epoxy Primer to thickness of not less than 3.0 mils DFT (dry film thickness) nor more than 8.0 mils DFT. Minimum recoat time for Devran 201 Universal Epoxy Primer is 3.5 hours at 77 F with 80% relative humidity. Finish coat shall consist of Devthane 379 UVA Aliphatic Urethane Gloss Enamel applied to thickness of not less than 1.0 mils DFT nor more than 5.0 mils DFT.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation of roof accessories with installation of roof deck, roof insulation, flashing, roofing membranes, penetrations, equipment, and other construction involving roof accessories to ensure that each element of the Work performs properly and that combined elements are waterproof and weather tight. Anchor roof accessories securely to supporting structural substrates so they are capable of withstanding lateral and thermal stresses, and inward and outward loading pressures.

B. Separation: Separate metal from incompatible metal or corrosive substrates, including wood, by coating concealed surfaces, at locations of contact, with bituminous coating or providing other permanent separation.

C. Flange Seals: Unless otherwise indicated, set flanges of accessory units in a thick bed of roofing cement to form a seal.

D. Cap Flashing: Where required as component of accessory, install cap flashing to provide waterproof overlap with roofing or roof flashing (as counter flashing). Seal overlap with thick bead of mastic sealant.

E. Operational Units: Test-operate units with operable components. Clean and lubricate joints and hardware. Adjust for proper operation.

3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Touch up damaged metal coatings.

END OF SECTION 07720

SECTION 07730 - WIND LOAD RATED ROOF CURBS AND RESTRAINT BRACKETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Design, construct, furnish and install roof curbs, brackets and related items to meet governing building codes, as demonstrated by comprehensive analysis that the load resisting capabilities meet or exceed requirements.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Meet requirements of the International Building Code, ASCE Std 7, TDI, and other applicable codes for the location. This specification shall be a minimum requirement for wind load design consideration, and is not intended as a substitute for legislated, more stringent, national, state or local requirements.

B. Wind-induced forces shall be determined by governing code requirements. Coordinate Design Wind Pressure Requirements with Structural Engineer.
   1. Wind-generated force shall be reduced into an equivalent statically applied force.
   2. The statically applied force shall act in horizontal and vertical directions at the center of gravity of the rooftop mounted equipment, resulting in torsion, flexure, tension and shear forces that the wind restraint brackets shall be shown to be able to resist.

C. Install products in strict accordance with applicable codes and manufacturers' standards. Whenever a conflict occurs between the manufacturers or construction standards, the most stringent shall apply.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturer's statement showing that the curbs and wind load restraint brackets meet the applicable code requirements, signed and sealed by a licensed professional engineer (PE). Provide the following:
   1. Wind restraint calculations for all connections of rooftop-mounted equipment to roof curb, and roof curb to the structure.
   2. Drawings showing curbs, wind restraint bracket dimensions, make and model compatible with rooftop unit, including type of connection hardware required.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROOF CURBS AND RESTRAINTS

A. Approved manufacturers of roof curbs and wind load restraint brackets:
   1. Curbs Plus, Complete Curbs, Thybar Corporation.
   2. Others shall obtain a written pre-approval one week prior to bidding.

B. Products shall be made of a material (Prime G-90 galvanized steel or galvalume) compatible with roof curb and the rooftop unit base-rail material. Dissimilar metals shall not to be used.
   1. Fully welded mitered corners for wind load consideration
   2. Base flange attachments for securing curb to structure.
   3. Factory installed wood nailer for attachment of roofing material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Attach rooftop equipment to roof curbs with wind load restraint brackets of size, type and quantity as determined by equipment manufacturer.

C. Attach roof curb to the building structure at the curb base flanges. Base flange attachment options include anchor bolts, welded connections and mechanical fasteners.

D. Do not install wind load restraint brackets in a manner that will result in inadequate maintenance access, base-rail damage, or roof curb reduced weight carrying capacity.

E. Prior to performing installation of restraint brackets, notify Engineer of any conflicts with other trades or equipment that may result in undesirable contact due to inadequate space or other unforeseen conditions. Notify Engineer of any discrepancies between the specifications and field conditions or changes required due to specific equipment selection prior to installation.

F. Corrective work necessitated by discrepancies or conflicts after installation shall be at the contractor's expense.

3.2 INSPECTION

A. On completion of installation, inspect the completed system and report in writing any installation error or other faults in the system that could affect the wind load resistant capabilities of the roof top assembly.

B. The Contractor shall submit a report to the project designer, including the above report with consequent steps taken to properly complete the wind load restraint installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07900 - JOINT SEALERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:
Extent of each form and type of joint sealer is indicated on drawings and by provisions of this section.

Refer to Division 8 sections glazing requirements; not work of this section.

Refer to sections of Division 15 and 16 for joint sealers in mechanical and electrical work; not work of this section.

General Performance: Except as otherwise indicated, joint sealers are required to establish and maintain airtight and waterproof continuous seals on a permanent basis, within recognized limitations of wear and as indicated for each application. Failures of installed sealers to comply with this requirement will be recognized as failures of materials and workmanship.

SUBMITTALS:
Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product specifications, handling/installation/curing instructions, and performance tested data sheets for each elastomeric product required.

JOB CONDITIONS:
Weather Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of liquid sealants under unfavorable weather conditions. Install elastomeric sealants when temperature is in lower third of temperature range recommended by manufacturer for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

MATERIALS:
General Sealer Requirements: Provide colors indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors. Select materials for compatibility with joint surfaces and other indicated exposures, and except as otherwise indicated select modules of elasticity and hardness or grade recommended by manufacturer for each application indicated. Where exposed to foot traffic, select non-tracking materials of sufficient strength and hardness to withstand stiletto heel traffic without damage or deterioration of sealer system.

Sealant: (with expansion and compression capability of plus or minus 50%).
Silpruf Silicone weatherproofing sealant: General Electric
790 Building Sealant: Down Corning

Caulking:
NP -2 Sonneborn. Polyurethane
Install at all locations where notes as "caulk" or required to provide a neat joint.

Expansion Joint Sealer:
ACMA Seal: ACME Highway Products Corp., Buffalo, N.Y. 14207

System: Series “J”, Style No. 2-602, 1-3/4" wide x 2" high.
Install with manufacturer’s ACMA Lubricant Adhesive.

Wall Penetration Sealant:
FireBarrier Silicone Sealant - 3M™ Fire Barrier Silicone Sealant 2000+ or approve equal.
Fire Barrier Foam Sealant - 3M™ Fire Barrier Rated Foam FIP 1-Step or approve equal.

Foam Joint Filters:
Expanded Polyethylene Joint Filler (ExPe -JF): Provide flexible, compressible, closed - cell, polyethylene of not less than 10 psi compression deflection (25%) except provide higher compression deflection strength as may be necessary to withstand installation forces and provide proper support for sealants; surface water absorption of not more than 0.1 lbs. per sq. ft.

MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS:
Sealant backer Rod (S -Br): Provide compressible rod stock of polyethylene foam, polyurethane foam, polyethylene jacketed polyurethane foam, butyl rubber foam, neoprene foam or other flexible, permanent, durable non-absorptive material as recommended by sealant manufacturer for backup of an compatibility with sealant. Where used with hot -applied sealant, provide heat -resistant type which will not be deteriorated by sealant application temperature as indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

INSPECTION:
Installer must examine substrates, (joint surfaces) and conditions under which joint sealer work is to be performed, and must notify Contractor in writing of unsatisfactory conditions. Do not proceed with joint sealer work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to installer.

JOINT PREPARATION:
Clean joint surfaces immediately before installation of gaskets, sealant or caulking compounds. Remove dirt, insecure coatings, moisture and other substances which could interfere with seal of gasket or bond of sealant or caulking compound. Etch concrete and masonry join surfaces as recommended by sealant manufacturer. Roughen vitreous and glazed joint surfaces as recommended by sealant manufacturer.

Prime or seal joint surfaces where indicated, and where recommended by sealant manufacturer. Confine primer/sealer to areas of sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
INSTALLATION:
Install at exterior doors, glass frames (both interior and exterior of frames), exterior louvers, windows, exterior joints in walls and other locations where indicated or required to provide weather tight joints. Indicated for floor or wall assembly in which penetration occurs.

Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
Produce beads of proper width and depth.
Tool as recommended by manufacturer.
Remove surplus materials.

Study drawings and furnish and install proper materials at each point where called for on the drawings plus all other points essential to continued integrity of the watertight barrier.

CURE AND PROTECTION

Cure sealants and caulking compounds in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, to obtain high early bond strength, internal cohesive strength and surface durability. Advise the Contractor of procedures required for cure and protection of joint sealer during construction period, so that they will be without deterioration or damage (other than normal wear and weathering) at time of substantial completion. Cure and protect sealants in a manner which will minimize increases in modules of elasticity and other accelerated aging effects. Replace or restore sealant which are damaged or deteriorated during construction period.

END OF SECTION 07900

SECTION 08100 - STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:
Extent of standard steel doors and frames is indicated and scheduled on drawings.

Custom hollow metal work is specified in other Division 8 sections.
Builder's hardware is specified elsewhere in Division 8. Galvanized

QUALITY ASSURANCE:
Provide doors and frames complying with Steel Door Institute "Recommended Specifications: Standard Steel Doors and Frames" (SDI 100) and as herein specified.

Provide Hurricane Resistant Steel Doors and Frames Equal to: Steel Craft Mfg. Co. H-Series Doors at all exterior door openings.

Manufacturer: Provide standard steel doors and frames by a single firm specializing in production of this type of work. Acceptable Manufacturer's:

Basis of Design: Steelcraft Mfg Co.
Ceco Corp.
Curries

Provide galvanized and insulated doors and frames at exterior conditions only.

SUBMITTALS:

Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications for fabrication and installation, including data substantiating that products comply with requirements.

Shop Drawings: Submit for fabrication and installation of steel doors and frames. Include details of each frame type, elevations of door design types, conditions at openings, details of construction, location and installation requirements of finish hardware and reinforcements, and details of joints and connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

Provide schedule of doors and frames using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on contract drawings.

Wind Pressures Requirements: Submit documentation stating the door and frame system has been designed to meet the project wind pressure as defined by the structural engineer.

Label Construction Certification: Submit manufacturer's certification for oversize fire rated doors and frames that each assembly has been constructed with materials and methods equivalent to requirements for labeled construction.

DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:
Deliver hollow metal work in cartons or crated to provide protection during transit and job storage. Provide additional sealed plastic wrapping for factory finished doors.

Inspect hollow metal work upon delivery for damage. Minor damages may be repaired provided refinished items are equal in all respects to new work and acceptable to Architect; otherwise, remove and replace damaged items as directed.

Store doors and frames at building site under cover. Place units on wood sills at least 4" high, or otherwise store on floors in manner that will prevent rust and damage. Avoid use of non vented plastic or canvas shelters which could create humidity chamber. If cardboard wrapper on door becomes wet, remove carton immediately. Provide 1/4" spaces between stacked doors to promote air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

MATERIALS:

Hot Rolled Steel Sheets and Strip: Commercial quality carbon steel, pickled and oiled, complying with ASTM A 569 and ASTM A 568.

Cold Rolled Steel Sheets: Commercial quality carbon steel, complying with ASTM A 366 and ASTM A 568.

Supports and Anchors: Fabricate of not less than 18 gage galvanized sheet steel.

Inserts, Bolts and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard units, except hot dip galvanized items to be built into exterior walls, complying with ASTM A 153, Class C or D as applicable.

Shop Applied Paint:

Primer: Rust inhibitive enamel or paint, either air drying or baking, suitable as a base for specified finish paints.

FABRICATION, GENERAL:
Fabricate steel door and frame units to be rigid, neat in appearance and free from defects, warp or buckle. Wherever practicable, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. Clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment, to assure proper assembly at project site.

Fabricate exposed faces of doors and panels, including stiles and rails of non-flush units, from only cold rolled steel.

Fabricate frames, concealed stiffeners, reinforcement, edge channels, louvers and moldings from either cold rolled or hot rolled steel (at fabricator's option).

Finish Hardware Preparation:

Prepare doors and frames to receive mortised and concealed finish hardware in accordance with final Finish Hardware Schedule and template provided by hardware supplier. Comply with applicable requirements of ANSI A 115 series specifications for door and frame preparation for hardware. Exterior doors shall be fabricated and assembled using frame, hinge, and locking hardware as indicated on third party test

report.

Reinforce doors and frames to receive surface applied hardware. Drilling and tapping for surface applied finish hardware may be done at project site.

Locate finish hardware as indicated on final shop drawings or, if not shown, in accordance with "Recommended Locations for Builder's Hardware," published by Door and Hardware Institute.

Shop Painting:
Clean, treat, and paint exposed surfaces of steel door and frame units, including galvanized surfaces.

Clean steel surfaces of mill scale, rust, oil, grease, dirt, and other foreign materials before application of paint.

Apply shop coat of prime paint of even consistency to provide a uniformly finished surface ready to receive finish paint.

STANDARD STEEL DOORS:
Provide metal doors of types and styles indicated on drawings or schedules.

	1 3/4" doors
Stiles	16 ga.
Panels	16 ga.
Hinge Tap Plate	9 ga.
Hinges	1 1/2 pair 4 1/2 x 4 1/2 full mortise template typ
Lock reinforcement	3/32" steel
Lock Set	See Hardware Schedule
Door Closer Reinforcement	9 ga.
Insulated	PolyurethaneR-5

Door Louvers:
Provide sight proof stationary louvers for interior doors where indicated, constructed of inverted V shaped or Y shaped blades formed of 24 gage cold rolled steel set into 20 gage steel frame.

For fire rated openings, provide tightly fitted, spring loaded, automatic closing louvers with operable blades, equipped with fusible links, arranged so that metal overlaps metal at every joint.

STANDARD STEEL FRAMES:
Provide metal frames for doors, transoms, sidelights, borrowed lights, and other openings, of types and styles as shown on drawings and schedules. Conceal fastenings, unless otherwise indicated.

Frames shall be 16 gauge
Fabricate frames with metered corners, knocked down not acceptable.

Door Silencers: Except on weatherstripped frames, drill stops to receive 2 silencers on strike jambs of single swing frames and 3 silencers on heads of double swing frames.

Glazing Stops: 16 ga. steel channel with pre drilled holes for flat heads of double sink

screws.

Plaster Guards: Provide 26 gauge steel plaster guards or mortar boxes, welded to frame, at back of finish hardware cutouts where mortar or other materials might obstruct hardware operation.

Fire Resistant Frames: Provide 1-hr rated doors in partitions shown on plans and as scheduled.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

INSPECTION:
Installer must examine substrate and conditions under which steel doors and frames are to be installed and must notify Contractor in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely completion of work. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in manner acceptable to Installer.

INSTALLATION:

General: Install standard steel doors, frames, and accessories in accordance with final shop drawings, manufacturer's data, and as herein specified.

Placing frames:

Comply with provisions of SDI 105 "Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames", unless otherwise indicated.

Except for frames located at in place concrete or masonry and at drywall installations, place frames prior to construction at enclosing walls and ceilings. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is completed, remove temporary braces and spreaders leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.

In masonry construction, locate 3 wall anchors per jamb at hinge and strike levels. Building in of anchors and grouting of frames is specified in Division 4.

At in-place concrete or masonry construction, set frames and secure to adjacent construction with machine screws and masonry anchorage devices.

Install fire rate frames in accordance with NFPA STD. No. 80.

In metal stud partitions, install at least 3 wall anchors per jamb at hinge and strike levels. In open steel stud partitions, place studs in wall anchor notches and wire tie. In closed steel stud partitions, attach wall anchors to studs with tapping screws.

Door Installation:

Fit hollow metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified in SDI 100.

Place fire rated doors with clearances as specified in NFPA Standard No. 80.

ADJUST AND CLEAN:

Prime Coat Touch up: Immediately after erection, sand smooth any rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touch up of compatible air drying primer.

Protection Removal: Immediately prior to final inspection, remove protective plastic wrappings from pre-finished doors.

Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating finish hardware items, leaving steel doors and frames undamaged and in complete and proper operating condition.

END OF SECTION 08100

SECTION 08210 - WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

Extent and location of each type of wood door is shown on drawings and in schedules.

Types of doors required include the following:

Prefinished standard and fire rated type wood doors with flush faces.

Louvers for wood doors, including furnishing and installation, are specified under this section. Louvers are to be furnished by mechanical contractor.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:

NWMA Quality Marking: Mark each wood door with NWMA Wood Flush Door Certification Hallmark certifying compliance with applicable requirements of ANSI/NWMA I.S. 1 Series. For manufacturers not participating in NWMA Hallmark Program, a certification of compliance may be substituted for marking of individual doors.

REFERENCES:

Comply with the applicable requirements of the following standards unless otherwise indicated.

ANSI/AWMA I.S. 1, “Industry Standard for Wood Flush Doors" published by National Woodwork Manufacturers Associates (NWMA).

AWI Quality Standard: Section 1300 of "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standard" published by the Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers (AWI). Designations for grade and core construction under types of doors refer to this standard.

SUBMITTALS:

Product Data: Submit door manufacturer's product data, specifications and installation instructions for each type of wood door.

Include certifications as may be required to show compliance with specifications.

Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings indicating location and size of each door, elevation of each kind of door, details of construction, location and extent of hardware blocking, fire ratings, requirements for factory finishing and other pertinent data.

Samples: Submit samples for the following:

Factory Finished Doors: Submit 8" x 11" samples showing fully completed factory finish on same veneer and edge construction that will be used on factory-finished doors. Submit full range of samples from which selection can be made. Tinting stain may be required at architect's option in order to match finish on existing doors to remain.

Specific Product Warranty: Submit written agreement in door manufacturer's standard form signed by Manufacturer, Installer and Contractor, agreeing to repair or replace defective doors which have warped (bow, cup or twist) or which show photographing of construction below in face veneers, or do not conform to tolerance limitations of NWMA.

1. All work in this Section shall be warranted by a **FULL DOOR WARRANTY** (from the date of installation) against defect in materials and workmanship, including the following:
    a. Delamination in any degree.
    b. Warp or twist of ¼" or more in any 3'6" x 7'0" section of a door.
    c. Telegraphing of any part of core assembly through face to cause surface variation of 1/100" or more in a 3" span.
    d. Any defect which may, in any way, impair or affect performance of the door for the purpose which it is intended. Replacement under this warranty shall include hanging, installation of hardware, and finishing.
2. Periods of warranty after date or installation:
    a. Interior solid core and mineral core Life of original installation.
3. Doors must be stored, finished, hung and maintained per manufacturers recommendations set forth in their Full Door Warranty.

PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING:

Protect wood doors during transit, storage and handling to prevent damage, soiling and deterioration. Comply with "On Site Care" recommendations of NWMA pamphlet "Care and Finishing of Wood Doors" and with manufacturer's instructions and otherwise indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

BASIS OF DESIGN: Graham Assa Abloy – Finish TBD

ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:

VT Industries
Graham Assa Abloy
Oshkosh Door Company
Haley Architectural Doors

All other door manufacturers must receive prior approval before allowed as substitute.

MATERIALS AND COMPONENTS:

General: Provide wood doors complying with applicable requirements of NWMA I.S. 1 for kinds and types of doors indicated and as specified.

Face Panels: Manufacturer's standard 5 ply panels hot pressed, unless otherwise indicated.

Exposed Surfaces: Provide same exposed surface material on both faces of each door, unless otherwise indicated.

Exposed edges shall be hardwood and compliment face veneer species.

GENERAL FABRICATION REQUIREMENTS:

Transom and Side Panels: Wherever transom panels or side panels of wood are shown in same framing systems as wood doors, provide panels which match quality and appearance of associated wood doors, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate matching panels with same construction, exposed surfaces and finish as specified for associated doors.

INTERIOR FLUSH WOOD DOORS:

Faces:	Red oak, plain sliced or rotary cut, 2 end matched panels.
Grade:	A.
Core Construction:	SLC (structural composite lumber core).
Edges:	Hardwood

Particle Core door will NOT BE ACCEPTED.
Vision Lite Frames shall meet 20 minutes rating.

Provide 60 minute label doors in partitions shown on plans and as scheduled.

FACTORY FINISH:

1. Comply with referenced WDMA Section G-15, “Factory Finishing.”.
2. Pre-finish wood doors at factory.
3. Transparent Finish: Match finish indicated in WDMA Section G-17: WDMA System #6.

PRE-FITTING AND PREPARATION FOR HARDWARE:

Comply with tolerance requirements of NWMA for pre-fitting. Machine the wood doors where hardware requires cutting of doors. Comply with final hardware schedules and door frame shop drawings and with hardware templates and other essential information required to ensure proper fit of doors and hardware.

Take accurate field measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before proceeding with machining in factory.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

INSPECTION:

Installer must examine door frames, and verify that frames are correct type and have been installed as required for proper hanging of corresponding doors and notify Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to proper and timely installation of wood doors. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to Installer.

INSTALLATION:
Condition doors to the average humidity of the installation areas prior to hanging.

Hardware: For installation see Division 8 "Builders Hardware" section of these specifications.

Manufacturer's Instructions: Install wood doors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and as shown.

Job Fit Doors: Align doors to frame for proper fit and uniform clearance at each edge and machine for hardware. Seal cut surfaces after fitting and machining.

Clearance: For non fire doors provide clearances of 1/8" at jambs and heads; 1/8” at meeting stiles for pairs of doors; and 1/2" from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4" clearance from bottom of door to top of threshold.

Job Site Finished Doors: See painting sections in Division 9 of these specifications for finishing requirements for finishing wood doors.

ADJUST AND CLEAN:

Operation: Re-hang or replace doors which do not swing or operate freely, as directed by Architect.

Finished Doors: Refinish or replace doors damaged during installation, as directed by Architect.

Protection and Completed Work: Advise Contractor of proper procedures required for protection of installed wood doors from damage or deterioration until acceptance of work.

END OF SECTION 08210

SECTION 08410 - ALUMINUM ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:
Extent of aluminum entrances and storefronts is shown on drawings and schedules.

Types of aluminum entrances and storefronts required include the following:

Aluminum entrance frames.
Aluminum sash and sidelight.
Miscellaneous items required for complete installation.
Hardware for aluminum entrances.

Glazing: Refer to "Glass and Glazing" section of Division 8 for glazing requirements for aluminum entrances and storefronts, including doors specified herein to be factory pre-glazed.

Mortise cylinders are specified in Division 8 hardware section.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:
Drawings are based on one manufacturer's standard aluminum entrance and storefront system. Another standard system of a similar and equivalent nature will be acceptable when differences do not materially detract from design concept or intended performances, as judged solely by Architect.

Field Measurement: Wherever possible, take field measurements prior to preparation of shop drawings and fabrication, to ensure proper fitting of work. However, proceed with fabrication and coordinate installation tolerances as necessary when field measurements might delay work.

REFERENCES:
Standards: Comply with applicable provisions of "Metal Curtain Wall, Window, Storefront, and Entrance Guide Specifications Manual" by AAMA.

SUBMITTALS:
Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications, standard details, and installation recommendations for components of aluminum entrances and storefronts required for project, including data that products have been tested and comply with performance requirements.

Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for fabrication and installation of aluminum entrances and storefronts, including elevations, detail sections of typical composite members, anchorages, reinforcement, expansion provisions, and glazing. Provide shop drawings with approved anchoring for compliance with ASTM testing procedure.

Wind Pressure and Impact Resistance Requirements: Submit documentation stating the storefront system has been designed to meet a wind pressure defined by the structural engineer and Texas Windstorm Guidelines, where applicable. Submit product

evaluation reports or independent third party testing stating the storefront system has been tested to meet the project wind pressure and impact resistance requirements for large missile impact.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES:
Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide window units by one of the following for each type of window unit required:

Basis of Design: Kawneer Company, Inc. Trifab 451 Aluminum Storefronts System, Impact Resistnt
Basis of Design: Kawneer Company Inc., IR350 Aluminum Glazed Outswing Hinged Doors with Transom, Impact Resistant

Acceptable Manufacturers: (Must meet requirements of ASTM 1886)
Kawneer Company, Inc.
Oldcastle Building Envelope

Substitutions: Submit proposed substitutions in writing to Architect no less than 10 days before bids are due. Submit samples and a side by side product data comparison to demonstrate acceptability of proposed substitution. Acceptance will be by Addendum only.

Aluminum Members with Rugged Frame: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish; ASTM B 221 for extrusions, ASTM B 209 for sheet/plate.

Thickness: Major portions of sections shall be .125 inch minimum thickness. Moldings, trim and glass stops shall be .050 minimum thickness.

Fasteners: Aluminum, non-magnetic stainless steel, or other materials warranted by manufacturer to be non-corrosive and compatible with aluminum components.

Do not use exposed fasteners except where unavoidable for application of hardware. Match finish of adjoining metal.

Provide Phillips flat head machine screws for exposed fasteners.

Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's high strength aluminum units where feasible; otherwise, nonmagnetic stainless steel or hot dip galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 386.

Concrete/Masonry Inserts: Cast iron, malleable iron, or hot dip galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 386.

Compression Weather-stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable stripping of either molded neoprene gaskets complying with ASTM D 2000 or molded PVC gaskets complying with ASTM D 2287.

Glass and Glazing Materials: Provide glass and glazing materials which comply with requirements of "Glass and Glazing" section of these specifications. Exterior glazing shall be tested per ASTM E1300 and meet project wind pressure and impact resistance

requirements for large missile impact.

Aluminum entrance door and window assemblies shall be tested per ASTM E 330 for standard uniform wind pressure. Tested assemblies shall be rated to meet or exceed project wind pressures.

Aluminum entrance door and window assemblies shall be tested per ASTM E 1886 and meet the performance requirements of ASTM E1996 for wind borne debris impact by large missiles.

HARDWARE:
General: Refer to hardware section of Division 8 for requirements for hardware items other than those indicated herein to be provided by manufacturer of aluminum entrances.

Provide door manufacturer's severe weather certified hardware units as indicated, scheduled, or required for operation of each door complying with testing reports or product evaluation report. Provide ICC Compliant Report.

Required Hardware and Accessories (each door leaf):
Continuous Piano Hinge
Surface Mounted Vertical Rod Panic Hardware
Door Pulls
Astragal
Closers
Weather-stripping
Accessible Threshold

Refer to Section 08700 for requirements for hardware items other than those indicated herein to be provided by manufacture of aluminum entrances.

FABRICATION:

General:
Sizes and Profiles: Required sizes for door and frame units, including profile requirements, are indicated on drawings. Any variable dimensions are indicated, together with maximum and minimum dimensions required to achieve design requirements and coordination with other work.

Details shown are based upon standard details by manufacturer indicated. Similar details by other manufacturers listed will be acceptable, provided they comply with other requirements including profile limitations.

Prefabrication: To greatest extent possible, complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work before shipment to project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.

Do not drill and tap for surface mounted hardware items until time of installation at project site.

Sequence: Complete cutting, fitting, forming, drilling, and grinding of metal work prior to cleaning, finishing, surface treatment, and application of finishes. Remove arrises from cut edges and ease edges and corners to radius of approximately 1/64".

Welding: Comply with AWS recommendations to avoid discoloration; grind exposed welds smooth and restore mechanical finish.

Reinforcing: Install reinforcing as necessary for performance requirements; separate dissimilar metals with bituminous paint or other separator which will prevent corrosion.

Continuity: Maintain accurate relation of planes and angles, with hairline fit of contacting members.

Fasteners: Conceal fasteners wherever possible.

Weather-stripping: For exterior doors, provide compression weather-stripping against fixed stops; at other edges, provide sliding weather-stripping retained in adjustable strip mortised into door edge.

Provide heavy duty, hollow, compression weather-stripping in bottom door rail, adjustable for contact with threshold.

Storefront Framing System (AL SF): Storefront and assembly shall be designed to comply with ASTM E 1886, BCCO PA 201,PA 202 AND PA 203.

General: Inside outside matched resilient flush glazed system, fabricated for stick type erection procedure with provision for glass replacement.

Frames: Frames, mullions and transom bars shall be constructed of aluminum extrusions, size 2-1/2" x 5" x 1/8" minimum wall thickness unless otherwise indicated on the drawings. Hurricane Resistant Storefront wall thickness must comply with TDI Product Evaluation Report.

End Dam: Provide end dams at each side of sill condition at base or transom panel.

Glazing: Fabricate doors to facilitate replacement of glass or panels, without disassembly of door stiles and rails. Provide snap on extruded aluminum glazing stops, with exterior stops anchored for non-removal.

FINISHES:

Bronze Aluminum Finish

PART 3 EXECUTION

INSTALLATION:
Comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for installation of aluminum entrances and storefronts.

Set units plumb, level, and true to line, without warp or rack of framing members, doors, or panels. Anchor securely in place, separating aluminum and other corrodible metal surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials.

Drill and tap frames and doors and apply surface mounted hardware templates, complying with hardware manufacturer's instructions and template requirements. Use

concealed fasteners wherever possible.

Set sill members and other members in bed of compound as shown, or with joint fillers or gaskets as shown to provide weather tight construction. Comply with requirements of Division 7 for compounds fillers, and gaskets.

Refer to "Glass and Glazing" section of Division 8 for installation of glass and other panels shown to be glazed into doors and framing, and not pre-glazed by manufacturer.

ADJUST AND CLEAN:
Adjust operating hardware to function properly, without binding, and to provide tight fit at contact points and weather-stripping.

Clean system, inside and out, after erection and installation of glass and sealants. Remove excess glazing and joint sealant, dirt, and other substances from aluminum surfaces. Remove protective coating when completion of construction activities no longer requires its retention.

Institute protective measures and other precautions required to assure that aluminum entrances and storefronts will be without damage or deterioration, other than normal weathering, at time of acceptance.

END OF SECTION 08410

SECTION 08520 - ALUMINUM WINDOWS

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

Extent of each type of aluminum window unit is indicated on drawings.

Types of aluminum window units required include the following:

Fixed Aluminum window units

Applications of aluminum windows on project include the following:

Individual units set in conventional wall construction.

Units in continuous runs, with mullions

Glazing: Refer to "glass and glazing" section of Division 8 for glazing all window units, including those specified to be factory pre-glazed.

SYSTEM DESCRIPTION:

Performance and Testing:

General: Except as otherwise indicated, comply with air infiltration tests, water resistance tests, uniform load deflection tests, and uniform load structural tests specified in ANSI/AAMA 302.9 for type and classification of window units required in each case.

Testing: Contractor to perform water tests through a recognized testing laboratory or agency and provide certified test results. Minimum of (6) six windows will be tested.

QUALITY ASSURANCE: Design Criteria: Drawings indicate sizes, profiles and dimensional requirements of aluminum windows. Window units having minor deviations from dimensions and profiles indicated on drawings may be accepted, provided such deviations do not materially detract from design concept or intended performances and subject to approval of the Architect.

Design Criteria: Drawings are based on specific type and model aluminum window by a single manufacturer. Equivalent type windows by other listed manufacturers may be accepted, provided deviations in dimensions and profile are minor and do not materially detract from design concept or intended performances, as judged solely by the Architect.

REFERENCES:

Standards: Except as otherwise indicated, requirements for aluminum windows, terminology and standards of performance, and fabrication workmanship are those specified and recommended in ANSI/AAMA 302.9 and applicable general

recommendations published by AAMA and AA.

SUBMITTALS:

Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical product data, specifications, recommendations, and standard details for aluminum window units, including certified test laboratory reports as necessary to show compliance with requirements.

Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings, including wall elevations at l/4” scale, typical unit elevations at 3/4" scale, and full size detail sections of every typical composite member. Show anchors, hardware, operators, and other components not included in manufacturer's standard data. Include glazing details.

Wind Pressures Requirements: Submit documentation stating the door and frame system has been designed to meet project wind pressure as defined by the structural engineer.

Certification: Where manufacturer's standard window units comply with requirements and have been tested in accordance with specified tests, provide certification by manufacturer showing compliance with ASTM E 1886, BCCO PA 201,PA 202 AND PA 203, where applicable.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES:
Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide window units by one of the following for each type of window unit required:

Basis of Design: Kawneer Company, Inc. Trifab 451 Aluminum Storefronts System, Impact Resistnt

Acceptable Manufacturers: (Must meet requirements of ASTM 1886)
Kawneer Company, Inc.
Oldcastle Building Envelope

Substitutions: Submit proposed substitutions in writing to Architect no less than 10 days before bids are due. Submit samples and a side by side product data comparison to demonstrate acceptability of proposed substitution. Acceptance will be by Addendum only.

MATERIALS:

Window frames and sash members shall be commercial quality 6063 T5 extruded aluminum of not less than .062" wall thickness. Sill members shall be not less than .078" thickness.

Fasteners: Aluminum, non magnetic stainless steel, or other materials warranted by manufacturer to be non-corrosive and compatible with aluminum window members, trim, hardware, anchors and other components of window units.

Reinforcement: Where fasteners screw anchor into aluminum less than 0.l25" thick, reinforce interior with aluminum or non magnetic stainless steel to receive screw

threads, or provide standard non corrosive pressed in splined grommet nuts.

Do not use exposed fasteners except where unavoidable for application of hardware. Match finish of adjoining metal.

Provide Phillips flat head machine screws for exposed fasteners.

Anchors, Clips and Window Accessories: Depending on strength and corrosion inhibiting requirements, fabricate units of aluminum, non magnetic stainless steel, or hot dip zinc coated steel or iron complying with ASTM A 386.

Compression Glazing Strips and Weatherstripping: At manufacturer's option, provide molded neoprene gaskets complying with ASTM D 2000 Designation 2BC4l5 to 3BC620, molded PVC gaskets complying with ASTM D 2287, or molded expanded neoprene gaskets complying with ASTM C 509, Grade 4.

Sliding Weatherstripping: Provide woven pile weatherstripping of wool, polypropylene or nylon pile and resin impregnated backing fabric, and aluminum backing strip; comply with AAMA 701.

Friction shoes: Nylon or other non-abrasive, non-metallic, non-staining, non corrosive durable material.

All muntins, horizontal sash members, and meeting rails shall be tubular sections.

The perimeter of the vent (s) shall be completely weatherstripped with woven pile and vinyl.

Each unit shall be equipped with white bronze positive cam lock and keeper.

Spiral balances shall be adjustable and replaceable.

All anchors shall be manufacturer’s standard anchors, unless otherwise detailed and specified.

For double hung only: The lower sash shall have a continuous integral lift rail in sash sill and the upper sash shall be equipped with necessary pull handles.

CLASSIFICATION (GRADE):

Commercial Windows (Grade A3): Except as otherwise indicated, provide window units complying with requirements of AAMA Classification A2, for "Commercial" type buildings.

WINDOW TYPES (OPERATION):

General: Following paragraphs defined operating arrangements for types of sash (ventilators) required in window units and specify minimum provisions for each type. Drawings indicate which panels of each window unit are operable sash and which are fixed. Where 2 or more types of operating sash are included in same window unit, operation of each is indicated, and unit is considered a "Combination Aluminum Window".

Windows of the types and sizes shown on the plans or as called for in this specification shall be manufactured by one of the listed acceptable manufacturers to conform with ASTM E 1886, BCCO PA 201,PA 202 AND PA 203. Window units shall be furnished with necessary anchors and clips to provide a complete installation.

FABRICATION AND ACCESSORIES:

General: Provide manufacturer's standard fabrication and accessories which comply with indicated standards and are re-glazed without dismantling of sash framing, except to extent more specific or more stringent requirements are indicated. Include complete system for assembly of components and anchorage of window units, and prepare sash for glazing except where pre-glazing at factory is indicated.

Sizes and Profiles: Required sizes of window units and profile requirements are shown on drawings. Variable dimensions (if any) are indicated along with maximum and minimum dimensions as required to achieve design requirements and coordination with other work.

> Details on drawings are based upon standard details by one or more manufacturers. It is intended that similar details by other manufacturers will be acceptable, provided they comply with size requirements, minimum/maximum profile requirements, and performance standards as indicated or specified.

Coordination of Fabrication: Where possible, check actual window openings in construction work by accurate field measurement before fabrication, and show recorded measurements on final shop drawings. However, coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress as directed by Contractor to avoid delay of work. Where necessary, proceed with fabrication without field measurements, and coordinate installation tolerances to ensure proper fit of window units.

Pre-glazed Fabrication: Pre-glazed window units alsynite/structoglass where possible and practical for applications indicated. Comply with requirements of section "Glass and Glazing" in addition to requirements of ANSI/AAMA 302.9.

Provide water shed members above side hinged ventilators and at similar lines of natural water penetration.

Provide means of drainage for water and condensation which may accumulate in members of window units. Provide manufacturer’s pre-manufactured sill flashing. For Vista Wall window unit sill flashing shall be equal to part no. FG-2169. Sill flashing shall match finish of aluminum window system.
Weather-stripping: Provide compression type weather-stripping at perimeter of each operating sash, except provide sliding weather-stripping at all locations where sash rails slide horizontally or vertically along frame of units.

Provide sub-frames with anchors for window units where shown, of profile and dimensions indicated but not less than 0.062" thickness extruded aluminum; with mitered or coped corners, welded and dressed smooth or with concealed mechanical joint fasteners; finish to match window units.

Provide mullions and cover plates as shown, matching window units, and complete with anchors for support and installation. Allow for erection tolerances and provide for movements of window units due to thermal expansion and building deflections.

Provide inserts to close off all open extrusions to allow for proper flashing installation.

ALUMINUM WINDOW FINISHES:

Bronze Anodized

PART 3 - EXECUTION

INSTALLATION:
Comply with manufacturer’s specifications and recommendations for installation of window units, hardware, operators, and other components of work.

Set units plumb, level, and true to line, without warp or rack of frames or sash. Anchor securely in place. Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action.

Set sill members and other members in bed of compound as shown, or with joint fillers or gaskets as shown, to provide weather tight construction. Refer to Division 7 sealant sections for compounds, fillers and gaskets to be installed with window units. Coordinate installation with wall flashing and other components of work.

ADJUST AND CLEAN:

Adjust operating sash and hardware to provide tight fit at contact points and at weatherstripping, and to ensure smooth operation and weather tight closure.

Clean aluminum surfaces promptly after installation of windows, exercising care to avoid damage to protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, dirt and clean aluminum surfaces promptly after installation of windows, exercising care to avoid damage to protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, dirt and other substances. Lubricate hardware and moving parts.

Clean glass of pre-glazed units promptly after installation of windows; comply with requirements of "glass and glazing" section for cleaning and maintenance.

Initiate and maintain protections and other precautions required to ensure that window units will be without damage or deterioration (other than normal weathering) at time of acceptance.

END OF SECTION 08520

SECTION 08700 - BUILDERS HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division - 1 Specification sections, apply to the work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:
Definition: "Builders Hardware" includes items known commercially as builders' hardware which are required for swing, sliding and folding doors, except special types of unique and non-matching hardware specified in the same section as the door and door frame. Types of items in this section include (but are not necessarily limited to):

- Hinges
- Pivots
- Lock cylinders and keys
- Lock and latch sets
- Bolts
- Exit devices
- Push/pull units
- Sliding door equipment
- Closures
- Overhead Holders
- Miscellaneous door control devices

QUALITY ASSURANCE:
Manufacturer: Obtain each kind of hardware (latch and lock sets, hinges, closures, etc.) from only one manufacturer, although several may be indicated as offering products complying with requirements.

Supplier: A recognized builders hardware supplier who has been furnishing hardware in the project's vicinity for a period of not less than 2 years, and who is, or has in employment, an experienced hardware consultant who is available, at reasonable times during the course of the work, for consultation about project's hardware requirements, to Owner, Architect and Contractor.

SUBMITTALS:
Product Data: Submit manufacturers' technical information for each item of hardware. Include whatever information may be necessary to show compliance with requirements, and include instructions for installation and for maintenance of operating parts and finish. Transmit copy of applicable data to Installer.

Hardware Schedule: Submit final hardware schedule in the manner and format specified, complying with the actual construction progress schedule requirements. Hardware schedules are intended for coordination of work.
Final Hardware Schedule: Based on builders hardware indicated, organize hardware schedule into "hardware sets" indicating complete designations of every item required for each door or opening. Include the following information:

- Type, style, function, size and finish of each hardware item.
- Name and manufacturer of each item.
- Fastenings and other pertinent information.
- Location of hardware set cross - referenced to indications on Drawings

both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule.
Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, codes, etc. contained in schedule.
Mounting locations for hardware.
Door and frame sizes and materials.
Keying information.

Submittal Sequence: Submit schedule at earliest possible data particularly where acceptance of hardware schedule must precede fabrication of other work (e.g., hollow metal frames) which is critical in the project construction schedule. Include with schedule the product data, samples, shop drawings of other work affected by builders' hardware, and other information essential to the coordinated review of hardware schedule.

Keying Schedule: Submit separate detailed schedule indicating clearly how the Owner's final instructions on keying of locks has been fulfilled.

PRODUCT HANDLING:
Packaging of hardware, on a set by set basis, is the responsibility of the supplier. As materials received by the hardware supplier from the various manufacturers, sort and repackage in containers marked with the hardware set number. Two or more identical sets may be packed in the same container.

Inventory hardware jointly with representatives of the hardware supplier and the hardware installer until each is satisfied that the count is correct.

Provide secure lock-up for hardware delivered to the project, but not yet installed. Control handling installation of hardware items which are not immediately replaceable, so that the completion of the work will not be delayed by hardware losses, both before and after installation.

JOB CONDITIONS:
Coordination: Coordinate hardware with other work. Tag each item or package separately, with identification related to the final hardware schedule, and include basic installation instructions in the package. Furnish hardware items of proper design for use on doors and frames of the thicknesses, profile, swing, security and similar requirements indicated, as necessary for proper installation and function. Deliver individually packaged hardware items at the proper times to the proper locations (shop or project site) for installation.

Templates: Furnish hardware templates to each fabricator of doors, frames and other work to be factory - prepared for the installation of hardware. Upon request, check the shop drawings of such other work, to confirm that adequate provisions are made for the proper installation of hardware.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

SCHEDULED HARDWARE:
Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size and other distinctive qualities of each type of builders hardware is indicated in the Builders Hardware Data Sheet and Hardware Schedule at the end of this section. Products are identified by using hardware designation numbers of the following.

Manufacturer's product designations: One or more manufacturers are listed for each hardware type required. An asterisk (*) after a manufacturer's name indicates whose product designation is used in the Hardware Schedule for purposes of establishing minimum requirements. Provide product designated, or, where more than one manufacturer is listed, the comparable product of one of the other manufacturers which comply with requirements including those specified elsewhere in this section.

MATERIALS AND FABRICATION:

General:
Hand of door: The drawings show the direction of slide, swing or hand of each door leaf. Furnish each item of hardware for proper installation an operation of the door movement as shown.

Base Metals: Produce hardware units of the basic metal and forming method indicated, using the manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper and hardness, but in no case of lesser (commercially recognized) quality than specified for the applicable hardware units by FS FF-H-106, FS FF-g-111, FS FF-E-116 and FS FF-H-121. Do not furnish "optional" materials or forming methods for those indicated, except as otherwise specified.

Fasteners: Manufacture hardware to conform to published templates, generally prepared for machine screw installation. Do not provide hardware which has been prepared for self-tapping sheet metal screws, except as specifically indicated.

Furnish screws for installation, with each hardware item. Provide Phillips flat-head screws Finish exposed(under any condition) screws to match the hardware finish or , if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match the finish of such other work as closely as possible, including "prepared for paint" in surfaces to receive, painted finish.

Provide concealed fasteners for hardware units which are exposed when the door is closed, except to the extent no standard units of the type specified are available with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where the bolt head or the nut on the opposite face is exposed in other work, except where it is not feasible to adequately reinforce the work.

LOCK CYLINDERS AND KEYING:

Cylinders: Suppliers to provide interchangeable core rim cylinders at all locksets, deadbolt and panic hardware, where required for proper operation.

General: Supplier shall prepare the keying schedule according to the Owner’s Keying Program and meet with Owner to finalize keying requirements and obtain final instructions in writing.

Keying System: Grandmaster key the locks to the campus, with a new master key for this project.

HARDWARE FINISHES:
Provide matching finishes for hardware units at each door or opening, to the greatest extent possible, and except as otherwise indicated. Reduce differences in color and textures as much as commercially possible where the base metal or metal forming

process is different for individual units of hardware exposed at the same door or opening. In general, match items to the manufacturer's standard finish for the latch and lock set (or push-pull units if no latch-lock sets) for color and texture.

Provide finishes which match those established by EEMA or, if none established, match the Architect's sample.

Provide quality of finish, including thickness of plating or coating (if any), composition, hardness and other qualities complying with manufacturer's standards, but in no case less than specified for the applicable units of hardware by referenced standards.

Provide protective lacquer coating on all exposed hardware finishes of brass, bronze and aluminum, except as otherwise indicated.

The designations used in schedules and elsewhere to indicate hardware finishes are those listed in "Materials & Finishes Standard 1301" by EEMA, including coordination with the traditional U.S. finishes shown by certain manufacturers for their products.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

INSTALLATION:

Mount hardware units at heights indicated in "Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware" by the NEEA, except as specifically indicated or required to comply with governing regulations, and except as may be otherwise directed by Architect.

Install each hardware item in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Wherever cutting and fitting is required to install hardware to a surface which will later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage and reinstallation or application of surface protections with finishing work specified in the Division 9 sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on the substrate.

Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce the attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.

Drill and countersink units which have not been factory-prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors in accordance with industry standards.

ADJUST AND CLEAN:

Adjust and clean each operating item of hardware and each door, to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units which cannot be adjusted to operate freely and smoothly as intended for the application made.

Final Adjustment: Wherever hardware installation is made more than one month prior to acceptance or occupancy, return to the work during the week prior to acceptance or occupancy to make final check and adjustment of all hardware items in such space or area. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish of hardware and doors. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment.

Instruct Owner's Personnel in proper adjustment and maintenance of hardware and hardware finishes, during the final adjustment of hardware.

MANUFACTURERS

Butts	Hager	Hagr
Locksets	Schlage Lock Co.	Schl
Exit Device	Von Duprin	Von
Closers	Nortons	Nort
Mullions	Von Duprin	Von
Stops	Hager	Hagr
Silencers	Hager	Hagr
Thresholds	Hager	Hagr
Weatherstripping	Hager	Hagr

Keys & Keying;
All locks, cylinders and deadbolts shall be Master Keyed as required by the Owner to the Existing Grand Master Key System. Provide cylinders to all locksets, exit devices, etc. whether noted or not. Furnish two (2) keys per locking device.

Provide Hold Open feature at closures to classrooms, kitchen and offices,
Provide Cylinder Dogging at all panic hardware, in lieu of hex key.

Schedule A at doors 1,2 – each door leaf

cylinder locks	20-757-626	Primus-Schl
floor stop	243F x 626	Hagr
door bottom	(2)-770 SV x 34" x SMS	Hagr
door drip	810S x 76" x SMS	Hagr

Schedule C at doors no. 3

3.0 pair butts	BB1191 x 4.5 x 4.5 x 630 x NRP	Hagr
exit device	99EO x 626 x 30"	Von
exit device	99EO x 626 x 30"	Von
removable mullion	9954-KR	Von
floor stop	(2) 243F x 626	Hagr
door closer	(2) P1601 BF x 689 x SNB	Nort
threshold	520 x SV x 72" x SMS	Hagr
weatherstripping	891 SV x 72" x 2@ 84" x SMS	Hagr
door bottom	(2)-770 SV x 34" x SMS	Hagr
door drip	810S x 76" x SMS	Hagr
astragal	872S x 84" x SMS	Hagr
kick plates	(2)190S x 12” x 34” x 626	Nort

Schedule N at doors no. 4

1.5 pair butts	BB1191 x 4.5 x 4.5 x 630 x NRP	Hagr
exit device	99L x F x 626 x 30"	Von
Wall Stop	236W x 630	Hagr
Door Closer	P1601 BF x 689 x SNB	Nort
kick plates	190S x 12” x 34” x 626	Nort
threshold	520 x SV x 72" x SMS	Hagr
weatherstripping	891 SV x 72" x 2@ 84" x SMS	Hagr

Schedule Y at doors no. 5, 19

3.0 pair butts	BB1191 x 4.5 x 4.5 x 630 x NRP	Hagr
exit device	99L x 626 x 30"	Von
exit device	99EO x 626 x 30"	Von
removable mullion	9954-KR	Von
floor stop	(2) 243F x 626	Hagr
door closer	(2) P1601 BF x 689 x SNB	Nort
threshold	520 x SV x 72" x SMS	Hagr
weatherstripping	891 SV x 72" x 2@ 84" x SMS	Hagr
door bottom	(2)-770 SV x 34" x SMS	Hagr
door drip	810S x 76" x SMS	Hagr
astragal	872S x 84" x SMS	Hagr
kick plates	(2)190S x 12” x 34” x 626	Nort

Schedule P at doors no. 6, 7

3.0 pair butts	BB1191 x 4.5 x 4.5 x 630 x NRP	Hagr
exit device	99L x 626 x 30"	Von
exit device	99L x 626 x 30"	Von
removable mullion	9954-KR	Von
floor stop/holder	(2) 327F x 626	Hagr
door closer	(2) P1601 BF x 689 x SNB	Nort
astragal	872S x 84" x SMS	Hagr
threshold	520 x SV x 72" x SMS	Hagr
weatherstripping	891 SV x 72" x 2@ 84" x SMS	Hagr
kick plates	(2)190S x 12” x 34” x 626	Nort

Schedule S at doors 8

3.0 pair butts	BB1191 x 4.5 x 4.5 x 630 x NRP	Hagr
dead bolt	B663P x 626 x 12	Schl
floor stop	243F x 626	Hagr
door closer	P1601 BF x 689 x SNB	Nort
threshold	520 x SV x 96" x SMS	Hagr
flush bolts	(2) 282Dx 626	Hagr
astragal	872S x 84" x SMS	Hagr
passage set	ND80S x SPA x 626	Schl
kick plates	(2)190S x 12” x 34” x 626	Nort

Schedule L at doors no. 9

1.5 pair Butts	BB1191 x 4.5 x 4.5 x 652 x 2"ws	Hagr
Lockset	ND53PD x SPA x 626	Schl
Wall Stop	236w x 626	Hagr
Door Closer	P1601 BF x 689 x SNB	Nort
Silencers	307D	Hagr

Schedule I at doors no. 10, 15, 18

1.5 pair Butts	BB1191 x 4.5 x 4.5 x 652 x 2"ws	Hagr
Lockset	ND80PD x SPA x 626	Schl
Wall Stop	236w x 626	Hagr
Door Closer	P1601 BF x 689 x SNB	Nort
Silencers	307D	Hagr

Schedule M at doors no. 11

1.5 pair Butts	BB1191 x 4.5 x 4.5 x 652 x 2"ws	Hagr
Lockset	ND53PD x SPA x 626	Schl
Wall Stop	236w x 626	Hagr
Silencers	307D	Hagr

Schedule G at doors no. 12

1.5 pair Butts	BB1191 x 4.5 x 4.5 x 652 x 2"ws	Hagr
Indicator	B571 x 626	Schl
Lockset	ND53PD x SPA x 626	Schl
Wall Stop	236w x 626	Hagr
Silencers	307D	Hagr

Schedule F at doors no. 13

1.5 pair Butts	BB1191 x 4.5 x 4.5 x 652 x 2"ws	Hagr
push/pull plate	(2)HL x 6 x US x 26D	G/J
dead bolt	B663P x 626 x 12	Schl
Wall Stop	236W x 630	Hagr
Door Closer	P1601 BF x 689 x SNB	Nort
Silencers	307 D	Hagr
kick plates	190S x 12” x 34” x 626	Nort

Schedule B at doors no. 14, 17

1.5 pair butts	BB1191 x 4.5 x 4.5 x 630 x NRP	Hagr
exit device	99L x F x 626 x 30"	Von
door closer	P1601 BF x 689 x SNB	Nort
weatherstripping	891 x SV x 36" x 2@ 84" x SMS	Hagr
threshold	520 x SV x 36" x SMS	Hagr
door bottom	770 x SV x 36" x SMS	Hagr
door drip	810S x 40" x SMS	Hagr
floor stop	243F x 626	Hagr
kick plates	190S x 12” x 34” x 626	Nort

SECTION 08800 - GLASS AND GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

Definitions: "Glass" includes prime glass, processed glass, and fabricated glass products. "Glazing" includes glass installation and materials used to install glass. Types of work in this section include glass and glazing for:

Window wall/store front construction, safety or tempered glass.

Entrances and other doors, safety or tempered glass.

"Glass Products" is hereby defined to include glazing plastics.

Packaged mirror units are specified as "specialties" in another section.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:

Prime Glass Manufacturer: One of the following for each type/color/pattern of glass:

ASG Industries, Inc.
C E Glass Division
Ford Glass Company
PPG Industries, Inc.

Prime Glass Standard: FS DD G 451

Heat Treated Glass Standard: FS DD G 1403

Safety Glass Standard: CPSC 16 CFR 1201.

Submit documentation stating the storefront system has been designed to meet a wind pressure defined by the Structural Engineer and Texas Department of Insurance Guidelines.

Impact Resistant Glass: Exterior Doors and Windows:
In addition all exterior glazed openings will need to be specified as impact rated assemblies meeting ASTM E 1886 and ASTM E 1996 for large missile impact.

The contractor shall submit shop drawings and test reports indicating the proposed window and exterior door assemblies meet the noted project design wind pressure requirements. Laminated glazing shall match window and door tested assemblies for glass thickness, heat treatment, and laminate.

SUBMITTALS:

JOB CONDITIONS:
Pre Installation: Meet with Glazier and other trades affected by glass installation, prior to beginning of installation. Do not perform work under adverse weather or job conditions. Install liquid sealants when temperatures are within lower or middle third of temperature range recommended by manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

GLASS PRODUCTS:

INSULATED GLASS UNITS:
Manufacturer is used in this section to refer to a firm that produces primary glass or fabricated glass as defined in the referenced standards.
1. Oldcastle Glass®
2. Guardian Industries
3. Pilkington
4. PPG Industries
5. ACH Float Glass

Materials
Sealed insulating glass units. The sealed insulating glass unit is comprised of a laminated glass unit and a 1/4 ” fully tempered glass lite separated by a desiccant-filled spacer system. The laminated glass unit is comprised of (2) 1/4” heat strengthened glass lites with a 0.090 SentryGlass Plus interlayer. The glass thickness and type used in the insulating glass unit shall comply with ASTM E 1300-04. Total Thickness= 1-5/16”

1. Insulating Glass Unit Make-up (Solarban 70 XL)
    - Outboard Lite ¼”
        1. Glass Type: Low-E Coated
        2. Glass Tint: Clear
        3. Glass Strength: (Heat-Strengthened or Tempered)
        4. Coating Orientation: Surface #2
    - Spacer
        1. Nominal Thickness: ½"
        2. Gas Fill: Air
    - Inboard Lite
        1. Glass Type: Uncoated
        2. Glass Tint: Clear
        3. Glass Strength: (Annealed, Heat-Strengthened or Tempered)
        4. Coating Orientation: NA

2. Performance Characteristics (Center of Glass)
(Note: Verify that the glass type and thickness specified matches the Performance Characteristics listed below.)
    - Visible Transmittance: 64%
    - Visible Reflectance: 12%
    - Winter U-Factor (U-Value): 0.28
    - Shading Coefficient (SC): 0.27
    - Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): 0.32

3. Provide hermetically sealed IG units with dehydrated airspace, dual sealed with a primary seal of polyisobutylene (PIB), or thermo plastic spacer (TPS) and

a secondary seal of silicone or an organic sealant depending on the application.

FABRICATED GLASS UNITS: At all door lites and interior windows
Laminated Safety Glass (Lmn-G-Sft): Laminate 2 sheets of clear float glass with a 30-mil film of polyvinyl buteral, by manufacturer's standard heat-plus-pressure process with dirt, air pockets and foreign substances excluded; 1/4" thick if not otherwise indicated.
Color: Clear

PROCESSED GLASS:

Tempered Glass, Tempered Glass Mirrors: Provide prime glass of color and type indicated, which has not been heat treated to strengthen glass in bending to not less than 4.5 times annealed strength. Tempered glass is to be provided at all glass areas opening onto corridors and hallways.

GLAZING SEALANTS AND COMPONENTS:

General: Provide color of exposed sealant/compound indicated or if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors, or black if no color is so selected. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for selection of hardness, depending upon the locations of each application, conditions at time of installations, and performance requirements as indicated. Select materials and variations or modifications, carefully for compatibility with surfaces contacted in the installation.

Butyl Rubber Glazing Sealant (BUR GS): Compound of polymerized butyl rubber and inert fillers, solvent based, 75% solids, complying with FS TT S 001657; tack free in 24 hrs. paintable, non-staining.

Preformed Butyl Rubber Glazing Sealant (PBuR GS): Compound of polymerized butyl rubber and inert fillers, with or without polyisobutylene modification, solvent based, 95% solids, formed and coiled on release paper; tack free in 24 hrs., paintable, non-staining; plain, pre-shimmed or reinforced as required for proper installation and setting of glass.

Oleo Resinous Glazing Compound (OR GC): Oil based glazing compound; non-staining and non-bleeding; provide proper type as required for either channel or face glazing; comply with FS TT G 410 for face glazing compound.

GLAZING GASKETS:

Structural Rubber Glazing Gaskets (StR GG): Neoprene extrusions fabricated into frames with molded corner units and zipper lock strips; comply with ASTM C 542.

Molded Neoprene Glazing Gaskets: (MN GG): Molded or extruded neoprene gaskets of the profile and hardness required for water tight construction; comply with ASTM D 2000 designation 2BC 415 to 3BC 620, black.

MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS:
Cleaners, Primers and Sealers: Type recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

Setting Blocks: Neoprene or EPDM, 70 90 durometer hardness, with proven compatibility with sealants used.

Spacers: Neoprene or EPDM, 40 50 durometer hardness with proven compatibility with sealants used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

STANDARDS AND PERFORMANCE:
Watertight and airtight installation of each glass product is required, except as otherwise shown. Each installation must withstand normal temperature changes, wind loading, impact loading (for operating sash and doors), without failure including loss or breakage of glass, failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight, deterioration of glazing materials and other defects in the work.

Protect glass from edge damage during handling and installation, and subsequent operation of glazed components of the work. During installation, discard units with significant edge damage or other imperfections.

Glazing channel dimensions as shown are intended to provide for necessary bite on glass, minimum edge clearance, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by job conditions at time of installation.

Comply with combined recommendations and technical reports by manufacturers of glass and glazing products as used in each glazing channel, and with recommendations of Flat Glass Marketing Association "Glazing Manual", except where more stringent requirements are indicated.

PREPARATION FOR GLAZING:

Clean glazing channel and other framing members immediately before glazing. Remove coatings which are not firmly bonded to substrate. Remove lacquer from metal surfaces where elastomeric sealants are used.

Apply primer or sealant to joint surfaces where recommended by sealant manufacturer.

GLAZING:

Install setting blocks of proper size in sill rabbet, located 1/4th of glass width from each corner. Set blocks in thin course of hell bead compound, if any.

Provide spacers inside and out, of proper size and spacing, for glass sizes larger than 50 united inches, except where gaskets or pre-shimmed tapes are used for glazing. Provide 1/8" minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width, except with sealant tape use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.

Set units of glass in each series with uniformity of pattern, draw, bow and similar characteristics.

Voids and Filler Rods: Prevent exudation of sealant or compound by forming voids or installing filler rods in channel at heel of jambs and head (do not leave voids in still channels), except as otherwise indicated and depending on light size, thickness and type of glass, and complying with manufacturer's recommendations.

Force sealants into channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete "wetting" or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.

Tool exposed surfaces of glazing liquids and compounds to provide a substantial "wash" away from glass. Install pressurized tapes and gaskets to protrude slightly out of channel, so as to eliminate dirt and moisture pockets.

Clean and trim excess glazing materials from glass and stops or frames promptly after installation, and eliminate stains and discolorations.

Where wedge shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage to ensure that gasket will not "walk" out when installation is subjected to movement. Anchor gasket to stop with matching ribs, or by proven adhesives, including embedment of gasket tail in cured heel bead.

Gasket Glazing: Miter out and bond ends together at corners where gaskets are used for channel glazing, so that gaskets will not pull away from corners and result in voids or leaks in glazing system.

Structural Gasket Glazing: Cut zipper strips slightly long, to ensure tight closure. Lubricate zipper strip and use special tool to install zipper. Do not lubricate glazing channel or anchorage rabbed. Comply with details as shown and manufacturer's instructions, including the possible use of liquid sealants and weep holes.

CURE PROTECTION AND CLEANING:

Protect exterior glass from breakage immediately upon installation by use of crossed streamers attached to framing and held away from glass. Do not apply markers to surfaces of glass. Remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces. Cure sealants for high early strength and durability.

Remove and replace glass which is broken, chipped, cracked, abraded or damaged in other ways during construction period, including natural causes, accidents and vandalism.

Wash and polish glass on both faces not more than 4 days prior to date scheduled for inspections intended to establish date of substantial completion in each area of project. Comply with glass product manufacturer's recommendations for final cleaning.

END OF SECTION 08800

SECTION 09250 - GYPSUM DRYWALL

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 General Requirements sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

Types of work include:

Gypsum drywall including screw type metal support system

Drywall finishing (joint tape and compound treatment)

Gypsum Sheathing

QUALITY ASSURANCE:

Fire Resistance Rating: Where gypsum drywall systems with fire resistance ratings are indicated or are required to comply with governing regulations, provide materials and installations identical with applicable assemblies which have been tested and listed by recognized authorities, including UL and AIA.

Gypsum Board Terminology Standard: GA 505 by Gypsum Association.

Single Source Responsibility: Obtain gypsum board products from a single manufacturer, or from manufacturers recommended by the prime manufacturer of gypsum boards.

SUBMITTALS:

Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product specifications and installation instructions for each gypsum drywall component, including other data as may be required to show compliance with these specifications.

DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

Deliver materials in original packages, containers or bundles bearing brand name and identification of manufacturer or supplier.

Store materials inside under cover and in manner to keep them dry, protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion and damage from construction traffic and other causes. Neatly stack gypsum boards flat to prevent sagging.
Handle gypsum boards to prevent damage to edges, ends or surfaces. Protect metal corner beads and trim from being bent or damaged.

PROJECT CONDITIONS:

Environmental Requirements, General: Comply with requirements of referenced gypsum board application standards and recommendations of gypsum board manufacturer, for environmental conditions before, during and after application of gypsum board.

Cold Weather Protection: When ambient outdoor temperatures are below 55 degrees F (13 degree C) maintain continuous, uniform, comfortable building working temperatures of not less than 55 degree F (13 degree C) for a minimum period of 48 hours prior to, during and following application of gypsum bard and joint treatment materials or bonding of adhesives.

Ventilation: Ventilate building spaces as required to remove water in excess of that required for drying of joint treatment material immediately after its application. Avoid drafts during dry, hot weather to prevent too rapid drying.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:

Metal Support Materials:

Gold Bond Building Products Div., National Gypsum Co.
Milcor Division; Inryco Inc.
United States Gypsum Co.

Direct Suspension Systems:

Chicago Metallic Corp.
Donn Corporation.
National Rolling Mills Co.
Roblin Building Products, Inc.
United States Gypsum Co.

Gypsum Board and Related Products:

Gold Bond Building Products Div., National Gypsum Co.
United States Gypsum Co.

METAL SUPPORT MATERIALS:

Ceiling Support Materials and Systems:

General: Size ceiling support components to comply with ASTM C 754 unless indicated otherwise, hot dipped galvanized at exterior walls.

Main Runners: Steel channels with rust inhibitive paint finish, hot or cold rolled.

Hanger Wire: ASTM A 641, soft, Class 1 galvanized.

Hanger Anchorage Devices: Screws, clips, bolts, cast in place concrete inserts or other devices applicable to the indicated method of structural anchorage for ceiling hangers and whose suitability for use intended has been proven through standard construction practices or by certified test data. Size devices for 3x calculated load supported except size direct pull out concrete inserts for 5x calculated loads.

Furring Members: ASTM C 645; 0.0179" min. thickness of base metal, hat shaped.

Where shown as "Resilient", provide manufacturer's special type designed to reduce

sound transmission.

Furring Members: ASTM C 645; 0.0179" min. thickness of base metal, C shaped studs.

Furring Anchorages: 16 gage galvanized wire ties, manufacturer's standard wire type clips, bolts, nails or screws as recommended by furring manufacturer and complying with C 754.

Direct Suspension Systems: Manufacturer's standard zinc coated or painted steel system of furring runners, furring tees, and accessories designed for concealed support of gypsum drywall ceilings; of proper type for use intended.

Wall/Partition Support Materials:

Exterior Studs: Refer to Structural

Interior Studs: ASTM C 645; 0.0179" min. thickness of base metal unless otherwise indicated, 25 gage. Provide 16 gage hot dipped galvanized at exterior walls, unless noted otherwise.

Depth of Section: 4", except as otherwise indicated.

Deflection System: Provide Slotted Deflection Track at all interior partitions.

Suspended Drywall System: Equal to Armstrong Drywall Grid System

Shaft Wall System: N/A.

Runners: Match studs; type recommended by stud manufacturer for floor and ceiling support of studs, and for vertical abutment of drywall work at other work.

Furring Members: ASTM C 645; 0.0179" min. thickness of base metal, hat shaped. Where shown as "Resilient," provide manufacturer's special type designed to reduce sound transmission.

Z Furring Members: Manufacturer's standard screw type galvanized steel, zee shaped furring members; ASTM A 525, G60, 0.0179" min. thickness of base metal; of depth indicated; designed for mechanical attachment of insulation boards or blankets to monolithic concrete and masonry walls. Hot dipped galvanized at exterior walls.

Fasteners for Furring Members: Type and size recommended by furring manufacturer for substrate and application indicated.

GYPSUM BOARD PRODUCTS:
Gypsum Wallboard: (GypWbd) ASTM C 36, of types, edge configuration and thickness indicated, in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joint

Type: USG Gypsum Mold Tough Wallboard, Type MR
Edges: Manufacturer's standard.
Thickness: 1/2” at ceilings, 5/8” at wall partions, unless otherwise indicated
Uses: at toilet ceilings and wall partitions, where noted.

Type: USG Gypsum Firecode Core Wallboard, Type X

Edges: Manufacturer's standard.
Thickness: 5/8", unless otherwise indicated
Uses: at corridor wall partitions, above 8'-0"aff and where indicated.

Type: USG VHI Firecode Core Wallboard (ASTMC1629 – Passes Level 2 Abrasion Resistance; Level 1 Indention; Level 3 Body Impact)
Thickness: 5/8".
Uses: at all corridor wall partitions to a height of 8'-0"aff and where indicated.

Type: USG Shaft Liner
Thickness: 1".
Uses: at vertical duct penetrations; where indicated.

SHEATHING (wall): shall be Georgia Pacific Dens Glass Gold, 5/8" thick, with taped seams at all exterior applications.

Tile Backer Board: shall be Georgia Pacific, 5/8" thick Dens-Shield Tile Backer with Fire-Shield, provide at all ceramic tile wainscot wall conditions only.

TRIM ACCESSORIES:

General: Provide manufacturer's standard trim accessories of types indicated for drywall work, formed of galvanized steel unless otherwise indicated, with either knurled and perforated or expanded flanges for nailing or stapling, and beaded for concealment of flanges in joint compound. Provide corner beads, L type edge trim beads, U type edge trim beads, special L kerf type edge trim beads, and one piece control joint beads.

Corner bead and Edge Trim for Interior Installation: Comply with ASTM C 840 and the following:

Corner bead formed from zinc alloy, with flanges knurled and perforated or of fine mesh expanded metal.

Steel Edge trim formed from galvanized steel, types per Fig. 1 of ASTM C 840 as follows:

"LC" Bead, unless otherwise indicated.
"LK" Bead with square nose for use with kerfed jambs.
"L" Bead where indicated.
"U" Bead where indicated.

Plastic Edge Trim: Manufacturers standard rigid or semi rigid PVC moldings shaped to provide resilient contact of gypsum board edges with other construction; friction fit, or pressure sensitive adhesive mounting.

One Piece Control Joint: Formed with perforated face flanges connected by vee shaped slot, 1/4 inch wide by approximately 7/16 inch deep and covered with removable tape, fabricated from the following material:

Roll Formed Zinc

JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS:

General: ASTM C 475; type recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated, except as otherwise indicated.

Joint Tape: Paper reinforcing type.

Joint Compound: Vinyl type powder or ready mixed vinyl type for interior use.

Joint Compound: On interior work provide chemical hardening type for bedding and filling, ready mixed vinyl type or vinyl type powder for topping.

MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS:

General: Provide auxiliary materials for gypsum drywall work of the type and grade recommended by the manufacturer of the gypsum board.

Laminating Adhesive: Special adhesive or joint compound specifically recommended for laminating gypsum boards.

Gypsum Board Screws: Comply with ASTM C 646.

Concealed Acoustical Sealant: Nondrying, non-hardening, non-skinning, non-staining, non-bleeding, gunnable sealant for concealed applications per ASTM C 919.

Sound Attenuation Blankets: Refer to Section 07201 for sound attenuation blanket specification.

Corner Guards: Refer to Section 10260 for Clear Corner Guard specification.

TEXTURE FINISH MATERIALS:
Primer: Of type recommended by manufacturer of texture finish.

Polystyrene Aggregated Finish: One of the following:

QT Imperial Texture Finish: United States Gypsum Co.
Perfect Spray: Gold Bond Bldg. Products Div.
Regular Texture
    Light Monterrey
    Medium Monterrey
    Orange Peel

PART 3 EXECUTION

PREPARATION FOR METAL SUPPORT SYSTEMS
Ceiling Anchorages: Coordinate work with structural ceiling work to ensure that inserts and other structural anchorage provisions have been installed to receive ceiling hangers.

INSTALLATION OF METAL SUPPORT SYSTEMS:

General:
Metal Support Installation Standard: Comply with ASTM C 754.

Do not bridge building expansion joints with support system, frame both sides of joints with furring and other support as indicated.

Ceiling Support Suspension Systems:

Secure hangers to structural support by connecting directly to structure where possible, otherwise connect to inserts, clips or other anchorage devices or fasteners as indicated.

Space main runners 4' 0" o.c. and space hangers 4' 0" o.c. along runners, except as otherwise shown.

Level main runners to a tolerance of 1/8" in 12' 0", measured both lengthwise on each runner and transversely between parallel runners.

Wire tie or clip furring members to main runners and to other structural supports as indicated.

Space furring member 16" o.c., except as otherwise indicated.

Wall/Partition Support Systems:

Install supplementary framing, blocking and bracing at terminations in the work and for support of fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, and similar work to comply with details indicated or if not otherwise indicated, to comply with applicable published recommendations of gypsum board manufacturer, or if not available, of "Gypsum Construction handbook" published by United States Gypsum Co.

Isolate stud system from transfer of structural loading to system, both horizontally and vertically. Provide slip or cushioned type joints to attain lateral support and avoid axial loading.

Install runner tracks at floors, ceilings and structural walls and columns where gypsum drywall stud system abuts other work, except as otherwise indicated.

Extend partition stud system through acoustical ceilings and elsewhere as indicated to the structural support or substrate above the ceiling.

Space studs 16" o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

Frame door openings to comply with detailed indicated or if not otherwise indicated, to comply with applicable published recommendations of gypsum board manufacturer, or if not available, of "Gypsum Construction Handbook" published by United States Gypsum Com. Attach vertical studs at jambs with screws either directly to frames or to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for jack studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.

Extend vertical jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of floor or roof structure above, unless otherwise indicated.

Frame openings other than door openings to comply with details indicated or if not indicated, in same manner as required for door openings; and install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
Space wall furring members 16" o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

Erect thermal insulation vertically and hold in place with Z furring members spaced 24" o.c. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails or power drive fasteners spaced 24" o.c. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner;

on adjacent wall surface, screw attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. Start from this furring member channel with standard width insulation panel and continue in regular manner. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12" from corner and cut insulation to fit. Until gypsum board is installed hold insulation in place with 10" staples fabricated from 18 gage tie wire and inserted through slot in web of member, or by an equally acceptable method.

GENERAL GYPSUM BOARD INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS:
Gypsum Board Application and Finishing Standards: ASTM C 840 and GA 216.

Where handrails are indicated for direct attachment to gypsum board shaft wall system, provide not less than a 0.0341 inch thick by 4 inch wide galvanized steel reinforcement strip, accurately positioned and secured behind not less than one gypsum board face layer of 1/2 inch or 5/8 inch thickness.

Install sound attenuation blankets as indicated, prior to gypsum board unless readily installed after board has been installed.

Locate exposed end butt joints as far from center of walls and ceilings as possible, and stagger not less than 1' 0" in alternate courses of board.

Install ceiling boards in the direction and manner which will minimize the number of end butt joints, and which will avoid end joints in the central area of each ceiling. Stagger end joints at least 1' 0".

Install wall/partition boards vertically to avoid end butt joints wherever possible. At stairwells and similar high walls, install boards horizontally with end joints staggered over studs.

Install exposed gypsum board with face side out. Do not install imperfect, damaged or damp boards. Butt boards together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16" open space between boards. Do not force into place.

Located either edge or end joints over supports, except in horizontal applications or where intermediate supports or gypsum board back blocking is provided behind end joints. Position boards so that like edges abut, tapered edges against tapered edges and mill cut or field cut ends against mill cut or field cut ends. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints over different studs on opposite sides of partitions.

Attach gypsum board to framing and blocking as required for additional support at openings and cutouts.

Form control joints and expansion joints with space between edges of boards, prepared to receive trim accessories.

Cover both faces of steel stud partition framing with gypsum board in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chase walls which are properly braced internally.

Except where concealed application is required for sound, fire, air or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. area, and may be limited to not less than 75% of full coverage.

Isolate perimeter of non load bearing drywall partitions at structural abutments. Provide

1/4" to 1/2" space and trim edge with J type semi finishing edge trim. Seal joints with acoustical sealant. Do not fasten drywall directly to stud system runner tracks.

For double layer partition system, work above acoustical ceilings may be installed with base layer only.

Space fasteners in gypsum boards in accordance with referenced standards and manufacturer's recommendations, except as otherwise indicated.

METHODS OF GYPSUM DRYWALL APPLICATION:
Single layer Application: Install gypsum wallboard.

On ceilings apply gypsum board prior to wall/partition board application to the greatest extent possible.

On partitions/walls apply gypsum board vertically (parallel), unless otherwise indicated, and provide sheet lengths which will minimize end joints.

Double Layer Fastening Methods: Apply base layer of gypsum board and face layer to base layer as follows:

Fasten base layers to supports with screws. Stagger joints on face layers.

INSTALLATION OF DRYWALL TRIM ACCESSORIES:

General: Where feasible, use the same fasteners to anchor trim accessory flanges as required to fasten gypsum board to the supports. Otherwise, fasten flanges by nailing or stapling in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.

Install metal corner beads at external corners of drywall work.

Install metal edge trim whenever edge of gypsum board would otherwise be exposed or semi exposed, and except where plastic trim is indicated. Provide type with face flange to receive joint compound except where semi finishing type is indicated. Install L type trim where work is tightly abutted to other work, and install special kerf type where other work is kerfed to receive long leg of L type trim. Install U type trim where edge is exposed, revealed, gasketed, or sealant filled (including expansion joints).

Install plastic edge trim where indicated on wall panels at juncture with ceilings.

Install metal control joint (beaded type) at all wall openings, at interior structural members and intervals not to exceed 30’-0”, and where indicated otherwise.

FINISHING OF DRYWALL:

General: Apply treatment at gypsum board joints (both directions), flanges of trim accessories, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects and elsewhere as required to prepare work for decoration. Pre-fill open joints and rounded or beveled edges, using type of compound recommended by manufacturer.

Apply joint tape at joints between gypsum boards, except where a trim accessory is indicated.

Apply joint compound in 3 coats (not including pre-fill of openings in base), and sand

between last 2 coats and after last coat.

Refer to sections on painting, coatings and wall coverings in Division 9 for decorative finishes to be applied to drywall work.

APPLICATION OF TEXTURE FINISH:

Surface Preparation and Primer: Prepare and prime drywall and other surfaces in strict accordance with texture finish manufacturer's instructions. Apply primer of proper type to all surfaces to receive texture finish.

Finish Application: Mix and apply finish to drywall and other surfaces indicated to receive finish in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions to produce a uniform texture without starved spots or other evidence of thin application, and free of application patterns.

Remove any texture droppings or overspray from door frames, windows and other adjoining work.

PROTECTION OF WORK:

Installer shall advise Contractor of required procedures for protecting gypsum drywall work from damage and deterioration during remainder of construction period.

END OF SECTION 09250

SECTION 09300 - TILE

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:
Definition: Tile includes ceramic surfacing units made from clay or other ceramic materials.

Extent of tile work is indicated on drawings and schedules.

Types of tile work in this section include the following:

Glazed Ceramic Tile
Colorbody Porcelain Tile

QUALITY ASSURANCE:
Source of Materials: Provide materials obtained from one source for each type and color of tile, grout and setting materials.

SUBMITTALS
Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical information and installation instructions for materials required, except bulk materials.

Samples for Initial Selection Purposes: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual tiles or sections of tiles showing full range of colors, textures and patterns available for each type of tile specified. Include samples of grout and accessories requiring color selection.

Samples for verification purposes: Submit the following:

Samples for each type of tile and for each color and texture required, not less than 12" square, on plywood or hardboard backing and grouted.

Full size samples for each type of trim, accessory and for each color.

Certification: Furnish Master Grade Certificate for each shipment and type of tile, signed by manufacturer and Installer.

PRODUCT HANDLING:
Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Prevent damage or contamination to materials by water, freezing, foreign matter or other causes.

PROJECT CONDITIONS:
Maintain environmental conditions and protect work during and after installation to comply with referenced standards and manufacturer's printed recommendations.

Vent temporary heaters to exterior to prevent damage to tile work from carbon dioxide buildup.

Maintain temperatures at not less than 50 deg.F (10 deg.) in tiled areas during installation and for 7 days after completion, unless higher temperatures are required by referenced installation standard or manufacturer's instructions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:
Available Manufacturers:

Glazed Ceramic Tile and Porcelain:
Basis of Design: Daltile
American Olean Tile Co., Div., National Gypsum Co.

Dry Set Grouts: (Non staining)
Custom Building Products.
Laticrete International Inc.
L & M Surco Mfg., Inc.

Commercial Portland Cement Grout: (Non staining)
Custom Building Products.
L & M Surco Mfg. Co., Inc.
TheUpco Co.

PRODUCTS, GENERAL:
ANSI Standard for Ceramic Tile: Comply with ANSI A137.1 "American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile" for types and grades of tile indicated.

ANSI Standard for Tile Installation Materials: Comply with ANSI standard referenced with products and materials indicated for setting and grouting.

Colors, Textures and Patterns: For tile, grout and other products requiring selection of colors, surface textures or other appearance characteristics, provide products to match Characteristics indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.

Provide tile trim and accessories which match color and finish of adjoining flat tile.

Mounting: Where factory mounted tile is required provide back or edge mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless another mounting method is indicated.

TILE PRODUCTS:
Colorbody Porcelain Tile (Floor and Base): Provide factory mounted flat tile complying with the following requirements:
Type: Porcelain
Series: Porcealto
Nominal Facial Dimensions: 7-13/16 x 7-13/16” (8”x8”)
Color: TBD

Glazed Ceramic Tile (Wall): Provide factory mounted flat tile complying with the following requirements:
Type: Glazed Ceramic
Series: Color wheel
Nominal Facial Dimensions: 4 1/4" x 12-3/4". (4”x12”)
Color: Field Group 1 & 2, Accents Price Group 3

Glazed Ceramic Tile (Wall): Provide factory mounted flat tile complying with the following requirements:

Type: Glazed Ceramic
Series: Color Wheel Collection
Nominal Facial Dimensions: 1.5” Hexagon Mosaic
Color: Artic white, Mustard (allow for price group 1, 2, &3)

Trim Units: Provide tile trim units to match characteristics of adjoining flat tile and to comply with following requirements:

Shapes: As follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
Base for Portland cement Mortar Installations: Coved.
Base for Thin-set Mortar Installations: Coved.

SETTING MATERIALS:
Portland Cement Mortar Installation Materials: Provide materials to comply with ANSI A108.1 as required for installation method designated, unless otherwise indicated.

Thin set Portland Cement Mortar: Where thin set portland cement mortar applications are indicated, use the following unless otherwise required.

Dry Set Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A108.5, factory sanded; or latex portland cement mortar, ANSI A108.4.

Organic Adhesive: ANSI A136.1; use Type I for showers, tub recesses, or other areas requiring prolonged water resistance, Type II elsewhere, unless indicated. Provide primer sealer where recommended by manufacturer.

GROUTING MATERIALS:
Commercial Portland Cement Grout: Proprietary Pre-blended compounded composed of portland cement and additives formulated for the type of tile installed.

Dry Set Grout: Proprietary compound composed or portland cement and additives formulated for type of tile installed.

Grout for Pre-grouted Tile Sheets: Same elastomeric material used in factory pre-grouted sheets.

Colors to be selected by Architect form manufacturer’s standard colors.

MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS:
Metal Edge Strips: Zinc alloy or stainless steel, 1/8" wide at top edge with integral provision for anchorage to mortar bed or substrate, unless otherwise indicated.

Tile Cleaner: DuPont StoneTech Professional Stone & Tile Cleaner

Tile Sealer: DuPont StoneTech Professional Heavy Duty Grout Sealer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

INSPECTION:
Examine surfaces to receive tile work and conditions under which tile will be installed. Do not proceed with tile work until surfaces and conditions comply with requirements

indicated in referenced tile installation standard.

INSTALLATION, GENERAL:
ANSI Tile Installation Standard: Comply with applicable parts of ANSI 108 series of tile installation standards included under "American National Standard Specifications for the Installation of Ceramic Tile".

TCA Installation Guidelines: TCA "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation"; comply with TCA installation methods indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as applicable to installation conditions shown.

Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures, to form a complete covering without interruptions, except as otherwise shown. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.

Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish or built in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures and other penetrations so that plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.

Jointing Pattern: Unless otherwise shown, lay tile in grid pattern. Align joints when adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls and trim are same size. Layout tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Adjust to minimize tile cutting. Provide uniform joint widths, unless otherwise shown. For tile mounted in sheets make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so that extent of each sheet is not apparent in finished work.

Grout tile to comply with referenced installation standards, using grout materials indicated.

FLOOR INSTALLATION METHODS:
Ceramic Tile: Install tile to comply with requirements indicated below for setting bed methods, TCA installation methods related to types of sub-floor construction, and grout types:

Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A108.1.

Bond Coat: Portland cement paste on plastic bed or thin set portland cement on cured bed, ANSI A108.5; at Contractor's option.
Concrete Sub-floors, Interior, Waterproofing Membrane: TCA F121.

Mortar: Sand portland cement
Thin set Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A108.5
Concrete Sub-floors; Interior: TCA F113.
Grout: Sand portland cement

Conductive Ceramic Mosaic Tile: Install to comply with ANSI A108.7 using conductive dry-set mortar bond coat on damp cured and dried portland cement mortar bed as per TCA F112; grout type as indicated below:

Grout: Sand-portland cement

Paver Tile: Install tile to comply with requirements indicated below for setting bed method, TCA installation method related to types of sub-floor construction, and grout types:

Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A108.1
Concrete Sub-floor, Interior: TCA F112 (bonded)

Grout: Sand-portland cement.

Metal Edge Strips: Install at locations indicated or where exposed edge of the flooring meets carpet, wood or other flooring which finishes flush with top of tile.

WALL TILE INSTALLATION METHODS:
Install types of tile designated for wall application to comply with requirements indicated below for setting bed methods, TCA installation methods related to subsurface wall conditions, and grout types:

Grout: Dry set.; Thin-set Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A108.5.
Interior; TCA W213

CLEANING AND PROTECTION:
Cleaning: Upon completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.

Unglazed tile may be cleaned with acid solution only when permitted by tile and grout manufacturer's printed instructions, but no sooner than 14 days after installation. Protect metal surfaces, cast iron and vitreous plumbing fixtures from effects of acid cleaning. Flush surface with clean water before and after cleaning.

Finished Tile Work: Leave finished installation clean and free of cracked, chipped, broken, un-bonded, or otherwise defective tile work.

Protection: When recommended by tile manufacturer, apply a protective coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage and wear.

Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from using tiled floors for at least 7 days after grouting is completed.

Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral cleaner from tile surfaces.

Seal grout in all areas receiving ceramic tile finish.

END OF SECTION 09300

SECTION 09510
Tectum® Direct-Attached ACOUSTICAL Ceiling Panels
(CEMENTITIOUS WOOD FIBER CEILINGS)

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general conditions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Divisions-1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

Tectum Direct Attached Ceiling Panels
Item 8182T10_ _
Item 8181T10_ _
Item 8180T10_ _

Accessories
Item 8187L16_ _ _ #6 Painted Head Sharp point screws
Item 8188L16_ _ _ Painted Head Drill Point Screws
Item 8189L22_ _ _ 2-1/4" Painted Head – CMU Screws

Note: - this product can be used with the Armstrong Drywall Suspension System as a Direct Attached option.

A. Section Includes:
   1. Cementitious wood fiber plank acoustical ceiling system
   2. Exposed Suspension System

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 09 51 00 – Acoustical Ceilings
   2. Section 09 53 00 – Acoustical Ceiling Suspension Assemblies
   3. Section 09 20 00 – Plaster and Gypsum Board
   4. Section 01 81 13 – Sustainable Design Requirements
   5. Section 01 81 19 – Indoor Air Quality Requirements
   6. Divisions 23 – HVAC Air Distribution
   7. Division 26 – Electrical

C. Alternates
   1. Prior Approval: Unless otherwise provided for in the Contract documents, proposed product substitutions may be submitted no later than TEN (10) working days prior to the date established for receipt of bids. Acceptability of a proposed substitution is contingent upon the Architect's review of the proposal for acceptability and approved products will be set forth by the Addenda. If included in a Bid are substitute products that have not been approved by Addenda, the specified products shall be provided without additional compensation.
   2. Submittals that do not provide adequate data for the product evaluation will not be considered. The proposed substitution must meet all requirements of this section, including but not necessarily limited to, the following: Single source materials suppliers (if specified in Section 1.5); Panel design, size, composition, color, and finish; Suspension system component profiles and sizes; Compliance with the referenced standards.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
   1. ASTM A 1008 Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low Alloy and High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability
   2. ASTM A 641 Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire
   3. ASTM A 653 Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process
   4. ASTM C 423 Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method
   5. ASTM C 635 Standard Specification for Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings
   6. ASTM C 636 Recommended Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels
   7. ASTM D 3273 Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber
   8. ASTM E 84 Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
   9. ASTM E 580 Installation of Metal Suspension Systems in Areas Requiring Moderate Seismic Restraint
   10. ASTM E 1414 Standard Test Method for Airborne Sound Attenuation between Rooms Sharing a Common Ceiling Plenum
   11. ASTM E 1264 Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products

B. International Building Code

C. ASHRAE Standard 62.1-2004, "Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality"

D. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code

E. ASCE 7 American Society of Civil Engineers, Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures

F. International Code Council-Evaluation Services - AC 156 Acceptance Criteria for Seismic Qualification Testing of nonstructural components

G. International Code Council-Evaluation Services Report – Seismic Engineer Report

H. ESR 1308 – Armstrong Suspension Systems

I. ICC-ES Evaluation Report ESR-1112.

J. California Department of Public Health CDPH/EHLB Emission Standard Method Version 1.1 2010

K. L.E.E.D. - Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design is a set of rating systems for the design, construction, operation, and maintenance of green buildings

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

System will be utilized on interior gymnasium walls and direct attach to bottom chord of gym truss or as outlined in drawings.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data for each type of Tectum® Direct-Attached™ ceilings required.

B. Samples: Minimum 6 inch x 6 inch samples of specified Tectum® Direct-Attached acoustical ceilings panel.

C. Shop Drawings: Layout and details of Tectum® Direct-Attached wall panels show locations of items that are to be coordinated with the installation.

D. Certifications: Manufacturer's certifications that products comply with specified requirements, including laboratory reports showing compliance with specified tests and standards. For acoustical performance, products must be tested to the A, D-20, C-20, or C-40 method.

E. If the material supplied by the acoustical subcontractor does not conform to manufacturer's current published values as specified in 2.2 of this specification, the material must be removed, disposed of, and replaced with complying product at the expense of the Contractor performing the work.

1.6 SUSTAINABLE MATERIALS

A. Transparency: Manufacturers will be given preference when they provide documentation to support sustainable requirements for the following: Material ingredient transparency, Removal of Red List Ingredients per LBCV3, Life Cycle impact information, Low-Emitting Materials, and Clean Air performance.

B. Health Product Declaration. The end use product has a published, complete Health Product Declaration with disclosure at a minimum of 1000ppm of known hazards in compliance with the Health Product Declaration open Standard.

C. Declare Label. The end use product has a published Declare label by the International Living Future Institute with disclosure of 100 ppm with a designation of Red List Free or Compliant (less than 1% proprietary ingredients).

D. Low Emitting products with VOC emissions data. Preference will also be given to manufacturers that can provide emissions data showing their products meet CDHP Standard Method v1.1 (Section 01350).

E. Life cycle analysis. Products that have communicated lifecycle data through Environmental Product Declarations (EPDs) will be preferred.

F. End of Life Programs/Recycling: Where applicable, manufacturers that provide the option for recycling of their products into new products at end-of-life through take-back programs will be preferred.

G. Products meeting LEED V4 requirements including;

1. Storage & Collection of Recyclables
2. Construction and Demolition Waste Management Planning
3. Building Life-Cycle Impact Reduction
4. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization Environmental Product Declarations
5. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization Sourcing of Raw Materials
6. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization Material Ingredients
7. Construction and Demolition Waste Management

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide acoustical panel units and grid components by a single manufacturer.

B. Fire Performance Characteristics: Identify acoustical ceiling components with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting organization.

1. Surface Burning Characteristics: Tested per ASTM E 84 and complying with ASTM E 1264 Classification.

C. Tectum® Direct-Attached, as with other architectural features located at the ceiling, may obstruct or skew the planned fire sprinkler water distribution pattern through possibly delay or accelerate the activation of the sprinkler or fire detection systems by channeling heat from a fire either toward or away from the device. Designers and installers are advised to consult a fire protection engineer, NFPA 13, or their local codes for guidance where automatic fire detection and

suppression systems are present.

D. Coordination of Work: Coordinate acoustical ceiling work with installers of related work including, but not limited to building insulation, gypsum board, light fixtures, mechanical systems, electrical systems, and sprinklers.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING

A. Deliver acoustical ceiling units to project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.

B. Provide labels indicating brand name, style, size and thickness.

C. Before installing acoustical ceiling units, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

D. Handle acoustical ceiling units carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaged units in any way.

1.9 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Requirements:

B. Do not install ceiling panels until building is closed in and HVAC system is operational.

C. Locate materials onsite at least 24 hours before beginning installation to allow materials to reach temperature and moisture content equilibrium.

D. Maintain the following conditions in areas where acoustical materials are to be installed 24 hours before, during and after installation:

1. Relative Humidity: 65 - 75%.
2. Uniform Temperature: 55 - 70 degrees F (13 - 21 degrees C).

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Tectum® Direct-Attached Ceiling Panels: Submit a written warranty executed by the manufacturer, agreeing to repair or replace panels that fail within the warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Defects in materials or factory workmanship.

B. Tectum® Direct-Attached Ceiling Panels one source manufacturer is Thirty (30) years from date of substantial completion.

C. The Warranty shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and will be in addition to and run concurrent with other warranties made by the Contractor under the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.11 MAINTENANCE

A. Extra Materials: Deliver extra materials to Owner. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed. Packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with appropriate labels.

1. Tectum® Direct-Attached Ceiling Panels: Furnish quality of full-size units equal to 5.0 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 Manufacturer

A. Tectum® Direct-Attached Ceiling Panels:

1. Tectum® by Armstrong World Industries, Inc.

B. Suspension System and Accessories:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.

2.2 TECTUM® DIRECT-ATTACHED CEILING PANELS

A. Acoustical Panels Type AP-1:

1. Surface Texture: Coarse
2. Composition: Aspen wood fibers bonded with inorganic hydraulic cement
3. Color: (Sherwin Williams color to be selected at a later date
4. Size: Standard (23 ¾" x 48", 23 ¾" x 96", 47 ¾" x 96") ref drawings.
5. Thickness: (Standard 1")
6. Edge Profile: (long edge beveled, short edge square)
7. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): ASTM C 423 ; (Mounting; A(0.40); D-20(0.40); C-20(0.80); C-40(0.85)

8. Flame Spread: ASTM E 1264; Class A
9. Light Reflectance (LR) White Panel: ASTM E 1477; (Light Reflectance)
10. Dimensional Stability: HumiGuard Plus
11. Sustainable: EPD (Environmental Product Declaration) and HPD (Health Product Declaration)
12. Acceptable Product: Tectum® Direct-Attached as manufactured by Armstrong World Industries

2.3 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

A. Armstrong Drywall Suspension Systems all main beams and cross tees shall be commercial quality hot-dipped galvanized steel
   1. Main Beams: manufactured main beam— 1-1/2" knurled face with ScrewStop™ reverse hem by 1-11/16 inches high by 144 inches long with factory punched cross tee routs and hanger wire holes and SuperLock™ main beam clip for a strong secure connection and fast accurate alignment. Heavy-duty performance per ASTM C635.
      A. Main Beams: (HD8906 & HD8906HRC* – 12', HD8906IIC – 12' For IIC Improvement, HD890610 – 10' For Type "F" Light Fixtures) (* HRC – High Recycle Content)
   2. Cross Tee: manufactured cross tee – 1-1/2" knurled face with ScrewStop™ reverse hem by 1-1/2 inches high by (50), (48), (36), (26), (24), (14) inches long with factory punched cross tee routs and hanger wire holes and XL stake on clip for a strong secure connection.
      A. Cross tee: (XL8965 & XL8965HRC - 6', XL8947P – 50", XL8945P & XL8945PHRC – 4', XL8925 – 26", XL8926 – 2')

B. Wall Molding: manufactured knurled face angle molding. Locking Angle molding pre-engineered locking tabs punched 8″on center - 1-1/4 inch by 1-1/4 inch by 144 inches in length.

C. Accessories:
   1. #6 x 1-5/8" Painted Head Sharp Point Screws, item 8187L16
   2. #6 x 1-5/8" Painted Head Drill Point Screws, item 8188L16
   3. 2-1/4" Painted Head CMU Screws, item8189L22

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Do not proceed with installation until all wet work such as concrete, terrazzo, plastering and painting has been completed and thoroughly dried out, unless expressly permitted by manufacturer's printed recommendations.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Measure each wall area and establish layout of wall units. Coordinate panel layout with mechanical and electrical fixtures.

B. Coordination: Furnish layouts for preset inserts, clips, and other ceiling anchors whose installation is specified in other sections.
   1. Furnish concrete inserts and similar devices to other trades for installation well in advance of time needed for coordination of other work.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install Tectum® Direct-Attached Ceiling Panels in accordance manufacturer's installation instructions.
B. For seismic installations follow the requirements of the International Building Code, ASCE 7 and ASTM E580 and in install in accordance with the authorities having jurisdiction.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Replace damaged and broken Tectum® Direct-Attached Ceiling Panels.

B. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension members. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for cleaning and touch up of minor finish damage. Remove any Tectum® Direct-Attached Ceiling Panels that cannot be successfully cleaned and or repaired. Replace with attic stock or new product to eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09510 - ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:
Extent of each type of acoustical ceiling is shown and scheduled on drawings.

Types of acoustical ceilings specified in this section include the following:
Acoustical panel ceilings, exposed suspension.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:
Installer Qualifications: Firm with not less than three years of successful experience in installation of acoustical ceilings similar to requirements for this project and which is acceptable to manufacturer of acoustical units, as shown by current written statement from manufacturer.

Coordination of Work: Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical ceiling units and suspension system components with other work supported by or penetrating through, ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire suppression system components (if any), and partition system (if any).

SUBMITTALS:
Product Data: Manufacturer's product specifications and installation instructions for each acoustical ceiling material required, and for each suspension system, including certified laboratory test reports and other data as required to show compliance with these specifications.

DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING:
Deliver acoustical ceiling units to project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination or other causes.

Before installing acoustical ceiling units, permit them to reach room temperature and stabilized moisture content.

Handle acoustical ceiling units carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

PROJECT CONDITIONS:
Space Enclosure: Do not install interior acoustical ceilings until space is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in space is completed and nominally dry, work above ceilings completed, and ambient conditions of temperature and humidity will be continuously maintained at values near those indicated for final occupancy.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

ACOUSTICAL CEILING UNITS, GENERAL:
Standard for Acoustical Ceiling Units: Provide manufacturer's standard units of configuration indicated which are prepared for mounting method designated and which comply with FS SS S 118 requirements, including those indicated by reference to type,

form, pattern, grade (NRC or NIC's as applicable), light reflectance coefficient (LR), edge detail, and joint detail (if any).

Sound Attenuation Performance: Provide acoustical ceiling units with ratings for ceiling sound transmission class (STC) of range indicated as determined according to AMA 1 II "Ceiling Sound Transmission Test by Two Room Method" with ceilings continuous at partitions and supported by a metal suspension system of type appropriate for ceiling unit of configuration indicated (concealed for tile, exposed for panels).

Colors, Textures, and Patterns: Provide products to match appearance characteristics indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors, surface textures, and patterns available for acoustical ceiling units and exposed metal suspension system members of quality designated.

ACOUSTICAL PANELS:

SAC I Panels Mineral Composition with Standard Washable painted finish:
Nodulated, Cast or Molded Units, Fissured: Form 2, Pattern d, NRC 60, LR 1, STC 30-34 Square edge, white, 24" x 24" x 5/8". No. 1728 Panels:
Fine-Fissured - Armstrong World Ind., Inc.

SACII Panels Mineral Composition with Standard Washable painted finish:
Vinyl Faced Units, perforated, NRC 55, LR .79, CAC 335, Lay-in, white, 24" x 24" x 5/8". No. 1715 Panels:
Clean Room Mylar, Armstrong World Industries, Inc.

SACIII Panels Mineral Composition with Standard Washable painted finish:
Vinyl Faced Units, Un-perforated, NRC 55, LR .79, CAC 335, Lay-in, white, 24" x 24" x 5/8". No. 868 Panels:
Clean Room VL, Armstrong World Industries, Inc.

Wood Clouds @ entry – Woodworks Linear allow for three colors 4-1/4” module include all necessary accessories with 5370 12’ hd linear carriers (concealed) with integral clip suspension system by Armstrong World Industries, Inc. Allow for three colors

Upon completion of project, the Contractor shall provide the Owner with two boxes of ceiling tile for each style used for future repairs.

METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL:

Standard for Metal Suspension Systems: Provide metal suspension systems of type, structural classification and finish indicated which comply with applicable ASTM C 635 requirements.

Finishes and Colors: Provide manufacturer's standard finish for type of system indicated, unless otherwise required. For exposed suspension members and accessories with painted finish, provide black color.

High Humidity Finish: Comply with ASTM C 635 requirements for Coating Classification for "Severe Environment Performance" where high humidity finishes are indicated.

Attachment Devices: Size for 5 times design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct-Hung.

Hanger Wire: Galvanized carbon steel wire, ASTM A 641, soft temper, pre-stretched,

Class 1 coating, sized so that stress at 3 times hanger design loan (ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct Hung), will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 12 gage.

Edge Moldings and Trim: Metal or extruded plastic of types and profiles indicated or, if not indicated, provide manufacturer's standard molding for edges and penetrations of ceiling which fits with type of edge detail and suspension system indicated.

Available Manufacturers: Manufacturers of Steel Exposed Suspension Systems: (in air-conditioned areas)
Same as acoustical unit manufacturer:
Chicago Metallic Corp.
Donn Corp.
National Rolling Mills, INc.

EXPOSED METAL DIRECT HUNG SUSPENSION SYSTEM:
Fire Rated Double Web Suspension System: 15/16”
Finish: Aluminum cap painted white.

Structural Classification: Intermediate Duty System: 15/16”
Finish: Aluminum cap painted white.

Structural Classification: Intermediate Duty System: 9/16”
Finish: Aluminum cap painted white.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

PREPARATION:
Coordination: Furnish layouts for inserts, clips, or other supports required to be installed by other trades for support of acoustical ceilings.

Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical units to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid use of less than half width units at borders, and comply with reflected ceiling plans wherever possible.

INSTALLATION:
General: Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions, and to comply with governing regulations, fire resistance rating requirements as indicated, and industry standards applicable to work.

Arrange acoustical units and orient directionally patterned units (if any) in manner shown by reflected ceiling plans.

Install tile with pattern running in alternating one direction.

Install suspension systems to comply with ASTM C 636, with hangers supported only from building structural members. Locate hangers not less than 6" from each end and spaced 4'-0" along each carrying channel or direct hung runner, unless otherwise indicated, leveling to tolerance of 3/32" in 12'-0".

Secure wire hangers by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices which are secure and appropriate for substrate, and which will not deteriorate or fail with age or elevated temperatures.
.

Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum which are not part of supporting structural or ceiling suspension system. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal force by bracing, counter splaying or other equally effective means.

Install edge moldings of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and at locations where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical units.

Screw attached moldings to substrate at intervals not over 16” o.c. and not more than 3" from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to tolerance of 1/8" in 12' 0". Miter corners accurately and connect securely.

Install acoustical tile in coordination with suspension system. Place splines or flanges of suspension system into kerfed edges, or insert tile tongues into tile grooves, so that every tile to tile joint is closed by double lap of material.

Fit adjoining tile to form flush, tight joints. Scribe and cut for accurate fit at borders and around penetrating work.

Install acoustical panels in coordination with suspension system, with edges concealed by support of suspension members. Scribe and cut panels to fit accurately at borders and at penetrations.

ADJUST AND CLEAN:
Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension members; comply with manufacturer's instructions for cleaning and touch up of minor finish damage.

Remove and replace work which cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 09510

SECTION 09642 – GYMNASIUM WOOD FLOORING

PRO ACTION THRUST

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 Description

A. The information herein details a low profile cushioned system comprised of two layers of plywood crossed and fastened together with ProAction variable load response pads affixed to the bottom and maple strip flooring nailed to the top.
B. The flooring system assembly shall meet DIN 18032 Part 2.
C. The general contractor shall provide a level, steel troweled slab to a tolerance of +/- 1/8" (3mm) in a 10'0" (3m) radius and subject to the approval of the wood floor contractor. Moisture barriers must be adequate for conditions. The concrete slab is to be depressed 1-3/4"(44mm) plus the thickness of the flooring specified.

1.02 Quality Assurance

A. All system component parts must be supplied by Action Floor Systems, LLC.
B. The flooring contractor must be approved by Action Floor Systems, LLC.
C. Flooring materials must be allowed to acclimate to building conditions on the jobsite in a dry, well-ventilated area, not in contact with masonry, and shall be installed at a moisture content not to exceed 8% except in areas of constant high humidity where the moisture content of the flooring shall not exceed 10%.

1.03 Working Conditions

A. The wood flooring shall not be installed until all masonry, plastering, tile, marble and terrazzo work is completed, overhead mechanical trades, athletic equipment is fully installed and painters have finished in wood floor area. The building must be reasonably dry; all openings must be closed in; permanent heating and air conditioning installed and operating.
B. The subfloor shall be dry, free of foreign materials, and turned over to the wood flooring contractor broom clean. Moderate room temperature of 65 degrees (18C) or more shall be maintained a week preceding and throughout the duration of the work. Humidity conditions within the building shall approximate humidity conditions which will prevail when the building is occupied. Care should be taken to maintain humidity within the range of 35% to 50%.

1.04 Warranty

A. Action Floor Systems, LLC warrants the material it ships to be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one year and the flooring installer warrants the installation of the flooring to be free of defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one year. The exclusive remedy under this warranty shall be replacement of defective material supplied by Action Floor Systems, LLC or correction of defective installation by the flooring installer. All implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for intended use are limited to the period of this warranty. This warranty excludes consequential damages.
B. This warranty does not cover damage caused by fire, winds, floods, chemicals or other abuse, or by failure of other contractors to adhere to specifications, or neglect of reasonable precaution to provide adequate ventilation during hot and humid weather. This warranty also excludes damage due to excessive dryness or excessive moisture from humidity, spillage, migration through the slab or wall or any other source. This warranty also excludes damage to floors due to ordinary wear and tear, faulty construction of the building, (other than the flooring

installation), separation of the concrete slab underlying the floor, settlement of the walls, or use of water on the floor.

C. During the warranty period, the floor cannot be coated without the permission of the floor contractor.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.00 Acceptable Manufactures:

Action Floor Systems, LLC.
Connor Sports Flooring, NEOSHOK
Aacer Flooring, Aacer Flex

2.01 Materials

A. Flooring
   1. Flooring shall be northern hard maple strip flooring, 25/32" x 2-1/4" (20mm x 57mm) MFMA grade marked and stamped as manufactured by Action Floor Systems, LLC.
   2. Grade: 2nd&Btr.
   3. Random Length Maple Flooring

B. Subfloor
   1. Vapor retarder shall be 6-mil polyethylene.
   2. The pads shall be ProAction 3/4" (19mm) variable load response pads.
   3. Panels shall be 15/32" (12mm) thick, CD face, exposure 1, 4-ply rated plywood.
   4. Subfloor fasteners shall be 1" (25mm) cleats or 16-gauge staples.
   5. Flooring fasteners shall be 2" (50mm) cleats or staples.
   6. Wall base shall be 3" x 4" (76mm x 102mm) vented cove base with premolded corners (Black), as supplied by Action Floor Systems, LLC.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 Inspection

A. Inspect concrete slab for proper tolerance and dryness reporting any discrepancies in writing to the general contractor.
B. All work to put the concrete slab in acceptable condition shall be the responsibility of the general contractor.

3.02 Installation

A. Cover concrete slab with poly, lap edges 6" (150mm) and seal.
B. ProAction pads shall be attached to the underside of the first layer of plywood as specified by the manufacturer.
C. Place the first layer of plywood diagonal or perpendicular to the intended direction of the flooring, allow 1/4" (6mm) spacing all edges.
D. Lay the second layer of plywood without pads at a diagonal or the opposite 45-degree angle to the first layer. No joints in the second layer shall coincide with a joint in the first layer. Fasten layers together, nail or staple with 1" (25mm) fasteners starting from the center of the sheet working outward fastening 12" (300mm) on-center, and fasten 6" (150mm) on-center at sheet perimeter. Allow 1/4" (6mm) between panels at perimeter edges and a 2" (50mm) expansion void at walls and all vertical obstructions.
E. Machine nail strip flooring into the subfloor parallel to the long dimension of the area. Provide adequate expansion at regular intervals across the floor during installation as dictated by the average humidity conditions of the area according

to the recommendations of the local Action Floor Systems, LLC flooring contractor. Provide 2" expansion voids at perimeters and all vertical obstructions. Install ventcove base over perimeter voids and metal thresholds at doorways.

3.03 Floor Sanding

A. Use coarse, medium and fine grade sandpaper.
B. After sanding with drum sander, buff entire floor using 100 grit screenback or equal grit sandpaper, with a heavy-duty buffing machine.
C. Vacuum or tack floor before first coat of finish.
D. Floor shall present a smooth surface without drum stop marks, gouges, streaks or shiners.

3.04 Finishing

A. Inspect entire area of floor to ensure that the surface is acceptable for finishing, completely free from sanding dust and perfectly clean.
B. Apply seal and finish per manufacturer's instructions.
C. Screenback or steel wool and vacuum or tack between each coat after it dries.
D. Apply game lines accurately after the seal coat, after buffing and vacuuming. Lay out in accordance with drawings. For game lines, use current rules of association having jurisdiction. Lines shall be straight with sharp edges in colors selected by the architect. Game line paint shall be compatible with finish.

3.05 Base Installation

A. Affix rubber base to wall with recommended adhesive or screws.
B. Miter all corners carefully. Use premolded outside corners.

3.06 Clean Up

A. Clean up all unused materials and debris and remove from premises.

3.07 Maintenance

Upon completion of floor installation, the owners, attendants or individuals in charge and responsible for the upkeep of the building are to see that the care and maintenance instructions of the MFMA are followed. Failure to do so may void warranty.

END OF SECTION 09642

SECTION 09650 - RESILIENT FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:
Extent of resilient flooring and accessories is shown on drawings and in schedules.
Floor Wax

QUALITY ASSURANCE:
Manufacturer: Provide each type of resilient flooring and accessories as produced by a single manufacturer, including recommended primers, adhesives, sealants, and leveling compounds.

Wherever possible, provide required resilient flooring and accessories produced by a single manufacturer.

SUBMITTALS:
Product Data: Submit 2 copies of manufacturer's technical data and installation instructions for each type of resilient flooring and accessory.

Samples: Submit, for verification purposes, samples of each type, color, and pattern of resilient flooring, including accessories, required, indicating full range of color and pattern variation.

Maintenance Instructions: Submit 2 copies of manufacturer's recommended maintenance practices for each type of resilient flooring and accessory required.

Replacement Material: After completion of work, deliver to project site replacement materials from same manufactured lot as materials installed, and as follows:

Tile flooring, not less than one box for each 50 boxes or fraction thereof, for each type, size, and color installed.

JOB CONDITIONS:
Maintain minimum temperature of 65 degrees F (18 degrees C) in spaces to receive resilient flooring for at least 40 hours prior to installation, during installation, and for not less than 48 hours after installation. Store resilient flooring materials in spaces where they will be installed for at least 48 hours before beginning installation. Subsequently, maintain minimum temperature of 55 degrees F (13 degrees C) in areas where work is completed.

Install resilient flooring and accessories after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed. Do not install resilient flooring over concrete slabs until the latter have been cured and are sufficiently dry to achieve bond with adhesive as determined by manufacturer's recommended bond and moisture test.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:
Available manufacturers must have thru-chip technology or equal manufacturing technology.

Vinyl Composition Tile:
Basis of Design: Armstrong World Industries, Inc. - All available colors including Multi-colors

Standard Excelon MultiColor Colors

Tarkett Inc. - Signals, Collage, Expressions/Basics available.
Mannington Commercial - Essentials and Designer Essentials.
Azrock Commercial Flooring - Cortina/Compliments

Rubber Wall Base:
Basis of Design: Equal to Flexco Floors
Selected Color: TBD

Johnson Rubber Co., Inc., Flooring Accessories Div.
R. C. Musson Rubber Co., Inc.
Roppe Rubber Corp.

MATERIALS:
Colors and Patterns: As shown or scheduled, or as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.

Tile Flooring:
Vinyl Composition Tile (VCT): FS SS T 312, Type IV; 12" x 12" unless otherwise indicated, and as follows:
Composition 1 asbestos-free.
Gage: 1/8".
Provide four (4) color pattern as shown on plans.

Raised Rubber Sheet Flooring at Locker rooms:
Basis of Design: Flextones Rubber Flooring – Color: TBD.

Floor tiles to meet ASTM F-1344 standard specification for rubber floor tile designation: IA. ADA slip resistance.

Size:	18-1/8" x 18-1/8"
Tile Type:	Round
Gage:	3.18 mm
Color:	standard colors available (solids)

Accessories:
Basis of Design: Wall Base equal to Flexco #2000 – Color:TBD.
Wall Base (WL BS): Provide rubber base complying with FS SS W 40, Type I, with matching end stops and preformed corner units, and as follows:
Height: 4".
Thickness: 1/8" gage.
Style: Standard top set cove.
Finish: Matte.

Transition strip:
Provide 1" wide transition strips between all differing floor conditions.
Provide 1" transition strips at all door openings.

Adhesives (Cements): Waterproof, stabilized type as recommended by flooring manufacturer to suit material and substrate conditions.

Concrete Slab Primer: Non staining type as recommended by flooring manufacturer.

Leveling Compound: Latex type as recommended by flooring manufacturer.

Floor Wax:

Basis of Design: iShine High Solids Floor Finish – Spartan Chemical Company, Inc.

Total Solids – 34.5%
Non-Volatile Solids – 25%
pH (Concentrate) 8.0-9.0

Install per Manufactures written directions for preparation and installation of product

Provide and install total of (7) coats of floor finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

PREPARATION:

Broom clean or vacuum surfaces to be covered, and inspect sub-floor. Start of flooring installation indicates acceptance of sub-floor conditions and full responsibility for completed work.

Use leveling compound as recommended by flooring manufacturer for filling small cracks and depressions in sub-floors.

Perform moisture tests on concrete slabs to determine that concrete surfaces are sufficiently cured and ready to receive flooring.

Apply concrete slab primer, if recommended by flooring manufacturer, prior to application of adhesive. Apply in compliance with manufacturer's directions.

INSTALLATION:

General:
Install flooring using method indicated in strict compliance with manufacturer's recommendations. Extend flooring into toe spaces, door reveals, and into closets and similar openings.

Maintain reference markers, holes, or openings that are in place or plainly marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on sub-floor. Use chalk or other non-permanent marking device.

Install flooring on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, and other such items as occur within finished floor areas.

Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern with pieces of flooring installed on these covers. Tightly cement edges to perimeter of floor around covers and to covers.

Tightly cement flooring to sub-base without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, or other surface imperfections. Hand roll flooring at perimeter of each covered area to assure adhesion.

Tile Floors:
Lay tile from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so that tile at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid use of cut widths less than 1/2 tile at room perimeters. Lay tile square to room axis, unless otherwise shown.

Match tiles for color and pattern by using tile from cartons in same sequence as manufactured and packaged. Cut tile neatly around all fixtures. Broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles are not acceptable.

Lay tile in "checkerboard" fashion with grain reversed in adjacent tiles.

Adhere tile flooring to substrates using full spread of adhesive applied in compliance with flooring manufacturer's directions.

Accessories:
Apply wall base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and other permanent fixtures in rooms or areas where base is required. Install base in lengths as long as practicable, with preformed corner units, or fabricated from base materials with metered or coped inside corners. Tightly bond tile to substrate throughout length of each piece to provide continuous contact at horizontal and vertical surfaces.

On masonry surfaces, or other similar irregular surfaces, fill voids along top edge of resilient wall base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.

Place resilient edge strips tightly butted to flooring and secure with adhesive. Install edging strips at edges of flooring which, when changed to different floor material, would otherwise be exposed.

FLOOR WAXING:
Upon completion of floor installation and before applying first coat of floor finish, contractor to coordinate a pre-installation meeting with Owner to determine installation schedule and procedures. Owner will be notified and be present for initial application and will provide approval for each subsequent application per a schedule that is set up by the Owner and coordinated with General Contractor.

- First (1) coat of floor finish to all areas to allow for initial punch list inspection and allow Owner to inspect installation procedures.
- Remaining Six (6) coats of floor finish will be installed per Owner schedule and coordinated with General Contractor.

CLEANING AND PROTECTION:
Remove any excess adhesive or other surface blemishes, using neutral type cleaners as recommended by flooring manufacturer. Protect installed flooring with heavy Kraft paper or other covering.

Finishing: After completion of project and just prior to final inspection of work, thoroughly clean floors and accessories.

END OF SECTION 09650

SECTION 09900 PAINTING

PART 1 GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:
Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work in this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:
Extent of painting work is indicated on drawings and schedules, and as herein specified.

Work includes painting and finishing of interior and exterior exposed items and surfaces throughout Project, except as otherwise indicated.

Surface preparation, priming and coats or paint specified are in addition to shop priming and surface treatment specified under other sections of work.

"Paint" as used herein means all coating systems materials, including primers, emulsions, enamels, stains, sealers and fillers, and other applied materials whether used as prime, intermediate or finish coats.

Paint exposed surfaces whether or not colors are designated in “schedules", except where natural finish of material is specifically noted as a surface not to be painted. Where items or surfaces are not specifically mentioned, paint the same as similar adjacent materials or areas. If color or finish is not designated, Architect will select these from standard colors available for materials systems specified.

Pre Finished Items: Unless otherwise indicated, do not include painting when factory finishing or installer finishing is specified for such items as (but not limited to) metal toilet enclosures, pre-finished partition systems, acoustic materials, architectural woodwork and casework, finished mechanical and electrical equipment, including light fixtures, switchgear and distribution cabinets, elevator entrance frames, doors and equipment.

Concealed Surfaces: Unless otherwise indicated, painting is not required on surfaces such as walls or ceilings in concealed areas and generally inaccessible areas, foundation spaces, furred areas, utility tunnels, pipe spaces, duct shafts and elevator shafts.

Finished Metal Surfaces: Unless otherwise indicated, metal surfaces of anodized aluminum, stainless steel, chromium plate, copper, bronze and similar finished materials will not require finish painting.

Operating Parts: Unless otherwise indicated, moving parts of operating units, mechanical and electrical parts, such as valve and damper operators, linkages, sensing devices, motor and fan shafts will not require finish painting.

Do not paint over any code required labels, such as Underwriters’ Laboratories and Factory Mutual, or any equipment identification, performance rating, name, or nomenclature plates.

SUBMITTALS:

Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical information including Paint label analysis

and application instructions for each material proposed for use.
Samples: Submit samples for Architect's review of color and texture only. Provide a listing of material and application for each coat of each finish sample.

On 12" x 12" hardboard, provide two samples of each color and material, with texture to simulate actual conditions. Resubmit samples as requested by Architect until acceptable sheen, color, and texture is achieved.

On actual wood surfaces, provide two 4" x 8" samples of natural and stained wood finish. Label and identify each as to location and application.

On concrete masonry, provide two 4" square samples of masonry for each type of finish and color, defining filler, prime and finish coat.

DELIVERY AND STORAGE:
Deliver materials to job site in original, new and unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and following information:

Name or title of material.
Fed. Spec. number, if applicable.
Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture.
Manufacturer's name.
Contents by volume, for major pigment and vehicle constituents.
Thinning instructions.
Application instructions.
Color name and number.

JOB CONDITIONS:

Apply water base paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 50 degrees F (10 degrees C) and 90 degrees F (32 degrees C), unless otherwise permitted by paint manufacturer's printed instructions.

Apply solvent thinned paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 45 degrees F (7 degrees C) and 95 degrees F (35 degrees C), unless otherwise permitted by paint manufacturer's printed instructions.

Do not paint in snow, rain, fog or mist, or when relative humidity exceeds 85%, or to damp or wet surfaces, unless otherwise permitted by paint manufacturer's printed instructions.

Painting may be continued during inclement weather if areas and surfaces to be painted are enclosed and heated within temperature limits specified by paint manufacturer during application and drying periods.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

COLORS AND FINISHES:
Paint colors, surface treatments, and finishes, are indicated in "schedules" of the contract documents.

Prior to beginning work, Architect will furnish color chips for surfaces to be painted.

Use representative colors when preparing samples for review.

MANUFACTURERS: for interior paint system only;

Sherwin Williams
Technical Coatings Inc.
Jones Blair
Pittsburgh Paint

For exterior paint system:
Tnemec (no substitutes for this product)

Color Pigments: Pure, non-fading, applicable types to suit substrates and service indicated.

Paint Coordination: Provide finish coats which are compatible with prime paints used. Review other sections of these specifications in which prime paints are to be provided to ensure compatibility of total coatings system for various substrates. Upon request from other trades, furnish information on characteristics of finish materials proposed for use, to ensure compatible prime coats are used. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers or remove and re-prime as required. Notify Architect in writing of any anticipated problems using specified coating systems with substrates primed by others.

MATERIALS:
Material Quality: Provide best quality grade of various types of coatings as regularly manufactured by acceptable paint materials manufacturers. Materials not displaying manufacturer's identification as a standard, best grade product will not be acceptable.

EXTERIOR PAINT SYSTEMS (EPS):
Provide following paint systems for various substrates, as indicated.

General Paint Wood:

EPS-1 1st coat - Primer undercost (T-P-25).
2nd coat - Acrylic emulsion (TT-P-19).
3nd coat - Acrylic emulsion (TT-P-19).

Painted Wood Trim:

EPS-2: 1st coat - Primer undercoat (TT-P-25).
2nd coat - Alkyd trim enamel (TT-P-37).
3rd coat - Alkyd trim enamel (TT-P-37).

Painted Plywood:

EPS-3 1st coat - Surface sealer (TT-S-176).
2nd coat - Primer undercoat (TT-P-25).
3rd coat - Acrylic emulsion (TT-P-19).
4th coat - Acrylic emulsion (TT-P-19).

EXTERIOR CMU

1st Coat - TNEMEC Series 130 Envirofill 60-85SFPG
2nd Coat and 3rd Coat - TNEMEC Series 157 Enviro-Crete TX 99-111 SFPG

EXPOSED STRUCTURAL STEEL AND ACCESSORIES

Surface Preparation: Commercial Blast Cleaning as per SSPC-SP6. Note do not use this paint system if surface has been hot dipped galvanized.

Coating System:

Primer:	Tnemec Series 90-97 Tneme-Zinc	2.5 - 3.5 dry mils
First Coat:	Tnemec Series 27WB Typoxy	4.0 - 6.0 dry mils
Finish Coat:	Tnemec Series 740 UVX	3.0 - 5.0 dry mils

EXPOSED STRUCTURAL STEEL AND ACCESSORIES (Hot Dipped Galvanized)

Surface Preparation: Abrasive blast as per ASTM D 6386 providing a minimum 1.5 mil angular anchor profile.

Coating System:

First Coat:	Tnemec Series 27WB Typoxy	4.0 - 6.0 dry mils
Finish Coat:	Tnemec Series 740 UVX	3.0 - 5.0 dry mils

INTERIOR PAINT SYSTEMS:

Provide following paint systems for various substrates, as indicated.

INTERIOR PAINT SYSTEMS:

Provide following paint systems for various substrates, as indicated.

Concrete Masonry units (Epoxy Coating):

IPS2: 1st Coat - Heavy Duty Block Filler
2nd Coat - Waterbased Tile Clad Epoxy
3rd Coat - Waterbased Tile Clad Epoxy

Concrete Masonry units:

IPS2: 1st Coat - PROMAR Interior/Exterior Block Filler
2nd Coat - PROMAR 200 Interior Latex Semi-Gloss
3rd Coat - PROMAR 200 Interior Latex Semi-Gloss

Apply filler coat at a rate to ensure complete coverage with pores filled. Not less than 3.5 mils dry film thickness, excluding first coat.

Exposed Metal:

IPS2: 1st Coat - PROMAR Interior Latex Primer
2nd Coat - PROMAR 200 Interior Latex Semi-Gloss
3rd Coat - PROMAR 200 Interior Latex Semi-Gloss

Gypsum Drywall Systems – (General Use):

1st Coat - Interior Latex Based Primer Coat (FS TT-P-650).
2nd Coat & 3rd Coat - Odorless interior semi-gloss latex enamel (TS TT-E-509). Not less than 2.5 mils dry film thickness.

Painted Wood Work and Hardboard:

IPS-6: 1st Coat - Enamel Undercoat.
2nd Coat- Semi-gloss enamel.

3rd Coat - Semi-gloss enamel

Stained Woodwork:
IPS-5: 1st Coat - Exterior oil stain.
2nd Coat - Bleached Shellac.
3rd Coat - Rubbing Varnish.
4th Coat - Rubbing Varnish.

Surface Preparation: Wood must be dry and cleaned of dirt, grease, wax, polish, and marks. Old finishes in poor condition should be completely removed and the surface treated as a new surface (this shall apply to existing floors only). Sand wood to a smooth surface using 100-120 grit paper. If wood is stained, sand carefully to avoid sanding through the color. Remove sanding dust with a vacuum, no dust cloths shall be permitted. New wood should be stored inside fora minimum of 24 hours prior to staining. Stain or varnish applied to wood that has not been dried can exhibit blotching, discoloration, or cracking.

PART 3 EXECUTION
INSPECTION:
Applicator must examine areas and conditions under which painting work is to be applied and notify Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to proper and timely completion of work. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been correct in a manner acceptable to Applicator.

Starting of painting work will be construed as Applicator's acceptance of surfaces and conditions within any particular area.

Do not paint over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions otherwise detrimental to formation of a durable paint film.

SURFACE PREPARATION:
General: Perform preparation and cleaning procedures in accordance with paint manufacturer's instructions and as herein specified, for each particular substrate condition.

Remove hardware, hardware accessories, machined surfaces, plates, lighting fixtures, and similar items in place and not to be finish painted, or provide surface applied protection prior to surface preparation and painting operations. Remove, if necessary, for complete painting of items and adjacent surfaces. Following completion of painting of each space or area, reinstall removed items.

Clean surfaces to be painted before applying paint or surface treatments. Remove oil and grease prior to mechanical cleaning. Program cleaning and painting so that contaminants from cleaning process will not fall onto wet, newly painted surfaces.

Cementitious Materials: Prepare cementitious surfaces of concrete, concrete block to be painted by removing efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, grease, oils, and by roughening as required to remove glaze as required. Determine alkalinity and moisture content of surfaces to be painted by performing appropriate tests. If surfaces are found to be sufficiently alkaline to cause blistering and burning of finish paint, correct this condition before application of paint. Do not paint over surfaces where moisture content exceeds that permitted in manufacturer’s printed directions.

Clean concrete floor surfaces scheduled to be painted with a commercial solution or muriatic acid, or other etching cleaner. Flush floor with clean water to neutralize acid, and allow to dry before painting.

Wood: Clean wood surfaces to be painted of dirt, oil, or other foreign substances with scrapers, mineral spirits, and sandpaper, as required. Sandpaper smooth those finished surfaces exposed to view, and dust off. Scrape and clean small, dry, seasoned knots and apply a thin coat of white shellac or other recommended knot sealer, before application of priming coat. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sandpaper smooth when dried.

Prime, stain, or seal wood required to be job painted immediately upon delivery to job. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of such wood, including cabinets, counters, cases, paneling. When transparent finish is required, use spar varnish for back-priming.

Back-prime paneling on interior partitions only where masonry or other wet wall construction occurs on backside.

Seal tops, bottoms, and cut outs of unprimed wood doors with a heavy coat of varnish or equivalent sealer immediately upon delivery to job.

Ferrous Metals: Clean ferrous surfaces, which are not galvanized or shop coated, of oil, grease, dirt, loose mill scale and other foreign substances by solvent or mechanical cleaning.

Touch up shop applied prime coats wherever damaged or bare, where required by other sections of these specifications. Clean and touch up with same type shop primer.

Galvanized Surfaces: Clean free of oil and surface contaminants with non petroleum based solvent.

MATERIALS PREPARATION:

Mix and prepare painting materials in accordance with manufacturer’s directions.

Maintain containers used in mixing and application of paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue. Store materials not in actual use in tightly covered containers.

Stir materials before application to produce a mixture of uniform density, and stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into material. Remove film and, if necessary, strain material before using.

APPLICATION:
General: Apply paint in accordance with manufacturer's directions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.

Apply additional coats when undercoats, stains or other conditions show through final coat of paint, until paint film is of uniform finish, color and appearance. Give special attention to insure that surfaces, including edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners receive a dry film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.

Paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only before final installation of equipment.

Paint interior surfaces of ducts, where visible through registers or grilles, with a flat, non-specular black paint. Paint back sides of access panels, and removable or hinged covers to match exposed surfaces.

Finish exterior doors on tops, bottoms and side edges same as exterior faces, unless otherwise indicated. Sand lightly between each succeeding enamel or varnish coat.

Omit first coat (primer) on metal surfaces which have been shop primed and touch up painted, unless otherwise indicated.

Scheduling Painting: Apply first coat material to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.

Allow sufficient time between successive coatings to permit proper drying. Do not recoat until paint has dried to where it feels firms, does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure, and application of another coat of paint does not cause lifting or loss of adhesion of the undercoat.

Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply materials at not less than manufacturer's recommended spreading rate, to establish a total dry film thickness as indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by coating manufacturer.

Prime Coats: Apply prime coat of material which is required to be painted or finished, and which has not been prime coated by others.

Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where there is evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat, to assure a finish coat with no burn through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.

Stipple Enamel Finish: Roll and redistribute paint to an even and fine texture. Leave no evidence of rolling such as laps, irregularity in texture, skid marks, or other surface imperfections.

Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover to provide an opaque, smooth surface of uniform finish, color, appearance and coverage. Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness or other surface imperfections will not be acceptable.

Transparent (Clear) Finish: Use multiple coats to produce glass smooth surface film of even luster. Provide a finish free of laps, cloudiness, color irregularity, runs, brush marks, orange peel, nail holes, or other surface imperfections. Provide satin finish for final coats, unless otherwise indicated.

Completed Work: Match approved samples for color, texture and coverage. Remove, refinish or repaint work not in compliance with specified requirements.

FIELD QUALITY CONTROL:
The right is reserved by Owner to invoke the following material testing procedure at any time, and any number of times during period of field painting:

Engage services of an independent testing laboratory to sample paint being used.

Samples of materials delivered to project site will be taken, identified and sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.

Testing laboratory will perform appropriate tests for any or all of following characteristics: Abrasion resistance, apparent reflectivity, flexibility, washability, absorption, accelerated weathering, dry opacity, accelerated yellowness, recoating, skinning, color retention, alkali resistance and quantitative materials analysis.

If test results show that material being used does not comply with specified requirements, Contractor may be directed to stop painting work, and remove non complying paint; pay for testing; repaint surfaces coated with rejected paint; remove rejected paint from previously painted surfaces if, upon repainting with specified paint, the two coatings are non compatible.

CLEAN UP AND PROTECTION:
Clean Up: During progress of work, remove from site discarded paint materials, rubbish, cans and rags at end of each work day. Upon completion of painting work, clean window glass and other paint spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paint by proper methods of washing and scraping, using car not to scratch or otherwise damage finished surfaces.

Protection: Protect work of other trades, whether to be painted or not, against damage by painting and finishing work. Correct any damage by cleaning, repairing or replacing, and repainting, as acceptable to Architect.

Provide "Wet Paint" signs as required to protect newly painted finishes. Remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others for protection of their work, after completion of painting operations. At completion of work of other trades, touch up and restore all damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

END OF SECTION 09900

SECTION 10100 - MARKERBOARDS AND TACKBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections, apply to the work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

Extent of marker boards (MKBD) and tack boards (TKBD) is shown on drawings.

Types of, marker boards and tack boards specified in this section include the following:
Magnetic Marker boards

QUALITY ASSURANCE:

Manufacturer: Unless otherwise acceptable to Architect, furnish all marker boards and tack boards by one manufacturer for the entire project.

SUBMITTALS:

Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data and installation instructions for each material and component part, including data substantiating that materials comply with requirements.

Samples: Submit full range of color samples for each type of marker board, tack board, trim and accessory required. Provide 12" square samples of sheet materials and 12" lengths of trim members for color verification after selections have been made.

Shop Drawings: Submit for each type of marker board and tack board. Include sections of typical trim members and dimensioned elevations. Show anchors, grounds, reinforcement, accessories, and installation details.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:

Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following:

Manufacturers of Markerboards:
Basis of Design: Nelson Adams NACO
Color: White
Best-Rite.
Claridge Products and Equipment, Inc.
Greensteel, Inc.
Tacrite

Manufacturers of Tackboards:
Basis of Design: Nelson Adams NACO
Color: French Blue B321-71
Claridge Products and Equipment, Inc.

Greensteel, Inc.
Tacrite
Polyvision

Manufacturers of Tack Strips
Basis of Design: Nelson Adams NACO
Color: TBD
Claridge Products and Equipment, Inc.
Greensteel, Inc.
Tacrite
Polyvision

MATERIALS:

Colors and Textures: Provide as shown or scheduled. If not indicated on drawings, provide colors and textures as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.

Magentic Markerboards (MKBD):

Porcelain on Metal: LCS 24 gauge Porcelain Enamel Steel, over 1/4" hardboard. Units to be fabricated in accordance with the Performance Specifications for porcelain enamel steel marker boards, as established by the Porcelain Enamel Institute, the enamel should be;

* Applied automatically to a uniform thickness
. * Fired under rigidly controlled temperatures
* Fused permanently to the steel
* Height is 4' by length shown on plans.

Cover Coat Finish: Manufacturer's special writing surface (SWS) with gloss finish intended for use with liquid markers. Surface must be magnetic.

Core: Hardboard of thickness 1/4".
Particle board accepted only in thicknesses of 3/8".

Laminating Adhesive: Manufacturer’s standard moisture-resistant thermoplastic type adhesive.

Tackboards (TKBD):

Vinyl Fabric-Faced: Provide mildew resistant, vinyl fabric complying with FS CCC-W-408, Type II, laminated to 1/4" thick cork backing sheet.

Unless otherwise indicated, make up rigid panels by factory-laminating under pressure to 1/4" thick exterior type plywood or hardboard backing. Height is 4' by length shown in plans. Provide continuous map rail above these units as well, see interior elevations.

TRIM AND ACCESSORIES:

Provide one (1) Flag Holders model no. 51FH per marker board, single or combo unit

General: Fabricate frames and trim of not less than 0.062" thick aluminum alloy, size and shape as indicated, to suit type of installation. Provide straight, single length units wherever possible; keep joints to a minimum. Miter corners to a neat, hairline closure.

Clear Anodized Finish: Manufacturer's standard satin anodized finish with clear anodic coating complying with AA requirements for Class II Architectural Coating (AA-A31).

Chalktrough: Furnish continuous aluminum chalktroughs for each chalkboard, unless otherwise indicated, as follows.

Solid Extrusion, manufacturer's standard ribbed section, with exposed ends smoothly curved.

Map Rail: Furnish map rail at the top of each unit, unless otherwise indicated, with the following accessories for each map rail.

Display Rail: Continuous cork approximately 12" high, integral with map rail. See drawings for limits of rail.

Map Hooks: Provide 2 map hooks for each 4' of map rail or fraction thereof.

FABRICATION:

Assembly: Provide factory assembled Markerboard and tackboard units.

Make joints only where the total length exceeds the maximum manufactured length. Fabricate with the minimum number of joints, balanced around the center of the board, as acceptable to the Architect.

Provide the manufacturer's standard vertical joint system between abutting sections of Markerboard.

Provide mullion trim at joints between chalkboard and tackboard.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

PREPARATION:

Field Measurements: Take field measurements prior to the preparation of shop drawings and fabrication where possible, to ensure proper fitting of the work. However, allow for trimming and fitting wherever taking of field measurements before fabrication might delay work.

INSTALLATION:

Deliver factory-built chalkboard and tackboard units completely assembled in one piece without joints, wherever possible. Where dimensions exceed panel size, provide 2 or more pieces of equal length as acceptable to the Architect.
When overall dimensions require delivery in separate units, pre-fit components at the factory, disassemble for delivery, and make final joints at the site. Use splines at joints to maintain surface alignment.

Install units in locations and at mounting heights indicated on drawings and in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Keep perimeter lines straight, plumb and level. Provide all grounds, clips, backing materials, brackets, anchors, trim and accessories necessary for a complete installation.

ADJUST AND CLEAN:

Verify that accessories required for each unit have been properly installed and that operating units function properly.

Clean units in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Break-in chalkboards only as recommended by the manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 10100

SECTION 10350 - FLAGPOLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

Provide (2) 30' aluminum flagpoles.
Provide (1) United States Flag – 5'-0" x 8'-0"
Provide (1) Texas Flag – 5'-0" x 8'-0"

Extent and location of each type of flagpole shown on drawings.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:

Manufacturing Standards: Provide each flagpole as a complete unit produced by a single manufacturer, including fittings accessories, bases and anchorage devices.

Design Criteria: Provide flagpoles and installations constructed to withstand a 90 mph wind velocity when flying flag of appropriate size. Use heavy pipe sizes if required for flagpole type and height shown.

Pole Construction: Construct pole and ship to site in one piece if possible. If more than one piece is necessary, provide snug-fitting, precision joints with self-aligning, internal splicing sleeve arrangement for weather-tight, hairline field joints.

SUBMITTALS:

Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data and installation instructions for each type of flagpole required.

Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings of flagpoles and bases, showing general layout, jointing and complete anchoring and supporting systems.

DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

Spiral wrap flagpoles with heavy Kraft paper or other protective wrapping and prepare for shipment in hard fiber tube or other protective container.

Deliver flagpole and accessories completely identified for installation procedure. Handle and store flagpoles to prevent damage or soiling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:

Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following:

Acme Flagpole Div., Lingo Inc.

American Flagpole, Div. of Kearney-National, Inc.
Concord Industries, Inc.
Eagle Mountain Flag & Flagpole Co.
Eder Flag Mfg. Co.
Morgan and Co.

FLAGPOLE TYPE:

Aluminum Flagpoles: Fabricate aluminum flagpoles from seamless extruded tubing, complying with ASTM B 241, alloy 6063-T6, having a minimum wall thickness of 3/16" (0.1875").

Provide continuous tapered aluminum flagpoles.

FLAGPOLE MOUNTING:

Provide manufacturer's standard base system for the type of flagpole installation required.

Base Plate: For anchor-bolt mounting, furnish manufacturer's standard cast metal shoe base of same material as flagpole. Furnish and install anchor bolts and lighting ground spike as required.

Foundation Tube: For ground-set flagpoles, proved 16-gage minimum galvanized corrugated steel tube, or 12 gage rolled steel tube, sized to suit flagpole and installation. Furnish complete with welded steel bottom base and support plate, lightning ground spike, and steel centering wedges, all welded construction. Provide loose hardwood wedges at top for plumbing pole after erection. Galvanize steel parts after assembly, including foundation tube.

Provide steel ground protector extending 12" above ground and 6" below ground for steel flagpoles where base or flash collars are not provided.

SHAFT FINISH:

Aluminum: Fine directional, mechanical satin polish (NAAMM-32), finished as follows:

Anodized Aluminum

FITTINGS:

Aluminum Ball: Manufacturer's standard flush seam ball, 6" as indicated, or if not indicated, to match pole butt diameter.

14 ga. spun aluminum, finished to match pole shaft.

Truck: Ball-bearing non-fouling, revolving, double-track assembly of cast metal, finished to match pole shaft.

Cleats: Two 9" cast metal cleats with fasteners, finished to match pole shaft.

Halyards: Provide 2 continuous halyards for each flagpole, as follows:
Polypropylene, white, braided.

Size: 3/8" (No. 12)

Halyard Flag Snaps: Provide 2 swivel snaps per halyard.

FLAGS:
Made of extra tough poly – woven of two-ply polyester yarn.
Provide (1) United States Flag – 5'-0" x 8'-0"
Provide (1) Texas Flag – 5'-0" x 8'-0"

PART 3 - EXECUTION

INSTALLATION:

Excavation: Excavate for foundation concrete to neat clean lines in undisturbed soil.. Provide forms where require due to unstable soil conditions. Remove wood, loose soil, rubbish and other foreign matter from excavation, and moisten the earth before placing concrete.

Concrete: Provide concrete composed of portland cement, coarse aggregate, fine aggregate and water, mixed in proportions to attain 28-day compressive strength of not less than 3000 psi. Use not less than 5 sacks of portland cement, complying with ASTM C 150, per cubic yard of wet concrete.

Plase concrete immediately after mixing. Perform chuting to avoid segregation of mix. Compact concrete in place by use of vibrators to consolidate. Moist-cure exposed concrete for not less than 7 days, or use a non-staining curing compound in freezing weather.

Finish trowel exposed concrete surfaces to smooth, dense surface.
Provide positive slope for water runoff to base perimeter

Flagpole Installation: Install flagpoles as shown and in compliance with final shop drawings and manufacturer's instructions.

Provide positive lightning ground for each flagpole installation.

END OF SECTION 10350

SECTION 10440 SPECIALTY SIGNS

PART 1 GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:
Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work specified in this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:
Extent of specialty signs is shown on drawings.

Forms of specialty signs required include the following:
- Panel signs
- Metal letters
- Illuminated Channel Letters – Direct Mount
- Cast metal plaques
- Metal signs

QUALITY ASSURANCE:
Uniformity of Manufacturer: For each sign form and graphic image process indicated, furnish products of a single manufacturer.

SUBMITTALS:
Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data and installation instructions for each type of sign required.

Samples: Submit samples of each sign form and material showing finishes, colors, surface textures and qualities of manufacture and design of each sign component, including graphics.

Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for fabrication and erection of specialty signs. Include plans, elevations, and large scale details of sign wording and lettering layout. Show anchorages and accessory items. Furnish location template drawings for items supported or anchored to permanent construction.

Furnish full size rubbings for metal plaques.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:
Panel Signage

Manufacturers of Rooms Signs:
Basis of Design: Corpus Christi Stamp Works
Bayuk Graphic Systems, Inc.
MULTI-graphics, Inc.

Manufacturers of Metal Letters
Basis of Design: A.R.K. Ramos
Gemini Sign Products

Manufacturers of Plaques
Basis of Design: A.R.K. Ramos
The Southwell Company.

Manufacturers of Illuminated Channel Letters
Basis of Design: Signs & More
2108 Central Boulevard, Brownsville, TX 78520

MATERIALS:
Plastic Laminate: Provide high pressure plastic laminate engraving stock with face and core plies in contrasting colors, in finishes and color combinations indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from the manufacturer's standard.

FABRICATION OF PANEL SIGNS::
Fabricate panels signs to comply with the requirements indicated for materials, thicknesses, finishes, colors, designs, shapes, sizes and details of construction. Provide and install, one per door.

Produce smooth, even, level sign panel surfaces, constructed to remain flat under installed condition within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16" measured diagonally from corner to corner.

Framed Panel Signs: Fabricate unframed panel signs with edges mechanically and smoothly finished to conform to following requirements:

A. Character Proportion. Letters and numbers on signs should have a width to height ratio between 3:5 and 1:1 and a stroke width to height ratio between 1:5 to 1:10 utilizing an uppercase "X" for measurement.

B. Color Contrast. Characters and symbols shall contrast with their background.

C. Tactile Characters and Symbols. Characters, symbols, or pictographs on signs required to be tactile, shall be raised 1/32 inch minimum. Letters and numbers refer to plans for text height at specific locations. Font shall be: Proxima Nova

D. Sign Types – Refer to Plans for all room types and sizes
Office and Room Signs, Typical
Restroom Signs
Locker Room Signs

ILLUMINATED CHANNEL LETTERS:
General: Provide Illuminated Channel Letters – Direct mount letters to comply with requirements indicated for manufacturing process, materials, finish, style, size and message content.

Illuminated Channel Letters (Front): Acrylic
Letter Returns: Aluminum (Match Letter Face with White Interior Finish)
Wrisco Color: Yellow/White
1” trim: Color TBD
Acrylic:Color TBD
Bulb Type: 6500K LED’s
14’-6” wide by 6’ Tall – Hanna Eagle (Yellow Bulb with White screw threads)
2’-6” tall – HANNA EAGLES – (Color & Font TBD)

Refer to drawings for location and spacing. Coordinate power supply with Electrical drawings.

METAL LETTERS AND NUMBERS:
General: Provide metal letters and numbers to comply with requirements indicated for manufacturing process, materials, finish, style, size and message content.

Cast letters and numbers: Form letters and numbers by casting. Produce characters with smooth, flat faces; sharp corners; precisely formed lines and profiles; and free from pits, scale, sand holes or other defects. Cast lugs into back of characters and tap to receive threaded mounting studs.

Refer to drawings for location and spacing. Coordinate substrate anchoring with General Contractor

CAST METAL PLAQUES:
Fabricate cast plaques to comply with requirements indicated below for metal, border style, background texture and finish, and on drawings for thickness, size, shape and copy. Produce castings free from pits, scale, and sand holes or other defects. Hand tool and buff borders and raised copy to produce manufacturer's standard satin polished finish. Refer to "Finish" article of other finish requirements.

Quantity: One (1)
Size: 30”W x 20”H x 3/4” D (with BISD Logo)
Metal: Bronze.
Fonts: Times New Roman (Refer to drawings for plaque layout)
Texture: Letherette
Finish: BR-400 Dark Oxidized background with Satin Bronze raised areas
Mounting: Concealed (Verify location for anchoring type)

METAL SIGN:
General: Provide and install handicap metal signs as per attached drawings.
Provide and install 18" x 24" aluminum signs as per attached drawing.

Materials: Aluminum signs shall be as manufactured by Supersign or equal.

Mounting Pole shall be aluminum .125 wall thickness and five feet in height above finished sidewalk elevation.

FINISHES:
General:

Colors and Surface Textures: For exposed sign materials which require selection of materials with integral or applied colors, surface textures or other characteristics related to appearance, provide color matches indicated, or if not otherwise indicated,
as selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's standards.

Metal Finishes: Comply with NAAMM "Metal Finishes Manual" for finish designations and application recommendations.

Aluminum Finishes:

Baked Enamel Finish: Provide finish AA M4xC12C42Rlx (manufacturer's standard non directional mechanical finish including sanding and filing; cleaning with inhibited chemicals; conversion coated with an acid chromate fluoride phosphate treatment; and painted with organic coating specified below).

Bronze Finishes:
Natural Satin Finish: NAAMM-M31-06x (fine satin directional textured mechanical finish with clear organic coating specified below).

Clear Organic Coating: Manufacturer's standard clear coating.

PART 3 EXECUTION:
INSTALLATION:
General: Locate sign units and accessories where shown or scheduled, using mounting methods of type described and in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions, unless otherwise indicated.

Install sign units level, plumb and at the height indicated, with sign surfaces free from distortion or other defects of appearance.

Panel Signs:
Wall Mounted Units: Attach panel signs to wall surfaces using the methods indicated below:

Vinyl Tape Mounting (VTM): Use double sided foam tape, or thickness indicated, to mount signs to smooth non porous surfaces. Do not use for vinyl covered or rough surfaces.

Where mounted on glass provide blank sign on inside of glass.

Metal Letters and Numbers:

Mount letters and numbers as follows: use standard fastening methods recommended by manufacturer for letter form, type of mounting, wall construction, and condition of exposure indicated. Provide heavy weight paper template to establish letter spacing and to locate holes for fasteners.

Flush Mounting (FM): Mount letters either backs in contact with wall surface.

Cast Metal Plaques: Mount cast plaques using the manufacturer's standard fastening methods recommended by manufacturer for type of wall surface indicated.

Concealed Mounting: Mount the plaques by inserting threaded studs into tapped lugs on the back of the plaque. Set in predrilled holes filled with quick setting cement.

CLEANING AND PROTECTION:
At completion of the installation, clean soiled sign surface in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Protect units from damage until acceptance by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 10440

SECTION 10520 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS, CABINETS, AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:
Definition: "Fire extinguishers" as used in this section refers to units which can be hand carried, unless otherwise specified.

Types of products required include:
Fire extinguishers.
Fire extinguisher cabinets.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:
Provide portable fire extinguishers, cabinets and accessories by one manufacturer, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.

SUBMITTALS:
Product Data: Submit manufacturer’s technical data and installation instructions for all portable fire extinguishers required. Where color selections by Architect are required include color charts showing full range of manufacturer's standard colors and designs available.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:
J. L. Industries.
Larsen's Mfg. Co.

FIRE EXTINGUISHERS:
General: Provide fire extinguishers for each extinguisher cabinet and other locations indicated, in colors and finishes selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard which comply with requirements of governing authority.

Fill and service extinguishers to comply with requirements of governing authorities and manufacturer's requirement.

Multi Purpose Dry Chemical Type: UL rated 4 A: 60 BC, 10 lb. nominal capacity, in enameled steel container for Class A, Class B and Class C fires.

Type K Extinguishers will be required at Snack Bar, Serving Line and Kitchen locations.

FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS:
General: Provide fire extinguisher cabinets (FECB) where indicated, of suitable size for housing fire extinguishers of types and capacities indicated.

Construction: Manufacturer’s standard enameled steel box, with trim, frame, door and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated. Weld all joints and grind smooth. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.

Cabinet Type: Suitable for mounting conditions indicated, of the following types:

Semi Recessed: Cabinet box (tub) fully recessed in walls of sufficient depth to suit style of trim indicated.

Trim Style: Fabricate trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded and ground smooth.
Exposed Trim: One piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
Rolled Edge Trim: Rounded edges with backbend depth as follows:
Depth: 2 1/2".
Trim Metal: of same metal as door.

Door Material and Construction: Manufacturer's standard door construction, of material indicated, coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles selected.

Door Style: Equal to JL Vertical Duo

Duo Panel: Tempered glass, 1/8" thick, unless otherwise indicated.

Additional Features: Red Vertical FE letters

Door Hardware: Provide manufacturer’s standard door operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated. Provide either lever handle with cam action latch, or door pull, exposed or concealed, and friction latch. Provide concealed or continuous type hinge permitting door to open 180 degrees.
FACTORY FINISHING OF FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS
General: Comply with NAAMM “Metal Finishes Manual" for finish designations and application recommendations except as otherwise indicated. Apply finishes in factory after products are assembled. Protect cabinets with plastic or paper covering, prior to shipment.

Aluminum Finishes:
Provide #180 clear anodized door and frame.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

INSTALLATION:
Install items included in this section in locations and at mounting heights indicated, or if not indicated, at heights to comply with applicable regulations of governing authorities.

Prepare recesses in walls for fire extinguisher cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and style of trim and to comply with manufacturer's instructions.

Where exact location of bracket mounted fire extinguishers is not indicated, locate as directed by Architect.

IDENTIFICATION:
Identify existence of fire extinguisher in cabinet with lettering spelling "FIRE EXTINGUISHER” painted on door by silk screen process. Provide lettering on door as indicated, or if not indicated, as selected by Architect from Manufacturer's standard letter sizes, styles, colors and layouts.

END OF SECTION 10520

SECTION 10730 – DOOR AND WINDOW ALUMINUM CANOPIES

1.0 **PART 1 – GENERAL**

1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

1.1.A Furnish and install custom aluminum Door and Window Canopies as shown on drawings and specifications.

1.1.B The architectural drawings show the general dimensions and profile of the Protective Covers.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

1.2.A Submit product specifications and installation instructions from the manufacturer of the Canopies.

1.2.B Submit shop drawings for approval by architect prior to fabrication of Canopies.

1.2.C The shop drawings shall include plans, elevations, sections, and details showing profiles, angles, and spacing of the blades, the sun cutoff angle, and spacing of the frame supports. Indicate anchorage details and locations.

1.2.D Submit two finished samples of each of the materials to be used in each Canopy.

1.2.E Provide written warranty to the owner that all Canopies will be free of defective materials and workmanship for a period of one year from the date of installation.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.A Single subcontract responsibility: Subcontract the work to a single firm that has had no less than five (5) years of experience in the design and manufacturing of the work specified.

1.3.B Performance requirements: Design Canopies according to local building code and requirements for snow and wind loading. Provide signed and sealed engineering drawings by a Professional Engineer registered in the sate where the project is located.

1.3.C Door Canopies shall be installed by manufacturer. Outsourcing installation to a third party subcontractor is not acceptable.

1.3.D Canopy systems, including material and workmanship, shall be warranted from defects for a period of one year from substantial completion of installation.

1.4 POJECT CONDITIONS

1.4.A Ensure fit by performing field measurements before fabrication. Shop drawings will record the actual measurements.
1.4.B Coordinate fabrication schedule with general contractor to avoid constructions delays.

2.0 **PART 2 – PRODUCT**

2.1 Manufacturer:

Bowman Distributing Company
2100 J B Drive
San Benito, TX 78586
Ph. 956-361-5200
Fax. 956-361-5204

2.2 MATERIALS

2.2.A Columns, decking, fascia and beams fabricated from extruded aluminum ASTM B221, Alloy 6063, 6061 or 6005 – T6 temper.
2.2.B Roll-formed deck is not acceptable.
2.2.C Fasteners shall be aluminum or 300 series stainless steel.
2.2.D Anchors and inserts shall be of non-ferrous metal or hot dip galvanized steel as required for corrosion resistance. Use stainless steel or lead expansion bolt devices for drill-in place anchors.
2.2.E Decking shall be 0.080” extruded aluminum interlocking bottom and top
2.2.F Fascia shall be a minimum of .080 in. wall thickness

2.3 FABRICATION

2.3.A Preassemble Canopy assemblies in factory to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations.
2.3.B Include supports, anchorage, fasteners, and accessories required for complete assembly
2.3.C Provide an all welded extruded aluminum system, complete with concealed drainage. Non-welded systems are unacceptable.

2.4 FINISH

2.4.A Comply with NAAMM “Metal Finishes Manual” for finish designations and application recommendations, except as otherwise indicated.
2.4.B Protect finish on exposed surfaces prior to shipping.

2.4.C Anodize finish:

Clear: AA-M12C22A31, 215-R1, Architectural Class I
Color: AA-M12C22A31, light bronze, medium bronze, dark bronze, and black, Architectural Class I.
Clear: AA-M12C22A41, 204-R1, Architectural ClassII
Color: AA-M12C22A41, light bronze, medium bronze, dark bronze, and black, Architectural Class II.

2.5 INSTALLATION

2.5.A Install according to manufacturers instructions and recommendations.
2.5.B Verify dimension of supporting structure at the
2.5.C Anchor Canopies to building as indicated in Architectural drawings and shop drawings.
2.5.D Install units plumb and level.
2.5.E Use concealed anchors where possible.
2.5.F Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.

2.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

2.6.A Clean exposed surfaces of Canopies to remove soil and fingerprints resulting from installation process.
2.6.B Clean with water and a mild dishwashing soap not harmful to finishes. Rinse thoroughly and dry.
2.6.C Clean and touch up minor abrasions in finish with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of the factory applied finish coating.

SECTION 10800 TOILET ACCESSORIES

PART 1 GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

Extent of each type of toilet accessory is indicated on drawings and schedules.
Types of toilet accessories required include the following:

Sanitary napkin disposal units.
Grab bars.
Mirrors
Shower Rods
Shower Rod Hooks
Folding Shower Seats
Napkin Dispenser
Mop and Broom Holder

QUALITY ASSURANCE:
Inserts and Anchorages: Furnish inserts and anchoring devices which must be set in concrete or built into masonry; coordinate delivery with other work to avoid delay.

Accessory Locations: Coordinate accessory locations with other work to avoid interference and to assure proper operation and servicing of accessory units.

Products: Provide products of same manufacturer for each type of accessory unit and for units exposed in same areas, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.

SUBMITTALS:
Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data and installation instructions for each toilet accessory.

Setting Drawings: Provide setting drawings, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorage devices in other work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS:

ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:
Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
Bradley Corporation

MATERIALS, GENERAL:
Stainless Steel: AISI Type 302/304, with polished No. 4 finish, 22 gage minimum, unless otherwise indicated.

Mirror Glass: FS DD G 451, Type I, Class 1, Quality q2, 1/4" thick, with silver coating, copper protective coating, and non metallic paint coating complying with FS DD M 411.
Galvanized Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 386, hot dip galvanized after fabrication.

Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit or of galvanized steel where concealed.

FABRICATION:
General: Stamped names or labels on exposed faces of toilet accessory units are not permitted, except where otherwise indicated; unobtrusive labels on surfaces not exposed to view are acceptable. Where locks are required for a particular type of toilet accessory, provide same keying throughout project. Furnish two keys for each lock.

Surface Mounted Toilet Accessories, General: Except where otherwise indicated, fabricate units with tight seams and joints, exposed edges rolled. Hang doors or access panels with continuous stainless steel piano hinge. Provide concealed anchorage wherever possible.

- **Handicap Mirror**: Equal to Bobrick model no. B-165 - 2448, Framed Mirror. Provide one unit at each handicap lavatory. See plans for locations.
- **Hand Dryer**: Hot Air Dryer (see MEP).
- **Grab Bar**: Equal to Bobrick model no. B-6806 series x 42" long, provide at each handicap water closet location.
- **Grab Bar**; Equal to Bobrick model no. B-6806 series x 36" long**,** provide at each handicap water closet location.
- **Mop & Broom Holder:** Equal to Bobrick model no. B-223X36, provide one unit at each janitorial room.
- **Partition Mounted Napkin Dispenser**: Equal to Bobrick model no. B-354
- **Wall Mounted Napkin Dispenser**: Equal to Bobrick model no. B-353
- **Soap Dispenser:** (By Owner – Contractor Installed)
- **Toilet Paper Dispenser**: (By Owner – Contractor Installed)
- **Paper Towel Dispenser** (By Owner – Contractor Installed)
- **Towel Bar 18":** Equal to Bobrick model no. B-530. See plans for locations.
- **Vinyl Shower Curtains:** Equal to Bobrick model no. 204-2 and 204-3. See plans for locations.
- **Shower Rod 36":** Equal to Bobrick model no. B-6047. See Plans for locations.
- **Shower Rod 60":** Equal to Bobrick model no. B-6047. See Plans for locations.
- **Shower Hooks:** Equal to Bobrick model no. B204-1. See plans for locations.
- **Surface-Mtd Utility Hook**: Equal to Bobrick model no. B-670
- **Solid Phenolic Folding Shower Seat**: Equal to Bobrick model no. B-5181
- **Recessed Soap Dish:** Equal to Bobrick model no. B-4380. See plans for locations.
- **Continuous Grab Bar (Shower) –** 30" x 60" x 30"**,** 1-1/2" O.D. G.B, peened, with snap on flanges**.** (Field Verify Dimensions)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

INSTALLATION:
Install toilet accessory units in accordance with manufacturers' instructions, using fasteners which are appropriate to substrate and recommended by manufacturer of unit. Install units plumb and level, firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated. General Contractor to provide for solid 2x wood blocking at toilet accessories mounted at gypsum drywall partitons.

ADJUSTING AND CLEANING:
Adjust toilet accessories for proper operation and verify that mechanisms function

smoothly.

Clean and polish all exposed surfaces after removing protective coatings.

END OF SECTION 10800

SECTION 11131- PROJECTION SCREENS

PART 1 - GENERAL

RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

Projection Screens required for this work are scheduled on the Plans.
All other screens are to be included in the Contractors base bid.

QUALITY ASSURANCE:

For installation use only personnel who are skilled in the work required.

SUBMITTALS:

Installation Methods: Submit two copies of manufacturer's recommended installation method showing all requirements for blocking and backing.

PRODUCT HANDLING:

Protection:

Project Projection Screens before, during and after installation.

Protect installed work of other trades.

Replacement: In event of damage, make necessary replacements.

PROJECTION SCREENS:

Model: “Professional Electrol”. By Dal-Lite Screen Company

Type: Electrically operated, retractable, large size projection screen with rigid metal roller housing motor; Professional Electrol Screen as manufactured by Da-Lite Screen Company, Inc.

Size: 162" x 260" to be located in the Gymnasium.

Other Acceptable Manufacturers:	Draper	equal model type
	Polyvision	equal model type
	Platinum Visual System	equal model type

PART 3 - EXECUTION

Surface Conditions:

Inspection:
Inspect installed work of other trades and verify that such work is complete to point

where this work may commence.

Verify that installation may be made in accordance with approved manufacturer's instructions.

Discrepancies:
In event of discrepancy, notify Architect.

Do not proceed with installation until discrepancies have been resolved.

Installation:
Install where indicated, anchoring all components firmly in place in complete accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION 11131

SECTION 11480 - RECREATIONAL EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Provide sports equipment where shown on drawings, as specified herein, and as needed for a complete and proper installation.
B. Related;
1. Documents affecting work of this section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Section in Division 1 of these specifications.

1.2 SUBMITTALS:

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01340.
B. Product data; within 35 calendar days after Contractor has received the Owners Notice to Proceed, submit the following;

1. Materials list of items proposed to be provided under this section;
2. Manufacturer's specifications and other data needed to prove compliance with the specified requirements.
3. Dimensioned drawings as needed to depict the space required for these items, and their interface with the work of other trades.
4. Manufacturer's recommended installation procedures which, when approved by the Architect, will become the procedures used on the work.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with all specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work in this section.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01605.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.0. MANUFACTURES

Basis of Design: Porter Sports Equipment
OR PSS Performance Sports Systems (Game Court Services)

Substitutions: Submit proposed substitutions in writing to Architect no less than 10 days before bids are due. Submit samples and a side by side product data comparison to demonstrate acceptability of proposed substitution. Acceptance will be by Addendum only.

2.1. BACKSTOPS AND GOALS

A. At Gymnasium, provide (4) Porter #917 Forward Fold backstops (with height adjusters); (6) #208-000 Center strut rectangular Backboard official size 72" x 42" x ½"; (6) #22302 Power Flex Goals; Provide optional padding kit to fit backboards. Refer to floor plan for locations of these units. Main court backstops are to be mounted at 10'-0" a.f.f. All units to have height adjuster.

B. At Gymnasium, provide (8) Porter #917 Side Fold backstops (with height adjusters); (6) #208-000 Center strut rectangular Backboard official size 72" x 42" x ½"; (6) #22302 Power Flex Goals; Provide optional padding kit to fit backboards. Refer to floor plan for locations of these units. Main court backstops are to be mounted at 10'-0" a.f.f. All units to have height adjuster.

C. Provide (2) GARED® PRO S 9616WL: SPRING BALANCED COMPETITION PORTABLE BASKETBALL SYSTEM with 8'-0" extension. Provide LXP4200 rectangular Backboard official size 72" x 42" x ½", backboard padding kit, 3500 breakaway goals, ballast and adjustable floorpads. Provide units with shot clock and supports (refer to MEP specifications for additional information.

2.2 WALL PADDING"B

A. Provide "Porter" #00560-1 Standard Vinyl-covered wall padding. Panels are to be constructed of fibers as ascribed for 2" bonded foam (firm). Covers shall be cemented to 3/8" thick high density oriented strand backing board and covered with a 15 oz. non-tear vinyl laminated material. Wall pads are to be 5'-10" high.

B. Flame retardant shall meet the California State Fire Marshall standards according to method 59030, comparable to the standards of UL-214 and IX NFPA-701.

C. Colors as selected by Architects office.

D. Supplier must field verify column conditions for proper mounting of padding to all exposed sides, that are exposed inside the playing area.

E. Note: Provide pads at back of bleachers and at plan north, south, east and west walls of gymnasium area.

2.3 VOLLEY BALL EQUIPMENT

A. Pair - Senoh Volleyball DE 1210 Aluminum Uprights with DE 2000 pads at each schematic courts (3 courts).

B. Pair - Senoh Volleyball DE1015 SP1 Uprights with DE 2000 padding for uprights and DL0520 Referee Stand.

C. Three (3) DE 8003 Net with DE9421 antennae.

D. Provide floor sleeves for all courts for new construction, KD0131 at (6) locations.

E. Transport Cart for eight (8) uprights

2.4 SCOREBOARD

QUANTITY (1) One – SPECTRUM Model 5243-C3 Basketball Scoreboard with Spectralite L.E.D. advanced light technology finished in *School Colors* with *Team Name* in place of HOME and *School Mascot* on face of each scoreboard.

Includes ‘Smart Power’ Power Supplies.

QUANTITY (1) One – SPECTRUM Model 5105-C2 Basketball Scoreboard with Spectralite L.E.D. advanced light technology finished in *School Colors* with *Team Name* in place of HOME on face of each scoreboard. Includes ‘Smart Power’ Power Supplies.

Alternate #1 - QUANTITY (1) One – Nevco Model 2700 center hung Basketball Scoreboard with Spectralite L.E.D. advanced light technology finished in *School Colors* with *Team Name* in place of HOME on face of each scoreboard. Includes ‘Smart Power’ Power Supplies.

QUANTITY (2) Two – MultiSport Radio Control Systems

PART 3 - EXECUTION

INSTALLATION:

Install equipment where shown on drawings and comply with manufacturer's instructions and final shop drawings. Provide accessories indicated and anchors, inserts, and other items required for installation of units and attachment of adjoining construction.

ADJUSTMENT AND CLEANING

Upon completion of installation, including work of other trades, lubricate, test and adjust equipment to operate easily and in compliance with manufacturer's specifications.

Clean installed bleacher units on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces. Touch-up shop applied finishes restoring damaged or soiled area.

END OF SECTION 11480

SECTION 12760 – TELESCOPIC BLEACHERS SPECIFICATION

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Telescoping Gym Seating includes, either manually or electrically operated systems of multiple-tiered seating rows comprising of seat, deck components, understructure that permits closing without requiring dismantling, into a nested configuration for storing or for moving purposes.
   1. Typical applications include the following:
      a. Reverse Fold Telescoping Gym Seats.

Related Sections:

1. Division 9 finishes sections for adequate floor & wall construction for operation of Telescoping Gym Seats. Flooring shall be level and rear wall plumb within 1/8" [3mm] in 8'-0 [2438mm]. Maximum bleacher force on the floor, of a 27'-00" [7772] section, shall be a static point load of less than 300 psi [2.068 N/mm^2].
2. Division 16 Electrical sections for electrical wiring and connections for electrically operated Telescoping Gym Seats.

MANUFACTURER'S SYSTEM ENGINEERING DESCRIPTION

A. Structural Performance: Engineer, fabricate and install telescopic gym seating systems to the following structural loads without exceeding allowable design working stresses of materials involved, including anchors and connections. Apply each load to produce maximum stress in each respective component of each gym seat unit.
   1. Design Loads: Comply with ICC 300 – 2012 Edition
B. Manufacturer's System Design Criteria:
   1. Gymnasium seat assembly; Design to support and resist, in addition to it's own weight, the following forces:
      a. Live load of 120 lbs per linear foot [162.69 N/m] on seats and decking
      b. Uniformly distributed live load of not less than 100 lbs per sq. ft. [135.58N/m] of gross horizontal projection.
      c. Parallel sway load of 24 lbs. [32.53 N/m] per linear foot of row combined with (b.) above
      d. Perpendicular sway load of 10 lbs. [13.56 N-m] per linear foot of row combined with (b.) above
   2. Hand Railings, Posts and Supports: Engineered to withstand the following forces applied separately:
      a. Concentrated load of 200 lbs. [90.72 kg] applied at any point and in any direction.
      b. Uniform load of 50 lbs. per foot [.344 N/mm^2] applied in any direction.
   3. Guard Railings, Post and Supports: Engineered to withstand the following forces applied separately:
      a. Concentrated load of 200 lbs. [90.72 kg] applied at any point and in any direction along top rail.
      b. Uniform load of 50 lbs. per foot [.344 N/mm^2] applied horizontally at top rail and a simultaneous uniform load of 100 lbs. per foot [.689 N/mm^2] applied vertically downward.
   4. Member Sizes and Connections: Design criteria (current edition) of the following shall be the basis for calculation of member sizes and connections:
      a. AISC: Manual of Steel Construction
      b. AISI: Specification for Design of Cold Formed Steel Structural Members
      c. AA: Specification for Aluminum Structures
      d. NFOPA: National Design Guide For Wood Construction.

1.04 **SUBMITTIALS**

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Certification of insurance coverage and manufacturing experience of manufacturer, and copy of a telescopic load test to all loads described in 1.03 above, observed by a qualified independent testing laboratory, and certified by a registered professional structural engineer verifying the integrity of the manufacturer's geometry design and base structural assumptions.

B. Installer Qualifications: Installer qualifications indicating capability, experience, and official Certification Card issued by manufacturer of telescopic seating.
C. Engineer Qualifications: Certification by a professional engineer registered in the state of manufacturer that the equipment to be supplied meets or exceeds the design criteria of this specification.
D. Operating/Maintenance Manuals: Provide to Owner maintenance manuals. Demonstrate operating procedures, recommended maintenance and inspection program.
E. Warranty: Manufacturers standard warranty documents.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Coordinate actual dimensions of construction affecting telescoping bleachers installation by accurate field measurements before fabrication. Show recorded measurements on final shop drawings. Coordinate field measurements and fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delay of Work.

1.06 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Product Warranty: Submit manufacturer's standard warranty form for telescoping bleachers. This warranty is in addition to, and not a limitation of other rights Owner may have under Contract Documents.
   1. Warranty Period: Five years from Date of Acceptance.
   2. Beneficiary: Issue warranty in legal name of project Owner.
   3. Warranty Acceptance: Owner is sole authority who will determine acceptance of warranty documents.

1.07 MAINTENANCE AND OPERATION

A. Instructions: Both operation and maintenance shall be transmitted to the Owner by the manufacturer of the seating or his representative.
B. Service: Maintenance and operation of the seating system shall be the responsibility of the Owner or his duly authorized representative, and shall include the following:
   1. Operation of the Seating System shall be supervised by responsible personnel who will assure that the operation is in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
   2. Only attachments specifically approved by the manufacturer for the specific installation shall be attached to the seating.
   3. An annual inspection and required maintenance of each seating system shall be performed to assure safe conditions. At least biannually the inspection shall be performed by a professional engineer or factory qualified service personnel.

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturer: Hussey Seating Company, U.S.A. or equal, subject to prior approval and strict compliance with these specifications.

Model: Basis of design is Equal to: MAXAM26 Series Telescopic Gym Seats, row spacing 26 inches [660].

   a. MAXAM26 Series Telescopic Gym Seats, Rise Spacing: 9 5/8” [244],
   b. Aisle Type: Foot level aisles, front steps, intermediate aisle steps.
   c. Seat Type:10” Courtside Collection
      Seat color finish: manufacturers 15 standard for Courtside Collection
   d. Rail Type: Self-storing end rail, rear rails, auto rotating aisle rails.
      (1) Rail color finish Standard black.
   e. Operation: Rol-EZE NON-FRICTION POWER SYSTEM

A. Product Description/Criteria
   a. Bank Length: 110’-00” with End Rails

b. Aisle Widths: 06’-00”
c. Number of Tiers:19
d. Row Spacing(s): 26”
e. Open Dimension: 41’-02 15/16”
f. Closed Dimension: 06’-02”
g. Overall Unit Height: 19’-4 15/16”
h. Maximum Net Capacity; 2160 seats (w/Flex Row Fully Recovered):

B. Handicap Seating Provisions: Provide first tier modular recoverable Flex-rows, per requirements of (ADA) Americans with Disability Act located as indicated.

2.02 UNDERSTRUCTURE FABRICATION

A. Frame System:
   A. Wheels: Not less than 5" [127] diameter by 1 1/4" [32] with non-marring soft rubber face to protect wood and synthetic floor surfaces, with molded-in sintered iron oil-impregnated bushings to fit 3/8" [10] diameter axles secured with E-type snap rings.
   B. Lower Track: Continuous Positive Interglide System interlocks each adjacent CPI unit using an integral, continuous, anti-drift feature and through-bolted guide at front to prevent separation and misalignment. CPI units at end sections of powered banks and manual sections shall contain a Low Profile Posi-Lock LX to lock each row in open position and allow unlocking automatically. Provide adjustable stops to allow field adjustment of row spacings.
   C. Slant Columns: High tensile steel, tubular shape.
   D. Sway Bracing: High tensile steel members through-bolted to columns.
   E. Deck Stabilizer: High tensile steel member through-bolted to nose and riser at three locations per section. Interlocks with adjacent stabilizer on upper tier using low-friction nylon roller to prevent separation and misalignment. Incorporates multiple stops to allow field adjustment of row spacings.
   F. Deck Support: Securely captures front and rear edge of decking at rear edge of nose beam and lower edge of riser beam for entire length of section.
B. Deck System:
   A. Section Lengths: Each bank shall contain sections not to exceed 27’-00” in length with a minimum of two supporting frames per row, each section.
   B. Nose beam and Rear Riser beam: Nose beam shall be continuously roll-formed closed tubular shape of ASTM A653 grade 40, Riser beam shall be continuously roll-formed of ASTM A653 grade 40. Nose and Riser beam shall be designed with no steel edges exposed to spectator after product assembly.
   C. Attachment: Through-Bolted fore/aft to deck stabilizers, and frame cantilevers.
   D. Decking: 5/8" [16], AC grade clear-top-coated tongue and groove Southern Yellow Pine interior type with exterior glue, 5-ply, all plies with plugged cross-bands, produced in accordance with National Bureau of Standards PS-1-97. Plywood shall be cut and installed with top, center and bottom ply grain-oriented from front of deck to rear of deck (nose beam to riser beam). Adjacent pieces shall be locked together with tongue and groove joint from front to rear of deck. Longest unsupported span: MAXAM 26, 21 ½” [546].
   E. Deck End Overhang: Not to exceed frame support by more than 5'-11" [1804].

2.03 SEAT FABRICATION

A. CourtSide XC10 Seat Module
   a. XC10 – 10” [254] Comfort Profile
      (1) 10” [254] depth continuous comfort curve style bench seat module
      (2) Ergonomically contoured forward “waterfall” edge for enhanced spectator comfort and minimization of sensitive pressure point area, regardless of leg positioning.
      (3) Fore & Aft contoured seat surface for uniform support and minimize high pressure points under the buttocks.
      (4) Seat height ranges from deck to t/o seat range from 16-1/8” [410] to 18-1/8” [460]
   b. Integrally molded end caps at aisle end locations for clean finished appearance.
   c. Integrally molded recess pockets to accept seat number and row letters.
   d. Integrally molded rear closure panel at back of seat to allow for “continuous clean sweep” of debris at deck level and minimized visibility of structural ribbing.
   e. Seat Attachment: Each polymer seat module shall be securely anchored by a 12 ga steel clamp bracket that provides steel-to-steel, through bolted attachment to the front nose beam of the

bleacher. Attachment eliminates fore / aft movement of the seat module on the nose beam.

2.04 SHOP FINISHES

A. Understructure: For rust resistance, steel understructure shall be finished on all surfaces with black "Dura-Coat" enamel. Understructure finish shall contain a silicone additive to improve scratch resistance of finish.
B. Wear Surfaces: Surface subject to normal wear by spectators shall have a finish that does not wear to show different color underneath:
    A. Steel nosing and rear risers shall be pre-galvanized with a minimum spangle of G-60 zinc plating.
    B. Decking shall have use-surfaces to receive both a sealer coat and wear-resistant high gloss clear urethane finish.
    C. Injection Molded Courtside seats shall be per manufacturer standard 15 colors.
C. Railings: Steel railings shall be finished with powder-coated semi - gloss black.

2.05 ELECTRICAL OPERATION

ROL-EZE Non-Friction Power

Default operation shall be with a removable pendant control unit which plugs into seating bank for tethered operator management of stop, start, forward, and reverse control of the power operation.

Furnish and install Rol-Eze electric power system as manufactured by Specialty Supply & Installation LLC, P. O. Box 1047, Conroe, TX 77305. The power system is to be a NON-FRICTION type, which will be contained in the back row of gym seat uprights and must be adaptable to the specified brand of bleacher. Friction systems are not acceptable. All power supply from source to connection point, including but not limited to, conduit, wiring, breaker box, and final hook-up to motors, switches, etc. to be provided by others.

A. Motors & Frames:
    Electric motors as required are to be NEMA B design, totally enclosed fan-cooled worm gear motor, 2 hp, 3 phase, 208/230 volts, 1750/35 RPM with 50 to 1 gear ration power drive transmission. Frame for motor is to be made of 2x2x3/16" steel angle with slotted bolt holes three times in length the diameter of the bolt used to mount the 1 1/4" diameter pillow blocks, (2 required), to frame. The mount for motor will have at least 4" of adjustment. Motor to be mounted horizontal at bottom of frame with minimum of 6" of clearance.
B. Movers:
    Mover system to be drum type chain driven. Drum and frame to be all welded six sided unit consisting of 3x3x1/4" steel angle mounted to a 1 1/4" center shaft. Brackets used for mounting angles to shaft are to be 2x3/16" flat bar with a #60A84 sprocket mounted to one end. The center shaft at each end by 1 1/4" pillow block with 1/2x1" slotted holes for adjustment. Frames to support drum unit to be made of 2x2x3/16" angle welded to form to rectangular sides that measure 20x16" with drum resting between, mounted on top of center support bracket which is to be located a minimum of 12" off the floor. Drum units are to develop required 1150 torque horsepower, which will be accomplished by use of sprockets and gear boxes as specified.
C. Drive Chains:
    The push/pull drive chains are to be fabricated of C channel 4x12x1/4". Each 12" link to have 4x4x3/16" butt hinge and 2 1/2x2 1/2x1/4" angle stop welded to a 2 1/2x3/16" flat strip welded on front of angle stop to relieve stress from hinges. Wheels on bottom of links to be preassembled casters with wheel size to be a minimum of 7/8" wide x 2" tall. Caster flange to be welded to bottom of links.
D. Drive Shafts:
    Drive shafts are to be continuous 1 1/4" cold rolled steel with #60B13 tooth sprockets welded to each end in line with main drum sprocket and attached together with #60 chain. At each place where there is a motor, weld a #D60B24 double tooth sprocket to the shaft in line with the motor sprocket. All sprockets and shaft couplers are to be continuous welded on each side.
E. Limit Switches:
    Limit switches are to be fully enclosed with two operating cams. Limits are to be adjusted to stop bleachers automatically in the extended and closed positions. Limit switches are to be attached to the drive shaft by means of a #35B25 tooth sprocket.

2.06 ACCESSORIES

A. Flex-Row: Provide first row modular recoverable seating units to be utilized by persons in wheelchairs and able-bodied persons. Each Flex-Row unit shall have an unlock handle for easy deployment if wheelchair

or team seating access is needed. Unlock handle shall lock the bleacher seats into position when fully opened.
   A. Provide a black full-surround steel skirting with no more than ¾" floor clearance for safety and improved aesthetics.
   B. Provide a black injection molded end cap for the nose beam for safety and improved aesthetics.
   C. Provide a mechanical positive lock when the Flex-Row system is in the open and used position.
   D. Flex-Row modular units are designed to achieve ADA requirements and facility specific requirements. Flex-Row units are available in modular units from 2 to 7 seats wide as well as full section widths.

B. Front Aisle Steps: Provide at each vertical aisle location front aisle step. Front steps shall engage with front row to prevent accidental separation or movement. Steps shall be fitted with four non-skid rubber feet each 1/2" [13] in diameter. Blow molded end caps shall have full radius on all four edges. Quantity and location as indicated.
C. Non-Slip Tread: Provide at front edge of each aisle location an adhesive-backed abrasive non-slip tread surface.
D. Foot Level Aisles: Provide deck level full width vertical aisles located as indicated.
E. Intermediate Aisle Steps: Intermediate aisle steps shall be of boxed fully enclosed type construction. Blow molded end caps shall have full radius on all four edges. Step shall have adhesive-backed abrasive non-slip tread surface. Quantity and location as indicated.
F. Intermediate Automatic Rotating Aisle Handrails: Provide single pedestal mount handrails 34" [864] high with terminating mid rail. Permanently attached handrail shall rotate in a permanently mounted socket for rail storage. Rail shall automatically rotate, lock in the use position, unlock and rotate back to the stowed position as the gym seats open and close. Ends of the handrail shall return to the post, and not extend away from it. Rails having openings to avoid interference with closed decks are not acceptable.
G. Rear Panel: Provide required seating units with full width rear closure panels. Panels shall extend vertically up to 8'-0" [2438] high to within 1 1/2" [38] of floor. Paneling to be 5/8" [16] Southern Pine Plywood.
H. Self-Storing End Rails: Provide steel self-storing 42" [1066] high above seat, end rail with tubular supports and intermediate members designed with 4" [102] sphere passage requirements.
I. The Xtreme Graphic Logo is comprised of decorative artwork and/or text that has been permanently bonded to the front vertical surface of the bleacher seat modules. The artwork is ³tiled², a process whereby a single large graphic is segmented and applied in separate parts to individual seat modules, which, when viewed together as a whole become a unified piece of artwork, similar to a mosaic. The graphics are printed as full color CMYK pigmented resin and adhesive layer onto a 100UM polyester clear glossy release film (transfer sheet). The application process uses a combination of heat and pressure to activate the adhesive and permanently bond the resin to the HDPE seat module. Once applied, the graphic cannot be removed from the seat module without damaging or destroying the seat module surface. Customer must provide vector-based digital artwork, and approved layout indicating tiled application to individual seat modules to be provided with bid.

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Verify area to receive telescoping gym seats are free of impediments interfering with installation and condition of installation substrates are acceptable to receive telescoping gym seats in accordance with telescoping gym seats manufacturer's recommendations. Do not commence installation until conditions are satisfactory.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Manufacturer's Recommendations: Comply with telescoping gym seats manufacturer's recommendations for product installation requirements.

B. General: Manufacturer's Certified Installers to install telescoping gym seats in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and final shop drawings. Provide accessories, anchors, fasteners, inserts and other items for installation of telescoping gym seats and for permanent attachment to adjoining construction.

END OF SECTION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

MEP SPECIFICATIONS FOR GYMNASIUM FACILITY AT HANNA ECHS, BROWNSVILLE ISD, BROWNSVILLE, TX

June 12, 2019

DIVISION 23: HEATING, VENTILATION, AND AIR-CONDITIONING

DIVISION 26: ELECTRICAL

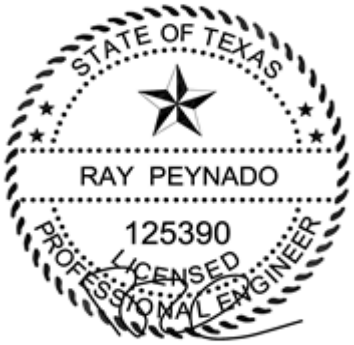
DRAWINGS

MECHANICAL:

ELECTRICAL:

PLUMBING:

FIRE SUPPRESSION:



Date: 06-12-2019

SECTION 210517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.

C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

D. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
2. Zurn Industries, LLC.

B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. HOLDRITE.

B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.

1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.

1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.

5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade: Cast-iron wall sleeves.

2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
   a. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
   a. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

4. Concrete Slabs above Grade: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves

5. Interior Partitions: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves

END OF SECTION 210517

SECTION 210518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.
2. Floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
b. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.
f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.

C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 210518

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Cover system for sprinkler piping.
3. Specialty valves.
4. Sprinklers.
5. Alarm devices.
6. Manual control stations.
7. Control panels.
8. Pressure gages.

B. Verify fire line flow and pressure test data with Civil Engineer. If available flow and pressure are not adequate, provide a fire pump as required.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 211119 "Fire Department Connections" for exposed-, flush-, and yard-type fire department connections.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Standard Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure higher than standard 175 psig.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Domestic water piping.
2. Compressed air piping.
3. HVAC hydronic piping.
4. Ductwork.
5. Plumbing systems.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling include the following:

    a. Lighting fixtures.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.

B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and professional engineer.

C. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.

D. Welding certificates.

E. Fire-hydrant flow test report.

F. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."

G. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.

a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional certified at NICET Level 3 or higher.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect no fewer than 7 days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Architect's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:

1. NFPA 13.
2. NFPA 13R.

B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.

C. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design wet-pipe sprinkler systems.

1. Coordinate fire-hydrant flow test records with Architect and Civil Engineer.

2. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

a. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
b. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
1) Building Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
2) Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.

3) General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
4) Libraries except Stack Areas: Light Hazard.
5) Library Stack Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
6) Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
7) Office and Public Areas: Light Hazard.
8) Classrooms: Light Hazard.

3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
   a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
   b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
   c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
   d. Special Occupancy Hazard: As determined by authorities having jurisdiction.

4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: According to UL listing.
5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
   a. Office Spaces: 120 sq. ft.
   b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft.
   c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
   d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
   e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.

6. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: According to NFPA 13 unless otherwise indicated:
   a. Light-Hazard Occupancies: 100 gpm for 30 minutes.
   b. Ordinary-Hazard Occupancies: 250 gpm for 60 to 90 minutes.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Standard-Weight, Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

B. Schedule 30, Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M; ASTM A 795/A 795M, Type E; or ASME B36.10M wrought steel, with wall thickness not less than Schedule 30 and not more than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

C. Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

D. Galvanized- and Uncoated-Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865/A 865M, threaded.

E. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.

F. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.

G. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.

H. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M and ASME B16.9.

1. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

I. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Anvil International.
b. Corcoran Piping System Co.
c. Shurjoint Piping Products.
d. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
e. Victaulic Company.

2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.

3. Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

J. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings: UL 213, FM Global-approved, 175-psig pressure rating with steel housing, rubber O-rings, and pipe stop; for use with fitting manufacturers' pressure-seal tools.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

a. Victaulic Company.

2.3 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

B. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

C. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.4 LISTED FIRE-PROTECTION VALVES

A. General Requirements:

1. Valves shall be UL listed or FM approved.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating for Standard-Pressure Piping: 175 psig.

B. Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers:

a. Anvil International, Inc.
b. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL 1091 except with ball instead of disc.
3. Valves NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
4. Valves NPS 2 and NPS 2-1/2: Bronze body with threaded ends or ductile-iron body with grooved ends.
5. Valves NPS 3: Ductile-iron body with grooved ends.

C. Bronze Butterfly Valves:
1. Manufacturers:

   a. Fivalco Inc.
   b. Global Safety Products, Inc.
   c. Milwaukee Valve Company.

2. Standard: UL 1091.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
4. Body Material: Bronze.
5. End Connections: Threaded.

D. Iron Butterfly Valves:
1. Manufacturers:

   a. Anvil International, Inc.
   b. Fivalco Inc.
   c. Global Safety Products, Inc.
   d. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
   e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
   f. NIBCO INC.
   g. Pratt, Henry Company.
   h. Shurjoint Piping Products.
   i. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   j. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL 1091.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
4. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
5. Style: wafer.
6. End Connections: Grooved.

E. Check Valves:
1. Manufacturers:

   a. AFAC Inc.
   b. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
   c. Anvil International, Inc.
   d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
   e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
   f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
   g. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
   h. Fivalco Inc.
   i. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
   j. Groeniger & Company.

k. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
l. Matco-Norca.
m. Metraflex, Inc.
n. Milwaukee Valve Company.
o. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
p. NIBCO INC.
q. Potter Roemer.
r. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
s. Shurjoint Piping Products.
t. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
u. United Brass Works, Inc.
v. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
w. Victaulic Company.
x. Viking Corporation.
y. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Standard: UL 312.
3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
4. Type: Swing check.
5. Body Material: Cast iron.
6. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

F. Bronze OS&Y Gate Valves:
1. Manufacturers:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
d. NIBCO INC.
e. United Brass Works, Inc.

2. Standard: UL 262.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
4. Body Material: Bronze.
5. End Connections: Threaded.

G. Iron OS&Y Gate Valves:
1. Manufacturers:

a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
b. American Valve, Inc.
c. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
g. Hammond Valve.
h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
i. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
j. NIBCO INC.
k. Shurjoint Piping Products.
l. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.

m. United Brass Works, Inc.
n. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Standard: UL 262.
3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

H. Indicating-Type Butterfly Valves:
1. Manufacturers:

a. Anvil International, Inc.
b. Fivalco Inc.
c. Global Safety Products, Inc.
d. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
f. NIBCO INC.
g. Shurjoint Piping Products.
h. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
i. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL 1091.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller:

a. Valve Type: Ball or butterfly.
b. Body Material: Bronze.
c. End Connections: Threaded.

5. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

a. Valve Type: Butterfly.
b. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
c. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or wafer.

6. Valve Operation: Integral electrical, 115-V ac, prewired, single-circuit, supervisory switch indicating device.

I. NRS Gate Valves:
1. Manufacturers:

a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
b. American Valve, Inc.
c. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
e. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
f. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
g. NIBCO INC.
h. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.

2. Standard: UL 262.

3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum
4. Body Material: Cast iron with indicator post flange.
5. Stem: Nonrising.
6. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

J. Indicator Posts:
1. Manufacturers:

a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
b. American Valve, Inc.
c. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
e. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
f. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
g. NIBCO INC.
h. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.

2. Standard: UL 789.
3. Type: Horizontal for wall mounting.
4. Body Material: Cast iron with extension rod and locking device.
5. Operation: Hand wheel.

2.5 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

A. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.

2.6 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."

B. Pressure Rating:

1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.

C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.

D. Size: Same as connected piping.

E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

F. Alarm Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.

b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
d. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL 193.

3. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
4. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, retarding chamber, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
5. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping.
6. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain with check valve to main drain piping.
7. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

G. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.

2. Standard: UL 1726.

3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
5. Size: NPS 3/4.
6. End Connections: Threaded.

2.7 HOSE CONNECTIONS

A. Manufacturers:

1. AFAC Inc.
2. Central Sprinkler Corp.
3. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
4. Fire-End and Croker Corp.
5. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
6. GMR International Equipment Corporation.
7. Grinnell Fire Protection.
8. Guardian Fire Equipment Incorporated.
9. McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
10. Mueller Company.
11. Potter-Roemer; Fire-Protection Div.
12. United Brass Works, Inc.

B. Description: UL 668, brass or bronze, 300-psig minimum pressure rating, hose valve for connecting fire hose. Include **angle or gate** pattern design; female NPS inlet and male hose outlet; and lugged cap, gasket, and chain. Include NPS 1-1/2 or NPS 2-1/2 as indicated, and hose valve threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire department threads.

1. Valve Operation: Nonadjustable type, unless pressure-regulating type is indicated.
2. Finish: Rough chrome-plated.

2.8 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Exposed-Type, Fire-Department Connection:
1. Manufacturers:

a. AFAC Inc.
b. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
c. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
d. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
e. GMR International Equipment Corporation.
f. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
g. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
h. Wilson & Cousins Inc.

2. Standard: UL 405.
3. Type: Exposed, projecting, for wall mounting.
4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
5. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
6. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
7. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
8. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, wall type.
9. Outlet: Back, with pipe threads.
10. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE, or AUTO SPKR."
11. Finish: Rough brass or bronze.

B. Flush-Type, Fire-Department Connection:
1. Manufacturers:

a. AFAC Inc.
b. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
c. GMR International Equipment Corporation.
d. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
e. Potter Roemer.

2. Standard: UL 405.
3. Type: Flush, for wall mounting.
4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
5. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
6. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
7. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
8. Escutcheon Plate: Rectangular, brass, wall type.
9. Outlet: With pipe threads.
10. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE or AUTO SPKR."

11. Finish: Polished chrome plated.

C. Yard-Type, Fire-Department Connection:
1. Manufacturers:

a. AFAC Inc.
b. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
c. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
d. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
e. GMR International Equipment Corporation.
f. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
g. Wilson & Cousins Inc.

2. Standard: UL 405.
3. Type: Exposed, freestanding.
4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
5. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
6. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
7. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
8. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, floor type.
9. Outlet: Bottom, with pipe threads.
10. Sleeve: Brass.
11. Sleeve Height: 18 inches.
12. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE or AUTO SPKR."
13. Finish, Including Sleeve: Rough brass or bronze.

2.9 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Branch Outlet Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Anvil International.
b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
d. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL 213.

3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
5. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
6. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
7. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
8. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
   b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
   c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   d. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."

3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.

C. Branch Line Testers:

1. Standard: UL 199.

2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body Material: Brass.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet: Threaded.
6. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
7. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.

D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
   b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   c. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."

3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

   a. Corcoran Piping System Co.

2. Standard: UL 1474.

3. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Length: Adjustable.
7. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

F. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
   b. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL 1474.

3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
4. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

2.10 SPRINKLERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
2. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
3. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
4. Victaulic Company.

B. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."

C. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175-psig maximum.

D. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.

E. Pressure Rating for High-Pressure Automatic Sprinklers: 250-psig minimum.

F. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:

1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: UL 1767.
2. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
3. Residential Applications: UL 1626.
4. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.

G. Open Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element Removed: UL 199.

H. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated, bronze and painted. Coordinate with Architect.

I. Special Coatings: Wax, and corrosion-resistant paint. Coordinate with Architect.

J. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.

1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, two piece, with 1-inch vertical adjustment.
2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.

K. Sprinkler Guards:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
   b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   c. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL 199.

3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.11 ALARM DEVICES

A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
   b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   c. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL 753.

3. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.
4. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.
5. Size: 8-1/2-inches diameter.
6. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.
7. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
8. Outlet: NPS 1 drain connection.

C. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.
b. Notifier.
c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.

2. Standard: UL 464.

3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
4. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.
5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

D. Water-Flow Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
b. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.

2. Standard: UL 346.

3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
5. Type: Paddle operated.
6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

E. Pressure Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.

2. Standard: UL 346.

3. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.

F. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.
b. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.

2. Standard: UL 346.

3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

2.12 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS

A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" for hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve.

B. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.13 CONTROL PANELS

A. Description: Single-area, two-area, or single-area cross-zoned control panel as indicated, including NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure, detector, alarm, and solenoid-valve circuitry for operation of deluge valves.

1. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" when used with thermal detectors and Class A detector circuit wiring.
2. Electrical characteristics are 120-V ac, 60 Hz, with 24-V dc rechargeable batteries.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

B. Manual Control Stations: Electric operation, metal enclosure, labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

C. Manual Control Stations: Hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

D. Panels Components:

1. Power supply.
2. Battery charger.
3. Standby batteries.
4. Field-wiring terminal strip.
5. Electrically supervised solenoid valves and polarized fire-alarm bell.
6. Lamp test facility.
7. Single-pole, double-throw auxiliary alarm contacts.
8. Rectifier.

2.14 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
2. AMETEK, Inc.
3. Ashcroft Inc.

B. Standard: UL 393.

C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.

D. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.

E. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.2 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements for exterior piping in Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for exterior piping.

B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping." Coordinate with Civil Engineer.

C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water service.

3.3 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water supply.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.

1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.

B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.

C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.

D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.

E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.

F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.

G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.

H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.

I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.

J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.

K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.

L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13. In seismic-rated areas, refer to Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."

M. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.

N. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.

O. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on sprinkler piping in areas subject to freezing.

P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.

C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.

D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

H. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain end of steel pipe into plain-end-pipe fitting. Rotate retainer lugs one-quarter turn or tighten retainer pin.

I. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join lightwall steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.

J. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.

1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.

K. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.

L. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.

M. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join Schedule 5 steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.

N. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter.

O. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.

P. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING

A. Install cover system, brackets, and cover components for sprinkler piping according to manufacturer's "Installation Manual" and NFPA 13 or NFPA 13R for supports.

3.7 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

D. Specialty Valves:

1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.

3.8 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels.

B. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

3.9 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate with AHJ and Civil Engineer to coordinate FDC type.

B. Install wall-type, fire-department connections.

C. Install freestanding, yard-type, fire-department connections in concrete slab support. Comply with requirements for concrete in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete.".
   1. Install protective pipe bollards around each fire-department connection. Comply with requirements for bollards in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications.".

D. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

3.10 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.

B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

   1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
   3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
   4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
   5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
   6. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
   7. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.

B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 CLEANING

A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.

B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

3.13 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves and pressure-maintenance pumps.

3.14 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with threaded ends, cast-iron threaded fittings, and threaded grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved joints.

B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.

C. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system shall be the following:
   1. NPS 2” and smaller: Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
   2. NPS 2-1/2 and larger: Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

D. Paint exposed piping. Coordinate with Architect.

3.15 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:

   1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
   2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Recessed sprinklers.
   3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
   4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright, pendent, dry sprinklers; and sidewall, dry sprinklers as indicated. Coordinate with Architect.
   5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage, flow-control, and quick-response sprinklers where indicated.

B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.

   1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
   2. Flush Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with painted white escutcheon.
   3. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
   4. Residential Sprinklers: Dull chrome.

5. Upright Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

C. Match finishes and paint colors with architectural elements. Request Architect for final approval on finishes

END OF SECTION 211313

SECTION 220010 – SUMMARY OF PLUMBING WORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 22 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

A. The following Summary of Work is intended as an aid to achieve an understanding of the various elements of work included in the project, and is not intended to be all-inclusive. Detailed descriptions of work and requirements are given in drawings and specifications.

B. Contract Documents were prepared for the Project by:
Ethos Engineering,
119 West Van Buren, Suite 101
Harlingen, Texas 78550
Phone Number: (956) 230-3435

C. Scope of Work: Refer to drawings for a detailed Scope of Work.

1. Provide all materials and labor associated with new fully-operational plumbing systems for the project "Gymnasium Facility at Hanna ECHS", including but not limited to the following:

a. Plumbing fixtures and appliances such as water closets, lavatories, faucets, drinking fountains, instantaneous and storage type electric domestic water heaters, floor drains, valves, fittings, hardware and specialties.
b. Potable water distribution piping and service connections to site utilities.
c. Sanitary waste water and vent piping and service line connections to site utilities.
d. Storm water piping and service line connections to site utilities.
e. Grease interceptors and plumbing connections for the sinks in the concession area.
f. Painting: See Division 9 specifications. Paint all exposed piping, insulation, hangers, accessories in interior exposed areas. Paint exterior pipe supports. Coordinate paint type, color and scope of work with Architect.

1.3 ALLOWANCES

A. See Division 0 Specifications.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. All plumbing work shall be done under sub-contract to a General Contractor. Plumbing Contractor shall coordinate all work through General Contractor, who is ultimately responsible for the entire project.

B. Prior to bidding, Plumbing Contractor shall coordinate all work in Division-22 for integration with civil work, mechanical work, electrical work, irrigation work and general construction. A detailed list of inclusion and exclusions shall be provided to General Contractors at least three days prior to the end of the period set aside to request clarifications so that coordination of any missing items may be addressed and clarified by Architect/Engineer as needed.

1. Coordinate water line diameter, tap size, meter size and backflow preventer size with MEP Engineer. While meter size may be smaller, water line diameter, tap, backflow preventer sizes shall match or be larger than the connection sizes shown on Plumbing drawings. If the distance from the water mains is too large, contact Civil Engineer and MEP Engineer for assistance in upsizing line, valve sizes to minimize pressure drops. Coordinate details with Engineer.

C. All electrical work required for operation of plumbing systems shall be coordinated through the General Contractor prior to bidding to ensure that all starters, disconnects, conduit and wiring are provided as part of the project. All components needed for a full operational installation of systems shall be provided.

D. All Building Automation Systems (BAS) required for operation of plumbing systems shall be coordinated through the General Contractor prior to bidding, to ensure that all equipment, materials, valves, sensors, devices and labor are provided as part of the project. All components needed for a full operational installation of systems shall be provided.

E. Plumbing Contractor shall coordinate and supervise installation of all controls systems, and coordinate with electrical contractors and equipment suppliers as needed. All components needed for a full operational installation of systems shall be provided.

F. Contractor shall coordinate with other divisions for power and control of plumbing systems. It is not the intent of this specification to dictate who will conduct work, only to state the requirements of conducting the work.

G. Cooperate fully with other contractors so that work under those contracts may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under this Contract.

H. Coordinate with Div. 1 for work sequence and optimization of construction schedule.

I. Coordinate with Div. 21 for Fire Suppression System.

J. Coordinate with Div. 23 for Mechanical System.

K. Coordinate with Div. 26 electrical contractor for providing power to plumbing equipment, and for Fire Alarm Systems interface with plumbing systems.

L. Issue written notification of the following tasks and allow five (5) days for Engineer to respond and schedule an inspection as required. Failure to issue written notification may result in work having to be redone to allow for proper inspection. It is contractor's responsibility to make sure Engineer receives notification.

1. Upon completion of underground piping installation and prior to testing or covering up.
2. Upon completion of all water piping installation and prior to insulation and/or testing.
3. Upon completion of ductwork and prior to testing and insulating.
4. Above ceiling inspections prior to ceiling tile installation.
5. When ready to request manufacturer's start-up of each piece of equipment.
6. When ready for Substantial Completion Inspection.

7. When ready for Final Inspection.

M. General

1. The Contractor shall execute all work hereinafter specified or indicated on accompanying Drawings. Contractor shall provide all equipment necessary and usually furnished in connection with such work and systems whether or not mentioned specifically herein or on the Drawings.
2. The Contractor shall be responsible for fitting his material and apparatus into the building and shall carefully lay out his work at the site to conform to the structural conditions, to avoid all obstructions, to conform to the details of the installation and thereby to provide an integrated satisfactory operating installation.
3. The Mechanical, Electrical, Plumbing, and associated Drawings are necessarily diagrammatic by their nature, and are not intended to show every connection in detail or every pipe or conduit in its exact location. These details are subject to the requirements of standards referenced elsewhere in these specifications, and structural and architectural conditions. The Contractor shall carefully investigate structural and finish conditions and shall coordinate the separate trades in order to avoid interference between the various phases of work. Work shall be organized and laid out so that it will be concealed in furred chases and suspended ceilings, etc., in finished portions of the building, unless specifically noted to be exposed. All exposed work shall be installed parallel or perpendicular to the lines of the building unless otherwise noted.
4. When the mechanical, electrical and plumbing drawings do not give exact details as to the elevation of pipe, conduit and ducts, the Contractor shall physically arrange the systems to fit in the space available at the elevations intended with proper grades for the functioning of the system involved. Piping, exposed conduit and the duct systems are generally intended to be installed true and square to the building construction, and located as high as possible against the structure in a neat and workmanlike manner. The Drawings do not show all required offsets, control lines, pilot lines and other location details. Work shall be concealed in all finished areas.

1.5 WORK SEQUENCE

A. Locate Utilities:

1. Coordinate with power, water, sewer, telephone, communications, and other utilities as well as designated Owner's personnel to locate all utilities prior to digging in any area.
2. Obtain any approvals required from utilities to relocate utilities.
3. Cost of relocating or bypassing utilities indicated on drawings shall be included in Base Bid.

B. Coordinate with Division 1 requirements to optimize construction schedule.

C. Provide equipment and material submittals, coordination drawings and shop drawings as required by specifications.

D. Submit detailed plumbing Schedule of Values with Submittals. Plumbing Submittals will not be accepted without a detailed Schedule of Values.

E. Sequence construction in coordination with work by other disciplines.

1.6 CONTRACTOR USE OF PREMISES

A. Use of the Site: Limit use of the premises to work in areas indicated. Confine operations to areas within contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of the site beyond the areas in which the Work is indicated.

1. Driveways and Entrances: Keep driveways and entrances to construction site clear and available to other Contractors, Owner, and A/E personnel at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.

B. Site Safety: Take every precaution to ensure the site does not present a threat to the safety of occupants and/or workers. Minimal safety requirements include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Temporary fencing around construction areas.
2. Yellow caution tape and construction barricades along open trenches during the day. Trenches shall be covered at night and warning lights provided on construction barricades.
3. Temporary fencing around equipment while site work is in progress.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturer's standard dimensioned drawings, performance and product data shall be edited to delete reference to equipment, features, or information which is not applicable to the equipment being supplied for this project.

B. Provide all plumbing submittals at the same time in one or multiple bound volumes. Include originals from manufacturer. All submittals shall be in native pdf and searchable format. Faxes and copies of faxes are not acceptable.

C. Provide sufficient copies of approved data, with the engineer's approved stamp, for inclusion in the operations and maintenance manuals.

D. Provide detailed coordination drawings showing how plumbing system components will be installed in coordination with work by others. Engineer’s drawing files will be made available to Contractor for producing coordination and as-built drawings upon request.

1.8 SCHEDULE OF VALUES -Special Requirements

A. Plumbing Contractor shall submit a Schedule of Values reflecting the total value of Plumbing Work in the Contract, and broken down into the following items as a minimum, with a line-item for Materials/Equipment and another for Labor:

1. Plumbing fixtures and equipment
2. Plumbing materials
3. Plumbing labor
4. Allowances.
5. Miscellaneous
6. Administrative and project management.

B. Schedule of Values shall be included with bound submittals. Submittals without a Schedule of Values shall not be reviewed.

1.9 EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURERS

A. Plumbing design is based on equipment and materials scheduled and specified. These are used as the basis for performance characteristics, quality, and physical dimensions/weight.

B. Equipment and materials by other APPROVED manufacturers may be provided by Contractor. In doing so, Contractor assumes responsibility for the performance, quality, and physical dimensions of the proposed units.

C. Any costs associated with modifications to the design due to submittal of equipment and/or materials other than those used as the basis of design are the Contractor's responsibility. This includes any design time, production of drawings, and time delays.

D. Where use of equipment and/or materials other than those used as the basis of design impact other disciplines, Contractor shall assume responsibility for all costs associated with any APPROVED modifications. This may include resizing of electrical circuits, modifying openings in the structure, relocating floor drains, etc.

1.10 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS & TRAINING

A. Submit Operations and Maintenance Manuals two weeks prior to Substantial Completion Inspection. Engineer will not conduct a Substantial Completion Inspection without having reviewed Operations and Maintenance Manuals.

B. Use Operations and Maintenance Manuals as a guide for conducting training of Owner's personnel.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 220010

SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.

C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

D. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Presealed Systems.

B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.

1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade: Cast-iron wall sleeves

2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
   a. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system

3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
   a. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

4. Concrete Slabs above Grade: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves

5. Interior Partitions: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves

END OF SECTION 220517

SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.
2. Floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
b. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.
f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.

C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 220518

SECTION 220519 – METERS AND GAUGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
   2. Thermowells.
   3. Dial-type pressure gages.
   4. Gage attachments.
   5. Test plugs and test plug kits.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gauge, from manufacturer.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gauges to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Trerice, H. O. Co.
      b. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
      c. Winters Instruments - U.S.

   2. Standard: ASME B40.200.

   3. Case: Cast aluminum; 9-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
   5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
   6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
   7. Window: Glass.
   8. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.

a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.2 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: brass.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: stainless steel.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
7. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
8. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
9. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.3 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Trerice, H. O. Co.
b. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
c. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.

2. Standard: ASME B40.100.

3. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Stainless steel.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.4 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.

B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of stainless-steel pipe with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 pipe threads.

C. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.5 TEST PLUGS

A. Manufacturers

1. Flow Design, Inc.
2. Trerice, H. O. Co.
3. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
4. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.

C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.

D. Thread Size: NPS ¼or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.

F. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.6 TEST-PLUG KITS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Flow Design, Inc.
2. Trerice, H. O. Co.
3. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
4. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

B. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one thermometer(s), one pressure gauge and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gauge, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.

C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.

D. Pressure Gauge: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch-diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.

E. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install thermowells with socket extending to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.

B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.

C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.

D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.

E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.

G. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).

H. Install test plugs in piping tees.

I. Install thermometers in the following locations:
   1. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heater.

J. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
   1. Main water connection piping into the building.
   2. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
   3. Inlet and outlet of each storage type water heater.
   4. Suction and discharge of each pump.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gauges adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gauges, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust faces of meters and gauges to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be the following:
   1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
   2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

B. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.5 SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 200 deg F.

B. Pressure Gauge Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 60 PSI.

END OF SECTION 22 05 19

SECTION 220523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Bronze ball valves.
   2. Bronze gate valves.
   3. Bronze globe valves.

B. Related Sections:

   1. Division 22 plumbing piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
   2. Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.

C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

D. NRS: Nonrising stem.

E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

F. RS: Rising stem.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated. Include body, seating, and trim materials; valve design; pressure and temperature classifications; end connections; arrangement; dimensions; and required clearances. Include list indicating valve and its application. Include rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; and accessories.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
2. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.

B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller.

4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inchstem extensions and the following features:

1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.

F. Valve-End Connections:
1. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
2. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers:
   a. NIBCO INC.
   b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
   c. Kitz Corporation
   d. Apollo

2. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
   b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
   c. Body Design: One piece.
   d. Body Material: Bronze.
   e. Ends: Threaded.
   f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
   g. Stem: Bronze.
   h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
   i. Port: Reduced.

2.3 BRONZE GATE VALVES

A. Class 150, Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers:
   a. NIBCO INC.
   b. Hammond Valve.
   c. Kitz Corporation.
   d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
   e. Apollo

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded.
e. Stem: Bronze.
f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
g. Packing: Asbestos free.
h. Handwheel: Malleable iron**, bronze, or aluminum**.

2.4 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers:
a. Hammond Valve.
b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
d. Kitz Corporation.
e. Apollo

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded.
e. Stem: Bronze.
f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
g. Packing: Asbestos free.
h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Shutoff Service: Ball, or gate, or plug valves.
2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
3. Throttling Service: Globe or ball valves.

B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2and Smaller:

1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Ball Valves: One piece, regular port, bronze with bronze trim.
3. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 150.

4. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 150, bronze, nonmetallic disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
3. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, stainless-steel disc.
4. Iron Gate Valves: Class 250.
5. Iron Globe Valves: Class 250.

END OF SECTION 220523

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
4. Fastener systems.
5. Pipe stands.
6. Equipment supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 220516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Fiberglass strut systems.
4. Pipe stands.
5. Equipment supports.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
1. Manufacturers:

    a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
    c. Flex-Strut Inc.
    d. GS Metals Corp.
    e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
    f. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
    g. Wesanco, Inc.

2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dipped galvanized.
8. Plastic Coating: PVC.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
2. Clement Support Services.
3. ERICO International Corporation.
4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
5. PHS Industries, Inc.
6. Pipe Shields, Inc.; a subsidiary of Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
7. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
8. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
9. Value Engineered Products, Inc.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.

D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless- steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.6 PIPE STANDS

A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Base: Plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.

4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.7 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.8 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

E. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Pipe Stand Installation:

1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

G. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.

H. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

I. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

J. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

N. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.

b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.

a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.

5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting." Section 099123 "Interior Painting." Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and attachments for hostile environment applications.

G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.

H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
2. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
3. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
4. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
5. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
6. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.

3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
13. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

P. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

Q. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

R. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 220548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Elastomeric hangers.
5. Spring hangers.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210548.13 "Vibration Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for devices for fire-suppression equipment and systems.
2. Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for devices for HVAC equipment and systems.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.

1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation for plumbing piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.

B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
2. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
3. California Dynamics Corporation.
4. Isolation Technology, Inc.
5. Kinetics Noise Control.
6. Mason Industries.
7. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
8. Vibration Isolation.
9. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

B. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:
1. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
2. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
3. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
4. Surface Pattern: Ribbed, Waffle, non-slip pattern.
5. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
6. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
7. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and elastomeric.

C. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:
1. Mounting Plates:

a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.

2. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

D. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:
1. Description: All-directional isolator with restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.

a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

E. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators:
1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
5. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

F. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:
1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
5. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.

a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
b. Top housing with threaded mounting holes and internal leveling device, elastomeric pad.

G. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

H. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

2.2 FACTORY FINISHES

A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.

B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.

1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static within specified loading limits.

3.3 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

END OF SECTION 220548.13

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Stencils.
5. Valve tags.
6. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

D. Valve numbering scheme.

E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
3. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
4. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
5. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
6. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

C. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

D. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.

E. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

F. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

G. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1/2 inch.

2.4 STENCILS

A. Stencils for Piping:

1. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.
2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel in colors complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass beaded chain.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Color: Safety yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting." and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.

1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.

C. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

D. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:

1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:

a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.

3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
   1. Domestic cold-water piping.
   2. Domestic hot-water piping.
   3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
   4. Domestic chilled-water piping for drinking fountains.
   5. Storm water piping.
   6. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
   2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
   3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
   4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
   5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
   6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
   7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
   2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
   1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
   1. Products:
      a. Armaflex
      b. K-Flex

G. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
   1. Products:
      a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
      b. Knauf Insulation; 1000(Pipe Insulation.
      c. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.

   2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
   1. Products:
      a. Insulco, Division of MFS, Inc.; Triple I.
      b. P. K. Insulation Mfg. Co., Inc.; Super-Stik.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
   1. Products:

a. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company
b. Aeroflex
c. Armacell
d. K-Flex

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
1. Products:
a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; S-90/80.
d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Products:
a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; S-90/80.
d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products:
a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-35.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-90.
c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; CB-50.
d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 590.

e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-40.
f. Vimasco Corporation; 749.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
4. Color: White or gray.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products:
a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76-8.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
e. Vimasco Corporation; 750.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products:
a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
   1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal Jacket:

   1. Products:
      a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; Metal Jacketing Systems.
      b. PABCO Metals Corporation; Surefit.
      c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.

   2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
      a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
      b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
      c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper
      d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
      e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

         1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
         2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
         3) Tee covers.
         4) Flange and union covers.
         5) End caps.
         6) Beveled collars.
         7) Valve covers.
         8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

C. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil-thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.

2.10 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
   1. Products:
      a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0835.
      b. Compac Corp.; 104 and 105.
      c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 428 AWF ASJ.
      d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
   2. Width: 3 inches.
   3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
   4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
   5. Elongation: 2 percent.
   6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
   7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
   1. Products:
      a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
      b. Compac Corp.; 110 and 111.
      c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 491 AWF FSK.
      d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
   2. Width: 3 inches.
   3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
   4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
   5. Elongation: 2 percent.
   6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
   7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

2.11 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:
   1. Products:
      a. Childers Products; Bands.
      b. PABCO Metals Corporation; Bands.
      c. RPR Products, Inc.; Bands.

   2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

See Editing Instruction No. 1 in the Evaluations for cautions about naming manufacturers. Retain subparagraph and list of manufacturers below. See Section 016000 "Product Requirements."

1. Manufacturers:
    a. C & F Wire.
    b. Childers Products.
    c. PABCO Metals Corporation.
    d. RPR Products, Inc.

2.12 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:
    1. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:
    1. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
    1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
    2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
    1. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
   1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
   2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
   3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
   4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
   1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
   2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
   3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
      a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
   1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
   1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
   2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
   1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
   3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
   4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
   5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
   6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
   7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
   8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and

unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.

9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
   2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
   4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
   1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
   2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
   3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
   4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
   3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
   4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
   2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
   2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
   3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
   1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
   2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
   3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
   1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
   2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
   3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
   5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.9 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
   1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
      a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of

flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment in paragraphs below that is not factory insulated.

C. Domestic hot-water storage tank insulation shall be the following, of thickness to provide an R-value of 13: Mineral-fiber pipe and tank.

3.12 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.13 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Cold Water Piping embedded in walls:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick, with two coats of protective coating recommended by the insulation manufacturer.

B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
1. Insulation shall be the following:
   a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick, with two coats of protective coating recommended by the insulation manufacturer.

C. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick, with two coats of protective coating recommended by the insulation manufacturer.

D. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

E. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
   1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

F. Hot Service Drains:
   1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch thick.

G. Hot Service Vents:
   1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch thick.

H. Rainwater conductors, and roof drain bodies:
   1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick, with two coats of protective coating recommended by the insulation manufacturer.

I. Vapor barrier on all piping, except on hot water piping.

J. Insulation shall be painted where exposed to view. Coordinate with Architect.

3.14 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Water Piping:
   1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
      b. Vapor barrier.

3.15 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. Piping, Exposed:
   1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.

3.16 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 220719

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.
2. Encasement for piping.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 221113 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping and water meters outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
2. Do not interrupt water service without Architect's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61 Annex G. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.

B. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.

C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.

D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.

E. Copper Unions:

1. MSS SP-123.
2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.

F. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
1. Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
2. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.

G. Copper Push-on-Joint Fittings:
1. Description:

a. Cast-copper fitting complying with ASME B16.18 or wrought-copper fitting complying with ASME B 16.22.
b. Stainless-steel teeth and EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end instead of solder-joint ends.

H. Copper-Tube, Extruded-Tee Connections:
1. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.

2.3 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.

D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.

B. Form: tube.

2.5 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. General Requirements:

1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
b. Dresser, Inc.; Dresser Piping Specialties.
c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
d. JCM Industries.
e. Romac Industries, Inc.
f. Smith-Blair, Inc; a Sensus company.
g. Viking Johnson; c/o Mueller Co.

D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

1. Manufacturers:

a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
b. Harvel Plastics, Inc.
c. Spears Manufacturing Company.

2. Description:

a. PVC four-part union.
b. Brass threaded end.
c. Solvent-cement-joint plastic end.
d. Rubber O-ring.
e. Union nut.

2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers:

a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
b. Central Plastics Company.
c. EPCO Sales, Inc.
d. Hart Industries International, Inc.
e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers:

a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
b. Central Plastics Company.
c. EPCO Sales, Inc.
d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
3. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
5. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Manufacturers:

a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
b. Calpico, Inc.
c. Central Plastics Company.
d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
4. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.

5. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
6. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers:

a. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
c. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
3. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
4. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
5. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
6. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.7 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
2. Flex Pression, Ltd.
3. Flex-Weld, Inc.
4. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
5. Metraflex, Inc.
6. Universal Metal Hose; a Hyspan company

B. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.

1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum **200 psig**
2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.

D. Install underground copper tube in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.

E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.

G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

H. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain and plumb.

I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.

J. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

K. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

L. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.

M. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

N. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

O. Install piping free of sags and bends.

P. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

Q. Install PEX piping with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.

R. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.

S. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump.

T. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping.

U. Install thermometers on outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" chapter.

E. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.

F. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.

G. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for valve installations.

B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

C. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping. Drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

1. Hose-End Drain Valves: At low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
2. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves: Instead of hose-end drain valves where indicated.

D. Install balancing valve in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller and butterfly valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves.

E. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set calibrated balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for calibrated balancing valves.

3.5 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.

B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:

1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.

C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

3.6 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

3.7 FLEXIBLE CONNECTOR INSTALLATION

A. Install flexible connectors in suction and discharge piping connections to each domestic water pump and in suction and discharge manifold connections to each domestic water booster pump.

B. Install bronze-hose flexible connectors in copper domestic water tubing.

C. Install stainless-steel-hose flexible connectors in steel domestic water piping.

3.8 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:

    a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.

3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.

E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.

F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

G. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.9 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:

1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.

3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.10 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Piping Inspections:

a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:

1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Piping Tests:

a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source

and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.

f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.

    a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.

    b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.

5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.13 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:

    a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.

    b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:

        1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.

        2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.

c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:

a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.14 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.

C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.

D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, up to NPS 8 and larger, shall be the following:

1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.

E. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.

F. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be the following:

1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.

G. Aboveground, combined domestic water-service and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12, shall be the following:

1. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

3.15 VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:

1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.

B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backflow preventers.
2. Outlet boxes.
3. Wall hydrants.
4. Water-hammer arresters.
5. Trap-seal primer valves.
6. Trap-seal primer systems.
7. Flexible connectors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
2. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
3. Section 223200 "Domestic Water Filtration Equipment" for water filters in domestic water piping.
4. Section 224300 "Medical Plumbing Fixtures" for thermostatic mixing valves for sitz baths, thermostatic mixing-valve assemblies for hydrotherapy equipment, and outlet boxes for dialysis equipment.
5. Section 224500 "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" for water tempering equipment.
6. Section 224713 "Drinking Fountains" for water filters for water coolers.
7. Section 224716 "Pressure Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.
8. Section 224723 "Remote Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.

1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 Annex G [**and NSF 14**].[**Mark "NSF-pw" on plastic piping components.**]

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: [**125 psig (860 kPa)**] unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

B. Manufacturers:
1. Zurn
2. Wilkins
3. Or Approved Equal.

C. Description:

1. Standard: ASSE 1013.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Pressure Loss: [**12 psig (83 kPa)]**
4. Size: see drawings.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smalle
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
7. Configuration: Designed for [**horizontal, straight-through**] flow.
8. Accessories:

    a. Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
    b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
    c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

2.4 OUTLET BOXES

A. Icemaker Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers:
   a. Guy Gray
   b. Zurn
   c. Moen

2. Description: See schedule.

2.5 WALL HYDRANTS

1. Manufacturers:
   a. Zurn
   b. Woodford
   c. Or Approved Equal

2. Description: See schedule.

2.6 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters:

1. Manufacturers:
   a. Zurn.
   b. Mifab.
   c. Wade.
   d. Or “Approved equal”.

2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: [Stainless Steel **Metal bellows**].
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.7 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:

1. Manufacturers:
   a. PPP or Approved Equal
2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded, union, or solder joint.
6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded or solder joint.
7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

2.8 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.

1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum [**200 psig (1380 kPa)**].
2. End Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.

B. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 2-by-4-inch (38-by-89-mm) fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."

C. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.

D. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for ground equipment in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical connections.

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
1. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
2. Outlet boxes.

3. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.

B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test each [**reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer**] [**double-check, backflow-prevention assembly**] [**and**] [**double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer**] according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.

B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 221119

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Specialty pipe fittings.
3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 221313 "Facility Sanitary Sewers" for sanitary sewerage piping and structures outside the building.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:

1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For sovent drainage system. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Architect's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

B. Sovent Stack Fittings: ASME B16.45 or ASSE 1043, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.

C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

a. Manufacturers:

1) ANACO.
2) Clamp-All Corp.
3) Ideal Div.; Stant Corp.
4) Mission Rubber Co.
5) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.

2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.3 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.

B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.

C. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.

1. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

3. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
   a. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
   b. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

4. Pressure Transition Couplings:
   a. Standard: AWWA C219.
   b. Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
   c. Center-Sleeve Material: Stainless steel.
   d. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
   e. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Dielectric Unions:
   a. Description:

      1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
      2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
      3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

3. Dielectric Flanges:
   a. Description:

      1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
      2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
      3) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
      4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
   a. Description:

      1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
      2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
      3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
      4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
      5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

5. Dielectric Nipples:
   a. Description:

      1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66
      2) Electroplated steel nipple.
      3) Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
      4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
      5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.5 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

B. Material: high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

K. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

L. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:

1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.

M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."

1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

N. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.

O. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.

P. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:

1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Sovent Drainage System: Comply with ASSE 1043 and sovent fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.

Q. Plumbing Specialties:
1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
2. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

R. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

B. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:

1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
4. In Underground Force Main Piping:

a. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
b. NPS 2 and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.
4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
2. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:

a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.

3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.

C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
6. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.

F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

G. Install hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.

4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.

H. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.

I. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:

1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
5. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
6. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

D. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.

A. Underground and above ground (unless noted otherwise), soil, waste, and vent piping shall be the following:
   1. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
   2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.

B. In Return Air Plenum: Soil, waste, and vent piping shall be the following:
   1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.

END OF SECTION 221316

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Cleanouts.
   2. Floor drains.
   3. Roof flashing assemblies.
   4. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
   5. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
   6. Flashing materials.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.

B. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.

C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

D. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.

E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

F. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

G. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLEANOUTS

A. Metal Floor Cleanouts:

1. ASME A112.36.2M, Cast-Iron Cleanouts: see detail on plans.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for [**cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule**] [**threaded, adjustable housing**] cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: [**Threaded, adjustable housing**].
5. Body or Ferrule: [**Cast iron**].
6. Clamping Device: [**Required**].
7. Outlet Connection: [**Threaded**].
8. Closure: [**Cast-iron plug**].
9. Adjustable Housing Material: [**Cast iron**] with [**threads**].
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: [**Nickel-bronze, copper alloy**]
11. Frame and Cover Shape: [**Round**].
12. Top Loading Classification: [**Medium**] Duty.

B. Plastic Wall Cleanouts:

1. See detail on plans.
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Body: PVC.
4. Closure Plug: Stainless Steel.
5. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.

2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Zurn.
2. Mifab.
3. Josam.

4. Wade.
5. Watts.

B. Description: See schedules.

2.3 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

1. Description: Manufactured assembly made of [**6.0-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m)**, **0.0938-inch-(2.4-mm-)**] thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least [**6 inches (150 mm)**] from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.

   a. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
   b. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
   c. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

2.4 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.
2. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent stack.
3. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
4. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
5. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:

1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 (DN 15) side inlet.

B. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.

5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

C. Sleeve Flashing Device:

1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend [**1 inch (25 mm)**] [**2 inches (51 mm)**] <**Insert dimension**> above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

D. Stack Flashing Fittings:

1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

2.6 FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:

1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m), 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness.
2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft. (15-kg/sq. m), 0.0469-inch (1.2-mm) thickness.
3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness.

B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:

1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m or 0.41-mm thickness).
2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft. (2.5 kg/sq. m or 0.27-mm thickness).

C. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch (1.01-mm) minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 (Z275) hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.

D. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil (1.01-mm) minimum thickness.

E. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.

F. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.

G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

H. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4 (DN 100). Use NPS 4 (DN 100) for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller and 100 feet (30 m) for larger piping.
4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

B. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.

C. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.

D. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:

    a. Coordinate with Structural Drawings prior installation.
    b. Radius, 30 Inches (750 mm) or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch (6.35-mm) total depression.
    c. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches (750 to 1500 mm): Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    d. Radius, 60 Inches (1500 mm) or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch (25-mm) total depression.

3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

F. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

G. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic [**conductors**] [**and**] [**stacks**] at floor penetrations.

H. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub [**1 inch (25 mm)**] [**2 inches (51 mm)**] above floor.

I. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.

J. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.

1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.

K. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.

L. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

M. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.

N. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.

O. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:

1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m), 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness or thinner.
2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.

B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.

1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches (250 mm), and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around pipe.
2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around sleeve.

3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around specialty.

C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.

D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.

G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

SECTION 221323 - SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Grease interceptors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

B. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of interceptor indicated. Include materials of fabrication, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, operating characteristics, size and location of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type and size of precast-concrete interceptor indicated.
   1. Include materials of construction, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, location and size of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Interceptors, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from Installers of the items involved:
   1. Interceptors.
   2. Piping connections. Include size, location, and elevation of each.
   3. Interface with underground structures and utility services.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GREASE INTERCEPTORS

A. Grease Interceptors: Precast concrete complying with ASTM C 913.
   1. Include rubber-gasketed joints, vent connections, manholes, compartments or baffles, and piping or openings to retain grease and to permit wastewater flow.

2. Structural Design Loads:
   a. Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44).

3. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into interceptor walls, for each pipe connection.
4. Steps: ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of interceptor to finished grade is less than 60 inches.
5. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
6. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch-minimum width flange and 26-inch-diameter cover.
   a. Ductile Iron: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "GREASE INTERCEPTOR."

B. Capacities and Characteristics: See Drawing Schedules.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install precast-concrete interceptors according to ASTM C 891. Set level and plumb.

B. Install manhole risers from top of underground concrete interceptors to manholes and gratings at finished grade.

C. Set tops of manhole frames and covers flush with finished surface in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finish surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Set tops of grating frames and grates flush with finished surface.

E. Set interceptors level and plumb.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Make piping connections between interceptors and piping systems.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identification materials and installation are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground interceptors.
   1. Use warning tapes or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
   2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

END OF SECTION 221323

SECTION 221413 – FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following storm drainage piping inside the building:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Special pipe fittings.
3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working-pressure, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Storm Drainage Piping: **20-foot head of water**

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings.

B. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

2.3 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

B. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

1. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: With stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.

a. Manufacturers:

1) ANACO.
2) Clamp-All Corp.
3) Ideal Div.; Stant Corp.
4) Mission Rubber Co.
5) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.

2.4 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
1. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, socket type, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.

2.5 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

A. Flexible, Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring, ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

1. Sleeve Materials:

a. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.

B. Shielded Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

C. Rigid, Unshielded, Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: ASTM C 1461, sleeve-type reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

D. Flexible Ball Joints: Ductile-iron fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include gasketed ball-joint section and ductile-iron gland, rubber gasket, and steel bolts.

E. Expansion Joints: Two or three-piece, ductile-iron assembly consisting of telescoping sleeve(s) with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Select and assemble components for expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

2.6 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

A. Description: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105, **high-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch** minimum thickness.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXCAVATION

A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Underground and above ground storm drainage piping **NPS 8 and smaller (UNO)** shall be the following:
   1. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
   2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.

C. In Return Air Plenum: Storm drainage piping **NPS 8 and smaller** shall be the following:
   1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; **heavy-duty** shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and coupled joints.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Storm sewer and drainage piping outside the building are specified in Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping."

B. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

C. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers. Cleanouts are specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

D. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping.

E. Install underground, steel, force-main piping. **Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.**

F. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."

1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

G. Install PVC soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2665.

H. Install underground PVC soil and waste drainage piping according to ASTM D 2321.

I. Make changes in direction for storm drainage piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

J. Lay buried building storm drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

K. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Building Storm Drain: 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
2. Horizontal Storm-Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.

L. Install force mains at elevations indicated.

M. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.

N. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

O. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

P. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

Q. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

B. Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.

C. PVC Nonpressure Piping Joints: Join piping according to ASTM D 2665.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:

1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs: According to the following:

    a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    c. Longer Than 100 Feet, if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.

3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

B. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 6: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
5. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
6. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.

F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

G. Install hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.

H. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.

I. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.

3.7 INSULATION

A. Refer to Plumbing Insulation Specification Section 220719.

B. Service: Rainwater conductors, and roof drain bodies.
1. Operating Temperature: 32 to 100 deg F
2. Insulation Material: Flexible elastomeric.
3. Insulation Thickness: 1” thick.
4. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
5. Finish: Painted, where exposed to view (Coordinate with Architect).

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
3. Test Procedure: Test storm drainage piping**, except outside leaders,** on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.9 CLEANING

A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.10 PROTECTION

A. Exposed **PVC** Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

END OF SECTION 221413

SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
   2. Cleanouts.
   3. Flashing materials.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROOF DRAINS

A. See schedules:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. Josam Company.
      b. MIFAB, Inc.
      c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2.2 CLEANOUTS

A. Floor Cleanouts: See schedules
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
      b. MIFAB, Inc.
      c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.

B. Test Tees:
1. Manufacturers:
a. Josam Company.
b. MIFAB, Inc.
c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M and ASTM A 74, ASTM A 888, or CISPI 301, for cleanout test tees.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure Plug: **Countersunk brass**.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

C. Wall Cleanouts:
1. Manufacturers:
a. Josam Company.
b. MIFAB, Inc.
c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for cleanouts. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body Material: **Hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee** as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: **Countersunk**, **drilled-and-threaded**, **cast-iron** plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, **stainless-steel** cover plate with screw.

2.3 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers:
a. ProSet Systems Inc.

2. Standard: ASTM E 814, for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
3. Certification and Listing: **Insert testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction** for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
4. Size: Same as connected pipe.
5. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
6. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
7. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

2.4 FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, 12 oz./sq. ft..

B. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.

C. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.

D. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.

E. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.

F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions. Roofing materials are specified in Division 07 Sections.
1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.

B. Install downspout adapters on outlet of back-outlet parapet roof drains and connect to sheet metal downspouts.

C. Install downspout boots at grade with top **12 inches** above grade. Secure to building wall.

D. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.

E. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

F. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.

G. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.

H. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.

I. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.

J. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors at concrete floor penetrations.

K. Install sleeve flashing device with each conductor passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
   1. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.

B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
   1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching the pipe size, with a minimum length of 10 inches and with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
   2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
   3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.

C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.

D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

E. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221423

SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Commercial, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
   2. Flow-control, electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters.
   3. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

   1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial and tankless, electric, domestic-water heater, from manufacturer.

B. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

C. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
    b. Faulty operation of controls.
    c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.

2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.

    a. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Booster Heaters:

        1) Controls and Other Components: Five years.

    b. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

        1) Storage Tank: Ten years.
        2) Controls and Other Components: Five years.

    c. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters: Five year(s).
    d. Compression Tanks: Ten years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMMERCIAL, ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters:

1. Commercial, Storage, Electric Water Heaters:
   a. Bradford White Co.
   b. State Industries.
   c. Rheem

2. Standard: UL 1453.
3. Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig working-pressure rating..

   a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank for piping connections, relief valve, pressure gage, thermometer, drain, anode rod, and controls as required. Attach tappings to tank before testing and labeling. ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
   b. Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61, barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
   c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
   d. Jacket: Steel, with enameled finish.

4. Factory-Installed Tank Appurtenances:

   a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
   b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
   c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
   d. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
   e. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
   f. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
   g. Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
   h. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valve. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
   i. Gages: Combination temperature-and-pressure type or separate thermometer and pressure gage.

5. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.

6. Capacity and Characteristics: See Drawings

2.2 ELECTRIC, TANKLESS, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

A. Flow-Control, Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters:

1. Manufacturers:

    a. Controlled Energy Corporation.
    b. Chronomite Laboratories, Inc.
    c. Eemax.
2. Standard: UL 499 for electric, tankless, (domestic-water heater) heating appliance.
3. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.

    a. Connections: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    c. Heating Element: Resistance heating system.
    d. Temperature Control: Flow-control fitting.
    e. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
    f. Jacket: Aluminum or steel with enameled finish or plastic.

4. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.
5. Capacity and Characteristics: See drawings.

2.3 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. AMTROL Inc.
    b. Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.; a division of A. O. Smith Corporation.
    c. State Industries.
    d. Taco, Inc.
    e. Rheem
2. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
3. Construction:

    a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.

4. Capacity and Characteristics: See drawings.

B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.

C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.

E. Manifold Kits: Domestic-water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping for field installation, for multiple domestic-water heater installation. Include ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves to isolate each domestic-water heater and calibrated balancing valves to provide balanced flow through each domestic-water heater.

1. Comply with requirements for ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
2. Comply with requirements for balancing valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

F. Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASSE 1003 for water. Set at 25-psig-maximum outlet pressure unless otherwise indicated.

G. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

H. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating.

I. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.

J. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.

K. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Include dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater a minimum of 18 inches above the floor.

L. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

B. Hydrostatically test domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.

C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.

B. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters at least 18 inches above floor on wall bracket.

1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.

C. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.

1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."

D. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

E. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

F. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

G. Install thermometers on outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers.

H. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple electric, domestic-water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each electric, domestic-water heater. Include shutoff valve and thermometer in each domestic-water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each electric, domestic-water heater outlet. Comply with requirements for valves and thermometers.

I. Install pressure-reducing valve with integral bypass relief valve in electric, domestic-water booster-heater inlet piping and water hammer arrester in booster-heater outlet piping. Set pressure-reducing valve for outlet pressure of 25 psig. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves and water hammer arresters specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

J. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.

K. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.

L. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

C. Connect hot- and cold-water piping with shutoff valves and unions.

D. Make connections with dielectric fittings where piping is made of dissimilar metal.

E. Electrical Connections: Power wiring and disconnect switches are specified in Division 16 Sections. Arrange wiring to allow unit service.

F. Ground equipment.

1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial and tankless, electric, domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION 223300

SECTION 224000 - PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following conventional plumbing fixtures and related components:

1. Faucets for lavatories and sinks.
2. Flushometers.
3. Toilet seats.
4. Protective shielding guards.
5. Fixture supports.
6. Water closets.
7. Urinals
8. Lavatories.
9. Service basins.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 10 Section "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories."
2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers, floor drains, and specialty fixtures not included in this Section.
3. Division 22 Section "Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers."
4. Division 31 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for exterior plumbing fixtures and hydrants.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.

B. Accessible Fixture: Plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.

C. Cast Polymer: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material. This material includes cultured-marble and solid-surface materials.

D. Cultured Marble: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material with surface coating.

E. Fitting: Device that controls the flow of water into or out of the plumbing fixture. Fittings specified in this Section include supplies and stops, faucets and spouts, shower heads and tub spouts, drains and tailpieces, and traps and waste pipes. Piping and general-duty valves are included where indicated.

F. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

G. PMMA: Polymethyl methacrylate (acrylic) plastic.

H. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

I. Solid Surface: Nonporous, homogeneous, cast-polymer-plastic material with heat-, impact-, scratch-, and stain-resistance qualities.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of plumbing fixture indicated. Include selected fixture and trim, fittings, accessories, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, and supports. Indicate materials and finishes, dimensions, construction details, and flow-control rates.

B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For plumbing fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

D. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other components of each category through one source from a single manufacturer.

1. Exception: If fixtures, faucets, or other components are not available from a single manufacturer, obtain similar products from other manufacturers specified for that category.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.

D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.

E. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.

F. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.

G. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:

1. Enameled, Cast-Iron Fixtures: ASME A112.19.1M.
2. Porcelain-Enameled, Formed-Steel Fixtures: ASME A112.19.4M.
3. Stainless-Steel Commercial, Handwash Sinks: NSF 2 construction.
4. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
5. Water-Closet, Flush Valve, Tank Trim: ASME A112.19.5.
6. Water-Closet, Flushometer Tank Trim: ASSE 1037.

H. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory and sink faucets:

1. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Side Spray: ASME A112.18.3M.
2. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Hose-Thread Outlet: ASME A112.18.3M.
3. Diverter Valves for Faucets with Hose Spray: ASSE 1025.
4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
5. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011.
6. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
7. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
8. NSF Potable-Water Materials: NSF 61.
9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
10. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
11. Supply Fittings: ASME A112.18.1.
12. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.

I. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:

1. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
2. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1.
3. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings: ASSE 1021.
4. Plastic Tubular Fittings: ASTM F 409.
5. Sensor-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037 and UL 1951.

J. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Flexible Water Connectors: ASME A112.18.6.
2. Floor Drains: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Grab Bars: ASTM F 446.
4. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
5. Off-Floor Fixture Supports: ASME A112.6.1M.
6. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
7. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
8. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of whirlpools that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures of unit shell.
b. Faulty operation of controls, blowers, pumps, heaters, and timers.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LAVATORY FAUCETS

A. Lavatory Faucets:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:

a. Chicago Faucets.
b. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
c. Moen, Inc.

2. Description: See plumbing schedule.

2.2 SINK FAUCETS

A. Sink Faucets:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:

a. Chicago Faucets.
b. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
c. Moen, Inc.

2. Description: See plumbing schedule.

2.3 FLUSHOMETERS

A. Flushometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:

a. Sloan Valve Company.
b. Zurn

2. Description: See plumbing schedule.

2.4 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:

a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
b. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
c. Kohler Co.

2. Description: See plumbing schedule.

2.5 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. TRUEBRO, Inc.

2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

2.6 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. MIFAB Manufacturing Inc.
2. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
3. Watts Drainage.

B. Water-Closet Supports:

1. Description: See plumbing schedule.

C. Urinals Supports:

1. Description: See plumbing schedule.

D. Lavatory Supports:

1. Description: See plumbing schedule.

E. Sink Supports:

1. Description: See plumbing schedule.

2.7 WATER CLOSETS

A. Water Closets:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:

a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
b. American Standard Companies, Inc.
c. Zurn
d. Kohler
e. Toto USA.

2. Description: See plumbing schedule.

B. Urinals:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:

a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
b. American Standard Companies, Inc.
c. Zurn
d. Kohler
e. Toto USA.

2. Description: See plumbing schedule.

2.8 LAVATORIES

A. Lavatories:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:

a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
b. Toto USA
c. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.

2. Description: See plumbing schedule.

2.9 SERVICE BASINS

A. Mop Service Basin:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:

a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
b. Toto USA
c. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.

2. Description: See plumbing schedule.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbing fixture installation.

B. Examine cabinets, counters, floors, and walls for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Assemble plumbing fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.

B. Install off-floor supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounting fixtures.

1. Use carrier supports with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet fixtures.
2. Use carrier supports without waste fitting for fixtures with tubular waste piping.
3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible fixtures.

C. Install back-outlet, wall-mounting fixtures onto waste fitting seals and attach to supports.

D. Install floor-mounting fixtures on closet flanges or other attachments to piping or building substrate.

E. Install wall-mounting fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.

F. Install floor-mounting, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate and wall bracket and onto waste fitting seals.

G. Install counter-mounting fixtures in and attached to casework.

H. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

I. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.

1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with fixture. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

J. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.

K. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.

L. Install flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on wide side of compartment. Install other actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.

M. Install tanks for accessible, tank-type water closets with lever handle mounted on wide side of compartment.

N. Install toilet seats on water closets.

O. Install faucet-spout fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.

P. Install water-supply flow-control fittings with specified flow rates in fixture supplies at stop valves.

Q. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.

R. Install traps on fixture outlets.

1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.
2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes, unless otherwise indicated.

S. Install escutcheons at piping wall ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

T. Set service basins in leveling bed of cement grout. Grout is specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

U. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and countertops using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verify that installed plumbing fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.

B. Check that plumbing fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.

C. Inspect installed plumbing fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.

D. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.

E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust faucets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.

B. Operate and adjust controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning units and controls.

C. Adjust water pressure at faucets and flushometer valves to produce proper flow and stream.

D. Replace washers and seals of leaking and dripping faucets and stops.

E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Clean fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Do the following:

1. Remove faucet spouts and strainers, remove sediment and debris, and reinstall strainers and spouts.
2. Remove sediment and debris from drains.

B. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished fixtures, faucets, and fittings, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.

B. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224000

SECTION 224713 - DRINKING FOUNTAINS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes drinking fountains and related components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of drinking fountain.
   1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
   2. Include operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For drinking fountains to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities" for fixtures for people with disabilities.

C. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.

D. ARI Standard: Comply with ARI's "Directory of Certified Drinking Water Coolers" for style classifications.

E. ARI Standard: Comply with ARI 1010, "Self-Contained, Mechanically Refrigerated Drinking-Water Coolers," for water coolers and with ARI's "Directory of Certified Drinking Water Coolers" for type and style classifications.

F. ASHRAE Standard: Comply with ASHRAE 34, "Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants," for water coolers. Provide HFC 134a refrigerant, unless otherwise indicated.

SECTION 224713 - DRINKING FOUNTAINS

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Filter Cartridges: Equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each type and size indicated, but no fewer than 3 of each.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DRINKING FOUNTAINS

A. Drinking Fountains: See Drawings for schedules and description.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
      b. Oasis.
      c. Halsey Taylor
      d. Acorn Engineering Co.

2.2 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Josam Co.
   2. MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
   3. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

B. Description: ASME A112.6.1M, water cooler carriers. Include vertical, steel uprights with feet and tie rods and bearing plates with mounting studs matching fixture to be supported.
   1. Type I: Hanger-type carrier with two vertical uprights.
   2. Type II: Bilevel, hanger-type carrier with three vertical uprights.
   3. Supports for Accessible Fixtures: Include rectangular, vertical, steel uprights instead of steel pipe uprights.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Set pedestal drinking fountains on floor.

C. Install recessed drinking fountains secured to wood blocking in wall construction.

D. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.

E. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball or gate valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.

F. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.

G. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

H. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Install ball or gate shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Comply with valve requirements.

D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.

B. Adjust water cooler temperature settings.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Water Cooler Testing: After electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements. Test and adjust controls and safeties.

1. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
2. Report test results in writing.

3.6 CLEANING

A. After installing fixtures, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.

B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.

D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224713

SECTION 230010 – SUMMARY OF MECHANICAL WORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 23 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

A. The following Summary of Work is intended as an aid to achieve an understanding of the various elements of work included in the project, and is not intended to be all-inclusive. Detailed descriptions of work and requirements are given in drawings and specifications.

B. Mechanical Contract Documents were prepared for the Project by:
Ethos Engineering,
119 West Van Buren, Suite 101
Harlingen, Texas 78550
Phone Number: (956) 230-3435

C. Scope of Work: Refer to drawings for a detailed Scope of Work.
1. Provide all materials and labor associated with new fully-operational mechanical and controls systems for the project "Gymnasium Facility, Hanna ECHS", including but not limited to the following:
   a. Central Plant: High efficiency air-cooled chillers, pumps, expansion tank, gauges, fittings, valves, hardware, and hydronic specialties, and chemical treatment for the systems.
   b. Hydronic Distribution Systems: Painted, insulated and jacketed chilled water piping, pipe connections, valves, piping specialties, hot dipped and painted piping supports, as indicated on piping plans and schematics. Provide insulation on cold surfaces capable of generating condensation. Aluminum jacketing for all piping exposed outdoors and in the pump room.
   c. Space Conditioning: Hydronic dual path central station air handling units.
   d. Exhaust Systems: Building exhaust fans and associated louvers.
   e. Ductwork, dampers, diffusers, grilles, and accessories. Dynamic fire dampers, control dampers, and OA intake louvers.
   f. Testing, Adjusting, & Balancing (TAB) shall not be provided under the mechanical contract. TAB shall be provided by General Contractor.
   g. Building Automation System (BAS) for HVAC, plumbing and electrical equipment including all controls relays, contactors, power to DDC panels, valves, dampers, interface cards, and other controls equipment.
   h. Shop drawing submittals for all mechanical systems including but not limited to equipment, ductwork and piping. These include coordination drawings for placing of mechanical systems in relation to work by other disciplines.
   i. Contractor is responsible for providing delegated design to comply with IBC requirements related to wind storm certification, inspections and certifications for exterior mounted equipment. Contractor must notify Inspector prior to installing equipment, and apprise inspector of work scheduling involving equipment

requiring wind inspection / certification, so that inspections may be carried out at required stage(s) of construction. Cost for inspection shall be borne by the Contractor. Inspector shall be certified by the Texas Department of Insurance (see www.tdi.state.tx.us for a list of certified Inspectors).

j. Coordinate electrical work with Div. 26 as required.

k. Coordinate fire alarm related work with Fire Alarm Contractor. Provide smoke detectors, wiring and controls for units, 2000 cfm and larger.

2. Commissioning: Provide assistance with commissioning services per specifications. This includes completing systems readiness checklists, performing functional testing, providing operator training, etc.

3. Painting: See Division 9 specifications. Paint all exposed piping, ductwork, insulation, hangers, accessories in interior exposed areas. Paint exterior pipe supports. Coordinate paint type, color and scope of work with Architect.

D. Manufacturers:

1. Base Bid: Daikin chillers, Daikin air handling units, ALC Controls.

2. Alternate Bid, as a separate line item (see Bid Form): Trane chillers, Trane air handling units, Trane Controls.

1.3 ALLOWANCES

A. Allowances are included in the Division 1 specifications.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. All mechanical work shall be done under sub-contract to a General Contractor. Mechanical Contractor shall coordinate all work through General Contractor, who is ultimately responsible for the entire project.

B. Prior to bidding, Mechanical Contractor shall coordinate all work in Division-23 for integration with plumbing, electrical, controls work and general construction. A detailed list of inclusion and exclusions shall be provided to General Contractors at least three days prior to the end of the period set aside to request clarifications so that coordination of any missing items may be addressed and clarified by Architect/Engineer as needed.

C. All electrical work required for operation of mechanical systems shall be coordinated through the General Contractor prior to bidding to ensure that all starters, disconnects, VFD's, conduit and wiring are provided as part of the project. All components needed for a full operational installation of systems shall be provided.

D. All controls required for operation of mechanical systems shall be coordinated prior to bidding, to ensure that all equipment, materials, sensors, devices and labor are provided as part of the project. All components needed for a full operational installation of systems shall be provided. Mechanical Contractor shall coordinate and supervise installation of all controls systems.

E. All questions, requests for information, submittals, and correspondence from the Div. 23 Contractor shall be submitted via the General Contractor, who will forward to the Architect, who will then forward to the Engineer.

F. Div. 23 Contractor shall not make any changes to design without written authorization from the Engineer. If changes are requested by the Owner, Architect, General Contractor, Suppliers, Manufacturers, or any others, Contractor should issue a written RFI for response by the Engineer.

G. Div. 23 Contractor shall issue seven days written notice prior to any activities that require the presence of the Engineer at the job-site. This applies to all inspections required by specifications, and particularly to those where work will be covered.

H. Cooperate fully with other contractors so that work under those contracts may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under this Contract. Ensure that systems are ready for controls and electrical connections when needed so as to not delay construction.

I. Contractor shall coordinate with other divisions for power and control of mechanical systems. It is not the intent of this specification to dictate who will conduct work, only to state the requirements of conducting the work.

J. Coordinate with Div. 1 for work sequence and optimization of construction schedule.

K. Coordinate with Div. 21 for Fire Suppression System.

L. Coordinate with Div. 22 for Plumbing System.

M. Coordinate with Div. 26 electrical contractor for providing power to mechanical equipment, and for Fire Alarm Systems interface with mechanical systems.

N. Coordinate commissioning activities with Commissioning Authority.

O. Coordinate TAB activities with TAB Contractor.

P. Issue written notification of the following tasks and allow five (5) days for Engineer to respond and schedule an inspection as required. Failure to issue written notification may result in work having to be redone to allow for proper inspection. It is contractor's responsibility to make sure Engineer receives notification.
   1. Upon completion of underground piping installation and prior to testing or covering up.
   2. Upon completion of all water piping installation and prior to insulation and/or testing.
   3. Upon completion of ductwork and prior to testing and insulating.
   4. Metal duct leakage testing.
   5. Above ceiling inspections prior to ceiling tile installation.
   6. When ready to request manufacturer's start-up of each piece of equipment.
   7. When ready for an inspection by TAB contractor prior to developing detailed TAB Plan.
   8. When ready to conduct complete Automation System software demonstration.
   9. When ready for Systems Readiness Checklists (Commissioning).
   10. When ready for Functional Performance testing (Commissioning).
   11. When ready for Substantial Completion Inspection.
   12. Training.
   13. When ready for Final Inspection.

Q. General
   1. The Contractor shall execute all work hereinafter specified or indicated on accompanying Drawings. Contractor shall provide all equipment necessary and usually furnished in

connection with such work and systems whether or not mentioned specifically herein or on the Drawings.

2. The Contractor shall be responsible for fitting his material and apparatus into the building and shall carefully lay out his work at the site to conform to the structural conditions, to avoid all obstructions, to conform to the details of the installation and thereby to provide an integrated satisfactory operating installation.
3. The Mechanical, Electrical, Plumbing, and associated Drawings are necessarily diagrammatic by their nature, and are not intended to show every connection in detail or every pipe or conduit in its exact location. These details are subject to the requirements of standards referenced elsewhere in these specifications, and structural and architectural conditions. The Contractor shall carefully investigate structural and finish conditions and shall coordinate the separate trades in order to avoid interference between the various phases of work. Work shall be organized and laid out so that it will be concealed in furred chases and suspended ceilings, etc., in finished portions of the building, unless specifically noted to be exposed. All exposed work shall be installed parallel or perpendicular to the lines of the building unless otherwise noted.
4. When the mechanical, electrical and plumbing drawings do not give exact details as to the elevation of pipe, conduit and ducts, the Contractor shall physically arrange the systems to fit in the space available at the elevations intended with proper grades for the functioning of the system involved. Piping, exposed conduit and the duct systems are generally intended to be installed true and square to the building construction, and located as high as possible against the structure in a neat and workmanlike manner. The Drawings do not show all required offsets, control lines, pilot lines and other location details. Work shall be concealed in all finished areas.

1.5 WORK SEQUENCE

A. Locate Utilities:

1. Coordinate with power, water, sewer, telephone, communications, and other utilities as well as designated Owner's personnel to locate all utilities prior to digging in any area.
2. Obtain any approvals required from utilities to relocate utilities.
3. Cost of relocating or bypassing utilities indicated on drawings shall be included in Base Bid.
4. Where several new utilities must share a common area or path, coordinate with other trades so that the proper clearances are maintained and utilities may be installed in compliance with all requirements.
5. Refer to Civil Plans for coordination of connection points from site utilities to buildings.

B. Coordinate with Division 1 requirements to optimize construction schedule.

C. Provide equipment and material submittals, coordination drawings and shop drawings as required by specifications.

D. Submit detailed mechanical Schedule of Values with Submittals. Mechanical Submittals will not be accepted without a detailed Schedule of Values.

E. Sequence construction in coordination with work by other disciplines.

1.6 CONTRACTOR USE OF PREMISES

A. Use of the Site: Limit use of the premises to work in areas indicated. Confine operations to areas within contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of the site beyond the areas in which the Work is indicated.
   1. Driveways and Entrances: Keep driveways and entrances to construction site clear and available to other Contractors, Owner, and A/E personnel at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.

B. Site Safety: Take every precaution to ensure the site does not present a threat to the safety of occupants and/or workers. Minimal safety requirements include, but are not limited to the following:
   1. Temporary fencing around construction areas.
   2. Yellow caution tape and construction barricades along open trenches during the day. Trenches shall be covered at night and warning lights provided on construction barricades.
   3. Temporary fencing around equipment while site work is in progress.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturer's standard dimensioned drawings, performance and product data shall be edited to delete reference to equipment, features, or information which is not applicable to the equipment being supplied for this project.

B. Provide all mechanical submittals at the same time in one or multiple bound volumes. Include originals from manufacturer. All submittals shall be in native pdf and searchable format. Faxes and copies of faxes are not acceptable.

C. Provide sufficient copies of approved data, with the engineer's approved stamp, for inclusion in the operations and maintenance manuals.

D. Provide detailed coordination drawings showing how mechanical system components will be installed in coordination with work by others. Engineer’s drawing files will be made available to Contractor for producing coordination and as-built drawings upon request.

1.8 SCHEDULE OF VALUES -Special Requirements

A. Mechanical Contractor shall submit a Schedule of Values reflecting the total value of Mechanical Work in the Contract, and broken down into the following items as a minimum, with a line-item for Materials/Equipment and another for Labor:

MECHANICAL
1. HVAC equipment
2. HVAC materials (ductwork, piping, dampers)
3. HVAC labor
4. Controls equipment
5. Controls labor
6. Controls engineering and programming

7. Controls commissioning and closeout (minimum 10% of total controls cost)
8. Controls training (minimum 5% of total controls cost)
9. TAB
10. Commissioning
11. Allowances
12. Miscellaneous
13. Administrative and project management

B. Schedule of Values shall be included with bound submittals. Submittals without a Schedule of Values shall not be reviewed.

1.9 EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURERS

A. Mechanical design is based on equipment and materials scheduled and specified. These are used as the basis for performance characteristics, quality, and physical dimensions/weight.

B. Equipment and materials by other APPROVED manufacturers may be provided by Contractor. In doing so, Contractor assumes responsibility for the performance, quality, and physical dimensions of the proposed units.

C. Any costs associated with modifications to the design due to submittal of equipment and/or materials other than those used as the basis of design are the Contractor's responsibility. This includes any design time, production of drawings, and time delays.

D. Where use of equipment and/or materials other than those used as the basis of design impact other disciplines, Contractor shall assume responsibility for all costs associated with any APPROVED modifications. This may include resizing of electrical circuits, modifying openings in the structure, relocating floor drains, etc.

1.10 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS & TRAINING

A. Submit Operations and Maintenance Manuals two weeks prior to Substantial Completion Inspection. Engineer will not conduct a Substantial Completion Inspection without having reviewed Operations and Maintenance Manuals.

B. Use Operations and Maintenance Manuals as a guide for conducting training of Owner's personnel.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 230010

SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in HVAC equipment schedules or Sections.

B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

C. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque. Unless otherwise noted, windings shall be:

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

I. Insulation: Class F.

J. Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 HP shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 230516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Flexible, ball-joint packed expansion joints.
2. Rubber union connector packless expansion joints.
3. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
4. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
5. Rubber packless expansion joints.
6. Grooved-joint expansion joints.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe and Pressure-Vessel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

SECTION 230516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.

B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

2.2 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
    b. Mason Industries, Inc.
    c. Metraflex Company (The).

2. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.

3. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
4. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.
    a. Bronze hoses and double-braid bronze sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 500 psig at 450 deg F ratings.

5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.
    a. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 420 psig at 70 deg F and 315 psig at 450 deg F ratings.

6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections.
    a. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 515 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
    a. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 275 psig at 70 deg F and 200 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

8. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 8 to NPS 12: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
    a. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

B. Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
   b. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
   c. Mason Industries, Inc.
   d. Metraflex Company (The).

2. Standards: ASTM F 1120 and EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."

3. Type: Circular, corrugated bellows with external tie rods.
4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing: multi- ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe ends, and brass shrouds.

   a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: threaded.
   b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: threaded.
   c. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.

6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: multi- ply stainless-steel bellows, steel pipe ends, and carbon-steel shroud.

   a. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
   b. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Welded.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION JOINT INSTALLATION

A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.

B. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."

C. Install rubber packless expansion joints according to FSA-PSJ-703.

D. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping.

END OF SECTION 230516

SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.

C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

D. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Presealed Systems.

B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
   1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
      a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
   2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
   1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
   2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
   3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
   1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
   2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
   3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
   4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
   5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
   1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
   2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
   3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
   4. Concrete Slabs above Grade: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
   5. Interior Partitions: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.

END OF SECTION 230517

SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.
2. Floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
b. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.
f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.

2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
a. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
b. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with rough-brass finish.
g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with rough-brass finish.

C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 230518

SECTION 230519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
2. Thermowells.
3. Dial-type pressure gages.
4. Gage attachments.
5. Test plugs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Trerice, H. O. Co.
b. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
c. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.

2. Standard: ASME B40.200.

3. Case: Cast aluminum; 9-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Window: Glass.
8. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.

    a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
    b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.2 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS

A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

2.3 THERMOWELLS

A. Manufacturers: Same as manufacturer of thermometer being used.

B. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: brass.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: stainless steel.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
7. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
8. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
9. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

C. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Trerice, H. O. Co.

b. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
c. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.

2. Standard: ASME B40.100.

3. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Stainless steel.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.5 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.

B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of stainless-steel pipe with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 pipe threads.

C. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.6 TEST PLUGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Trerice, H. O. Co.
2. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
3. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.

B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.

C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.

D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.

F. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.7 TEST-PLUG KITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Trerice, H. O. Co.
2. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

B. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing two thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.

C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.

D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.

E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.

F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

2.8 SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
2. Emerson Process Management; Rosemount Division.
3. KOBOLD Instruments, Inc. - USA.

B. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.

C. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.

D. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig.

E. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F.

F. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

G. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees.

B. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.

C. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.

D. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

E. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.

F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.

G. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).

H. Install test plugs in piping tees.

I. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.

J. Install thermometers in the following locations:

1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
3. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
4. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
5. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
6. Inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank.
7. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.

K. Install pressure gages in the following locations:

1. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
2. Inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection.
3. Suction and discharge of each pump.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

C. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.4 SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Thermometer Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.

B. Thermometer Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.

C. Thermometer Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F.

D. Thermometer Scale Range for Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 110 deg F.

E. Pressure Gauge Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 60 PSI.

END OF SECTION 230519

SECTION 230523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze angle valves.
2. Brass ball valves.
3. Bronze ball valves.
4. Iron ball valves.
5. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
6. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
7. High-performance butterfly valves.
8. Bronze lift check valves.
9. Bronze swing check valves.
10. Iron swing check valves.
11. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
12. Iron, grooved-end swing-check valves.
13. Iron, center-guided check valves.
14. Iron, plate-type check valves.
15. Bronze gate valves.
16. Iron gate valves.
17. Bronze globe valves.
18. Iron globe valves.
19. Chainwheels.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 HVAC piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
2. Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.

C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

D. NRS: Nonrising stem.

E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

F. RS: Rising stem.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 VALVES, GENERAL

A. Refer to Part 3 "Valve Applications" Article for applications of valves.

B. Bronze Valves: NPS 2 and smaller with threaded ends, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Ferrous Valves: NPS 2-1/2 and larger with flanged ends, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

E. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream pipe, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Valve Actuators:

1. Chainwheel: For attachment to valves, of size and mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article in Part 3.
2. Gear Drive: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
3. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
4. Lever Handle: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller, except plug valves.
5. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 10 plug valves, for each size square plug head.

G. Extended Valve Stems: On insulated valves.

H. Valve Flanges: ASME B16.1 for cast-iron valves, ASME B16.5 for steel valves, and ASME B16.24 for bronze valves.

I. Valve Grooved Ends: AWWA C606.

1. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

J. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.3 COPPER-ALLOY BALL VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Copper-Alloy Ball Valves:
   a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
   b. Grinnell Corporation.
   c. NIBCO INC.
   d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
   e. Kitz Corporation

B. Copper-Alloy Ball Valves, General: MSS SP-110.

C. Two-Piece, Copper-Alloy Ball Valves: bronze body with full-port, chrome-plated bronze ball; PTFE or TFE seats; and 600-psig minimum CWP rating and blowout-proof stem.

D. Copper-Alloy Ball Valves: Two-piece bronze body with exhaust vent opening, chrome-plated ball with vent, blowout-proof stem, locking handle, and working pressure rating 600-psigCWP.

2.4 PLUG VALVES

A. Plug Valves: MSS SP-78, 175-psi CWP, ASTM A 126 cast-iron body and bonnet, cast-iron plug, Buna N, Viton, or teflon packing, flanged or grooved end connections:

1. Operator: Lever.

2.5 FERROUS-ALLOY BALL VALVES

A. Manufacturers:
1. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
2. NIBCO INC.
3. Kitz Corporation

B. Ferrous-Alloy Ball Valves, General: MSS SP-72, with flanged ends.

C. Ferrous-Alloy Ball Valves: Class 150, full port.

2.6 FERROUS-ALLOY BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Ferrous-Alloy Butterfly Valves:
   a. Keystone
   b. Kitz Corporation

B. Butterfly Valves: MSS SP-67, 200-psi CWP, for tight shutoff, 150-psi maximum pressure differential, ASTM A 126 cast-iron body and bonnet, extended neck, stainless-steel stem, field-replaceable EPDM or Buna N sleeve and stem seals, fully flanged style:

1. Disc Type: Elastomer-coated ductile iron.
2. Gear Drive: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
3. Operator for Sizes 2 Inchesto 6 Inches: Standard lever handle with memory stop.

2.7 BRONZE CHECK VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Type 4, Bronze, Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
   a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
   b. Grinnell Corporation.
   c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
   d. NIBCO INC.
   e. Red-White Valve Corp.
   f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

g. Kitz Corporation

B. Bronze Check Valves, General: MSS SP-80.

C. Type 4, Class 125, Bronze, Swing Check Valves: Bronze body with nonmetallic disc and bronze seat.

2.8 FERROUS-ALLOY WAFER CHECK VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Dual-Plate, Ferrous-Alloy, Wafer Check Valves:
   a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
   b. Grinnell Corporation.
   c. NIBCO INC.
   d. Red-White Valve Corp.
   e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
   f. Kitz Corporation

B. Ferrous-Alloy Wafer Check Valves, General: API 594, spring loaded.

C. Dual-Plate, Class 125 or 150, Ferrous-Alloy, Wafer Check Valves: Flangeless body.

2.9 CAST-IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Type I, Cast-Iron Globe Valves with Metal Seats:
   a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
   b. Grinnell Corporation.
   c. NIBCO INC.
   d. Red-White Valve Corp.
   e. Kitz Corporation

B. Cast-Iron Globe Valves, General: MSS SP-85.

C. Type I, Class 125, Cast-Iron Globe Valves: Gray-iron body with bronze seats.

2.10 BRONZE GATE VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Bronze, Gate Valves:
   a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
   b. Grinnell Corporation.
   c. NIBCO INC.
   d. Powell, Wm. Co.
   e. Red-White Valve Corp.
   f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

g. Kitz Corporation

B. Bronze Gate Valves, General: MSS SP-80, with ferrous-alloy handwheel.

C. Type 1, Class 125, Bronze Gate Valves: Bronze body with nonrising stem and bronze solid wedge and union-ring bonnet.

2.11 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Type 2, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
   a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
   b. Grinnell Corporation.
   c. NIBCO INC.
   d. Red-White Valve Corp.
   e. Kitz Corporation

B. Bronze Globe Valves, General: MSS SP-80, with ferrous-alloy handwheel.

C. Type 2, Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves: Bronze body with PTFE or TFE disc and union-ring bonnet.

2.12 CHAINWHEELS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Babbitt Steam Specialty Co.
2. Roto Hammer Industries.
3. Trumbull Industries.

B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.

1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
2. Attachment: For connection to butterfly valve stems.
3. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron of type and size required for valve. Include zinc coating.
4. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine piping system for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
   1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

C. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

D. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

E. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

F. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install chainwheels on operators for valves NPS 4and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.

F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:

1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
2. Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly or plug valves.
2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
3. Throttling Service: Globe, angle or ball valves.
4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves: Spring-loaded, lift-disc check valves

B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
5. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
6. For Grooved-End Steel Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

3.4 CHILLED-WATER AND HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Chilled-Water Systems: Use the following valve types:

1. Gate Valves: Class 150, bronze body; or Class 125, cast-iron body.
2. Ball Valves: Class 150, 600-psi CWP, with stem extension and memory stop.
3. Plug Valves: Buna N packing.
4. Globe Valves: Class 125, bronze body with bronze or teflon disc; or Class 125, cast-iron body.
5. Butterfly Valves: Nickel-plated ductile iron, aluminum bronze, or elastomer-coated ductile iron disc; EPDM sleeve and stem seals.
6. Check Valves: Dual-plate, wafer, Class 150 ferrous alloy.

3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Refer to Division 23 Sections for basic piping joint construction.

B. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with keyed coupling housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

END OF SECTION 230523

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Pipe stands.
7. Equipment supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.
4. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" and Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.

2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Pipe stands.
4. Equipment supports.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
      b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
      c. Flex-Strut Inc.
      d. GS Metals Corp.
      e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
      f. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
      g. Wesanco, Inc.
   2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
   3. Standard: MFMA-4.
   4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
   5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
   6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
   7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dipped galvanized.
   8. Paint Coating: Epoxy.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Manufacturers:
   1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
   2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
   3. PHS Industries, Inc.
   4. Pipe Shields, Inc.
   5. Rilco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
   6. Value Engineered Products, Inc.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless- steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.6 PIPE STANDS

A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Base: Plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

E. Fastener System Installation:
1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Pipe Stand Installation:

1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

N. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

    a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

    a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.

    a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

    a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
    e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.

5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 Sections.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.

G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.

H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
2. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
3. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
4. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
5. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
6. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
7. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
13. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

P. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

Q. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
5. Elastomeric hangers.
6. Spring hangers.
7. Vibration isolation equipment bases.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210548.13 "Vibration Controls for Fire Suppression" for devices for fire-suppression equipment and systems.
2. Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing" for devices for plumbing equipment and systems.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.

1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

D. Wind-Restraint Details:

1. Basic Wind Speed: Refer to Arch.
2. Building Classification Category: Refer to Arch.
3. Code recommended wind pressure multiplied by the maximum area of the HVAC component projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.
4. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of **wind** restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
5.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Welding certificates.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: Provide operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
2. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
3. California Dynamics Corporation.
4. Isolation Technology, Inc.
5. Kinetics Noise Control.
6. Mason Industries.
7. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.

8. Vibration Isolation.
9. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

B. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:
1. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
2. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
3. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
4. Surface Pattern: Ribbed or Waffle pattern.
5. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
6. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
7. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and elastomeric.

a. Surface Pattern: Ribbed or Waffle pattern.
b. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

C. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:
1. Mounting Plates:

a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded.
b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.

2. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

D. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts
1. Description: All-directional isolator with restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.

a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

E. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators:
1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
5. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

F. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:
1. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.

a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
b. Top plate with threaded mounting holes elastomeric pad.
c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.

2. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

G. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

H. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

I. Steel Rails: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel rails.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide rails.

a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.

2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Rails shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.

J. Steel Bases: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.

a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.

2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.

2.2 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
2. California Dynamics Corporation.
3. Isolation Technology, Inc.
4. Kinetics Noise Control.
5. Mason Industries.
6. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
7. Vibration Isolation.
8. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

B. Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.

a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.

2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Division 03 Sections.

3.4 VIBRATION-CONTROL AND WIND-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

B. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.

C. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

D. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

E. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

F. Drilled-in Anchors:
   1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
   2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.

3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.

B. Adjust active height of spring isolators.

END OF SECTION 230548.13

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Duct labels.
5. Stencils.
6. Valve tags.
7. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

D. Valve numbering scheme.

E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
   1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
   2. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
   3. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
   4. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
   5. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
   6. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

C. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

D. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.

E. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

F. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

G. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

2.4 DUCT LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

C. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

D. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.

E. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

F. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

G. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include duct size and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass beaded chain.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Color: Safety-yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09 Sections.

B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.

1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.

C. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

D. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

E. Pipe Label Color Schedule: Coordinate with Owner.

3.5 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes: Coordinate with Owner.

B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.6 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

3.7 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

3.8 PAINTING

A. Clarification: In exposed areas (with no acoustic ceiling tiles), piping and piping insulation shall be painted. Although Division 9 may not specifically call for painting of MEP items, it states paint type and requirements for different materials. To extent possible coordinate painting with Division 9 and with Architect. Where adequate specifications are not available, use the following general guidelines:

1. Ferrous Metal: Semi-Gloss, Alkyd-Enamel Finish: 2 finish coats over an enamel undercoat and primer.
    a. Primer: Quick-drying, rust-inhibitive, alkyd-based or epoxy-metal primer, as recommended by the manufacturer for this substrate, applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils. S-W: Kem Kromik Universal Metal Primer B50NZ6/B50WZ1.
    b. Undercoat: Alkyd, interior enamel undercoat or semi-gloss, interior, alkyd-enamel finish coat, as recommended by the manufacturer for this substrate, applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils. S-W: Pro-mar 200 Interior Alkyd Enamel B34W200 Series.
    c. Finish Coat: Same as undercoat. Semi-gloss, alkyd, interior enamel applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils.
2. ASJ Jacket: Semi-Gloss, Acylic-Enamel Finish: 2 finish coats.
    a. Undercoat: Semi-gloss acrylic latex enamel applied at spreading rate recommended by manufacturer to achieve a dry film thickness of 2.0 mils. S-W: Pro-Mar Interior Latex Egg-Shell Enamel B20W200.
    b. Finish Coat: Same as undercoat. Semi-gloss, acrylic latex enamel applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils

B. Final colors shall be coordinated with Owner and Architect during construction.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. TAB Contractor shall be hired under the Prime Contractor and not under Mechanical Contractor. Prime Contractor and all sub-contractors shall coordinate activities and assist TAB Contractor as needed.

B. Section Includes:

1. Balancing Air Systems:
   a. Variable-air-volume systems.

2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:

3. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
   a. Motors.
   b. Chillers.
   c. Pumps.
   d. AHUs.
   e. Condensing units.

4. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.
5. Sound tests.
6. Vibration tests.
7. Duct leakage tests.
8. Control system verification.
9. Other tests as specified.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.

B. BAS: Building automation systems.

C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.

E. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.

F. TDH: Total dynamic head.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. TAB Conference: If requested by the Owner, conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.

1. Minimum Agenda Items:

a. The Contract Documents examination report.
b. The TAB plan.
c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Sustainability Submittals:

1. Air-Balance Report: Documentation indicating that work complies with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
2. TAB Report: Documentation indicating that work complies with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.

C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.

D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.

E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.

F. Certified TAB reports.

G. Sample report forms.

H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:

1. Instrument type and make.
2. Serial number.
3. Application.
4. Dates of use.

5. Dates of calibration.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC.

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC as a TAB technician.

B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."

C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.

C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.

D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.

F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.

1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.

H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.

I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.

K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.

L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.

M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.

N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.

O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.

P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:

1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
3. Instrumentation to be used.
4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.

B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:

1. Airside:

a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
d. Clean filters are installed.
e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
h. Ceilings are installed.
i. Windows and doors are installed.
j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

2. Hydronics:

a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
c. Water treatment is complete.
d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
f. Control valves are functioning per the sequence of operation.
g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
i. Pump gage connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" and in this Section.

B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.

1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.

D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.

D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.

E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.

F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

I. Check for airflow blockages.

J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure total airflow.

    a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
    d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.

2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:

    a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.

d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.

3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
4. Obtain approval from commissioning authority for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.

1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.

C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.

1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.

D. Verify final system conditions.

1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
4. Mark all final settings.
5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
6. Measure and record all operating data.
7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's

recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.

4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:

    a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
    b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
    c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
    d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
    e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
    f. When in full cooling or full heating, ensure that there is no mixing of hot-deck and cold-deck airstreams unless so designed.
    g. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.

5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

    a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
    c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
    e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.

6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:

    a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.

7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.

    a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.

b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.

8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:

   a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
   b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
   c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
   d. Mark final settings.
   e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
   f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

3.7 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for pumps, coils, and heat exchangers. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required coil and heat exchanger flow rates with pump design flow rate.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.

C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing as follows:

1. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
2. Check highest vent for adequate pressure.
3. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
4. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
5. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
6. Check that air has been purged from the system.

D. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.

1. Measure total water flow.

   a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
   b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
   c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.

2. Measure pump TDH as follows:

   a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
   b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
   c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.

d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.

3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.

E. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.

1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.

F. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:

1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

G. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:

1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

H. Verify final system conditions as follows:

1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
3. Mark final settings.

I. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Phase and hertz.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
8. Service factor and frame size.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

A. Balance water flow through each evaporator to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:

1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
2. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
3. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
4. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
5. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
6. For air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

A. Verify proper rotation of fans.

B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

C. Record fan and motor operating data.

3.11 DUCT LEAKAGE TESTS

A. Witness the duct pressure testing performed by Installer.

B. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified tolerances.

C. Report deficiencies observed.

3.12 TEMPERATURE TESTING

A. During testing, adjusting, and balancing, report need for adjustment in temperature regulation within the automatic temperature-control system.

B. Measure indoor wet- and dry-bulb temperatures every other hour for a period of 2 successive 8-hour days, in each separately controlled zone, to prove correctness of final temperature settings. Measure when the building or zone is occupied.

C. Measure outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR SPACE PRESSURIZATION MEASUREMENTS AND ADJUSTMENTS

A. Before testing for space pressurization, observe the space to verify the integrity of the space boundaries. Verify that windows and doors are closed and applicable safing, gaskets, and

sealants are installed. Report deficiencies and postpone testing until after the reported deficiencies are corrected.

B. Measure, adjust, and record the pressurization of each room, each zone, and each building by adjusting the supply, return, and exhaust airflows to achieve the indicated conditions.

C. Measure space pressure differential where pressure is used as the design criteria, and measure airflow differential where differential airflow is used as the design criteria for space pressurization.
   1. For pressure measurements, measure and record the pressure difference between the intended spaces at the door with all doors in the space closed. Record the high-pressure side, low-pressure side, and pressure difference between each adjacent space.
   2. For applications with cascading levels of space pressurization, begin in the most critical space and work to the least critical space.
   3. Test room pressurization first, then zones, and finish with building pressurization.

D. To achieve indicated pressurization, set the supply airflow to the indicated conditions and adjust the exhaust and return airflow to achieve the indicated pressure or airflow difference.

E. For spaces with pressurization being monitored and controlled automatically, observe and adjust the controls to achieve the desired set point.
   1. Compare the values of the measurements taken to the measured values of the control system instruments and report findings.
   2. Check the repeatability of the controls by successive tests designed to temporarily alter the ability to achieve space pressurization. Test overpressurization and underpressurization, and observe and report on the system's ability to revert to the set point.
   3. For spaces served by variable-air-volume supply and exhaust systems, measure space pressurization at indicated airflow and minimum airflow conditions.

F. In spaces that employ multiple modes of operation, such as normal mode and emergency mode or occupied mode and unoccupied mode, measure, adjust, and record data for each operating mode.

G. Record indicated conditions and corresponding initial and final measurements. Report deficiencies.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR INDOOR-AIR QUALITY MEASUREMENTS

A. After air balancing is complete and with HVAC systems operating at indicated conditions, perform indoor-air quality testing.

B. Observe and record the following conditions for each HVAC system:
   1. The distance between the outside-air intake and the closest exhaust fan discharge, flue termination, or vent termination.
   2. Specified filters are installed. Check for leakage around filters.
   3. Cooling coil drain pans have a positive slope to drain.
   4. Cooling coil condensate drain trap maintains an air seal.
   5. Evidence of water damage.
   6. Insulation in contact with the supply, return, and outside air is dry and clean.

C. Measure and record indoor conditions served by each HVAC system. Make measurements at multiple locations served by the system if required to satisfy the following:
   1. Most remote area.
   2. One location per floor.
   3. One location for every 5000 sq. ft.

D. Measure and record the following indoor conditions for each location two times at two-hour intervals, and in accordance with ASHRAE 113:
   1. Temperature.
   2. Relative humidity.
   3. Air velocity.
   4. Concentration of carbon dioxide (ppm).

E. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

3.15 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:

   1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
   2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
   3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
   4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
   5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
   6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
   7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
   8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
   9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.
   10. Verify controls sequences for other MEP items as specified.

B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

3.16 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

   1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
   2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
   3. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.

B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.17 PROGRESS REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B. Status Reports: Prepare monthly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.18 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Pump curves.
2. Fan curves.
3. Manufacturers' test data.
4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents including the following:

    a. Indicated versus final performance.
    b. Notable characteristics of systems.

c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.

12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:

    a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    b. Conditions of filters.
    c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water and steam flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

    a. Unit identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Make and type.
    d. Model number and unit size.
    e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    f. Unit arrangement and class.
    g. Discharge arrangement.
    h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
    j. Number, make, and size of belts.
    k. Number, type, and size of filters.

2. Motor Data:

    a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    b. Horsepower and rpm.
    c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.

f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
c. Fan rpm.
d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
f. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
g. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
h. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
i. Return airflow in cfm.
j. Outdoor-air damper position.
k. Return-air damper position.
l. Vortex damper position.

F. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Coil identification.
d. Capacity in Btu/h.
e. Number of stages.
f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
g. Rated amperage.
h. Airflow rate in cfm.
i. Face area in sq. ft..
j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Heat output in Btu/h.
b. Airflow rate in cfm.
c. Air velocity in fpm.
d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
f. Voltage at each connection.
g. Amperage for each phase.

G. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and size.

e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Arrangement and class.
g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Motor Data:

a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
b. Horsepower and rpm.
c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
c. Fan rpm.
d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

H. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:

a. System and air-handling-unit number.
b. Location and zone.
c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
e. Duct size in inches.
f. Duct area in sq. ft..
g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
k. Barometric pressure in psig.

I. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:

1. Unit Data:
a. Unit identification.
b. Location.
c. Service.
d. Make and size.
e. Model number and serial number.
f. Water flow rate in gpm.
g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.

h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
i. Pump rpm.
j. Impeller diameter in inches.
k. Motor make and frame size.
l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
m. Voltage at each connection.
n. Amperage for each phase.
o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
p. Seal type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
c. Actual impeller size in inches.
d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
j. Voltage at each connection.
k. Amperage for each phase.

J. Indoor-Air Quality Measurement Reports for Each HVAC System:
1. HVAC system designation.
2. Date and time of test.
3. Outdoor temperature, relative humidity, wind speed, and wind direction at start of test.
4. Room number or similar description for each location.
5. Measurements at each location.
6. Observed deficiencies.

K. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:
a. Instrument type and make.
b. Serial number.
c. Application.
d. Dates of use.
e. Dates of calibration.

3.19 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of commissioning authority.

B. Commissioning authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.

C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."

D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
   1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
   2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
   3. If the second verification also fails, design professional may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.20 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
3. Indoor, exposed ductwork.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
2. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, and are limited to, the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber Insulation:
      a. CertainTeed
      b. Manson.
      c. Knauf FiberGlass GmbH.
      d. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
      e. Schuller International, Inc.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.

G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: Aluminum.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

2.9 TAPES

A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: 4 inches.
2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.

6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
   a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.

    a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.

L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" and fire-resistive joint sealers.

E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

    a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

    a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.

5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.7 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 9.

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

C. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.9 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Vibration-control devices.
7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.10 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Service: Round & rectangular, supply-air ducts concealed.
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket.
2. Thickness: 3 inches (R-8 min).
3. Number of Layers: One.
4. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and paper.
5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.

B. Service: Round & rectangular, return, outside-air and fume hood exhaust ducts concealed.
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket.
2. Thickness: 2 inches (R-6 min).
3. Number of Layers: One.
4. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and paper.
5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.

C. Service: Round supply, make-up, and outside-air ducts, exposed in conditioned space.

1. Double wall, with 2” insulation thickness, and painted.

D. Service: Return air duct, exposed in conditioned space: No insulation. Paint duct.

E. Service: Ten feet of supply and return air ducts closest to AHU or FCU.
   1. Material: In addition to exterior wrap, provide internal liner for sound attenuation purposes.
   2. Thickness: 1 inches.

F. Service: Ten feet of exhaust air duct closest to where duct penetrates the exterior envelope.
   1. Material: Exterior wrap.
   2. Thickness: 2 inches.

G. Where ductwork is not completely concealed, paint all ductwork and insulation. Coordinate color and finish with Architect.

END OF SECTION 230713

SECTION 230716 - HVAC EQUIPMENT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC equipment that is not factory insulated:
   1. Expansion/compression tanks.
   2. Air separators.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
   2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

B. Sustainability Submittals:
   1. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives and sealants, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
   2. Detail removable insulation at equipment connections.
   3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
   4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
   5. Detail field application for each equipment type.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
   2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for equipment insulation application.

1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Breeching Insulation Schedule" and "Equipment Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
b. Armacell LLC.
c. K-Flex USA.

2.2 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
b. Armacell LLC.
c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
d. K-Flex USA.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.3 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
b. Knauf Insulation.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
c. Knauf Insulation.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment insulation.
4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
5. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
4. Color: White or gray.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. ASJ, FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: Aluminum.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal Jacket:
1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
    a. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    b. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    c. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
        1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
        2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
        3) Tee covers.
        4) Flange and union covers.
        5) End caps.
        6) Beveled collars.
        7) Valve covers.
        8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.7 TAPES

A. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
   1. Width: 4 inches.
   2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
   3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
   4. Elongation: 5 percent.
   5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.8 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:
   1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide .
   2. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
   1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

2.9 CORNER ANGLES

A. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
   1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
   2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:

1. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

B. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
   1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
   2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
   3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
   4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
   1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
   2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.

3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.

    a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints.

L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

O. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION

A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.
1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

B. Insulation Installation on Pumps:
1. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-inch-diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a latching mechanism.
2. Fabricate boxes from galvanized steel, at least 0.050 inch thick.
3. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof

sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.6 FINISHES

A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

C. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections: Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.8 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.

C. Chilled-water expansion/compression tank, air-separator, pumps, and any other cold surface capable of forming condensation: Insulation shall be the following:
   1. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inch thick.

D. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
   1. Aluminum, smooth: 0.020 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230716

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:

1. Condensate drain piping, indoors.
2. Chilled-water and brine piping, indoors.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.7 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cellular-Glass Insulation:
   a. Pittsburgh-Corning Corp.
   b. Cell-U-Foam Corporation; Ultra-CUF.

2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation:
   a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aerocel.
   b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
   c. RBX Corporation; Insul-Sheet 1800 and Insul-Tube 180.

3. Closed-Cell Phenolic-Foam Insulation:
   a. Kooltherm Insulation Products, Ltd.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Mineral-fiber insulation will NOT be allowed for use on any cold piping systems.

B. Mineral-fiber wrap is NOT approved for use on piping insulation.

C. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

D. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

E. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

F. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

G. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

H. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
   1. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
   2. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
   3. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
   4. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

I. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.

J. Phenolic:
   1. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
   2. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
   3. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
   4. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

      a. Preformed Pipe Insulation: ASJ.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.

1. Products:

    a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-96.
    b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-33.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Phenolic Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.

1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Products:

    a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aeroseal.
    b. Armacell LCC; 520 Adhesive.
    c. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
    d. RBX Corporation; Rubatex Contact Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Products:

    a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
    b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
    c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; S-90/80.
    d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
    e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
4. Color: White or gray.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: Aluminum.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

4. Color: White.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. Metal Jacket:
1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.

a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
c. Moisture Barrier: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
d. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
3) Tee covers.
4) Flange and union covers.
5) End caps.

6) Beveled collars.
7) Valve covers.
8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

D. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil-thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.

2.11 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Width: 2 inches.
2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 5 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
1. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range. **NO EXCEPTION: PIPES SHALL BE PAINTED.**

C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.

    a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.

2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF PHENOLIC INSULATION

A. General Installation Requirements:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.9 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.

B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.

C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.11 FINISHES

A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 9 Sections.

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of

inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of fittings, two locations of strainers, three locations of valves, for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.13 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.14 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.

2. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.

B. Chilled Water and Brine, 60 Deg F and below:

1. NPS 3 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:

   a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
   b. Phenolic: 2 inches thick.

2. NPS 4 to NPS 12: Insulation shall be one of the following:

   a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
   b. Phenolic: 3 inches thick.

3. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.

C. Where piping is exposed to view or not completely concealed above wall-to-wall suspended ceiling tiles, insulation shall be painted. Coordinate color and finish with Architect.

3.15 OUTDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE (INCLUDES PUMP ROOM)

A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.

2. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
3. Field-Applied Jacket: Aluminum jacket.

B. Chilled Water and Brine, 60 Deg F and below:

1. NPS 3 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2.5 inches thick.
b. Phenolic: 2.5 inches thick.

2. NPS 4 to NPS 12: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
b. Phenolic: 3 inches thick.

3. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
4. Field-Applied Jacket: Aluminum jacket.

3.16 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
1. Aluminum, Smooth with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.020 inch thick.

3.17 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 230719

SECTION 230800 - COMMISSIONING OF HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes commissioning process requirements for the following MEP systems, assemblies, and equipment:
   1. HVAC equipment.
   2. Controls and instrumentation, including BAS energy monitoring and control system.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general commissioning process requirements and Commissioning Coordinator responsibilities.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Refer to Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for additional definitions and assignment of responsibilities.

1.4 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Refer to Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements".

B. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.

C. Attend construction phase controls coordination meeting.

D. Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meeting.

E. Participate in mechanical systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection.

F. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.

G. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for required test period.

H. Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures for actual mechanical systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be furnished and installed as part of the construction contract.

I. Direct and coordinate commissioning testing among subcontractors, suppliers, and vendors.

J. Verify testing, adjusting, and balancing of Work are complete.

K. Provide test data, inspection reports, and certificates in Systems Manual.

1.5 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

A. Provide the following information to the CxA for inclusion in the commissioning plan:
   1. Plan for delivery and review of systems manuals, and other documents and reports.
   2. Identification of installed systems, assemblies, equipment, and components including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
   3. Process and schedule for completing construction checklists and manufacturer's pre-start and startup checklists for mechanical systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be verified and tested.
   4. Certificate of completion certifying that installation, pre-start checks, and startup procedures have been completed.
   5. Certificate of readiness certifying that mechanical systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing.
   6. Test and inspection reports and certificates.
   7. Corrective action documents.
   8. Verification of testing, adjusting, and balancing reports.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Construction Checklists: See related Sections for technical requirements, and generate construction checklists for the following:
   1. Instrumentation and control for MEP systems.
   2. Chiller plant, Fans, Air-handling units and fan coil units.

B. Certificates of readiness.

C. Certificates of completion of installation, pre-start, and startup activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Refer to Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements".

3.2 SYSTEMS READINESS CHECKLISTS

A. Construction Checklists: Assist CxA in the preparation of detailed Systems Readiness checklists for systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.
   1. Contributors to the development of checklists shall include, but are not limited to:
      a. Systems and equipment installers.

b. TAB technicians.
c. Instrumentation and controls installers.

B. Contractor shall conduct Systems Readiness Testing to document compliance with installation and Systems Readiness checklists prepared by Commissioning Authority for Division-23 items.

C. Refer to Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for issues relating to Systems Readiness checklists and testing, description of process, details on non-conformance issues relating to pre-functional checklists and test.

3.3 SYSTEM START-UP

A. Contractor is solely responsible for system start-up. CxA may, at his discretion, witness start up procedures, but will not perform any Functional Testing of systems until Contractor has completed start-up and resolved all operating deficiencies.

3.4 TESTING PREPARATION

A. Certify that systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.

B. Certify that instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved Shop Drawings and submittals, and that pretest set points have been recorded.

C. Certify that TAB procedures have been completed and that TAB reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.

D. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested according to approved test procedures (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).

3.5 TESTING AND BALANCING VERIFICATION

A. Prior to performance of testing and balancing Work, provide copies of reports, sample forms, checklists, and certificates to the CxA.

B. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to verify testing and balancing of mechanical systems at the direction of the CxA.
1. The CxA will notify Contractor 4 days in advance of the date of field verification. Notice will not include data points to be verified.
2. The testing and balancing Subcontractor shall use the same instruments (by model and serial number) that were used when original data were collected.
3. Failure of an item includes a deviation of more than 10 percent. Failure of more than 10 percent of selected items shall result in rejection of final testing, adjusting, and balancing report.
4. Remedy deficiency and notify CxA so verification of failed portions can be performed.

3.6 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.

B. Scope of mechanical testing shall include entire HVAC installation, from equipment through distribution systems to each space served. Testing shall include measuring capacities and effectiveness of operational and control functions.

C. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.

D. Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.

E. Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the Contracting Officer and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.

F. The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.

G. The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.

H. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the mechanical system, document the deficiency and report it to the Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.

I. If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

3.7 GENERAL TESTING PROCEDURES FOR HVAC SYSTEMS, SUBSYSTEMS, AND EQUIPMENT

A. HVAC Instrumentation and Control System Testing: Contractor shall fully test operation of controls system prior to requesting Functional Testing with CxA. Point-to-point check out sheets and as-built control diagrams shall be provided to CxA so he may develop testing procedures.

B. HVAC Distribution System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of air distribution systems; special exhaust; and other distribution systems, including HVAC terminal equipment and unitary equipment.

3.8 FUNCTIONAL TEST PROCEDURES FOR SYSTEMS TO BE COMMISSIONED

A. General

1. The following paragraphs outline the functional test procedures for the various Div. 23 items to be commissioned. Functional testing will take place only after System Readiness

checklists have been completed, equipment has been started-up, TAB has been verified, and Contractor has certified that systems are ready for functional testing.

2. All systems controlled via the Building Automation System shall have all control points and sequences tested by Controls Contractor prior to requesting testing by CX Authority.
3. Functional testing of HVAC systems shall include testing of the BAS.

B. All Equipment:
1. Verify nameplate information (serial numbers, model numbers, etc.); verify that equipment capacity is in accordance with requirements of construction documents.
2. Verify unit runs smoothly and quietly.
3. Verify operation of safeties.
4. Verify electrical wiring and grounding is correct.
5. Verify maintenance and NEC clearances are maintained.
6. Verify Systems Readiness Checklists have been completed.

3.9 COMMISSIONING TESTS

A. Functional testing will be performed on all HVAC equipment, including but limited to the following:
1. Chiller plant
2. AHUs
3. Exhaust fans
4. Air distribution system
5. Building automation system

B. Sample requirements are as follows:
1. Record temperatures, pressures.
2. Record programmed setpoints (unocc/occ temperature, RH, CO2, runtime, safeties, alarms).
3. Record programmed schedules and interlocks.
4. Verify equipment installation
5. Verify equipment operation.
6. Verify electrical voltage and amperages are within tolerance.
7. Verify unit data in TAB report.
8. Verify alarms and safeties.
9. Verify all sequences.
10. Verify setpoint resets, adaptive controls for energy conservation.

C. Customized system readiness checklists and function testing requirements will be released after the submittal review phase.

3.10 TRAINING AND O&M MANUALS

A. Refer to Div. 23 specifications.

END OF SECTION 230800

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. DDC system for monitoring and controlling of HVAC systems.
2. Delivery of selected control devices to equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to HVAC systems installers for field installation.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" for control sequences in DDC systems.

1.3 CODE REQUIREMENTS

A. All equipment and material and its installation shall conform to the current requirements of the following authorities, and local amendments:
1. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA)
2. International Electric Code (IEC)
3. International Fire Code
4. International Building Code
5. International Mechanical Code
6. International Plumbing Code
7. International Energy Conservation Code
8. UL 916

B. Where two or more codes conflict, the most restrictive shall apply. Nothing in these specifications shall be construed to permit work not conforming to applicable codes.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. All submittals must be in native PDF format, wherein all text is searchable. Submittals which contain scanned documents which are not 'searchable' will be rejected without being reviewed.

B. Product Data: For each type of product include the following:

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control

signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.

3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
4. Bill of materials of indicating quantity, manufacturer, and extended model number for each unique product.
5. When manufacturer's product datasheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product model, clearly indicate and highlight only applicable information.
6. Each submitted piece of product literature shall clearly cross reference specification and drawings that submittal is to cover.

C. System Description:

1. Full description of DDC system architecture, network configuration, operator interfaces and peripherals, servers, controller types and applications, gateways, routers and other network devices, and power supplies.
2. General Requirements:

    a. Include cover drawing with Project name, location, Owner, Architect, Contractor and issue date with each Shop Drawings submission.
    b. Include a drawing index sheet listing each drawing number and title that matches information in each title block.

3. Schematic drawings for each controlled HVAC system indicating the following:

    a. I/O points labeled with point names shown. Indicate instrument range, normal operating set points, and alarm set points. Indicate fail position of each damper and valve, if included in Project.
    b. I/O listed in table format showing point name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and cross-reference to product data sheet number.
    c. A graphic showing location of control I/O in proper relationship to HVAC system.
    d. Wiring diagram with each I/O point having a unique identification and indicating labels for all wiring terminals.
    e. Unique identification of each I/O that shall be consistently used between different drawings showing same point.
    f. Elementary wiring diagrams of controls for HVAC equipment motor circuits including interlocks, switches, relays and interface to DDC controllers.
    g. Narrative sequence of operation.

        1) Contractor is expected to review all specified sequences and submit questions concerning any ambiguities, potential errors or omissions, prior to turning in submittals. Submittals which simply restate control sequences as written in specifications are not acceptable. Submittals must include a restatement of sequences as they will actually be programmed.

4. DDC system network riser diagram; indicate each device connected to network with unique identification for each, communication protocol, speed and physical means of interconnecting network devices, such as copper cable type, or fiber-optic cable, network port(s) for connection of an operator workstation or other type of operator interface, etc.

5. Color graphics.

a. Submit samples and an itemized list of ALL the various graphics pages being proposed for control system. Show layout of pictures, graphics and data displayed, navigation icons, etc.
b. Graphics for equipment must be schematically correct versus equipment as actually installed (e.g., all sensors, coils, devices, shown in correct locations & sequential order).
c. Engineer's approval of submitted sample graphics pages represents preliminary approval and does not preclude the possibility that graphics' deficiencies may be found in subsequent testing and inspections.

D. Software Submittal:

1. Cross-referenced listing of software to be loaded on each operator workstation, server, gateway, and DDC controller.
2. Description and technical data of all software provided, and cross-referenced to products in which software will be installed.
3. Operating system software, operator interface and programming software, color graphic software, DDC controller software, maintenance management software, and third-party software.
4. Include a flow diagram and an outline of each subroutine that indicates each program variable name and units of measure.
5. Listing and description of each engineering equation used with reference source.
6. Listing and description of each constant used in engineering equations and a reference source to prove origin of each constant.
7. Description of operator interface to alphanumeric and graphic programming.
8. Description of each network communication protocol.
9. Description of system database, including all data included in database, database capacity and limitations to expand database.
10. Description of each application program and device drivers to be generated, including specific information on data acquisition and control strategies showing their relationship to system timing, speed, processing burden and system throughout.
11. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. All submittals must be in native PDF format, wherein all text is searchable. Submittals which contain scanned documents which are not 'searchable' will be rejected without being reviewed.

B. Coordination Drawings: Plan drawings and corresponding product installation details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

C. Systems Provider Qualification Data: Resume of project manager, installation and programming technician, and service technicians assigned to Project, including name, phone number, and e-mail address.

D. Product Certificates: Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certifying that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. As-built record documentation per section 017700 – Closeout Procedures.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For DDC system to include in emergency, operation and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Names, addresses, e-mail addresses and 24-hour telephone numbers of Installer and service representatives for DDC system and products.
b. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems including logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control and changing set points and variables.
c. Programming manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
d. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manuals.
e. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
f. Backup copy of graphic files, programs, and database in electronic media form.
g. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
h. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
i. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics software.
j. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents.
k. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
l. Owner training materials.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials and parts that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

B. Include product manufacturers' recommended parts lists for proper product operation over five-year period following warranty period. Parts list shall be indicated for each year.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation.

B. Coordinate supply of conditioned electrical circuits for control units.

C. Coordinate equipment with Division 16 Section "Panelboards".

1.9 PAYMENTS

A. 10% of controls cost will be withheld until documentation is provided that the Commissioning and Acceptance Test was carried out, and that it was verified by Engineer.

B. 5% of controls cost will be withheld until documentation is provided that the Training was carried out, and that it was acceptable by the Owner.

1.10 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITY

A. All control items, services, and work shown in specifications and drawings shall be provided by Controls Contractor either directly or by subcontract. These shall include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following:
   1. Install control equipment incorporating DDC for energy management, equipment monitoring and control, software, programming, including color graphic workstations.
   2. Provide control relays and devices, air flow monitoring devices, pressure and temperature sensing devices, dampers and actuators, etc.
   3. Provide electrical work associated with control system and as called for on Drawings. Perform all wiring in accordance with all local and national codes. Provide all line voltage wiring, concealed or exposed, in accordance with Div. 26. All low voltage electrical control wiring throughout the building when exposed shall be run in conduit in accordance with Division 26. All low voltage wiring run in concealed accessible areas shall be run using plenum rated wire only.
   4. Provide 120V power for direct digital control systems PCU's, and LCU's, as defined later in these specifications, and make final panel hook-up and all final electrical connections to each controller. Provide power for all damper-actuators including VAV boxes.
      a. Power circuit to PCU/LCU shall serve PCU/LCU and no other equipment.
      b. Use spares or provide new circuit breaker.
   5. Use spare circuit breakers or provide new where no spares exist.
   6. Provide all wiring and conduit for all DDC temperature controls, monitoring devices including DDC signal wiring.
   7. Provide all control relays. Where motor starters are not called for or do not exist for 1-phase equipment, provide relays and contactors as required for start/stop control by BAS.
   8. Provide surge transient protection shall be incorporated in design of system to protect electrical components in all primary control units.
   9. Provide all warranty related work, products, materials, and labor.
   10. Provide all software programming.
   11. Provide consulting and programming services to Owner and Installing Contractor as required to resolve operating problems after system installation.
   12. Provide shop drawings indicating equipment locations, points allocation, and schematic wiring. Submittals shall indicate all information pertinent to PCU locations, PCU capacity and spare points, input/output module configuration within PCUs, communication trunks, sensors, valves, pneumatic interface, wiring, and other pertinent equipment information requiring approval prior to field installation. Provide a DDC system riser diagram showing buildings, controller or device within each building, and listing equipment controlled or monitored by each.
   13. Provide graphics programming, showing floor plans of all buildings, equipment locations, and operating parameters.
   14. Provide commissioning of system.
   15. Provide reference manuals.
   16. Provide Owner training.
   17. Warranty work.
   18. Other services, materials, and products as called for in construction documents.

B. The following equipment and services shall be coordinated with the Owner:
   1. Network connections.

C. Coordinate with Mechanical Contractor. Mechanical Contractor provides:
   1. Installation of control dampers, actuators and all manual dampers.
   2. Temporary 24V thermostat for new equipment, if required.
   3. Fan coil units with factory-installed dampers (where indicated).
   4. Rooftop / AH units with factory-installed outside air damper actuator and controls.

1.11 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. DDC System Manufacturer Qualifications:

   1. Nationally recognized manufacturer of DDC systems and products.
   2. DDC systems with similar requirements to those indicated for a continuous period of ten years within time of bid.
   3. Having complete published catalog literature, installation, operation and maintenance manuals for all products intended for use.
   4. Having full-time in-house employees for the following:

      a. Product research and development.
      b. Product and application engineering.
      c. Product manufacturing, testing and quality control.
      d. Technical support for DDC system installation training, commissioning and troubleshooting of installations.
      e. Owner operator training.

B. DDC System Provider / Installer Qualifications:

   1. A direct factory owned office of the manufacturer, for the brand or make of control equipment to be supplied, with engineers capable of providing instructions, routine maintenance, design services, programming, and emergency system service on staff.
   2. Project supervisor and programmers shall be DDC system manufacturer employees. Only construction services not directly related to DDC system operation (such as provision of electrical power, conduit installation and wire-pulling, etc.) may be subcontracted to non-manufacturer workers.
   3. A manufacturer’s employee working on this project shall be officed within 40 miles of Project and assigned to support Project during warranty period.
   4. Each manufacturer employee assigned to Project shall be a competent and experienced full-time employee with demonstrated past experience on at least 5 projects of similar complexity, scope and value.

1.12 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

   1. Failures shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost or reduction in service to Owner.
   2. Include updates or upgrades to software and firmware if necessary to resolve deficiencies.

a. Install updates only after receiving Owner's written authorization.

3. Warranty service shall occur during normal business hours and commence no later than 8 hours following Owner's warranty service request.
4. Warranty Period: **Two years from date of final system acceptance**.

a. Final Acceptance of system is not related to nor dependent upon Substantial Completion. Final system acceptance will be granted only after system is operating without any substantive problems for a minimum of 30 consecutive days, and all issues on Commissioning Issues Log and Engineer's punch lists have been resolved. Obtain formal written approval from Engineer and Owner contractual date of system Final Acceptance.

B. Warranty Inspections

1. At approximately 12 months and 24 months after Final Acceptance of control system, provide a minimum 5 hour on-site inspection of system.
2. Inspection will include an evaluation of performance of the system, including an accuracy of all sensors (re-calibration or replacement is required for sensors obviously inaccurate), solicitation of operator's input of system problems and inadequacies, review of operating sequences and alarm logs to discover potential recurring problems or nuisances, discovery of any failed points, and general system reliability.
3. Provide a written report of each site visit summarizing activities and findings, and recommendations for improving system performance.
4. Failure to provide the on-site inspections at a time near that specified, or by the end of Warranty, does not relieve contractor of obligation to provide such inspections.

1.13 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish quantity indicated of matching product(s) in Project inventory **for each unique size and type** of following:

1. Room Relative Humidity Sensor and Transmitter: Five.
2. Adjustable Range Room Temperature Sensors: Five.
3. CO2 sensor: Five.
4. Current-Sensing Relay: Five.

1.14 EQUIPMENT AND SOFTWARE UPDATES / UPGRADES / REVISIONS

A. Equipment: All equipment, components, parts, materials, etc. provided shall be fully compatible with all other equipment provided at any other time throughout the warranty period. Should updated versions be provided that are not fully compatible with earlier equipment provided (e.g.: a requirement to add hardware or software "interfacing" between an earlier and later generation results in the system not being fully compatible), Controls contractor shall replace earlier equipment with the later version at no cost to Owner.

B. Software: If acceptable to the Owner, all software upgrades applicable to the system and offered by the manufacturer / contractor for this system shall be provided at no cost to the Owner throughout the warranty period. This no cost upgrade shall include installation, programming, modification to field equipment, data base revisions, etc. all as appropriate.

C. Revisions: Hardware / software revisions made related to refining sequences of control, adding/monitoring control points, or other similar operations shall be made with all "burn-in" performed at the contractor's expense, throughout the warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Following Manufacturer's are allowed to bid on this project:
   1. Base Bid: Automated Logic Controls
   2. Alternate Bid (see bid form): Trane.

2.2 DDC SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Modular, microprocessor-based, high-speed, peer-to-peer network of distributed DDC controllers, operator interfaces, and software monitoring and control, including analog/digital conversion and program logic, utilizing stand-alone controllers operating over a local area network allowing peer-to-peer communication among all system controllers, and communications interface to Owner's Central Operator's Station.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 WEB ACCESS

A. DDC system shall be Web based.

   1. DDC system software shall be based on server thin-client architecture, designed around open standards of Web technology. DDC system server shall be accessed using a Web browser over DDC system network, using Owner's LAN, and remotely over Internet.
   2. Intent of thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to DDC system via a Web browser. No special software other than a Web browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends; to configure trends, points, and controllers; and to edit programming.
   3. Web access shall be password protected.

2.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Network Bandwidth: Design each network of DDC system to include at least 30 percent available spare bandwidth with DDC system operating under normal and heavy load conditions indicated. Calculate bandwidth usage, and apply a safety factor to ensure that requirement is satisfied when subjected to testing under worst case conditions.

B. System Response Time:

   1. Graphic display refresh shall update within eight seconds.
   2. AI point value shall update within 5 seconds, BI point values within 10 seconds.
   3. AO and BO points shall begin to respond to controller output commands within three second(s).

4. Alarms of analog and digital points connected to DDC system shall be displayed within 15 seconds of activation or change of state.
5. Global commands shall also comply with this requirement.

C. Future Expandability:

1. DDC system size shall be expandable to an ultimate capacity of at least four times total I/O points indicated.
2. Additional DDC controllers, I/O and associated wiring shall be all that is needed to achieve ultimate capacity. Initial network infrastructure shall be designed and installed to support ultimate capacity.
3. Operator interfaces installed initially shall not require hardware and software additions and revisions for ultimate capacity.

D. Environmental Conditions for Controllers, Gateways, and Routers:

1. Products, instruments and actuators shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.

    a. If product alone cannot comply with requirement, install product in a protective enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated, cooled and ventilated as required by product and application.

2. Products shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Products not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Installed location shall dictate the following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:

    a. Outdoors, Protected: Type 3.
    b. Outdoors, Unprotected: Type 4X.
    c. Indoors, Heated with Ventilation: Type 2.
    d. Indoors, Heated and Air Conditioned: Type 1.
    e. Unconditioned Chiller and Boiler Rooms: Type 4X.
    f. Conditioned Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Type 1.
    g. Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: Type 1.
    h. Localized Areas Exposed to Washdown: Type 4X.

E. Electric Power Quality:

1. Protect DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from power-line surges to comply with requirements of IEEE C62.41. Do not use fuses for surge protection.
2. Ground Fault: Protect products from ground fault by providing suitable grounding. Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition.

F. UPS: Provide UPS power protection for Servers, and DDC controllers (except application-specific controllers), and Gateways.

G. Continuity of Operation after Electric Power Interruption: Equipment and associated factory-installed controls, field-installed controls, electrical equipment, and power supply connected to

building normal and backup power systems shall automatically return equipment and associated controls to operating state occurring immediately before loss of normal power, without need for manual intervention by operator when power is restored either through backup power source or through normal power if restored before backup power is brought online.

2.5 PANEL-MOUNTED, MANUAL OVERRIDE SWITCHES

A. Manual Override of Control Dampers:

1. Include panel-mounted, two-position, selector switch for each automatic control damper being controlled by DDC controller. Label each switch with damper designation served by switch, and switch positions to indicate either "Manual" or "Auto" control signal to damper. With switch in "Auto" position signal to control damper actuator shall be control loop output signal from DDC controller.

    a. For Binary Control Dampers: Manual two-position switch shall have "Close" and "Open" switch positions indicated. With switch in "Close" position, damper shall close. With switch in "Open" position, damper shall open.
    b. For Analog Control Dampers: A gradual switch shall have "Close" and "Open" switch limits indicated. Operator shall be able to rotate switch knob to adjust damper to any position from close to open.

2. DDC controller shall monitor and report position of each manual override selector switch. With switch placed in "manual" position, DDC controller shall signal an override condition to alert operator that damper is under manual, not automatic, control.

2.6 SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

A. System architecture shall consist of no more than two levels of LANs.

1. Level one LAN shall connect network controllers and operator workstations.
2. Level two LAN shall connect application-specific controllers to application-specific controllers.

B. Minimum Data Transfer and Communication Speed:

1. LAN Connecting Operator Workstations and Network Controllers: 100 Mbps.
2. LAN Connecting Programmable Application Controllers: 1000 kbps.
3. LAN Connecting Application-Specific Controllers: 19,200 bps.

C. DDC system shall consist of dedicated LANs that are not shared with other building systems and tenant data and communication networks.

D. System architecture shall be modular and have inherent ability to expand to not less than three times system size indicated with no impact to performance indicated.

E. Number of LANs and associated communication shall be transparent to operator. All I/O points residing on any LAN shall be capable of global sharing between all system LANs.

F. System design shall eliminate dependence on any single device for system alarm reporting and control execution. Each controller shall operate independently by performing its' own control, alarm management and historical data collection.

G. Special Network Architecture Requirements:

1. Air-Handling Systems: For control applications of an air-handling system that consists of air-handling unit(s) and VAV terminal units, include a dedicated LAN of application-specific controllers serving VAV terminal units connected directly to controller that is controlling air-handling system air-handling unit(s).

2.7 DDC SYSTEM OPERATOR INTERFACES

A. Operator Means of System Access: Operator shall be able to access entire DDC system through any of multiple means, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Desktop and portable operator workstation with hardwired connection through LAN port.
2. Portable operator terminal with hardwired connection through LAN port.
3. Portable operator workstation with wireless connection through LAN router.
4. PDA with wireless connection through LAN router.
5. Remote connection using outside-of-system computer or PDA through Web access.

B. Access to system, regardless of operator means used, shall be transparent to operator.

C. Network Ports: For hardwired connection of desktop or portable operator workstation. Network port shall be easily accessible, properly protected, and clearly labeled.

D. Desktop and Portable Workstations:

1. Connect to DDC system Level one LAN through a communications port directly on LAN or through a communications port on a DDC controller.
2. Able to communicate with any device located on any DDC system LAN.
3. Able to communicate remotely with any device connected to any DDC system LAN.
4. Connect to DDC system sub-LANs through a communications port on an application-specific controller, or a room temperature sensor connected to an application-specific controller.
5. Monitor, program, schedule, adjust set points, and report capabilities of I/O connected anywhere in system.

E. Personal Digital Assistant:

1. Connect to system through a wireless router connected to LAN.
2. Able to communicate with any DDC controller connected to DDC system.

F. Critical Alarm Reporting:

1. Operator-selected critical alarms shall be sent by DDC system to notify operator of critical alarms that require immediate attention. System shall send alarm notification to multiple recipients that are assigned for each alarm.
2. Alarms must be set to observe proper time delays and other logic to avoid nuisance tripping.
3. **Coordinate with Owner's representatives to set up Owner's desired alarm notification procedures and methodologies by means including e-mail, text message and pre-recorded phone message to mobile and landline phone numbers.**

G. Simultaneous Operator Use: Capable of accommodating simultaneous operators that are accessing DDC system through any one of operator interfaces indicated.

2.8 NETWORK COMMUNICATION PROTCOL

A. Network communication protocol(s) used throughout entire DDC system shall be open to public and available to other companies for use in making future modifications to DDC system.

B. ASHRAE 135 Protocol:

1. ASHRAE 135 communication protocol shall be a required protocol used throughout entire DDC system. The Web Server shall support the BACnet Interoperable Building Blocks (BIBBS) for Read (Initiate) and Write (Execute) Services.
2. System shall not require use of gateways except to integrate HVAC equipment and other systems and equipment not required to use ASHRAE 135 communication protocol.

a. Review manufacturer's communications protocols for all systems with which BAS will integrate, and provide gateways as required to allow full communication, such as, for examples, Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b, LonWorks technology using CEA-709.1-C.

2.9 DESKTOP OPERATOR WORKSTATIONS

A. Not Applicable. Use Owner's existing.

2.10 PORTABLE OPERATOR WORKSTATIONS

A. Not Applicable. Use Owner's existing.

2.11 PRINTERS

A. Not Applicable. Use Owner's existing.

2.12 SERVERS

A. Furnish a Web Server to allow daily operations functions, using real-time system data, to be accomplished from any network connected web browser, from within the facility or in remote locations throughout the world.

B. Servers shall include software license(s), and CAT-5e or CAT-6 cable installation between server(s) and network.

C. Operators shall be able to utilize any commercially available browser such as Microsoft Internet Explorer or Netscape Navigator. No additional software shall have to be installed on the client PC for normal operation of the system.

D. All communications between the web browser and web server shall be encrypted using 128 bit SSL encryption.

E. Web server shall be able to be located on the Owner's Intranet or on the Internet.

F. Web server shall have the ability to automatically obtain an IP (Internet Protocol) address using DHCP. Use of static IP addressing shall also be supported.

G. Web server will have adequate capacity to store and serve 500 user defined graphics, and to archive not less than 12 consecutive months of historical data for all I/O points connected to system, including alarms, event histories, transaction logs, trends and other information indicated.

H. Server(s) shall use IT industry-standard database platforms such as Microsoft SQL Server and Microsoft Data Engine (MSDE). The Web browser client shall support Sun Microsystems Java 2 (JRE 1.4.0 or higher) plug-in.

I. Functionality:

1. A minimum of 30 users shall be able to utilize the system device at the same time. Operators with proper security shall be able to:

    a. View graphical information about a facility, change setpoints, perform overrides.
    b. View and change schedules.
    c. View and acknowledge alarms.
    d. View historical information.

2. Operators must enter in a valid unique user name and password to access the system.
3. Operator security: The Web server shall include industry standard security protocols to prohibit access by unauthorized users over the World Wide Web. Provide firewalls between server Web and networks with password protection for access to server from Web server.
4. The web server shall display the same graphics that have been created for the Operators Workstation.
5. Operators with proper access shall be able to configure the web server using their web browser.

J. Web Server Hardware.

1. Provide a solid-state web server. This device may not contain any moving parts including but not limited to cooling fans, disk drives, CD Rom drives etc.
2. All user entered information (web pages, security, etc.) shall be stored in non-volatile memory. System operational information and clock functions shall be backed up by battery or other device for a minimum of 72 hours.

2.13 SYSTEM SOFTWARE

A. System Software Minimum Requirements:

1. Provide all software required for efficient operation of all the automatic system functions required by this specification. Software shall be modular in design for flexibility in expansion or revision of the system. It is the intent of this specification to require provisions of a system which can be fully utilized by individuals with no, or limited, previous exposure to PC's and programming techniques and languages.
2. The software in the system shall consist of both "firmware" resident in the PCU's and "software" resident in the operator work stations. The architecture of the system, and the application software/firmware shall be distributed with no single system component responsible for a control function for the entire Controller LAN. Each PCU shall contain the necessary firmware and I/O capability to function independently in case of a network failure. No active energy management or environmental control sequences shall be

resident in the PC work stations. All PC work stations shall be removable from the system without loss of control function - only alarm monitoring, long term history collection, and operator monitor/command/edit functions would be lost.

3. Software: **All software upgrades applicable to the system and offered by the manufacturer / contractor for this system shall be provided at no cost to the Owner throughout the warranty period.** This no-cost upgrade shall include installation, programming, modification to field equipment, data base revisions, etc. all as appropriate.
4. Real-time multitasking and multiuser 32- or 64-bit operating system that allows concurrent multiple operator workstations operating and concurrent execution of multiple real-time programs and custom program development.
5. Operating system shall be capable of operating DOS and Microsoft Windows applications.
6. Database management software shall manage all data on an integrated and non-redundant basis. Additions and deletions to database shall be without detriment to existing data. Include cross linkages so no data required by a program can be deleted by an operator until that data have been deleted from respective programs.
7. Network communications software shall manage and control multiple network communications to provide exchange of global information and execution of global programs.
8. Operator interface software shall include day-to-day operator transaction processing, alarm and report handling, operator privilege level and data segregation control, custom programming, and online data modification capability.
9. Scheduling software shall schedule centrally based time and event, temporary, and exception day programs.

B. Basic Interface Description

1. Operator workstation interface software shall minimize operator training through the use of English language prompting, English language point identification and industry standard PC application software. The software shall provide, as a minimum, the following functionality: a. Graphical viewing and control of environment
2. Scheduling and override of building operations
3. Collection and analysis of historical data
4. Definition and construction of dynamic color graphic displays
5. Editing, programming, storage and downloading of controller databases
6. Provide a graphical user interface which shall minimize the use of a typewriter style keyboard through the use of a mouse or similar pointing device and "point and click" approach to menu selection. Users shall be able to start and stop equipment or change setpoints from graphical displays through the use of a mouse or similar pointing device.

    a. Provide functionality such that all operations can also be performed using the keyboard as a backup interface device.
    b. Provide additional capability that allows at least 10 special function keys to perform often used operations.

7. The software shall provide a multi-tasking type environment that allows the user to run several applications simultaneously. The mouse shall be used to quickly select and switch between multiple applications. This shall be accomplished through the use of Microsoft Windows or similar industry standard software that supports concurrent viewing and controlling of systems operations. a. Provide functionality such that any of

the following may be performed simultaneously, and in any combination, via user-sized windows:

a. Dynamic color graphics and graphic control
b. Alarm management coordinated with section 2.04.E.
c. Time-of-day scheduling
d. Trend data definition and presentation
e. Graphic definition
f. Graphic construction

8. If the software is unable to display several different types of displays at the same time, the EMS contractor shall provide at least two operator workstations.
9. Multiple-level password access protection (minimum of five levels of access) shall be provided to allow the user/manager to limit workstation control, display and data base manipulation capabilities as he deems appropriate for each user, based upon an assigned password.

a. Level 1 = View all applications, but perform no database modifications
b. Level 2 = Custodial privileges plus the ability to acknowledge alarms
c. Level 3 = All privileges except system configuration
d. Level 4 = All configuration privileges except passwords
e. Level 5 = All privileges

10. A minimum of 50 unique passwords, including user initials, shall be supported.
11. Operators will be able to perform only those commands available for their respective passwords. Menu selections displayed shall be limited to only those items defined for the access level of the password used to log-on.
    a. The system shall automatically generate a report of log-on/log-off time and system activity for each user.
    b. User-definable, automatic log-off timers of from 5 to 60 minutes shall be provided to prevent operators from inadvertently leaving devices on-line.

12. Software shall allow the operator to perform commands including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Start-up or shutdown selected equipment
b. Adjust setpoints
c. Add/modify/delete time programming
d. Enable/disable process execution
e. Lock/unlock alarm reporting for points
f. Enable/disable totalization for points
g. Enable/disable trending for points
h. Override PID loop setpoints
i. Enter temporary override schedules
j. Define holiday schedules
k. Change time/date
l. Automatic daylight savings time adjustments
m. Enter/modify analog alarm limits
n. Enter/modify analog warning limits
o. View limits
p. Enable/disable demand limiting for each meter
q. Enable/disable duty cycle for each load

C. Reports and Logs:

1. Reports shall be generated and directed to either CRT displays, printers or disk. As a minimum, the system shall allow the user to easily obtain the following types of reports:

    a. A general listing of all points in the network
    b. List of all points currently in alarm
    c. List of all points currently in override status
    d. List of all disabled points
    e. List of all points currently locked out
    f. DDC Controller trend overflow warning
    g. List all weekly schedules
    h. List of holiday programming
    i. List of limits and deadbands.
    j. Summaries shall be provided for specific points, for a logical point group, for a user-selected group or groups or for the entire facility without restriction due to the hardware configuration of the building automation system. Under no conditions shall the operator need to specify the address of the hardware controller to obtain system information.

2. Include reporting software package that allows operator to select, modify, or create reports using DDC system I/O point data available.
3. Each report shall be definable as to data content, format, interval and date.
4. Report data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive on server for historical reporting.
5. Operator shall be able to obtain real-time logs of all I/O points by type or status, such as alarm, point lockout, or normal.
6. Reports and logs shall be stored on [workstation] [and] [server] hard drives in a format that is readily accessible by other standard software applications, including spreadsheets and word processing.
7. Reports and logs shall be readily printed and set to be printed either on operator command or at a specific time each day.

D. Standard Reports: Standard DDC system reports shall be provided and operator shall be able to customize reports later.

1. All I/O: With current status and values.
2. Alarm: All current alarms, except those in alarm lockout.
3. Disabled I/O: All I/O points that are disabled.
4. Alarm Lockout I/O: All I/O points in alarm lockout, whether manual or automatic.
5. Alarm Lockout I/O in Alarm: All I/O in alarm lockout that are currently in alarm.
6. Alarm history.

E. Custom Reports: Operator shall be able to easily define any system data into a daily, weekly, monthly, or annual report.

F. Scheduling:

1. Monthly calendars for a 24-month period shall be provided which allow for simplified scheduling of holidays and special days in advance.
2. Weekly schedules shall be provided for each building zone or piece of equipment with a specific occupancy schedule.

3. Zone schedules shall be provided for each building zone. Each commandable point may have a unique schedule of operation relative to the zone' s occupancy schedule, allowing for sequential starting and control of equipment within the zone.
4. Holidays and special days shall be user-selected with the pointing device and shall automatically reschedule equipment operation.
5. Collection and Analysis of Historical Data

    a. Provide trending capabilities that allow the user to easily monitor and preserve records of system activity over an extended period of time. Any system point may be trended automatically at time-based intervals or changes of value, both of which shall be user definable. Trend data may be stored on hard disk for future diagnostics and reporting.
    b. Trend data report graphics shall be provided to allow the user to view all trended point data. Reports may be customized to include individual points or pre-defined groups of at least 6 points. Provide additional functionality to allow any trended data to be transferred easily to an off-the-shelf spreadsheet package such as Lotus 1-2-3a. This shall allow the user to perform custom calculations such as energy usage, equipment efficiency and energy costs and shall allow for generation of these reports on high-quality plots, graphs and charts.

2.14 GRAPHICS

A. Provide Central Operator's Station with software and hardware as needed to meet requirements specified herein. Graphics are to be online programmable and under password control.

B. System shall be provided with complete color graphics software package, such that graphics can be created by user from time of software installation, without need for additional hardware or software. Each operator work station shall support not less than 1,000 separate graphic pages. Contractor shall include developed graphics as approved by the Owner's representative for this project.

C. Graphics program shall be fully user interactive, full color, incorporating the following capabilities:

1. Up to 50 dynamic points of data per graphic page
2. Animated objects for discrete points to illustrate point status
3. On-line 'draw' utility
4. Ability to import .PCX or .DXF file format graphics developed in third party programs
5. "Page Linking" such that it is possible to "zoom" into a specific AHU or any other page through a sequence of graphics without using anything but the system mouse.
6. Generate, store, and retrieve library symbols for use in generating graphic pages.
7. Fifty (50) dynamic points of data per graphic page.
8. Pixel level resolution. Graphics will be displayed on EGA monitors with a 640 X 350 resolution, and on VGA monitors with a 640 X 480 resolution, minimum. Color selections will be made from a color bar consisting of 16 colors, with adjacent text description.
9. Animated objects for discrete points (i.e., when a pump starts, the pipe fills with water or when a damper shuts it goes closed on the screen).
10. Analog bar graphs for analog points. The operator shall be able to locate up to 60 bar graphs per graphic page, with options as to bar graph color, dimensions, horizontal/vertical orientation, and limit values.

D. Provide for import of .PCX file format graphics developed in third party programs such as Paintbrush. Such imported graphics shall be used as a "backdrop", so that all other dynamic and animated system features may be superimposed on this graphic. Similarly, it shall be possible to import CAD type drawings, by first converting the CAD drawing from .DXF format to .PCX format.

E. The EMS contractor shall provide libraries of pre-engineered screens and symbols depicting standard air handling unit components (e.g., fans, cooling coils, filters, dampers, etc.), complete mechanical systems (e.g., constant volume-terminal reheat, VAV, etc.) and electrical symbols, so that Owner may develop graphics.

F. The graphic development package shall use a mouse or similar pointing device in conjunction with a drawing program to allow the user to perform the following:

1. Define symbols
2. Position and size symbols
3. Define background screens
4. Define connecting lines and curves
5. Locate, orient and size descriptive text
6. Define and display colors for all elements
7. Establish correlation between symbols or text and associated system points or other displays

G. System shall allow graphical displays to be created to represent any logical grouping of system points or calculated data based upon building function, mechanical system, building layout or any other logical grouping of points which aids the operator in the analysis of the facility. To accomplish this, the user shall be able to build graphic displays that include point data from multiple DCU Controllers including Terminal Equipment Controllers used or DDC equipment.

H. System Configuration and Definition

1. All temperature and equipment control strategies and energy management routines shall be definable by the operator. System definition and modification procedures shall not interfere with normal system operation and control.
2. The system shall be provided complete with all equipment and documentation necessary to allow an operator to independently perform the following functions:

a. Add/delete/modify stand-alone DDC Controller panels
b. Add/delete/modify operator workstations
c. Add/delete/modify application specific controllers
d. Add/delete/modify points of any type and all associated point parameters and tuning constants
e. Add/delete/modify alarm reporting definition for points
f. Add/delete/modify control loops
g. Add/delete/modify energy management applications
h. Add/delete/modify time and calendar-based programming
i. Add/delete/modify totalization for points
j. Add/delete/modify historical data trending for points
k. Add/delete/modify custom control processes
l. Add/delete/modify any and all graphic displays, symbols and cross-reference to point data
m. Add/delete/modify dial-up telecommunication definition

n. Add/delete/modify all operator passwords. Add/delete/modify alarm messages

3. Definition of operator device characteristics, DCU Controllers individual points, applications and control sequences shall be performed using instructive prompting software. a. Libraries of standard application modules such as temperature, humidity and static pressure control may be used as "building blocks" in defining or creating new control sequences. In addition, the user shall have the capability to easily create and archive new modules and control sequences as desired via a word processing type format. Provide a library of standard forms to facilitate definition of point characteristics. Forms shall be self prompting and incorporate a fill-in-the-blank approach for definition of all parameters. The system shall immediately detect an improper entry and automatically display an error message explaining the nature of the mistake.
4. Inputs and outputs for any process shall not be restricted to a single DCU Controller, but shall be able to include data from any and all other network panels to allow the development of network-wide control strategies. Processes shall also allow the operator to use the results of one process as the input to any number of other processes (cascading).
5. Provide the capability to backup and store all system databases on the workstation hard disk. In addition, all database changes shall be performed while the workstation is on-line without disrupting other system operations. Changes shall be automatically recorded and downloaded to the appropriate DCU Controller. Similarly, changes made at the DCU Controllers shall be automatically uploaded to the workstation, ensuring system continuity. The user shall also have the option to selectively download changes as desired.
6. Provide context-sensitive help menus to provide instructions appropriate with operations and applications currently being performed.

I. Alarm Handling Software:

1. Include alarm handling software to report all alarm conditions monitored and transmitted through DDC controllers, gateways, and other network devices.
2. Alarm handling shall be active at all times to ensure that alarms are processed even if an operator is not currently signed on to DDC system.
3. Alarms display shall include the following:

   a. Indication of alarm condition such as "Abnormal Off," "Hi Alarm," and "Low Alarm."
   b. "Analog Value" or "Status" group and point identification with native language point descriptor such as "Space Temperature, Building 110, 2nd Floor, Room 212."
   c. Discrete per point alarm action message, such as "Call Maintenance Dept. Ext-5561."
   d. Include extended message capability to allow assignment and printing of extended action messages. Capability shall be operator programmable and assignable on a per point basis.

4. Alarms shall be directed to appropriate operator workstations, printers, and individual operators by privilege level and segregation assignments.
5. Send e-mail, page, text and voice messages to designated operators for critical alarms.
6. Alarms shall be categorized and processed by class.

   a. Class 1:

1) Associated with fire, security and other extremely critical equipment monitoring functions; have alarm, trouble, return to normal, and acknowledge conditions printed and displayed.
2) Unacknowledged alarms to be placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer.
3) All conditions shall cause an audible sound and shall require individual acknowledgment to silence audible sound.

b. Class 2:

1) Critical, but not life-safety related, and processed same as Class 1 alarms, except do not require individual acknowledgment.
2) Acknowledgement may be through a multiple alarm acknowledgment.

c. Class 3:

1) General alarms; printed, displayed and placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer queues.
2) Each new alarm received shall cause an audible sound. Audible sound shall be silenced by "acknowledging" alarm or by pressing a "silence" key.
3) Acknowledgement of queued alarms shall be either on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledgement.
4) Alarms returning to normal condition shall be printed and not cause an audible sound or require acknowledgment.

d. Class 4:

1) Routine maintenance or other types of warning alarms.
2) Alarms to be printed only, with no display, no audible sound and no acknowledgment required.

7. Include an unacknowledged alarm indicator on display to alert operator that there are unacknowledged alarms in system. Operator shall be able to acknowledge alarms on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledge key, depending on alarm class.
8. To ensure that no alarm records are lost, it shall be possible to assign a backup printer to accept alarms in case of failure of primary printer.

J. Trends:

1. Trend all I/O point present values, set points, and other parameters indicated for trending.
2. Trends shall be associated into groups, and a trend report shall be set up for each group.
3. Trends shall be stored within DDC controller and uploaded to hard drives automatically on reaching 75% of DDC controller buffer limit, or by operator request, or by archiving time schedule.
4. Trend intervals shall be operator selectable from 10 seconds up to 60 minutes. Set trend intervals for each I/O point after review with Owner and CxA.
5. When drive storage memory is full, most recent data shall overwrite oldest data.
6. Archived and real-time trend data shall be available for viewing numerically and graphically by operators.

2.15 GRAPHICS PAGES LAYOUT AND QUALITY

A. All proposed graphics pages are to be submitted to engineer for approval prior to uploading to system.

1. After uploading graphics pages to system, cooperate with Engineer and Owner to fine tune graphics pages with respect to layout, formatting, points displayed, etc.

B. Schematic representation of all equipment and system graphics must be accurate and representative of the actual installed field conditions, such as respective locations of indicated devices, air flow patterns, etc. Changes in the field installation, variances in equipment installed versus equipment specified, etc., will require controls subcontractor to revise graphics.

C. Control and monitored points for any system may be presented solely in tabular form, without graphic representation, only with prior approval of Engineer. Otherwise, a graphical page showing system schematic must be provided for each system.

D. Where Modbus or Bacnet interface with equipment controllers is provided, all readable / writeable points available must be accessible via BAS. Of these total number of points, a limited, select number of critical points must be displayed on a dedicated graphics page, accessible by clicking on the schematic of the equipment/system with which associated.

1. Provide Engineer with latest updated list of Bacnet or Modbus points, names and addresses from equipment manufacturer.

a. Where selected Bacnet points to display are not designated in drawings or these specifications, budget for displaying up to 24 such points to be selected by Engineer and/or Owner from the latest updated list of Bacnet or Modbus points for equipment being monitored.

2. Equipment manufacturer's point names are often unclear or ambiguous as to what they actually reference. Contractor will modify any point text descriptor per Engineer and/or Owner direction so than the meaning is absolutely clear.

E. Building floor plans

1. Building floor plans are to indicate clearly separate HVAC zones. Distinction between HVAC zones may be illustrated by a variety of means acceptable to Engineer, including darker lines surrounding the zone, color variations, superimposed duct layouts, etc. A clear indication of the extent of floor plan served by each unit must be given. Depending upon temperature-dependent color-coding
2. Engineer endeavors to provide current floor layouts in contract drawings. However, Owner may modify buildings by adding doors or walls, etc. If necessary due to changes in building floor plans, revise graphics to show accurate wall and door locations.
3. All building floor plans must indicate final room numbers (exceptions to include only very small rooms which have no thermostat, such as janitor's closets, etc.). Prior to producing floor plan graphics, confirm in writing from Owner and/or Architect what final room numbers are. Graphics display for special purpose rooms, such as Gyms, Cafeterias, Band Halls, etc., must show this generic name of room in addition to room number (if it is indicated on drawings).
4. Locations of all major equipment (VAV boxes, air handlers, exhaust fans, chillers, boilers, pumps, etc.) are to be indicated on floor plans, along with a clear indication of the area each serves.
5. Floor plan graphic of each zone is to be color-coded, displaying different colors to show space conditions are within or out of specified temperature range.
6. All temperature, relative humidity, and CO2 sensors locations are to be indicated on floor plans in actual position where installed. A clear indication of which unit(s) is

controlled by that sensor must be given (such as by a dashed or curved line connecting the two).

7. Actual readings of temperature, relative humidity, and CO2 sensors are to be indicated on floor plans.

F. Graphics text

1. All text displayed on graphic must be large enough to be clearly and easily readable. Font colors must be chosen for good contrast against background so that they are clearly and easily readable. Super-position of separate text lines overlapping one another or overlapping other iconography is not acceptable.
2. Text wording for labeled points must be clear and easily understood to any person with moderate experience with HVAC systems.
3. Not all text must have identical font and style on each individual graphic page. Use of varying size and style is required and helpful in identifying and distinguishing important values. However, use consistent font size and style for displaying parameters of similar nature or importance.
4. Text for all parameters must be so positioned on graphics screens that it is unquestionably obvious to what symbols, equipment, or values it applies. This is typically done by placing the text very close to the item to which it applies. Where graphics prevent this (e.g. where it would be too crowded and therefore unclear), use arrows or lines connecting value to the item.
5. Equipment indicated in graphics must be identified with the precise name as indicated in drawings in order to facilitate cross-referencing between graphics and drawings. Where equipment name has changed or Owner desires it be changed, make such modification on final graphics pages.
6. Symbols for devices such as smoke detectors, cut-out safety switches, filter dP sensors, heating or cooling coils, etc., must be labeled so that it is unambiguously clear what the symbol represents.
7. Spelling on graphics pages must be correct.

G. Specified Points

1. *At a minimum*, every input and output listed as a point in bid documents must be displayed graphically.

2. Bacnet and Modbus points:
   a. Unless otherwise noted in construction documents, it is not required that every single Bacnet and Modbus point available from an equipment controller be displayed on the DDC control graphics. Many such points will be clearly indicated in this specifications section, or Sequence Of Operations, or points lists in drawings. Prior to field installation of communications connections, provide engineer with the latest list of manufacturer's Bacnet and Modbus points and verify with engineer which points must be read and displayed on DDC system.
   b. Determine the meaning of Bacnet and Modbus points names descriptors with manufacturer where such points names are ambiguous. The names of all such points displayed on DDC graphics must use descriptive text that is entirely unambiguous in meaning.

H. Units

1. Units for all parameters are to be listed on graphics screens or other screens. Use the following nomenclature, or other only as approved by Engineer.

    a. Commanded state: On/Off or Off/Enable, as appropriate
    b. Variable speed motor (e.g. fan or pump) commanded speed: % of full speed

        1) It is unacceptable to display BAS output signal to VFD when such signal does not correspond to the actual VFD/fan speed. Coordinate closely with VFD programming such that speed indication on BAS screen exactly matches actual VFD speed.

    c. Variable speed motor (e.g. fan or pump) speed feedback: % of full speed feedback
    d. Duct static pressure and duct static pressure setpoint: in. WC, or "wc, following by 'setpoint' when value displayed is the setpoint
    e. Temperature: ˚F, or deg F, or simply 'F'

        1) Outside air temperature: OAT
        2) Discharge or supply air temperature: use either DAT or SAT
        3) Return air temperature: RAT

    f. Relative humidity: % RH
    g. Valve or damper analog output commanded position: % open

        1) For bypass valves, add descriptive text such as "% open to bypass")

    h. Valve or damper analog output feeback position: % open / position feedback
    i. CO2 reading and CO2 setpoint: ppm
    j. Hydronic system pressure: psi
    k. Hydronic system differential pressure: psi dP, or psi ΔP
    l. Chiller cooling load: Tons
    m. Refrigerant system pressure: psi
    n. Alarm state of any point: Alarm / Normal
    o. Air flow: CFM
    p. Water flow: GPM
    q. Light level: fc (footcandles)
    r. Filter status: Dirty / Clean for digital, in. WC, or "wc for analog
    s. Power and energy: kWh, kW, KVA.

2. For any additional parameters not specifically listed above, use similarly descriptive, standardly accepted units designations, approved by Engineer.
3. Consistent nomenclature for points must be used throughout all graphics pages.
4. Graphics text MUST distinguish between On/Off and Off/Enable digital output points. Typical Off/Enable items include chillers, boilers, DX units, etc. Typical On/Off items include fan motors, pumps, etc. Do not indicate a status or command value of "ON" for equipment that is actually controlled as Off/Enable.
5. **Numerical values for all units are to be displayed to decimal point values truncated to a level commensurate with the accuracy of the sensor.** Unless otherwise noted, display values to the following decimal accuracy:

    a. List to 0 decimal points accuracy: Variable speed drive speed, relative humidity, % valve and damper position, CO2 concentration, water flow, air flow, gallons, kWh, KVA, kW, amps.

b. List to 1 decimal point accuracy: Temperature sensor inputs, temperature setpoints, duct static pressure, and voltage.
c. List to 2 decimal point accuracy: Building static pressure.

I. Reset schedules

1. ALL reset schedules specified in operating sequences must be clearly indicated on the screen of the equipment to which it applies. (For example, a chilled water supply temperature reset schedule versus outside air temperature must be listed on the chiller graphic page.) All values in this reset schedule are to be operator adjustable by clicking on the value within the reset schedule.

J. Forced parameters

1. Provide a clear indication on graphic screen when automatic control or readout of *any* point (command or status, input or output, analog or digital) has been overridden (usually referred to as being placed in Operator or Forced or Manual mode). This may be done in a variety of ways acceptable to engineer (such as placing a large, bold M next to the point, having the point value flash red, placing a dashed rectangle around it, etc.)
2. The indication of a point being in Forced mode must be placed on the main graphic screen of the equipment such that Operator is not required to access other backup screens to see which points are Forced.

K. Provide navigation icons or "linkages" for major systems pages or major equipment items to allow the operator to switch quickly from one major system or building area screen to another.

L. Indication of equipment Status

1. Graphics must make clear with no ambiguity the meaning of the term "Status" (often as applied to equipment such as boilers and chillers, the meaning is not intuitively clear).

a. When Status indicates presence or absence of an alarm, it must be labeled "Alarm Status".
b. When Status indicates an actual on/off or operating state of equipment, specifically indicate what status is being provided. For example, if the Status point reads whether the burner is firing or not, it must be labeled "Burner Status"; if the Status point reads whether a chiller compressor is On or not, it must be labeled "Compressor Status"; if the Status point simply indicates whether a piece of equipment has received an Enable command or not, it must be labeled "Status: Equipment Enabled".

2.16 DDC CONTROLLERS

A. DDC system shall consist of a combination of network controllers, programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers to satisfy performance requirements indicated.

B. DDC controllers shall perform monitoring, control, energy optimization and other requirements indicated.

C. DDC controllers shall use a multitasking, multiuser, real-time digital control microprocessor with a distributed network database and intelligence.

D. Each DDC controller shall be capable of full and complete operation as a completely independent unit and as a part of a DDC system wide distributed network. The digital system controllers shall perform full control automation functions regardless of the condition of communications with the Central Operator's Station.

E. Environment Requirements:

1. Controller hardware shall be suitable for the anticipated ambient conditions.
2. Controllers located in conditioned space shall be rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.
3. Controllers located outdoors shall be rated for operation at 32 to 150 deg F.

F. Power and Noise Immunity:

1. Controller shall operate at 90 to 110 percent of nominal voltage rating and shall perform an orderly shutdown below 80 percent of nominal voltage.
2. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5 to 120 Hz and from keyed radios with up to 5 W of power located within 36 inches (900 mm) of enclosure.

G. DDC Controller Spare Processing Capacity:

1. Include spare processing memory for each controller. RAM, PROM, or EEPROM will implement requirements indicated with the following spare memory:

a. Network Controllers: 50 percent.
b. Programmable Application Controllers: Not less than 50 percent.
c. Application-Specific Controllers: Not less than 50 percent.

2. Memory shall support DDC controller's operating system and database and shall include the following:

a. Monitoring and control.
b. Energy management, operation and optimization applications.
c. Alarm management.
d. Historical trend data of all connected I/O points.
e. Maintenance applications.
f. Operator interfaces.
g. Monitoring of manual overrides.

H. DDC Controller Spare I/O Point Capacity: Include spare I/O point capacity for each controller as follows:

1. Network Controllers:

a. 20 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO points connected to controller.
b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:

1) AIs: Two.
2) AOs: Two.
3) BIs: Two.
4) BOs: Two.

2. Programmable Application Controllers:

a. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:

1) AIs: Two.
2) AOs: Two.
3) BIs: Two.
4) BOs: Two.

3. Application-Specific Controllers:

a. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:

1) AIs: Two.
2) AOs: Two.
3) BIs: Two.
4) BOs: Two.

2.17 NETWORK CONTROLLERS

A. General Network Controller Requirements:

1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
2. System shall consist of one or more independent, standalone, microprocessor-based network controllers to manage global strategies indicated.
3. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
4. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
5. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
6. Controllers shall have a real-time clock.
7. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
8. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

B. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

2.18 PROGRAMMABLE APPLICATION CONTROLLERS

A. General Programmable Application Controller Requirements:

1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
2. Software applications shall reside and operate in controllers. Editing of applications shall occur at operator workstations. Controllers shall be configured to use stored default values to ensure fail-safe operation.

3. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
4. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
5. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
6. Controllers that perform scheduling shall have a real-time clock.
7. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
8. Controllers shall be fully programmable.
9. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
10. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

2.19 APPLICATION-SPECIFIC CONTROLLERS

A. Description: Microprocessor-based controllers, which through hardware or firmware design are dedicated to control a specific piece of equipment. Controllers are not fully user-programmable but are configurable and customizable for operation of equipment they are designed to control.

1. Capable of standalone operation and shall continue to include control functions without being connected to network.
2. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.

B. Communication: Application-specific controllers shall communicate with other application-specific controller and devices on network, and to programmable application and network controllers.

2.20 SENSORS & FIELD DEVICES

A. All sensors and field devices shall be of commercial grade quality and shall be installed according to the manufacturer's recommendations. Outdoor damper actuators shall be rated for exterior service and provided in weatherproof UV-inhibited housing.

B. Wired controllers and sensors only. Wireless controllers and sensors are not permitted for this project.

C. Temperature Sensors (General)
1. All temperature inputs for the automation system shall be derived directly from analog inputs from electronic temperature sensors. Transducing of pneumatic sensor signals shall not be acceptable.
2. Temperature sensing elements shall be RTD type, thermistor type, or solid state sensors, as specified in drawings or points list. All sensors of a particular type shall be from the same manufacturer.
3. Characteristics for temperature sensors:
   a. Interchangeability of +/- 0.2% at the reference temperature.
   b. Time constant response to temperature change shall be less than three seconds per degree F.

c. Sensors shall be linear, drift free, and require only a one time calibration. Sensing elements shall be factory calibrated.
d. The sensing elements shall be hermetically sealed.
e. Additional linearizing, ranging, and lead length compensation may be accomplished in software if required to meet the accuracies specified within.

4. Expected temperature sensor operating range and end to end accuracy, including errors associated with sensor, transmitter (if applicable), leadwire and A/D conversion shall be as follows:

Sensed Element	Expected Oper. Range	Sensor Accuracy
a. Return air	40 to 100˚F	0.5˚F
b. Indoor space temperature	40 to 100˚F	0.5˚F
c. Outside air	0 to 125˚F	0.5˚F

D. Adjustable Limited Range Wall Temperature Sensors (Thermostats)

1. General: All wall sensors installed as part of this project shall have adjustable limited range setpoint adjustment function.
   a. 10K-2-R-SOD (10K, DA, Cool / Warm, OVR). Override option shall be provided.
   b. Setpoint limits shall be adjustable via the COS and password protected.
   c. Unit shall have a built in processor and shall communicate with local controller.
   d. Unit shall have an LCD display for space temperature and on / off state
   e. Unit shall have a password protection function to restrict access to service mode.
   f. Provide extra thermostats: 5 of each type.
2. Following areas shall have sensors with override option in addition to adjustable setpoint range function: all sensors in Administration, Gym.

E. Humidity Sensors: Bulk polymer sensor element.

1. Bulk polymer sensor element. Install humidity sensors in the space and not in ductwork unless specifically noted. Coordinate locations of duct mounted sensors with Engineer.
   a. Accuracy: 5 percent full range with linear output.
   b. Room Sensors: With locking cover matching room thermostats, span of 25 to 90 percent relative humidity.
   c. Duct and Outside-Air Sensors: With element guard and mounting plate.

F. Carbon Dioxide (CO2) sensors:

1. CO2 sensor shall monitor indoor carbon dioxide (CO2) levels in accordance with ASHRAE standard 62-2004. Complete kit shall include optional aspiration box for mounting sensor inside return air duct.
2. Sensor shall have a 4 - 20 mA linear output over a range of 0 - 5000 ppm of CO2. A SPDT shall be provided for local control or alarm output.
3. **Provide sensor with LCD readout.**
4. Power: 24VAC or DC at 400mA max.
5. Measuring range: 0-2000 ppm
6. Accuracy: 40 ppm + 2% of reading
7. Analog output: 4-20 mA
8. Control relay: N.O. SPST, 0.75 amp at 24VAC/VDC
9. Operating temperature: 32° - 122°F
10. Operating humidity: 5-95% non-condensing
11. Calibration adjustment: zero to span
12. Min. req. calibration: One year
13. Unit enclosure: UL fire rated

14. Aspiration box: High impact styrene

G. Equipment operation sensors as follows:
1. Status Inputs for Electric Motors: Current-sensing relay with current transformers, adjustable and set to 175 percent of rated motor current.
2. Electronic Valve/Damper Position Indication: Visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.

H. Equipment on/off control shall use either momentary pulsed relays or magnetically latched relays, as appropriate for the equipment's control starter. Interfacing controls shall be configured such that in its last commanded state. All equipment safeties and interlocks shall remain active, and will not be bypassed by new EMS controls. For motors with VFDs provide On/Off Control as appropriate VFD terminals.

I. Watthour Transducers: Shall have an accuracy of +/- 2.5% at 0.5 power factor to 2.0% at 1 power factor for KW and KWH outputs. Output signals for KW and KWH shall be internally selectable without requiring the changing of current or potential transformers. Current and potential transformers shall be in accordance with ANSI C57.13.

J. Voltage Outputs: Variable voltage outputs shall provide a voltage signal from 0 to 20 volts. All voltage outputs shall be fuse protected against shorts to 120 volts AC and capable of withstanding a short ground indefinitely. All voltage outputs shall be protected against + or - 1500 volts, 50 microseconds transients. Voltage outputs shall have a resolution of 0.1 volts.

K. Current Outputs: Variable current outputs shall be a sinking type and shall provide 0 to 20 milliamps with a resolution of 0.1 mA and a compliance of 20 volts minimum. All current outputs shall be fuse protected to 120 volts AC and protected against + or - 1500 volts, 50 microsecond transients.

L. Pressure Sensors: Pressure sensors and differential pressure sensors shall be piezo-resistive strain-gauge with temperature compensation. Sensors shall be selected to provide linear indication with an adequate span for the application. Sensor shall be 0 - 10 V or 4 - 20 mA. Insure sensors are rated to operate at temperature of sensed media. Sensors shall have an accuracy of 1% of full scale. Sensors shall accept overpressures of at least 120 psig, at any port, without damaging the sensor.

M. Motor On/Off Status: Unless otherwise specified, status shall be proven using current sensing relays connected at VFDs and calibrated for minimal operating speed.

N. Hardware Overrides: A three position manual override switch shall allow selection of the ON, OFF, or AUTO outputs state for each output point. In addition, all analog output points shall be equipped with an override potentiometer to allow manual adjustment of the analog output signal over its full range, when the 3 position manual override switch is placed in the ON position.

O. Damper Actuators
1. Electronic direct-coupled actuation shall be provided.
2. The actuator shall be direct-coupled over the shaft, enabling it to be mounted directly to the damper shaft without the need for connecting linkage. The fastening clamp assemble shall be of a 'V' bolt design with associated 'V' shaped toothed cradle attaching to the shaft for maximum strength and eliminating slippage. Spring return actuators shall have a 'V' clamp assembly of sufficient size to be directly mounted to an integral jackshaft of

up to 1.05 inches when the damper is constructed in this manner. Single bolt or screw type fasteners are not acceptable.

3. The actuator shall have electronic overload or digital rotation sensing circuitry to prevent damage to the actuator throughout the entire rotation of the actuator. Mechanical end switches or magnetic clutch to deactivate the actuator at the end of rotation are not acceptable.
4. For power failure/safety applications, an internal mechanical spring return mechanism shall be built into the actuator housing. Non-mechanical forms of fail-safe operation are not acceptable.
5. All spring return actuators shall be capable of both clockwise or counterclockwise spring return operation by simply changing the mounting orientation.
6. Proportional actuators shall accept a 0 to 10VDC or 0 to 20mA control input and provide a 2 to 10VDC or 4 to 20mA operating range. An actuator capable of accepting a pulse width modulating control signal and providing full proportional operation of the damper is acceptable. All actuators shall provide a 2 to 10VDC position feedback signal.
7. All 24VAC/DC actuators shall operate on Class 2 wiring and shall not require more than 10VA for AC or more than 8 watts for DC applications. Actuators operating on 120VAC power shall not require more than 10VA. Actuators operating on 230VAC shall not require more than 11VA.
8. All non-spring return actuators shall have an external manual gear release to allow manual positioning of the damper when the actuator is not powered. Spring return actuators with more than 60 in-lb torque shall have a manual crank for this purpose.
9. All modulating actuators shall have an external, built-in switch to allow reversing direction of rotation.
10. Actuators shall be provided with a conduit fitting and a minimum 3ft electrical cable and shall be pre wired to eliminate the necessity of opening the actuator housing to make electrical connections.
11. Actuators shall be Underwriters Laboratories Standard 873 listed and Canadian Standards Association Class 4813 02 certified as meeting correct safety requirements and recognized industry standards.
12. Actuators shall be designed for a minimum of 60,000 full stroke cycles at the actuator's rated torque and shall have a 2-year manufacturer's warranty, starting from the date of installation. Manufacturer shall be ISO9001 certified.

P. Control Valves

1. Control Valves: Factory fabricated, of type, body material, and pressure class based on maximum pressure and temperature rating of piping system, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Globe or Characterized Ball Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze body, bronze trim, rising stem, renewable composition disc, and screwed ends with backseating capacity repackable under pressure.
3. Globe or Characterized Ball Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron body, bronze trim, rising stem, plug-type disc, flanged ends, and renewable seat and disc.
4. Hydronic system globe valves shall have the following characteristics:
    a. Rating: Class 125 for service at 125 psig and 250 deg F operating conditions.
    b. Internal Construction: Replaceable plugs and seats of stainless steel or brass.
    c. Select one or both valve seating arrangements below.
    d. Single-Seated Valves: Cage trim provides seating and guiding surfaces for plug on top and bottom of guided plugs.
    e. Maximum pressure drops of up to 5 psig (35 kPa) are usually acceptable.
    f. Sizing: See Schedule.

g. Flow Characteristics: three-way valves shall have linear characteristics. Operators shall close valves against pump shutoff head.
h. Butterfly Valves: 175-psi CWP, ASTM A 126 cast-iron body and bonnet, extended neck, stainless-steel stem, field-replaceable Buna N sleeve and stem seals, lug style, rated for end-of-service applications
i. Select one of the following subparagraphs.
j. Disc Type: ductile iron.

Q. Valve Actuators
1. Electric Motors: Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
2. Small Valve Actuators: Equivalent to Johnson VA-715, except for exterior valves which must be weatherproof.
3. Electronic **Large-Valve** Actuators: Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
a. Valves: Size for torque required for valve close-off at maximum pump differential pressure.
b. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
c. Position indicator: Provide a visual position indicator for field inspection.
d. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F.
e. Run Time: 3**0 seconds**.
4. Electronic two–position **Large-Valve** Actuators: Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
a. Valves: Size for torque required for valve close-off at maximum pump differential pressure.
b. Manual Operator: Provide with a handwheel operator connected to the valve shaft through a gear drive. The gear drive shall be independent of the motor drive.
c. Local Control Switch: provide with switch on actuator for “local/remote” control.
d. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
e. Position indicator: Provide 100% open and 100% closed limit switches for position indication to DDC system and a visual position indicator for field inspection.
f. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F.
g. Run Time: 30 seconds
h. Enclosure: weather-proof, non-ferrous.

R. Airflow Monitoring Station:
1. Manufacturer: Ebtron GTx116-P+ or approved equal.
2. Airflow monitoring specifically designed for accurate and repeatable measurements of OA delivery monitoring and airflow tracking applications in ducts and plenums.
3. Accuracy: 3%
4. Listing: UL, BACnet BTL
5. Stainless steel sensor probe tubes
6. Airflow alarms: Low and high user defined setpoint alarm.
7. LCD display
8. Sensor diagnostic system trouble indication.
9. EB-link Bluetooth interface for Android and iPhone: Airflow data, settings and diagnostics tools via apps.

S. Field Testing and Programming Equipment: A portable laptop or notebook computer shall interface via standard push-in connection at an asynchronous serial port located at the Control modules and at selected enhanced zone temperature sensors as indicated on project plans. This portable unit shall be capable of full global communications with all Control modules connected within the respective network and shall provide functionally identical user interface to the Workstation, in non-graphic format. Units shall be able to interrogate all points and alter all programming.

2.21 ENCLOSURES

A. General Enclosure Requirements:

1. House each controller and associated control accessories in an enclosure. Enclosure shall serve as central tie-in point for control devices such as switches, transmitters, transducers, power supplies and transformers. Do not house more than one controller in a single enclosure.
2. Include enclosure door with key locking mechanism. Key locks alike for all enclosures and include one pair of keys per enclosure.
3. Enclosures shall be NRTL listed according to UL 508A.
4. Enclosures constructed of steel, finished inside and out with polyester powder coating electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
5. Hinged door full size of front face of enclosure and supported using:

    a. Enclosures sizes less than 36 in. (900 mm) tall: Multiple butt hinges.
    b. Enclosures sizes 36 in. (900 mm) tall and larger: Continuous piano hinges.

B. Internal Arrangement:

1. Internal layout of enclosure shall group and protect components associated with a controller, but not an integral part of controller.
2. Arrange layout to group similar products together.
3. Include a barrier between line-voltage and low-voltage electrical and electronic products.
4. Factory or shop install products, tubing, cabling and wiring complying with requirements and standards indicated.
5. Terminate field cable and wire using heavy-duty terminal blocks.
6. Include spade lugs for stranded cable and wire.
7. Install a maximum of two wires on each side of a terminal.
8. Include enclosure field power supply with a toggle-type switch located at entrance inside enclosure to disconnect power.
9. Include enclosure with a line-voltage nominal 20-A GFCI duplex receptacle for service and testing tools. Wire receptacle on hot side of enclosure disconnect switch and include with a 5-A circuit breaker.
10. Mount products within enclosure on removable internal panel(s).
11. Include products mounted in enclosures with engraved, laminated phenolic nameplates (black letters on a white background). The nameplates shall have at least 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) high lettering.
12. Route tubing cable and wire located inside enclosure within a raceway with a continuous removable cover.

C. Environmental Requirements:

1. Evaluate temperature and humidity requirements of each product to be installed within each enclosure.
2. Calculate enclosure internal operating temperature considering heat dissipation of all products installed within enclosure and ambient effects (solar, conduction and wind) on enclosure.
3. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled electrical heat to maintain inside of enclosure above minimum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
4. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled ventilation fans with filtered louver(s) to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
5. Include temperature-controlled cooling within the enclosure for applications where ventilation fans cannot maintain inside temperature of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
6. Where required by application, include humidity-controlled electric dehumidifier or cooling to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum relative humidity of product with most stringent requirement and to prevent surface condensation within enclosure.

2.22 RELAYS

A. All:

1. Heavy duty, rated for at least 10 A at 250-V ac and 60 Hz.
2. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
3. Relay enclosed in a dust-tight cover.
4. Coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
5. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
6. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
7. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
8. Timing Ranges: Multiple ranges from 0.1 seconds to 100 minutes.
9. Timing Ranges, where applicable: Multiple ranges from 0.1 seconds to 100 minutes.
10. Repeatability: Within 2 percent.
11. Recycle Time: 45 ms.
12. Minimum Pulse Width Control: 50 ms.
13. Power Consumption: 5 VA or less at 120-V ac.
14. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F (Minus 40 to 46 deg C).
15. General-Purpose Relays: With LED indication and a manual reset and push-to-test button.
16. Multifunction Time-Delay Relays: With knob and dial scale for setting delay time.

B. Current Sensing Relay:

1. Monitors ac current.
2. Independent adjustable controls for pickup and dropout current. Choose relay size to be able to read smallest current from motor at lowest speed.
3. Energized when supply voltage is present and current is above pickup setting.
4. De-energizes when monitored current is below dropout current.
5. Dropout current adjustable from 50 to 95 percent of pickup current.
6. Include a current transformer, if required for application.
7. House current sensing relay and current transformer in its own enclosure. Use NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure for indoors and NEMA 250, Type 4 for outdoors.

2.23 UNINTERRUPTABLE POWER SUPPLY (UPS) UNITS

A. 250 through 1000 VA:

1. UPS units shall provide continuous, regulated output power without using their batteries during brown-out, surge, and spike conditions.
2. Load served shall not exceed 75 percent of UPS rated capacity, including power factor of connected loads.
3. UPS shall provide up to 15 minutes of battery power.
4. Performance:

    a. Input Voltage: Single phase, 120- or 230-V ac, compatible with field power source.
    b. Load Power Factor Range (Crest Factor): 0.65 to 1.0.
    c. Output Voltage: 101- to 132-V ac, while input voltage varies between 89 and 152-V ac.
    d. On Battery Output Voltage: Sine wave.
    e. Inverter overload capacity shall be minimum 150 percent for 30 seconds.
    f. Recharge time shall be a maximum of six hours to 90 percent capacity after full discharge to cutoff.
    g. Transfer Time: 6 ms.
    h. Surge Voltage Withstand Capacity: IEEE C62.41, Categories A and B; 6 kV/200 and 500 A; 100-kHz ringwave.

5. UPS shall be automatic during fault or overload conditions.
6. Include front panel with power switch and visual indication of power, battery, fault and temperature.

2.24 SURGE PROTECTION

A. Zener diodes, silicone avalanche diode, optical isolation, varistors, or combination thereof.

B. Transient protection
1. Communications LAN:
    a. Provide surge protection equipment sized specifically for expected operating current of LAN.
    b. Exceeds severity level 4 of IEC 801-4.
    c. Operating voltage: 12 volts.
    d. Maximum operating current: 200 mA
    e. Clamping action turn-on: 14.3 volts
    f. Maximum clamping at 2 kW (8 x 20 microsecond wave): 22 volts
    g. Maximum surge voltage: 20 kV
    h. Maximum surge current (8 x 20 microsecond wave): 2.5 kA
    i. Current leakage at perating voltage: 5 microamps
    j. As manufactured by Surge Control Limited, SPR series, or approved equal.
2. Power supply:
    a. Provide surge protection equipment sized specifically for expected operating current of DDC controller.
    b. Exceed recommendations for ANSI / IEEE C62.41-1991 Categories A3 and B3 and UL1449.
    c. Design such that suppressor does not "wear out" with repeated surges.

d. CSA certified and UL recognized.
e. EMI / RFI filtering.
f. Differential and common mode suppression and filtering.
g. Less than 5 nanosecond response time.
h. Maximum transient voltage 6 kV.
i. Maximum transient current 3 kA.
j. Minimum clamping turn-on, 210 volts.
k. Maximum clamping voltage, (l-test):
    1) line to neutral — 245 volts.
    2) line to ground — 245 volts.
    3) neutral to ground — 245 volts.
l. Maximum clamping voltage @ 3 kA:
    1) line to neutral — 325 volts.
    2) line to ground — 430 volts.
    3) neutral to ground — 430 volts.
m. As manufactured by Surge Control Limited, SPP-1200 series, or approved equal.

C. Protective devices shall be continuous duty, automatic and self restoring.

2.25 CONTROL WIRE AND CABLE

A. 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with a 2- to 2.5-inch (50- to 65-mm) lay.

B. Plenum rated LAN and Communication Cable complying with NFPA 70 and DDC system manufacturer requirements for network being installed.

2.26 CONTROL POWER WIRING AND RACEWAYS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" electrical power conductors and cables.

2.27 IDENTIFICATION

A. Provide engraved phenolic tag, fastened with drive pins with min. 0.5" high white lettering on black background, bearing unique identification nomenclature for control equipment and devices.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Pre-installation Conference: Schedule and attend conference at location of owner's choosing. Mandatory attendees include representatives from BAS contractor, Owner, Engineer, and Commissioning Authority.

3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates. Examine roughing-in for products to verify actual locations of connections before installation. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where product will be installed.

B. Prepare written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 DDC SYSTEM INTERFACE WITH OTHER SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

A. Coordinate with Owner for provision of required communication infrastructure that is Owner's responsibility, including data drops, IP addresses, etc.

B. Communication Interface to Equipment with Integral Controls: DDC system shall have communication interface with equipment having integral controls and having a communication interface for remote monitoring or control. Reference drawings for equipment to be connected.

3.4 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. The I/O Summary on the drawings is provided as a list of the minimum points required. Provide all controls points, temperature sensors, relays, actuators, and devices necessary to achieve operational sequences at no additional cost to the Owner, whether explicitly called for or not in this specification. Coordinate with all sub-contractors to ensure all items are provided and installed.

B. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Controls Contractor is responsible for complete operational installation of system, including, but not limited to the following:
1. Electrical power supply to all control system components, including but not limited to; controllers, actuators, sensors, from dedicated circuits in electrical panels.
2. Complete installation of duct-mounted components, including but not limited to: temperature, relative humidity, pressure, and CO2 sensors, and dampers/actuators.
3. Complete installation of pipe-mounted components, including but not limited to: control valves and actuators, temperature sensors, pressure sensors.

D. All electrical material and installation shall be in accordance with local applicable codes and requirements of Division 26. All automation system equipment supplied shall be provided with adequate grounding in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications and suggested engineering applications procedures. These requirements shall include, but not be limited to:
1. A "clean earth ground" for all FCUs and central operator's station.
2. No "ground mixing" between equipment components.
3. Insulation of all panels from metal conduits.
4. Equal-potential grounding for equipment where required.

E. Identification:

1. Provide a permanent, stick-on tape marker on the inside cover of the space sensor (e.g. temperature, RH) to identify the name of the HVAC unit associated with the sensor.

2. Provide within each enclosure with a complete set of as-built schematics, tubing, and wiring diagrams and product literature for that particular controller.
3. Label each end of cable, wire and tubing in enclosures following an approved identification system that extends from field I/O connection and all intermediate connections throughout length to controller connection. **Use printed labels, not hand-written.**
4. Identify all controller enclosures with 1/8 inch thick plastic labels not less than 3 x 1.25 inches. Fasten with stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws or contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate

F. Install products to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.

G. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction. Support products, tubing, piping wiring and raceways. Brace products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.

H. If codes and referenced standards are more stringent than requirements indicated, comply with requirements in codes and referenced standards.

I. Fabricate openings and install sleeves in ceilings, floors, roof, and walls required by installation of products. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, and cutting, check for concealed work to avoid damage. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.

J. Seal penetrations made in fire-rated assemblies and in acoustically rated assemblies in accordance with applicable fire codes.

K. Fastening Hardware:

1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that damage surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening fasteners.
2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.

L. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit service and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks without removal of permanently installed furniture and equipment.

M. Corrosive Environments:

1. Avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive airstreams and environments, including, but not limited to, the following:

    a. Laboratory exhaust-air streams.
    b. Process exhaust-air streams.

2. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive airstream and environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment. Comply with requirements for installation of raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

3. Where instruments are located in a corrosive airstream and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

3.5 CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

A. Quantity and location of network and programmable application controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.

B. Install controllers in enclosures to comply with indicated requirements in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.

C. Test and adjust controllers to verify operation of connected I/O to achieve performance indicated requirements while executing sequences of operation.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and installations, including connections.

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.7 DDC SYSTEM I/O CHECKOUT, ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION AND TESTING

A. Prepare and submit a report to Engineer and Commissioning Authority documenting results for checking, adjustment, calibration, testing. Include a description of corrective measures and adjustments made to achieve desire results for each I/O point, control sequence, and system.

B. Sensor Check and Calibration:

1. Calibrate every sensing device, including temperature, relative humidity, pressure, etc. by comparing field-installed sensors to a high accuracy instrument that has been calibrated within the previous 12 months. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. (E.g., an installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
2. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
3. All field sensors must read to within accuracy range listed in these specifications. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and accuracy.
4. Programmed offsets may be used to a certain degree to adjust sensor readings. Replace all sensors requiring an offset of more than 2F, or 10% RH, or 0.2" air static pressure or 1.5 psig water static, or 50 ppm CO2.
5. Submit a report certifying that every sensor has been calibrated and is reading accurately as a prerequisite for testing by the commissioning authority. List results of each sensor (field-reading versus calibrated instrument reading).

C. Control Damper Checkout:

1. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
2. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
3. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
4. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.
5. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommendation, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed and that damper actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
6. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less than 30 seconds.
7. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

D. Control Valve Checkout:

1. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
2. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
3. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
4. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.
5. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace the valve if leaks persist.
6. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open. Verify that valve ball, disc or plug travel is unobstructed.
7. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

E. Meters: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

F. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.

G. Controllers:

1. Verify voltage, phase and hertz.
2. Verify that protection from power surges is installed and functioning.
3. Verify that ground fault protection is installed.
4. If applicable, verify if connected to UPS unit.
5. If applicable, verify if connected to a backup power source.
6. If applicable, verify that power conditioning units, transient voltage suppression and high-frequency noise filter units are installed.
7. Verify that wire and cabling is properly secured to terminals and labeled with unique identification.
8. Verify that spare I/O capacity is provided.
9. Test every I/O point connected to DDC controller to verify that safety and operating control set points are as indicated and as required to operate controlled system safely and at optimum performance. Test every I/O point throughout its full operating range.
10. Test every control loop to verify operation is stable and accurate.
11. Adjust control loop proportional, integral and derivative settings to achieve optimum performance while complying with performance requirements indicated. Document testing of each control loop's precision and stability via trend logs.

12. Test and adjust every control loop for proper operation according to sequence of operation.
13. Test software and hardware interlocks for proper operation. Correct deficiencies.
14. Operate each analog point at upper, mid, and lower portions of range
15. Exercise each binary point.
16. For every I/O point in DDC system, read and record each value at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument simultaneously. Value displayed at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument shall match.

3.8 DDC SYSTEM COMMISSIONING TESTS

A. Provide written request to Commissioning Authority (CxA) for initiation of on-site Functional Testing. Functional Testing will not take place until:

1. System has been thoroughly tested as described in this section under "DDC System I/O Checkout, Adjustment, Calibration, And Testing", and report has been submitted.
2. Certificate of Readiness has been submitted to CxA.

a. At his discretion, if entire control system has not been completed, CxA may test portions of system which have been completed.

3. Prefunctional Checklists, if required by contract documents, have been submitted to CxA.

B. Contractor shall set up trend logs as requested by the CxA, Engineer, or Owner, without any limits on the number of trends, to assist in testing and verification of system operation.

1. Prior to start of functional testing, set up the following initial trend logs: See Sequence of Operation.
2. Contractor shall set up trends and logs as requested by the Engineer or Owner, without any limits on the number of trends.

C. CxA will perform on-site and remote Functional testing as specified in Construction Documents and in accordance with generally accepted commissioning procedures. DDC system shall demonstrate correct operation and accuracy of monitored and controlled points as well as operation capabilities of sequences, logs, trends, reports, specialized control algorithms, diagnostics, and other software indicated. Reference section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for more information.

1. Contractor is to provide a qualified representative, intimately familiar with the project installation and issues, to carry out Functional Testing procedures as directed by CxA, for the duration of Functional Testing.

D. CxA will issue reports to Contractor, in such forms as Commissioning Issues Logs, emails, written reports, detailing items which appear not to be in conformance with construction documents requirements. Take prompt action to remedy deficiencies indicated in field report and submit a second written request when all deficiencies have been corrected. Repeat process until no deficiencies are reported.

E. Due to the complexity of control systems and potential for latent defects to go undiscovered during Functional Testing, DDC system or tested portions thereof must operate essentially

trouble-free for a period of 30 consecutive days following Functional Testing before Final Acceptance of system will be granted.

3.9 WARRANTY SERVICE

A. System deficiencies discovered subsequent to Final Acceptance of system will be treated as Warranty items. Under Warranty requirements, address all operating problems, repair or replace worn or defective components, adjust control parameters as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

B. Provide system inspections and reports annually during warranty period; reference paragraph "Warranty Inspections" in this specifications section.

3.10 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Technical Support: Beginning **at Final Acceptance of system**, service agreement shall include software support for two year(s).

B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of **Final Acceptance of system**. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative with complete knowledge of Project-specific system installed to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain DDC system. Owner may send up to 10 persons to attend training. Training shall occur within normal business hours at a mutually agreed on time.

B. Provide not less than **seven** hours of training total, broken up into two 3.5 hour sessions. Provide staggered training schedule as requested by Owner to accommodate Owner personnel schedules.

C. Schedule training with Owner at least four business days before expected Substantial Completion. All training shall occur before Final Acceptance of control system.

D. Organize training sessions into logical groupings of technical content and to reflect different levels of operators having access to system. Plan training sessions to accommodate daily operators, advanced operators, and system managers and administrators.

E. Maintain a training attendee list and sign-in sheet. Sign-in sheet shall include training session number, date and time, instructor name, phone number and e-mail address, and brief description of content to be covered during session. List attendees with columns for name, phone number, e-mail address and a column for attendee signature or initials.

1. For each session, submit a scanned copy (PDF) of circulated sign-in sheet to Owner, Engineer, and Commissioning Authority with 48 hours of end of training session.

F. Provide each attendee with a color hard copy of all training materials and visual presentations. Hard-copy materials shall be organized in a three-ring binder with table of contents and individual divider tabs marked for each logical grouping of subject matter.

G. Instructor Requirements:

1. One or multiple qualified instructors, as required, to provide training.
2. Instructors shall have not less than three years of providing instructional training on not less than five past projects with similar DDC system scope and complexity to DDC system installed.

H. On-Site Training:

1. Provide as much of training located on-site as deemed feasible and practical by Owner. Owner will provide conditioned classroom or workspace with ample desks or tables, chairs, power and data connectivity for instructor and each attendee.
2. Instructor shall provide training materials, projector and other audiovisual equipment used in training.
3. On-site training shall include regular walk-through tours to observe each unique product type installed with hands-on review of operation, calibration and service requirements.
4. Operator workstation shall be used in training, whether Owner's or contractor-provided & via remote web access.

I. Training Content:

1. Basic operation of system.
2. Understanding DDC system architecture and configuration.
3. Understanding each unique product type installed including performance and service requirements for each.
4. Understanding operation of each system and equipment controlled by DDC system including sequences of operation, each unique control algorithm and each unique optimization routine.
5. Operating operator workstations, printers and other peripherals.
6. Logging on and off system.
7. Accessing graphics, reports and alarms.
8. Adjusting and changing set points and time schedules.
9. Recognizing DDC system malfunctions.
10. Understanding content of operation and maintenance manuals, and control drawings.
11. Accessing data from DDC controllers.
12. Operating portable operator workstations.
13. Review of DDC testing results to establish basic understanding of DDC system operating performance and HVAC system limitations as of Substantial Completion.
14. Running each specified report and log, setting up Trend Logs.
15. Displaying and demonstrating each data entry to show Project-specific customizing capability. Demonstrating parameter changes.
16. Stepping through graphics penetration tree, displaying all graphics, demonstrating dynamic updating, and direct access to graphics.
17. Executing digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
18. Demonstrating control loop precision and stability via trend logs of I/O for not less than 10 percent of I/O installed.
19. Demonstrating DDC system performance through trend logs and command tracing.
20. Demonstrating scan, update, and alarm responsiveness.
21. Demonstrating spreadsheet and curve plot software, and its integration with database.
22. Demonstrating on-line user guide, and help function and mail facility.
23. Demonstrating multitasking by showing dynamic curve plot, and graphic construction operating simultaneously via split screen.

24. Demonstrating operation of HVAC equipment in normal-off, -on and failed conditions while observing individual equipment, dampers and valves for correct position under each condition.
25. Demonstrating integration into DDC system is able to communicate with DDC controllers or gateways, as applicable.

END OF SECTION 230900

SECTION 230993 - SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" for control equipment and devices and for submittal requirements.
2. Division 23 Section "Central-Station Air-Handling Units" for equipment controls requirements.

1.2 ABBREVIATIONS

A. Abbreviations used in this specifications section:

1. BAS: Building Automation System
2. CO2: Carbon Dioxide
3. DAT: Discharge Air Temperature
4. DCV: Demand Control Ventilation
5. DDC: Direct Digital Control
6. DOAS: Dedicated Outside Air System
7. dP: differential Pressure
8. dT: differential Temperature
9. DX: Direct Expansion
10. EF: Exhaust fan
11. OA: Outside Air
12. RH: Relative Humidity
13. RTU: Rooftop Unit
14. AHU: Air Handling Unit
15. TAB: Testing, Adjusting and Balancing

1.3 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes control sequences for HVAC systems, subsystems, and equipment. Provide controls and operating sequences for the following HVAC systems at the **Gymnasium Facilities at Hanna ECHS**:
1. Central plant: air-cooled chillers and chilled water pumps.
2. Hydronic, dual path, single zone, variable air volume units.
3. Exhaust fans.
4. Domestic water heaters
5. Drinking fountains
6. Power monitoring

B. **Prior to bidding**, Controls contractor shall notify general, mechanical and electrical contractor of any work required for operational installation of controls devices that will not be conducted by Controls Contractor. This includes, but is not limited to: installation of controls devices in piping (sensors, valves, taps), interface cards for chillers, pumps, electrical equipment (VFD), as well as any needs for power wiring and/or conduit.

C. A list of the minimum number and type of control points required is given. Provide any additional points, sensors, gateways, interface cards, etc. as required to achieve sequences, whether specifically called for in Points List or not.

D. Provide all hardware, software, and labor required to achieve specified sequences.

E. Units or systems that are grouped together for purposes of sequence description are not meant to be controlled together. Each system shall have its own set of adjustable parameters and will respond only to values (space temperatures for example) associated with it. This means that one unit may be in heating mode while another with similar sequence may be in cooling mode.

1.4 EQUIPMENT TIME SCHEDULES

A. Contractor is responsible for programming schedules for all equipment and systems prior to turning system over to Owner at final system acceptance.

B. **Request Owner's input for on/off and optimum start/stop** (OSS) **programming for all equipment and systems, including both Normal and upcoming Holiday schedules, and Program holiday time schedules as per Owner's direction.**

C. Note that outside air dampers, exhaust fans, or various other specified equipment devices may have independent dedicated time schedule different from the equipment which they serve or are associated with. For example, distinct time schedules may be required for actual Occupied time (for instance, 8AM to 5:30PM) requiring ventilation versus required equipment start/stop times for comfort.

D. Equipment items having the same Off/Enable or Start/Stop times are not to be software interlinked such that one cannot be changed without changing the other. Each individual equipment item is to have its own individual programmable Off/Enable or Start/Stop scheduling capability.

E. Stagger AHU start times by a minimum of 20 seconds between starts.

F. Unoccupied hours, Off / Enable:
   1. Enable cooling if space air temperature rises above 90˚F (adj.). Disable unit once temperature has fallen to 85˚F (adj.) or below.
   2. Enable heating if space air temperature drops below 45˚F (adj.). Disable unit once temperature has risen to 55˚F (adj.).
   3. Enable cooling if relative humidity rises above 60% (adj.). Disable unit once relative humidity has fallen to 55% (adj.).
   4. Unit shall run for a minimum of 30 min. (adj.) or until specified conditions are satisfied.
   5. Issue Alarm if the unit has been in unoccupied mode for 4 hours (adj) and relative humidity rises above 60% (adj.). This time delay should allow false alarms immediately after units are disabled.

6. Manual Override: Control may be manually overridden at the zone Thermostat, controller and the COS.
7. Hardware Interlocks: Controls shall not bypass any safeties or interlocks associated with fire protection shutdown.

1.5 SPACE TEMPERATURE SETPOINTS

A. Temperature and humidity setpoints and operating schedules listed in sequences of operations are initial values, based upon input from Owner's representatives and common industry practice, and are not to be considered as final. Final setpoint and schedules must be programmed as per Owner's direction, and in consultation with and with approval of Owner and/or Engineer and Testing and Balancing firm, regardless of schedules listed in this specification.

B. In consultation with Owner and/or Engineer, and Testing and Balancing firm, make minor revisions to operating sequences which will result in improved operation of systems.

1. Duct static pressure and hydronic system differential pressure setpoints may be listed in control sequences. These are initial estimated values. They must be modified based upon input from the Testing and Balancing firm to final values which are optimal settings for energy efficient operation of the system.

C. All adjustable setpoint temperature sensors / thermostats are to be software Locked from occupant adjustment, or limited as to the highest heating setpoint and lowest cooling setpoint which building occupants may choose. Initial values are listed in control sequences. Determine final limits in consultation with Owner and Engineer.

D. Whether in Occupied or Unoccupied mode, the active heating setpoint must always be lower than the active cooling setpoint by a minimum of 5F, or higher if called for in sequences. This differential is referred to as the "deadband".

1. With exception of that required for dehumidification, no heating operation is to take place when room temperature is within deadband. Operation of reheat is to begin only when room temperature has fallen 1˚F below the heating setpoint.
2. Cooling operation within the deadband must be at an absolute minimum, ie. specified minimum air flow to provide necessary ventilation.

E. Room Temperature Setpoints

1. Allowable range for space temperature setpoints will be limited via control system.

    a. Program temperature setpoints to be set only at the central operator station, and not be adjustable at the zone thermostat.

2. System is expected to maintain room temperature no more than 0.75F above cooling setpoint / below heating setpoint during 'normal' steady-state operating conditions.
3. Unless otherwise noted in drawings or operating sequences described below, program the following room temperature setpoints for all heating and cooling equipment.

    a. Occupied Hours

1) Cooling setpoint = 74F
2) Heating setpoint = 69F

b. Unoccupied Hours
1) Cooling setpoint = 86F
2) Heating setpoint = 59F
3) Run unit for a minimum 20 minutes. Disable unit once temperature has fallen 3F below Cooling or 3F above heating setpoint.

F. Room Relative Humidity (RH) Setpoints

1. System is expected to begin dehumidification sequence at 1% RH above setpoint.
2. Unless otherwise noted in drawings or operating sequences described below, program the following room RH setpoints for all cooling equipment.

a. Occupied Hours
1) Cooling RH setpoint = 59%
2) Run unit for a minimum 20 minutes. Disable dehumidification mode once RH has fallen 3% below setpoint.

b. Unoccupied Hours
1) Cooling setpoint = No Unoccupied RH control sequence required

1.6 BACNET CONNECTIONS

A. Owner does not want BACnet interface. All controls shall be by BAS Contractor.

1. All points readable within equipment are to be communicated to and readable by BAS.

2. The point descriptor text for all points are to have clear, unambiguous meaning; simply copying manufacturer's text descriptor may not be acceptable. Supply manufacturer's points text descriptors to Engineer for pre-approval. Revise descriptors if directed by Engineer.

3. Display all values with proper units (deg F, psig, etc.), truncated to decimal point accuracy commensurate with accuracy of sensor.

1.7 OUTDOOR AIR CONDITIONS

A. Outdoor air temperature and relative humidity are to be read from an Engineer-approved web-based weather service such as Accuweather.com. Update conditions at no longer than 30-minute intervals.

B. Display OA temperature and RH conditions on all graphics screens. Display values rounded to nearest whole number.

1.8 GENERAL CONTROL SEQUENCES

A. Individual sequence descriptions may list units to which sequence applies. Contractor must verify equipment quantities and unit types through drawings review and on-site inspections.

B. All setpoints used in controls sequences shall be user adjustable with a minimum of keystrokes.

C. Points lists have been provided as a general guideline, and are not all inclusive. Provide all points required for achievement of operating sequences.

D. All delays shall be operator adjustable. Program for a minimum delay between on/off commands for HVAC equipment to prevent short cycling.

E. Unless noted otherwise, program for minimum VFD speed of 30% of full 60hz speed.

F. Unless noted otherwise, close HVAC unit outside air dampers during all Unoccupied periods.

G. Economizer Operation:

1. Economizer operation is to be based upon a combination of space enthalpy and outside air enthalpy.
2. During Occupied periods when system is in cooling mode, place unit in Economizer mode when OA enthalpy is less than 29 Btu/lbm (adj.) and outside air temperature is less than return air temperature, and modulate outside air dampers to extent required to maintain discharge air temperature or space temperature, as applicable to unit operation.

H. Optimum Start/Stop (OSS):

1. When this feature is Enabled, control system shall automatically calculate the optimal start time for each HVAC system or unit so that comfort conditions will be achieved by the scheduled Occupied time. Control system shall determine the optimal time for equipment shutdown so that comfort conditions may be maintained until scheduled off time with minimal energy use.
2. Coordinate with Owner for information on desired times for comfort conditions and whether OSS is to be Enabled.

I. Interlocks:

1. Hardware: Controls shall not bypass any safeties or interlocks associated with fire protection shutdown.
2. Provide all hardware necessary to achieve software interlocks required for proper system operation, including but not limited to control of dampers and exhaust fans. Coordinate with mechanical and electrical contractors.

J. Damper Actuators:

1. Do not provide physical linkage between OA and return air dampers. Do not control OA and return dampers in complementary fashion (i.e., where sum of % open values of each always add to 100%) unless specifically directed in operating sequence.

K. Operator Station Display: Indicate the following on operator workstation display terminal, as applicable per points list:

1. Building floor plan, indicating individual rooms, thermostat locations, and areas served by each air handler, fan coil unit and rooftop unit.
2. Conditioned space air temperature, all zones.
3. Conditioned space air Base temperature setpoint, all zones.
4. Conditioned space air Actual temperature setpoint, all zones.
5. Chiller plant, chilled water supply temperature and setpoint.
6. Distinguish different area(s) served by individual HVAC equipment items by use of color variation or heavy lines on floor plans graphics page.
7. When a control point is in “Test” mode, graphic shall indicate the status such as “test” or “manual”.

1.9 ALARMS

A. Provide minimum / maximum expected input values for all sensors. When any sensor gives a reading outside of these values, initiate an alarm at central operator station, and indicate alarm clearly on graphics screen where the parameter is displayed.

1. Expected maximum / minimum values:

   a. Space temperature sensor: 100F / 40F.
   b. Outdoor air temperature sensor: 115F / 15F.
   c. RH sensor: 105% / 10%.
   d. CO2 sensor: 1500 ppm / 390 ppm.
   e. CHW supply temperature sensor: 36F/50F

2. When sensor readings are outside expected range, annunciate system alarm.

B. For all HVAC units, register alarms under the following conditions:

1. Discrepancy between actual and commanded state of operation.
2. Discharge air temperature from cooling or heating coil deviates from setpoint by more than 2F for more than 10 minutes.
3. Low mixed air temperature (below 35F).
4. CO2 remains 75 ppm greater than setpoint for 30 consecutive minutes.
5. Unit has tripped on any safety (e.g., high static pressure, freezestat).
6. Supply chilled water temperature from chiller plant deviates from setpoint by more than 2F for more than 10 minutes.
7. OA flow CFM is below setpoint.

C. For all mechanical equipment, register alarms under the following conditions:

1. Discrepancy between actual and commanded state of operation.

D. Register alarms for other equipment (e.g. refrigerant monitor) when monitored alarm contacts close.

E. Provide additional alarm annunciation as described in sub-paragraphs below labeled “Alarms”.

F. Smoke Control: Smoke detector stops fan when products of combustion are detected in air stream.

1. Fan will be stopped directly via fire alarm system.
2. BAS is not required to monitor smoke detector status.
3. Stopping of fan by fire alarm system automatically signals alarm due to Command-Status mismatch at BAS.

1.10 CHILLER PLANT SEQUENCES

A. System starts and stops chiller plant when the following conditions are met:
   1. Start plant based on Operating Schedules and Optimized Start-Stop Routines
   2. Start pumps and enable chiller based on call for cooling by AHUs, provided there is adequate load.
   3. Disable plant when system detects outside temperature below 50 deg F (adj.).

B. When Chiller Plant is Enabled, perform following:
   1. Determine which equipment is lead.
   2. Start lead chiller pump.
   3. If monitored dP in loop piping is above setpoint, modulate the bypass valve open to maintain dP setpoint. This will ensure that there is adequate flow in the chiller loop.
   4. Enable chiller. Chiller's proof of flow allows chiller to start.
   5. Signal alarm if equipment fails to start as commanded. Immediately enable lag chiller/pump in the event of an alarm input signal from lead system.

C. Reset Schedule: Reset supply chilled water temperature per the following linear relationship (all settings adjustable):

Outdoor Air Temperature	Supply Chilled Water Temperature
85˚F & above	44˚F
55˚F & below	48˚F

D. In sequence, enable lag chiller and associated pump under the following conditions when lead chiller cannot meet load:
   1. If chilled water supply temperature cannot be maintained (rises 1˚F above setpoint), and chiller load is above 90% (adj.) and remains there for preset time delay. To prevent short cycling of chillers, ensure that a minimum run time of 15 minutes is programmed.
   2. First 30 minutes chiller plant is enabled for the day: Allow the lead chiller sufficient time, 30 min (adj) to attain CHWST setpoint.
   3. After the first 30 minutes, the delay to start the lag chiller shall be 10 minutes (adj).
   4. If monitored dP in loop piping is above setpoint, modulate the bypass valve open to maintain dP setpoint. This will ensure that there is adequate flow in the chiller loop.
   5. Issue alarm, if all chillers are on and supply chilled water temperature cannot be maintained (rises 1˚F above setpoint and remains there for 10 minutes).
   6. Chiller Staging:
      a. Refine sequences to assure
         1) proper operation of chillers
         2) minimize chiller cycling
         3) optimize plant energy consumption
         4) Monitor chilled water flow via a flow measuring station. Operate bypass valve as necessary to maintain minimum chilled water flow through the system.

E. In sequence, disable lag chillers and associated primary chilled water pumps, when load drops and chillers are operating at 35% (adj) or lower for 10 minutes (adj). Close associated valves.

F. Adaptive Controls:

1. The control system shall utilize adaptive control algorithms to directly control the following components and operations: Chiller Sequencing: add/remove chillers from service in such manner to assure that the total kW/ton of the Chilled Water plant will be minimized. Adaptive algorithms must continuously re-revaluate and dynamically adjust chiller sequencing setpoints based on variations in chiller leaving water temperature setpoint and chilled water loop water differential temperature and flow in order to assure optimum energy efficiency.

G. Points List: It is the Contractor's responsibility to ensure that all points required for the sequences are provided. See piping schematics for requirements for temperature sensors and valves.

Point Type	Description
DO	Plant Enable/Disable
AI	Plant kW
AI	Plant kWh
DI	Call for Cooling
DO	Chiller Off/Enable
DI	Chiller Status
DI	Chiller Alarms
DO	CHWP Start/Stop
DI	CHWP Status
AO	CHWP VFD Speed
AI	Building Loop Supply and Return Temperature
AI	Chiller Supply and Return Temperature
AO	Chiller Supply Water Temperature Setpoint Reset
AO	Chiller Demand Limit
AI	Chiller Load
AI	Building Loop Supply Piping Pressure and Return Piping Pressure
AO	Building Loop DP setpoint
AO	Bypass chilled water valve
AI	OA Temperature
AI	OA Relative Humidity
AI	Chilled water loop flow via a flow monitoring station

H. Interface with DDC System for HVAC: DDC shall provide hardwired control points to monitor, control, and display water chiller status and alarms. In addition, provide BACnet gateway communications device allowing for chiller operating parameters and alarms with descriptions to be monitored via direct digital control system. Coordinate interface with DDC Contractor.

1. Hardwired points: As a minimum, the system shall allow the following parameters to be monitored or controlled.
   a. Entering and Leaving chilled water temperature.
   b. Percent running load amps on motor.
   c. Chiller compressor status.
   d. Proof of chilled water flow.
   e. Alarm status.
   f. Chiller enable / disable.
   g. Chilled water temperature setpoint.

h. Demand limit setpoint.
i. Hot gas bypass status.
j. Chiller % load.

2. BACnet points: As a minimum, the system shall allow the following parameters to be monitored.
   a. Chiller Run Status
   b. Chiller Alarm Status, Alarm code and table with code descriptor,
   c. Chiller CHS and CHR Temperature,
   d. Current CHS setpoint,
   e. Compressor on-off status (each compressor),
   f. Percent Capacity (each circuit),
   g. Chiller Amp draw,
   h. Chiller load (Tons, each chiller).
   i. Alarm status and descriptions.
   j. Refrigerant temperatures (each circuit): saturation temp, suction temp
   k. Refrigerant pressure (each circuit): condensing, evaporating
   l. Compressor run time (each)
   m. And 10 other points that will be determined at a later date.

I. Operator Station Display: Shall be similar to that installed at BISD, Pace HS, PAC Plant. Indicate the hardwired points on one graphic page, and the points from BACnet interface on other page. Provide detailed descriptors for all BACnet points.

1.11 VENTILATION SEQUENCES

A. Design Intent:
1. The Building has a large number of exhaust air systems with high exhaust airflow CFM. Fans operate at different schedules. The design intent is to keep building pressurization positive by introducing adequate OA flow into the building via the gymnasium AHUs that will exceed the exhaust air flow from the building.
2. BAS shall monitor run status of every exhaust fan. Based on number of fans in operation, BAS shall compute the total exhaust air CFM for the building. See drawings for list of exhaust fans and associated CFM. Coordinate CFMs with TAB contractor.
3. Minimum OA CFM setpoint = sum of exhaust volume + additional airflow required for positive building pressurization. Initial airflow setting for pressurization shall be 1000 CFM (adj). The exact CFM shall be determined and fine-tuned by TAB contractor.
4. OA shall be introduced via the gym AHUs and the locker room AHU.
   a. Locker room AHU will have a constant volume OA setting. Do not provide CO2 based DCV for this unit.
   b. Provide an AFMS on the common OA duct going to the AHUs.
   c. AFMS shall ensure that the OA CFM always exceeds the minimum OA CFM setpoint.
   d. Modulate OA and RA dampers on the individual AHUs as needed to meet the minimum OA setpoint.
   e. For energy conservation reasons, CO2 based DCV will allow units to modulate OA CFM between design maximum CFM and the calculated minimum CFM setpoint.

1.12 DUAL PATH, SINGLE ZONE, VARIABLE VOLUME, AIR-HANDLING UNITS

A. Time Schedule:
   1. Program On and Off times as Owner's instructions.
   2. Units shall be enabled to meet minimum OA CFM setpoint, as needed.

B. Definitions
   1. "Normal" AHU leaving discharge air temperature setpoint (**i.e., mixed air from return air coil and outside air pre-treatment coil**): 55F (adjustable).
   2. AHU: Air handling unit.
   3. CHW: Chilled water.
   4. DAT: Discharge air temperature.
   5. OA: Outside Air

C. Fan Operation:
   1. System starts fan to run continuously during occupied periods.
   2. Unoccupied periods: Cycle fan to maintain unoccupied period setback temperature.
   3. Modulate fan speed between minimum speed (adj.) and maximum speed (adj.) to maintain space temperature and RH setpoints.

D. Reset of Return Air CHW Coil Leaving Air Temperature Setpoint
   1. System shall modulate return air section chilled water valve to maintain **normal** AHU discharge air temperature setpoint.
   2. System will reset AHU leaving air temperature to maintain space temperature and relative humidity setpoint conditions in the most energy efficient manner possible. Program for a cascading sequence as follows:
      a. As space cooling load decreases, fan speed will modulate down. Once fan is at minimum speed, and space temperature is below cooling setpoint, gradually reset AHU mixed discharge air temperature (DAT) higher in 0.5F degree increments per 10-minute time period.
      b. As cooling loads increase, reverse the above setpoint reset sequence.
   3. Dehumidification mode: If return air relative humidity (RH) rises to greater than setpoint (60%, adjustable) for 20 minutes, open Return Air CHW Coil valve to maintain DAT of 53F. Disable mode when RH setpoint is achieved.
   4. Return air coil leaving air temperature setpoint shall never be allowed to go higher than 65F (adj).

E. Outside Air Section of AHU (top unit):
   1. During unoccupied mode, OA damper and CHW valve remain closed.
   2. During Occupied mode, when supply fan is running, control OA CHW coil and reset OA coil leaving air temperature as follows:
      a. OAT < 34F: Close OA damper to 0%.
      b. 34F < OAT < 57F (adjustable): OA CHW valve to remain 0% open.
      c. OAT > 57F: Modulate CHW valve to maintain 53F setpoint (adjustable).

F. Heating Mode
   1. SCR controlled electric heater is located downstream of the AHU in the supply duct.
   2. If space temperature is lower than the heating setpoint, close return air section chilled water valve and enable electric heating at AHU. Heaters shall adjust to control discharge air temperature setpoint (90˚F, adj.).

3. System shall modulate supply fan speed (between minimum and maximum fan) to maintain space temperature heating setpoint.
4. If fan is at minimum speed and heating load continues to drop, system modulates SCR controller to maintain space temperature setpoint (instead of maintaining a fixed discharge air temperature). As heating loads increase, modulate heater to maintain 95F (adjustable) before increasing fan speed.
5. Disable heaters if space temperature rises above setpoint.
6. A high discharge air temperature cut-out switch shall disable electric heaters and issue alarm at COS.

G. Ventilation Sequence
1. Dampers shall not be hardwired to open and close when units are enabled/disabled.
2. Associated exhaust fans shall be disabled and outside air dampers shall remain closed during unoccupied hours -including cool-down and nighttime reset operation.
3. Provide a dedicated time schedule for OA dampers fan that *can be* set independently of AHU time schedule. Obtain actual Occupancy schedule from Owner and open / close outside air damper per Owner's actual Occupancy schedule (and **not per AHU schedule**).
4. Locker room AHU will have a constant volume OA setting. Do not provide CO2 based DCV for this unit.
5. Gym unit OA Dampers shall modulate between minimum open and maximum scheduled (fully) open position to maintain return air CO2 setpoint of 1200 ppm (adj.), and to meet the calculated minimum OA CFM sertpoint. Coordinate with TAB Contractor such that building remains positively pressurized when building exhaust fans are on.
    a. If after 10 minutes of operation, (CO2 or min. OA CFM) setpoints are not being met, modulate return air damper 20% (adj) closed.
    b. If after an additional 10 minutes of operation, setpoints are not being met, modulate return air damper 40% (adj) closed, and continue operation at that position until setpoints are met.
    c. Once setpoints are achieved, return to normal operation.
    d. If CO2 concentration exceeds 1,400 ppm, or OA flow drops below minimum, system shall issue an alarm at the Central Operator's Station.

H. Exhaust fan interlocks: Coordinate software interlocks between exhaust fans and outside air dampers. Refer to schedules and plans for exhaust fan allocation to units.

I. Alarms:
1. Discrepancy between actual and commanded state of operation.
2. Discharge air temperature deviates from setpoint by more than 3˚F for 30 minutes.
3. Space temperature deviates from setpoint by more than 2˚F for more than 10 minutes.
4. CO2 level is above setpoint.
5. Relative humidity setpoint is not met for more than 10 minutes (adj.)
6. Minimum OA CFM setpoint is not being met.

J. Operator Station Display: Indicate the following on operator workstation display terminal (if applicable) per each unit:
1. System occupied/unoccupied mode.
2. A clear description of what area or room(s) unit serves.
3. Outside-air-temperature indication.
4. Outside-air-RH indication.
5. Fan commanded state.

6. Fan status.
7. VFD Speed command.
8. Mixed DAT setpoint at Unit Discharge (after fan).
9. Mixed DAT at Unit Discharge (after fan).
10. Return Air Section (main bottom unit):
    a. Return air temperature from space, upstream of coil.
    b. Return air CO2 concentration.
    c. Return air relative humidity.
    d. Return air damper commanded position.
    e. Return air damper position feedback.
    f. Mixed air temperature setpoint.
    g. Coil leaving air temperature.
    h. Cooling control-valve commanded position for Return Air Section.
11. Outside Air Section (top unit):
    a. Outside air damper commanded position.
    b. Outside air damper position feedback.
    c. Coil leaving air temperature setpoint.
    d. Coil leaving air temperature.
    e. Cooling control-valve commanded position.
12. Heater commanded position.
13. Discharge air temperature after heating coil.
14. Heating coil discharge air temperature setpoint.
15. Space temperature.
16. Space temperature setpoint.
17. Space relative humidity.
18. Space air relative humidity setpoint.
19. Minimum OA CFM setpoint.
20. OA CFM from AFMS.

K. Safeties:
1. Smoke Control: Smoke detector, located in return air, stops fan when products of combustion are detected in air stream. Stopping of fan automatically signals alarm.
2. Freeze protection: When OAT drops below 34F (adj), close OAD, open OA section CHW valve to 50%.
3. High static pressure safety.
4. Freeze-stat safety.
5. High temperature safety.

1.13 BUILDING EXHAUST FAN SCHEDULED CONTROL SEQUENCES

A. Applicable to all EFs. Refer to exhaust fan schedules in drawings for control notes.

B. Sequence:
1. Provide a dedicated time schedule for *each* exhaust fan that *can be* set independently of AHU time schedule.
2. Program off/enable according to Owner-directed time schedule. Program initial time schedule to be the same as that of the AHU(s) associated with EF.
3. Schedule may allow an EF to be commanded off when its associated AHU(s) are On. However, under no circumstances allow an exhaust fan to operate when it associated AHU is Off.

C. Manual Override: Control may be manually overridden at the controller and at the COS. Control will remain in "Override" position for a pre-programmed time period (1 hour, adj).

D. Interlocks:
1. Provide motorized damper for exhaust fans and interlock with fan with appropriate delays.
2. Hardware Interlocks: Controls shall not bypass any safeties or interlocks associated with fire protection shutdown.
3. Software Interlocks: Provide all hardware necessary to achieve software interlocks required for proper system operation. Coordinate with mechanical and electrical contractors.

E. Operator Workstation: Display the following data:
1. System graphic.
2. System occupied/unoccupied mode.
3. A clear description of what area, room(s), or equipment (e.g. boys dressing room, concession, etc.) EF serves.
4. Fan On-Off command.
5. Fan On-Off status.
6. Summation of EA flow for the building, based on status of Exhaust Fans.

1.14 DOMESTIC WATER HEATER

A. See drawings for water heater locations. Controls contractor is responsible for complete installation, including furnishing and installing control relays if not integral to water heater or circulating pump.

B. Provide time schedules and optimal start/stop function for water heaters and related circulating pumps.

C. Operator Workstation: Display the following data:
1. System graphic.
2. Water Heater Off / Enable.
3. Circulating Pump Off/Enable

1.15 ELECTRIC DRINKING FOUNTAINS

A. Provide common time schedules for all electrical drinking fountains. Provide relays to control several fountains. Coordinate quantity and location with plans.

B. Operator Workstation: Display the following data:
1. System graphic.
2. Drinking fountain Off / Enable.

1.16 ELECTRIC METER MONITORING

A. Applies to Panels "MSB". Prior to submittal phase coordinate and verify exact ID tags with Electrical.

B. All metering devices, PTs, CTs, miscellaneous hardware and software shall be provided by DDC Contractor. Meter shall be Shark50B-X Revenue Grade Shark50B BACnet/MSTP Communicating Multifunction Power Meter, or equal.

C. Pulsed output relays for Kvarh, Kwh, and time shall be coordinated at electric meters, distribution panels, and switchboards. Coordinate with electric provider for information on pulsed outputs. Calculate all parameters indicated in Operator Station Display paragraph below which are not directly measured, based upon measured inputs from these three pulsed output relays. Coordinate installation and control with Div. 16.

D. Coordinate with electric provider to determine billing cycle / meter read dates, and translation values for pulsed outputs.

E. Points List

Point Type	Description
AI (See Note below **)	kVA
AI (See Note below **)	kWh
AI (See Note below **)	PF

** **Provide all necessary hardware such as CTs, multi-meter devices, etc.**

F. Operator Station Display: Indicate the following on operator workstation display terminal:
1. kWh since start of monthly billing cycle.
2. kWh, year to date.
3. Peak KVA demand, year to date.
4. Current KVA demand.
5. Current kW demand.
6. Current Power Factor.
7. Peak KVA demand in current monthly billing cycle.

G. Trend and store the following measured and calculated parameters on a 15-minute basis:
1. kWh.
2. KVA demand.
3. kW demand.
4. Power Factor.

1.17 OTHER SEQUENCES

A. Operator Overrides: System shall allow operator to enable / disable unit and / or control / adjust all setpoints from COS.

B. Alarms: System shall issue alarm at COS upon failure of fan or failure to achieve setpoint within specified time (15 min. adj.)

C. Graphics pages must have units listed beside parameter values (e.g. ˚F, ppm, % Open, psi, etc.)

D. When parameters are in manual or test modes, graphics shall indicate that they are in test mode.

E. Provide up to 8 hours of programming to account for additional control sequences and fine-tuning above sequences, during the course of the project.

1.18 TRENDS

A. Coordinate with commissioning agent and engineer to set up trends. As a minimum provide the following for each piece of equipment:
   1. OAT
   2. OA RH
   3. Chiller CHWST
   4. Chilled water dP
   5. Chilled water pump speed
   6. Space temperature, RH, CO2
   7. AHU fan speed
   8. OA section, DAT and CHW valve position
   9. RA section, DAT and CHW valve position
   10. AHU DAT
   11. AHU heater staging
   12. AHU heater DAT
   13. Exhaust fan status
   14. Actual OA CFM
   15. Minimum OA CFM setpoint

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230993

SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:
   1. Chilled-water piping.
   2. Makeup-water piping.
   3. Condensate-drain piping.
   4. Air-vent piping.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
   1. Fittings.
   2. Piping.

B. Sustainability Submittals:

   1. Product Data: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

   1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
   2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
   3. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.
   4. Locations of and details for penetration and firestopping for fire- and smoke-rated wall and floor and ceiling assemblies.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

   1. Suspended ceiling components.
   2. Other building services.
   3. Structural members.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
1. Chilled-Water Piping: 175 psig at 200 deg F.
2. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg F.
3. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
4. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.

B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K.

C. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.

D. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

B. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

C. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

D. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

E. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.

F. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

1. Material Group: 1.1.
2. End Connections: Butt welding.
3. Facings: Raised face.

G. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Anvil International.
b. Central Sprinkler Company.
c. Victaulic Company.

2. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.

3. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and EPDM gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.

H. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.

1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.

a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

E. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

2.5 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
   b. Viega LLC.

2. One-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material.

B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
   b. NIBCO INC.

2. Brass or copper end, solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material, rubber gasket, and threaded union.

2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.
   b. Wilkins.
   c. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Description:

a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
b. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.
b. Wilkins.
c. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Description:

a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
c. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
b. Central Plastics Company.
c. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
b. Victaulic Company.

2. Description:

a. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
b. Electroplated steel nipple, complying with ASTM F 1545.
c. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.

d. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.

B. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be the following:
1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.

C. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

D. Makeup-Water Piping Installed Belowground and within Slabs: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints.

E. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

F. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.

G. Air-Vent Piping:

1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.

L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.

M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.

N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.

O. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.

P. Install valves according to Div. 23 sections.

Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.

S. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.

T. Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for installation of expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides.

U. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.

V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.

C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.

D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.

B. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

C. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet.
3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet.
4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet.
5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet.
6. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 12 feet.

D. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/4Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

E. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

E. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.

F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

G. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.

3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.

B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.

C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.

D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.

2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

SECTION 232116 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes special-duty valves and specialties for the following:
   1. Chilled-water piping.
   2. Makeup-water piping.
   3. Air-vent piping.
   4. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
   1. Valves: Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
   2. Air-control devices.
   3. Hydronic specialties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
   1. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

SECTION 232116 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Chilled-Water Piping: 175 psig at 200 deg F.
   2. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg F.
   3. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
   4. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

2.2 VALVES

A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Sections.

B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230900.

C. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

      a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
      b. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
      c. Flow Design, Inc.
      d. Griswold Controls.
      e. Nexus Valve, Inc.
      f. Taco.

   2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
   3. Ball: Stainless steel.
   4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
   5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
   6. Seat: PTFE.
   7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
   8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
   9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
   10. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
   11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

D. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.

   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AMTROL, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
d. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.

2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
8. Inlet Strainer: Stainless steel, removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

E. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AMTROL, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
d. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.

2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
8. Inlet Strainer: Stainless steel, removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

F. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Flow Design, Inc.
b. Griswold Controls.
c. Nexus Valve, Inc.

2. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
3. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, tamper proof, self-cleaning, and removable.
4. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
5. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.

6. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
7. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
8. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 200 deg F.

2.3 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMTROL, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
    d. Nexus Valve, Inc.
    e. Taco, Inc.

2. Body: Bronze.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMTROL, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
    d. Nexus Valve, Inc.
    e. Taco, Inc.

2. Body: Bronze.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4.
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

C. Bladder-Type Expansion Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AMTROL, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
d. Taco, Inc.

2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature. Factory test after taps are fabricated and supports installed and are labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
3. Bladder: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
4. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

D. Tangential-Type Air Separators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AMTROL, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
d. Taco, Inc.

2. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 125-psig minimum working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature.
3. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.
4. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
5. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
6. Size: Match system flow capacity.

E. In-Line Air Separators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AMTROL, Inc.
b. Armstrong Products, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
d. Taco, Inc.

2. Tank: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir constructed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation.
3. Maximum Working Pressure: Up to 175 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: Up to 300 deg F.

F. Air Purgers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AMTROL, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
d. Taco, Inc.

2. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
3. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.4 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 40-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

C. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

D. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

E. Expansion Fittings: Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping." Section 15124 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.

B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.

C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.

D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.

E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.

B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.

C. Install piping from air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.

D. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 and larger.

E. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.

F. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END OF SECTION 232116

SECTION 232123 - HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Separately coupled, base-mounted, end-suction centrifugal pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.

B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of pump. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.

B. Shop Drawings: For each pump.
   1. Show pump layout and connections.
   2. Include setting drawings with templates for installing base rail, anchor bolts and other anchorages.
   3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain hydronic pumps through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of hydronic pumps and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles with wooden flange covers or with screwed-in plugs.

B. Store pumps in dry location.

C. Retain protective covers for flanges and protective coatings during storage.

D. Protect bearings and couplings against damage from sand, grit, and other foreign matter.

E. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.9 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Mechanical Seals: One mechanical seal(s) for each pump.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SEPARATELY COUPLED, BASE-MOUNTED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
   2. ITT Corporation.
   3. TACO Incorporated.

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal. Rate pump for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F. Rate pump for exterior location.

C. Pump Construction:
   1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and flanged connections. Provide integral mount on volute to support the casing, and provide attached

piping to allow removal and replacement of impeller without disconnecting piping or requiring the realignment of pump and motor shaft.

2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For pumps not frequency-drive controlled, trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel.
4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and EPT bellows and gasket.
5. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.

D. Shaft Coupling: Molded-rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration. Couplings shall be drop-out type to allow disassembly and removal without removing pump shaft or motor. EPDM coupling sleeve for variable-speed applications.

E. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.

F. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor.

G. Motor: Single speed, secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment.
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    a. Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
    b. Motor Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.
    c. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
    d. Rated for VFD duty and with shaft grounding device.

H. Capacities and Characteristics: See drawings.

2.2 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

A. Suction Diffuser:
1. Angle pattern.
2. 175-psig pressure rating, iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting.
3. Bronze startup and stainless-steel permanent strainers.
4. Stainless-steel straightening vanes.
5. Drain plug.
6. Factory-fabricated support.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Comply with HI 1.4 and HI 2.4.

B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.

C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.

D. Equipment Mounting:
   1. Install base-mounted pumps on structural equipment bases. Coordinate with structural.
   2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

3.3 ALIGNMENT

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform alignment service.
   1. Certified Representative to Laser Align pump and motor shafts and piping connections after setting on foundation, grout has been set and foundation bolts have been tightened, and piping connections have been made.
   2. Laser alignment printed report and certification shall be furnished.

B. Comply with requirements in Hydronics Institute standards for alignment of pump and motor shaft. Add shims to the motor feet and bolt motor to base frame. Do not use grout between motor feet and base frame.

C. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.

D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.

D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.

E. Install check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of pumps.

F. Install suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.

G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.

H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple-input selector valve.

I. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.

J. Ground equipment according to Sect. 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems." Connect wiring according to Sect. 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
   1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Check piping connections for tightness.
   3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
   4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
      a. Verify bearing lubrication.
      b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
      c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
   5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare for operation.
   6. Start motor.
   7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps.

END OF SECTION 232123

SECTION 232513 - WATER TREATMENT FOR CLOSED-LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following water treatment for closed-loop hydronic systems:

1. Manual chemical-feed equipment.
2. Chemicals.
3. Dye in the hydronic piping system.

B. Contractor shall coordinate and contract with Owner's water treatment Contractor to provide chemical treatment such that specified water conditioning is achieved. Contact NALCO Chemical Company, San Antonio, Texas; phone 210-493-0379; Sales representative Aniceto Alonzo, cell phone 956-330-7167.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

B. RO: Reverse osmosis.

C. TSS: Total suspended solids are solid materials, including organic and inorganic, that are suspended in the water. These solids may include silt, plankton, and industrial wastes.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for the following products:

1. Bypass feeders.
2. Water meters.
3. Chemical test equipment.
4. Chemical material safety data sheets.

B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical treatment equipment showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to hydronic systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Water Analysis Provider Qualifications: Verification of experience and capability of HVAC water-treatment service provider.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Other Informational Submittals:

1. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

B. Contractor shall have a local office within 75 miles of the project site.

1.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Scope of Maintenance Service: Provide chemicals and service program to maintain water conditions required above to inhibit corrosion and scale formation for hydronic piping and equipment. Services and chemicals shall be provided for a period of one year from date of Substantial Completion and shall include the following:

1. Initial water analysis and HVAC water-treatment recommendations.
2. Startup assistance for Contractor to flush the systems, clean with detergents, and initially fill systems with required chemical treatment prior to operation.
3. Periodic field service and consultation.
4. Customer report charts and log sheets.
5. Laboratory technical analysis.
6. Analyses and reports of all chemical items concerning safety and compliance with government regulations.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Chemicals: Furnish quantity equal to 100 percent of amount initially installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Nalco; an Ecolab company.
   2. For all other suppliers, obtain written pre-approval from the Owner.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Water quality for hydronic systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of hydronic equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.

B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, hydronic system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Closed hydronic systems, including chilled water, shall have the following water qualities:
   1. Meet state and local pollution standards, codes and regulations.
   2. pH: Maintain a value within 9.0 to 10.5.
   3. TSS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
   4. Hardness: 0.0
   5. Iron: 0.0
   6. TDS: 1500 to 1700 PPM (as CaCO3)
   7. Silica: 60 PPM or less
   8. Copper: Per manufacturer’s recommendations.
   9. Total Algae: 0.00 growth.
   10. Provide liquid biocide during initial fill.
   11. Microbiological Limits:
      a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/mL.
      b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
      c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
      d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.
      e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.

2.3 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

A. Bypass Feeders: Steel, with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.

1. Capacity: 5 gal..
2. Minimum Working Pressure: 175 psig.

B. Water Meter:

1. AWWA C701, turbine-type, totalization meter.
2. Body: Bronze.
3. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 100 psig.
4. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
5. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
6. End Connections: Threaded.
7. Control: Low-voltage signal capable of transmitting 1000 feet.
8. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.4 CHEMICALS

A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment and that can attain water quality specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

B. System Cleaner: Liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products.

C. Biocide: Chlorine release agents or microbiocides.

D. Closed-Loop, Water Piping Chemicals: Sequestering agent to reduce deposits and adjust pH, corrosion inhibitors, and conductivity enhancers.

2.5 FILTRATION UNIT

A. Filtration Unit: Stainless-steel housing and polypropylene filter with polypropylene core.

B. Replaceable Filter Media: Compatible with antifreeze and water-treatment chemicals.

C. Filter Media for Sediment Removal Service: Rated at 98 percent efficiency for 20-micrometer particulate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install chemical application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.

B. Install water testing equipment on wall near water chemical application equipment.

C. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including chilled water, and equipped with the following:

1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
2. Install water meter in makeup-water supply.
3. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
4. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below the feeder inlet.
5. Install a swing check on the inlet after the isolation valve.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.

B. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Comply with requirements in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."

C. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Division 23 Sections.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup-water connections to potable-water systems.

E. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in electrical Sections for connecting electrical equipment.

F. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

G. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of hydronic systems' startup procedures.
4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.

B. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

D. At eight-week interval following Substantial Completion, perform separate water analyses on hydronic systems to show that chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to "Performance Requirements" Article.

E. Comply with ASTM D 3370 and with the following standards:

1. Silica: ASTM D 859.
2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067.
3. Iron: ASTM D 1068.
4. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: Within 12 months of Substantial Completion, perform two separate water analyses to prove that systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Perform analyses at least 60 days apart. Submit written reports of water analysis.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.

SECTION 232513 - WATER TREATMENT FOR CLOSED-LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

END OF SECTION 232513

SECTION 232923 - VARIABLE FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes solid-state, PWM, VFDs for speed control of three-phase, squirrel-cage induction motors.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control" for monitoring and control of motor circuits.
   2. Division 26 Section "Transient Voltage Suppression" for low-voltage power, control, and communication surge suppressors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BAS: Building Automation System.

B. IGBT: Integrated gate bipolar transistor.

C. LAN: Local area network.

D. PID: Control action, proportional plus integral plus derivative.

E. PWM: Pulse-width modulated.

F. VFD: Variable frequency drive.

1.4 REFERENCES

A. ANSI/NEMA ICS 6 – Enclosures for industrial control systems.

B. ANSI/UL 198C – High intensity capacity fuses; current limiting types.

C. NEMA ICS 2 – Industrial control devices, controllers, and assemblies.

D. NEMA KS 1 – Enclosed switches.

E. NEMA PB 1.1 – Instructions for safe installation, operation, and maintenance of panelboards rated 600 volts or less.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of VFD, provide dimensions; mounting arrangements; location for conduit entries; shipping and operating weights; and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical ratings, characteristics, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each VFD.
   1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Include the following:
      a. Each installed unit's type and details.
      b. Nameplate legends.
      c. Short-circuit current ratings of integrated unit.

   2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring for VFD. Provide schematic wiring diagram for each type of VFD.

C. Manufacturer's field service report.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VFDs, all installed devices, and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include routine maintenance requirements for VFDs and all installed components

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain VFDs of a single type through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for VFDs, minimum clearances between VFDs, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated dimensions and clearances.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

E. UL listed drive and UL-508 listed bypass/inverter assembly.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Written warranty, signed by manufacturer. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace components of units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Manufacturer will provide all labor required for replacement of materials, equipment, controls, and any other portion of complete assembly, as required. A factory-trained employee of manufacturer shall perform warranty work.
   1. Warranty Period for VFD’s: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

2. Warranty period will commence from the date of manufacturer's startup.

B. For the duration of the warranty, local manufacturer's representative must provide a response time of no more than 24 hours. Any failed VFD must be put back into automatic operation within this time period. Mere acknowledgement of a problem does not constitute an acceptable response.

1.8 SPARE PARTS

A. Spare Fuses: Furnish three spare fuses for each type and rating installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Danfoss.
2. Yaskawa.
3. Other manufacturers may be accepted only with prior approval of Engineer, and only if they meet all requirements of this specification. Provide request for substitution a minimum of 7 days prior to submission of bid.

B. Specific models proposed must have a continuous and proven track record of no less than 3 years.

2.2 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES

A. Description: NEMA ICS 2, IGBT, PWM, VFD; listed and labeled as a complete unit and arranged to provide variable speed of a NEMA MG 1, Design B, 3-phase, premium-efficiency induction motor by adjusting output voltage and frequency.

B. Design and Rating: Match load type such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.

C. Output Rating: 3-phase; 6 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range.

D. Unit Operating Requirements:

1. Input ac voltage tolerance of 380 to 480 V, plus or minus 10 percent.
2. Input frequency tolerance of 60 Hz, plus or minus 6 percent.
3. Capable of driving full load, under the following conditions, without derating:

a. Ambient Temperature: 0 to 40 deg C.
b. Humidity: Less than 90 percent (non-condensing).
c. Altitude: 3300 feet (1000 m).

4. Minimum Efficiency: 96 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
5. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 97 percent.
6. Overload Capability: 1.10 times the base load current for 60 seconds at 40˚C; 2.0 times the base load current for 3 seconds at 40˚C.
7. Starting Torque: 100 percent of rated torque or as indicated.
8. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 1 percent.
9. Isolated control interface to allow controller to follow control signal over an 11:1 speed range.
10. Continuous output current rating shall be no less than 100% of NEC motor amperage ratings.
11. Overload current capability of power cube at 40˚C shall equal or exceed 200% of NEC motor amperage values for instantaneous trip, and 110% of NEC amperage for a minimum of sixty seconds, without damage to power cube.
12. Minimum 5% input impedance line reactor; comply with EN61000-3-2, or minimum 3% DC link reactor (also called inductive choke) connected to the DC bus between the rectifier and the PWM inverter.

E. Power Quality Issues

1. VFD must be capable of operating satisfactorily when connected to a bus supplying other solid state power conversion equipment which may be causing up to 10% total harmonic distortion and commutation notches up to 36,500 volt-microseconds, and when other VFDs are operating from the same bus.
2. VFD shall generate less than 3% total harmonic distortion back to the incoming power line at the point of common connection with sensitive equipment. A harmonic analysis shall be submitted with the approval drawings to verify compliance with the latest version of IEEE-519 voltage and current distortion limits as shown in table 10.2 and 10.3 at the point of common coupling (the consumer–utility interface or primary side of the main distribution transformer).
3. The system shall not produce spikes on the incoming line.
4. Any inverter that generates sufficient electrical line noise to interfere with the operation of sensitive building equipment shall be field modified or replaced by the inverter supplier at no additional cost to the Owner.
5. Provide input line noise suppression with MOV's (metal oxide varistors) and snubber circuits to allow for operation on typical industrial or commercial power distribution systems. MOV's shall be provided across incoming line terminals and transistors to protect inverter from voltage surges and spikes.
6. The VFD shall not induce excessive power losses in motors. The worst case RMS motor line current measured at rated speed, torque, and voltage shall not exceed 1.05 times the rated RMS current for pure sine wave operation.
7. VFD must be capable of operating a motor satisfactorily with up to 300 feet of wiring between VFD and motor.

F. Diodes: Bridge rated for 1600 volts.

G. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:

1. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
2. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
3. Acceleration: 2 to a minimum of 22 seconds.
4. Deceleration: 2 to a minimum of 22 seconds.

5. Current Limit: 50 to a minimum of 110 percent of maximum rating.

H. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:

1. Input transient protection by means of surge suppressors.
2. Snubber networks to protect against malfunction due to system voltage transients.
3. Under- and overvoltage trips; inverter overtemperature, overload, and overcurrent trips.
4. Motor Overload Relay: Adjustable and capable of NEMA 250, Class 20 performance.
5. Notch filter to prevent operation of the controller-motor-load combination at a natural frequency of the combination.
6. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
7. Loss-of-phase protection.
8. Reverse-phase protection.
9. Short-circuit protection.
10. Motor overload.
11. Motor over-temperature fault.
12. Heat sink over temperature (Max. operating ambient: 104 degrees F)
13. Protect solid state inverter devices by limiting output current to 110% of inverter rating, automatically prevent over-current trip due to momentary overload conditions.

I. Automatic Reset and Restart: To attempt three restarts after controller fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction. Bidirectional auto-speed search shall be capable of starting into rotating loads spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without damage to controller, motor, or load.

J. Power-Interruption Protection: To prevent motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped.

K. Torque Boost: Automatically vary starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to insure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.

L. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.

M. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators shall indicate the following conditions:

1. Power on.
2. Run.
3. Overvoltage.
4. Line fault.
5. Overcurrent.
6. External fault.

N. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Start-stop and auto-manual selector switches with manual speed control potentiometer and elapsed time meter.

O. Indicating Devices: Meters or digital readout devices and selector switch, mounted flush in controller door and connected to indicate the following controller parameters:

1. Output frequency (Hz).

2. Motor speed (rpm).
3. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
4. Motor current (amperes).
5. Motor torque (percent).
6. Fault or alarming status (code).
7. PID feedback signal (percent).
8. DC-link voltage (VDC).
9. Set-point frequency (Hz).
10. Motor output voltage (V).

P. Control Signal Interface: Provide VFD with the following:

1. Provide communications devices as necessary to allow for connectivity to major automation systems.

2. VFD shall be provided with protocol information specific to Owner's BAS control manufacturer and shall be pre-configured at the factory to provide automatic communications, without the need for field programming, via a single twisted pair wire.

   a. The VFD shall allow the DDC system to control the drive's digital and analog outputs and monitor all drive digital and analog inputs via the serial interface.
   b. VFD is to support BACNet, LonWorks, and Modbus RTU.
   c. Serial communications capabilities include, but are not limited to: run/stop control, speed set adjustment, proportional/integral or PID control adjustments, current limit and acceleration/deceleration time adjustments. The drive shall also have the capability of allowing the DDC system to monitor the following feedback signals: process variable, output speed/frequency, current, torque, power (KW), operating hours, kilowatt hours; relay outputs, and diagnostic warning and fault information.

3. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input signals from the BMS or other control systems:
   a. 0 to 10-V dc.
   b. 0-20 or 4-20 mA.
   c. Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
   d. Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.
   e. RS485.
   f. Keypad display for local hand operation.

4. Remote Indication Interface: A minimum of 2 dry circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:
   a. Motor running.
   b. Set-point speed reached.
   c. Fault and warning indication (over-temperature or over-current).
   d. PID high or low speed limits reached.

Q. Manual Bypass: Arrange magnetic contactor to safely transfer motor between controller output and bypass controller circuit when motor is at zero speed. Controller-off-bypass selector switch sets mode, and indicator lights give indication of mode selected. Unit shall be capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running), with motor completely disconnected from controller (no load).

R. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate VFD and permit safe troubleshooting and testing, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.

S. Bypass Controller:
1. NEMA ICS 2, full-voltage, non-reversing enclosed controller with across-the-line starting capability in manual-bypass mode. Provide motor overload protection under both modes of operation with control logic that allows common start-stop capability in either mode.
2. Bypass section is to be located in a metal enclosure separate from the drive section, and shall be constructed in such a manner that the inverter can be removed for repair while still operating the motor in the "bypass" mode without exposing personnel to any electrical voltage. VFD shall have inverter input power disconnect with door interlocked handle (lock out type) arranged to isolate VFD and permit safe troubleshooting & testing of inverter in when energized and/or de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.
3. Manual bypass shall contain:
   a. A molded case circuit breaker or non-fused disconnect switch with door interlocked handle (lock out type) that interrupts input power to both the bypass circuitry and the drive.
   b. A thermal overload to provide protection of motor in the bypass mode.
   c. A safety interlock circuit that disconnects power to the motor (regardless of the mode of operation—“inverter” or “bypass”) in response to a signal from the thermal overload and/or external safety circuits.
   d. Line voltage to 120/1 volt transformers, fused per NEC, to provide power to bypass control circuits. Transformer shall be sized to include additional 20VA capacity for use by EMS contractor. DC and/or solid-state bypass sources are not acceptable.

T. Non-fused input disconnect switch.

U. Where indicated, provide accessories for “Contactor Motor Selection with Bypass” that will allow the DDC system to remotely switch lead-lag motors.

2.3 ENCLOSURES

A. NEMA 4XSS for any VFD located outdoors.

B. NEMA 12, for all other VFDs located in unconditioned space (indoors).

C. NEMA 1, for all other VFDs located in conditioned space (indoors).

D. Metal inverter enclosure. Plastic and/or fiberglass enclosures are not acceptable.

2.4 FACTORY FINISHES

A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested VFDs before shipping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, surfaces, and substrates to receive VFDs for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine roughing-in for conduit systems to verify actual locations of conduit connections before VFD installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Select features of each VFD to coordinate with ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and motor; required control sequence; and duty cycle of motor, drive, and load.

B. Select rating of controllers to suit motor controlled.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Anchor each VFD assembly to steel-channel sills arranged and sized according to manufacturer's written instructions. Attach by bolting. Level and grout sills flush with VFD mounting surface.

B. Controller Fuses: Install fuses in each fusible switch. Comply with requirements in Division 16 Section "Fuses."

C. Do not install incoming AC lines in same conduit as feeder lines to motor.

D. Do not install wiring runs between VFD and motor longer than recommended by manufacturer.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify VFDs, components, and control wiring according to Division 16 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods"

3.5 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment.

B. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:
   1. Test insulation resistance for each VFD element, bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
   2. Test continuity of each circuit.

B. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing:
   1. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Sections 7.5, 7.6, and 7.16. Certify compliance with test parameters.
   2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

C. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
   1. Test procedures used.
   2. Test results that comply with requirements.
   3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including pretesting and adjusting VFDs, and perform startup service.

B. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's submittal and installation requirements in Division 16 Sections.

C. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Upon successful completion of testing, submit written certification that drives are operating in accordance with Contract Documents, and within design operating limits of equipment. Notify Owner; include set points of adjustable devices, amperages recorded, and any other pertinent data. This information is to be included in the operation and maintenance manual.

3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

3.9 CLEANING

A. Clean VFDs internally, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

A. Provide services of manufacturer trained employee(s) for minimum of three hours training. Demonstrate operation of controllers in the automatic, manual, and bypass modes.

END OF SECTION 23 29 23

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall, spiral-seam, round ducts and fittings.
3. Double-wall, round and flat-oval spiral-seam ducts and formed fittings.
4. Sheet metal materials.
5. Duct liner.
6. Sealants and gaskets.
7. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Duct system design, as indicated, has been used to select size and type of air-moving and -distribution equipment and other air system components. Changes to layout or configuration of duct system must be specifically approved in writing by Architect. Accompany requests for layout modifications with calculations showing that proposed layout will provide original design results without increasing system total pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
   1. Liners and adhesives.
   2. Sealants and gaskets.
   3. Fire-Stopping Materials.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
   2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
   3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
   4. Elevation of top of ducts.
   5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
   6. Fittings.
   7. Reinforcement and spacing.
   8. Seam and joint construction.
   9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
   10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
   11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
   12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:
   1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
   2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
   3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
   4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
   1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
   2. Suspended ceiling components.
   3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
   4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
   5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
   6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
      a. Lighting fixtures.
      b. Air outlets and inlets.
      c. Speakers.
      d. Sprinklers.
      e. Access panels.
      f. Perimeter moldings.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
   2. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. Round, Spiral Lock-Seam Ducts.

B. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Lindab Inc.
      b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
      c. SEMCO Incorporated.
      d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
      e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.

C. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).

D. Duct Joints:
   1. Ducts up to 20 Inches in Diameter: Interior, center-beaded slip coupling, sealed before and after fastening, attached with sheet metal screws.
   2. Ducts 21 to 72 Inchesin Diameter: Three-piece, gasketed, flanged joint consisting of two internal flanges with sealant and one external closure band with gasket.
   3. Round Ducts: Prefabricated connection system consisting of double-lipped, EPDM rubber gasket. Manufacture ducts according to connection system manufacturer's tolerances.
      a. Manufacturers:
         1) Ductmate Industries, Inc.
         2) Lindab Inc.

E. 90-Degree Tees and Laterals and Conical Tees: Fabricate to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible," with metal thicknesses specified for longitudinal-seam straight ducts.

F. Diverging-Flow Fittings: Fabricate with reduced entrance to branch taps and with no excess material projecting from fitting onto branch tap entrance.

G. Fabricate elbows using die-formed, gored, pleated, or mitered construction. Unless elbow construction type is indicated, fabricate elbows as follows:
   1. Mitered-Elbow Radius and Number of Pieces: Welded construction complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible," unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Round Mitered Elbows with Aerofoil Vanes: Welded construction with the following metal thickness for pressure classes from minus 2- to plus 2-inch wg:
      a. Ducts 3 to 36 Inches in Diameter: 0.034 inch.
      b. Ducts 37 to 50 Inches in Diameter: 0.040 inch.

   3. 90-Degree, 2-Piece, Mitered Elbows: Use only for supply systems or for material-handling Class A or B exhaust systems and only where space restrictions do not permit using radius elbows. Fabricate with single-thickness turning vanes.
   4. Round Elbows 8 Inchesand Less in Diameter: Fabricate die-formed elbows for 45- and 90-degree elbows and pleated elbows for 30, 45, 60, and 90 degrees only. Fabricate nonstandard bend-angle configurations or nonstandard diameter elbows with gored construction.
   5. Round Elbows 9 through 14 Inchesin Diameter: Fabricate gored or pleated elbows for 30, 45, 60, and 90 degrees unless space restrictions require mitered elbows. Fabricate

nonstandard bend-angle configurations or nonstandard diameter elbows with gored construction.

6. Round Elbows Larger than 14 Inches in Diameter and All Flat-Oval Elbows: Fabricate gored elbows unless space restrictions require mitered elbows.
7. Die-Formed Elbows for Sizes through 8 Inches in Diameter and All Pressures 0.040 inch thick with 2-piece welded construction.
8. Round Gored-Elbow Metal Thickness: Same as non-elbow fittings specified above.
9. Pleated Elbows for Sizes through 14 Inches in Diameter and Pressures through 10-Inch wg: 0.022 inch.

2.3 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Lindab Inc.
2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
3. SEMCO Incorporated.

B. Ducts: Prefabricated double-wall (insulated) ducts with an outer shell and an inner duct. Dimensions indicated are for inner ducts.

C. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension) of the inner duct.

D. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
   a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.

2. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

E. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch solid sheet steel.

F. Fittings: Fabricate double-wall (insulated) fittings with an outer shell and an inner duct.
1. Solid Inner Ducts: Use the following sheet metal thicknesses:

a. Ducts 3 to 34 Inches in Diameter: 0.028 inch.
b. Ducts 35 to 58 Inches in Diameter: 0.034 inch.
c. Ducts 60 to 88 Inches in Diameter: 0.040 inch.

G. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
3. Terminate insulation where double-wall duct connects to single-wall externally insulated duct, and reduce outer shell diameter to inner duct diameter.
4. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
5. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.
6. Supply and Make-Up Air Ducts: **2 inches** thick.
7. **Painted for indoor application.** Coordinate final finish with architect.

2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.

D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.

E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.

F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.5 DUCT LINER

A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Manufacturers:
a. Owens Corning’s Aeroflex Plus Duct Liner or Equal.

2. Materials: ASTM C 1071; surfaces exposed to airstream shall be coated to prevent erosion of glass fibers.
   a. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
   b. Thickness: 1 inch for sound attenuation, and R8 for thermal insulation.
   c. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 at 75 deg Fmean temperature.
   d. Fire-Hazard Classification: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E84.
   e. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   f. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in duct.
      1) Tensile Strength: Indefinitely sustain a 50-lb-tensile, dead-load test perpendicular to duct wall.
      2) Fastener Pin Length: As required for thickness of insulation and without projecting more than 1/8 inch into airstream.
      3) Adhesive for Attaching Mechanical Fasteners: Comply with fire-hazard classification of duct liner system.

3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.

2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
   1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
   2. Tape Width: 4 inches.
   3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
   4. Water resistant.
   5. Mold and mildew resistant.
   6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
   7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
   8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
   9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
   10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
1. Seal shall provide maximum 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.7 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.

F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

2.8 FIRE-STOPPING

A. Fire-Resistant Sealant: Provide two-part, foamed-in-place, fire-stopping silicone sealant, one-part elastomeric sealant, formulated for use in a through-penetration fire-stop system for filling openings around duct penetrations through walls and floors, having fire-resistance ratings indicated as established by testing identical assemblies per ASTM E 814 by Underwriters Laboratory, Inc. or other testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated in the Work are limited to, the following:
1. "Dow Corning Fire Stop Foam"; Dow Corning Corp.
2. "Dow Corning Fire Stop Sealant"; Dow Corning Corp.
3. "3M Fire Barrier Caulk CP-25"; Electrical Products Div./3M.

C. Seams and laps arranged on top of duct.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install round and flat-oval ducts in maximum practical lengths.

D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.

B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.

D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 APPLICATION OF LINER IN RECTANGULAR DUCTS

A. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.

B. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.

C. Butt transverse joints without gaps and coat joint with adhesive.

D. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.

E. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and standard liner product dimensions make longitudinal joints necessary.

F. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.

G. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.

H. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
   1. Fan discharges.
   2. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
   3. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are greater than 2500 fpm or where indicated.

I. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

3.4 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible", and as defined below.
   1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
   2. All Ducts U.N.O: Seal Class A.
   3. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
   4. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
   1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
   2. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.

C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.

D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.

F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.7 PAINTING

A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 9 Sections.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Leakage Tests:
   1. **Comply with requirements for Leakage Class A for sealing all ducts.** Refer to SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
   2. Test the following systems:
      a. Supply, Return, Exhaust, Outdoor Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
      b. Engineer will randomly designate two supply duct systems for testing in accordance with Section 4 of SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual, current edition. If leakage test results exceed SMACNA allowable leakage rates, then additional two systems shall be tested. Supply duct test section shall include main trunk line from the mechanical room to the farthest VAV box. For systems without VAV boxes, main trunk shall be determined on site

3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 DUCT CLEANING

A. Clean new and existing duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.

6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.10 START UP

A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.11 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:

A. Supply Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, and Terminal Units:
   a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units
   a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
3. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:
   a. Pressure Class: Positive 4-inch wg.
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A

B. Return Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, and Terminal Units
   a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units
   a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B

C. Exhaust Ducts:
   1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
      a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg
      b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A

D. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
   1. Ducts Connected to AHUs, Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units
      a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg
      b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A

E. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:
   1. Supply Air Ducts: 2 inches thick, unless noted otherwise on drawings.

F. Elbow Configuration:
   1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
      a. Double Skin vaned elbows. See drawings.
   2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-3, "Round Duct Elbows."
      a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
         1) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
      b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
      c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.

G. Branch Configuration:
   1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
      a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
      b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
   2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
      a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
      b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
      c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Barometric relief dampers.
3. Manual volume dampers.
4. Control dampers.
5. Fire dampers.
6. Flange connectors.
7. Turning vanes.
8. Remote damper operators.
9. Duct-mounted access doors.
10. Flexible connectors.
11. Flexible ducts.
12. Duct accessory hardware.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:

a. Special fittings.
b. Manual volume damper installations.
c. Control-damper installations.
d. Fire-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.

B. Source quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

B. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304.

C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.

E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
2. Nailor Industries Inc.
3. Pottorff.
4. Ruskin Company.

B. Description: Gravity balanced. Blades of maximum 6-inch width, with sealed edges, assembled in rattle-free manner, steel ball bearings, and axles.

C. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.05-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners and mounting flange.

D. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, 0.050-inch-thick aluminum sheet with sealed edges.

E. Blade Action: Parallel.

F. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.

G. Blade Axles:

1. Material: Galvanized steel.

H. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

I. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

J. Accessories:

1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
3. Electric actuators, where noted.
4. Chain pulls.
5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.

a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage minimum.
b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.

6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
7. Screen Material: Stainless steel.
8. Screen Type: Bird.
9. 90-degree stops.

2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
c. Nailor Industries Inc.
d. Pottorff.
e. Ruskin Company.

2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.

3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames:

a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
b. Mitered and welded corners.
c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

5. Blades:

a. Multiple or single blade.
b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.

6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.

7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. McGill AirFlow LLC.
b. Nailor Industries Inc.
c. Pottorff.
d. Ruskin Company.

2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.

3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch-thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:

    a. Multiple or single blade.
    b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch-thick aluminum sheet.
    e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch-thick extruded aluminum.

6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.

7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

C. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Pottorff.
    b. Ruskin Company.

2. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
3. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
5. Frames:

    a. Hat shaped.
    b. 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
    c. Mitered and welded corners.
    d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

6. Blades:

    a. Multiple or single blade.
    b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    d. Galvanized, roll-formed steel, 0.064 inch thick.

7. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.

8. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
9. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
10. Accessories:

    a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

D. Low-Leakage, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Pottorff.
    b. Ruskin Company.

2. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
3. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
5. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch-thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
6. Blades:

    a. Multiple or single blade.
    b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    c. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch-thick aluminum sheet.
    d. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch-thick extruded aluminum.

7. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.

8. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
9. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
10. Accessories:

    a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

E. Jackshaft:

1. Size: 1-inch diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

F. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
2. Pottorff.
3. Ruskin Company.
4. Young Regulator Company.

B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.

C. Frames:

1. Hat shaped.
2. 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
3. Mitered and welded corners.

D. Blades:

1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches.
2. Opposed-blade design.
3. Galvanized-steel.
4. 0.064 inch thick single skin.
5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch-diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F. Bearings:

1. Molded synthetic.
2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
2. Pottorff.
3. Ruskin Company.

B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.

C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.

D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.

E. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.

1. Minimum Thickness: 0.138 inch thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.

G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.

J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

2.7 FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Nexus PDQ.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.

B. Description: Factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

C. Material: Galvanized steel.

D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.8 TURNING VANES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. METALAIRE, Inc.
3. SEMCO Incorporated.
4. Ward Industries, Inc.

B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

D. Vane Construction: Double wall.

2.9 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Pottorff.
2. Young Regulator Company.

B. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.

C. Tubing: Brass.

D. Cable: Stainless steel.

E. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Stainless steel.

2.10 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Pottorff.

B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."

1. Door:

a. Double wall, rectangular.
b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
c. Vision panel.
d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.

2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.

2.11 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.

B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.

C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 5-3/4 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.

1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

G. High-Temperature System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric coated with silicone rubber.

1. Minimum Weight: 16 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 285 lbf/inch in the warp and 185 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.

H. High-Corrosive-Environment System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric with chemical-resistant coating.

1. Minimum Weight: 14 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 450 lbf/inch in the warp and 340 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.

2.12 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
2. Thermaflex

A. Where acoustical flexible duct is shown on drawings, provide Flexmaster Type 8M (or Thermaflex M-KE) UL 181 Class I Air Duct or equal.

B. The duct shall be constructed of a CPE fabric supported by helical wound galvanized steel. The fabric shall be mechanically locked to the steel helix without the use of adhesives or chemicals.

C. The internal working pressure rating shall be at least 6" w.g. positive and 4" w.g. negative through 16" diameter, and 1" w.g. negative for 18" and 20" diameters, with a bursting pressure of at least 2 ½ time the working pressure.

D. The duct shall be rated for a velocity of at lease 4000 feet per minute.

E. The duct must be suitable for continuous operation at a temperature range of -20° F to +250° F.

F. Factory insulate the flexible duct with fiberglass insulation. The R-value shall be at least 8 at a mean temperature of 75° F.

G. Cover the insulation with a fire retardant metalized vapor barrier jacket reinforced with crosshatched scrim having a permeance of not greater than 0.05 perms when tested in accordance with ASTM E96, Procedure.

H. Sound attenuation Properties: Acoustical performance, when tested by an independent laboratory in accordance with the Air Diffusion Council's Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1, Section 3.0, Sound Properties, shall be as follows:

Octave Band	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**
Hz.	125	250	500	1000	2000	4000
6" diameter	7	31	40	38	40	27
8" diameter	13	29	36	35	38	22
12" diameter	21	28	29	33	26	12

I. Flexible Duct Connectors:

1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

2.13 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.

B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.

C. Install backdraft dampers (control dampers for fans 2,000CFM and larger) at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.

1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.

E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.

G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.

H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:

1. On both sides of duct coils.
2. Upstream from duct filters.
3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
4. At drain pans and seals.
5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
8. Upstream from turning vanes.
9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
10. Control devices requiring inspection.
11. Elsewhere as indicated.

I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

J. Access Door Sizes:

1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.

K. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

L. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

M. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.

N. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly, and for fan powered boxes with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

O. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with stainless steel draw bands.

P. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on sea level.

B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Also include the following:
   1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
   2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
   3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
   4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
   5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
   6. Fan speed controllers.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For unit hangars and supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
   1. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
   2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
   1. Framing and support members relative to duct penetrations.
   2. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
   3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
   4. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
   5. Framing and support members relative to duct penetrations.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Belts: One set for each belt-driven unit.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

C. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.

B. Coordinate installation of equipment supports, and wall penetrations.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: The special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and

shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Special Warranty: A written warranty, executed by Contractor and signed by manufacturer, agreeing to replace components that fail in materials and workmanship within the specified warranty period, provided manufacturer's written instructions for installation, operation, and maintenance have been followed.
   1. Warranty Period: One (1) year parts and labor for fan and motor, including all components, from date of Substantial Completion.

1.11 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Belts: One set for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. HVAC Power Ventilators: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Loren Cook Company.
   2. Greenheck Fan Corp.
   3. New York Blower Company (The).
   4. Penn Ventilation.

2.2 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

A. Description: Centrifugal fans designed for installing in ceiling or wall or for concealed in-line applications.

B. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.

C. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal forward curved type, injection molded of polypropylene resin for smaller fans, galvanized steel for larger fans.

D. Grille: Manufacturer’s standard **Aluminum**, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.

E. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.

F. Accessories:
   1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
   2. Manual Starter Switch: Single-pole rocker switch assembly with cover and pilot light.
   3. Factory mounted disconnect

4. Stainless steel insect screen
5. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.
6. Aluminum backdraft damper
7. Vibration isolator kit
8. Time-Delay Switch: See schedules for switch coordination.
9. See schedules for other options.

2.3 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
   1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.

B. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.

C. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration-control devices are specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

D. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

E. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.

C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.
   1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
   2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
   3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
   4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
   5. Adjust belt tension.
   6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
   7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
   8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
   9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
   10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
   11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

B. Starting Procedures:
   1. Energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm.
   2. Measure and record motor voltage and amperage.

C. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.

D. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Adjust belt tension.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.

E. Lubricate bearings.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain power ventilators.
   1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining equipment and schedules.
   2. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."
   3. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.

END OF SECTION 233423

SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes grilles, registers, diffusers, and other air devices

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 089116 "Operable Wall Louvers" and Section 089119 "Fixed Louvers" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For diffusers, registers, and grilles with factory-applied color finishes.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
5. Duct access panels.

B. Source quality-control reports.

SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified:
   1. Price Industries.
   2. Titus.

2.2 AIR DEVICES

A. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Grilles, Registers, Diffusers: See schedules for material, finish, size, pattern, damper type, and accessories.

B. Fire rated air devices: Plans indicate a “fire damper” designation on diffusers that need a fire rated air device. Coordinate with plans.

2.3 INSULATION

A. All cold surfaces that are susceptible to condensation shall be insulated.

B. Insulation may be provided by manufacturer or by installing Contractor. Coordinate with installing Contractor.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.

B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design

requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Packaged, air-cooled, electric-motor-driven, scroll water chillers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. COP: Coefficient of performance. The ratio of the rate of heat removal to the rate of energy input using consistent units for any given set of rating conditions.

B. DDC: Direct digital control.

C. EER: Energy-efficiency ratio. The ratio of the cooling capacity given in terms of Btu/h to the total power input given in terms of watts at any given set of rating conditions.

D. IPLV: Integrated part-load value. A single number part-load efficiency figure of merit calculated per the method defined by ARI 506/110 and referenced to ARI standard rating conditions.

E. kW/Ton: The ratio of total power input of the chiller in kilowatts to the net refrigerating capacity in tons at any given set of rating conditions.

F. NPLV: Nonstandard part-load value. A single number part-load efficiency figure of merit calculated per the method defined by ARI 506/110 and intended for operating conditions other than the ARI standard rating conditions.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include refrigerant, rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

1. Performance at ARI standard conditions and at conditions indicated.
2. Performance at ARI standard unloading conditions.
3. Minimum evaporator flow rate.
4. Refrigerant capacity of water chiller.
5. Oil capacity of water chiller.
6. Fluid capacity of evaporator.
7. Characteristics of safety relief valves.
8. Minimum entering condenser-air temperature

9. Performance at varying capacity with constant design entering condenser-air temperature. Repeat performance at varying capacity for different entering condenser-air temperatures from design to minimum in 10 deg F increments.

B. Shop Drawings: Complete set of manufacturer's prints of water chiller assemblies, control panels, sections and elevations, and unit isolation. Include the following:

1. Assembled unit dimensions.
2. Weight and load distribution.
3. Required clearances for maintenance and operation.
4. Size and location of piping and wiring connections.
5. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Structural supports.
2. Piping roughing-in requirements.
3. Wiring roughing-in requirements, including spaces reserved for electrical equipment.
4. Access requirements, including working clearances for mechanical controls and electrical equipment, and tube pull and service clearances.

B. Certificates: For certification required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

C. Source quality-control test reports.

D. Startup service reports.

E. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each water chiller to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ARI Certification: Certify chiller according to ARI 590 certification program.

B. ARI Rating: Rate water chiller performance according to requirements in ARI 506/110, "Water Chilling Packages Using the Vapor Compression Cycle."

C. ASHRAE Compliance: ASHRAE 15 for safety code for mechanical refrigeration.

D. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

E. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and stamp water chiller heat exchangers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

F. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Ship water chillers from the factory fully charged with refrigerant and filled with oil.

B. Package water chiller for export shipping.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. The special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of Contract Documents.

B. Special Warranty: Submit a written warranty signed by chiller manufacturer and Installer agreeing to furnish parts for compressor and motor failures within special warranty period.

1. Warranties shall include coverage for complete assembly including materials, labor, and refrigerant.
2. Delivery date will not be used as a basis for start of warranty period. Warranty period shall commence from date of chiller start-up. Provide Owner and Engineer with copy of field technician’s start-up report, and with written notice of commencement of warranty period.
3. Related Damages and Losses: When correcting warranted Work that has failed, remove and replace other Work that has been damaged as a result of such failure or that must be removed and replaced to provide access for correction of warranted Work.
4. Reinstatement of Warranty: When Work covered by a warranty has failed and been corrected by replacement or rebuilding, reinstate the warranty by written endorsement. The reinstated warranty shall be equal to the original warranty with an equitable adjustment for depreciation.
5. Replacement Cost: Upon determination that Work covered by a warranty has failed, replace or rebuild the Work to an acceptable condition complying with requirements of Contract Documents. The Contractor is responsible for the cost of replacing or rebuilding defective Work regardless of whether the Owner has benefited from use of the Work through a portion of its anticipated useful service life.
6. Rejection of Warranties: The Owner reserves the right to reject warranties and to limit selections to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.

C. Submit a written warranty signed by chiller manufacturer and Installer agreeing to furnish parts for compressor and motor failures within special warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's warranty, not less than FIVE YEARS (bumper-to-bumper) for entire chiller, including parts, and labor as provided by manufacturer, and replacement of refrigerant.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PACKAGED AIR-COOLED WATER CHILLERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Base Bid: Daikin Applied.
2. Alternate Bid (See Bid Form): Trane.

B. Description: Factory-assembled and run-tested water chiller complete with base and frame, condenser casing, compressors, compressor motors and motor controllers, evaporator, condenser coils, condenser fans and motors, electrical power, controls, and accessories.

C. Cabinet:

1. Base: Galvanized-steel base extending the perimeter of water chiller. Secure frame, compressors, and evaporator to base to provide a single-piece unit.
2. Frame: Rigid galvanized-steel frame secured to base and designed to support cabinet, condenser, control panel, and other chiller components not directly supported from base.
3. Casing: Galvanized steel.
4. Finish: Coat base, frame, and casing with a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a 500-hour salt-spray test according to ASTM B 117.
5. Sound-reduction package consisting of the following:

a. Acoustic enclosure around compressors.
b. Reduced-speed fans with acoustic treatment.
c. Designed to reduce sound level without affecting performance.

6. Security Package: Provide security grilles with fasteners for additional protection of compressors, evaporator, and condenser coils. Grilles shall be coated for corrosion resistance and shall be removable for service access.

D. Compressors:

1. Description: Positive-displacement direct drive with hermetically sealed casing.
2. Each compressor provided with suction and discharge service valves, crankcase oil heater, and suction strainer.
3. Operating Speed: Nominal 3600 rpm for 60-Hz applications.
4. Capacity Control: On-off compressor cycling, plus hot-gas bypass, if required to meet the scheduled minimum capacity.
5. Oil Lubrication System: Automatic pump with strainer, sight glass, filling connection, filter with magnetic plug, and initial oil charge.

6. Vibration Isolation: Mount individual compressors on vibration isolators.

E. Compressor Motors:

1. Hermetically sealed and cooled by refrigerant suction gas.
2. High-torque, two-pole induction type with inherent thermal-overload protection on each phase.

F. Compressor Motor Controllers:

1. Across the Line: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, full voltage, nonreversing.

G. Refrigeration:

1. Refrigerant: R-410a. Classified as Safety Group A1 according to ASHRAE 34.
2. Refrigerant Compatibility: Parts exposed to refrigerants shall be fully compatible with refrigerants, and pressure components shall be rated for refrigerant pressures.
3. Refrigerant Circuit: Each circuit shall include a thermal-expansion valve, refrigerant charging connections, a hot-gas muffler, compressor suction and discharge shutoff valves, a liquid-line shutoff valve, a replaceable-core filter-dryer, a sight glass with moisture indicator, a liquid-line solenoid valve, and an insulated suction line.
4. Refrigerant Isolation: Factory install positive shutoff isolation valves in the compressor discharge line and the refrigerant liquid-line to allow the isolation and storage of the refrigerant charge in the chiller condenser.

H. Evaporator:

1. Brazed-plate or shell-and-tube design, as indicated.
2. Shell and Tube:

    a. Description: Direct-expansion, shell-and-tube design with fluid flowing through the shell and refrigerant flowing through the tubes within the shell.
    b. Code Compliance: Tested and stamped according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
    c. Shell Material: Carbon steel.
    d. Shell Heads: Removable carbon-steel heads with multipass baffles designed to ensure positive oil return and located at each end of the tube bundle.
    e. Shell Nozzles: Fluid nozzles located along the side of the shell and terminated with mechanical-coupling end connections for connection to field piping.
    f. Tube Construction: Individually replaceable copper tubes with enhanced fin design, expanded into tube sheets.

3. Brazed Plate:

    a. Direct-expansion, single-pass, brazed-plate design.
    b. Type 316 stainless-steel construction.
    c. Code Compliance: Tested and stamped according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
    d. Fluid Nozzles: Terminate with mechanical-coupling end connections for connection to field piping.

I. Air-Cooled Condenser:

1. Plate-fin coil with integral subcooling on each circuit, rated at 450 psig.

   a. Construct coils of copper tubes mechanically bonded to aluminum fins. Microchannel Aluminum is not acceptable.
   b. Coat coils with a baked epoxy corrosion-resistant coating after fabrication. Black-fin coating is not acceptable. Coil shall have minimum salt spray rating of 6,000+ hours when rated IAW ASTM-B117.
   c. Hail Protection: Provide condenser coils with steel louvers, baffles, or hoods painted to match the chiller to protect against hail damage. Wire mesh type is not acceptable.

2. Fans: Direct-drive propeller type with statically and dynamically balanced fan blades, arranged for vertical air discharge.
3. Fan Motors: Totally enclosed air over (TEAO) enclosure, with permanently lubricated bearings, and having built-in overcurrent- and thermal-overload protection.
4. Fan Guards: Steel safety guards with corrosion-resistant coating.

J. Electrical Power:

1. Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to water chiller.
2. House in a unit-mounted, NEMA 250, enclosure with hinged access door with lock and key or padlock and key.
3. Wiring shall be numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.
4. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a raceway.
5. Field power interface shall be to NEMA 4XSS, heavy-duty, nonfused disconnect switch, provided by Div. 26.
6. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with one of the following disconnecting means:
   a. Motor-circuit protector (circuit breaker) with field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.

7. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.
8. Overload relay sized according to UL 1995, or an integral component of water chiller control microprocessor.
9. Phase-Failure and Undervoltage: Solid-state sensing with adjustable settings.
10. Transformer: Unit-mounted transformer with primary and secondary fuses and sized with enough capacity to operate electrical load plus spare capacity.

    a. Power unit-mounted controls.

11. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable time-delay relays.
12. Indicate the following for water chiller electrical power supply:

    a. Current, phase to phase, for all three phases.
    b. Voltage, phase to phase and phase to neutral for all three phases.
    c. Three-phase real power (kilowatts).
    d. Three-phase reactive power (kilovolt amperes reactive).

e. Power factor.
f. Running log of total power versus time (kilowatt hours).
g. Fault log, with time and date of each.

K. Controls:

1. Stand-alone, microprocessor based.
2. Enclosure: Share enclosure with electrical power devices or provide a separate enclosure of matching construction.
3. Operator Interface: Keypad or pressure-sensitive touch screen. Multiple-character, backlit, liquid-crystal display or light-emitting diodes. Display the following:

a. Date and time.
b. Operating or alarm status.
c. Operating hours.
d. Outside-air temperature if required for chilled-water reset.
e. Temperature and pressure of operating set points.
f. Entering and leaving temperatures of chilled water.
g. Refrigerant pressures in evaporator and condenser.
h. Saturation temperature in evaporator and condenser.
i. No cooling load condition.
j. Elapsed time meter (compressor run status).
k. Pump status.
l. Antirecycling timer status.
m. Percent of maximum motor amperage.
n. Current-limit set point.
o. Number of compressor starts.

4. Control Functions:

a. Manual or automatic startup and shutdown time schedule.
b. Entering and leaving chilled-water temperatures, control set points, and motor load limit. Chilled-water leaving temperature shall be reset based on input from the BAS system.
c. Current limit and demand limit.
d. External water chiller emergency stop.
e. Antirecycling timer.

5. Manual-Reset Safety Controls: The following conditions shall shut down water chiller and require manual reset:

a. Low evaporator pressure or high condenser pressure.
b. Low chilled-water temperature.
c. Refrigerant high pressure.
d. High or low oil pressure.
e. High oil temperature.
f. Loss of chilled-water flow.
g. Control device failure.

6. Interface with DDC System for HVAC: DDC shall provide hardwired control points to monitor, control, and display water chiller status and alarms. In addition, provide BACnet

gateway communications device allowing for chiller operating parameters and alarms with descriptions to be monitored via direct digital control system. Coordinate interface with DDC Contractor.

a. Hardwired points: As a minimum, the system shall allow the following parameters to be monitored or controlled.
   1) Leaving chilled water temperature.
   2) Entering chilled water temperature.
   3) Percent running load amps on motor.
   4) Chiller compressor status.
   5) Proof of chilled water flow.
   6) Alarm status.
   7) Chiller enable / disable.
   8) Chilled water temperature setpoint.
   9) Demand limit setpoint.
   10) Hot gas bypass status.
   11) Chiller % load.

b. BACnet points: As a minimum, the system shall allow the following parameters to be monitored.
   1) Alarm status and descriptions.
   2) Refrigerant temperatures (each circuit): saturation temp, suction temp
   3) Refrigerant pressure (each circuit): condensing, evaporating
   4) Compressor run time (each)
   5) And 10 other points that will be determined at a later date.

L. Insulation:

1. Material: Closed-cell, flexible elastomeric, thermal insulation complying with ASTM C 534, Type I, for tubular materials and Type II, for sheet materials.
2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches minimum, rated for installation in hot humid climate.
3. Factory-applied insulation over cold surfaces of water chiller components.

   a. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and applied to 100 percent of insulation contact surface. Seal seams and joints.

4. Apply protective coating to exposed surfaces of insulation.

M. Accessories:

1. Factory-installed, thermal dispersion chilled-water flow switches.
2. Individual compressor suction and discharge pressure gages with shutoff valves for each refrigeration circuit.
3. Factory-furnished neoprene or spring isolators for field installation.

N. Capacities and Characteristics: See schedules.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform functional test of water chillers before shipping.

B. For water chillers located outdoors, rate sound power level according to ARI 370 procedure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Before water chiller installation, examine roughing-in for equipment support, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, piping, and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting water chiller performance, maintenance, and operations.

1. Water chiller locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 WATER CHILLER INSTALLATION

A. Install water chillers on support structure indicated.

B. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install water chillers on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
3. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
4. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
5. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
6. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

C. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.

D. Charge water chiller with refrigerant if not factory charged and fill with oil if not factory installed.

E. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to chiller to allow service and maintenance.

C. Evaporator Fluid Connections: Connect to evaporator inlet with shutoff valve, strainer, flexible connector, thermometer, and plugged tee with pressure gage. Connect to evaporator outlet with shutoff valve, balancing valve, flexible connector, flow switch, thermometer, plugged tee with

pressure gage, and drain connection with valve. Make connections to water chiller with a union, flange, or mechanical coupling.

D. Connect each drain connection with a union and drain pipe and extend pipe, full size of connection, to floor drain. Provide a shutoff valve at each connection if required.

E. Connect wiring and ground water chillers according to Division 26 Specifications.

F. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

B. Inspect field-assembled components, equipment installation, and piping and electrical connections for proper assemblies, installations, and connections.

C. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:

1. Verify that refrigerant charge is sufficient and water chiller has been leak tested.
2. Verify that pumps are installed and functional.
3. Verify that thermometers and gages are installed.
4. Operate water chiller for run-in period.
5. Check bearing lubrication and oil levels.
6. Verify that refrigerant pressure relief device for chillers installed indoors is vented outside.
7. Verify proper motor rotation.
8. Verify static deflection of vibration isolators, including deflection during water chiller startup and shutdown.
9. Verify and record performance of chilled-water flow and low-temperature interlocks.
10. Verify and record performance of water chiller protection devices.
11. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Prepare a written startup report that records results of tests and inspections.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain water chillers. Video record the training sessions.

3.6 INSPECTION SERVICES

A. Engage a qualified manufacturer’s service technician to perform chiller inspections at time intervals specified below.

1. Coordinate inspection time with Owner at least 5 working days prior to inspection. Schedule inspection at Owner's convenience.
2. Manufacturer's field technician must check in with Owner prior to beginning inspection. Review with Owner chiller logs and operational issues for problems and trends.
3. Manufacturer's field technician must check out with Owner after inspection.

B. Quarterly inspections: Manufacturer shall provide comprehensive inspection service of chiller at approximately three, six, and nine months after Substantial Completion. Quarterly inspections shall include, as a minimum, the following services:

1. Check the general operation of the unit.
2. Log the operating temperatures, pressures, voltages, and amperages.
3. Check the operation of the control circuit.
4. Check the operation of the motor and starter.
5. Analyze the recorded data. Compare the data to the original design conditions.
6. Review operating procedures with operating personnel.
7. Provide a written report of completed work, operating log, and indicate any uncorrected deficiencies detected.

C. End of First Year inspection: Manufacturer shall provide comprehensive inspection service of chiller at approximately twelve months after Substantial Completion. Inspection shall include, as a minimum, the following services:

1. General Assembly

    a. Leak-test the chiller and report the leak check results.
    b. Repair minor leaks as required (e.g. valve packing, flare nuts).
    c. Calculate refrigerant loss rate and report to customer.
    d. Visually inspect condenser tubes for cleanliness.

2. Controls and Safeties

    a. Inspect the control panel for cleanliness.
    b. Inspect wiring and connections for tightness and signs of overheating and discoloration.
    c. Verify all settings in the electronic control panel.
    d. Test the low oil pressure safety device. Calibrate and record setting.
    e. Test the high motor temperature safety device. Calibrate and record setting.
    f. Test the operation of the chilled water pump starter auxiliary contacts.
    g. Verify the setting of the current control device.

3. Lubrication System

    a. Pull oil sample for spectroscopic analysis.
    b. Test the oil for acid content and discoloration. Make recommendations to the customer based on the results of the test.
    c. Change the oil filter.
    d. Verify the operation of the oil heater. Measure amps and volts and compare the readings with the watt rating of the heater.

4. Motor and Starter

a. Clean the starter and cabinet.
b. Inspect wiring and connections for tightness and signs of overheating and discoloration.
c. Check tightness of motor terminal connections.
d. Check condition of the contacts for wear and pitting.
e. Check contactors for free and smooth operation.
f. Check the mechanical linkages for wear, security and clearances.
g. Meg the motor and record the readings.
h. Verify the operation of the electrical interlocks.
i. Measure voltage and record. Voltage should be nominal voltage ±10%.

D. Provide all services, equipment, and materials required to remedy manufacturing or operational deficiencies found. Arrange for subsequent visit(s) if required. If routine maintenance is required, provide a report with recommendations to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 236423

SECTION 237313 - MODULAR INDOOR CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes full 2” double wall, modular air-handling units with coils in the following configurations: Variable-air-volume, chilled water air-handling units in single path and dual path configurations.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Casing panels shall be self-supporting and capable of withstanding 133 percent of internal static pressures indicated, without panel joints exceeding a deflection of L/240 where "L" is the unsupported span length within completed casings.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit indicated.

1. Unit dimensions and weight.
2. Cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
3. Fans:

    a. AMCA 210 certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
    b. AMCA 301 certified fan-sound power ratings.
    c. Fan construction and accessories.
    d. Motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.

4. Certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
6. Filters with performance characteristics.

B. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Mechanical-room layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements.
2. Support location, type, and weight.
3. Field measurements.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-handling units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.

C. ARI Certification: Air-handling units and their components shall be factory tested according to ARI 430, "Central-Station Air-Handling Units," and shall be listed and labeled by ARI.

D. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

E. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

F. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

B. Coordinate base size with condensate drain connection opening and requirements for condensate drain trap size.

C. Coordinate side of coil connections and access doors. Coordinate exact dimensions of custom openings for supply, return and fresh air. Coordinate dimensional limitations.

D. Since spatial constraints are an important consideration, coordinate site conditions, space availability for equipment, maintenance and NEC clearances, etc., prior to submitting bids.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: The special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Special Warranty: A written warranty, executed by Contractor and signed by manufacturer, agreeing to replace components that fail in materials and workmanship within the specified

warranty period, provided manufacturer's written instructions for installation, operation, and maintenance have been followed.

1. Warranty Period: One year parts and labor from date of Substantial Completion.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: One set for each air-handling unit.
2. Fan Belts: One set for each air-handling unit fan.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Base Bid: Daikin Applied.
2. Alternate Bid (See Bid Form): Trane.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Manufacturer shall clearly define any exceptions made to plans and specifications. Mechanical Contractor is responsible for expenses that occur due to exceptions made.

B. Carefully coordinate with Electrical, Mechanical, and Controls Contractors for items of work that required close integration.

C. Units shall be delivered prewired, bearing an approved label with all of the necessary identification marks, electrical data, and any necessary cautions as required by the National Electrical Code.

D. The entire unit shall be covered with a protective covering from time of shipment at factory until installed with structure protecting indoor air handling units. If at any time the protective covering is removed before installation, the equipment shall be thoroughly cleaned, internally and externally.

E. Unit shall be factory assembled central station air handler with a fan, motor and drive assembly, chilled water and hot water coils, access section, combination filter-mixing box section, control dampers and accessories, as indicated on schedules and details.

F. All unit sections shall be supplied with longitudinal 14-gage or heavier, galvanized steel structural perimeter base rails to serve as housekeeping rails when unit is installed. The manufacturer at the factory shall install base rails. Perimeter lifting brackets shall be provided on each section. Slinging of units in place of lifting brackets is not acceptable.

G. Units shall ship in the fewest number of sections to meet project requirements. All section shall be individually flanged and gasketed to allow easy assembly and disassembly.

2.3 UNIT CASINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced double-wall insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed. Units shall be weatherproofed and equipped for installation indoors or outdoors as scheduled.

1. Unit shall be constructed not to deflect more than L/240 at any point on the exterior liner and have a leakage of less than 1% of design airflow at 1.25 times design station pressure up to +/-8" W.G. static pressure subject to factory or field testing.
2. Outside Casing: G90 galvanized steel, 20 gauge thick. Panels shall be designed to withstand Federal Test Method Standard No. 141 500-hour salt-spray test.
3. Inside Casing: G90 galvanized steel, 20 gauge thick, except **coil casing, bulkheads, mounting supports, and coil liner: Type 304 stainless steel.**
4. Inside Casing Floor: **Gauge thick enough to walk on without deflecting.**
5. Joints: All walls, roofs, and joints shall be of formed construction, with at least two breaks at each joint. Joints shall be secured by sheet metal screws or pop rivets. Wall and floor joints shall be broken in and roof joints broken out (exposed) for rigidity. All joints shall be caulked with a water resistant sealant.
6. Base Rail: Casings shall be supported on formed galvanized steel channel or structural channel supports, designed and welded for low deflections. Base rail shall be continuous, with flanged connections at shipping splits. Mounting feet are not acceptable. Integral lifting lugs shall be provided for hoisting.
7. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004.

B. Casing Insulation and Adhesive:
1. Materials: 2" thick nominal 3 lb/cu.ft. density acoustic insulation; Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 at 75 deg F mean temperature. R-13 or higher.
2. Fire-Hazard Classification: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50, when tested according to ASTM C 411.
3. Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and ASTM C 916.
4. Location and Application: Encased between outside and inside casing.

C. Inspection and Access Panels and Access Doors: Access doors large enough for easy access to accommodate periodic maintenance and inspection. Same materials and finishes as cabinet, complete with hinges, latches, handles, and gaskets. Provide access panels and doors in the following locations:

1. Location: Access doors to fans and motors, filters, dampers and operators, coil section inspection and access section, electrical control panels, and as specified on unit drawings
2. Construction: Provide an extruded aluminum perimeter frame with steel sheets front and back (sheets shall match cabinet construction) and pressure inject with 2.2 lbs/cu.ft. of polyurethane foam to create a seamless rigid 2" double wall door with an insulating value of R13.
3. Thermal Resistance: Doors shall be designed to reduce thru metal for improved performance.

4. Gaskets: Design press fitted into the frame slots for easy field replacement.
5. Hardware: Each door is complete with a minimum of two stainless steel hinges and two lever lock handles.
6. Access Panels: Lift out access panels either bolted or secured with two or more cam-lock fasteners must be provided in locations where non-regular access is required.
7. Access doors downstream of all the return air coil section shall be a minimum of 18" wide, full size up to the height of the unit not to exceed 72" tall.

D. Condensate Drain Pans: Formed sections of **stainless-steel** sheet complying with requirements in ASHRAE 62. Fabricate IAQ drain pans with slopes in three planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections and return bends) and humidifiers when units are operating at maximum catalogued face velocity across cooling coil. To prevent moisture carryover, extend drain pan a minimum of 6" (preferably 12") past the leaving face of the cooling coil. Unit drain pan shall be a minimum of 3" deep to permit cleaning and inspection.

1. Double-Wall Construction (full 2" thick): Fill space between walls with NFPA 90A compliant insulation and seal moisture tight.
2. Drain Connections: One end of pan. Coordinate with drawing.
3. Units with stacked coils shall have a stainless steel intermediate drain pan with copper drop tubes to main pan to collect condensate from top coil.

E. Base Rail: Unit shall have a minimum 6" tall continuous base rail bolted or welded to the unit frame. Mounting feet are not acceptable.

2.4 FAN SECTION

A. Fan-Section Construction: Plenum, airfoil, or forward curve type fan, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure and equipped with formed-steel channel base for integral mounting of fan, motor, and casing panels. Mount fan with spring vibration isolation, a minimum of 2" deflection. Direct-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing where specifically shown. Motor, fan bearings, and drive assembly shall be located inside the fan plenum to minimize bearing wear and to allow for internal vibration isolation of the fan-motor assembly.

B. Centrifugal Fan Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.

1. Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
2. Horizontal-Flanged, Split Housing: Bolted construction.
3. Housing for Supply Fan: Attach housing to fan-section casing with metal-edged flexible duct connector, or a vibration absorbent discharge seal.
4. Flexible Connector: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip **5-3/4 inches** wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets; select metal compatible with casing.

    a. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric, double coated with neoprene. Fabrics, coatings, and adhesives shall comply with UL 181, Class 1.

1) Fabric Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
2) Fabric Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
3) Fabric Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

C. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.

1. Shafts: Designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower, and with field-adjustable alignment.

a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with a protective coating of lubricating oil.
b. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

D. Airfoil, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Smooth-curved inlet flange, backplate, and hollow die-formed airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate; cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.

E. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.

1. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L_{10} of 120,000 hours.
2. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L_{10} of 120,000 hours.

F. Belt Drives (where specified): Factory mounted, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation and with 1.5 service factor based on fan motor.

1. Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
2. Motor Pulleys: Fixed pitch for use with motors with VFDs. Adjustable pitch for use with 5-hp motors and smaller; fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
3. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched for multiple belt drives.
4. Belt Guards: Comply with requirements specified by OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; 0.1046-inch- thick, 3/4-inch diamond-mesh wire screen, welded to steel angle frame; prime coated.
5. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

G. Vibration Control: Vertical spring type isolators with leveling bolts, bridge bearing waffled pads with minimum 2 inch static deflection and side snubbers designed to achieve high isolation efficiency. Fans (other than plug fans) shall be attached to the discharge panel by a polyvinyl chloride coated polyester woven fabric, with a sealed double locking fabric to metal connection.

H. Fan-Section Source Quality Control:

1. Sound Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Fans shall bear AMCA-certified sound ratings seal.

2. Factory test fan performance for flow rate, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency. Establish ratings according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating."

2.5 MOTORS

A. General: Refer to Division 23 Section for general requirements for motors.

B. Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to accelerate driven loads satisfactorily.

C. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range.

D. Totally Enclosed Fan Cooled (TEFC), premium efficiency (E+3) type, NEMA Design B, inverter rated for Variable Speed Drive application, of size and electrical characteristics as shown on equipment schedule.

E. Temperature Rating: 50 deg C maximum temperature rise at 40 deg C ambient for continuous duty at full load (Class A Insulation).

F. Service Factor: 1.15 for polyphase motors and 1.35 for single-phase motors.

G. Motor Construction: NEMA MG 1, general purpose, continuous duty, Design B mounted on adjustable base.

H. Bearings: The following features are required:

1. Ball or roller bearings with inner and outer shaft seals.
2. Grease lubricated. Provide grease lines for motor and shaft lubrication, extended to a common mounting on access side of fan.
3. Designed to resist thrust loading where belt or other drives produce lateral or axial thrust in motor.

I. Overload Protection: Built-in, automatically resetting, thermal-overload protection.

J. Noise Rating: Quiet.

K. Efficiency: Premium efficiency.

L. Suitable for use with variable speed drives.

M. Nameplate: Indicate ratings, characteristics, construction, special features, and full identification of manufacturer.

N. Starters, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in Division 26 Sections.

2.6 COIL SECTION

A. Coil Sections: Common or individual, insulated, stainless-steel casings for cooling coils. Design and construct to facilitate removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to ensure full airflow through coils.

B. Water Coils: Circuited to provide adequate tube velocities to meet design requirements. Internal turbulators are not acceptable. Continuous circuit coil fabricated according to ARI 410.
1. Piping Connections: Threaded, on same end.
2. Tubes: **5/8" outer diameter copper tubes, minimum .020" thick tubes and u-bends.**
3. Fins: Rippled for maximum heat transfer.
   a. Coils: Aluminum fins.
4. Fin and Tube Joint: Mechanical bond by mechanical expansion of tubes.
5. Headers: Seamless copper tube with brazed joints, prime coated.
6. Frames: Type 304 stainless steel, 16 gauge thick.
7. Mounting racks and bulkhead: Stainless steel.
8. Ratings: Design tested and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and ARI 410.
   a. Working-Pressure Ratings: 200 psig, 325 deg F.
9. Source Quality Control: Test to 300 psig underwater.

C. Coil casing shall be Type 304 stainless steel.

D. Auxiliary Drain: Return bends and headers of coils shall be fully concealed within the air-handling unit. Provide auxiliary drain pan complete with drain connection at headered end of cooling coils. Exterior header covers will not be acceptable.

E. Coil Removal: Coils shall be removable from the unit at the header end, unless shown otherwise on drawings.

F. Drain and Vent: All water coils shall be equipped with a capped vent tapping at the top of the return header, and a capped drain tapping at the bottom of the supply header.

G. Supply and return line connections shall be clearly labeled on the outside of the unit.

2.7 AIR FILTRATION

A. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section: Shall be a part of the combination filter mixing box section. See sections below.

1. Comply with NFPA 90A.
2. Provide minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1, and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.
3. Provide filter holding frames shall be constructed of extruded aluminum for increased rigidity arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.
4. Each filter section shall be designed and constructed to house 2-inch- thick, pleated, throwaway filters.

B. Extended-Surface, Nonsupported-Media Filters:

1. Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface, self-supporting type.
2. Arrestance (ASHRAE 52.1): **95**.
3. Merv (ASHRAE 52.2): **8**.
4. Media: Fibrous material **with antimicrobial agent** constructed so individual pleats are maintained in tapered form by flexible internal supports under rated-airflow conditions.
5. Filter-Media Frame: Welded, galvanized steel. Permanent re-usable, heavy gauge (20 ga), galvanized metal enclosing filter grid-frame**.**
6. Mounting Frames: Welded, galvanized steel, with gaskets and fasteners, suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks**.**

2.8 DAMPERS

A. General Requirements for Dampers: Leakage rate, according to AMCA 500, "Laboratory Methods for Testing Dampers for Rating,".

B. All Dampers: Ultra-low leak (ULL), double-skin, airfoil-blade galvanized-steel dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals, in opposed-blade arrangement with steel operating rods rotating in stainless-steel sleeve bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel frame, and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Leakage rate shall not exceed 3.7 cfm/sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and 8 cfm/sq. ft. at 4-inch wg.

C. Mixing boxes and filter-mixing boxes shall have parallel blades. All mixing boxes and filter mixing boxes shall have access doors as specified on both sides.

D. Coordinate damper actuators on damper shafts with controls.

E. Damper Operators: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

F. Combination Filter and Mixing Section:

1. Cabinet support members shall hold 2-inch- thick, pleated, flat, permanent or throwaway filters. See Filter section above.

2.9 ACCESSORIES

A. See schedules.

B. Provide support kit for mounting the outside air section to the return air section. Provide interface between upper and lower sections in the common mixing plenum.

C. Provide LED light wired to an external switch in the fan section. Field 120V power to be provided by Division 26. Coordinate with appropriate trades.

2.10 CONTROLS

A. Air handler controls shall be achieved through dedicated DDC programmable control modules as specified in Section 230900. Each AHU shall have a dedicated controller capable of achieving control sequences in stand-alone mode.

B. AHU manufacturer shall coordinate with work of Section 230900 to ensure DDC system can fully interact with the AHU without compromising any of the system safeties or warranties.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Fan Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Fans shall bear AMCA-certified sound ratings seal.

B. Fan Performance Rating: Factory test fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency. Rate performance according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating."

C. Water Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig according to ARI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-handling unit installation. Reject insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Examine roughing-in for hydronic or refrigerant, and condensate drainage piping systems and electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

E. Contractors providing units other than those used as the basis of design will assume all responsibility for changes required to accommodate units proposed.

F. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting installation of air handling units.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting: Install air-handling units on concrete bases **using elastomeric pads**. Secure units to anchor bolts installed in concrete bases. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Division 03 Sections.

B. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.

C. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing, with new, clean filters.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to air-handling unit to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.

D. Connect condensate drain pans using line size, Type M copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction. Insulate condensate lines.

E. Hydronic Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping." and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties." Connect to supply and return coil tappings with shutoff or balancing valve and union or flange at each connection.

F. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories." Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connections.

G. Electrical: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 26 Sections for power wiring, switches, and motor controls.

H. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."

I. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
   1. Inspect field assembly of components and installation of central-station air-handling units including piping, ductwork, and electrical connections.
   2. Prepare a written report on findings and recommended corrective actions.

B. Tests and Inspections:

   1. Leak Test: After installation, test coils and connections for leaks.
   2. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
   3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Air-handling unit or components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. **Perform** startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
5. Verify that bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-recommended lubricants.
6. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain minimum outdoor-air setting.
7. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.
8. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed for electric coils.
9. Install new, clean filters.
10. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.

B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:

1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design conditions.
2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.

C. Refer to Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for modular indoor air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Clean modular indoor air-handling units internally, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Clean fan interiors to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Vacuum clean fan wheels, cabinets, and coils entering air face.

B. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling unit and air-distribution systems and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally

to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. **Train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

END OF SECTION 237313

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 1 Specification Sections and other Division 26 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

A. The following Summary of Work is intended as an aid to achieve an understanding of the various elements of work included in the project, as is not intended to be all-inclusive. Detailed descriptions of work and requirements are given in drawings and specifications.

B. Scope of Work:

1. General: The "BISD Hanna HS Gym Building" consists of new one-story building, approximate 39,475 s.f. This building will generally be operated from 7:00am to 6:00pm. (Monday through Friday) with occasional after hours and weekends use.
2. Electrical: Provide all materials and labor associated with complete operational electrical distribution system. Major items of work include, but are not limited to:

   (a) Electrical service:

      (i) Provide a new underground electrical service; it shall consist of underground electrical raceways and concrete pad for Utility furnished transformer.

      (ii) Utility company shall provide medium voltage conductors and pad transformer.

      (iii) Single phase protection: provide as noted on panels schedules.

   (b) Lighting systems: Interior and exterior lighting system shall consist of LED type.

   (c) Lighting controls (switches, occupancy sensors, daylight sensors, etc.): provide as noted on plans specifications. In some cases, they will be ceiling mounted and others wall mounted. It's the intent for them to be wired to automatically control the luminaires in their respective areas.

   (d) Commissioning: Provide for the lighting equipment and lighting controls as required per IECC 2015.

   (e) Power systems: Provide miscellaneous duplex receptacles, isolated ground receptacles for computer terminals, duplex receptacles for flat screens connections, and power for marquee/building signs, banking, H.V.A.C. and plumbing equipment.

   (f) Fire Alarm System: Provide rough-in only. Coordinate exact locations with fire alarm contractor shop drawings prior to any rough-in. System to be procured by Owner under a separate contract.

(g) Communication and data processing equipment: Provide rough-ins only. Cabling, connectors, patch panels, racks, etc. by owner. System to be procured by Owner under a separate contract.

(h) Multimedia system: Provide rough-ins for multimedia outlet and flat screens. Connectors, cabling and outlets by owner. System to be procured by Owner under a separate contract.

(i) School Intercom System: Provide rough-in only. Coordinate exact locations with intercom contractor shop drawings prior to any rough-in. System to be procured by Owner under a separate contract.

(j) Gymnasium Sound System: Provide speakers, microphone outlets, microphone, microphone stands, wiring and mobile cart. See specifications.

(k) Intrusion Detection System: Provide rough-in only. Coordinate exact locations with intrusion detection contractor shop drawings prior to any rough-in. System to be procured by Owner under a separate contract.

(l) Building access: Provide rough-in only. Coordinate exact locations with building access contractor shop drawings prior to any rough-in.

(m) CCTV, building access systems: Provide rough-in only. Coordinate exact locations with shop drawings prior to any rough-in. System to be procured by Owner under a separate contract.

1.3 ALLOWANCES

A. Electrical: See Division 1 for electrical allowances.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. All electrical work shall be done under sub-contract to a General Contractor, who ultimately responsible for the entire project. Electrical Contractor shall coordinate all work through General Contractor, even in areas where only electrical work is to take place.

B. All questions, requests for information, submittals, and correspondence from the Electrical Contractor shall be submitted via the General Contractor, who will forward to the Architect, who will then forward to the Engineer.

C. Electrical Contractor shall not make any changes to design without written authorization from the Engineer. If changes are requested by the Owner, Architect, General Contractor, Suppliers, Manufacturers, or any others, Contractor should issue a written RFI for response by the Engineer.

D. Electrical Contractor shall issue seven (7) days written notice prior to any activities that require the presence of the Engineer at the job-site. This applies to all inspections required by specifications, and particularly to those where work will be covered (underground raceways, electrical raceways above ceiling).

E. Cooperate fully with other contractors so that work under those contracts may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under this Contract.

F. Fully coordinate with Mechanical Contractor for providing power to HVAC systems and plumbing equipment.

G. Fully coordinate with the Plumbing and Millwork contractors for the science lab equipment installation.

H. Fully coordinate with the Elevator Contractor for the elevator equipment installation.

I. Fully coordinate with the Food Service Contractor for the equipment installation.

J. Issue written notification of the following tasks and allow five (5) days for Engineer to respond and schedule an inspection as required:

1. Upon completion of underground raceways installation and prior to covering up.
2. Upon completion of installing all raceways, labeling all j-boxes and prior to suspended ceiling installation.
3. Upon completion of pulling all wiring, making all terminations, labeling and color-coding wires at the panelboards/switchboards and prior to installing their covers.
4. When ready to request manufacturer's start-up of each piece of equipment.
5. When ready to conduct complete Fire Alarm, and Intrusion Detection demonstration.
6. When ready for Substantial Completion Inspection.
7. When ready for Final Inspection.

Failure to issue written notification may result in work having to be redone to allow for proper inspection. It is this contractor's responsibility to make sure Engineer receives notification.

K. Special systems (Fire alarm, School Intercom, Intrusion detection, CCTV, building access, and intrusion detection systems, voice-data communications systems): this work shall be provided by others (not part of this contract). Fully cooperate/coordinate with this contractor for his cabling, outlets (connectors), cable tray, racks (UPS, fans), and etc. installation.

1.5 UTILITIES

1. Coordinate with power, water, telephone, cable and gas utilities to locate all utilities prior to digging in any area.
2. Obtain any approvals required from utilities to relocate utilities.
3. Cost of relocating or bypassing utilities indicated on drawings shall be included in Base Bid.
4. Coordinate with utility for electrical service. Base bid shall include all costs associated with service connection, including permit fees.

1.6 CONTRACTOR USE OF PREMISES

A. Use of the Site: Limit use of the premises to work in areas indicated. Confine operations to areas within contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of the site beyond the areas in which the Work is indicated.

1. Owner Occupancy: Allow for Owner occupancy and use by the public.
2. Driveways and Entrances: Keep driveways and entrances serving the premises, clear and available to the Owner, the Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all time. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.

B. Site Safety: Take every precaution to ensure the site does not present a threat to the safety of occupants and/or workers. Minimal safety requirements include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Temporary fencing around construction areas.
2. Yellow caution tape and construction barricades along open trenches during the day. Trenches shall be covered at night and warning lights provided on construction barricades.
3. Temporary fencing around equipment while site work is in progress.

C. Work shall take place with minimal disruption to Owner's operations in areas surrounding the job site.

1.7 SUBMITTALS -Special Requirements

A. Manufacturer's standard dimensioned drawings, performance and product data shall be edited to delete reference to equipment, features, or information, which is not applicable to the equipment being supplied for this project. Including Bill or List of Materials.

B. Faxes and copies of faxes are not acceptable.

C. Electrical Submittals shall be submitted electronically. **Please organize the files as noted below** (PDF format - searchable). Files would need to be properly identified (cover letter, stamped, etc.) from the general contractor.

1. Miscellaneous Electrical – Submittal #1
- a. 260519 Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
- b. 260526 Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
- c. 260529 Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
- d. 260533 Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems
- e. 260553 Identification for Electrical Systems
- f. 260544 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling
- g. 262726 Wiring Devices
- h. 260850 Hand Dryer

2. Electrical Gear **Submittal #2**
- a. 262200 Low Voltage Transformers
- b. 262413 Switchboards
- c. 262416 Panelboards
- d. 262813 Fuses
- e. 262816 Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
- f. 262913 Enclosed Controllers
- g. 264313 Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuit

3. Electrical Studies **Submittal #3**
- a. 260572 Overcurrent Protective Device Short-Circuit Study
- b. 260574 Arch Flash Study

4. Light Fixtures **Submittal #4**
- a. 265116 Interior Lighting

b. 265219 Emergency and Exit Lighting
c. 265613 Lighting Poles and Standards
d. 265621 Exterior Lighting
e. 260923 Light Control Devices
f. 260943.23 Relay Based Lighting Control

5. Special Systems: **Submittal #5**
   a. 267260 Gymnasium Sound System

6. Electrical Commissioning **Submittal #6**
   a. 260800 Commissioning for Electrical Systems

E. Individual submittals shall not be reviewed until a complete package is received.

F. Allow two weeks for initial submittal review by Engineer, from the day it is received at the Engineer's office.

G. Allow one week for review of resubmittals by Engineer.

H. All submittal review comments shall be forwarded by Engineer to Architect, who will then distribute as per Division 1.

1.8 SCHEDULE OF VALUES -Special Requirements

A. Electrical Contractor shall submit a Schedule of Values reflecting the total value of Electrical Work in the Contract and broken down into the following items as a minimum, with a line item for Materials/Equipment and another for Labor.

ELECTRICAL
1. Electrical gear.
2. Electrical coordination and arch flash study.
4. Interior raceways including wiring.
5. Interior Light fixtures
6. Exterior light fixtures
7. Wiring devices.
8. Gymnasium Sound reinforcement system.
9. Commissioning
10. Allowances.
11. Miscellaneous.
12. Administrative and project management.

1.9 CODE COMPLIANCE:

The design for this project is based on:
1. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA)
2. National Electric Code (NEC)
3. National Fire Code
4. International Building Code
5. UL 916
6. Local ordinances

END OF SECTION 260010

SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. VFC: Variable frequency controller.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member Company of NETA or an NRTL.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Manufacturer:

1. Senator Wire & Cable Company.
2. Southwire Company.
3. Encore Wire

B. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.

C. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for Type THHN/THWN-2, Type XHHW-2 and Type SO.

D. Multiconductor Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for metal-clad cable, Type MC and Type SO with ground wire.

E. VFC Cable:

1. Comply with UL 1277, UL 1685, and NFPA 70 for Type TC-ER cable.
2. Type TC-ER with oversized cross-linked polyethylene insulation, spiral-wrapped foil plus 85 percent coverage braided shields and insulated full-size ground wire or dual spirally wrapped copper tape shields and three bare symmetrically applied ground wires, and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.
3. Comply with UL requirements for cables in [Classes I and II, Division 2 hazardous location] applications.

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Manufacturers:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. AMP Incorporated/Tyco International.
3. Hubbell/Anderson.
4. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
5. 3M Company; Electrical Products Division.

B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

2.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Feeders: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger, except VFC cable, which shall be extra flexible stranded.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

A. Service Entrance: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

E. Exposed Branch Circuits: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

H. VFC Output Circuits: Type XHHW-2 in metal conduit, Type TC-ER cable with braided shield or with dual tape shield as indicated by VFC manufacturer.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.

B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.

C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, which will not damage cables or raceway.

E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.

1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.

C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors and conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements.

a. MDF and IDF equipment feeder/branch circuit.

2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.

a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

B. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:

1. Procedures used.
2. Results that comply with requirements.
3. Results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

C. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 260519

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.

B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:

1. Underground distribution grounding.
2. Foundation steel electrodes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. As-Built Data: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:

1. Ground rods.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at ground rings and grounding connections for separately derived systems based on and NFPA 70B.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS

A. Insulated Conductors: tinned-copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches in cross section, with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

2.2 CONNECTORS

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy.

C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless **exothermic**-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.

2.3 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad; 3/4 inch by 10 feet.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 8 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.

1. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.

C. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 6 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

D. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.3 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.

B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:

1. Feeders and branch circuits.
2. Lighting circuits.
3. Receptacle circuits.
4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
6. Flexible raceway runs.

7. Metal-clad cable runs.
8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.

C. Water Heater and Heat-Tracing Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.

D. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.

C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.

1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.

D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.

1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:

1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

F. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet apart.

G. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each indicated item, extending around the perimeter of building.

1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
2. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches from building's foundation.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.

    a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
    b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.

4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.

B. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

D. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and less: 10 ohms.
2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohm(s).
5. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.

E. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:

a. Hangers.
b. Steel slotted support systems.
c. Nonmetallic support systems.
d. Trapeze hangers.
e. Clamps.
f. Turnbuckles.
g. Sockets.
h. Eye nuts.
i. Saddles.
j. Brackets.

2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.

1. Trapeze hangers. Include product data for components.
2. Steel slotted-channel systems.
3. Nonmetallic slotted-channel systems.
4. Equipment supports.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

a. Lighting fixtures.
b. Air outlets and inlets.
c. Speakers.
d. Sprinklers.
e. Access panels.
f. Projectors.

B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
c. ERICO International Corporation.
d. GS Metals Corp.

e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
g. Wesanco, Inc.

2. Material: Plain steel.
3. Channel Width: 1-1/4 inches.
4. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
5. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
6. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
8. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.

D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      1) Hilti Inc.
      2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
      4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.; Masterset Fastening Systems Unit.

2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
      2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      3) Hilti Inc.
      4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      5) MKT Fastening, LLC

3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
    a. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
    b. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
    c. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
    d. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.
    e. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
    f. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
    g. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
    h. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
    i. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems unless requirements in this Section are stricter.

B. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

C. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMTs and RMCs as scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings that are less than those stated in] NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.

D. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

    1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

E. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.

B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMTs, and RMCs may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
6. To Steel: Spring-tension clamps.
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.

E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

A. Comply with installation requirements in Architectural Section "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.

B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.

B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Sections "Cast-in-Place Concrete" or "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:

1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Sections "Exterior Painting", "Interior Painting" and "High-Performance Coatings" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
2. Nonmetal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface raceways.
6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.

B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

C. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

D. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

E. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.

F. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.

G. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.

H. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

I. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

B. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Alflex Inc.
3. Allied Tube & Conduit; a Tyco International Ltd. Co.
4. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
5. Electri-Flex Co.
6. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
7. Maverick Tube Corporation.
8. O-Z Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
9. Wheatland Tube Company.
10. Hylsa

B. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

D. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.

1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch, minimum.

E. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.

F. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.

G. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

H. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.

1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886 and NFPA 70.
2. Fittings for EMT:

a. Material: die cast.
b. Type: compression.

3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

I. Joint Compound for GRC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
3. Arnco Corporation.
4. CANTEX Inc.
5. CertainTeed Corp.; Pipe & Plastics Group.
6. Condux International, Inc.
7. ElecSYS, Inc.
8. Electri-Flex Co.
9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
10. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
11. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
12. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVCcomplying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.

D. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.

E. RTRC: Comply with UL 1684A and NEMA TC 14.

F. Fittings for and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

G. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
2. Hoffman.
3. Square D; Schneider Electric.

B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.

1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

D. Wireway Covers: Hinged type unless otherwise indicated.

E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Hoffman.
2. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.

B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, without holes or knockouts. Cover shall be gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections shall be flanged and have stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.

D. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

2.5 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Crouse-Hinds; Div. of Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
4. Hoffman.
5. Hubbell Incorporated; Killark Electric Manufacturing Co. Division.

6. O-Z/Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
7. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
8. Robroy Industries, Inc.; Enclosure Division.
9. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
10. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
11. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).

B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

E. Metal Floor Boxes:

1. Material: sheet metal.
2. Type: Fully adjustable.
3. Shape: Rectangular.
4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.

G. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

H. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

I. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

J. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches by 2-1/8 inches by 2-1/8 inches deep.

K. Gangable boxes are allowed as along is permitted by the NEC.

L. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 3R (stainless steel) outdoor with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Fiberglass.
3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

M. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1, Type 3R galvanized-steel or 4XSS box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.6 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Armorcast Products Company.
    b. Carson Industries LLC.
    c. CDR Systems Corporation.
    d. NewBasis.
3. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
4. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
5. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
6. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
7. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC".
8. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
9. Handholes 18 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.

1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.

2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R or Type 4SS as noted on plans.

B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
   a. Mechanical rooms.
   b. Gymnasiums.
3. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
5. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
6. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 1/2-inch trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
3. EMT: Use setscrew steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.

F. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

G. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.

H. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.

E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.

G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

H. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.

I. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot intervals.
2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 2 inches of concrete cover in all directions.
4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
5. Change from RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC TO EMT or GRC before rising above floor.

J. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Use EMT for raceways.

2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.

M. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.

N. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

O. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.

P. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.

Q. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.

R. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.

S. Surface Raceways:

1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch radius control at bend points.
2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.

T. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

U. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.

3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

V. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.

W. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:

    a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
    b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
    c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
    d. Attics: 135 deg F.
    e. .

3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

X. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

Y. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

Z. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

AA. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.

BB. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.

CC. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

DD. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

EE. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Division 3 for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Division 3."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 3."
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.

    a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches on each side of the coupling.
    b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches above direct-buried conduits but a minimum of 6 inches below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
7. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.

D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, below grade.

E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.

F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:

1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Minimum Metal Thickness:

a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
b. Calpico, Inc.
c. Metraflex Co.
d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2. Sealing Elements: Nitrile (Buna N rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: [Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating,] of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.4 GROUT

A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.

B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
2. Sealant shall have VOC content of 150 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.

C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:

1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:

a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.

2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.

D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:

1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.

B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 260544

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Identification for raceways.
2. Identification of power and control cables.
3. Identification for conductors.
4. Underground-line warning tape.
5. Warning labels and signs.
6. Instruction signs.
7. Equipment identification labels.
8. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER AND CONTROL RACEWAY IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.

B. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:

1. Black letters on an orange field.
2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.

C. Vinyl Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

2.2 ARMORED AND METAL-CLAD CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each cable size.

B. Colors for Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V and Less:

1. Black letters on an orange field.
2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.

C. Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

D. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; 2 inches wide; compounded for outdoor use.

E. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tube with machine-printed identification label. Sized to suit diameter of and shrinks to fit firmly around cable it identifies. Full shrink recovery at a maximum of 200 deg F. Comply with UL 224.

2.3 POWER AND CONTROL CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.

B. Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

C. Self-Adhesive, Self-Laminating Polyester Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil thick flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive that provides a clear, weather- and chemical- resistant, self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized to fit the cable diameter such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.

D. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tube with machine-printed identification label. Sized to suit diameter of and shrinks to fit firmly around cable it identifies. Full shrink recovery at a maximum of 200 deg F. Comply with UL 224.

E. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

F. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

2.4 CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide.

B. Self-Adhesive, Self-Laminating Polyester Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil- thick flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive that provides a clear, weather- and chemical- resistant, self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized to fit the conductor diameter such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.

C. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tube with machine-printed identification label. Sized to suit diameter of and shrinks to fit firmly around conductor it identifies. Full shrink recovery at a maximum of 200 deg F. Comply with UL 224.

D. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

2.5 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory-printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.

C. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs:

1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches.

D. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs:

1. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Nominal size, 10 by 14 inches.

E. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."

2.6 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch thick for signs up to 20 sq. inches and 1/8 inch thick for larger sizes.

1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

B. Adhesive Film Label: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.

C. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch. Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

2.7 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

A. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch. Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

B. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.

C. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Select paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.

B. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

C. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.

D. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

E. Attach plastic raceway and cable labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.

F. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.

G. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.

H. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

A. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits More Than 30 A, and 120 V to ground: Install labels at 30-foot maximum intervals.

B. Accessible Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive vinyl labels with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:

1. Emergency Power.
2. Power.
3. Fire Alarm System
4. Security System
5. Mechanical and Electrical Supervisory System
6. Telecommunication System.
7. Control Wiring.

C. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification: For secondary conductors No. 1/0 AWG and larger in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes use color-coding conductor tape. Identify source and circuit number of each set of conductors. For single conductor cables, identify phase in addition to the above.

D. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.

1. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.

    a. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
    b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:

        1) Phase A: Black.
        2) Phase B: Red.
        3) Phase C: Blue.

    c. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:

        1) Phase A: Brown.
        2) Phase B: Orange.
        3) Phase C: Yellow.

    d. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.

E. Install instructional sign including the color-code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels.

F. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use write-on tags with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.

G. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations provide heat-shrink preprinted tubes with the conductor designation.

H. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source.

I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.

1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

J. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable.

1. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
2. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.

K. Workspace Indication: Install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall be as required by NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.

L. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self- adhesive warning labels.

1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.

4. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Power transfer switches.
b. Controls with external control power connections.

M. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.

N. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer and load shedding.

O. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.

1. Labeling Instructions:

a. Indoor Equipment: Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- high letters on 1-1/2-inch- high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label Stenciled legend 4 inches high.
c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
d. Unless provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.

2. Equipment to Be Labeled:

a. Panelboards, electrical cabinets, and enclosures.
b. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
c. Electrical switchgear and switchboards.

d. Transformers.
e. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
f. Disconnect switches.
g. Enclosed circuit breakers.
h. Contactors.
i. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
j. Voice and data cable terminal equipment.
k. Intercommunication and call system master and staff stations.
l. Fire-alarm control panel and annunciators.
m. Security and intrusion-detection control stations, control panels, terminal cabinets, and racks.

3.3 INSTALLATION

Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

END OF SECTION 260553

SECTION 260572 - OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes a computer-based, fault-current study to determine the minimum interrupting capacity of circuit protective devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram which shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.

C. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.

D. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

E. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.

B. Other Action Submittals: Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals may be in digital form.

1. Short-circuit study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
2. Short-circuit study and equipment evaluation report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

    a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of the distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that the selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

b. Revised single-line diagram, reflecting field investigation results and results of short-circuit study.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Short-Circuit Study Software Developer and Short-Circuit Study Specialist.

B. Product Certificates: For short-circuit study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

B. Short-Circuit Study Software Developer Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.

1. The computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.

C. Short-Circuit Study Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

A. Coordination-Study Specialist Qualifications: An organization experienced in the application of computer software used for studies having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices and being in this type service/business for at least 10 years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE

A. Computer Software Developers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide computer software programs developed by one of the following:

1. CYME International, Inc.
2. EDSA Micro Corporation.
3. Electrical Systems Analysis, Inc.
4. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.

B. Comply with IEEE 399 and IEEE 551.

C. Analytical features of fault-current-study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

D. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output.

2.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

A. Executive summary.

B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of the computer printout.

C. One-line diagram, showing the following:

1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
2. Cable size and lengths.
3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations.

D. Comments and recommendations for system improvements, where needed.

E. Protective Device Evaluation:

1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
2. Tabulations of circuit breaker, fuse, and other protective device ratings versus calculated short-circuit duties.
3. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
4. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in the standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
5. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.

F. Short-Circuit Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article in the Evaluations.

G. Short-Circuit Study Output:

1. Low-Voltage Fault Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:

a. Voltage.
b. Calculated fault-current magnitude and angle.
c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
d. Equivalent impedance.

2. Momentary Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:

    a. Voltage.
    b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
    c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
    d. Calculated asymmetrical fault currents:

        1) Based on fault-point X/R ratio.
        2) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 1.6.
        3) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 2.7.

3. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:

    a. Voltage.
    b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
    c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
    d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
    e. Equivalent impedance.
    f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
    g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Obtain all data necessary for the conduct of the study.

1. Verify completeness of data supplied on the one-line diagram. Call any discrepancies to the attention of Architect.
2. For equipment provided that is Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under the provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
3. For relocated equipment that which is existing to remain, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers. The qualifications of technicians and engineers shall be qualified as defined by NFPA 70E.

B. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support the short-circuit study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.

1. Product Data for Project's overcurrent protective devices involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.

2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
3. Power sources and ties.
4. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
5. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.
6. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
7. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
8. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
9. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
10. Cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).

3.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

A. Perform study following the general study procedures contained in IEEE 399.

B. Calculate short-circuit currents according to IEEE 551.

C. Base study on the device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.

D. The extent of the electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.

E. Begin short-circuit current analysis at the service, extending down to the system overcurrent protective devices as follows:

1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
2. Exclude equipment rated 240-V ac or less when supplied by a single transformer rated less than 125 kVA.

F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.

G. The calculations shall include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and shall apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. The calculations shall also account for the fault-current dc decrement, to address the asymmetrical requirements of the interrupting equipment.

1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.

H. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault at each of the following:

1. Electric utility's supply termination point.
2. Incoming switchgear.

3. Unit substation primary and secondary terminals.
4. Low-voltage switchgear.
5. Motor-control centers.
6. Control panels.
7. Standby generators and automatic transfer switches.
8. Branch circuit panelboards.
9. Disconnect switches.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit study.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's operating and maintenance personnel in the use of study results.

END OF SECTION 260572

SECTION 260574 - OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE ARC-FLASH STUDY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes a computer-based, arc-flash study to determine the arc-flash hazard distance and the incident energy to which personnel could be exposed during work on or near electrical equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram which shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.

C. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.

D. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

E. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.

B. Other Action Submittals: Submit the following submittals after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals may be in digital form.

1. Arc-flash study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
2. Arc-flash study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

    a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of the distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that the selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

SECTION 260574 - OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE ARC-FLASH STUDY

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Arc-Flash Study Software Developer and Arc-Flash Study Specialist.

B. Product Certificates: For arc-flash hazard analysis software, certifying compliance with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance procedures according to requirements in NFPA 70E shall be provided in the equipment manuals.

B. Operation and Maintenance Procedures: In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," provide maintenance procedures for use by Owner's personnel that comply with requirements in NFPA 70E.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

B. Arc-Flash Study Software Developer Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.

1. The computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.

C. Arc-Flash Study Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study, analyzing the arc flash, and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

D. Coordination-Study Specialist Qualifications: An organization experienced in the application of computer software used for studies having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices and being in this type service/business for at least 10 years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

A. Computer Software Developers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide computer software programs developed by one of the following:

1. CYME International, Inc.

2. EDSA Micro Corporation.
3. Electrical Systems Analysis, Inc.
4. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.

B. Comply with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

2.2 ARC-FLASH STUDY REPORT CONTENT

A. Executive summary.

B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis and scope.

C. One-line diagram, showing the following:

1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
2. Cable size and lengths.
3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center and panelboard designations.

D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.

E. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short Circuit Study Output" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260572 "Overcurrent Protective Device Short-Circuit Study."

F. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

G. Arc-Flash Study Output:

1. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:

a. Voltage.
b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
e. Equivalent impedance.
f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

H. Incident Energy and Flash Protection Boundary Calculations:

1. Arcing fault magnitude.
2. Protective device clearing time.
3. Duration of arc.
4. Arc-flash boundary.
5. Working distance.
6. Incident energy.
7. Hazard risk category.
8. Recommendations for arc-flash energy reduction.

I. Fault study input data, case descriptions, and fault-current calculations including a definition of terms and guide for interpretation of the computer printout.

2.3 ARC-FLASH WARNING LABELS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems." Produce a 3.5-by-5-inch thermal transfer label of high-adhesion polyester for each work location included in the analysis.

B. The label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:

1. Location designation.
2. Nominal voltage.
3. Flash protection boundary.
4. Hazard risk category.
5. Incident energy.
6. Working distance.
7. Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.

C. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals. Proceed with arc-flash study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to arc-flash study may not be used in study.

3.2 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

A. Comply with NFPA 70E and its Annex D for hazard analysis study.

B. Preparatory Studies:

1. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260572 "Overcurrent Protective Device Short-Circuit Study."
2. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

C. Calculate maximum and minimum contributions of fault-current size.

1. The minimum calculation shall assume that the utility contribution is at a minimum and shall assume no motor load.
2. The maximum calculation shall assume a maximum contribution from the utility and shall assume motors to be operating under full-load conditions.

D. Calculate the arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at locations in the electrical distribution system where personnel could perform work on energized parts.

E. Include medium- and low-voltage equipment locations, except equipment rated 240-V ac or less fed from transformers less than 125 kVA.

F. Safe working distances shall be specified for calculated fault locations based on the calculated arc-flash boundary, considering incident energy of 1.2 cal/sq.cm.

G. Incident energy calculations shall consider the accumulation of energy over time when performing arc-flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations shall take into account the changing current contributions, as the sources are interrupted or decremented with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators shall be decremented as follows:

1. Fault contribution from induction motors should not be considered beyond three to five cycles.
2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators should be decayed to match the actual decrement of each as closely as possible (e.g., contributions from permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 per unit to three per unit after 10 cycles).

H. Arc-flash computation shall include both line and load side of a circuit breaker as follows:

1. When the circuit breaker is in a separate enclosure.
2. When the line terminals of the circuit breaker are separate from the work location.

I. Base arc-flash calculations on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Cap maximum clearing time at two seconds based on IEEE 1584, Section B.1.2.

3.3 POWER SYSTEM DATA

A. Obtain all data necessary for the conduct of the arc-flash hazard analysis.

1. Verify completeness of data supplied on the one-line diagram on Drawings and under "Preparatory Studies" Paragraph in "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" Article. Call discrepancies to the attention of Architect.

2. For new equipment, use characteristics submitted under the provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
3. For existing equipment, whether or not relocated, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers.

B. Electrical Survey Data: Gather and tabulate the following input data to support study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.

1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
3. Power sources and ties.
4. Short-circuit current at each system bus, three phase and line-to-ground.
5. Full-load current of all loads.
6. Voltage level at each bus.
7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in per cent, and phase shift.
8. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating and impedance.
9. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
10. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
11. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
12. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
13. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
14. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
15. Medium-voltage cable sizes, lengths, conductor material, and cable construction and metallic shield performance parameters.

3.4 LABELING

A. Apply one arc-flash label for 600-V ac, 480-V ac, and applicable 208-V ac panelboards and disconnects and for each of the following locations:

1. Motor-control center.
2. Low-voltage switchboard.
3. Switchgear.
4. Medium-voltage switch.
5. Control panel.

3.5 APPLICATION OF WARNING LABELS

A. Install the arc-fault warning labels under the direct supervision and control of the Arc-Flash Study Specialist.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage the Arc-Flash Study Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in the potential arc-flash hazards associated with working on energized equipment and the significance of the arc-flash warning labels.

END OF SECTION 260574

SECTION 260800 - COMMISSIONING OF ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes commissioning process requirements for the following MEP systems, assemblies, and equipment:

1. Electrical lighting and lighting controls.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general commissioning process requirements and Commissioning Coordinator responsibilities.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Refer to Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for additional definitions and assignment of responsibilities.

1.4 CONTRACTOR’S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Refer to Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements".

B. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.

C. Attend construction phase controls coordination meeting.

D. Participate in electrical systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection.

E. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.

F. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for complete range of testing for the required test period.

G. Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures for actual electrical systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be furnished and installed as part of the construction contract.

H. Direct and coordinate commissioning testing among subcontractors, suppliers, and vendors.

I. Verify testing and adjusting of Work are complete.

J. Provide test data, inspection reports, and certificates in Systems Manual.

1.5 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

A. Provide the following information to the CxA for inclusion in the commissioning plan:

1. Plan for delivery and review of systems manuals, and other documents and reports.
2. Identification of installed systems, assemblies, equipment, and components including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
3. Process and schedule for completing construction checklists and manufacturer's pre-start and startup checklists for electrical systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be verified and tested.
4. Certificate of completion certifying that installation, pre-start checks, and startup procedures have been completed.
5. Certificate of readiness certifying that electrical systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing.
6. Test and inspection reports and certificates.
7. Corrective action documents.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Construction Checklists: See related Sections for technical requirements, and generate construction checklists for the following:

1. Revise list of construction checklists below to suit Project. Coordinate list with appropriate related Sections' content. Below are examples of common construction checklists.

2. Electrical lighting and lighting control systems.

B. Certificates of readiness.

C. Certificates of completion of installation, pre-start, and startup activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Refer to Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements".

3.2 SYSTEMS READINESS CHECKLISTS

A. Construction Checklists: Assist CxA in the preparation of detailed Systems Readiness checklists for systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1. Contributors to the development of checklists shall include, but are not limited to:
    a. Systems and equipment installers.
    b. Electrical and lighting technicians.
    c. Lighting controls installers.

B. Contractor shall conduct Systems Readiness Testing to document compliance with installation and Systems Readiness checklists prepared by Commissioning Authority for Division-26 items.

C. Refer to Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for issues relating to Systems Readiness checklists and testing, description of process, details on non-conformance issues relating to pre-functional checklists and test.

D. Contractor shall participate in Pre-Functional testing activities to document electrical work associated with mechanical and plumbing systems.

3.3 SYSTEM START-UP

A. Contractor is solely responsible for system start-up. CxA may, at his discretion, witness start up procedures, but will not perform any Functional Testing of systems until Contractor has completed start-up and resolved all operating deficiencies.

3.4 TESTING PREPARATION

A. Certify that electrical systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.

B. Certify that electrical instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved Shop Drawings and submittals, and that pretest set points have been recorded.

C. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested according to approved test procedures (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, and alarm conditions).

D. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlocks identified on checklists.

E. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with smoke control and life-safety systems during each mode of operation.

F. Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as required.

3.5 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.

B. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of automation system controllers and sensors.

C. Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.

D. Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the Contracting Officer and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.

E. The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.

F. The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.

G. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the electrical system, document the deficiency and report it to the Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.

H. If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

3.6 FUNCTIONAL TEST PROCEDURES FOR SYSTEMS TO BE COMMISSIONED

A. General

1. The following paragraphs outline the functional test procedures for the various Div. 26 items to be commissioned. Functional testing will take place only after System Readiness checklists have been completed, equipment has been started-up, and Contractor has certified that systems are ready for functional testing.
2. All systems controlled via the Building Automation System shall have all control points and sequences tested by Controls Contractor prior to requesting testing by CX Authority.

3.7 COMMISSIONING TESTS

A. Lighting Systems:

1. Light Fixtures: Verify all lamps work without flicker.
2. Light Switches: Verify switches control lights per design
3. Lighting Controls: Verify Schedule and/or photocell controls

B. Customized system readiness checklists and function testing requirements will be released after the submittal review phase.

3.8 TRAINING AND O&M MANUALS

A. Refer to Div. 26 specifications.

END OF SECTION 260800

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Devices and associated accessories for automatic control of lighting and other loads:

1. Wallbox occupancy sensors.
2. Wired occupancy sensors.
3. Wireless occupancy/vacancy sensors.
4. Wireless daylight sensors.
5. Wired load control modules with wireless communication inputs for wireless sensors and control stations.
6. Wired dimmers and switches with wireless communication inputs.
7. Wireless control stations.

1.02 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordination:

1. Coordinate the placement of sensors and wall controls with millwork, furniture, equipment, etc. installed under other sections or by others.
2. Coordinate the placement of wall controls with actual installed door swings.
3. Coordinate the placement of daylight sensors with windows, skylights, and luminaires to achieve optimum operation. Coordinate placement with ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions to light level measurement installed under other sections or by others.
4. Coordinate the work to provide luminaires and lamps compatible with the lighting controls to be installed.
5. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from the contract documents to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.

B. Sequencing:
1. Do not install sensors and wall controls until final surface finishes are complete.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Include ratings, configurations, standard wiring diagrams, dimensions, colors, service condition requirements, and installed features.

1. Occupancy/Vacancy Sensors: Include detailed basic motion detection coverage range diagrams.
2. Wall Dimmers: Include derating information for ganged multiple devices.

C. Samples:

1. Wallbox Controls:
   a. Show available color and finish selections.
   b. Provide one sample(s) for each product proposed for substitution.
2. Sensors: Provide one sample(s) for each product proposed for substitution.

D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Include application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.

E. Project Record Documents: Record actual installed locations and settings for lighting controls.

F. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include detailed information on lighting control system operation, equipment programming and setup, replacement parts, and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.

G. Warranty: Submit sample of manufacturer's Warranty as specified in Part 1 under "WARRANTY". Submit documentation of final executed warranty completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.

C. Manufacturer Qualifications:
1. Company with not less than ten years of experience manufacturing lighting controls, including products using wireless communication between devices.
2. Registered to ISO 9001, including in-house engineering for product design activities.
3. Provides factory direct technical support hotline available 24 hours per day, 7 days per week.
4. Qualified to supply specified products and to honor claims against product presented in accordance with warranty.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store products in a clean, dry space in original manufacturer's packaging in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions until ready for installation.

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Maintain field conditions within manufacturers required service conditions during and after installation.

1. System Requirements- *Lutron*, Unless Otherwise Indicated:
   a. Ambient Temperature:

1) Lighting Controls: Between 32 and 104 degrees F (0 and 40 degrees C).
b. Relative Humidity: Less than 90 percent, non-condensing.
c. Protect lighting controls from dust.

1.07 WARRANTY

A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

B. Manufacturer's Standard Warranty:

1. Manufacturer Lighting Control System Components, Except Wallbox Occupancy Sensors, Wireless Sensors, Ballasts/Drivers and Ballast Modules: One year 100 percent parts coverage, no manufacturer labor coverage.
2. Wallbox Occupancy Sensors and Wireless Sensors: Five years 100 percent parts coverage, no manufacturer labor coverage.
3. Ballasts/Drivers and Ballast Modules: Three years 100 percent parts coverage, no manufacturer labor coverage.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis of Design Manufacturer: *Lutron Electronics Company, Inc; www.lutron.com*.

B. Other Acceptable Manufacturers:

1. Wattstopper
2. Sensor Switch
3. Products by listed manufacturers are subject to compliance with specified requirements and 10 day prior approval by Architect

C. Substitutions:

1. All proposed substitutions (clearly delineated as such) must be submitted in writing for approval by Architect a minimum of 10 working days prior to the bid date and must be made available to all bidders. Proposed substitutes must be accompanied by a review of the specification noting compliance on a line-by-line basis.
2. Any proposed substitutions to be reviewed by Architect/Engineer. Contractor accepts responsibility and associated costs for all required modifications to related equipment and wiring. Provide complete engineered shop drawings (including power wiring) with deviations from the original design highlighted in an alternate color for review and approval by Architect prior to rough-in.

D. Source Limitations: Where possible, furnish products produced by a single manufacturer and obtained from a single supplier.

2.02 LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL) as suitable for the purpose indicated.

B. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required equipment, conduit, boxes, wiring, connectors, hardware, supports, accessories, programming, etc. as necessary for a complete operating system that provides the control intent indicated.

C. Design lighting control equipment for 10 year operational life while operating continually at any temperature in an ambient temperature range of 32 degrees F (0 degrees C) to 104 degrees F (40 degrees C) and 90 percent non-condensing relative humidity.

D. Electrostatic Discharge Tolerance: Design and test equipment to withstand electrostatic discharges without impairment when tested according to IEC 61000-4-2.

E. Power Failure Recovery: When power is interrupted for periods up to 10 years and subsequently restored, lights to automatically return to same levels (dimmed setting, full on, or full off) as prior to power interruption.

F. Wireless Devices:

1. Capable of diagnosing system communications.
2. Capable of having addresses automatically assigned to them.
3. Receives signals from other wireless devices and provides feedback to user.
4. Capable of determining which devices have been addressed.
5. RF Frequency: 434 MHz; operate in FCC governed frequency spectrum for periodic operation; continuous transmission spectrum is not permitted.
6. RF Range: 60 feet (18 m) line-of-sight or 30 feet (9 m) through typical construction materials between RF transmitting devices and compatible RF receiving devices.
7. Electromagnetic Interference/Radio Frequency Interference (EMI/RFI) Limits: Comply with FCC requirements of CFR, Title 47, Part 15, for Class B application.

G. Device Finishes:

1. Wallbox Controls:
2. Standard Colors: Comply with NEMA WD1 where applicable.
3. Color Variation in Same Product Family: Maximum delta E of 1, CIE L*a*b color units per ASTM E308.
4. Visible Parts: Exhibit ultraviolet color stability when tested with multiple actinic light sources as defined in ASTM D4674. Provide proof of testing upon request.

2.03 WALLBOX OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. General Requirements:

1. Passive Infrared Sensing:
   a. Utilize multiple segmented lens, with internal grooves to eliminate dust and residue build-up.
   b. Passive infrared coupled with technology for sensing fine motions; Lutron XCT Technology. Signal processing technology detects fine-motion passive infrared (PIR) signals without the need to change the sensor's sensitivity threshold.

2. Ultrasonic Sensing: Utilize an operating frequency of 32 kHz or 40 kHz, crystal-controlled to operate within plus/minus 0.005 percent tolerance.
3. Dual Technology Sensing: Passive infrared and ultrasonic sensing coupled with technology for sensing very fine motions; Lutron XCT Technology. Signal processing technology detects fine-motion passive infrared (PIR) and ultrasonic signals without the need to change the sensor's sensitivity threshold.

B. Wall Switch Occupancy/Vacancy Sensors; Lutron Maestro Series:

1. General Requirements:
   a. Turns off lighting after reasonable and adjustable time delay once the last person to occupy the space vacates a room or area. Provide adjustable timeout settings of 1, 5, 15, and 30 minutes.
   b. Switches at point of minimum energy to maximize relay life, actively adapting to variations in relay timing.
   c. Suitable for incandescent, halogen, electronic low-voltage, magnetic low-voltage, compact fluorescent, LED, magnetic fluorescent, electronic fluorescent, and fan loads.
2. Passive Infrared Wall Switch Combination Occupancy/Vacancy Sensors:
   a. Programmable to operate as an occupancy sensor (automatic-on and automatic-off) or a vacancy sensor (manual-on and automatic-off).
   b. Adjustable sensitivity (high, low presets).
   c. Selectable option to enable low light feature (automatic-on when ambient light is below threshold). Ambient light threshold to be adaptive utilizing occupant feedback; Lutron Smart Ambient Light Detection.
   d. Selectable option to inhibit automatic turn-on of lights after manual-off operation while room is occupied for applications such as presentation viewing in conference rooms and classrooms; when room is vacated, returns to normal automatic-on operation after time delay period.
   e. Product(s):
      1) Passive Infrared Wall Switch Occupancy/Vacancy Sensor*; Lutron Maestro Series, Model MS-OPS6M2-DV*: 6 A lighting (120-277 V), 3 A fan (120 V); coverage of 900 square feet (81 sq m) with mounting height of 4 feet (1.2 m); 180 degree field of view; multi-location capability using standard 3-way or companion switch (up to nine companion switches may be connected).
      2) Passive Infrared Wall Switch Occupancy/Vacancy Sensor*; Lutron Maestro Series, Model MS-OPS6M2N-DV*: 6 A lighting (120-277 V), 3 A fan (120 V); neutral required; coverage of 900 square feet (81 sq m) with mounting height of 4 feet (1.2 m); 180 degree field of view; multi-location capability using standard 3-way or companion switch (up to nine companion switches may be connected).
      3) Passive Infrared Wall Switch Occupancy/Vacancy Sensor*; Lutron Maestro Series, Model MS-OPS6M2U-DV*: 6 A lighting (120-277 V), 3 A fan (120 V); convertible to require connection to either neutral or ground; coverage of 900 square feet (81 sq m) with mounting height of 4 feet (1.2 m); 180 degree field of view; multi-location capability using standard 3-way or companion switch (up to nine companion switches may be connected).
      4) Passive Infrared Wall Switch Occupancy/Vacancy Sensor*; Lutron Maestro Series, Model UMS-OPS6M2-DV*: BAA (Buy American Act)

Compliant; 6 A lighting (120-277 V), 3 A fan (120 V); neutral required; coverage of 900 square feet (81 sq m) with mounting height of 4 feet (1.2 m); 180 degree field of view; multi-location capability using companion switch (up to nine companion switches may be connected); minimum load requirement.

2.04 WIRED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. General Requirements:

1. Connects directly to compatible ballasts and modules without the need of a power pack or other interface.
2. Turns off or reduces lighting automatically after reasonable time delay when a room or area is vacated by the last person to occupy the space.
3. Accommodates all conditions of space utilization and all irregular work hours and habits.
4. Comply with UL 94.
5. Self-Adaptive: Continually adjusts sensitivity and timing to ensure optimal lighting control for any use of the space.
6. Furnished with field-adjustable controls for time delay and sensitivity to override any adaptive features.
7. Power Failure Memory: Settings and learned parameters to be saved in non-volatile memory and not lost should power be interrupted and subsequently restored.
8. Furnished with all necessary mounting hardware and instructions.
9. Class 2 devices.
10. Ceiling-Mounted Sensors: Indicate viewing directions on mounting bracket.
11. Wall-Mounted Sensors: Provide swivel-mount base.
12. Color: White.

B. Wired Dual Technology Sensors:

1. Passive Infrared Sensing: Utilize multiple segmented lens, with internal grooves to eliminate dust and residue build-up.
2. Ultrasonic Sensing: Utilize an operating frequency of 32 kHz or 40 kHz, crystal-controlled to operate within plus/minus 0.005 percent tolerance.
3. Ceiling-Mounted Sensors: Provide customizable mask to block off unwanted viewing areas.
4. Isolated Relay: Provide an internal additional isolated relay with Normally Open, Normally Closed, and Common outputs for use with HVAC control, Data Logging and other control options Omit the choice in the following paragraph if only models with integral photocell will be used.
5. Integral Photocell: Provide an integral photocell with adjustable sensitivity to prevent lights from turning on when there is sufficient natural lightIf more than one model is required, the optional choice can be used to assign type designations.

2.05 WIRELESS SENSORS

A. General Requirements:

1. Operational life of 10 years without the need to replace batteries when installed per manufacturer's instructions.
2. Communicates directly to compatible RF receiving devices through use of a radio frequency communications link.
3. Does not require external power packs, power wiring, or communication wiring.
4. Capable of being placed in test mode to verify correct operation from the face of the unit.

B. Wireless Occupancy/Vacancy Sensors:

1. General Requirements:
   a. Provides a clearly visible method of indication to verify that motion is being detected during testing and that the unit is communicating to compatible RF receiving devices.
   b. Utilize multiple segmented lens, with internal grooves to eliminate dust and residue build-up.
   c. Sensing Mechanism: Passive infrared coupled with technology for sensing fine motions; Lutron XCT Technology. Signal processing technology detects fine-motion passive infrared (PIR) signals without the need to change the sensor's sensitivity threshold.
   d. Provide optional, readily accessible, user-adjustable controls for timeout, automatic/manual-on, and sensitivity.
   e. Turns off lighting after reasonable and adjustable time delay once the last person to occupy the space vacates a room or area. Provide adjustable timeout settings of 1, 5, 15, and 30 minutes.
   f. Capable of turning dimmer's lighting load on to an optional locked preset level selectable by the user. Locked preset range to be selectable on the dimmer from 1 percent to 100 percent.
   g. Color: White.
   h. Provide all necessary mounting hardware and instructions for both temporary and permanent mounting.
   i. Provide temporary mounting means for drop ceilings to allow user to check proper performance and relocate as needed before permanently mounting sensor. Temporary mounting method to be designed for easy, damage-free removal.
   j. Sensor lens to illuminate during test mode when motion is detected to allow installer to place sensor in ideal location and to verify coverage prior to permanent mounting.
   k. Ceiling-Mounted Sensors:
      1) Provide surface mounting bracket compatible with drywall, plaster, wood, concrete, and compressed fiber ceilings.
      2) Provide recessed mounting bracket compatible with drywall and compressed fiber ceilings.
   l. Wall-Mounted Sensors: Provide wall or corner mounting brackets compatible with drywall and plaster walls.
2. Wireless Combination Occupancy/Vacancy Sensors:
   a. Ceiling-Mounted Sensors: Programmable to operate as an occupancy sensor (automatic-on and automatic-off), an occupancy sensor with low light feature (automatic-on when less than one footcandle of ambient light available and automatic-off), or a vacancy sensor (manual-on and automatic-off).

b. Wall-Mounted Sensors: Programmable to operate as an occupancy sensor (automatic-on and automatic-off), or a vacancy sensor (manual-on and automatic-off).
c. Product(s):
1) Ceiling-Mounted Occupancy/Vacancy Sensor*; Lutron Radio Powr Savr Series, Model LFR2-OCR2B-P-WH* Coverage from 324 square feet (30.2 sq m) to 676 square feet (62.4 sq m) depending on ceiling height from 8 to 12 feet (2.4 to 3.7 m); 360 degree field of view.
2) Wall-Mounted Occupancy/Vacancy Sensor*; Lutron Radio Powr Savr Series, Model LFR2-OWLB-P-WH;* Minor motion coverage of 1500 square feet (139.4 sq m) and major motion coverage of 3000 square feet (278.7 sq m) with mounting height of 6 to 8 feet (1.8 to 2.4 m); 180 degree field of view.
3) Corner-Mounted Occupancy/Vacancy Sensor*; Lutron Radio Powr Savr Series, Model LFR2-OKLB-P-WH* Minor motion coverage of 1225 square feet (113.8 sq m) and major motion coverage of 2500 square feet (232.3 sq m) with mounting height of 6 to 8 feet (1.8 to 2.4 m); 90 degree field of view.
4) Hallway Occupancy/Vacancy Sensor*; << Lutron Radio Powr Savr Series, Model LFR2-OHLB-P-WH;* Major motion coverage of up to 150 feet (45.7 m) with mounting height of 6 to 8 feet (1.8 to 2.4 m); narrow field of view..

2.06 LOAD CONTROL MODULES FOR WIRELESS SENSORS AND CONTROL STATIONS

A. Provide wireless load control modules as indicated or as required to control the loads as indicated.

B. Junction Box-Mounted Modules:
1. Communicates via radio frequency with up to nine compatible wireless control stations, up to six occupancy/vacancy sensors, and one daylight sensor.
2. Plenum rated.
3. Dimming Modules:
a. Product(s):
1) 5 A dimming module with 0-10V control; << Lutron PowPak Dimming Module Model RMJ-5T-DV-B; IEC 60929 is a standard for electronic fluorescent ballasts, and is used by other lighting equipment controlled by low voltage signals including LED drivers and low voltage controlled neon. It defines specific methods for 0-10V, pulse width modulation (PWM), and Digitally Addressable Lighting Interface (DALI).
b. Single low voltage dimming module with Class 1 or Class 2 isolated 0-10V output signal conforming to IEC 60929 Annex E.2; source or sink automatically configures.
c. Configurable high- and low-end trim.
d. Relay: Rated for 0-10 V ballasts, LED drivers, or fixtures that conform with NEMA 410.
4. Relay Modules:
a. Product(s):
1) 16 A relay module, without contact closure output*; Lutron PowPak Relay Module Model RMJ-16R-DV-B;* 16 A relay module, with contact

closure output*; Lutron PowPak Relay Module Model RMJ-16RCCO1-DV-B;* 5 A relay module, without contact closure output*; Lutron PowPak Relay Module Model RMJ-5R-DV-B*.

b. Relay:
   1) Rated Life of Relay: Typical of 1,000,000 cycles at fully rated 16 A for all lighting loads.
   2) Load switched in manner that prevents arcing at mechanical contacts when power is applied to and removed from load circuits.
   3) Fully rated output continuous duty for inductive, capacitive, and resistive

2.07 WIRELESS CONTROL STATIONS

A. Product(s):

1. 2-Button Control;<*Lutron Pico Wireless Control Model PJ2-2B;*
   a. Button Marking *on drawings*
2. 2-Button Control with Night Light; *Lutron Pico Wireless Control Model PJN-2B*.
3. Wallbox Adapter; Lutron Model PICO-WBX-ADAPT.

B. Communicates directly to compatible RF receiving devices through use of a radio frequency communications link.

C. Does not require external power packs, power or communication wiring.

D. Allows for easy reprogramming without replacing unit.

E. Button Programming:

1. Single action.
2. Toggle action.

F. Includes LED to indicate button press or programming mode status.

G. Mounting:

1. Capable of being mounted with a table stand or directly to a wall under a faceplate.
2. Faceplates: Provide concealed mounting hardware.

H. Power: Battery-operated with minimum ten-year battery life (3-year battery life for night light models).

I. Finish: <<*As specified for wall controls in "Device Finishes" under LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS article above;*

2.08 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. See Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.

B. Factory Testing; Lutron Standard Factory Testing:

1. Perform full-function factory testing on all completed assemblies. Statistical sampling is not acceptable.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.

B. Verify that ratings and configurations of devices are consistent with the indicated requirements.
C. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive devices.
D. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Clean dirt, debris, plaster, and other foreign materials from outlet boxes.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Perform work in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1 and, where applicable, NECA 130

B. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section *26 0537* as required for installation of devices provided under this section.

C. Where multiple devices are installed at the same location and at the same mounting height, gang devices together under a common wall plate.

D. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

E. Install permanent barrier between ganged devices when voltage between adjacent devices exceeds 300 V.

F. Install wall dimmers to achieve full rating specified after derating for ganging as instructed by manufacturer.

G. Sensor Locations:

1. Sensor locations indicated are diagrammatic. Within the design intent, reasonably minor adjustments to locations may be made in order to optimize coverage and avoid conflicts or problems affecting coverage, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

H. Ensure that daylight sensor placement minimizes sensor view of electric light sources. Locate ceiling-mounted and luminaire-mounted daylight sensors to avoid direct view of luminaires.

I. Lamp Burn-In: Operate lamps at full output for prescribed period per manufacturer's recommendations prior to use with any dimming controls. Replace lamps that fail prematurely due to improper lamp burn-in.

J. Identify devices<< *in accordance with Section 26 0553*>>.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. See Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.

B. Correct defective work, adjust for proper operation, and retest until entire system complies with contract documents.

3.05 ADJUSTING

A. Sensor Fine-Tuning: Contractor to provide fine-tuning of sensor calibration.

3.06 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove dirt, paint, or other foreign material and restore to match original factory finish.

3.07 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for closeout submittals.

B. See Section 01 7900 - Demonstration and Training, for additional requirements.

C. Demonstration: Demonstrate proper operation of lighting control devices to Engineer; or owner, and correct deficiencies or make adjustments as directed.

3.08 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed products from subsequent construction operations.

END OF SECTION 26 0923

SECTION 262200 - LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Distribution and buck-boost dry-type transformers rated 600 V and less, with capacities up to 1500 kVA

B. Copper-wound transformers exceeding US Department of Energy 2016 mandated minimum efficiency. These transformers shall be UL listed to feed a K-7 electronic equipment load profile and be optimized to minimize opeating cost under light loading.

B. Compliance with full specification is required

C. Basic compliance with NEMA TP1/EPACT2005, NEMA Premium, CEE Tier 1, or CSL3 is not sufficient to meet this specification due to the following:

1. Efficiencies must exceed the US DOE 2016 minimum requirement
2. No load losses must comply with those defined in this specification
3. Efficiency at low load and under nonlinear K-7 load must meet the minimum requirements of this specification
4. K-7 listing per UL 1561 is required
5. Comprehensive testing under linear and nonlinear loading is required to verify specified performance
6. Performance submittals are required

D. Load Mix: Transformer shall be UL 1561 Listed to feed a mix of equipment load profiles suchas computers without de-rating or significant degradation of efficiency.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. US Department of Energy, 10 CFR Part 431, April 18, 2013. Energy Conservation Program: Energy Conservation Standards for Distribution Transformers; Final Rule

B. DOE Test Method for Measuring the Energy Consumption of Distribution Transformers under Appendix A to Subpart K of 10 CFR part 431.

C. ANSI/NEMA ST 20 - Dry Type Transformers for General Applications.

D. NEMA Premium Efficiency Transformers Program

E. Consortium for Energy Efficiency (CEE): Specification for Low-Voltage, Dry- Type Distribution Transformers

F. EPACT 2005 - United States Energy Policy Act 2005 / NEMA TP1 - Guide for Determining Energy Efficiency for Distribution Transformers

G. ANSI/NEMA TP-2 – Standard Test Method for Measuring Energy Consumption of Distribution Transformers

H. Metering Standards:

1. Computational algorithms per IEEE Std 1459-2000
2. UL 916, UL 61010C-1 CAT III

I. IEEE C57.110-1998 – IEEE Recommended Practice for establishing transformer capability when feeding nonsinusoidal load currents

J. IEEE Std C57.12.91-1995 Standard Test Code for Dry-Type Transformers

K. IEEE-1100 – Recommended Practice for Powering and Grounding Sensitive Electronic Equipment

L. LEED – Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design, U.S. Green Building Council.

M. Seismic Qualification References: International Building Code, 2006/2009 Edition, California Building Code, 2007/2010 Edition, ASCE Standard 7, 2005 Edition to OSHPD CAN 2-1708A.5, Rev. , ICC-ES AC 156, Effective 01/01/2007, OSHPD

N. ISO 9001:2008 – International Standards Organization - Quality Management System

O. ISO 14001:2004 – International Standards Organization - Environmental Management System

P. ISO 17025 – International Standards Organization - General requirements for the competence of testing and calibration laboratories

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type and size of transformer.
2. Include rated nameplate data, capacities, weights, dimensions, minimum clearances, installed devices and features, and performance for each type and size of transformer.

B. Certified Test Reports

1. Provide test reports certified by factory test engineer for both transformer types and each kVA used on this project documenting compliance of previously manufactured units.
2. Provide details of factory ISO compliant production nonlinear load test
3. Provide performance under nonlinear load profile typical of modern electronic equipment

4. Provide NEMA TP2 test reports

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

D. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

E. Source quality-control reports.

F. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transformers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering transformers that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:

1. Powersmiths International Corp Model ESAVER2016 (Non-harmonics canceling type).
2. Powersmiths International Corp. Model T10002016 (harmonics canceling type).
3. Square D NEMA Premium 30
4. Eaton corp. CSL3
5. Others as approved by Engineer prior to bidding.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each transformer type from single source from single manufacturer.

1.1 GENERAL TRANSFORMER REQUIREMENTS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units of types specified, designed for 60-Hz service.

B. Cores: Grain-oriented, non-aging silicon steel.

C. Coils: Continuous windings without splices, except for taps.

D. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.

E. Enclosure: Class complies with NEMA 250 for the environment in which installed.

F. Warranty: 25 years pro-rated

G. International Standard Organization registration

1. Registration to current ISO standard is required.
2. Independent annual audits are required.
3. Product shall be manufactured in registered facility
4. ISO 9001:2000 Registered – Quality Management System
5. ISO 14001:2004 Registered – Environmental Management System

H. Low-Sound-Level Units: NEMA ST 20 standard sound levels when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91. All units on this project to be sound level tested and meet the NEMA ST-20 levels.

I. Wall Brackets: Manufacturer's standard brackets.

1.2 GENERAL-PURPOSE DISTRIBUTION AND POWER TRANSFORMERS

A. Comply with NEMA ST 20 and list and label as complying with UL 1561.

B. Cores: One leg per phase.

C. Windings: One coil per phase in primary and secondary.

D. K-Factor rating: K-7

E. Exceed minimum efficiency requirements of US Department of Energy, 10 CFR Part 431, April 18, 2013, Energy Conservation Program: Energy Conservation Standards for Distribution Transformers; Final Rule which takes effect January 1, 2016, and comply with the table of Maximum No Load Losses, efficiency requirements at 1/6 load, efficiency at 35% load per 10 CFR Part 431, and efficiency at 25% load under a K-7 load profile.

kVA	No load losses (Watts)	Efficiency @ 1/6 load (%)	Efficiency @ 35% load (%)	Efficiency at 25% load under K-7 nonlinear load
15	47	97.85%	98.28	98.00%
20	60	98.05%	98.34	98.10%
25	66	98.15%	98.41	98.15%
30	71	98.27%	98.50	98.30%
45	97	98.40%	98.66	98.40%
50	112	98.45%	98.67	98.42%
63	120	98.50%	98.75	98.48%
75	135	98.63%	98.82	98.60%
100	180	98.65%	98.88	98.65%
112.5	195	98.70%	98.92	98.70%
125	215	98.73%	98.94	98.72%
150	235	98.80%	98.99	98.80%
175	270	98.82%	99.02	98.82%
200	310	98.84%	99.05	98.84%

225	330	98.90%	99.09	98.90%
250	365	98.91%	99.10	98.92%
300	400	98.95%	99.15	99.00%
400	530	98.96%	99.20	99.02%
450	600	98.97%	99.22	99.03%
500	650	99.00%	99.25	99.05%
600	800	99.01%	99.28	99.07%
750	875	99.10%	99.32	99.10%
850	950	99.11%	99.34	99.11%
1000	1200	99.12%	99.36	99.12%

F. Enclosure: Indoor, ventilated with lockable hinged door

G. Maximum Footprint for 115 degree C rise model in a NEMA 1 enclosure:

1. 18” Wide x 17” Deep x 27” High for 15kVA.
2. 26” Wide x 18” Deep x 30” High for 20, 30, 45kVA
3. 33” Wide x 22” Deep x 40” High for 50, 63, 75, 100, 112.5kVA
4. 38” Wide x 27” Deep x 48” High for 125,150, 175, 200kVA
5. 38” Wide x 32” Deep x 52” High for 225, 250, 300kVA
6. 52” Wide x 38” Deep x 61” High for 400, 450, 500kVA
7. 64” Wide x 47” Deep x 67” High for 600, 750kVA
8. 64” Wide x 53” Deep x 67” High for 850, 1000kVA

H. Insulation Class: 185 or 220 deg C class for transformers 15 kVA or smaller; 220 deg C class for transformers larger than 15 kVA.

I. Rated Temperature Rise: 130 deg C maximum rise above 40 deg C.

J. Taps: For transformers 3 kVA and larger, full-capacity taps in high-voltage windings are as follows:

1. If all transformers have same voltage taps, select from 4 subparagraphs below. If taps vary, delete all and show on Drawings. First item is standard.
2. Taps, 3 through 25 kVA: Two 5-percent taps below rated high voltage.
3. Taps, 3 through 10 kVA: Two 5-percent taps below rated high voltage.
4. Taps, 15 through 500 kVA: Six 2.5-percent taps, 2 above and 4 below rated high voltage.

K. Electrostatic Shielding: Each winding is independently single shielded with a full-width copper electrostatic shield arranged to minimize interwinding capacitance.

1. Coil leads and terminal strips are arranged to minimize capacitive coupling between input and output connections.
2. Shield Terminal: Separate; marked "Shield" for grounding connection.
3. Capacitance: Shield limits capacitance between primary and secondary to a maximum of 33 picofarads over a frequency range of 20 Hz to 1 MHz.

4. Common-Mode Noise Attenuation: Minus 120 dB minimum, 0.5 to 1.5 kHz; minus 65 dB minimum, 1.5 to 100 kHz.
5. Normal-Mode Noise Attenuation: Minus 52 dB minimum, 1.5 to 10 kHz.

1.3 HARMONIC CANCELING TRANSFORMERS

A. Transformers designed to treat a broad spectrum of odd harmonic currents, up to the 25th harmonic frequency.

B. 3rd Harmonic Treatment: 3rd, 9th, and other zero sequence currents shall not be coupled into the primary winding.

C. Voltage Distortion: Change in voltage THD between transformer primary and secondary terminals shall be minimized.

D. Fundamental current imbalance shall be reduced on the primary side of the transformer compared to the secondary side.

E. Exceed minimum efficiency requirements of US Department of Energy, 10 CFR Part 431, April 18, 2013, Energy Conservation Program: Energy Conservation Standards for Distribution Transformers; Final Rule which takes effect January 1, 2016, and comply with the table of Maximum No Load Losses, efficiency requirements at 1/6 load, efficiency at 35% load per 10 CFR Part 431, and efficiency at 50% load under a K-7 load profile.

kVA	No load losses (Watts)	Efficiency @ 1/6 load (%)	Efficiency @ 35% load (%)	Efficiency at 50% load under K-9 nonlinear load
15	52	97.80%	98.28%	97.75%
20	66	97.95%	98.34%	97.80%
25	73	98.00%	98.41%	97.85%
30	78	98.20%	98.50%	97.88%
45	107	98.30%	98.66%	97.95%
50	123	98.35%	98.67%	97.98%
63	132	98.40%	98.75%	98.00%
75	149	98.50%	98.82%	98.10%
100	198	98.57%	98.88%	98.30%
112.5	215	98.60%	98.92%	98.35%
125	237	98.65%	98.94%	98.40%
150	259	98.70%	98.99%	98.47%
175	297	98.72%	99.02%	98.50%
200	341	98.75%	99.05%	98.55%
225	363	98.80%	99.09%	98.60%
250	402	98.83%	99.10%	98.63%
300	440	98.88%	99.15%	98.70%
400	583	98.90%	99.20%	98.73%

450	660	98.92%	99.22%	98.75%
500	715	98.94%	99.25%	98.77%
600	880	98.95%	99.28%	98.79%
750	963	98.96%	99.32%	98.84%
850	1045	98.98%	99.34%	98.96%
1000	1320	99.00%	99.36%	98.90%

F. Enclosure: Indoor, ventilated with lockable hinged door

G. Maximum Footprint for 115 degree C rise model in a NEMA 1 enclosure:

1. 18” Wide x 17” Deep x 27” High for 15kVA.
2. 26” Wide x 18” Deep x 30” High for 20, 30, 45kVA
3. 33” Wide x 22” Deep x 40” High for 50, 63, 75, 100, 112.5kVA
4. 38” Wide x 27” Deep x 48” High for 125,150, 175, 200kVA
5. 38” Wide x 32” Deep x 52” High for 225, 250, 300kVA
6. 52” Wide x 38” Deep x 61” High for 400, 450, 500kVA
7. 64” Wide x 47” Deep x 67” High for 600, 750kVA
8. 64” Wide x 53” Deep x 67” High for 850, 1000kVA

H. Insulation Class: 185 or 220 deg C class for transformers 15 kVA or smaller; 220 deg C class for transformers larger than 15 kVA.

I. Rated Temperature Rise: 115 deg C maximum rise above 40 deg C.

J. Taps: For transformers 3 kVA and larger, full-capacity taps in high-voltage windings are as follows:

K. Taps, 15 through 500 kVA: Four 2.5-percent taps, 2 above and 2 below rated high voltage.

L. Electrostatic Shielding: Each winding is independently single shielded with a full-width copper electrostatic shield arranged to minimize interwinding capacitance.

M. Coil leads and terminal strips are arranged to minimize capacitive coupling between input and output connections.

1. Shield Terminal: Separate; marked "Shield" for grounding connection.
2. Capacitance: Shield limits capacitance between primary and secondary to a maximum of 33 picofarads over a frequency range of 20 Hz to 1 MHz
3. Common-Mode Noise Attenuation: Minus 120 dB minimum, 0.5 to 1.5 kHz; minus 65 dB minimum, 1.5 to 100 kHz.
4. Normal-Mode Noise Attenuation: Minus 52 dB minimum, 1.5 to 10 kHz.

1.4 BUCK-BOOST TRANSFORMERS

A. Description: Self-cooled, two-winding dry type, rated for continuous duty and with wiring terminals suitable for connection as autotransformer. Transformers shall be listed and labeled as complying with UL 506 or UL 1561.

1. Standard impedance at 60Hz: 2 percent to 5 percent (up to 10 kVA), 4 percent to 6.5 percent (above 10 kVA).
2. Nameplate Rating: Linear load, 60Hz.
3. Insulation Class: 220 deg C system.
4. Temperature Rise: 80deg C.
5. Core Construction: Electrical grade, non-aging silicon steel with high permeability and low hysteresis losses.
6. Coil Conductors: Continuous aluminum windings, with terminations brazed, welded, or bolted.
7. Coil Impregnation: Vacuum impregnated with polyester resin.
8. Sound Level: Not exceeding values listed above for distribution transformers.
9. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 3R.
10. Terminations: Transformer coils shall terminate in mounting pads. Mounting lugs shall be provided on all units up to and including 270 A ratings.
11. Antivibration pads or isolators shall be used between the transformer core and coil and the enclosure.
12. Ground core and coil assembly to enclosure with a flexible copper grounding strap or equivalent.
13. Mounting:

    a. Ventilated Units up to 750 lb.: Suitable for wall, floor, or ceiling mounting (drip plate required).
    b. Ventilated Units over 750 lb.: Suitable for floor mounting only.
    c. Encapsulated Units up to 285 lb.: Suitable for wall or floor mounting.
    d. Encapsulated Units over 285 lb.: Suitable for floor mounting only.

B. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 3R.

1. Finish Color: NSF/ANSI 49 gray.

1.5 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

A. Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-plastic or metal nameplate for each distribution and buck-boost transformer, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test and inspect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.01 and IEEE C57.12.91.

1. Resistance measurements of all windings at the rated voltage connections and at all tap connections.
2. Ratio tests at the rated voltage connections and at all tap connections.

3. Phase relation and polarity tests at the rated voltage connections.
4. No load losses, and excitation current and rated voltage at the rated voltage connections.
5. Impedance and load losses at rated current and rated frequency at the rated voltage connections.
6. Applied and induced tensile tests.
7. Regulation and efficiency at rated load and voltage.
8. Insulation Resistance Tests:

    a. High-voltage to ground.
    b. Low-voltage to ground.
    c. High-voltage to low-voltage.

9. Temperature tests.

B. Factory Sound-Level Tests: Conduct prototype sound-level tests on production-line products.

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions for compliance with enclosure- and ambient-temperature requirements for each transformer.

B. Verify that field measurements are as needed to maintain working clearances required by NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where transformers will be installed.

D. Verify that ground connections are in place and requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at location of transformer.

E. Environment: Enclosures shall be rated for the environment in which they are located. Covers for NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosures shall not cause accessibility problems.

F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

2.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install wall-mounted transformers level and plumb with wall brackets fabricated by transformer manufacturer.

1. Coordinate installation of wall-mounted and structure-hanging supports with actual transformer provided.

B. Install transformers level and plumb on a concrete base with vibration-dampening supports. Locate transformers away from corners and not parallel to adjacent wall surface.

C. Construct concrete bases according to Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" or [Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete" and anchor floor-mounted transformers according to manufacturer's written instructions and requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

1. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with actual transformer provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

D. Secure transformer to concrete base according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Secure covers to enclosure and tighten all bolts to manufacturer-recommended torques to reduce noise generation.

F. Remove shipping bolts, blocking, and wedges.

2.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

D. Provide flexible connections at all conduit and conductor terminations and supports to eliminate sound and vibration transmission to the building structure.

2.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.

C. Efficiency & Harmonic Performance Validation: To insure that the products shipped to the job site meet this specification, provide on-site revenue class accurate efficiency and harmonic measurements of transformers once installed and operating at customer’s site. Data shall be collected from primary and secondary sides of the transformer simultaneously on a synchronized cycle-by-cycle basis. The use of two discrete meters that are not synchronized is not acceptable. Sampling shall be of 10% of transformers on the project once installed and operating, as selected by customer. Submit a detailed report to the project engineer.

D. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS for dry-type, air-cooled, low-voltage transformers. Certify compliance with test parameters.

F. Remove and replace units that do not pass tests or inspections and retest as specified above.

G. Infrared Scanning: Two months after Substantial Completion, perform an infrared scan of transformer connections.

1. Use an infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
2. Perform two follow-up infrared scans of transformers, one at four months and the other at 11 months after Substantial Completion.
3. Prepare a certified report identifying transformer checked and describing results of scanning. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and scanning observations after remedial action.

H. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.

2.5 ADJUSTING

A. Record transformer secondary voltage at each unit for at least 48 hours of typical occupancy period. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 5 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.

B. Connect buck-boost transformers to provide nameplate voltage of equipment being served, plus or minus 5 percent, at secondary terminals.

C. Output Settings Report: Prepare a written report recording output voltages and tap settings.

2.6 CLEANING

A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

END OF SECTION 262200

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Distribution panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
3. Load centers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.

D. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.

E. SPD: Surge protective device.

F. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.

1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.

5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
10. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
11. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing**.**

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and GFEP Types: Two spares for each panelboard.
3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.

B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NEMA PB 1.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

    a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 23 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
    b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect no fewer than 7 days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect's, Construction Manager's and Owner's written permission.
3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SPD that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. SPD Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS:

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Square D Co.
2. Eaton Corporation.

2.2 PANELBOARDS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R or 4XSS (as noted on plans).
c. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 5 or Type 12 (as noted on plans).

2. Height: 84 inches maximum.
3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
6. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
7. Finishes:

a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
b. Back Boxes: Same finish as panels and trim.

G. Incoming Mains:

1. Location: coordinated on the field by the electrical contractor.
2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.

H. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.

a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.

2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
4. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
5. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
6. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction, as suitable for nonlinear loads in electronic-grade panelboards and others designated on Drawings. Connectors shall be sized for double-sized or parallel conductors as indicated on Drawings. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
7. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.

I. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
6. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
8. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material and with matching insulating covers. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.

9. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.

J. NRTL Label: Panelboards or load centers shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.

K. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: Ten percent.

L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 1 or Type 2 (as noted on plans).

2.4 POWER PANELBOARDS

A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.

B. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.

C. Mains: Circuit breaker or Lugs only (as noted on plans).

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

2.5 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

B. Mains: Circuit breaker or Lugs only (as noted on plans).

C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

D. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

E. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

2.6 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:

    a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
    b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
    c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:

    a. RMS sensing.
    b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
    c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
    d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
    e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
    f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
    g. Field-Adjustable Settings:

        1) Instantaneous trip.
        2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
        3) Long and short time adjustments.
        4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
4. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
5. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
6. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
7. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
8. MCCB Features and Accessories:

    a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
    c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.

d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
g. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent of rated voltage.
h. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second] time delay.
i. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than 150 amperes shall have interchangeable rating plugs or electronic adjustable trip units.
j. Auxiliary Contacts: Two, SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
k. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
l. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
m. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function with other upstream or downstream devices.
n. Multipole units enclosed in a factory assembled to operate as a single unit.
o. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
p. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

2.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.

B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.

C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in metal frame with transparent protective cover.

1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

D. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.

1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

2.8 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.

B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407 and NEMA PB 1.1.

C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.

D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407 and NEMA PB 1.1.

D. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install panelboards on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." and or Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.

E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.

F. Mount top of trim 90 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

G. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.

H. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.

I. Mounting panelboards with space behind is recommended for damp, wet, or dirty locations. The steel slotted supports in the following paragraph provide an even mounting surface and the recommended space behind to prevent moisture or dirt collection.

J. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 5/8 inch in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.

K. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.

1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.

M. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

N. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.

O. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.

C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

D. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers and low-voltage surge arrestors stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers and Paragraph 7.19.1 Surge Arrestors, Low-Voltage. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

    a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    c. Instruments and Equipment:

        1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

E. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.

1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
2. USB charger electrical outlet
3. Tamper-resistant receptacles.
4. Weather-resistant receptacles.
5. Snap switches.
6. Wall-switch and exterior occupancy sensors.
7. Cord and plug sets.
8. Floor service outlets.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

B. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordination:

1. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.

C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:
   1. Cooper Wiring Devices; a division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
   2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
   3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
   4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories (Pass & Seymour).

2.2 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:

   1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
   2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.

2.3 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.

B. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498 Supplement sd, and FS W-C-596.

2.4 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. General Description:

   1. Straight blade, feed-through type.

2. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
3. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned and no longer provides proper GFCI protection.

B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

C. Tamper-Resistant GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

2.5 USB CHARGER RECEPTACLES

A. General Description: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6. Comparable with iPad, iPhone, Tablets, Mobile Phone, Smartphones, Digital Cameras.

1. Components: 20A tamper resistant receptacle, two 5 volt DC, 2100 mA USB ports (2.0 and 3.0), 10.5 watts.
2. 2.1-amp USB type A receptacles, back and side wire terminals
3. Legrand TMBUSWCC6

2.6 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

A. Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.

2.7 CORD AND PLUG SETS

A. Description:

1. Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
2. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and ampacity of at least 130 percent of the equipment rating.
3. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.8 TOGGLE SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Single Pole
2. Two Pole
3. Three Way
4. Four Way

C. Key-Operated Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Description: Single pole, Corbin type with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

D. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

2.9 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Tamper proof metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: Type 302 stainless steel, 0.04-inch thick.
3. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.

B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

2.10 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

A. Type: Modular, flap-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used.

B. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.

C. Service Plates, Rectangular, solid brass with satin finish. Select accordingly to be fully flush with the finished surface:
1. Suitable for Wood floor

D. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Voice and Data Communication Outlet: Blank cover with bushed cable opening.

2.11 FINISHES

A. Device Color:

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: Ivory or as selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.

B. Wall Plate Color: Stainless steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:

    a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
    b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
    c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.
2. Install hospital-grade receptacles in patient-care areas with the ground pin or neutral blade at the top.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Dimmers:

1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
2. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed control are listed for that application.
3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.

H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. Install non-feed-through-type GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black -filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with recommendations in NFPA 99.
2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
3. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.

B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:

1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.

6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

C. Test straight-blade convenience outlets in patient-care area and hospital-grade convenience outlets for the retention force of the grounding blade according to NFPA 99. Retention force shall be not less than 4 oz.

D. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 262813 - FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:
   a. Panelboards.
   b. Enclosed controllers.
   c. Enclosed switches.

2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.

   a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
   b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.

2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse. Submit in electronic format suitable for use in coordination software and in PDF format.
5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
6. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures," and or **S**ection 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse used on the Project. Submit in PDF format.
4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F or more than 100 deg F, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.; Bussmann Div.

2. Mersen

B. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

2.3 FUSE COVER

A. Fuse cover shall be BUSSMAN “SAMI”

2.4 SPARE-FUSE CABINET

A. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.

1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.
2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- high letters on exterior of door.
4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.

C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.

D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

A. Cartridge Fuses:

1. Main Service: Class RK1, time delay, current limiting Bussman HI-CAP KRP-C.
2. Main Feeders: Class RK1, time delay.
    a. 250volts - Bussman LOW-PEAK LPN-RK dual element.
    b. 600volts – Bussman LOW-PEAK LPS-RK dual element.
3. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
    a. 250volts - Bussman LOW-PEAK LPN-RK dual element.
    b. 600volts – Bussman LOW-PEAK LPS-RK dual element.

4. Power Electronics Circuits: Class J, high speed.
5. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
6. Control Transformer Circuits: Class CC, time delay, and control transformer duty.
7. Provide open-fuse indicator fuses or fuse covers with open fuse indication.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

B. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s) in location shown on the Drawings or as indicated in the field by Architect.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 262813

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. NC: Normally closed.

B. NO: Normally open.

C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Current and voltage ratings.
3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
4. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

D. Manufacturer's field service report.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
2. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
2. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member Company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

B. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect and or Construction Manager no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect's or Construction Manager's written permission.
4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS:

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Square D Co.
2. Eaton Corporation.

2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V ac (as per connected voltage), 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicate**d** fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

B. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
4. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open.
5. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
6. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
7. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V ac (as per connected voltage), 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

B. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open.
4. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
5. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.4 SHUNT TRIP SWITCHES

A. General Requirements: Comply with ASME A17.1, UL 50, and UL 98, with 200-kA interrupting and short-circuit current rating when fitted with Class J fuses.

B. Switches: Three-pole, horsepower rated, with integral shunt trip mechanism and Class J fuse block; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Control Circuit: 120-V ac; obtained from integral control power transformer, with primary and secondary fuses, with a control power transformer/source of enough capacity to operate shunt trip, connected pilot, and indicating and control devices.

D. Accessories:

1. Oiltight key switch for key-to-test function.
2. Isolated neutral lug; 100 percent rating.
3. Mechanically interlocked auxiliary contacts that change state when switch is opened and closed.
4. Form C alarm contacts that change state when switch is tripped.
5. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-safety and alarm relay; 120-V ac coil voltage.
6. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-alarm voltage monitoring relay complying with NFPA 72.

2.5 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R OR 4XSS (as noted on drawings).
3. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
6. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7 or Type 9 (as noted on drawings).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.

B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

D. Install fuses in fusible devices.

E. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

    a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

4. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

END OF SECTION 262816

SECTION 264210 - UTILITY ENTRANCE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Arrangement with Utility Company for permanent electric service, including payment of Utility Company charges for service construction.

B. Underground service entrance.

C. Metering equipment.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Excavation, Grading and Fill.

C. Section 260533 - Raceways.

E. Section 260526 – Grounding and bonding.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Utility Company:

1. City of Brownsville Public Utilities Board.

B. System Characteristics:

1. 480/277 volts, three phase, four wire, 60 Hertz

C. Service Entrance: Underground.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit under provisions of Section 01340.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform Work in accordance with Utilities Company written requirements.

B. Maintain one copy of each document on site.

1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to requirements of ANSI/NFPA 70.

B. Furnish products listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. as suitable for purpose

specified and shown.

1.8 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on Utility Company drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 UTILITY METERS

A. Provide meter can as to comply with Utility Company requirements.

2.2 METERING TRANSFORMER CABINET

A. Size and type: As required by Utility Company.

B. Include provisions for padlocking and sealing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that service equipment is ready to be connected and energized.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Make arrangements with Utilities Company to obtain permanent electric service to the Project.

B. Coordinate location of Utilities Company’s facilities to ensure proper access is available.

C. Coordinate with utility metering department for meter and type of meter installation.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install service entrance conduits and to service entrance equipment.

END OF SECTION 264210

SECTION 264313 - SURGE PROTECTION FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes field-mounted SPDs for low-voltage (120 to 600 V) power distribution and control equipment.

B. The Surge Protection Device (SPD) covered under this section includes all service entrance type surge protection devices suitable for use as Type 1(Service Entrance) or Type 2 (Distribution Panels) devices per UL1449 3rd Edition, applied to the line or load side of the utility feed inside the facility.

C. Contractor shall provide all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals as shown, specified and required to finish and install surge protection devises.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Inominal: Nominal discharge current.

B. MCOV: Maximum continuous operating voltage.

C. Mode(s), also Modes of Protection: The pair of electrical connections where the VPR applies.

D. MOV: Metal-oxide varistor; an electronic component with a significant non-ohmic current-voltage characteristic.

E. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.

F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

G. SPD: Surge protective device.

H. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

2. Copy of UL Category Code VZCA certification, as a minimum, listing the tested values for VPRs, Inominal ratings, MCOVs, type designations, OCPD requirements, model numbers, system voltages, and modes of protection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Package must include shop drawings complete with all technical information, unit dimensions, detailed installation instructions, maintenance manual, recommended replacement parts list and wiring configuration.

B. Copies of Manufacturer's catalog data, technical information and specifications on equipment proposed for use.

C. Copies of documentation stating that the Surge Protection Device is listed by UL to UL1449 3rd Edition, category code VZCA.

D. Copies of actual let through voltage data in the form of oscillograph results for both ANSI/IEEE C62.41 Category C3 (combination wave) and B3 (Ring wave) tested in accordance with ANSI/IEEE C6245.

E. Copies of Noise Rejection testing as outlined in NEMA LS1-1992 (R2000) Section 3.11. Noise rejection is to be measured between 50 kHz and 100 MHz verifying the devices noise attenuation. Must show multiple attenuation levels over a range of frequencies.

F. Copies of test reports from a recognized independent testing laboratory, capable of producing 200kA surge current waveforms, verifying the suppressor components can survive published surge current rating on a per mode basis using the ANSI/IEEE C62.41 impulse waveform C3 (8 x 20 microsecond, 20kV/10kA). Test data on an individual module is not acceptable.

G. Copy of warranty statement clearly establishing the terms and conditions to the building/facility owner/operator.

H. Field quality-control reports.

I. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For SPDs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Reference Standard: Comply with the latest edition of the applicable provisions and recommendations of the following, except as otherwise stated in this document:

1. UL 1449 3rd Edition 2009 Revision (effective 9/29/2007).
2. UL 1283.
3. ANSI/IEEE C62.41, Recommended Practice for Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits.

4. ANSI/IEEE C62.45, Guide for Surge Testing for equipment connected to Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits.
5. UL96A
6. IEEE 1100 Emerald Book.
7. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA 70: National Electrical Code).

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace or replace SPDs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Fifteen years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS:

A. Manufacturers:

1. ACT Communications
2. Others prior approval required before bid.

2.2 GENERAL SPD REQUIREMENTS

A. SPD with Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with UL 1449.

D. Comply with UL 1283.

E. MCOV of the SPD shall be the nominal system voltage.

F. Declared Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV) shall be greater than 115 percent of the nominal system operating voltage and in compliance with test and evaluation procedures outlined in the nominal discharge surge current test of UL1449 3rd Edition, section 37.7.3. MCOV values claimed based on the component’s value or on the 30-minute 115% operational voltage test, section 38 in UL1449 will not be accepted.

G. Electrical Noise Filter- each unit shall include a high performance EMI/RFI noise rejection filter with a maximum attenuation of 54dB per MIL-STD-220B.

1. SPD shall include an EMI/RFI noise rejection filter for all L-N modes as well as a removable filter in the N-G mode.

H. The UL1449 Voltage Protective Rating (VPR) shall be permanently affixed to the SPD unit.

I. The UL1449 Nominal Discharge Surge Current Rating shall be 20kA

J. The SCCR rating of the SPD shall be 200kAIC without the need for upstream over current protection.

K. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall be no less than noted on plans The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.

L. The SPD shall have the following monitoring options through the M3 Mastermind monitoring system.

1. Time Date stamp, duration and magnitude for the following power quality events (sags, swells, surges, dropouts, outages, THD, frequency, Volts RMS per phase)
2. SPD monitoring shall track surge protection and display it as a percentage of remaining protection.
3. SPD shall provide a surge counter with three categories to be defined as
4. Low Level surge (100A-500A) Medium Level surge (500A-3,000A) High Level surge (>3,000A)
5. Remote communications via Ethernet using the M4E Monitoring Option
6. Unit shall be equipped with an integral Test Port Compliant with the DTS-2 Testing Unit.
7. Indicator light display for protection status.

M. ENCLOSURES

1. Indoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Outdoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 4.

2.3 SERVICE ENTRANCE SUPPRESSOR

A. SPDs: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1449, Type 1.

1. SPDs with the following features and accessories:

a. Integral disconnect switch.
b. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.

B. Unit shall have no more than 10% deterioration or degradation of the UL1449 3rd Edition Voltage Protection Rating (VPR) when exposed to a minimum of 14,000 repeated categories C3 (20kV/10kA) surges. The SPD manufacturer must provide a test report validating the repetitive surge test was performed.

C. Protection Modes UL1449 3rd Edition VPR(6kV, 3kA) for grounded WYE/delta and High Leg Delta circuits with voltages of (480Y/277), (208Y/120), (600Y/347). 3-Phase, 4 wire circuits, (120/240) split phase shall be as follows and comply with test procedures outlined in UL1449 3rd Edition section 37.6:

System Voltage	Mode	MCOV	B3 Ringwave 6kV, 500A	C3 Comb. Wave 20kV, 10kA	UL 1449 Third Edition VPR Rating
120/240, 120/208	L-N	150	490	980	700
	L-G	150	570	980	700
	N-G	150	640	1170	700
	L-L	300	500	1600	1200
277/480	L-N	320	450	1420	1200
	L-G	320	540	1540	1200
	N-G	320	570	1600	1000
	L-L	552	530	2600	2000

D. The unit shall be able to prevent common temporary overvoltages and high impedance faults from damaging the MOVs, increasing their longevity and ability to protect the critical load. Limited and Intermediate current TOVs (as specified in UL 1449 article 39.3 and 39.4) can be caused by a loss of the neutral conductor in a split phase or three phase power system. The available fault current will be determined by the impedance of the loads connected to the phases opposite the SPD and are typically in the range of 30A to 1000A. The Selenium elements must limit voltage to the MOV as a percent of nominal as outlined below:

Overvoltage seen by MOVs as % of Nominal				
	available current			
time	30A	100A	500A	1000A
1 cycle	120%	130%	150%	160%
10 cycles	130%	150%	160%	160%
30 cycles	140%	150%	160%	160%

*To verify damage to the MOVs has been mitigated, the percent overvoltage seen at the MOV must be less than 200% for split-phase applications or 173% for three-phase applications (100% is nominal).

E. The unit shall be able to withstand multiple TOVs without damage to the MOVs by shunting current away from the MOVs during the overvoltage. SPD must have the ability to withstand >100 TOVs with a source current of 30A, duration of 30 cycles, with10s between TOV events.

F. The service entrance protector shall incorporate a combination of TPMOV and Selenium technology allowing for transient surge and temporary over voltage protection.

G. Integral Disconnect Switch (REQUIRED)

1. The device shall have an optional NEMA compliant safety interlocked integral disconnect switch with an externally mounted metal manual operator.
2. The switch shall disconnect all ungrounded circuit conductors from the distribution system to enable testing and maintenance without interruption to the facility's distribution system.
3. The switch shall be rated for 600Vac.
4. The SPD device shall be tested to UL1449 3rd Edition listed with the integral disconnect switch and the UL1449 VPR ratings shall be provided.

5. The integral disconnect switch shall be capable of withstanding, without failure, the published maximum surge current magnitude without failure or damage to the switch.
6. The line side of the integral disconnect shall be blocked off so that when the SPD is opened there is no direct access to the voltage present on the line side of the disconnect.

2.4 PANEL SUPPRESSORS

A. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, Type 2.

1. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.

B. Unit shall have no more than 10% deterioration or degradation of the UL1449 3rd Edition Voltage Protection Rating (VPR) when exposed to a minimum of 5,000 repeated categories C3 (20kV/10kA) surges. The SPD manufacturer must provide a test report validating the repetitive surge test was performed.

C. Protection Modes UL1449 3rd Edition VPR(6kV, 3kA) for grounded WYE/delta and High Leg Delta circuits with voltages of (480Y/277), (208Y/120), (600Y/347). 3-Phase, 4 wire circuits, (120/240) split phase shall be as follows and comply with test procedures outlined in UL1449 3rd Edition section 37.6:

System Voltage	Mode	MCOV	B3 Ringwave 6kV, 500A	C3 Comb. Wave 20kV, 10kA	UL 1449 Third Edition VPR Rating
120/240, 120/208	L-N	150	760	2020	900
	L-G	150	800	1890	900
	N-G	150	930	2330	1200
	L-L	300	790	250	900
277/480	L-N	320	740	2460	1200
	L-G	320	790	2460	1500
	N-G	320	900	2640	1200
	L-L	552	870	3390	2000

2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring: Same size as SPD leads, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. If installed lead length exceeds 5’ installer shall use a low impedance (HPI) cable to reduce the lead lengths effect on the installed performance of the SPD.

C. Class 2 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install an OCPD or disconnect as required to comply with the UL listing of the SPD.

C. Install SPDs with conductors between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible, and adjust circuit-breaker positions to achieve shortest and straightest leads. Do not splice and extend SPD leads unless specifically permitted by manufacturer. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and ground.

D. Use crimped connectors and splices only. Wire nuts are unacceptable.

E. Wiring:

1. Power Wiring: Comply with wiring methods in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
2. Controls: Comply with wiring methods in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

1. Compare equipment nameplate data for compliance with Drawings and Specifications.
2. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written installation requirements.

B. An SPD will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Complete startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Do not perform insulation-resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with SPDs installed. Disconnect SPDs before conducting insulation-resistance tests, and reconnect them immediately after the testing is over.

C. Energize SPDs after power system has been energized, stabilized, and tested.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to operate and maintain SPDs.

END OF SECTION 264313

SECTION 265116 - INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior LED luminaires and drivers.
2. Luminaire supports.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BIM: Building information model.

B. CAD: Computer-aided design.

C. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

D. CRI: Color Rendering Index.

E. LED: Light-emitting diode.

F. Fixture: See "Luminaire."

G. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating

H. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

I. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.

3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
4. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy efficiency data.
5. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps, ballasts, and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project. For LED light fixtures the adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project IES LM-79 and IES LM-80

    a. Retain or "Manufacturers' Certified Data" or "Testing Agency Certified Data" Subparagraph below. Retain first subparagraph if photometric data, based on testing by accredited manufacturers' laboratories, is considered adequate for luminaires in this Project. Retain second subparagraph if photometric data for one or more luminaires are based on independent laboratory tests; coordinate with the Interior Lighting Fixture Schedule on Drawings to indicate which units shall meet this requirement. See the Evaluations. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
    b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

D. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

E. Product Certificates: For each type of ballast for bi-level and dimmer-controlled luminaires, from manufacturer.

F. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

G. Sample warranty.

1.5 PRIOR APPROVAL SUBMITTAL REQUESTS

A. Full submittal data , by type, clearly highlighted and arrowed to identify the specific proposed manufacturer’s nomenclature

B. Full submittal data of lamp and proposed manufacturer.

C. Full submittal data of ballast/driver (LED) data of proposed manufacturer

D. LED lumen data will include
   1. Lumen output
   2. L70 and L90 testing
   3. Confirmation of independent test lab data ITL
   4. Color temperature and CRI with quantity of McAdam Ellipse steps
      a. Data shall include sphere and goniometer results for total lumen, total power, luminaire efficacy, CRI and junction temperature for the specified color temperature
   5. Make and brand of LED diode should be clearly identified on submittal data

E. LED dimming shall be equal in range and quality to the specified drivers, Quality of dimming to be defined by dimming range, freedom from perceived flicker or visible stroboscopic flicker, smooth and continuous change in level (no visible steps in transitions), natural square law response to control input, and stable when input voltage conditions fluctuate over what is typically experience in a commercial environment.

F. All substitutions must meet specified fixtures certifications (UL,ETL,CE,CSA, RoHS, DLC, Energy Star)

G. Provide lighting calculations with the prior approval request based on reflectance values and light loss factors provided by the engineer and displayed on lighting calculation drawings. (may be unique by area) Calculations shall be shown on one sheet with dimensions as shown on construction set. Data will be submitted electronically in dxf format on a flash drive and with printed calculations on Architectural E size sheets to scale with construction set sheets.

   1. Discrepancies between prior approval data calculations and the original design calculations will result in immediate disqualification of review due to time based constraints on the bid process

H. Prior approval request may require a sample of both the proposed and specified fixtures provided by the alternate manufacturer at NO additional cost to the project. Samples of both specified and proposed must be provided within 10 working days of request.

I. All data will be submitted electronically and in a bound format

J. Bound data will be secured in hard binder with 3” rings for ease of review or PDF file.

   1. Types will be marked with a tab by type and indexed for ease of reference

K. LED warranty information MUST be included by type and marked in RED to clearly identify the manufacturer’s warranty terms. Warranty data MUST meet or exceed the specified manufacturers terms

L. Prior approvals MUST be received and acknowledged to the specifier’s office no less than 10 days prior to bid.

M. ALL prior approval data must be submitted in one package with complete information. Information that is incomplete will be rejected without review.

N. The prior approval will be returned marked approved or rejected by type with no explanation. If any specification is deemed not equal the review will be stopped, the type rejected with no explanation.

O. Lumen output for the proposed fixture must be highlighted in yellow for clear identification.

P. All inverter systems supply power to LED fixtures must have pure PWM sine wave function and work with any type of lighting load.

Q. LED warranty information must be included by type and marked in red to clearly identify the manufacturer’s warranty terms. Warranty data must meet or exceed the specified manufacturer’s terms.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps: Ten for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Fluorescent-luminaire-mounted emergency battery pack: One for every 40 emergency lighting unit.
4. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.

A. LED luminaires
1. Provide from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
2. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace (materials and labor) components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.

C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598.

E. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.

F. Recessed Luminaires: Comply with NEMA LE 4.

G. EMI Filters: Factory installed to suppress conducted EMI according to MIL-STD-461E. Fabricate luminaires with one filter on each ballast indicated to require a filter.

2.2 EMERGENCY POWER UNIT

A. Internal Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body and compatible with ballast. Comply with UL 924.

1. Emergency Connection: Operate LED’s continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire driver.
2. Test Push Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.

a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.

b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.

3. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
4. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
5. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
6. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

B. External Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more fluorescent lamps, remote mounted from luminaire. Comply with UL 924.

1. Emergency Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
2. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
3. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
4. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
5. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
6. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
7. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
8. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

2.3 LED LIGHTING FIXTURES AND LED LAMPS

A. All LED products must be UL, ETL and/or CSA listed

B. All LED products must have LM-79 and LM-80 testing noted on specification sheet by an independent test lab

C. All LED products should be identified as L70 and/or L90 ratings based on independent test lab data

D. All outdoor and wet location listed products must clearly state the IP rating carried on the fixture based on independent test lab data

E. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C79.1.

F. CRI of Minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.

G. Rated lamp life of **50,000** hours.

H. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.

I. Nominal Operating Voltage: as noted on light fixture schedule.

J. All LED products must be serviceable for accessible for field repair needs

K. All indoor lighting color rendering should be within a 3 step McAdams ellipse. All indoor lighting should be 4000-4100 kelvin unless specifically noted

L. All control systems that interface with an LED product will be supported by a project "integrator" until project completion. This includes contact with the installer prior to installation, availability during installation, and final checkout and startup after installation. The quantity of days required for startup will be based on the manufacturer/agents discretion and need.

1. The project integrator must be capable of performing low voltage and dmx terminations. High voltage terminations are performed solely by the electrical subcontractor.
2. Reporting of final startup completion of the controls system back to the engineer is mandatory.
3. Invitation to attend the training with the owners representative should be made to the engineer no less than 5 days prior to training
4. Signature confirmation of training and startup is required within 5 business days after completion back to the engineer's office.

M. All LED drivers should be capable of 0-10 volt controls and DMX control and shall dim to 1% of total lumen output. Where specifically specified the dimming driver may be required to dim to .1% of lumen output , otherwise known as "dim to dark"

N. Driver manufacturers must have a 5 year history producing dimmable electronic LED drivers for the North American market.

O. Ambient driver temperatures must be within -20 degrees to 50 degrees C (-4 degrees to 122 degrees F)

P. Driver (internal) must limit inrush current.

1. Base specification: meet or exceed NEMA 410 driver inrush standard of 430 amp per 10 amps load with a maximum of 370 amps/2 seconds
2. Preferred specification : Meet or exceed 30ma's at 277 VAC for up to 50 watts of load and 75A at 240us att 277 VAC for 100 watts of load
3. Withstand up to a 1,000 volt surge without impairment of performance as defined by ANSI C62.41 Category A
4. No visible change in light output with a variation of plus/minus 10percent line voltage input.
5. Total harmonic distortion less than 20%, and meet ANSI C82.11 maximum allowable THD requirements at full output. THD shall at no point in the dimming curve allow imbalance current to exceed full output THD

2.4 CYLINDER

A. With integral mounting provisions.

2.5 DOWNLIGHT

A. Universal mounting bracket.

B. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

2.6 LINEAR INDUSTRIAL

A. Luminaire and housing certified to the following standard[**s**].

1. Class 1, Division 2, Group(s) [**A**] [**B**] [**C**] [**and**] [**D**].
2. NEMA 4X.
3. IP 66.
4. Wet locations.
5. CSA C22.2 No 137.

2.7 PARKING GARAGE

A. Low-profile housing and heat sink.

B. Fully gasketed and sealed.

C. Stainless-steel latches.

D. Integral pressure equalizer.

2.8 RECESSED LINEAR

A. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

2.9 STRIP LIGHT

A. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

2.10 SURFACE MOUNT, LINEAR

A. Universal mounting bracket.

B. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

2.11 SURFACE MOUNT, NONLINEAR

A. Universal mounting bracket.

B. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

2.12 SUSPENDED, LINEAR

A. Ceiling mounted with two 5/32-inch diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 120 inches in length.

2.13 SUSPENDED, NONLINEAR

A. Universal mounting bracket.

B. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

2.14 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Tempered Fresnel glass, prismatic glass or prismatic acrylic, refer to light fixture schedule**.**
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink or as noted on light fixture schedule.
2. Powder-coat finish.

E. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:

a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.15 METAL FINISHES

A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.16 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish shall match luminaire.

C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.

D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before fixture installation.

C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Remote Mounting of Ballasts: Distance between the ballast and luminaire shall not exceed that recommended by ballast manufacturer. Verify, with ballast manufacturers, maximum distance between ballast and luminaire.

C. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install lamps in each luminaire.

E. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them.

F. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

G. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaire Supports: Use grid as a support element.

1. Install ceiling support system rods or wires, independent of the ceiling suspension devices, for each luminaire. Locate not more than 6 inches from luminaire corners.
2. Support Clips: Fasten to luminaires and to ceiling grid members at or near each luminaire corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.
3. Luminaires of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support luminaires independently with at least two 3/4-inch metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
4. Install at least one independent support rod or wire from structure to a tab on luminaire. Wire or rod shall have breaking strength of the luminaire weight at a safety factor of 3.

H. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Secured to outlet box.
2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

I. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls, or a minimum 20 gauge backing plate attached to wall structural members, or using through bolts and backing plates on either side of wall.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

J. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and [tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

K. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

B. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.

1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

C. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 265116

SECTION 265219 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Emergency lighting units.
2. Exit signs.
3. Luminaire supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.

C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.

D. Fixture: See "Luminaire" Paragraph.

E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.

1. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
2. Include physical description of the unit and dimensions.
3. Battery and charger for light units.
4. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
5. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES LM-45, for each luminaire type.

a. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires and signs, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires and signs shall be certified by manufacturer.

b. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Product Schedule:

1. For emergency lighting units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
2. For exit signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

D. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

E. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

F. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

G. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer’s special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Luminaire-mounted, emergency battery pack: One for every 20 emergency lighting units. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Diffusers and Lenses: two for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.

C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace (materials and labor) components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Emergency Power Unit Batteries: **5** years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year and prorated warranty for the remaining four years.
2. Warranty Period for Emergency Fluorescent Ballast and Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: Seven years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year and prorated warranty for the remaining six year**s**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to comply with UL 924.

C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.

D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.

E. Comply with UL 1598 for fluorescent luminaires.

F. Lamp Base: Comply with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.

G. Bulb Shape: Complying with ANSI C79.1.

H. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body and compatible with ballast.

1. Emergency Connection: Operate two lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1100 lumens each upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
3. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

    a. Ambient Temperature: Less than 0 deg F or exceeding 104 deg F, with an average value exceeding 95 deg F over a 24-hour period.
    b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F and not exceeding 140 deg F.
    c. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).
    d. Altitude: Exceeding 3300 feet.

4. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp continuously at 40 percent of rated light output.
5. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.

    a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.

6. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
7. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
8. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

I. External Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more lamps, remote mounted from luminaire.

1. Emergency Connection: Operate fluorescent or LED lamp continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay

disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.

3. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp in a remote luminaire continuously.
4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
6. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure listed for installation inside, on top of, or remote from luminaire. Remote assembly shall be located no less than half the distance recommended by the ballast/emergency power unit manufacturer, whichever is less.
7. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
8. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
9. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

2.2 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units.

B. Emergency Luminaires:

1. Emergency Luminaires: as indicated on Drawings, with the following additional features:
   a. Rated for installation in damp locations, and for sealed and gasketed luminaires in wet locations.

C. Emergency Lighting Unit:

1. Emergency Lighting Unit: as indicated on Drawings.
2. Wall with universal junction box adaptor.
3. UV stable thermoplastic housing, rated for damp locations.

D. Remote Emergency Lighting Units:

1. Emergency Lighting Unit: as indicated on Drawings.
2. Wall with universal junction box adaptor.
3. UV stable thermoplastic housing, rated for damp locations.
4. External emergency power unit.

2.3 EXIT SIGNS

A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Internally Lighted Signs:

1. Lamps for AC Operation: Fluorescent, two for each luminaire; 20,000 hours of rated lamp life.
2. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
3. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.

2.4 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:

1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
2. Acrylic: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Powder coat finish.

2.5 METAL FINISHES

A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Support Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, and 12 gage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.

C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

D. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire and emergency power unit weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

E. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls, or a minimum 20 gauge backing plate attached to wall structural members, or using through bolts and backing plates on either side of wall.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

F. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

G. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service:
1. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour discharge test.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjustments: Within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site visit to do the following:

1. Inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps, emergency power units, batteries, signs, or luminaires that are defective.

a. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

2. Conduct short-duration tests on all emergency lighting.

END OF SECTION 265219

SECTION 265621 - EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
   2. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.

B. Related Requirements:

   1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
   2. Section 265613 "Lighting Poles and Standards" for poles and standards used to support exterior lighting equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color rendering index.

C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."

D. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

E. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

F. Pole: Luminaire support structure, including tower used for large-area illumination.

G. Standard: See "Pole."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.

   1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
   2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
   3. Include physical description and dimensions of the luminaires.
   4. Lamps, including life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.

5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES "Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides," of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps, ballasts, and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project.
   For LED luminaires the adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.

   a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
   b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.

6. Photoelectric relays.
7. Means of attaching luminaires to supports, and indication that attachment is suitable for components involved.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

D. Samples: For products designated for sample submission in the Exterior Lighting Fixture Schedule.

E. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of luminaire with custom, factory-applied finish.

1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories involving color and finish selection.

F. Samples for Verification: For each type of luminaire.

1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.
2. Lamps and ballasts, installed.
3. Cords and plugs.
4. Support system.

G. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Luminaires.

2. Structural members to which equipment and luminaires will be attached.
3. Underground utilities and structures.
4. Existing underground utilities and structures.
5. Above-grade utilities and structures.
6. Existing above grade utilities and structures.
7. Building features.
8. Vertical and horizontal information.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of the following:

1. Drivers.
2. Lamp.
3. Photoelectric relay.

E. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

F. Sample warranty.

1.6 PRIOR APPROVAL SUBMITTAL REQUESTS

A. Full submittal data , by type, clearly highlighted and arrowed to identify the specific proposed manufacturer’s nomenclature

B. Full submittal data of driver (LED) data of proposed manufacturer

C. LED lumen data will include
1. Lumen output
2. L70 and L90 testing
3. Confirmation of independent test lab data ITL
4. Color temperature and CRI with quantity of McAdam Ellipse steps
   a. Data shall include sphere and goniometer results for total lumen, total power, luminaire efficacy, CRI and junction temperature for the specified color temperature
5. Make and brand of LED diode should be clearly identified on submittal data

D. LED dimming shall be equal in range and quality to the specified drivers, Quality of dimming to be defined by dimming range, freedom from perceived flicker or visible stroboscopic flicker, smooth and continuous change in level (no visible steps in transitions), natural square law response to control input, and stable when input voltage conditions fluctuate over what is typically experience in a commercial environment.

E. All substitutions must meet specified fixtures certifications (UL,ETL,CE,CSA, RoHS, DLC, Energy Star)

F. Provide lighting calculations with the prior approval request based on reflectance values and light loss factors provided by the engineer and displayed on lighting calculation drawings. (may be unique by area) Calculations shall be shown on one sheet with dimensions as shown on construction set. Data will be submitted electronically in dxf format on a flash drive and with printed calculations on Architectural E size sheets to scale with construction set sheets.

1. Discrepancies between prior approval data calculations and the original design calculations will result in immediate disqualification of review due to time based constraints on the bid process

G. Prior approval request may require a sample of both the proposed and specified fixtures provided by the alternate manufacturer at NO additional cost to the project. Samples of both specified and proposed must be provided within 10 working days of request.

H. All data will be submitted electronically and in a bound format

I. Bound data will be secured in hard binder with 3” rings for ease of review or PDF file.

1. Types will be marked with a tab by type and indexed for ease of reference

J. LED warranty information MUST be included by type and marked in RED to clearly identify the manufacturer’s warranty terms. Warranty data MUST meet or exceed the specified manufacturers terms

K. Prior approvals MUST be received and acknowledged to the specifiers office no less than 10 days prior to bid.

L. ALL prior approval data must be submitted in one package with complete information. Information that is incomplete will be rejected without review.

M. The prior approval will be returned marked approved or rejected by type with no explanation. If any specification is deemed not equal the review will be stopped, the type rejected with no explanation.

N. Lumen output for the proposed fixture must be highlighted in yellow for clear identification.

O. All inverter systems supply power to LED fixtures must have pure PWM sine wave function and work with any type of lighting load.

P. LED warranty information must be included by type and marked in red to clearly identify the manufacturer’s warranty terms. Warranty data must meet or exceed the specified manufacturer’s terms.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Glass, Acrylic, and Plastic Lenses, Covers and Other Optical Parts: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
   2. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
   3. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products and complying with applicable IES testing standards.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.

B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

1.12 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace (labor and material) components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

   1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

      a. Structural failures including luminaire support components.
      b. Faulty operation of luminaires, ballasts, and accessories.
      c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.

B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall comply with UL 1598 and be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.

C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

D. Lateral Light Distribution Patterns: Comply with IES RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.

E. UL Compliance: Listed for wet location (UL 1598).

F. EMI Filters: Factory installed to suppress conducted EMI as required by MIL-STD-461E. Fabricate luminaires with one filter on each ballast indicated to require a filter.

G. In-line Fusing: Install on the ballast primary for each luminaire.

H. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use and in enclosed locations.

I. Source Limitations: Obtain luminaires from single source from a single manufacturer.

J. Source Limitations: For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 LED LIGHTING FIXTURES AND LED LAMPS

A. All LED products must be UL, ETL and/or CSA listed

B. All LED products must have LM-79 and LM-80 testing noted on specification sheet by an independent test lab

C. All LED products should be identified as L70 and/or L90 ratings based on independent test lab data

D. All outdoor and wet location listed products must clearly state the IP rating carried on the fixture based on independent test lab data

E. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C79.1.

F. CRI of Minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.

G. Rated lamp life of **50,000** hours.

H. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.

I. Nominal Operating Voltage: as noted on light fixture schedule.

J. All LED products must be serviceable for accessible for field repair needs.

K. All outdoor pole mounted products must have surge suppression within each fixture.

L. All outdoor lighting color rendering should be within a 7 step McAdams Ellipse. All outdoor lighting should be 4000 kelvin unless specifically noted

M. All control systems that interface with an LED product will be supported by a project "integrator" until project completion. This includes contact with the installer prior to installation, availability during installation, and final checkout and startup after installation. The quantity of days required for startup will be based on the manufacturer/agents discretion and need.

1. The project integrator must be capable of performing low voltage and dmx terminations. High voltage terminations are performed solely by the electrical subcontractor.
2. Reporting of final startup completion of the controls system back to the engineer is mandatory.
3. Invitation to attend the training with the owners representative should be made to the engineer no less than 5 days prior to training
4. Signature confirmation of training and startup is required within 5 business days after completion back to the engineer's office.

N. All LED drivers should be capable of 0-10 volt controls and DMX control and shall dim to 1% of total lumen output. Where specifically specified the dimming driver may be required to dim to .1% of lumen output , otherwise known as "dim to dark"

O. Driver manufacturers must have a 5 year history producing dimmable electronic LED drivers for the North American market.

P. Ambient driver temperatures must be within -20 degrees to 50 degrees C (-4 degrees to 122 degrees F)

Q. Driver (internal) must limit inrush current.

1. Base specification: meet or exceed NEMA 410 driver inrush standard of 430 amp per 10 amps load with a maximum of 370 amps/2 seconds
2. Preferred specification : Meet or exceed 30ma's at 277 VAC for up to 50 watts of load and 75A at 240us att 277 VAC for 100 watts of load
3. Withstand up to a 1,000 volt surge without impairment of performance as defined by ANSI C62.41 Category A
4. No visible change in light output with a variation of plus/minus 10percent line voltage input.
5. Total harmonic distortion less than 20%, and meet ANSI C82.11 maximum allowable THD requirements at full output. THD shall at no point in the dimming curve allow imbalance current to exceed full output THD

2.3 LUMINAIRE-MOUNTED PHOTOELECTRIC RELAYS

A. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.

B. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at 1.5 to 3 fc and off at 4.5 to 10 fc with 15-second minimum time delay. Relay shall have directional lens in front of photocell to prevent artificial light sources from causing false turnoff.

1. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with ANSI C136.10.
2. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.

2.4 LUMINAIRE TYPES - see light fixture schedule on plans

2.5 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

B. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum or Stainless steel unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

C. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses. Ballast shall automatically disconnect ballast when door opens.

E. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.

H. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.

I. Housings:

1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

J. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:

a. "USE ONLY," including specific lamp type.
b. Lamp type, wattage, bulb type, and coating (clear or coated) for HID luminaires.
c. ANSI ballast type (M98, M57, etc.) for HID luminaires.
d. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.6 METAL FINISHES

A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.

C. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
3. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.
4. Class I, Color-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.

C. Examine walls, roofs, and canopy ceilings and overhang ceilings for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.

C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

D. Remote Mounting of Ballasts: Distance between the ballast and luminaire shall not exceed that recommended by ballast manufacturer. Verify the following with ballast manufacturer:

1. Maximum distance between ballast and luminaire.
2. Wire size between ballast and luminaire.

E. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceway and cables.

F. Fasten luminaire to indicated structural supports.

G. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

H. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls, or a minimum 1/8-inch backing plate attached to wall structural members or using through bolts and backing plates on either side of wall.

I. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated. Install luminaires at height indicated on Drawings.

J. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction. Refer to architectural elevations prior to rough-ins.

K. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.

L. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems;" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

3.4 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.

1. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches above finished grade or surface at location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTING LUMINAIRES

A. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.6 CORROSION PREVENTION

A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.

B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Photoelectric Control Operation: Verify operation of photoelectric controls.

C. Illumination Tests:

1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IES testing guide(s):

   a. IES LM-5.
   b. IES LM-50.
   c. IES LM-52.
   d. IES LM-64.
   e. IES LM-72.

D. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires and photocell relays.

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 265621

SECTION 267260 – GYMNASIUM SOUND SYSTEM

PART I - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes a system for amplifying sound signals from sources such as microphones and distributing and reproducing them on loudspeakers at various locations. Provide cabling to interface with multimedia outlet. The audio system will have a professional DSP to provide state of the art equalization with audio feed back cancelation, it will also allow the use of a movable cart to connect to any network jack communicating with the amplifiers via Network Audio Dante Protocol.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data for each type of products specified.

C. Shop Drawings detailing public address and music systems including, but not limited to, the following:

1. System block diagrams.
2. Control panels.

D. Wiring diagrams detailing wiring for power, signal, and control systems and differentiating clearly between manufacturer installed and field-installed wiring. Identify terminals to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance.

E. Report of field tests and observations, including record of final tap settings of speaker line matching transformers and signal ground-resistance measurement certified by Installer.

F. Maintenance data for system to include in the operation and maintenance manual specified in Division 1.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who is an authorized representative of the system manufacturer to perform Work of this Section.

1. Contractor to provide Crestron Certified Audio Technician
2. Contractor to provide Creston Avia DSP Integration

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Engage a firm experienced in manufacturing professional sound

reinforcement systems complying with the requirements of these Specifications and experienced with at least 5 projects of similar size and scope that have been in operation for 3 years or more.

C. Listing Labeling: Provide products specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.

1. This Terms "listed and Labeled": As defined in the National Electrical Code, Article 100.
2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" (NTRL) as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

E. Comply with UL50.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one the following:

1. Williams Sound.
2. Crown Amps.
3. Crestron.
4. Electro-Voice, Inc.
5. Behringer.
6. Audio Technica

2.02 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate the features of materials and equipments to form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum performance of specified functions.

B. Functional Performance: System functions include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Selectability of sources for amplifying sound between various microphone outlets and other inputs.
2. High-Quality Sound Reproduction: Sound is free from noises, such as pops, clicks hisses, and hums at all loudspeakers at all times during system operation including standby mode with inputs off. System output is free from distortion and nonuniform coverage of amplified sound.

2.03 EQUIPMENT

A. General: Use all solid-state components, fully rated for continuous duty at the ratings indicated. Select equipment for normal operation on input power usually supplied at 105 to 130 V, 60 Hz.

B. In Wall Amplifier: Comply with EIA-SE-101. Provide with the following features:

1. Dante communication between mixer outputs and equalizer inputs.
2. 300W amplification.
3. "In-wall" chassis with security cover.
4. Five Year Warranty
5. UL Listed.
6. Frequency response shall be +0/-3db from 60Hz to 20KHZ at rated power.
7. Total harmonic distortion shall be less than 0.5% from 80 Hz to 20 KHz at rated
8. Signal-to-noise shall be greater than 90dB from 20 Hz to 20KH2 at rated power.
9. Mixer outputs (Main & Zone):
   a) Maximum output level +21 dBU (8.7V)
   b) Output Impedance <50 OHMS
10. Gain:
    a) Mic input to main/zone output 66dB
    b) Line Input to main/zone output 10 dB
    c) Equalizer input to amplifier output 26dB

C. Wheeled Cart: Provide with the following features

1. Five balanced microphone line level mixer input channels.
2. One stereo summing line level input channel.
3. High & low equalization on each mixer input channel.
4. Independent main & zone level controls on each channel.
5. Main and zone mixed outputs with master level controls.
6. Professional DSP with Audio Dante Connection to Amplifiers
7. 24 Volt phantom power selectable for microphone inputs, optional remote control

C. Speakers. Shall be or equal to Electro-Voice, Inc. Model No. EVU-2062-95.
Provide with following features:

1.	Frequency Response:	70Hz to 20 kHz +/- 10 dB (on axis) 100 Hz to 16 kHz +/- 6 dB (on axis)
2.	Optimum Power:	50 to 250 watts RMS total
3.	Power Handling:	300 watts RMS total, 1200 watts peak, (Total Harmonic Distortion less than 10%)
4.	Impedance;	8 ohms nominal.
5.	Dispersion:	90 deg. Horizontal, 50 deg. Vertical +/- 6 dB Level 100 Hz to 10 kHz
6.	Sensitivity:	104 dB/watt/meter on axis, pink noise 100 Hz to 10 kHz
7.	Maximum S.P.L.:	128 dB RMS/131 dB Peak at 1 meter

D. Microphone: Comply with EIA-SE-105. Provide microphone with features as follows:
1. Impedance: 95 OHMS at 100 Hz.
2. Frequency response: 70-20 KHz
3. Provide the following accessories:
   a. Two each Audio Technica ATW-2129A Wireless Lapel Microphones.
   b. Two each Microphone stand
   c. Two each Audio Technica ATW 2120A Wireless Handheld Microphone.
5. Speaker cable shall be 2 cond. #16 ga. Microphone cable shall be 1 pr. #22 ga. Any cable installed in the return Air Plenum shall be in conduit.

E. ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEM: Shall be or equal to Williams. Model No. PA-457 Pro. Provide with following features:

1. Furnish and install an FM wireless assistive listening system for use by the hearing impaired.
2. Furnish and install the following.
   a. PPA T45 or approved equal transmitter
   b. PPA R37N receiver with battery (Qty: 50 ea.)
   c. EAR 022 Surround Earphones (Qty: 50 ea.)

F. WIRING AND CABLE: Jacketed, twisted-pair, #18 AWG, stranded copper conductors.
   1. Insulation for wire in conduit: Thermoplastic, not less than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm)
   2. Microphone Cables: Neoprene jacketed, not less than 2/64 inch (0.8 mm) thick over shield with filled interstices. Shield No. 34 AWG tinned, soft-copper strands formed into a braid or approved equivalent foil. Shielding coverage on the conductors not less than 60 percent.

D. GROUNDING COMPONENTS: As specified in Division 16 Section "Grounding."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install equipment to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway except within consoles, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and wiring except in unfinished spaces.

C. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway except within consoles, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum-board partitions where cable wiring method may be used. Use plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings. Conceal cable and raceway wiring except in unfinished spaces.

D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces or exposed structural members and follow surface contours. Secure and support cables by straps, staples, or similar fittings so designed and installed as not to damage the cables. Secure cable at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (762 mm) and not more than 6 inches (152 mm) from cabinets, boxes, or fittings.

E. Wiring within Enclosures: Provide adequate length of conductors. Bundle, lace, and train the conductors to terminal points with no excess. Provide and use lacing bars.

F. Control Circuit Wiring: Provide number of conductors as recommended by system manufacturer for control functions indicated.

G. Splices, Taps and Terminations: Make splices, taps and terminations on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull and outlet boxes, terminal cabinets, and equipment enclosures.

H. Impedance and Level Matching: Carefully match input and output impedances and signal level at audio signal interfaces. Provide matching networks where required.

I. Provide physical isolation from each other for microphone, line-level, speaker, and power wiring. Run in separate raceways or provide 12-inch (305-mm) minimum separation where exposed or in same enclosure. Provide additional physical separation as recommended by equipment manufacturer.

J. Conductor Sizing: Except as otherwise indicated size speaker circuit conductors from racks to loudspeaker outlets not smaller than No. 18 AWG and conductors from microphone receptacles to amplifiers not smaller than No. 22 AWG.

K. Identification of Conductors and Cables: Use color coding of conductors and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so all media are identified in coordination with system wiring diagrams.

L. Line Matching Transformer Connections: Make initial connections using tap settings indicated on the Drawings.

3.02 GROUNDING

A. Ground cable shields and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

B. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment rack or cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.

C. Install grounding electrodes of type, size, location, and quantity as indicated. Comply with installation requirements of Division 16 Section "Grounding."

3.03 Field Quality Control

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Provide services of a factory-authorized service representative to supervise the field assembly and connection of components and the testing and adjustment of the system.

B. Testing Procedure: Conform to the following:

1. Schedule tests a minimum of 7 days in advance of performance.
2. Report: Submit a written record of test results.
3. Operational Test: Perform operational system test to verify conformance of system to these Specifications. Perform tests that include originating program and page material at microphone outlets, preamplifier program inputs, and other inputs. Verify proper volume levels and freedom from noise and distortion.
4. Signal to Noise Ratio Test: Measure the ratio of signal to noise of the complete system at normal gain settings, using the following procedure:
   Disconnect a microphone at the connector or jack closest to it and replace it the circuit with a signal generator using a 1000-Hz signal. Replace all other microphones at the corresponding connectors with dummy loads, each in impedance to the microphone it replaces. Measure the ratio of signal to noise.

5. Acoustic Coverage Test: Feed pink noise into the system using octaves centered at

500 and 4000 Hz. Use a sound-level meter with octave band filters to measure the level at 5 locations in each zone. For spaces with seated audiences, the maximum permissible variation in level is plus or minus 2 dB. In addition, the levels between locations in the same zone and between locations in adjacent zones must not vary more than plus or minus 3 dB.

C. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly labeled, and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.

D. Retesting: Rectify deficiencies indicated by tests and observations. Include revising tap settings of speaker line matching transformers where necessary to optimize volume and uniformity of sound levels. Completely retest work affected by such deficiencies at the Contractor's expense. Verify by the system tests that the total system meets the specifications and complies with applicable standards. Provide a written record of all retest results.

3.04 CLEANING

A. Prior to final acceptance, clean system components and protect from damage and deterioration.

3.05 DEMONSTRATION

A. Demonstration and Training: Obtain and pay for the services of a factory-authorized service representative to demonstrate the system in all operating modes and functions and to train Owner's maintenance personnel.

B. Schedule training with Owner with at least 7 days' advance notice.

C. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing, and preventive maintenance. Provide a minimum of 3 hours' training.

D. Training Aid use the approved operation and maintenance manual as an instructional aid. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout." Provide copies of pertinent excerpts from the manual for use in the instruction.

END OF SECTION 267260

SECTION 268050 - HAND DRYERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Furnishing and installation of electric hand dyers.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

B. Basic Electrical Requirements - Section 260100

C. Wire and Cables - Section 260519

D. Grounding and Bonding- Section 260526

E. Raceways and Boxes - Section 260533

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. First two paragraphs below are defined in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" as "action submittals."

1.4 WARRANTY

A. Provide a 5-year minimum warranty from date of acceptance of project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

A. Excel Dryer, Inc.

2.2 MINIMUM FEATURES

B. Hand dryer cover shall be a one-piece, heavy-duty, rib-reinforced, die-cast zinc alloy. It shall be lightweight, unbreakable, rustproof and all exposed surfaces shall be bright chrome plated or finished with chip-proof, electrostatically applied epoxy paint and fastened to a wall plate by two chrome plated tamper-proof bolts.

C. Hand dryer wall plate shall be equipped with (3) 7/8" diameter holes, one of which shall be suitable for use with surface conduit, for ease of wiring.
All internal hand dryer parts shall be coated according to Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. requirements.

D. Entire mechanism shall be internally grounded.

E. Hand dryer motor shall be a series commutated through-flow discharge vacuum motor/blower (5/8 HP / 20,000 RPM) which provides air velocity of 16,000 LFM (linear feet per minute) at the air outlet and 14,000 LFM at the hands (4 inches below air outlet).

F. Hand dryer heating element (900 W) is constructed of Nichrome wire and mounted inside the blower housing, thereby being vandal proof. It shall be protected by an automatic resetting thermostat, which shall open whenever air flow is cut off and shall close when flow of air is resumed. It shall produce an air temperature of up to 135°F (57°C) at a 72°F (22°C) ambient room temperature at the hands (4 inches [102 mm] below air outlet).

G. Hand dryer Control assembly is activated by an infrared optical sensor located next to the air outlet. The dryer shall operate as long as hands are under the air outlet. There is a 35-second lockout feature if hands are not removed.

2.3 OPERATION

A. Touch-free infra-red operation activation.

B. Hand dry time measurement: 12 seconds.

C. Operation lock out period: 30 seconds.

D. Operation airflow: up to 7.39 gal/sec.

E. Rated operating noise power: 84dB(A)

2.3 ELECTRICAL

A. Voltage: 115 volts, do not use shared neutral.

B. Power Consumption: 12.5 AMPS. Entire unit shall be internally grounded.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.

END OF SECTION 268050